

Run-Time Library (RTL) :  
Reference guide.

---

Free Pascal version 3.2.2:  
Reference guide for RTL units.  
Document version 3.2.2  
January 1970

Michaël Van Canneyt

---

# Contents

|          |  |            |
|----------|--|------------|
| 0.1      | Overview . . . . .                       | 139        |
| <b>1</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'</b>     | <b>140</b> |
| 1.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 140        |
| 1.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 140        |
| 1.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 140        |
| 1.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 140        |
| 1.3.2    | Types . . . . .                          | 165        |
| 1.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 178        |
| 1.4.1    | CreateShellArgV . . . . .                | 178        |
| 1.4.2    | FpAccess . . . . .                       | 178        |
| 1.4.3    | FpAlarm . . . . .                        | 179        |
| 1.4.4    | FpChdir . . . . .                        | 180        |
| 1.4.5    | FpChmod . . . . .                        | 180        |
| 1.4.6    | FpChown . . . . .                        | 181        |
| 1.4.7    | FpClose . . . . .                        | 182        |
| 1.4.8    | FpClosedir . . . . .                     | 183        |
| 1.4.9    | FpDup . . . . .                          | 183        |
| 1.4.10   | FpDup2 . . . . .                         | 184        |
| 1.4.11   | FpExecv . . . . .                        | 185        |
| 1.4.12   | FpExecve . . . . .                       | 186        |
| 1.4.13   | FpExit . . . . .                         | 187        |
| 1.4.14   | FpFcntl . . . . .                        | 187        |
| 1.4.15   | fpgdfillset . . . . .                    | 188        |
| 1.4.16   | fpFD_CLR . . . . .                       | 188        |
| 1.4.17   | fpFD_ISSET . . . . .                     | 188        |
| 1.4.18   | fpFD_SET . . . . .                       | 188        |
| 1.4.19   | fpFD_ZERO . . . . .                      | 189        |
| 1.4.20   | FpFork . . . . .                         | 189        |
| 1.4.21   | FpFStat . . . . .                        | 189        |
| 1.4.22   | FpFtruncate . . . . .                    | 190        |

---

|        |               |     |
|--------|---------------|-----|
| 1.4.23 | FpGetcwd      | 191 |
| 1.4.24 | FpGetegid     | 191 |
| 1.4.25 | FpGetEnv      | 191 |
| 1.4.26 | fpgeterrno    | 192 |
| 1.4.27 | FpGeteuid     | 192 |
| 1.4.28 | FpGetgid      | 193 |
| 1.4.29 | FpGetgroups   | 193 |
| 1.4.30 | FpGetpggrp    | 193 |
| 1.4.31 | FpGetpid      | 194 |
| 1.4.32 | FpGetppid     | 194 |
| 1.4.33 | fpGetPriority | 195 |
| 1.4.34 | FpGetRLimit   | 195 |
| 1.4.35 | FpGetsid      | 195 |
| 1.4.36 | FpGetuid      | 196 |
| 1.4.37 | FpIOCtl       | 196 |
| 1.4.38 | FpKill        | 197 |
| 1.4.39 | FpLink        | 197 |
| 1.4.40 | FpLseek       | 198 |
| 1.4.41 | fpLstat       | 199 |
| 1.4.42 | FpMkdir       | 200 |
| 1.4.43 | FpMkfifo      | 201 |
| 1.4.44 | Fp mmap       | 201 |
| 1.4.45 | Fp mprotect   | 202 |
| 1.4.46 | Fp munmap     | 203 |
| 1.4.47 | FpNanoSleep   | 203 |
| 1.4.48 | fpNice        | 204 |
| 1.4.49 | FpOpen        | 204 |
| 1.4.50 | FpOpendir     | 206 |
| 1.4.51 | FpPause       | 207 |
| 1.4.52 | FpPipe        | 207 |
| 1.4.53 | FpPoll        | 208 |
| 1.4.54 | FpPRead       | 208 |
| 1.4.55 | FpPWrite      | 208 |
| 1.4.56 | FpRead        | 209 |
| 1.4.57 | FpReaddir     | 210 |
| 1.4.58 | fpReadLink    | 210 |
| 1.4.59 | FpReadV       | 211 |
| 1.4.60 | FpRename      | 212 |
| 1.4.61 | FpRmdir       | 212 |
| 1.4.62 | fpSelect      | 213 |

---

|         |                                |     |
|---------|--------------------------------|-----|
| 1.4.63  | <a href="#">fpseterno</a>      | 214 |
| 1.4.64  | <a href="#">FpSetgid</a>       | 214 |
| 1.4.65  | <a href="#">fpSetPriority</a>  | 215 |
| 1.4.66  | <a href="#">FpSetRLimit</a>    | 215 |
| 1.4.67  | <a href="#">FpSetsid</a>       | 215 |
| 1.4.68  | <a href="#">fpsettimeofday</a> | 216 |
| 1.4.69  | <a href="#">FpSetuid</a>       | 216 |
| 1.4.70  | <a href="#">FPSigaction</a>    | 216 |
| 1.4.71  | <a href="#">FpSigAddSet</a>    | 217 |
| 1.4.72  | <a href="#">FpSigDelSet</a>    | 218 |
| 1.4.73  | <a href="#">FpsigEmptySet</a>  | 218 |
| 1.4.74  | <a href="#">FpSigFillSet</a>   | 218 |
| 1.4.75  | <a href="#">FpSigIsMember</a>  | 218 |
| 1.4.76  | <a href="#">FpSignal</a>       | 219 |
| 1.4.77  | <a href="#">FpSigPending</a>   | 219 |
| 1.4.78  | <a href="#">FpSigProcMask</a>  | 220 |
| 1.4.79  | <a href="#">FpSigSuspend</a>   | 220 |
| 1.4.80  | <a href="#">FpSigTimedWait</a> | 220 |
| 1.4.81  | <a href="#">FpSleep</a>        | 221 |
| 1.4.82  | <a href="#">FpStat</a>         | 221 |
| 1.4.83  | <a href="#">fpSymlink</a>      | 222 |
| 1.4.84  | <a href="#">fpS_ISBLK</a>      | 223 |
| 1.4.85  | <a href="#">fpS_ISCHR</a>      | 224 |
| 1.4.86  | <a href="#">fpS_ISDIR</a>      | 224 |
| 1.4.87  | <a href="#">fpS_ISFIFO</a>     | 224 |
| 1.4.88  | <a href="#">fpS_ISLNK</a>      | 225 |
| 1.4.89  | <a href="#">fpS_ISREG</a>      | 225 |
| 1.4.90  | <a href="#">fpS_ISSOCK</a>     | 226 |
| 1.4.91  | <a href="#">fpTime</a>         | 226 |
| 1.4.92  | <a href="#">FpTimes</a>        | 226 |
| 1.4.93  | <a href="#">FpUmask</a>        | 227 |
| 1.4.94  | <a href="#">FpUname</a>        | 227 |
| 1.4.95  | <a href="#">FpUnlink</a>       | 227 |
| 1.4.96  | <a href="#">FpUtime</a>        | 228 |
| 1.4.97  | <a href="#">FpWait</a>         | 229 |
| 1.4.98  | <a href="#">FpWaitPid</a>      | 229 |
| 1.4.99  | <a href="#">FpWrite</a>        | 230 |
| 1.4.100 | <a href="#">FpWriteV</a>       | 230 |
| 1.4.101 | <a href="#">FreeShellArgV</a>  | 230 |
| 1.4.102 | <a href="#">wexitStatus</a>    | 231 |

|          |                                       |            |
|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 1.4.103  | wifexited                             | 231        |
| 1.4.104  | wifsignaled                           | 231        |
| 1.4.105  | wstopsig                              | 231        |
| 1.4.106  | wtermSIG                              | 232        |
| 1.5      | Dir                                   | 232        |
| 1.6      | Dirent                                | 232        |
| 1.7      | FLock                                 | 232        |
| 1.8      | iovec                                 | 233        |
| 1.9      | pollfd                                | 233        |
| 1.10     | sigactionrec                          | 233        |
| 1.11     | Stat                                  | 233        |
| 1.12     | tfpreg                                | 234        |
| 1.13     | tfpstate                              | 234        |
| 1.14     | tfpxreg                               | 235        |
| 1.15     | tfpx_sw_bytes                         | 235        |
| 1.16     | timezone                              | 235        |
| 1.17     | tms                                   | 236        |
| 1.18     | TRLimit                               | 236        |
| 1.19     | tsigaltstack                          | 236        |
| 1.20     | TSigContext                           | 236        |
| 1.21     | tsiginfo                              | 237        |
| 1.22     | TUcontext                             | 238        |
| 1.23     | txmmreg                               | 239        |
| 1.24     | UTimBuf                               | 239        |
| 1.25     | UtsName                               | 239        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Character'</b> | <b>240</b> |
| 2.1      | Used units                            | 240        |
| 2.2      | Overview                              | 240        |
| 2.3      | Constants, types and variables        | 240        |
| 2.3.1    | Types                                 | 240        |
| 2.4      | Procedures and functions              | 242        |
| 2.4.1    | ConvertFromUtf32                      | 242        |
| 2.4.2    | ConvertToUtf32                        | 243        |
| 2.4.3    | GetNumericValue                       | 243        |
| 2.4.4    | GetUnicodeCategory                    | 243        |
| 2.4.5    | IsControl                             | 244        |
| 2.4.6    | IsDigit                               | 244        |
| 2.4.7    | IsHighSurrogate                       | 244        |
| 2.4.8    | IsLetter                              | 244        |

|          |                                     |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 2.4.9    | IsLetterOrDigit                     | 245        |
| 2.4.10   | IsLower                             | 245        |
| 2.4.11   | IsLowSurrogate                      | 245        |
| 2.4.12   | IsNumber                            | 245        |
| 2.4.13   | IsPunctuation                       | 246        |
| 2.4.14   | IsSeparator                         | 246        |
| 2.4.15   | IsSurrogate                         | 246        |
| 2.4.16   | IsSurrogatePair                     | 246        |
| 2.4.17   | IsSymbol                            | 247        |
| 2.4.18   | IsUpper                             | 247        |
| 2.4.19   | IsWhiteSpace                        | 247        |
| 2.4.20   | ToLower                             | 247        |
| 2.4.21   | ToUpper                             | 248        |
| 2.5      | TCharacter                          | 248        |
| 2.5.1    | Description                         | 248        |
| 2.5.2    | Method overview                     | 248        |
| 2.5.3    | TCharacter.Create                   | 248        |
| 2.5.4    | TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32         | 249        |
| 2.5.5    | TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32           | 249        |
| 2.5.6    | TCharacter.GetNumericValue          | 250        |
| 2.5.7    | TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory       | 250        |
| 2.5.8    | TCharacter.IsControl                | 250        |
| 2.5.9    | TCharacter.IsDigit                  | 251        |
| 2.5.10   | TCharacter.IsSurrogate              | 251        |
| 2.5.11   | TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate          | 252        |
| 2.5.12   | TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate           | 252        |
| 2.5.13   | TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair          | 252        |
| 2.5.14   | TCharacter.IsLetter                 | 253        |
| 2.5.15   | TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit          | 253        |
| 2.5.16   | TCharacter.IsLower                  | 254        |
| 2.5.17   | TCharacter.IsNumber                 | 254        |
| 2.5.18   | TCharacter.IsPunctuation            | 255        |
| 2.5.19   | TCharacter.IsSeparator              | 255        |
| 2.5.20   | TCharacter.IsSymbol                 | 255        |
| 2.5.21   | TCharacter.IsUpper                  | 256        |
| 2.5.22   | TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace             | 256        |
| 2.5.23   | TCharacter.ToLower                  | 257        |
| 2.5.24   | TCharacter.ToUpper                  | 257        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'charset'</b> | <b>258</b> |

|          |                                     |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 3.1      | Used units                          | 258        |
| 3.2      | Overview                            | 258        |
| 3.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 258        |
| 3.3.1    | Constants                           | 258        |
| 3.3.2    | Types                               | 258        |
| 3.4      | Procedures and functions            | 259        |
| 3.4.1    | getascii                            | 259        |
| 3.4.2    | getmap                              | 260        |
| 3.4.3    | getunicode                          | 260        |
| 3.4.4    | loadbinaryunicodemapping            | 260        |
| 3.4.5    | loadunicodemapping                  | 261        |
| 3.4.6    | mappingavailable                    | 261        |
| 3.4.7    | registerbinarymapping               | 261        |
| 3.4.8    | registermapping                     | 262        |
| 3.5      | reversecharmapping                  | 262        |
| 3.6      | TSerializedMapHeader                | 262        |
| 3.7      | tunicodecharmapping                 | 262        |
| 3.8      | tunicodemap                         | 263        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Classes'</b> | <b>264</b> |
| 4.1      | Used units                          | 264        |
| 4.2      | Overview                            | 264        |
| 4.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 264        |
| 4.3.1    | Constants                           | 264        |
| 4.3.2    | Types                               | 267        |
| 4.3.3    | Variables                           | 284        |
| 4.4      | Procedures and functions            | 285        |
| 4.4.1    | ActivateClassGroup                  | 285        |
| 4.4.2    | BeginGlobalLoading                  | 285        |
| 4.4.3    | BinToHex                            | 285        |
| 4.4.4    | Bounds                              | 286        |
| 4.4.5    | CheckSynchronize                    | 286        |
| 4.4.6    | ClassGroupOf                        | 287        |
| 4.4.7    | CollectionsEqual                    | 287        |
| 4.4.8    | EndGlobalLoading                    | 287        |
| 4.4.9    | ExtractStrings                      | 287        |
| 4.4.10   | FindClass                           | 288        |
| 4.4.11   | FindGlobalComponent                 | 288        |
| 4.4.12   | FindIdentToInt                      | 288        |
| 4.4.13   | FindIntToIdent                      | 288        |

|        |                                 |     |
|--------|---------------------------------|-----|
| 4.4.14 | FindNestedComponent             | 289 |
| 4.4.15 | GetClass                        | 289 |
| 4.4.16 | GetFixupInstanceNames           | 289 |
| 4.4.17 | GetFixupReferenceNames          | 289 |
| 4.4.18 | GlobalFixupReferences           | 290 |
| 4.4.19 | GroupDescendentsWith            | 290 |
| 4.4.20 | HexToBin                        | 290 |
| 4.4.21 | IdentToInt                      | 290 |
| 4.4.22 | InitComponentRes                | 291 |
| 4.4.23 | InitInheritedComponent          | 291 |
| 4.4.24 | IntToIdent                      | 291 |
| 4.4.25 | InvalidPoint                    | 291 |
| 4.4.26 | LineStart                       | 292 |
| 4.4.27 | NotifyGlobalLoading             | 292 |
| 4.4.28 | ObjectBinaryToText              | 292 |
| 4.4.29 | ObjectResourceToText            | 292 |
| 4.4.30 | ObjectTextToBinary              | 292 |
| 4.4.31 | ObjectTextToResource            | 293 |
| 4.4.32 | Point                           | 293 |
| 4.4.33 | PointsEqual                     | 293 |
| 4.4.34 | ReadComponentRes                | 293 |
| 4.4.35 | ReadComponentResEx              | 294 |
| 4.4.36 | ReadComponentResFile            | 294 |
| 4.4.37 | Rect                            | 294 |
| 4.4.38 | RedirectFixupReferences         | 294 |
| 4.4.39 | RegisterClass                   | 295 |
| 4.4.40 | RegisterClassAlias              | 295 |
| 4.4.41 | RegisterClasses                 | 295 |
| 4.4.42 | RegisterComponents              | 295 |
| 4.4.43 | RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc | 296 |
| 4.4.44 | RegisterInitComponentHandler    | 296 |
| 4.4.45 | RegisterIntegerConsts           | 296 |
| 4.4.46 | RegisterNoIcon                  | 297 |
| 4.4.47 | RegisterNonActiveX              | 297 |
| 4.4.48 | RemoveFixupReferences           | 297 |
| 4.4.49 | RemoveFixups                    | 298 |
| 4.4.50 | SmallPoint                      | 298 |
| 4.4.51 | StartClassGroup                 | 298 |
| 4.4.52 | UnRegisterClass                 | 298 |
| 4.4.53 | UnRegisterClasses               | 298 |

|        |                                   |     |
|--------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 4.4.54 | UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc | 299 |
| 4.4.55 | UnRegisterModuleClasses           | 299 |
| 4.4.56 | WriteComponentResFile             | 299 |
| 4.5    | TIdentMapEntry                    | 299 |
| 4.6    | TStringItem                       | 300 |
| 4.7    | EBitsError                        | 300 |
| 4.7.1  | Description                       | 300 |
| 4.8    | EClassNotFound                    | 300 |
| 4.8.1  | Description                       | 300 |
| 4.9    | EComponentError                   | 300 |
| 4.9.1  | Description                       | 300 |
| 4.10   | EFCREATEError                     | 300 |
| 4.10.1 | Description                       | 300 |
| 4.11   | EFilerError                       | 301 |
| 4.11.1 | Description                       | 301 |
| 4.12   | EFOpenError                       | 301 |
| 4.12.1 | Description                       | 301 |
| 4.13   | EInvalidImage                     | 301 |
| 4.13.1 | Description                       | 301 |
| 4.14   | EInvalidOperation                 | 301 |
| 4.14.1 | Description                       | 301 |
| 4.15   | EListError                        | 301 |
| 4.15.1 | Description                       | 301 |
| 4.16   | EMethodNotFound                   | 302 |
| 4.16.1 | Description                       | 302 |
| 4.17   | EObserver                         | 302 |
| 4.17.1 | Description                       | 302 |
| 4.18   | EOutOfResources                   | 302 |
| 4.18.1 | Description                       | 302 |
| 4.19   | EParseError                       | 302 |
| 4.19.1 | Description                       | 302 |
| 4.20   | EReadError                        | 302 |
| 4.20.1 | Description                       | 302 |
| 4.21   | EResNotFound                      | 303 |
| 4.21.1 | Description                       | 303 |
| 4.22   | EStreamError                      | 303 |
| 4.22.1 | Description                       | 303 |
| 4.23   | EStringListError                  | 303 |
| 4.23.1 | Description                       | 303 |
| 4.24   | EThread                           | 303 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 4.24.1  | Description                               | 303 |
| 4.25    | EThreadDestroyCalled                      | 303 |
| 4.25.1  | Description                               | 303 |
| 4.26    | EThreadExternalException                  | 304 |
| 4.26.1  | Description                               | 304 |
| 4.27    | EWriteError                               | 304 |
| 4.27.1  | Description                               | 304 |
| 4.28    | IDesignerNotify                           | 304 |
| 4.28.1  | Description                               | 304 |
| 4.28.2  | Method overview                           | 304 |
| 4.28.3  | IDesignerNotify.Modified                  | 304 |
| 4.28.4  | IDesignerNotify.Notification              | 304 |
| 4.29    | IFPObserved                               | 305 |
| 4.29.1  | Description                               | 305 |
| 4.29.2  | Method overview                           | 305 |
| 4.29.3  | IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver             | 305 |
| 4.29.4  | IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver             | 306 |
| 4.29.5  | IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers            | 306 |
| 4.30    | IFPObserver                               | 306 |
| 4.30.1  | Description                               | 306 |
| 4.30.2  | Method overview                           | 306 |
| 4.30.3  | IFPObserver.FPOObservedChanged            | 307 |
| 4.31    | IInterfaceComponentReference              | 307 |
| 4.31.1  | Description                               | 307 |
| 4.31.2  | Method overview                           | 307 |
| 4.31.3  | IInterfaceComponentReference.GetComponent | 307 |
| 4.32    | IInterfaceList                            | 307 |
| 4.32.1  | Description                               | 307 |
| 4.32.2  | Method overview                           | 308 |
| 4.32.3  | Property overview                         | 308 |
| 4.32.4  | IInterfaceList.Get                        | 308 |
| 4.32.5  | IInterfaceList.GetCapacity                | 308 |
| 4.32.6  | IInterfaceList.GetCount                   | 309 |
| 4.32.7  | IInterfaceList.Put                        | 309 |
| 4.32.8  | IInterfaceList.SetCapacity                | 309 |
| 4.32.9  | IInterfaceList.SetCount                   | 309 |
| 4.32.10 | IInterfaceList.Clear                      | 310 |
| 4.32.11 | IInterfaceList.Delete                     | 310 |
| 4.32.12 | IInterfaceList.Exchange                   | 310 |
| 4.32.13 | IInterfaceList.First                      | 310 |

|         |  |     |
|---------|--|-----|
| 4.32.14 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.IndexOf</a>                   | 311 |
| 4.32.15 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Add</a>                       | 311 |
| 4.32.16 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Insert</a>                    | 311 |
| 4.32.17 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Last</a>                      | 311 |
| 4.32.18 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Remove</a>                    | 311 |
| 4.32.19 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Lock</a>                      | 312 |
| 4.32.20 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Unlock</a>                    | 312 |
| 4.32.21 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Capacity</a>                  | 312 |
| 4.32.22 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Count</a>                     | 312 |
| 4.32.23 | <a href="#">IInterfaceList.Items</a>                     | 313 |
| 4.33    | <a href="#">IStreamPersist</a>                           | 313 |
| 4.33.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                              | 313 |
| 4.33.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                          | 313 |
| 4.33.3  | <a href="#">IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream</a>            | 313 |
| 4.33.4  | <a href="#">IStreamPersist.SaveToStream</a>              | 313 |
| 4.34    | <a href="#">IStringsAdapter</a>                          | 314 |
| 4.34.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                              | 314 |
| 4.34.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                          | 314 |
| 4.34.3  | <a href="#">IStringsAdapter.ReferenceStrings</a>         | 314 |
| 4.34.4  | <a href="#">IStringsAdapter.ReleaseStrings</a>           | 314 |
| 4.35    | <a href="#">IVCLComObject</a>                            | 314 |
| 4.35.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                              | 314 |
| 4.35.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                          | 314 |
| 4.35.3  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount</a>           | 315 |
| 4.35.4  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo</a>                | 315 |
| 4.35.5  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames</a>              | 315 |
| 4.35.6  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.Invoke</a>                     | 315 |
| 4.35.7  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.SafeCallException</a>          | 316 |
| 4.35.8  | <a href="#">IVCLComObject.FreeOnRelease</a>              | 316 |
| 4.36    | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader</a>                    | 316 |
| 4.36.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                              | 316 |
| 4.36.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                          | 317 |
| 4.36.3  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer</a>        | 317 |
| 4.36.4  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue</a>          | 317 |
| 4.36.5  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue</a>          | 318 |
| 4.36.6  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent</a> | 318 |
| 4.36.7  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent</a>     | 318 |
| 4.36.8  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty</a>      | 318 |
| 4.36.9  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.Read</a>               | 319 |
| 4.36.10 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary</a>         | 319 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 4.36.11 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat</a>         | 319 |
| 4.36.12 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle</a>        | 319 |
| 4.36.13 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate</a>          | 320 |
| 4.36.14 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency</a>      | 320 |
| 4.36.15 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent</a>         | 320 |
| 4.36.16 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8</a>          | 321 |
| 4.36.17 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16</a>         | 321 |
| 4.36.18 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32</a>         | 322 |
| 4.36.19 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64</a>         | 322 |
| 4.36.20 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet</a>           | 322 |
| 4.36.21 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature</a>     | 323 |
| 4.36.22 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr</a>           | 323 |
| 4.36.23 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString</a>        | 323 |
| 4.36.24 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString</a>    | 323 |
| 4.36.25 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString</a> | 324 |
| 4.36.26 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent</a>     | 324 |
| 4.36.27 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue</a>         | 324 |
| 4.37    | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter</a>                   | 324 |
| 4.37.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                             | 324 |
| 4.37.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                         | 325 |
| 4.37.3  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection</a>   | 325 |
| 4.37.4  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent</a>    | 325 |
| 4.37.5  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature</a>    | 325 |
| 4.37.6  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList</a>         | 326 |
| 4.37.7  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList</a>           | 326 |
| 4.37.8  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty</a>     | 326 |
| 4.37.9  | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty</a>       | 326 |
| 4.37.10 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer</a>       | 326 |
| 4.37.11 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.Write</a>             | 327 |
| 4.37.12 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary</a>       | 327 |
| 4.37.13 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean</a>      | 327 |
| 4.37.14 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat</a>        | 327 |
| 4.37.15 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle</a>       | 327 |
| 4.37.16 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate</a>         | 328 |
| 4.37.17 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency</a>     | 328 |
| 4.37.18 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent</a>        | 328 |
| 4.37.19 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger</a>      | 328 |
| 4.37.20 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64</a>       | 328 |
| 4.37.21 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteVariant</a>      | 329 |
| 4.37.22 | <a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName</a>   | 329 |

|         |  |     |
|---------|--|-----|
| 4.37.23 | TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet           | 329 |
| 4.37.24 | TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString        | 329 |
| 4.37.25 | TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteWideString    | 329 |
| 4.37.26 | TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString | 330 |
| 4.38    | TBasicAction                             | 330 |
| 4.38.1  | Description                              | 330 |
| 4.38.2  | Method overview                          | 330 |
| 4.38.3  | Property overview                        | 330 |
| 4.38.4  | TBasicAction.Create                      | 330 |
| 4.38.5  | TBasicAction.Destroy                     | 331 |
| 4.38.6  | TBasicAction.HandlesTarget               | 331 |
| 4.38.7  | TBasicAction.UpdateTarget                | 331 |
| 4.38.8  | TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget               | 332 |
| 4.38.9  | TBasicAction.Execute                     | 332 |
| 4.38.10 | TBasicAction.RegisterChanges             | 332 |
| 4.38.11 | TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges           | 332 |
| 4.38.12 | TBasicAction.Update                      | 333 |
| 4.38.13 | TBasicAction.ActionComponent             | 333 |
| 4.38.14 | TBasicAction.OnExecute                   | 333 |
| 4.38.15 | TBasicAction.OnUpdate                    | 334 |
| 4.39    | TBasicActionLink                         | 334 |
| 4.39.1  | Description                              | 334 |
| 4.39.2  | Method overview                          | 334 |
| 4.39.3  | Property overview                        | 334 |
| 4.39.4  | TBasicActionLink.Create                  | 334 |
| 4.39.5  | TBasicActionLink.Destroy                 | 335 |
| 4.39.6  | TBasicActionLink.Execute                 | 335 |
| 4.39.7  | TBasicActionLink.Update                  | 335 |
| 4.39.8  | TBasicActionLink.Action                  | 336 |
| 4.39.9  | TBasicActionLink.OnChange                | 336 |
| 4.40    | TBinaryObjectReader                      | 336 |
| 4.40.1  | Description                              | 336 |
| 4.40.2  | Method overview                          | 337 |
| 4.40.3  | TBinaryObjectReader.Create               | 337 |
| 4.40.4  | TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy              | 337 |
| 4.40.5  | TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue            | 338 |
| 4.40.6  | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue            | 338 |
| 4.40.7  | TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent   | 338 |
| 4.40.8  | TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent       | 338 |
| 4.40.9  | TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty        | 339 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 4.40.10 | TBinaryObjectReader.Read . . . . .              | 339 |
| 4.40.11 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary . . . . .        | 339 |
| 4.40.12 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat . . . . .         | 339 |
| 4.40.13 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle . . . . .        | 339 |
| 4.40.14 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate . . . . .          | 340 |
| 4.40.15 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadCurrency . . . . .      | 340 |
| 4.40.16 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent . . . . .         | 340 |
| 4.40.17 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8 . . . . .          | 340 |
| 4.40.18 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16 . . . . .         | 340 |
| 4.40.19 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32 . . . . .         | 341 |
| 4.40.20 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64 . . . . .         | 341 |
| 4.40.21 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet . . . . .           | 341 |
| 4.40.22 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature . . . . .     | 341 |
| 4.40.23 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr . . . . .           | 342 |
| 4.40.24 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString . . . . .        | 342 |
| 4.40.25 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadWideString . . . . .    | 342 |
| 4.40.26 | TBinaryObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString . . . . . | 342 |
| 4.40.27 | TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent . . . . .     | 343 |
| 4.40.28 | TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue . . . . .         | 343 |
| 4.41    | TBinaryObjectWriter . . . . .                   | 343 |
| 4.41.1  | Description . . . . .                           | 343 |
| 4.41.2  | Method overview . . . . .                       | 344 |
| 4.41.3  | TBinaryObjectWriter.Create . . . . .            | 344 |
| 4.41.4  | TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy . . . . .           | 344 |
| 4.41.5  | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature . . . . .    | 344 |
| 4.41.6  | TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer . . . . .       | 345 |
| 4.41.7  | TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection . . . . .   | 345 |
| 4.41.8  | TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent . . . . .    | 345 |
| 4.41.9  | TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList . . . . .         | 345 |
| 4.41.10 | TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList . . . . .           | 345 |
| 4.41.11 | TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty . . . . .     | 346 |
| 4.41.12 | TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty . . . . .       | 346 |
| 4.41.13 | TBinaryObjectWriter.Write . . . . .             | 346 |
| 4.41.14 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary . . . . .       | 346 |
| 4.41.15 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean . . . . .      | 346 |
| 4.41.16 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat . . . . .        | 346 |
| 4.41.17 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle . . . . .       | 347 |
| 4.41.18 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate . . . . .         | 347 |
| 4.41.19 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency . . . . .     | 347 |
| 4.41.20 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent . . . . .        | 347 |

|         |                                     |     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 4.41.21 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger    | 347 |
| 4.41.22 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64     | 347 |
| 4.41.23 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName | 348 |
| 4.41.24 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet        | 348 |
| 4.41.25 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString     | 348 |
| 4.41.26 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString     | 348 |
| 4.41.27 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString     | 348 |
| 4.41.28 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString     | 348 |
| 4.41.29 | TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString     | 349 |
| 4.42    | TBits                               | 349 |
| 4.42.1  | Description                         | 349 |
| 4.42.2  | Method overview                     | 349 |
| 4.42.3  | Property overview                   | 349 |
| 4.42.4  | TBits.Create                        | 350 |
| 4.42.5  | TBits.Destroy                       | 350 |
| 4.42.6  | TBits.GetFSize                      | 350 |
| 4.42.7  | TBits.SetOn                         | 350 |
| 4.42.8  | TBits.Clear                         | 351 |
| 4.42.9  | TBits.Clearall                      | 351 |
| 4.42.10 | TBits.CopyBits                      | 351 |
| 4.42.11 | TBits.AndBits                       | 351 |
| 4.42.12 | TBits.OrBits                        | 352 |
| 4.42.13 | TBits.XorBits                       | 352 |
| 4.42.14 | TBits.NotBits                       | 352 |
| 4.42.15 | TBits.Get                           | 353 |
| 4.42.16 | TBits.Grow                          | 353 |
| 4.42.17 | TBits.Equals                        | 353 |
| 4.42.18 | TBits.SetIndex                      | 353 |
| 4.42.19 | TBits.FindFirstBit                  | 354 |
| 4.42.20 | TBits.FindNextBit                   | 354 |
| 4.42.21 | TBits.FindPrevBit                   | 354 |
| 4.42.22 | TBits.OpenBit                       | 355 |
| 4.42.23 | TBits.Bits                          | 355 |
| 4.42.24 | TBits.Size                          | 355 |
| 4.43    | TBytesStream                        | 355 |
| 4.43.1  | Description                         | 355 |
| 4.43.2  | Method overview                     | 356 |
| 4.43.3  | Property overview                   | 356 |
| 4.43.4  | TBytesStream.Create                 | 356 |
| 4.43.5  | TBytesStream.Bytes                  | 356 |

|         |                                  |     |
|---------|----------------------------------|-----|
| 4.44    | TCollection                      | 356 |
| 4.44.1  | Description                      | 356 |
| 4.44.2  | Method overview                  | 357 |
| 4.44.3  | Property overview                | 357 |
| 4.44.4  | TCollection.Create               | 357 |
| 4.44.5  | TCollection.Destroy              | 357 |
| 4.44.6  | TCollection.Owner                | 358 |
| 4.44.7  | TCollection.Add                  | 358 |
| 4.44.8  | TCollection.Assign               | 358 |
| 4.44.9  | TCollection.BeginUpdate          | 358 |
| 4.44.10 | TCollection.Clear                | 359 |
| 4.44.11 | TCollection.EndUpdate            | 359 |
| 4.44.12 | TCollection.Delete               | 359 |
| 4.44.13 | TCollection.GetEnumerator        | 360 |
| 4.44.14 | TCollection.GetNamePath          | 360 |
| 4.44.15 | TCollection.Insert               | 360 |
| 4.44.16 | TCollection.FindItemID           | 360 |
| 4.44.17 | TCollection.Exchange             | 361 |
| 4.44.18 | TCollection.Move                 | 361 |
| 4.44.19 | TCollection.Sort                 | 361 |
| 4.44.20 | TCollection.Count                | 361 |
| 4.44.21 | TCollection.ItemClass            | 362 |
| 4.44.22 | TCollection.Items                | 362 |
| 4.45    | TCollectionEnumerator            | 362 |
| 4.45.1  | Description                      | 362 |
| 4.45.2  | Method overview                  | 362 |
| 4.45.3  | Property overview                | 363 |
| 4.45.4  | TCollectionEnumerator.Create     | 363 |
| 4.45.5  | TCollectionEnumerator.GetCurrent | 363 |
| 4.45.6  | TCollectionEnumerator.MoveNext   | 363 |
| 4.45.7  | TCollectionEnumerator.Current    | 363 |
| 4.46    | TCollectionItem                  | 364 |
| 4.46.1  | Description                      | 364 |
| 4.46.2  | Method overview                  | 364 |
| 4.46.3  | Property overview                | 364 |
| 4.46.4  | TCollectionItem.Create           | 364 |
| 4.46.5  | TCollectionItem.Destroy          | 364 |
| 4.46.6  | TCollectionItem.GetNamePath      | 365 |
| 4.46.7  | TCollectionItem.Collection       | 365 |
| 4.46.8  | TCollectionItem.ID               | 365 |

|         |                                   |     |
|---------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 4.46.9  | TCollectionItem.Index             | 366 |
| 4.46.10 | TCollectionItem.DisplayName       | 366 |
| 4.47    | TComponent                        | 366 |
| 4.47.1  | Description                       | 366 |
| 4.47.2  | Interfaces overview               | 367 |
| 4.47.3  | Method overview                   | 367 |
| 4.47.4  | Property overview                 | 367 |
| 4.47.5  | TComponent.Notification           | 368 |
| 4.47.6  | TComponent.WriteState             | 368 |
| 4.47.7  | TComponent.Create                 | 368 |
| 4.47.8  | TComponent.Destroy                | 369 |
| 4.47.9  | TComponent.BeforeDestruction      | 369 |
| 4.47.10 | TComponent.DestroyComponents      | 369 |
| 4.47.11 | TComponent.Destroying             | 369 |
| 4.47.12 | TComponent.ExecuteAction          | 370 |
| 4.47.13 | TComponent.FindComponent          | 370 |
| 4.47.14 | TComponent.FreeNotification       | 370 |
| 4.47.15 | TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification | 370 |
| 4.47.16 | TComponent.FreeOnRelease          | 371 |
| 4.47.17 | TComponent.GetEnumerator          | 371 |
| 4.47.18 | TComponent.GetNamePath            | 371 |
| 4.47.19 | TComponent.GetParentComponent     | 371 |
| 4.47.20 | TComponent.HasParent              | 372 |
| 4.47.21 | TComponent.InsertComponent        | 372 |
| 4.47.22 | TComponent.RemoveComponent        | 372 |
| 4.47.23 | TComponent.SafeCallException      | 372 |
| 4.47.24 | TComponent.SetSubComponent        | 373 |
| 4.47.25 | TComponent.UpdateAction           | 373 |
| 4.47.26 | TComponent.IsImplementorOf        | 373 |
| 4.47.27 | TComponent.ReferenceInterface     | 373 |
| 4.47.28 | TComponent.ComObject              | 374 |
| 4.47.29 | TComponent.Components             | 374 |
| 4.47.30 | TComponent.ComponentCount         | 374 |
| 4.47.31 | TComponent.ComponentIndex         | 374 |
| 4.47.32 | TComponent.ComponentState         | 375 |
| 4.47.33 | TComponent.ComponentStyle         | 375 |
| 4.47.34 | TComponent.DesignInfo             | 375 |
| 4.47.35 | TComponent.Owner                  | 376 |
| 4.47.36 | TComponent.VCLComObject           | 376 |
| 4.47.37 | TComponent.Name                   | 376 |

|         |                                  |     |
|---------|----------------------------------|-----|
| 4.47.38 | TComponent.Tag                   | 376 |
| 4.48    | TComponentEnumerator             | 377 |
| 4.48.1  | Description                      | 377 |
| 4.48.2  | Method overview                  | 377 |
| 4.48.3  | Property overview                | 377 |
| 4.48.4  | TComponentEnumerator.Create      | 377 |
| 4.48.5  | TComponentEnumerator.GetCurrent  | 377 |
| 4.48.6  | TComponentEnumerator.MoveNext    | 378 |
| 4.48.7  | TComponentEnumerator.Current     | 378 |
| 4.49    | TCustomMemoryStream              | 378 |
| 4.49.1  | Description                      | 378 |
| 4.49.2  | Method overview                  | 378 |
| 4.49.3  | Property overview                | 379 |
| 4.49.4  | TCustomMemoryStream.Read         | 379 |
| 4.49.5  | TCustomMemoryStream.Seek         | 379 |
| 4.49.6  | TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream | 379 |
| 4.49.7  | TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile   | 380 |
| 4.49.8  | TCustomMemoryStream.Memory       | 380 |
| 4.50    | TDataModule                      | 380 |
| 4.50.1  | Description                      | 380 |
| 4.50.2  | Method overview                  | 381 |
| 4.50.3  | Property overview                | 381 |
| 4.50.4  | TDataModule.Create               | 381 |
| 4.50.5  | TDataModule.CreateNew            | 381 |
| 4.50.6  | TDataModule.Destroy              | 382 |
| 4.50.7  | TDataModule.AfterConstruction    | 382 |
| 4.50.8  | TDataModule.BeforeDestruction    | 382 |
| 4.50.9  | TDataModule.DesignOffset         | 382 |
| 4.50.10 | TDataModule.DesignSize           | 383 |
| 4.50.11 | TDataModule.DesignPPI            | 383 |
| 4.50.12 | TDataModule.OnCreate             | 383 |
| 4.50.13 | TDataModule.OnDestroy            | 383 |
| 4.50.14 | TDataModule.OldCreateOrder       | 384 |
| 4.51    | TFile                            | 384 |
| 4.51.1  | Description                      | 384 |
| 4.51.2  | Method overview                  | 384 |
| 4.51.3  | Property overview                | 384 |
| 4.51.4  | TFile.DefineProperty             | 384 |
| 4.51.5  | TFile.DefineBinaryProperty       | 385 |
| 4.51.6  | TFile.FlushBuffer                | 385 |

|         |                       |     |
|---------|-----------------------|-----|
| 4.51.7  | TFile.Root            | 385 |
| 4.51.8  | TFile.LookupRoot      | 385 |
| 4.51.9  | TFile.Ancestor        | 386 |
| 4.51.10 | TFile.IgnoreChildren  | 386 |
| 4.52    | TFileStream           | 386 |
| 4.52.1  | Description           | 386 |
| 4.52.2  | Method overview       | 386 |
| 4.52.3  | Property overview     | 386 |
| 4.52.4  | TFileStream.Create    | 387 |
| 4.52.5  | TFileStream.Destroy   | 387 |
| 4.52.6  | TFileStream.FileName  | 388 |
| 4.53    | TFPList               | 388 |
| 4.53.1  | Description           | 388 |
| 4.53.2  | Method overview       | 388 |
| 4.53.3  | Property overview     | 389 |
| 4.53.4  | TFPList.Destroy       | 389 |
| 4.53.5  | TFPList.AddList       | 389 |
| 4.53.6  | TFPList.Add           | 389 |
| 4.53.7  | TFPList.Clear         | 389 |
| 4.53.8  | TFPList.Delete        | 390 |
| 4.53.9  | TFPList.Error         | 390 |
| 4.53.10 | TFPList.Exchange      | 390 |
| 4.53.11 | TFPList.Expand        | 390 |
| 4.53.12 | TFPList.Extract       | 391 |
| 4.53.13 | TFPList.First         | 391 |
| 4.53.14 | TFPList.GetEnumerator | 391 |
| 4.53.15 | TFPList.IndexOf       | 391 |
| 4.53.16 | TFPList.IndexOfItem   | 392 |
| 4.53.17 | TFPList.Insert        | 392 |
| 4.53.18 | TFPList.Last          | 392 |
| 4.53.19 | TFPList.Move          | 392 |
| 4.53.20 | TFPList.Assign        | 393 |
| 4.53.21 | TFPList.Remove        | 393 |
| 4.53.22 | TFPList.Pack          | 393 |
| 4.53.23 | TFPList.Sort          | 393 |
| 4.53.24 | TFPList.ForEachCall   | 394 |
| 4.53.25 | TFPList.Capacity      | 394 |
| 4.53.26 | TFPList.Count         | 394 |
| 4.53.27 | TFPList.Items         | 395 |
| 4.53.28 | TFPList.List          | 395 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 4.54    | TFPListEnumerator                       | 395 |
| 4.54.1  | Description                             | 395 |
| 4.54.2  | Method overview                         | 395 |
| 4.54.3  | Property overview                       | 395 |
| 4.54.4  | TFPListEnumerator.Create                | 395 |
| 4.54.5  | TFPListEnumerator.GetCurrent            | 396 |
| 4.54.6  | TFPListEnumerator.MoveNext              | 396 |
| 4.54.7  | TFPListEnumerator.Current               | 396 |
| 4.55    | THandleStream                           | 397 |
| 4.55.1  | Description                             | 397 |
| 4.55.2  | Method overview                         | 397 |
| 4.55.3  | Property overview                       | 397 |
| 4.55.4  | THandleStream.Create                    | 397 |
| 4.55.5  | THandleStream.Read                      | 397 |
| 4.55.6  | THandleStream.Write                     | 398 |
| 4.55.7  | THandleStream.Seek                      | 398 |
| 4.55.8  | THandleStream.Handle                    | 398 |
| 4.56    | TInterfacedPersistent                   | 399 |
| 4.56.1  | Description                             | 399 |
| 4.56.2  | Interfaces overview                     | 399 |
| 4.56.3  | Method overview                         | 399 |
| 4.56.4  | TInterfacedPersistent.QueryInterface    | 399 |
| 4.56.5  | TInterfacedPersistent.AfterConstruction | 399 |
| 4.57    | TInterfaceList                          | 399 |
| 4.57.1  | Description                             | 399 |
| 4.57.2  | Interfaces overview                     | 400 |
| 4.57.3  | Method overview                         | 400 |
| 4.57.4  | Property overview                       | 400 |
| 4.57.5  | TInterfaceList.Create                   | 400 |
| 4.57.6  | TInterfaceList.Destroy                  | 400 |
| 4.57.7  | TInterfaceList.Clear                    | 401 |
| 4.57.8  | TInterfaceList.Delete                   | 401 |
| 4.57.9  | TInterfaceList.Exchange                 | 401 |
| 4.57.10 | TInterfaceList.First                    | 401 |
| 4.57.11 | TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator            | 402 |
| 4.57.12 | TInterfaceList.IndexOf                  | 402 |
| 4.57.13 | TInterfaceList.Add                      | 402 |
| 4.57.14 | TInterfaceList.Insert                   | 402 |
| 4.57.15 | TInterfaceList.Last                     | 403 |
| 4.57.16 | TInterfaceList.Remove                   | 403 |

|         |                                     |     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 4.57.17 | TInterfaceList.Lock                 | 403 |
| 4.57.18 | TInterfaceList.Unlock               | 403 |
| 4.57.19 | TInterfaceList.Expand               | 404 |
| 4.57.20 | TInterfaceList.Capacity             | 404 |
| 4.57.21 | TInterfaceList.Count                | 404 |
| 4.57.22 | TInterfaceList.Items                | 404 |
| 4.58    | TInterfaceListEnumerator            | 405 |
| 4.58.1  | Description                         | 405 |
| 4.58.2  | Method overview                     | 405 |
| 4.58.3  | Property overview                   | 405 |
| 4.58.4  | TInterfaceListEnumerator.Create     | 405 |
| 4.58.5  | TInterfaceListEnumerator.GetCurrent | 405 |
| 4.58.6  | TInterfaceListEnumerator.MoveNext   | 406 |
| 4.58.7  | TInterfaceListEnumerator.Current    | 406 |
| 4.59    | TList                               | 406 |
| 4.59.1  | Description                         | 406 |
| 4.59.2  | Interfaces overview                 | 406 |
| 4.59.3  | Method overview                     | 407 |
| 4.59.4  | Property overview                   | 407 |
| 4.59.5  | TList.Create                        | 407 |
| 4.59.6  | TList.Destroy                       | 407 |
| 4.59.7  | TList.FPOAttachObserver             | 408 |
| 4.59.8  | TList.FPODetachObserver             | 408 |
| 4.59.9  | TList.FPONotifyObservers            | 408 |
| 4.59.10 | TList.AddList                       | 409 |
| 4.59.11 | TList.Add                           | 409 |
| 4.59.12 | TList.Clear                         | 409 |
| 4.59.13 | TList.Delete                        | 409 |
| 4.59.14 | TList.Error                         | 410 |
| 4.59.15 | TList.Exchange                      | 410 |
| 4.59.16 | TList.Expand                        | 410 |
| 4.59.17 | TList.Extract                       | 410 |
| 4.59.18 | TList.First                         | 411 |
| 4.59.19 | TList.GetEnumerator                 | 411 |
| 4.59.20 | TList.IndexOf                       | 411 |
| 4.59.21 | TList.Insert                        | 411 |
| 4.59.22 | TList.Last                          | 412 |
| 4.59.23 | TList.Move                          | 412 |
| 4.59.24 | TList.Assign                        | 412 |
| 4.59.25 | TList.Remove                        | 412 |

|         |                              |     |
|---------|------------------------------|-----|
| 4.59.26 | TList.Pack                   | 413 |
| 4.59.27 | TList.Sort                   | 413 |
| 4.59.28 | TList.Capacity               | 413 |
| 4.59.29 | TList.Count                  | 414 |
| 4.59.30 | TList.Items                  | 414 |
| 4.59.31 | TList.List                   | 414 |
| 4.60    | TListEnumerator              | 414 |
| 4.60.1  | Description                  | 414 |
| 4.60.2  | Method overview              | 414 |
| 4.60.3  | Property overview            | 415 |
| 4.60.4  | TListEnumerator.Create       | 415 |
| 4.60.5  | TListEnumerator.GetCurrent   | 415 |
| 4.60.6  | TListEnumerator.MoveNext     | 415 |
| 4.60.7  | TListEnumerator.Current      | 415 |
| 4.61    | TMemoryStream                | 416 |
| 4.61.1  | Description                  | 416 |
| 4.61.2  | Method overview              | 416 |
| 4.61.3  | TMemoryStream.Destroy        | 416 |
| 4.61.4  | TMemoryStream.Clear          | 416 |
| 4.61.5  | TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream | 416 |
| 4.61.6  | TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile   | 417 |
| 4.61.7  | TMemoryStream.SetSize        | 417 |
| 4.61.8  | TMemoryStream.Write          | 417 |
| 4.62    | TOwnedCollection             | 418 |
| 4.62.1  | Description                  | 418 |
| 4.62.2  | Method overview              | 418 |
| 4.62.3  | TOwnedCollection.Create      | 418 |
| 4.63    | TOwnerStream                 | 418 |
| 4.63.1  | Description                  | 418 |
| 4.63.2  | Method overview              | 419 |
| 4.63.3  | Property overview            | 419 |
| 4.63.4  | TOwnerStream.Create          | 419 |
| 4.63.5  | TOwnerStream.Destroy         | 419 |
| 4.63.6  | TOwnerStream.Source          | 419 |
| 4.63.7  | TOwnerStream.SourceOwner     | 420 |
| 4.64    | TParser                      | 420 |
| 4.64.1  | Description                  | 420 |
| 4.64.2  | Method overview              | 420 |
| 4.64.3  | Property overview            | 421 |
| 4.64.4  | TParser.Create               | 421 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 4.64.5  | <a href="#">TParser.Destroy</a>                 | 421 |
| 4.64.6  | <a href="#">TParser.CheckToken</a>              | 421 |
| 4.64.7  | <a href="#">TParser.CheckTokenSymbol</a>        | 421 |
| 4.64.8  | <a href="#">TParser.Error</a>                   | 422 |
| 4.64.9  | <a href="#">TParser.ErrorFmt</a>                | 422 |
| 4.64.10 | <a href="#">TParser.ErrorStr</a>                | 422 |
| 4.64.11 | <a href="#">TParser.HexToBinary</a>             | 422 |
| 4.64.12 | <a href="#">TParser.NextToken</a>               | 423 |
| 4.64.13 | <a href="#">TParser.SourcePos</a>               | 423 |
| 4.64.14 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenComponentIdent</a>     | 423 |
| 4.64.15 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenFloat</a>              | 424 |
| 4.64.16 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenInt</a>                | 424 |
| 4.64.17 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenString</a>             | 424 |
| 4.64.18 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenWideString</a>         | 425 |
| 4.64.19 | <a href="#">TParser.TokenSymbolIs</a>           | 425 |
| 4.64.20 | <a href="#">TParser.FloatType</a>               | 425 |
| 4.64.21 | <a href="#">TParser.SourceLine</a>              | 426 |
| 4.64.22 | <a href="#">TParser.Token</a>                   | 426 |
| 4.65    | <a href="#">TPersistent</a>                     | 426 |
| 4.65.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 426 |
| 4.65.2  | <a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>             | 427 |
| 4.65.3  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 427 |
| 4.65.4  | <a href="#">TPersistent.Destroy</a>             | 427 |
| 4.65.5  | <a href="#">TPersistent.Assign</a>              | 427 |
| 4.65.6  | <a href="#">TPersistent.FPOAttachObserver</a>   | 428 |
| 4.65.7  | <a href="#">TPersistent.FPODetachObserver</a>   | 428 |
| 4.65.8  | <a href="#">TPersistent.FPONotifyObservers</a>  | 428 |
| 4.65.9  | <a href="#">TPersistent.GetNamePath</a>         | 428 |
| 4.66    | <a href="#">TProxyStream</a>                    | 429 |
| 4.66.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 429 |
| 4.66.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 429 |
| 4.66.3  | <a href="#">TProxyStream.Create</a>             | 429 |
| 4.66.4  | <a href="#">TProxyStream.Read</a>               | 429 |
| 4.66.5  | <a href="#">TProxyStream.Write</a>              | 429 |
| 4.66.6  | <a href="#">TProxyStream.Seek</a>               | 429 |
| 4.66.7  | <a href="#">TProxyStream.Check</a>              | 430 |
| 4.67    | <a href="#">TRawByteStringStream</a>            | 430 |
| 4.67.1  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 430 |
| 4.67.2  | <a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.Create</a>     | 430 |
| 4.67.3  | <a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.DataString</a> | 430 |

|         |  |     |
|---------|--|-----|
| 4.67.4  | <a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.ReadString</a>  | 430 |
| 4.67.5  | <a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.WriteString</a> | 430 |
| 4.68    | <a href="#">TReader</a>                          | 430 |
| 4.68.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                      | 430 |
| 4.68.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                  | 431 |
| 4.68.3  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>                | 432 |
| 4.68.4  | <a href="#">TReader.Create</a>                   | 432 |
| 4.68.5  | <a href="#">TReader.Destroy</a>                  | 432 |
| 4.68.6  | <a href="#">TReader.FlushBuffer</a>              | 432 |
| 4.68.7  | <a href="#">TReader.BeginReferences</a>          | 433 |
| 4.68.8  | <a href="#">TReader.CheckValue</a>               | 433 |
| 4.68.9  | <a href="#">TReader.DefineProperty</a>           | 433 |
| 4.68.10 | <a href="#">TReader.DefineBinaryProperty</a>     | 433 |
| 4.68.11 | <a href="#">TReader.EndOfList</a>                | 433 |
| 4.68.12 | <a href="#">TReader.EndReferences</a>            | 434 |
| 4.68.13 | <a href="#">TReader.FixupReferences</a>          | 434 |
| 4.68.14 | <a href="#">TReader.NextValue</a>                | 434 |
| 4.68.15 | <a href="#">TReader.Read</a>                     | 434 |
| 4.68.16 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadBoolean</a>              | 434 |
| 4.68.17 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadChar</a>                 | 435 |
| 4.68.18 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadWideChar</a>             | 435 |
| 4.68.19 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadUnicodeChar</a>          | 435 |
| 4.68.20 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadCollection</a>           | 435 |
| 4.68.21 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadComponent</a>            | 435 |
| 4.68.22 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadComponents</a>           | 436 |
| 4.68.23 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadFloat</a>                | 436 |
| 4.68.24 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadSingle</a>               | 436 |
| 4.68.25 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadDate</a>                 | 436 |
| 4.68.26 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadCurrency</a>             | 436 |
| 4.68.27 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadIdent</a>                | 437 |
| 4.68.28 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadInteger</a>              | 437 |
| 4.68.29 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadInt64</a>                | 437 |
| 4.68.30 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadSet</a>                  | 437 |
| 4.68.31 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadListBegin</a>            | 437 |
| 4.68.32 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadListEnd</a>              | 438 |
| 4.68.33 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadRootComponent</a>        | 438 |
| 4.68.34 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadVariant</a>              | 438 |
| 4.68.35 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadSignature</a>            | 438 |
| 4.68.36 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadString</a>               | 438 |
| 4.68.37 | <a href="#">TReader.ReadWideString</a>           | 439 |

|         |                              |     |
|---------|------------------------------|-----|
| 4.68.38 | TReader.ReadUnicodeString    | 439 |
| 4.68.39 | TReader.ReadValue            | 439 |
| 4.68.40 | TReader.CopyValue            | 439 |
| 4.68.41 | TReader.Driver               | 439 |
| 4.68.42 | TReader.Owner                | 440 |
| 4.68.43 | TReader.Parent               | 440 |
| 4.68.44 | TReader.OnError              | 440 |
| 4.68.45 | TReader.OnPropertyNotFound   | 440 |
| 4.68.46 | TReader.OnFindMethod         | 441 |
| 4.68.47 | TReader.OnSetMethodProperty  | 441 |
| 4.68.48 | TReader.OnSetName            | 441 |
| 4.68.49 | TReader.OnReferenceName      | 441 |
| 4.68.50 | TReader.OnAncestorNotFound   | 441 |
| 4.68.51 | TReader.OnCreateComponent    | 442 |
| 4.68.52 | TReader.OnFindComponentClass | 442 |
| 4.68.53 | TReader.OnReadStringProperty | 442 |
| 4.69    | TRecall                      | 442 |
| 4.69.1  | Description                  | 442 |
| 4.69.2  | Method overview              | 443 |
| 4.69.3  | Property overview            | 443 |
| 4.69.4  | TRecall.Create               | 443 |
| 4.69.5  | TRecall.Destroy              | 443 |
| 4.69.6  | TRecall.Store                | 443 |
| 4.69.7  | TRecall.Forget               | 444 |
| 4.69.8  | TRecall.Reference            | 444 |
| 4.70    | TResourceStream              | 444 |
| 4.70.1  | Description                  | 444 |
| 4.70.2  | Method overview              | 444 |
| 4.70.3  | TResourceStream.Create       | 445 |
| 4.70.4  | TResourceStream.CreateFromID | 445 |
| 4.70.5  | TResourceStream.Destroy      | 445 |
| 4.71    | TStream                      | 445 |
| 4.71.1  | Description                  | 445 |
| 4.71.2  | Method overview              | 446 |
| 4.71.3  | Property overview            | 446 |
| 4.71.4  | TStream.Read                 | 446 |
| 4.71.5  | TStream.Write                | 447 |
| 4.71.6  | TStream.Seek                 | 447 |
| 4.71.7  | TStream.ReadBuffer           | 448 |
| 4.71.8  | TStream.WriteBuffer          | 448 |

|         |                             |     |
|---------|-----------------------------|-----|
| 4.71.9  | TStream.CopyFrom            | 449 |
| 4.71.10 | TStream.ReadComponent       | 449 |
| 4.71.11 | TStream.ReadComponentRes    | 449 |
| 4.71.12 | TStream.WriteComponent      | 450 |
| 4.71.13 | TStream.WriteComponentRes   | 450 |
| 4.71.14 | TStream.WriteDescendent     | 450 |
| 4.71.15 | TStream.WriteDescendentRes  | 450 |
| 4.71.16 | TStream.WriteResourceHeader | 451 |
| 4.71.17 | TStream.FixupResourceHeader | 451 |
| 4.71.18 | TStream.ReadResHeader       | 451 |
| 4.71.19 | TStream.ReadByte            | 451 |
| 4.71.20 | TStream.ReadWord            | 452 |
| 4.71.21 | TStream.ReadDWord           | 452 |
| 4.71.22 | TStream.ReadQWord           | 452 |
| 4.71.23 | TStream.ReadAnsiString      | 453 |
| 4.71.24 | TStream.WriteByte           | 453 |
| 4.71.25 | TStream.WriteWord           | 453 |
| 4.71.26 | TStream.WriteDWord          | 453 |
| 4.71.27 | TStream.WriteQWord          | 454 |
| 4.71.28 | TStream.WriteAnsiString     | 454 |
| 4.71.29 | TStream.Position            | 454 |
| 4.71.30 | TStream.Size                | 455 |
| 4.72    | TStreamAdapter              | 455 |
| 4.72.1  | Description                 | 455 |
| 4.72.2  | Interfaces overview         | 455 |
| 4.72.3  | Method overview             | 455 |
| 4.72.4  | Property overview           | 456 |
| 4.72.5  | TStreamAdapter.Create       | 456 |
| 4.72.6  | TStreamAdapter.Destroy      | 456 |
| 4.72.7  | TStreamAdapter.Read         | 456 |
| 4.72.8  | TStreamAdapter.Write        | 456 |
| 4.72.9  | TStreamAdapter.Seek         | 457 |
| 4.72.10 | TStreamAdapter.SetSize      | 457 |
| 4.72.11 | TStreamAdapter.CopyTo       | 457 |
| 4.72.12 | TStreamAdapter.Commit       | 458 |
| 4.72.13 | TStreamAdapter.Revert       | 458 |
| 4.72.14 | TStreamAdapter.LockRegion   | 458 |
| 4.72.15 | TStreamAdapter.UnlockRegion | 458 |
| 4.72.16 | TStreamAdapter.Stat         | 459 |
| 4.72.17 | TStreamAdapter.Clone        | 459 |

---

|         |                                |     |
|---------|--------------------------------|-----|
| 4.72.18 | TStreamAdapter.Stream          | 459 |
| 4.72.19 | TStreamAdapter.StreamOwnership | 459 |
| 4.73    | TStringList                    | 460 |
| 4.73.1  | Description                    | 460 |
| 4.73.2  | Method overview                | 460 |
| 4.73.3  | Property overview              | 460 |
| 4.73.4  | TStringList.Destroy            | 460 |
| 4.73.5  | TStringList.Add                | 461 |
| 4.73.6  | TStringList.Clear              | 461 |
| 4.73.7  | TStringList.Delete             | 461 |
| 4.73.8  | TStringList.Exchange           | 461 |
| 4.73.9  | TStringList.Find               | 462 |
| 4.73.10 | TStringList.IndexOf            | 462 |
| 4.73.11 | TStringList.Insert             | 462 |
| 4.73.12 | TStringList.Sort               | 462 |
| 4.73.13 | TStringList.CustomSort         | 463 |
| 4.73.14 | TStringList.Duplicates         | 463 |
| 4.73.15 | TStringList.Sorted             | 463 |
| 4.73.16 | TStringList.CaseSensitive      | 464 |
| 4.73.17 | TStringList.OnChange           | 464 |
| 4.73.18 | TStringList.OnChanging         | 464 |
| 4.73.19 | TStringList.OwnsObjects        | 465 |
| 4.73.20 | TStringList.SortStyle          | 465 |
| 4.74    | TStrings                       | 465 |
| 4.74.1  | Description                    | 465 |
| 4.74.2  | Method overview                | 466 |
| 4.74.3  | Property overview              | 467 |
| 4.74.4  | TStrings.Create                | 467 |
| 4.74.5  | TStrings.Destroy               | 468 |
| 4.74.6  | TStrings.ToObjectArray         | 468 |
| 4.74.7  | TStrings.ToStringArray         | 468 |
| 4.74.8  | TStrings.Add                   | 468 |
| 4.74.9  | TStrings.AddObject             | 468 |
| 4.74.10 | TStrings.AddPair               | 469 |
| 4.74.11 | TStrings.AddStrings            | 469 |
| 4.74.12 | TStrings.SetStrings            | 469 |
| 4.74.13 | TStrings.AddText               | 470 |
| 4.74.14 | TStrings.AddCommaText          | 470 |
| 4.74.15 | TStrings.AddDelimitedtext      | 470 |
| 4.74.16 | TStrings.Append                | 470 |

|         |                          |     |
|---------|--------------------------|-----|
| 4.74.17 | TStrings.Assign          | 470 |
| 4.74.18 | TStrings.BeginUpdate     | 471 |
| 4.74.19 | TStrings.Clear           | 471 |
| 4.74.20 | TStrings.Delete          | 471 |
| 4.74.21 | TStrings.EndUpdate       | 472 |
| 4.74.22 | TStrings.Equals          | 472 |
| 4.74.23 | TStrings.Exchange        | 472 |
| 4.74.24 | TStrings.ExtractName     | 473 |
| 4.74.25 | TStrings.Filter          | 473 |
| 4.74.26 | TStrings.Fill            | 473 |
| 4.74.27 | TStrings.ForEach         | 473 |
| 4.74.28 | TStrings.GetEnumerator   | 473 |
| 4.74.29 | TStrings.GetNameValue    | 473 |
| 4.74.30 | TStrings.GetText         | 474 |
| 4.74.31 | TStrings.IndexOf         | 474 |
| 4.74.32 | TStrings.IndexOfName     | 474 |
| 4.74.33 | TStrings.IndexOfObject   | 474 |
| 4.74.34 | TStrings.Insert          | 475 |
| 4.74.35 | TStrings.InsertObject    | 475 |
| 4.74.36 | TStrings.LastIndexOf     | 475 |
| 4.74.37 | TStrings.LoadFromFile    | 476 |
| 4.74.38 | TStrings.LoadFromStream  | 476 |
| 4.74.39 | TStrings.Map             | 476 |
| 4.74.40 | TStrings.Move            | 476 |
| 4.74.41 | TStrings.Pop             | 477 |
| 4.74.42 | TStrings.Reduce          | 477 |
| 4.74.43 | TStrings.Reverse         | 477 |
| 4.74.44 | TStrings.SaveToFile      | 478 |
| 4.74.45 | TStrings.SaveToStream    | 478 |
| 4.74.46 | TStrings.Shift           | 478 |
| 4.74.47 | TStrings.Slice           | 478 |
| 4.74.48 | TStrings.SetText         | 479 |
| 4.74.49 | TStrings.AlwaysQuote     | 479 |
| 4.74.50 | TStrings.Capacity        | 479 |
| 4.74.51 | TStrings.CommaText       | 479 |
| 4.74.52 | TStrings.Count           | 480 |
| 4.74.53 | TStrings.DefaultEncoding | 481 |
| 4.74.54 | TStrings.DelimitedText   | 481 |
| 4.74.55 | TStrings.Delimiter       | 481 |
| 4.74.56 | TStrings.Encoding        | 482 |

---

|         |  |     |
|---------|--|-----|
| 4.74.57 | TStrings.LineBreak                       | 482 |
| 4.74.58 | TStrings.MissingNameValueSeparatorAction | 482 |
| 4.74.59 | TStrings.Names                           | 482 |
| 4.74.60 | TStrings.NameValueSeparator              | 483 |
| 4.74.61 | TStrings.Objects                         | 483 |
| 4.74.62 | TStrings.Options                         | 483 |
| 4.74.63 | TStrings.QuoteChar                       | 484 |
| 4.74.64 | TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak               | 484 |
| 4.74.65 | TStrings.TrailingLineBreak               | 484 |
| 4.74.66 | TStrings.StrictDelimiter                 | 484 |
| 4.74.67 | TStrings.Strings                         | 485 |
| 4.74.68 | TStrings.StringsAdapter                  | 485 |
| 4.74.69 | TStrings.Text                            | 485 |
| 4.74.70 | TStrings.TextLineBreakStyle              | 486 |
| 4.74.71 | TStrings.UseLocale                       | 486 |
| 4.74.72 | TStrings.ValueFromIndex                  | 487 |
| 4.74.73 | TStrings.Values                          | 487 |
| 4.74.74 | TStrings.WriteBOM                        | 487 |
| 4.75    | TStringsEnumerator                       | 488 |
| 4.75.1  | Description                              | 488 |
| 4.75.2  | Method overview                          | 488 |
| 4.75.3  | Property overview                        | 488 |
| 4.75.4  | TStringsEnumerator.Create                | 488 |
| 4.75.5  | TStringsEnumerator.GetCurrent            | 488 |
| 4.75.6  | TStringsEnumerator.MoveNext              | 488 |
| 4.75.7  | TStringsEnumerator.Current               | 489 |
| 4.76    | TStringStream                            | 489 |
| 4.76.1  | Description                              | 489 |
| 4.76.2  | Method overview                          | 489 |
| 4.76.3  | Property overview                        | 490 |
| 4.76.4  | TStringStream.Create                     | 490 |
| 4.76.5  | TStringStream.CreateRaw                  | 490 |
| 4.76.6  | TStringStream.Destroy                    | 490 |
| 4.76.7  | TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString          | 491 |
| 4.76.8  | TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString         | 491 |
| 4.76.9  | TStringStream.ReadAnsiString             | 491 |
| 4.76.10 | TStringStream.WriteAnsiString            | 491 |
| 4.76.11 | TStringStream.ReadString                 | 492 |
| 4.76.12 | TStringStream.WriteString                | 492 |
| 4.76.13 | TStringStream.DataString                 | 492 |

|         |                                 |     |
|---------|---------------------------------|-----|
| 4.76.14 | TStringStream.UnicodeDataString | 492 |
| 4.76.15 | TStringStream.OwnsEncoding      | 493 |
| 4.76.16 | TStringStream.Encoding          | 493 |
| 4.77    | TTextObjectWriter               | 493 |
| 4.77.1  | Description                     | 493 |
| 4.78    | TThread                         | 493 |
| 4.78.1  | Description                     | 493 |
| 4.78.2  | Method overview                 | 494 |
| 4.78.3  | Property overview               | 494 |
| 4.78.4  | TThread.Execute                 | 494 |
| 4.78.5  | TThread.Synchronize             | 495 |
| 4.78.6  | TThread.Queue                   | 495 |
| 4.78.7  | TThread.Create                  | 495 |
| 4.78.8  | TThread.Destroy                 | 495 |
| 4.78.9  | TThread.CreateAnonymousThread   | 496 |
| 4.78.10 | TThread.NameThreadForDebugging  | 496 |
| 4.78.11 | TThread.SetReturn Value         | 496 |
| 4.78.12 | TThread.CheckTerminated         | 496 |
| 4.78.13 | TThread.RemoveQueuedEvents      | 497 |
| 4.78.14 | TThread.SpinWait                | 497 |
| 4.78.15 | TThread.Sleep                   | 497 |
| 4.78.16 | TThread.Yield                   | 498 |
| 4.78.17 | TThread.GetSystemTimes          | 498 |
| 4.78.18 | TThread.GetTickCount            | 498 |
| 4.78.19 | TThread.GetTickCount64          | 498 |
| 4.78.20 | TThread.ExecuteInThread         | 499 |
| 4.78.21 | TThread.AfterConstruction       | 503 |
| 4.78.22 | TThread.Start                   | 503 |
| 4.78.23 | TThread.Resume                  | 504 |
| 4.78.24 | TThread.Suspend                 | 504 |
| 4.78.25 | TThread.Terminate               | 504 |
| 4.78.26 | TThread.WaitFor                 | 505 |
| 4.78.27 | TThread.CurrentThread           | 505 |
| 4.78.28 | TThread.ProcessorCount          | 505 |
| 4.78.29 | TThread.IsSingleProcessor       | 506 |
| 4.78.30 | TThread.FreeOnTerminate         | 506 |
| 4.78.31 | TThread.Handle                  | 506 |
| 4.78.32 | TThread.ExternalThread          | 507 |
| 4.78.33 | TThread.Priority                | 507 |
| 4.78.34 | TThread.Suspended               | 507 |

|         |                              |     |
|---------|------------------------------|-----|
| 4.78.35 | TThread.Finished             | 507 |
| 4.78.36 | TThread.ThreadID             | 508 |
| 4.78.37 | TThread.OnTerminate          | 508 |
| 4.78.38 | TThread.FatalException       | 508 |
| 4.79    | TThreadList                  | 508 |
| 4.79.1  | Description                  | 508 |
| 4.79.2  | Method overview              | 508 |
| 4.79.3  | Property overview            | 509 |
| 4.79.4  | TThreadList.Create           | 509 |
| 4.79.5  | TThreadList.Destroy          | 509 |
| 4.79.6  | TThreadList.Add              | 509 |
| 4.79.7  | TThreadList.Clear            | 509 |
| 4.79.8  | TThreadList.LockList         | 510 |
| 4.79.9  | TThreadList.Remove           | 510 |
| 4.79.10 | TThreadList.UnlockList       | 510 |
| 4.79.11 | TThreadList.Duplicates       | 510 |
| 4.80    | TWriter                      | 511 |
| 4.80.1  | Description                  | 511 |
| 4.80.2  | Method overview              | 511 |
| 4.80.3  | Property overview            | 512 |
| 4.80.4  | TWriter.Create               | 512 |
| 4.80.5  | TWriter.Destroy              | 512 |
| 4.80.6  | TWriter.FlushBuffer          | 512 |
| 4.80.7  | TWriter.DefineProperty       | 512 |
| 4.80.8  | TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty | 513 |
| 4.80.9  | TWriter.Write                | 513 |
| 4.80.10 | TWriter.WriteBoolean         | 513 |
| 4.80.11 | TWriter.WriteCollection      | 513 |
| 4.80.12 | TWriter.WriteComponent       | 513 |
| 4.80.13 | TWriter.WriteChar            | 514 |
| 4.80.14 | TWriter.WriteWideChar        | 514 |
| 4.80.15 | TWriter.WriteDescendent      | 514 |
| 4.80.16 | TWriter.WriteFloat           | 514 |
| 4.80.17 | TWriter.WriteSingle          | 514 |
| 4.80.18 | TWriter.WriteDate            | 515 |
| 4.80.19 | TWriter.WriteCurrency        | 515 |
| 4.80.20 | TWriter.WriteIdent           | 515 |
| 4.80.21 | TWriter.WriteInteger         | 515 |
| 4.80.22 | TWriter.WriteSet             | 515 |
| 4.80.23 | TWriter.WriteListBegin       | 516 |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 4.80.24   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteListEnd</a>           | 516        |
| 4.80.25   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteSignature</a>         | 516        |
| 4.80.26   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteRootComponent</a>     | 516        |
| 4.80.27   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteString</a>            | 516        |
| 4.80.28   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteWideString</a>        | 517        |
| 4.80.29   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteUnicodeString</a>     | 517        |
| 4.80.30   | <a href="#">TWriter.WriteVariant</a>           | 517        |
| 4.80.31   | <a href="#">TWriter.RootAncestor</a>           | 517        |
| 4.80.32   | <a href="#">TWriter.OnFindAncestor</a>         | 517        |
| 4.80.33   | <a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty</a>  | 518        |
| 4.80.34   | <a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty</a>  | 518        |
| 4.80.35   | <a href="#">TWriter.Driver</a>                 | 518        |
| 4.80.36   | <a href="#">TWriter.PropertyPath</a>           | 518        |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>Reference for unit 'clocale'</b>            | <b>519</b> |
| 5.1       | <a href="#">Used units</a>                     | 519        |
| 5.2       | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       | 519        |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Reference for unit 'cmem'</b>               | <b>520</b> |
| 6.1       | <a href="#">Used units</a>                     | 520        |
| 6.2       | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       | 520        |
| 6.3       | <a href="#">Constants, types and variables</a> | 520        |
| 6.3.1     | <a href="#">Constants</a>                      | 520        |
| 6.4       | <a href="#">Procedures and functions</a>       | 520        |
| 6.4.1     | <a href="#">CAlloc</a>                         | 520        |
| 6.4.2     | <a href="#">Free</a>                           | 521        |
| 6.4.3     | <a href="#">Malloc</a>                         | 521        |
| 6.4.4     | <a href="#">ReAlloc</a>                        | 521        |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_de'</b>       | <b>522</b> |
| 7.1       | <a href="#">Used units</a>                     | 522        |
| 7.2       | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       | 522        |
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_es'</b>       | <b>523</b> |
| 8.1       | <a href="#">Used units</a>                     | 523        |
| 8.2       | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       | 523        |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_fr_ca'</b>    | <b>524</b> |
| 9.1       | <a href="#">Used units</a>                     | 524        |
| 9.2       | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       | 524        |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_ja'</b>       | <b>525</b> |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 10.1      | Used units                               | 525        |
| 10.2      | Overview                                 | 525        |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_ko'</b> | <b>526</b> |
| 11.1      | Used units                               | 526        |
| 11.2      | Overview                                 | 526        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_ru'</b> | <b>527</b> |
| 12.1      | Used units                               | 527        |
| 12.2      | Overview                                 | 527        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_sv'</b> | <b>528</b> |
| 13.1      | Used units                               | 528        |
| 13.2      | Overview                                 | 528        |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'collation_zh'</b> | <b>529</b> |
| 14.1      | Used units                               | 529        |
| 14.2      | Overview                                 | 529        |
| <b>15</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1250'</b>       | <b>530</b> |
| 15.1      | Used units                               | 530        |
| 15.2      | Overview                                 | 530        |
| <b>16</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1251'</b>       | <b>531</b> |
| 16.1      | Used units                               | 531        |
| 16.2      | Overview                                 | 531        |
| <b>17</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1252'</b>       | <b>532</b> |
| 17.1      | Used units                               | 532        |
| 17.2      | Overview                                 | 532        |
| <b>18</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1253'</b>       | <b>533</b> |
| 18.1      | Used units                               | 533        |
| 18.2      | Overview                                 | 533        |
| <b>19</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1254'</b>       | <b>534</b> |
| 19.1      | Used units                               | 534        |
| 19.2      | Overview                                 | 534        |
| <b>20</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1255'</b>       | <b>535</b> |
| 20.1      | Used units                               | 535        |
| 20.2      | Overview                                 | 535        |
| <b>21</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1256'</b>       | <b>536</b> |

|           |                                      |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 21.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 536        |
| 21.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 536        |
| <b>22</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1257'</b>   | <b>537</b> |
| 22.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 537        |
| 22.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 537        |
| <b>23</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp1258'</b>   | <b>538</b> |
| 23.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 538        |
| 23.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 538        |
| <b>24</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp437'</b>    | <b>539</b> |
| 24.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 539        |
| 24.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 539        |
| <b>25</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp646'</b>    | <b>540</b> |
| 25.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 540        |
| 25.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 540        |
| <b>26</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp850'</b>    | <b>541</b> |
| 26.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 541        |
| 26.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 541        |
| <b>27</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp852'</b>    | <b>542</b> |
| 27.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 542        |
| 27.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 542        |
| <b>28</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp856'</b>    | <b>543</b> |
| 28.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 543        |
| 28.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 543        |
| <b>29</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp866'</b>    | <b>544</b> |
| 29.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 544        |
| 29.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 544        |
| <b>30</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp874'</b>    | <b>545</b> |
| 30.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 545        |
| 30.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 545        |
| <b>31</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp8859_1'</b> | <b>546</b> |
| 31.1      | Used units . . . . .                 | 546        |
| 31.2      | Overview . . . . .                   | 546        |
| <b>32</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp8859_2'</b> | <b>547</b> |

|           |                                      |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 32.1      | Used units                           | 547        |
| 32.2      | Overview                             | 547        |
| <b>33</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp8859_5'</b> | <b>548</b> |
| 33.1      | Used units                           | 548        |
| 33.2      | Overview                             | 548        |
| <b>34</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp895'</b>    | <b>549</b> |
| 34.1      | Used units                           | 549        |
| 34.2      | Overview                             | 549        |
| <b>35</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp932'</b>    | <b>550</b> |
| 35.1      | Used units                           | 550        |
| 35.2      | Overview                             | 550        |
| <b>36</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp936'</b>    | <b>551</b> |
| 36.1      | Used units                           | 551        |
| 36.2      | Overview                             | 551        |
| <b>37</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp949'</b>    | <b>552</b> |
| 37.1      | Used units                           | 552        |
| 37.2      | Overview                             | 552        |
| <b>38</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cp950'</b>    | <b>553</b> |
| 38.1      | Used units                           | 553        |
| 38.2      | Overview                             | 553        |
| <b>39</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cpall'</b>    | <b>554</b> |
| 39.1      | Used units                           | 555        |
| 39.2      | Overview                             | 556        |
| <b>40</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Crt'</b>      | <b>557</b> |
| 40.1      | Used units                           | 557        |
| 40.2      | Overview                             | 557        |
| 40.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 558        |
| 40.3.1    | Constants                            | 558        |
| 40.3.2    | Types                                | 560        |
| 40.3.3    | Variables                            | 560        |
| 40.4      | Procedures and functions             | 561        |
| 40.4.1    | AssignCrt                            | 561        |
| 40.4.2    | ClrEol                               | 562        |
| 40.4.3    | ClrScr                               | 563        |
| 40.4.4    | cursorbig                            | 563        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 40.4.5    | cursoroff . . . . .                      | 563        |
| 40.4.6    | cursoron . . . . .                       | 564        |
| 40.4.7    | Delay . . . . .                          | 564        |
| 40.4.8    | DelLine . . . . .                        | 564        |
| 40.4.9    | GotoXY . . . . .                         | 565        |
| 40.4.10   | HighVideo . . . . .                      | 566        |
| 40.4.11   | InsLine . . . . .                        | 566        |
| 40.4.12   | KeyPressed . . . . .                     | 567        |
| 40.4.13   | LowVideo . . . . .                       | 567        |
| 40.4.14   | NormVideo . . . . .                      | 568        |
| 40.4.15   | NoSound . . . . .                        | 568        |
| 40.4.16   | ReadKey . . . . .                        | 568        |
| 40.4.17   | Sound . . . . .                          | 569        |
| 40.4.18   | TextBackground . . . . .                 | 570        |
| 40.4.19   | TextColor . . . . .                      | 570        |
| 40.4.20   | TextMode . . . . .                       | 571        |
| 40.4.21   | WhereX . . . . .                         | 571        |
| 40.4.22   | WhereY . . . . .                         | 571        |
| 40.4.23   | Window . . . . .                         | 572        |
| 40.5      | TCharAttr . . . . .                      | 573        |
| <b>41</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cthreads'</b>     | <b>574</b> |
| 41.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 574        |
| 41.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 574        |
| 41.3      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 575        |
| 41.3.1    | SetCThreadManager . . . . .              | 575        |
| <b>42</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'ctypes'</b>       | <b>576</b> |
| 42.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 576        |
| 42.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 576        |
| 42.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 576        |
| 42.3.1    | Types . . . . .                          | 576        |
| <b>43</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'cwstring'</b>     | <b>582</b> |
| 43.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 582        |
| 43.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 582        |
| 43.3      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 582        |
| 43.3.1    | SetCWidestringManager . . . . .          | 582        |
| <b>44</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'DateUtils'</b>    | <b>584</b> |
| 44.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 584        |

---

|         |                                |     |
|---------|--------------------------------|-----|
| 44.2    | Overview                       | 584 |
| 44.3    | Constants, types and variables | 584 |
| 44.3.1  | Constants                      | 584 |
| 44.4    | Procedures and functions       | 587 |
| 44.4.1  | CompareDate                    | 587 |
| 44.4.2  | CompareDateTime                | 588 |
| 44.4.3  | CompareTime                    | 589 |
| 44.4.4  | DateInRange                    | 590 |
| 44.4.5  | DateOf                         | 590 |
| 44.4.6  | DateTimeInRange                | 591 |
| 44.4.7  | DateTimeToDosDateTime          | 591 |
| 44.4.8  | DateTimeToJulianDate           | 591 |
| 44.4.9  | DateTimeToMac                  | 592 |
| 44.4.10 | DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate   | 592 |
| 44.4.11 | DateTimeToUnix                 | 592 |
| 44.4.12 | DateToISO8601                  | 592 |
| 44.4.13 | DayOf                          | 593 |
| 44.4.14 | DayOfTheMonth                  | 593 |
| 44.4.15 | DayOfTheWeek                   | 593 |
| 44.4.16 | DayOfTheYear                   | 594 |
| 44.4.17 | DaysBetween                    | 594 |
| 44.4.18 | DaysInAMonth                   | 595 |
| 44.4.19 | DaysInAYear                    | 596 |
| 44.4.20 | DaysInMonth                    | 596 |
| 44.4.21 | DaysInYear                     | 597 |
| 44.4.22 | DaySpan                        | 597 |
| 44.4.23 | DecodeDateDay                  | 598 |
| 44.4.24 | DecodeDateMonthWeek            | 599 |
| 44.4.25 | DecodeDateTime                 | 599 |
| 44.4.26 | DecodeDateWeek                 | 600 |
| 44.4.27 | DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth         | 601 |
| 44.4.28 | DosDateTimeToDateTime          | 601 |
| 44.4.29 | EncodeDateDay                  | 601 |
| 44.4.30 | EncodeDateMonthWeek            | 602 |
| 44.4.31 | EncodeDateTime                 | 602 |
| 44.4.32 | EncodeDateWeek                 | 603 |
| 44.4.33 | EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth         | 603 |
| 44.4.34 | EncodeTimeInterval             | 603 |
| 44.4.35 | EndOfADay                      | 604 |
| 44.4.36 | EndOfAMonth                    | 604 |

|         |                              |     |
|---------|------------------------------|-----|
| 44.4.37 | EndOfAWeek                   | 605 |
| 44.4.38 | EndOfAYear                   | 606 |
| 44.4.39 | EndOfTheDay                  | 606 |
| 44.4.40 | EndOfTheMonth                | 607 |
| 44.4.41 | EndOfTheWeek                 | 607 |
| 44.4.42 | EndOfTheYear                 | 608 |
| 44.4.43 | HourOf                       | 608 |
| 44.4.44 | HourOfTheDay                 | 608 |
| 44.4.45 | HourOfTheMonth               | 609 |
| 44.4.46 | HourOfTheWeek                | 609 |
| 44.4.47 | HourOfTheYear                | 610 |
| 44.4.48 | HoursBetween                 | 610 |
| 44.4.49 | HourSpan                     | 611 |
| 44.4.50 | IncDay                       | 612 |
| 44.4.51 | IncHour                      | 612 |
| 44.4.52 | IncMilliSecond               | 613 |
| 44.4.53 | IncMinute                    | 613 |
| 44.4.54 | IncSecond                    | 614 |
| 44.4.55 | IncWeek                      | 614 |
| 44.4.56 | IncYear                      | 615 |
| 44.4.57 | InvalidDateDayError          | 615 |
| 44.4.58 | InvalidDateMonthWeekError    | 615 |
| 44.4.59 | InvalidDateTimeError         | 616 |
| 44.4.60 | InvalidDateWeekError         | 616 |
| 44.4.61 | InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError | 617 |
| 44.4.62 | IsInLeapYear                 | 617 |
| 44.4.63 | ISO8601ToDate                | 617 |
| 44.4.64 | ISO8601ToDateDef             | 618 |
| 44.4.65 | IsPM                         | 619 |
| 44.4.66 | IsSameDay                    | 619 |
| 44.4.67 | IsSameMonth                  | 620 |
| 44.4.68 | IsToday                      | 620 |
| 44.4.69 | IsValidDate                  | 620 |
| 44.4.70 | IsValidDateDay               | 621 |
| 44.4.71 | IsValidDateMonthWeek         | 621 |
| 44.4.72 | IsValidDateTime              | 622 |
| 44.4.73 | IsValidDateWeek              | 623 |
| 44.4.74 | IsValidTime                  | 624 |
| 44.4.75 | JulianDateToDateTime         | 624 |
| 44.4.76 | LocalTimeToUniversal         | 625 |

|          |                              |     |
|----------|------------------------------|-----|
| 44.4.77  | MacTimeStampToUnix           | 625 |
| 44.4.78  | MacToDateTime                | 625 |
| 44.4.79  | MilliSecondOf                | 625 |
| 44.4.80  | MilliSecondOfTheDay          | 626 |
| 44.4.81  | MilliSecondOfTheHour         | 626 |
| 44.4.82  | MilliSecondOfTheMinute       | 626 |
| 44.4.83  | MilliSecondOfTheMonth        | 627 |
| 44.4.84  | MilliSecondOfTheSecond       | 627 |
| 44.4.85  | MilliSecondOfTheWeek         | 627 |
| 44.4.86  | MilliSecondOfTheYear         | 628 |
| 44.4.87  | MilliSecondsBetween          | 628 |
| 44.4.88  | MilliSecondSpan              | 629 |
| 44.4.89  | MinuteOf                     | 630 |
| 44.4.90  | MinuteOfTheDay               | 630 |
| 44.4.91  | MinuteOfTheHour              | 630 |
| 44.4.92  | MinuteOfTheMonth             | 631 |
| 44.4.93  | MinuteOfTheWeek              | 631 |
| 44.4.94  | MinuteOfTheYear              | 631 |
| 44.4.95  | MinutesBetween               | 632 |
| 44.4.96  | MinuteSpan                   | 633 |
| 44.4.97  | ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime | 633 |
| 44.4.98  | MonthOf                      | 634 |
| 44.4.99  | MonthOfTheYear               | 634 |
| 44.4.100 | MonthsBetween                | 634 |
| 44.4.101 | MonthSpan                    | 635 |
| 44.4.102 | NthDayOfWeek                 | 636 |
| 44.4.103 | PeriodBetween                | 637 |
| 44.4.104 | PreviousDayOfWeek            | 637 |
| 44.4.105 | RecodeDate                   | 637 |
| 44.4.106 | RecodeDateTime               | 638 |
| 44.4.107 | RecodeDay                    | 639 |
| 44.4.108 | RecodeHour                   | 639 |
| 44.4.109 | RecodeMilliSecond            | 640 |
| 44.4.110 | RecodeMinute                 | 641 |
| 44.4.111 | RecodeMonth                  | 641 |
| 44.4.112 | RecodeSecond                 | 642 |
| 44.4.113 | RecodeTime                   | 643 |
| 44.4.114 | RecodeYear                   | 643 |
| 44.4.115 | SameDate                     | 644 |
| 44.4.116 | SameDateTime                 | 645 |

|          |                                 |     |
|----------|---------------------------------|-----|
| 44.4.117 | SameTime                        | 646 |
| 44.4.118 | ScanDateTime                    | 646 |
| 44.4.119 | SecondOf                        | 647 |
| 44.4.120 | SecondOfTheDay                  | 647 |
| 44.4.121 | SecondOfTheHour                 | 648 |
| 44.4.122 | SecondOfTheMinute               | 648 |
| 44.4.123 | SecondOfTheMonth                | 648 |
| 44.4.124 | SecondOfTheWeek                 | 649 |
| 44.4.125 | SecondOfTheYear                 | 649 |
| 44.4.126 | SecondsBetween                  | 649 |
| 44.4.127 | SecondSpan                      | 650 |
| 44.4.128 | StartOfADay                     | 651 |
| 44.4.129 | StartOfAMonth                   | 652 |
| 44.4.130 | StartOfAWeek                    | 652 |
| 44.4.131 | StartOfAYear                    | 653 |
| 44.4.132 | StartOfTheDay                   | 654 |
| 44.4.133 | StartOfTheMonth                 | 654 |
| 44.4.134 | StartOfTheWeek                  | 655 |
| 44.4.135 | StartOfTheYear                  | 655 |
| 44.4.136 | TimeInRange                     | 656 |
| 44.4.137 | TimeOf                          | 656 |
| 44.4.138 | Today                           | 656 |
| 44.4.139 | Tomorrow                        | 657 |
| 44.4.140 | TryEncodeDateDay                | 657 |
| 44.4.141 | TryEncodeDateMonthWeek          | 658 |
| 44.4.142 | TryEncodeDateTime               | 658 |
| 44.4.143 | TryEncodeDateWeek               | 659 |
| 44.4.144 | TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth       | 660 |
| 44.4.145 | TryEncodeTimeInterval           | 661 |
| 44.4.146 | TryISO8601ToDate                | 661 |
| 44.4.147 | TryISOStrToDate                 | 661 |
| 44.4.148 | TryISOStrToDateTime             | 662 |
| 44.4.149 | TryISOStrToTime                 | 662 |
| 44.4.150 | TryISOTZStrToTZOffset           | 663 |
| 44.4.151 | TryJulianDateToDateTime         | 664 |
| 44.4.152 | TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime | 664 |
| 44.4.153 | TryRecodeDateTime               | 664 |
| 44.4.154 | UniversalTimeToLocal            | 665 |
| 44.4.155 | UnixTimeStampToMac              | 665 |
| 44.4.156 | UnixToDateTime                  | 666 |

|           |                                 |            |
|-----------|---------------------------------|------------|
| 44.4.157  | WeekOf                          | 666        |
| 44.4.158  | WeekOfTheMonth                  | 666        |
| 44.4.159  | WeekOfTheYear                   | 667        |
| 44.4.160  | WeeksBetween                    | 668        |
| 44.4.161  | WeeksInAYear                    | 668        |
| 44.4.162  | WeeksInYear                     | 669        |
| 44.4.163  | WeekSpan                        | 670        |
| 44.4.164  | WithinPastDays                  | 670        |
| 44.4.165  | WithinPastHours                 | 671        |
| 44.4.166  | WithinPastMilliSeconds          | 672        |
| 44.4.167  | WithinPastMinutes               | 673        |
| 44.4.168  | WithinPastMonths                | 674        |
| 44.4.169  | WithinPastSeconds               | 675        |
| 44.4.170  | WithinPastWeeks                 | 676        |
| 44.4.171  | WithinPastYears                 | 677        |
| 44.4.172  | YearOf                          | 678        |
| 44.4.173  | YearsBetween                    | 679        |
| 44.4.174  | YearSpan                        | 680        |
| 44.4.175  | Yesterday                       | 681        |
| <b>45</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Dos'</b> | <b>682</b> |
| 45.1      | Used units                      | 682        |
| 45.2      | Overview                        | 682        |
| 45.3      | System information              | 682        |
| 45.4      | Process handling                | 683        |
| 45.5      | Directory and disk handling     | 683        |
| 45.6      | File handling                   | 684        |
| 45.7      | File open mode constants.       | 684        |
| 45.8      | File attributes                 | 684        |
| 45.9      | Constants, types and variables  | 685        |
| 45.9.1    | Constants                       | 685        |
| 45.9.2    | Types                           | 686        |
| 45.9.3    | Variables                       | 688        |
| 45.10     | Procedures and functions        | 688        |
| 45.10.1   | AddDisk                         | 688        |
| 45.10.2   | DiskFree                        | 689        |
| 45.10.3   | DiskSize                        | 690        |
| 45.10.4   | DosExitCode                     | 690        |
| 45.10.5   | DosVersion                      | 691        |
| 45.10.6   | DTToUnixDate                    | 691        |

|           |                                    |            |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------|
| 45.10.7   | EnvCount                           | 692        |
| 45.10.8   | EnvStr                             | 692        |
| 45.10.9   | Exec                               | 693        |
| 45.10.10  | FExpand                            | 693        |
| 45.10.11  | FindClose                          | 693        |
| 45.10.12  | FindFirst                          | 694        |
| 45.10.13  | FindNext                           | 695        |
| 45.10.14  | FSearch                            | 695        |
| 45.10.15  | FSplit                             | 696        |
| 45.10.16  | GetCBreak                          | 696        |
| 45.10.17  | GetDate                            | 697        |
| 45.10.18  | GetEnv                             | 697        |
| 45.10.19  | GetFAttr                           | 698        |
| 45.10.20  | GetFTime                           | 699        |
| 45.10.21  | GetIntVec                          | 699        |
| 45.10.22  | GetLongName                        | 700        |
| 45.10.23  | GetMsCount                         | 700        |
| 45.10.24  | GetShortName                       | 700        |
| 45.10.25  | GetTime                            | 701        |
| 45.10.26  | GetVerify                          | 701        |
| 45.10.27  | Intr                               | 702        |
| 45.10.28  | Keep                               | 702        |
| 45.10.29  | MSDos                              | 702        |
| 45.10.30  | PackTime                           | 703        |
| 45.10.31  | SetCBreak                          | 703        |
| 45.10.32  | SetDate                            | 704        |
| 45.10.33  | SetFAttr                           | 704        |
| 45.10.34  | SetFTime                           | 705        |
| 45.10.35  | SetIntVec                          | 705        |
| 45.10.36  | SetTime                            | 705        |
| 45.10.37  | SetVerify                          | 705        |
| 45.10.38  | SwapVectors                        | 706        |
| 45.10.39  | UnixDateToDt                       | 706        |
| 45.10.40  | UnpackTime                         | 706        |
| 45.10.41  | weekday                            | 707        |
| 45.11     | DateTime                           | 707        |
| 45.12     | SearchRec                          | 707        |
| <b>46</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'dxload'</b> | <b>709</b> |
| 46.1      | Used units                         | 709        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 46.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 709        |
| 46.3      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 709        |
| 46.3.1    | dx_load . . . . .                        | 709        |
| <b>47</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'dynlibs'</b>      | <b>710</b> |
| 47.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 710        |
| 47.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 710        |
| 47.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 710        |
| 47.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 710        |
| 47.3.2    | Types . . . . .                          | 710        |
| 47.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 711        |
| 47.4.1    | FreeLibrary . . . . .                    | 711        |
| 47.4.2    | GetLoadErrorStr . . . . .                | 711        |
| 47.4.3    | GetProcAddress . . . . .                 | 711        |
| 47.4.4    | GetProcedureAddress . . . . .            | 712        |
| 47.4.5    | LoadLibrary . . . . .                    | 712        |
| 47.4.6    | SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .                | 712        |
| 47.4.7    | UnloadLibrary . . . . .                  | 713        |
| <b>48</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'emu387'</b>       | <b>714</b> |
| 48.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 714        |
| 48.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 714        |
| 48.3      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 714        |
| 48.3.1    | npxsetup . . . . .                       | 714        |
| <b>49</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'errors'</b>       | <b>716</b> |
| 49.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 716        |
| 49.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 716        |
| 49.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 716        |
| 49.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 716        |
| 49.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 717        |
| 49.4.1    | PError . . . . .                         | 717        |
| 49.4.2    | StrError . . . . .                       | 718        |
| <b>50</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'exeinfo'</b>      | <b>719</b> |
| 50.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 719        |
| 50.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 719        |
| 50.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 719        |
| 50.3.1    | Types . . . . .                          | 719        |
| 50.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 719        |
| 50.4.1    | CloseExeFile . . . . .                   | 719        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 50.4.2    | FindExeSection . . . . .                         | 720        |
| 50.4.3    | GetModuleByAddr . . . . .                        | 720        |
| 50.4.4    | OpenExeFile . . . . .                            | 720        |
| 50.4.5    | ReadDebugLink . . . . .                          | 720        |
| 50.5      | TExeFile . . . . .                               | 721        |
| <b>51</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'fgl'</b>                  | <b>722</b> |
| 51.1      | Used units . . . . .                             | 722        |
| 51.2      | Overview . . . . .                               | 722        |
| 51.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . .         | 722        |
| 51.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                              | 722        |
| 51.3.2    | Types . . . . .                                  | 722        |
| 51.4      | EListError . . . . .                             | 723        |
| 51.4.1    | Description . . . . .                            | 723        |
| 51.5      | TFPGInterfacedObjectList . . . . .               | 723        |
| 51.5.1    | Description . . . . .                            | 723        |
| 51.5.2    | Method overview . . . . .                        | 723        |
| 51.5.3    | Property overview . . . . .                      | 723        |
| 51.5.4    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Create . . . . .        | 724        |
| 51.5.5    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add . . . . .           | 724        |
| 51.5.6    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract . . . . .       | 724        |
| 51.5.7    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.GetEnumerator . . . . . | 724        |
| 51.5.8    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf . . . . .       | 725        |
| 51.5.9    | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert . . . . .        | 725        |
| 51.5.10   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Assign . . . . .        | 725        |
| 51.5.11   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.AddList . . . . .       | 725        |
| 51.5.12   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Remove . . . . .        | 726        |
| 51.5.13   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Sort . . . . .          | 726        |
| 51.5.14   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First . . . . .         | 726        |
| 51.5.15   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last . . . . .          | 727        |
| 51.5.16   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items . . . . .         | 727        |
| 51.5.17   | TFPGInterfacedObjectList.List . . . . .          | 727        |
| 51.6      | TFPGList . . . . .                               | 727        |
| 51.6.1    | Description . . . . .                            | 727        |
| 51.6.2    | Method overview . . . . .                        | 728        |
| 51.6.3    | Property overview . . . . .                      | 728        |
| 51.6.4    | TFPGList.Create . . . . .                        | 728        |
| 51.6.5    | TFPGList.ItemIsManaged . . . . .                 | 728        |
| 51.6.6    | TFPGList.Add . . . . .                           | 728        |
| 51.6.7    | TFPGList.Extract . . . . .                       | 729        |

|         |                                       |     |
|---------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 51.6.8  | TFPGList.GetEnumerator . . . . .      | 729 |
| 51.6.9  | TFPGList.IndexOf . . . . .            | 729 |
| 51.6.10 | TFPGList.Insert . . . . .             | 729 |
| 51.6.11 | TFPGList.Assign . . . . .             | 730 |
| 51.6.12 | TFPGList.AddList . . . . .            | 730 |
| 51.6.13 | TFPGList.Remove . . . . .             | 730 |
| 51.6.14 | TFPGList.Sort . . . . .               | 730 |
| 51.6.15 | TFPGList.First . . . . .              | 731 |
| 51.6.16 | TFPGList.Last . . . . .               | 731 |
| 51.6.17 | TFPGList.Items . . . . .              | 731 |
| 51.6.18 | TFPGList.List . . . . .               | 731 |
| 51.7    | TFPGListEnumerator . . . . .          | 732 |
| 51.7.1  | Description . . . . .                 | 732 |
| 51.7.2  | Method overview . . . . .             | 732 |
| 51.7.3  | Property overview . . . . .           | 732 |
| 51.7.4  | TFPGListEnumerator.Create . . . . .   | 732 |
| 51.7.5  | TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext . . . . . | 732 |
| 51.7.6  | TFPGListEnumerator.Current . . . . .  | 732 |
| 51.8    | TFPGMap . . . . .                     | 733 |
| 51.8.1  | Description . . . . .                 | 733 |
| 51.8.2  | Method overview . . . . .             | 733 |
| 51.8.3  | Property overview . . . . .           | 733 |
| 51.8.4  | TFPGMap.Create . . . . .              | 733 |
| 51.8.5  | TFPGMap.Add . . . . .                 | 734 |
| 51.8.6  | TFPGMap.Find . . . . .                | 734 |
| 51.8.7  | TFPGMap.TryGetData . . . . .          | 734 |
| 51.8.8  | TFPGMap.AddOrSetData . . . . .        | 734 |
| 51.8.9  | TFPGMap.IndexOf . . . . .             | 735 |
| 51.8.10 | TFPGMap.IndexOfData . . . . .         | 735 |
| 51.8.11 | TFPGMap.InsertKey . . . . .           | 735 |
| 51.8.12 | TFPGMap.InsertKeyData . . . . .       | 735 |
| 51.8.13 | TFPGMap.Remove . . . . .              | 736 |
| 51.8.14 | TFPGMap.Keys . . . . .                | 736 |
| 51.8.15 | TFPGMap.Data . . . . .                | 736 |
| 51.8.16 | TFPGMap.KeyData . . . . .             | 737 |
| 51.8.17 | TFPGMap.OnCompare . . . . .           | 737 |
| 51.8.18 | TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare . . . . .        | 737 |
| 51.8.19 | TFPGMap.OnDataCompare . . . . .       | 738 |
| 51.9    | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData . . . . . | 738 |
| 51.9.1  | Description . . . . .                 | 738 |

|          |   |     |
|----------|---|-----|
| 51.9.2   | Method overview . . . . .                           | 738 |
| 51.9.3   | Property overview . . . . .                         | 739 |
| 51.9.4   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Create . . . . .        | 739 |
| 51.9.5   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add . . . . .           | 739 |
| 51.9.6   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find . . . . .          | 739 |
| 51.9.7   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData . . . . .    | 740 |
| 51.9.8   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.AddOrSetData . . . . .  | 740 |
| 51.9.9   | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf . . . . .       | 740 |
| 51.9.10  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData . . . . .   | 740 |
| 51.9.11  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey . . . . .     | 741 |
| 51.9.12  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData . . . . . | 741 |
| 51.9.13  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove . . . . .        | 741 |
| 51.9.14  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys . . . . .          | 741 |
| 51.9.15  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data . . . . .          | 742 |
| 51.9.16  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData . . . . .       | 742 |
| 51.9.17  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnCompare . . . . .     | 742 |
| 51.9.18  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare . . . . .  | 743 |
| 51.9.19  | TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare . . . . . | 743 |
| 51.10    | TFPGMapObject . . . . .                             | 743 |
| 51.10.1  | Description . . . . .                               | 743 |
| 51.10.2  | Method overview . . . . .                           | 744 |
| 51.10.3  | Property overview . . . . .                         | 744 |
| 51.10.4  | TFPGMapObject.Create . . . . .                      | 744 |
| 51.10.5  | TFPGMapObject.Add . . . . .                         | 744 |
| 51.10.6  | TFPGMapObject.Find . . . . .                        | 745 |
| 51.10.7  | TFPGMapObject.TryGetData . . . . .                  | 745 |
| 51.10.8  | TFPGMapObject.AddOrSetData . . . . .                | 745 |
| 51.10.9  | TFPGMapObject.IndexOf . . . . .                     | 745 |
| 51.10.10 | TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData . . . . .                 | 746 |
| 51.10.11 | TFPGMapObject.InsertKey . . . . .                   | 746 |
| 51.10.12 | TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData . . . . .               | 746 |
| 51.10.13 | TFPGMapObject.Remove . . . . .                      | 746 |
| 51.10.14 | TFPGMapObject.Keys . . . . .                        | 747 |
| 51.10.15 | TFPGMapObject.Data . . . . .                        | 747 |
| 51.10.16 | TFPGMapObject.KeyData . . . . .                     | 747 |
| 51.10.17 | TFPGMapObject.OnCompare . . . . .                   | 748 |
| 51.10.18 | TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare . . . . .                | 748 |
| 51.10.19 | TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare . . . . .               | 748 |
| 51.11    | TFPGObjectList . . . . .                            | 749 |
| 51.11.1  | Description . . . . .                               | 749 |

|          |                              |     |
|----------|------------------------------|-----|
| 51.11.2  | Method overview              | 749 |
| 51.11.3  | Property overview            | 749 |
| 51.11.4  | TFPGObjectList.Create        | 749 |
| 51.11.5  | TFPGObjectList.Add           | 749 |
| 51.11.6  | TFPGObjectList.Extract       | 750 |
| 51.11.7  | TFPGObjectList.GetEnumerator | 750 |
| 51.11.8  | TFPGObjectList.IndexOf       | 750 |
| 51.11.9  | TFPGObjectList.Insert        | 751 |
| 51.11.10 | TFPGObjectList.AddList       | 751 |
| 51.11.11 | TFPGObjectList.Assign        | 751 |
| 51.11.12 | TFPGObjectList.Remove        | 751 |
| 51.11.13 | TFPGObjectList.Sort          | 752 |
| 51.11.14 | TFPGObjectList.First         | 752 |
| 51.11.15 | TFPGObjectList.Last          | 752 |
| 51.11.16 | TFPGObjectList.Items         | 752 |
| 51.11.17 | TFPGObjectList.List          | 753 |
| 51.11.18 | TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects   | 753 |
| 51.12    | TFPSList                     | 753 |
| 51.12.1  | Description                  | 753 |
| 51.12.2  | Method overview              | 754 |
| 51.12.3  | Property overview            | 754 |
| 51.12.4  | TFPSList.Create              | 754 |
| 51.12.5  | TFPSList.Destroy             | 754 |
| 51.12.6  | TFPSList.ItemIsManaged       | 755 |
| 51.12.7  | TFPSList.Add                 | 755 |
| 51.12.8  | TFPSList.Clear               | 755 |
| 51.12.9  | TFPSList.Delete              | 755 |
| 51.12.10 | TFPSList.DeleteRange         | 756 |
| 51.12.11 | TFPSList.Error               | 756 |
| 51.12.12 | TFPSList.Exchange            | 756 |
| 51.12.13 | TFPSList.Expand              | 756 |
| 51.12.14 | TFPSList.Extract             | 757 |
| 51.12.15 | TFPSList.IndexOf             | 757 |
| 51.12.16 | TFPSList.Insert              | 757 |
| 51.12.17 | TFPSList.Move                | 758 |
| 51.12.18 | TFPSList.Assign              | 758 |
| 51.12.19 | TFPSList.AddList             | 758 |
| 51.12.20 | TFPSList.Remove              | 758 |
| 51.12.21 | TFPSList.Pack                | 759 |
| 51.12.22 | TFPSList.Sort                | 759 |

|           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 51.12.23  | TFPSList.Capacity                         | 759        |
| 51.12.24  | TFPSList.Count                            | 760        |
| 51.12.25  | TFPSList.Items                            | 760        |
| 51.12.26  | TFPSList.ItemSize                         | 760        |
| 51.12.27  | TFPSList.List                             | 760        |
| 51.12.28  | TFPSList.First                            | 761        |
| 51.12.29  | TFPSList.Last                             | 761        |
| 51.13     | TFPSMap                                   | 761        |
| 51.13.1   | Description                               | 761        |
| 51.13.2   | Method overview                           | 761        |
| 51.13.3   | Property overview                         | 762        |
| 51.13.4   | TFPSMap.Create                            | 762        |
| 51.13.5   | TFPSMap.Add                               | 762        |
| 51.13.6   | TFPSMap.Find                              | 762        |
| 51.13.7   | TFPSMap.IndexOf                           | 763        |
| 51.13.8   | TFPSMap.IndexOfData                       | 763        |
| 51.13.9   | TFPSMap.Insert                            | 763        |
| 51.13.10  | TFPSMap.InsertKey                         | 764        |
| 51.13.11  | TFPSMap.InsertKeyData                     | 764        |
| 51.13.12  | TFPSMap.Remove                            | 764        |
| 51.13.13  | TFPSMap.Sort                              | 764        |
| 51.13.14  | TFPSMap.Duplicates                        | 765        |
| 51.13.15  | TFPSMap.KeySize                           | 765        |
| 51.13.16  | TFPSMap.DataSize                          | 765        |
| 51.13.17  | TFPSMap.Keys                              | 766        |
| 51.13.18  | TFPSMap.Data                              | 766        |
| 51.13.19  | TFPSMap.KeyData                           | 766        |
| 51.13.20  | TFPSMap.Sorted                            | 766        |
| 51.13.21  | TFPSMap.OnPtrCompare                      | 767        |
| 51.13.22  | TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare                   | 767        |
| 51.13.23  | TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare                  | 767        |
| <b>52</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'fpwiderstring'</b> | <b>768</b> |
| 52.1      | Used units                                | 768        |
| 52.2      | Overview                                  | 768        |
| 52.3      | Constants, types and variables            | 769        |
| 52.3.1    | Variables                                 | 769        |
| 52.4      | Procedures and functions                  | 769        |
| 52.4.1    | GetActiveCollation                        | 769        |
| 52.4.2    | SetActiveCollation                        | 769        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| <b>53</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'getopts'</b>                          | <b>770</b> |
| 53.1      | Used units . . . . .   | 770        |
| 53.2      | Overview . . . . .   | 770        |
| 53.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . .                     | 770        |
| 53.3.1    | Constants . . . . .  | 770        |
| 53.3.2    | Types . . . . .  | 771        |
| 53.3.3    | Variables . . . . .  | 771        |
| 53.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .                           | 771        |
| 53.4.1    | GetLongOpts . . . . .  | 771        |
| 53.4.2    | GetOpt . . . . .   | 772        |
| 53.5      | TOption . . . . .  | 774        |
| 53.5.1    | Method overview . . . . .                                    | 775        |
| 53.5.2    | TOption.SetOption . . . . .                                  | 775        |
| <b>54</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'go32'</b>                             | <b>776</b> |
| 54.1      | Used units . . . . .   | 776        |
| 54.2      | Overview . . . . .   | 776        |
| 54.3      | Real mode callbacks . . . . .                                | 776        |
| 54.4      | Executing software interrupts . . . . .                      | 777        |
| 54.5      | Software interrupts . . . . .                                | 780        |
| 54.6      | Hardware interrupts . . . . .                                | 780        |
| 54.7      | Disabling interrupts . . . . .                               | 782        |
| 54.8      | Creating your own interrupt handlers . . . . .               | 782        |
| 54.9      | Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts . . . . . | 783        |
| 54.10     | Handling interrupts with DPMI . . . . .                      | 783        |
| 54.11     | Interrupt redirection . . . . .                              | 783        |
| 54.12     | Processor access . . . . .                                   | 783        |
| 54.13     | I/O port access . . . . .                                    | 783        |
| 54.14     | dos memory access . . . . .                                  | 783        |
| 54.15     | FPC specialities . . . . .                                   | 784        |
| 54.16     | Selectors and descriptors . . . . .                          | 784        |
| 54.17     | What is DPMI . . . . .                                       | 784        |
| 54.18     | Constants, types and variables . . . . .                     | 784        |
| 54.18.1   | Constants . . . . .  | 784        |
| 54.18.2   | Types . . . . .  | 787        |
| 54.18.3   | Variables . . . . .  | 789        |
| 54.19     | Procedures and functions . . . . .                           | 789        |
| 54.19.1   | allocate_ldt_descriptors . . . . .                           | 789        |
| 54.19.2   | allocate_memory_block . . . . .                              | 792        |
| 54.19.3   | copyfromdos . . . . .  | 793        |

|          |  |     |
|----------|--|-----|
| 54.19.4  | <a href="#">copytodos</a>                            | 793 |
| 54.19.5  | <a href="#">create_code_segment_alias_descriptor</a> | 794 |
| 54.19.6  | <a href="#">disable</a>                              | 794 |
| 54.19.7  | <a href="#">dpmi_dosmemfillchar</a>                  | 794 |
| 54.19.8  | <a href="#">dpmi_dosmemfillword</a>                  | 795 |
| 54.19.9  | <a href="#">dpmi_dosmemget</a>                       | 795 |
| 54.19.10 | <a href="#">dpmi_dosmemmove</a>                      | 795 |
| 54.19.11 | <a href="#">dpmi_dosmemput</a>                       | 795 |
| 54.19.12 | <a href="#">enable</a>                               | 796 |
| 54.19.13 | <a href="#">free_ldt_descriptor</a>                  | 796 |
| 54.19.14 | <a href="#">free_linear_addr_mapping</a>             | 796 |
| 54.19.15 | <a href="#">free_memory_block</a>                    | 796 |
| 54.19.16 | <a href="#">free_rm_callback</a>                     | 797 |
| 54.19.17 | <a href="#">get_cs</a>                               | 797 |
| 54.19.18 | <a href="#">get_descriptor_access_right</a>          | 797 |
| 54.19.19 | <a href="#">get_dpmi_version</a>                     | 798 |
| 54.19.20 | <a href="#">get_ds</a>                               | 798 |
| 54.19.21 | <a href="#">get_exception_handler</a>                | 798 |
| 54.19.22 | <a href="#">get_linear_addr</a>                      | 799 |
| 54.19.23 | <a href="#">get_meminfo</a>                          | 799 |
| 54.19.24 | <a href="#">get_next_selector_increment_value</a>    | 800 |
| 54.19.25 | <a href="#">get_page_attributes</a>                  | 801 |
| 54.19.26 | <a href="#">get_page_size</a>                        | 801 |
| 54.19.27 | <a href="#">get_pm_exception_handler</a>             | 801 |
| 54.19.28 | <a href="#">get_pm_interrupt</a>                     | 801 |
| 54.19.29 | <a href="#">get_rm_callback</a>                      | 802 |
| 54.19.30 | <a href="#">get_rm_interrupt</a>                     | 806 |
| 54.19.31 | <a href="#">get_run_mode</a>                         | 807 |
| 54.19.32 | <a href="#">get_segment_base_address</a>             | 808 |
| 54.19.33 | <a href="#">get_segment_limit</a>                    | 808 |
| 54.19.34 | <a href="#">get_ss</a>                               | 808 |
| 54.19.35 | <a href="#">global_dos_alloc</a>                     | 809 |
| 54.19.36 | <a href="#">global_dos_free</a>                      | 811 |
| 54.19.37 | <a href="#">inportb</a>                              | 812 |
| 54.19.38 | <a href="#">inportl</a>                              | 812 |
| 54.19.39 | <a href="#">inportw</a>                              | 812 |
| 54.19.40 | <a href="#">lock_code</a>                            | 813 |
| 54.19.41 | <a href="#">lock_data</a>                            | 813 |
| 54.19.42 | <a href="#">lock_linear_region</a>                   | 813 |
| 54.19.43 | <a href="#">map_device_in_memory_block</a>           | 814 |

|           |                                 |            |
|-----------|---------------------------------|------------|
| 54.19.44  | outportb                        | 814        |
| 54.19.45  | outportl                        | 815        |
| 54.19.46  | outportw                        | 815        |
| 54.19.47  | realintr                        | 815        |
| 54.19.48  | request_linear_region           | 816        |
| 54.19.49  | segment_to_descriptor           | 817        |
| 54.19.50  | seg_fillchar                    | 817        |
| 54.19.51  | seg_fillword                    | 818        |
| 54.19.52  | seg_move                        | 819        |
| 54.19.53  | set_descriptor_access_right     | 819        |
| 54.19.54  | set_exception_handler           | 819        |
| 54.19.55  | set_page_attributes             | 820        |
| 54.19.56  | set_pm_exception_handler        | 820        |
| 54.19.57  | set_pm_interrupt                | 820        |
| 54.19.58  | set_rm_interrupt                | 822        |
| 54.19.59  | set_segment_base_address        | 822        |
| 54.19.60  | set_segment_limit               | 822        |
| 54.19.61  | tb_offset                       | 823        |
| 54.19.62  | tb_segment                      | 823        |
| 54.19.63  | tb_size                         | 823        |
| 54.19.64  | transfer_buffer                 | 824        |
| 54.19.65  | unlock_code                     | 824        |
| 54.19.66  | unlock_data                     | 824        |
| 54.19.67  | unlock_linear_region            | 825        |
| 54.20     | tdpmiversioninfo                | 825        |
| 54.21     | tmeminfo                        | 826        |
| 54.22     | tseginfo                        | 826        |
| <b>55</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'gpm'</b> | <b>827</b> |
| 55.1      | Used units                      | 827        |
| 55.2      | Overview                        | 827        |
| 55.3      | Constants, types and variables  | 827        |
| 55.3.1    | Constants                       | 827        |
| 55.3.2    | Types                           | 829        |
| 55.3.3    | Variables                       | 830        |
| 55.4      | Procedures and functions        | 831        |
| 55.4.1    | Gpm_AnyDouble                   | 831        |
| 55.4.2    | Gpm_AnySingle                   | 831        |
| 55.4.3    | Gpm_AnyTriple                   | 832        |
| 55.4.4    | gpm_close                       | 832        |

|           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 55.4.5    | <a href="#">gpm_fitvalues</a>                                 | 832        |
| 55.4.6    | <a href="#">gpm_fitvaluesM</a>                                | 832        |
| 55.4.7    | <a href="#">gpm_getevent</a>                                  | 833        |
| 55.4.8    | <a href="#">gpm_getsnapshot</a>                               | 834        |
| 55.4.9    | <a href="#">gpm_lowerroi</a>                                  | 834        |
| 55.4.10   | <a href="#">gpm_open</a>                                      | 834        |
| 55.4.11   | <a href="#">gpm_poproi</a>                                    | 835        |
| 55.4.12   | <a href="#">gpm_pushroi</a>                                   | 835        |
| 55.4.13   | <a href="#">gpm_raiseroi</a>                                  | 835        |
| 55.4.14   | <a href="#">gpm_repeat</a>                                    | 836        |
| 55.4.15   | <a href="#">Gpm_StrictDouble</a>                              | 836        |
| 55.4.16   | <a href="#">Gpm_StrictSingle</a>                              | 836        |
| 55.4.17   | <a href="#">Gpm_StrictTriple</a>                              | 837        |
| 55.5      | <a href="#">Tgpm_connect</a>                                  | 837        |
| 55.6      | <a href="#">Tgpm_event</a>                                    | 837        |
| 55.7      | <a href="#">Tgpm_roi</a>                                      | 838        |
| <b>56</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Graph'</b>                             | <b>839</b> |
| 56.1      | <a href="#">Used units</a>                                    | 839        |
| 56.2      | <a href="#">Overview</a>                                      | 839        |
| 56.3      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Text and font handling</a> | 839        |
| 56.4      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Filled drawings</a>        | 840        |
| 56.5      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Drawing primitives</a>     | 840        |
| 56.6      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Color management</a>       | 841        |
| 56.7      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Screen management</a>      | 841        |
| 56.8      | <a href="#">Categorized functions: Initialization</a>         | 842        |
| 56.9      | <a href="#">Target specific issues: Linux</a>                 | 842        |
| 56.10     | <a href="#">Target specific issues: DOS</a>                   | 843        |
| 56.11     | <a href="#">A word about mode selection</a>                   | 843        |
| 56.12     | <a href="#">Requirements</a>                                  | 848        |
| 56.13     | <a href="#">Constants, types and variables</a>                | 848        |
| 56.13.1   | <a href="#">Constants</a>                                     | 848        |
| 56.13.2   | <a href="#">Types</a>   | 865        |
| 56.13.3   | <a href="#">Variables</a>                                     | 868        |
| 56.14     | <a href="#">Procedures and functions</a>                      | 871        |
| 56.14.1   | <a href="#">Arc</a>   | 871        |
| 56.14.2   | <a href="#">Bar</a>   | 871        |
| 56.14.3   | <a href="#">Bar3D</a>   | 871        |
| 56.14.4   | <a href="#">ClearDevice</a>                                   | 872        |
| 56.14.5   | <a href="#">Closegraph</a>                                    | 872        |

---

|          |                   |     |
|----------|-------------------|-----|
| 56.14.6  | DetectGraph       | 872 |
| 56.14.7  | DrawPoly          | 872 |
| 56.14.8  | Ellipse           | 873 |
| 56.14.9  | FillEllipse       | 873 |
| 56.14.10 | FillPoly          | 873 |
| 56.14.11 | FloodFill         | 873 |
| 56.14.12 | GetArcCoords      | 874 |
| 56.14.13 | GetAspectRatio    | 874 |
| 56.14.14 | GetColor          | 874 |
| 56.14.15 | GetDefaultPalette | 874 |
| 56.14.16 | GetDirectVideo    | 875 |
| 56.14.17 | GetDriverName     | 875 |
| 56.14.18 | GetFillPattern    | 875 |
| 56.14.19 | GetFillSettings   | 875 |
| 56.14.20 | GetGraphMode      | 876 |
| 56.14.21 | GetLineSettings   | 876 |
| 56.14.22 | GetMaxColor       | 876 |
| 56.14.23 | GetMaxMode        | 876 |
| 56.14.24 | GetMaxX           | 877 |
| 56.14.25 | GetMaxY           | 877 |
| 56.14.26 | GetModeName       | 877 |
| 56.14.27 | GetModeRange      | 877 |
| 56.14.28 | GetPalette        | 878 |
| 56.14.29 | GetPaletteSize    | 878 |
| 56.14.30 | GetTextSettings   | 878 |
| 56.14.31 | GetViewSettings   | 878 |
| 56.14.32 | GetX              | 879 |
| 56.14.33 | GetY              | 879 |
| 56.14.34 | GraphDefaults     | 879 |
| 56.14.35 | GraphErrorMsg     | 879 |
| 56.14.36 | GraphResult       | 880 |
| 56.14.37 | InitGraph         | 880 |
| 56.14.38 | InstallUserDriver | 881 |
| 56.14.39 | InstallUserFont   | 881 |
| 56.14.40 | LineRel           | 881 |
| 56.14.41 | LineTo            | 882 |
| 56.14.42 | MoveRel           | 882 |
| 56.14.43 | MoveTo            | 882 |
| 56.14.44 | OutText           | 882 |
| 56.14.45 | PieSlice          | 883 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 56.14.46 queryadapterinfo . . . . .                           | 883        |
| 56.14.47 Rectangle . . . . .                                  | 883        |
| 56.14.48 RegisterBGIDriver . . . . .                          | 883        |
| 56.14.49 RegisterBGIfont . . . . .                            | 884        |
| 56.14.50 RestoreCrtMode . . . . .                             | 884        |
| 56.14.51 Sector . . . . .                                     | 884        |
| 56.14.52 SetAspectRatio . . . . .                             | 884        |
| 56.14.53 SetColor . . . . .                                   | 885        |
| 56.14.54 SetDirectVideo . . . . .                             | 885        |
| 56.14.55 SetFillPattern . . . . .                             | 885        |
| 56.14.56 SetFillStyle . . . . .                               | 885        |
| 56.14.57 SetGraphMode . . . . .                               | 886        |
| 56.14.58 SetLineStyle . . . . .                               | 886        |
| 56.14.59 SetPalette . . . . .                                 | 887        |
| 56.14.60 SetTextJustify . . . . .                             | 887        |
| 56.14.61 SetTextStyle . . . . .                               | 887        |
| 56.14.62 SetUserCharSize . . . . .                            | 888        |
| 56.14.63 SetViewPort . . . . .                                | 888        |
| 56.14.64 SetWriteMode . . . . .                               | 889        |
| 56.14.65 SetWriteModeEx . . . . .                             | 889        |
| 56.14.66 TextHeight . . . . .                                 | 889        |
| 56.14.67 TextWidth . . . . .                                  | 889        |
| 56.15 ArcCoordsType . . . . .                                 | 890        |
| 56.16 FillSettingsType . . . . .                              | 890        |
| 56.17 LineSettingsType . . . . .                              | 890        |
| 56.18 PaletteType . . . . .                                   | 890        |
| 56.19 PointType . . . . .                                     | 890        |
| 56.20 RGBRec . . . . .  | 891        |
| 56.21 TextSettingsType . . . . .                              | 891        |
| 56.22 TModeInfo . . . . .                                     | 891        |
| 56.23 TResolutionRec . . . . .                                | 892        |
| 56.24 ViewPortType . . . . .                                  | 892        |
| <b>57 Reference for unit 'heaptrc'</b>                        | <b>894</b> |
| 57.1 Used units . . . . .                                     | 894        |
| 57.2 Overview . . . . .                                       | 894        |
| 57.3 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables . . . . . | 894        |
| 57.4 HeapTrc Usage . . . . .                                  | 895        |
| 57.5 Constants, types and variables . . . . .                 | 896        |
| 57.5.1 Constants . . . . .                                    | 896        |

|           |                                      |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 57.5.2    | Types                                | 898        |
| 57.6      | Procedures and functions             | 898        |
| 57.6.1    | CheckPointer                         | 898        |
| 57.6.2    | DumpHeap                             | 898        |
| 57.6.3    | SetHeapExtraInfo                     | 898        |
| 57.6.4    | SetHeapTraceOutput                   | 900        |
| <b>58</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'ipc'</b>      | <b>901</b> |
| 58.1      | Used units                           | 901        |
| 58.2      | Overview                             | 901        |
| 58.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 901        |
| 58.3.1    | Constants                            | 901        |
| 58.3.2    | Types                                | 904        |
| 58.4      | Procedures and functions             | 905        |
| 58.4.1    | ftok                                 | 905        |
| 58.4.2    | msgctl                               | 906        |
| 58.4.3    | msgget                               | 908        |
| 58.4.4    | msgrcv                               | 909        |
| 58.4.5    | msgsnd                               | 909        |
| 58.4.6    | semctl                               | 910        |
| 58.4.7    | semget                               | 915        |
| 58.4.8    | semop                                | 915        |
| 58.4.9    | semtimedop                           | 916        |
| 58.4.10   | shmat                                | 916        |
| 58.4.11   | shmctl                               | 917        |
| 58.4.12   | shmdt                                | 919        |
| 58.4.13   | shmget                               | 919        |
| 58.5      | TIPC_Perm                            | 920        |
| 58.6      | TMSG                                 | 920        |
| 58.7      | TMSGbuf                              | 920        |
| 58.8      | TMSGinfo                             | 920        |
| 58.9      | TMSQid_ds                            | 921        |
| 58.10     | TSEMbuf                              | 921        |
| 58.11     | TSEMid_ds                            | 921        |
| 58.12     | TSEMinfo                             | 922        |
| 58.13     | TShmid_ds                            | 922        |
| 58.14     | TSHMinfo                             | 923        |
| 58.15     | TSHM_info                            | 923        |
| <b>59</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'keyboard'</b> | <b>924</b> |
| 59.1      | Used units                           | 924        |

|           |                                      |            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 59.2      | Overview                             | 924        |
| 59.3      | Unix specific notes                  | 924        |
| 59.4      | Writing a keyboard driver            | 926        |
| 59.5      | Keyboard scan codes                  | 929        |
| 59.6      | Constants, types and variables       | 931        |
| 59.6.1    | Constants                            | 931        |
| 59.6.2    | Types                                | 936        |
| 59.7      | Procedures and functions             | 936        |
| 59.7.1    | DoneKeyboard                         | 936        |
| 59.7.2    | FunctionKeyName                      | 937        |
| 59.7.3    | GetKeyboardDriver                    | 937        |
| 59.7.4    | GetKeyEvent                          | 938        |
| 59.7.5    | GetKeyEventChar                      | 938        |
| 59.7.6    | GetKeyEventCode                      | 939        |
| 59.7.7    | GetKeyEventFlags                     | 940        |
| 59.7.8    | GetKeyEventShiftState                | 940        |
| 59.7.9    | GetKeyEventUniCode                   | 941        |
| 59.7.10   | InitKeyboard                         | 941        |
| 59.7.11   | IsFunctionKey                        | 941        |
| 59.7.12   | KeyEventToString                     | 942        |
| 59.7.13   | KeyPressed                           | 942        |
| 59.7.14   | PollKeyEvent                         | 943        |
| 59.7.15   | PollShiftStateEvent                  | 943        |
| 59.7.16   | PutKeyEvent                          | 944        |
| 59.7.17   | SetKeyboardDriver                    | 945        |
| 59.7.18   | ShiftStateToString                   | 945        |
| 59.7.19   | TranslateKeyEvent                    | 946        |
| 59.7.20   | TranslateKeyEventUniCode             | 946        |
| 59.8      | TKeyboardDriver                      | 946        |
| 59.9      | TKeyRecord                           | 947        |
| 59.10     | TTreeElement                         | 947        |
| <b>60</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'lineinfo'</b> | <b>949</b> |
| 60.1      | Used units                           | 949        |
| 60.2      | Overview                             | 949        |
| 60.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 949        |
| 60.3.1    | Types                                | 949        |
| 60.3.2    | Variables                            | 949        |
| 60.4      | Procedures and functions             | 950        |
| 60.4.1    | CloseStabs                           | 950        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 60.4.2    | GetLineInfo . . . . .                    | 950        |
| 60.4.3    | StabBackTraceStr . . . . .               | 950        |
| <b>61</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Linux'</b>        | <b>951</b> |
| 61.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 951        |
| 61.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 951        |
| 61.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 951        |
| 61.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 951        |
| 61.3.2    | Types . . . . .                          | 966        |
| 61.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 967        |
| 61.4.1    | capget . . . . .                         | 967        |
| 61.4.2    | capset . . . . .                         | 968        |
| 61.4.3    | clock_getres . . . . .                   | 968        |
| 61.4.4    | clock_gettime . . . . .                  | 968        |
| 61.4.5    | clock_settime . . . . .                  | 968        |
| 61.4.6    | clone . . . . .                          | 969        |
| 61.4.7    | epoll_create . . . . .                   | 969        |
| 61.4.8    | epoll_ctl . . . . .                      | 970        |
| 61.4.9    | epoll_wait . . . . .                     | 970        |
| 61.4.10   | fdatasync . . . . .                      | 971        |
| 61.4.11   | futex . . . . .                          | 971        |
| 61.4.12   | futex_op . . . . .                       | 972        |
| 61.4.13   | inotify_add_watch . . . . .              | 972        |
| 61.4.14   | inotify_init . . . . .                   | 973        |
| 61.4.15   | inotify_init1 . . . . .                  | 973        |
| 61.4.16   | inotify_rm_watch . . . . .               | 973        |
| 61.4.17   | modify_ldt . . . . .                     | 974        |
| 61.4.18   | sched_yield . . . . .                    | 974        |
| 61.4.19   | setregid . . . . .                       | 974        |
| 61.4.20   | setreuid . . . . .                       | 974        |
| 61.4.21   | sync_file_range . . . . .                | 974        |
| 61.4.22   | Sysinfo . . . . .                        | 975        |
| 61.5      | EPoll_Event . . . . .                    | 976        |
| 61.6      | inotify_event . . . . .                  | 976        |
| 61.7      | TSysInfo . . . . .                       | 977        |
| 61.8      | user_cap_data . . . . .                  | 977        |
| 61.9      | user_cap_header . . . . .                | 977        |
| 61.10     | user_desc . . . . .                      | 977        |
| <b>62</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'</b>     | <b>979</b> |
| 62.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 979        |

|           |                                       |            |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 62.2      | Overview                              | 979        |
| 62.3      | Constants, types and variables        | 979        |
| 62.3.1    | Types                                 | 979        |
| 62.3.2    | Variables                             | 979        |
| 62.4      | Procedures and functions              | 980        |
| 62.4.1    | CloseDwarf                            | 980        |
| 62.4.2    | DwarfBackTraceStr                     | 980        |
| 62.4.3    | GetLineInfo                           | 980        |
| <b>63</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Math'</b>      | <b>981</b> |
| 63.1      | Used units                            | 981        |
| 63.2      | Overview                              | 981        |
| 63.3      | Cash flow functions                   | 981        |
| 63.4      | Geometrical functions                 | 982        |
| 63.5      | Statistical functions                 | 982        |
| 63.6      | Number converting                     | 983        |
| 63.7      | Exponential and logarithmic functions | 983        |
| 63.8      | Hyperbolic functions                  | 983        |
| 63.9      | Trigonometric functions               | 984        |
| 63.10     | Angle unit conversion                 | 984        |
| 63.11     | Min/max determination                 | 984        |
| 63.12     | Constants, types and variables        | 985        |
| 63.12.1   | Constants                             | 985        |
| 63.12.2   | Types                                 | 986        |
| 63.13     | Procedures and functions              | 987        |
| 63.13.1   | ArcCos                                | 987        |
| 63.13.2   | ArcCosH                               | 987        |
| 63.13.3   | ArCosH                                | 988        |
| 63.13.4   | ArcSin                                | 988        |
| 63.13.5   | ArcSinH                               | 989        |
| 63.13.6   | ArcTan2                               | 989        |
| 63.13.7   | ArcTanH                               | 990        |
| 63.13.8   | ArSinH                                | 990        |
| 63.13.9   | ArTanH                                | 990        |
| 63.13.10  | Ceil                                  | 991        |
| 63.13.11  | Ceil64                                | 991        |
| 63.13.12  | ClearExceptions                       | 992        |
| 63.13.13  | CompareValue                          | 992        |
| 63.13.14  | Cosecant                              | 992        |
| 63.13.15  | CosH                                  | 993        |

|                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| 63.13.16 Cot              | 993  |
| 63.13.17 Cotan            | 993  |
| 63.13.18 Csc              | 994  |
| 63.13.19 CycleToRad       | 994  |
| 63.13.20 DegNormalize     | 995  |
| 63.13.21 DegToGrad        | 995  |
| 63.13.22 DegToRad         | 995  |
| 63.13.23 DivMod           | 996  |
| 63.13.24 EnsureRange      | 996  |
| 63.13.25 Floor            | 996  |
| 63.13.26 Floor64          | 997  |
| 63.13.27 FMod             | 997  |
| 63.13.28 Frexp            | 998  |
| 63.13.29 FutureValue      | 998  |
| 63.13.30 GetExceptionMask | 999  |
| 63.13.31 GetPrecisionMode | 999  |
| 63.13.32 GetRoundMode     | 999  |
| 63.13.33 GradToDeg        | 999  |
| 63.13.34 GradToRad        | 1000 |
| 63.13.35 Hypot            | 1000 |
| 63.13.36 IfThen           | 1001 |
| 63.13.37 InRange          | 1001 |
| 63.13.38 InterestRate     | 1001 |
| 63.13.39 IntPower         | 1002 |
| 63.13.40 IsInfinite       | 1002 |
| 63.13.41 IsNan            | 1002 |
| 63.13.42 IsZero           | 1003 |
| 63.13.43 Ldexp            | 1003 |
| 63.13.44 LnXP1            | 1004 |
| 63.13.45 Log10            | 1004 |
| 63.13.46 Log2             | 1005 |
| 63.13.47 LogN             | 1005 |
| 63.13.48 Max              | 1006 |
| 63.13.49 MaxIntValue      | 1006 |
| 63.13.50 MaxValue         | 1007 |
| 63.13.51 Mean             | 1008 |
| 63.13.52 MeanAndStdDev    | 1009 |
| 63.13.53 Min              | 1010 |
| 63.13.54 MinIntValue      | 1010 |
| 63.13.55 MinValue         | 1011 |

|          |                            |      |
|----------|----------------------------|------|
| 63.13.56 | modulus(Float,Float):Float | 1012 |
| 63.13.57 | MomentSkewKurtosis         | 1012 |
| 63.13.58 | Norm                       | 1014 |
| 63.13.59 | NumberOfPeriods            | 1014 |
| 63.13.60 | Payment                    | 1015 |
| 63.13.61 | PopnStdDev                 | 1015 |
| 63.13.62 | PopnVariance               | 1016 |
| 63.13.63 | Power                      | 1017 |
| 63.13.64 | power(Float,Float):Float   | 1017 |
| 63.13.65 | power(Int64,Int64):Int64   | 1017 |
| 63.13.66 | PresentValue               | 1018 |
| 63.13.67 | RadToCycle                 | 1018 |
| 63.13.68 | RadToDeg                   | 1018 |
| 63.13.69 | RadToGrad                  | 1019 |
| 63.13.70 | RandG                      | 1019 |
| 63.13.71 | RandomFrom                 | 1020 |
| 63.13.72 | RandomRange                | 1020 |
| 63.13.73 | RoundTo                    | 1021 |
| 63.13.74 | SameValue                  | 1021 |
| 63.13.75 | Sec                        | 1021 |
| 63.13.76 | Secant                     | 1022 |
| 63.13.77 | SetExceptionMask           | 1022 |
| 63.13.78 | SetPrecisionMode           | 1022 |
| 63.13.79 | SetRoundMode               | 1022 |
| 63.13.80 | Sign                       | 1023 |
| 63.13.81 | SimpleRoundTo              | 1023 |
| 63.13.82 | SinCos                     | 1023 |
| 63.13.83 | SinH                       | 1024 |
| 63.13.84 | StdDev                     | 1024 |
| 63.13.85 | Sum                        | 1025 |
| 63.13.86 | SumInt                     | 1026 |
| 63.13.87 | SumOfSquares               | 1026 |
| 63.13.88 | SumsAndSquares             | 1027 |
| 63.13.89 | Tan                        | 1028 |
| 63.13.90 | TanH                       | 1029 |
| 63.13.91 | TotalVariance              | 1029 |
| 63.13.92 | Variance                   | 1030 |
| 63.14    | EInvalidArgument           | 1032 |
| 63.14.1  | Description                | 1032 |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>64 Reference for unit 'matrix'</b>                              | <b>1033</b> |
| 64.1 Used units  | 1033        |
| 64.2 Overview  | 1033        |
| 64.3 Constants, types and variables                                | 1034        |
| 64.3.1 Types   | 1034        |
| 64.4 Procedures and functions                                      | 1036        |
| 64.4.1 add(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double                 | 1036        |
| 64.4.2 add(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double        | 1036        |
| 64.4.3 add(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended           | 1037        |
| 64.4.4 add(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended  | 1037        |
| 64.4.5 add(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single                 | 1037        |
| 64.4.6 add(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single        | 1037        |
| 64.4.7 add(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double                 | 1037        |
| 64.4.8 add(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double        | 1038        |
| 64.4.9 add(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended           | 1038        |
| 64.4.10 add(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended | 1038        |
| 64.4.11 add(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single                | 1038        |
| 64.4.12 add(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single       | 1038        |
| 64.4.13 add(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double                | 1039        |
| 64.4.14 add(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double       | 1039        |
| 64.4.15 add(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended          | 1039        |
| 64.4.16 add(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended | 1039        |
| 64.4.17 add(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single                | 1039        |
| 64.4.18 add(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single       | 1040        |
| 64.4.19 add(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double                | 1040        |
| 64.4.20 add(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double       | 1040        |
| 64.4.21 add(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended          | 1040        |
| 64.4.22 add(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended | 1040        |
| 64.4.23 add(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single                | 1041        |
| 64.4.24 add(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single       | 1041        |
| 64.4.25 add(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double                | 1041        |
| 64.4.26 add(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double       | 1041        |
| 64.4.27 add(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended          | 1041        |
| 64.4.28 add(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended | 1042        |
| 64.4.29 add(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single                | 1042        |
| 64.4.30 add(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single       | 1042        |
| 64.4.31 add(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double                | 1042        |
| 64.4.32 add(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double       | 1042        |
| 64.4.33 add(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended          | 1043        |
| 64.4.34 add(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended | 1043        |

|         |  |      |
|---------|--|------|
| 64.4.35 | <a href="#">add(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</a>          | 1043 |
| 64.4.36 | <a href="#">add(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</a> | 1043 |
| 64.4.37 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_extended</a>            | 1043 |
| 64.4.38 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_single</a>              | 1044 |
| 64.4.39 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_double</a>              | 1044 |
| 64.4.40 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_extended</a>            | 1044 |
| 64.4.41 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_single</a>              | 1044 |
| 64.4.42 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>              | 1044 |
| 64.4.43 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_extended</a>            | 1045 |
| 64.4.44 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_single</a>              | 1045 |
| 64.4.45 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_double</a>            | 1045 |
| 64.4.46 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_single</a>            | 1045 |
| 64.4.47 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_double</a>            | 1046 |
| 64.4.48 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</a>          | 1046 |
| 64.4.49 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_single</a>            | 1046 |
| 64.4.50 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_double</a>            | 1046 |
| 64.4.51 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>          | 1047 |
| 64.4.52 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_single</a>            | 1047 |
| 64.4.53 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_double</a>              | 1047 |
| 64.4.54 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_extended</a>            | 1047 |
| 64.4.55 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_double</a>              | 1047 |
| 64.4.56 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_extended</a>            | 1048 |
| 64.4.57 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_single</a>              | 1048 |
| 64.4.58 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_double</a>              | 1048 |
| 64.4.59 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_extended</a>            | 1048 |
| 64.4.60 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>              | 1048 |
| 64.4.61 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_double</a>              | 1049 |
| 64.4.62 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_extended</a>            | 1049 |
| 64.4.63 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_single</a>              | 1049 |
| 64.4.64 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_extended</a>            | 1049 |
| 64.4.65 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_single</a>              | 1049 |
| 64.4.66 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>              | 1050 |
| 64.4.67 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_extended</a>            | 1050 |
| 64.4.68 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_single</a>              | 1050 |
| 64.4.69 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_double</a>            | 1050 |
| 64.4.70 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</a>          | 1051 |
| 64.4.71 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_single</a>            | 1051 |
| 64.4.72 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_double</a>            | 1051 |
| 64.4.73 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_single</a>            | 1051 |
| 64.4.74 | <a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_double</a>            | 1052 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.4.75  | assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . . | 1052 |
| 64.4.76  | assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .   | 1052 |
| 64.4.77  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .     | 1052 |
| 64.4.78  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .   | 1052 |
| 64.4.79  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .     | 1053 |
| 64.4.80  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .     | 1053 |
| 64.4.81  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .   | 1053 |
| 64.4.82  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .     | 1053 |
| 64.4.83  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .   | 1054 |
| 64.4.84  | assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .     | 1054 |
| 64.4.85  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .     | 1054 |
| 64.4.86  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .   | 1054 |
| 64.4.87  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .     | 1054 |
| 64.4.88  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .     | 1055 |
| 64.4.89  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .   | 1055 |
| 64.4.90  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .     | 1055 |
| 64.4.91  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .   | 1055 |
| 64.4.92  | assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .     | 1055 |
| 64.4.93  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .   | 1056 |
| 64.4.94  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . . | 1056 |
| 64.4.95  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .   | 1056 |
| 64.4.96  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .   | 1056 |
| 64.4.97  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . . | 1057 |
| 64.4.98  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .   | 1057 |
| 64.4.99  | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .   | 1057 |
| 64.4.100 | assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .   | 1057 |
| 64.4.101 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .     | 1057 |
| 64.4.102 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .   | 1058 |
| 64.4.103 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .     | 1058 |
| 64.4.104 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .     | 1058 |
| 64.4.105 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .   | 1058 |
| 64.4.106 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .     | 1059 |
| 64.4.107 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .     | 1059 |
| 64.4.108 | assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .   | 1059 |
| 64.4.109 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_extended . . . . .   | 1059 |
| 64.4.110 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_single . . . . .     | 1059 |
| 64.4.111 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_double . . . . .     | 1060 |
| 64.4.112 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_extended . . . . .   | 1060 |
| 64.4.113 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_single . . . . .     | 1060 |
| 64.4.114 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .     | 1060 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.4.115 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_extended . . . . .   | 1060 |
| 64.4.116 | assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_single . . . . .     | 1061 |
| 64.4.117 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_double . . . . .   | 1061 |
| 64.4.118 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_single . . . . .   | 1061 |
| 64.4.119 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_double . . . . .   | 1061 |
| 64.4.120 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_extended . . . . . | 1062 |
| 64.4.121 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_single . . . . .   | 1062 |
| 64.4.122 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_double . . . . .   | 1062 |
| 64.4.123 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . . | 1062 |
| 64.4.124 | assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_single . . . . .   | 1063 |
| 64.4.125 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_double . . . . .     | 1063 |
| 64.4.126 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_extended . . . . .   | 1063 |
| 64.4.127 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_double . . . . .     | 1063 |
| 64.4.128 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_extended . . . . .   | 1063 |
| 64.4.129 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_single . . . . .     | 1064 |
| 64.4.130 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_double . . . . .     | 1064 |
| 64.4.131 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_extended . . . . .   | 1064 |
| 64.4.132 | assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_single . . . . .     | 1064 |
| 64.4.133 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_double . . . . .     | 1065 |
| 64.4.134 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_extended . . . . .   | 1065 |
| 64.4.135 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_single . . . . .     | 1065 |
| 64.4.136 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_extended . . . . .   | 1065 |
| 64.4.137 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_single . . . . .     | 1065 |
| 64.4.138 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .     | 1066 |
| 64.4.139 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_extended . . . . .   | 1066 |
| 64.4.140 | assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_single . . . . .     | 1066 |
| 64.4.141 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_double . . . . .   | 1066 |
| 64.4.142 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_extended . . . . . | 1067 |
| 64.4.143 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_single . . . . .   | 1067 |
| 64.4.144 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_double . . . . .   | 1067 |
| 64.4.145 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_single . . . . .   | 1067 |
| 64.4.146 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_double . . . . .   | 1068 |
| 64.4.147 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . . | 1068 |
| 64.4.148 | assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_single . . . . .   | 1068 |
| 64.4.149 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_double . . . . .     | 1068 |
| 64.4.150 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_extended . . . . .   | 1068 |
| 64.4.151 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_single . . . . .     | 1069 |
| 64.4.152 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_double . . . . .     | 1069 |
| 64.4.153 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_extended . . . . .   | 1069 |
| 64.4.154 | assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_double . . . . .     | 1069 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 64.4.155 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_extended</a>            | 1070 |
| 64.4.156 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_single</a>              | 1070 |
| 64.4.157 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_double</a>              | 1070 |
| 64.4.158 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_extended</a>            | 1070 |
| 64.4.159 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_single</a>              | 1070 |
| 64.4.160 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_double</a>              | 1071 |
| 64.4.161 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_extended</a>            | 1071 |
| 64.4.162 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_single</a>              | 1071 |
| 64.4.163 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_extended</a>            | 1071 |
| 64.4.164 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_single</a>              | 1072 |
| 64.4.165 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_double</a>            | 1072 |
| 64.4.166 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>          | 1072 |
| 64.4.167 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_single</a>            | 1072 |
| 64.4.168 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_double</a>            | 1073 |
| 64.4.169 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>          | 1073 |
| 64.4.170 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_single</a>            | 1073 |
| 64.4.171 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_double</a>            | 1073 |
| 64.4.172 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_single</a>            | 1074 |
| 64.4.173 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_double</a>              | 1074 |
| 64.4.174 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_extended</a>            | 1074 |
| 64.4.175 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_single</a>              | 1074 |
| 64.4.176 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_double</a>              | 1075 |
| 64.4.177 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_extended</a>            | 1075 |
| 64.4.178 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_single</a>              | 1075 |
| 64.4.179 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_double</a>              | 1075 |
| 64.4.180 | <a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_extended</a>            | 1075 |
| 64.4.181 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double</a>       | 1076 |
| 64.4.182 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended</a> | 1076 |
| 64.4.183 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single</a>       | 1076 |
| 64.4.184 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double</a>       | 1076 |
| 64.4.185 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended</a> | 1076 |
| 64.4.186 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single</a>       | 1077 |
| 64.4.187 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double</a>       | 1077 |
| 64.4.188 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a> | 1077 |
| 64.4.189 | <a href="#">divide(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</a>       | 1077 |
| 64.4.190 | <a href="#">divide(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</a>       | 1077 |
| 64.4.191 | <a href="#">divide(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</a> | 1078 |
| 64.4.192 | <a href="#">divide(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</a>       | 1078 |
| 64.4.193 | <a href="#">divide(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</a>       | 1078 |
| 64.4.194 | <a href="#">divide(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</a> | 1078 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.4.195 | divide(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single . . . . .                  | 1078 |
| 64.4.196 | divide(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double . . . . .                  | 1079 |
| 64.4.197 | divide(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . .            | 1079 |
| 64.4.198 | divide(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single . . . . .                  | 1079 |
| 64.4.199 | multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .                | 1079 |
| 64.4.200 | multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .       | 1079 |
| 64.4.201 | multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double . . . . .       | 1080 |
| 64.4.202 | multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .          | 1080 |
| 64.4.203 | multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . . | 1080 |
| 64.4.204 | multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended . . . . . | 1080 |
| 64.4.205 | multiply(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .                | 1081 |
| 64.4.206 | multiply(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .       | 1081 |
| 64.4.207 | multiply(Tmatrix2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single . . . . .       | 1081 |
| 64.4.208 | multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .                | 1081 |
| 64.4.209 | multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .       | 1081 |
| 64.4.210 | multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double . . . . .       | 1082 |
| 64.4.211 | multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .          | 1082 |
| 64.4.212 | multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . . | 1082 |
| 64.4.213 | multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended . . . . . | 1082 |
| 64.4.214 | multiply(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .                | 1083 |
| 64.4.215 | multiply(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .       | 1083 |
| 64.4.216 | multiply(Tmatrix3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single . . . . .       | 1083 |
| 64.4.217 | multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .                | 1083 |
| 64.4.218 | multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .       | 1083 |
| 64.4.219 | multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .       | 1084 |
| 64.4.220 | multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .          | 1084 |
| 64.4.221 | multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . . | 1084 |
| 64.4.222 | multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . . | 1084 |
| 64.4.223 | multiply(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .                | 1085 |
| 64.4.224 | multiply(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .       | 1085 |
| 64.4.225 | multiply(Tmatrix4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single . . . . .       | 1085 |
| 64.4.226 | multiply(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double . . . . .                | 1085 |
| 64.4.227 | multiply(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double . . . . .       | 1085 |
| 64.4.228 | multiply(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended . . . . .          | 1086 |
| 64.4.229 | multiply(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended . . . . . | 1086 |
| 64.4.230 | multiply(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single . . . . .                | 1086 |
| 64.4.231 | multiply(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single . . . . .       | 1086 |
| 64.4.232 | multiply(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double . . . . .                | 1086 |
| 64.4.233 | multiply(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double . . . . .       | 1087 |
| 64.4.234 | multiply(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended . . . . .          | 1087 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.4.235 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended . . .</a> | 1087 |
| 64.4.236 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single . . . . .</a>            | 1087 |
| 64.4.237 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single . . . . .</a>   | 1087 |
| 64.4.238 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double . . . . .</a>            | 1088 |
| 64.4.239 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .</a>   | 1088 |
| 64.4.240 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . .</a>      | 1088 |
| 64.4.241 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended . . .</a> | 1088 |
| 64.4.242 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single . . . . .</a>            | 1088 |
| 64.4.243 | <a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single . . . . .</a>   | 1089 |
| 64.4.244 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1089 |
| 64.4.245 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1089 |
| 64.4.246 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1089 |
| 64.4.247 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1089 |
| 64.4.248 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1090 |
| 64.4.249 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1090 |
| 64.4.250 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1090 |
| 64.4.251 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1090 |
| 64.4.252 | <a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1090 |
| 64.4.253 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1090 |
| 64.4.254 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1091 |
| 64.4.255 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1091 |
| 64.4.256 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1091 |
| 64.4.257 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1091 |
| 64.4.258 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1091 |
| 64.4.259 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .</a>                   | 1092 |
| 64.4.260 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . .</a>               | 1092 |
| 64.4.261 | <a href="#">negative(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single . . . . .</a>                   | 1092 |
| 64.4.262 | <a href="#">power(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Double . . . . .</a>               | 1092 |
| 64.4.263 | <a href="#">power(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):extended . . . . .</a>         | 1092 |
| 64.4.264 | <a href="#">power(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):single . . . . .</a>               | 1093 |
| 64.4.265 | <a href="#">power(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Double . . . . .</a>               | 1093 |
| 64.4.266 | <a href="#">power(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):extended . . . . .</a>         | 1093 |
| 64.4.267 | <a href="#">power(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):single . . . . .</a>               | 1093 |
| 64.4.268 | <a href="#">power(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Double . . . . .</a>               | 1093 |
| 64.4.269 | <a href="#">power(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):extended . . . . .</a>         | 1094 |
| 64.4.270 | <a href="#">power(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):single . . . . .</a>               | 1094 |
| 64.4.271 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .</a>            | 1094 |
| 64.4.272 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .</a>   | 1094 |
| 64.4.273 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .</a>      | 1094 |
| 64.4.274 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended . .</a>   | 1095 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 64.4.275 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single</a>                             | 1095 |
| 64.4.276 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single</a>                    | 1095 |
| 64.4.277 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double</a>                             | 1095 |
| 64.4.278 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double</a>                    | 1095 |
| 64.4.279 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended</a>                       | 1096 |
| 64.4.280 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</a>              | 1096 |
| 64.4.281 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single</a>                             | 1096 |
| 64.4.282 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single</a>                    | 1096 |
| 64.4.283 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double</a>                             | 1096 |
| 64.4.284 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>                    | 1097 |
| 64.4.285 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>                       | 1097 |
| 64.4.286 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>              | 1097 |
| 64.4.287 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</a>                             | 1097 |
| 64.4.288 | <a href="#">subtract(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>                    | 1097 |
| 64.4.289 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</a>                             | 1098 |
| 64.4.290 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</a>                    | 1098 |
| 64.4.291 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</a>                       | 1098 |
| 64.4.292 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>              | 1098 |
| 64.4.293 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</a>                             | 1098 |
| 64.4.294 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</a>                    | 1099 |
| 64.4.295 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</a>                             | 1099 |
| 64.4.296 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</a>                    | 1099 |
| 64.4.297 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</a>                       | 1099 |
| 64.4.298 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>              | 1099 |
| 64.4.299 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single</a>                             | 1100 |
| 64.4.300 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>                    | 1100 |
| 64.4.301 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double</a>                             | 1100 |
| 64.4.302 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</a>                    | 1100 |
| 64.4.303 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended</a>                       | 1100 |
| 64.4.304 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</a>              | 1101 |
| 64.4.305 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</a>                             | 1101 |
| 64.4.306 | <a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</a>                    | 1101 |
| 64.4.307 | <a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</a>       | 1101 |
| 64.4.308 | <a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</a> | 1102 |
| 64.4.309 | <a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>       | 1102 |
| 64.5     | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double</a>  | 1102 |
| 64.5.1   | <a href="#">Description</a>  | 1102 |
| 64.5.2   | <a href="#">Method overview</a>  | 1102 |
| 64.5.3   | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init_zero</a>  | 1103 |
| 64.5.4   | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init_identity</a>  | 1103 |

|         |   |      |
|---------|---|------|
| 64.5.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init</a>            | 1103 |
| 64.5.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.get_column</a>      | 1103 |
| 64.5.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.get_row</a>         | 1103 |
| 64.5.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.set_column</a>      | 1103 |
| 64.5.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.set_row</a>         | 1104 |
| 64.5.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.determinant</a>     | 1104 |
| 64.5.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.inverse</a>         | 1104 |
| 64.5.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.transpose</a>       | 1104 |
| 64.6    | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended</a>               | 1104 |
| 64.6.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1104 |
| 64.6.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1105 |
| 64.6.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init_zero</a>     | 1105 |
| 64.6.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init_identity</a> | 1105 |
| 64.6.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init</a>          | 1105 |
| 64.6.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.get_column</a>    | 1105 |
| 64.6.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.get_row</a>       | 1106 |
| 64.6.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.set_column</a>    | 1106 |
| 64.6.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.set_row</a>       | 1106 |
| 64.6.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.determinant</a>   | 1106 |
| 64.6.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.inverse</a>       | 1106 |
| 64.6.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.transpose</a>     | 1106 |
| 64.7    | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single</a>                 | 1107 |
| 64.7.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1107 |
| 64.7.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1107 |
| 64.7.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.init_zero</a>       | 1107 |
| 64.7.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.init_identity</a>   | 1107 |
| 64.7.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.init</a>            | 1107 |
| 64.7.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.get_column</a>      | 1108 |
| 64.7.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.get_row</a>         | 1108 |
| 64.7.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.set_column</a>      | 1108 |
| 64.7.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.set_row</a>         | 1108 |
| 64.7.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.determinant</a>     | 1108 |
| 64.7.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.inverse</a>         | 1108 |
| 64.7.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix2_single.transpose</a>       | 1109 |
| 64.8    | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double</a>                 | 1109 |
| 64.8.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1109 |
| 64.8.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1109 |
| 64.8.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.init_zero</a>       | 1109 |
| 64.8.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.init_identity</a>   | 1109 |
| 64.8.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.init</a>            | 1110 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.8.6   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.get_column</a>      | 1110 |
| 64.8.7   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.get_row</a>         | 1110 |
| 64.8.8   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.set_column</a>      | 1110 |
| 64.8.9   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.set_row</a>         | 1110 |
| 64.8.10  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.determinant</a>     | 1111 |
| 64.8.11  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.inverse</a>         | 1111 |
| 64.8.12  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_double.transpose</a>       | 1111 |
| 64.9     | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended</a>               | 1111 |
| 64.9.1   | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1111 |
| 64.9.2   | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1111 |
| 64.9.3   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.init_zero</a>     | 1112 |
| 64.9.4   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.init_identity</a> | 1112 |
| 64.9.5   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.init</a>          | 1112 |
| 64.9.6   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.get_column</a>    | 1112 |
| 64.9.7   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.get_row</a>       | 1112 |
| 64.9.8   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.set_column</a>    | 1113 |
| 64.9.9   | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.set_row</a>       | 1113 |
| 64.9.10  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.determinant</a>   | 1113 |
| 64.9.11  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.inverse</a>       | 1113 |
| 64.9.12  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_extended.transpose</a>     | 1113 |
| 64.10    | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single</a>                 | 1113 |
| 64.10.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1113 |
| 64.10.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1114 |
| 64.10.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.init_zero</a>       | 1114 |
| 64.10.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.init_identity</a>   | 1114 |
| 64.10.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.init</a>            | 1114 |
| 64.10.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.get_column</a>      | 1114 |
| 64.10.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.get_row</a>         | 1115 |
| 64.10.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.set_column</a>      | 1115 |
| 64.10.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.set_row</a>         | 1115 |
| 64.10.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.determinant</a>     | 1115 |
| 64.10.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.inverse</a>         | 1115 |
| 64.10.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix3_single.transpose</a>       | 1115 |
| 64.11    | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double</a>                 | 1116 |
| 64.11.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1116 |
| 64.11.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1116 |
| 64.11.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.init_zero</a>       | 1116 |
| 64.11.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.init_identity</a>   | 1116 |
| 64.11.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.init</a>            | 1116 |
| 64.11.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.get_column</a>      | 1117 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 64.11.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.get_row</a>         | 1117 |
| 64.11.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.set_column</a>      | 1117 |
| 64.11.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.set_row</a>         | 1117 |
| 64.11.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.determinant</a>     | 1117 |
| 64.11.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.inverse</a>         | 1118 |
| 64.11.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_double.transpose</a>       | 1118 |
| 64.12    | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended</a>               | 1118 |
| 64.12.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1118 |
| 64.12.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1118 |
| 64.12.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init_zero</a>     | 1118 |
| 64.12.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init_identity</a> | 1119 |
| 64.12.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.init</a>          | 1119 |
| 64.12.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.get_column</a>    | 1119 |
| 64.12.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.get_row</a>       | 1119 |
| 64.12.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.set_column</a>    | 1119 |
| 64.12.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.set_row</a>       | 1120 |
| 64.12.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.determinant</a>   | 1120 |
| 64.12.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.inverse</a>       | 1120 |
| 64.12.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_extended.transpose</a>     | 1120 |
| 64.13    | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single</a>                 | 1120 |
| 64.13.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1120 |
| 64.13.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1121 |
| 64.13.3  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init_zero</a>       | 1121 |
| 64.13.4  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init_identity</a>   | 1121 |
| 64.13.5  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.init</a>            | 1121 |
| 64.13.6  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.get_column</a>      | 1121 |
| 64.13.7  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.get_row</a>         | 1122 |
| 64.13.8  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.set_column</a>      | 1122 |
| 64.13.9  | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.set_row</a>         | 1122 |
| 64.13.10 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.determinant</a>     | 1122 |
| 64.13.11 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.inverse</a>         | 1122 |
| 64.13.12 | <a href="#">Tmatrix4_single.transpose</a>       | 1123 |
| 64.14    | <a href="#">Tvector2_double</a>                 | 1123 |
| 64.14.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                     | 1123 |
| 64.14.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                 | 1123 |
| 64.14.3  | <a href="#">Tvector2_double.init_zero</a>       | 1123 |
| 64.14.4  | <a href="#">Tvector2_double.init_one</a>        | 1123 |
| 64.14.5  | <a href="#">Tvector2_double.init</a>            | 1123 |
| 64.14.6  | <a href="#">Tvector2_double.length</a>          | 1124 |
| 64.14.7  | <a href="#">Tvector2_double.squared_length</a>  | 1124 |

|         |  |      |
|---------|--|------|
| 64.15   | Tvector2_extended . . . . .                | 1124 |
| 64.15.1 | Description . . . . .                      | 1124 |
| 64.15.2 | Method overview . . . . .                  | 1124 |
| 64.15.3 | Tvector2_extended.init_zero . . . . .      | 1124 |
| 64.15.4 | Tvector2_extended.init_one . . . . .       | 1124 |
| 64.15.5 | Tvector2_extended.init . . . . .           | 1125 |
| 64.15.6 | Tvector2_extended.length . . . . .         | 1125 |
| 64.15.7 | Tvector2_extended.squared_length . . . . . | 1125 |
| 64.16   | Tvector2_single . . . . .                  | 1125 |
| 64.16.1 | Description . . . . .                      | 1125 |
| 64.16.2 | Method overview . . . . .                  | 1125 |
| 64.16.3 | Tvector2_single.init_zero . . . . .        | 1125 |
| 64.16.4 | Tvector2_single.init_one . . . . .         | 1126 |
| 64.16.5 | Tvector2_single.init . . . . .             | 1126 |
| 64.16.6 | Tvector2_single.length . . . . .           | 1126 |
| 64.16.7 | Tvector2_single.squared_length . . . . .   | 1126 |
| 64.17   | Tvector3_double . . . . .                  | 1126 |
| 64.17.1 | Description . . . . .                      | 1126 |
| 64.17.2 | Method overview . . . . .                  | 1126 |
| 64.17.3 | Tvector3_double.init_zero . . . . .        | 1127 |
| 64.17.4 | Tvector3_double.init_one . . . . .         | 1127 |
| 64.17.5 | Tvector3_double.init . . . . .             | 1127 |
| 64.17.6 | Tvector3_double.length . . . . .           | 1127 |
| 64.17.7 | Tvector3_double.squared_length . . . . .   | 1127 |
| 64.18   | Tvector3_extended . . . . .                | 1127 |
| 64.18.1 | Description . . . . .                      | 1127 |
| 64.18.2 | Method overview . . . . .                  | 1128 |
| 64.18.3 | Tvector3_extended.init_zero . . . . .      | 1128 |
| 64.18.4 | Tvector3_extended.init_one . . . . .       | 1128 |
| 64.18.5 | Tvector3_extended.init . . . . .           | 1128 |
| 64.18.6 | Tvector3_extended.length . . . . .         | 1128 |
| 64.18.7 | Tvector3_extended.squared_length . . . . . | 1128 |
| 64.19   | Tvector3_single . . . . .                  | 1129 |
| 64.19.1 | Description . . . . .                      | 1129 |
| 64.19.2 | Method overview . . . . .                  | 1129 |
| 64.19.3 | Tvector3_single.init_zero . . . . .        | 1129 |
| 64.19.4 | Tvector3_single.init_one . . . . .         | 1129 |
| 64.19.5 | Tvector3_single.init . . . . .             | 1129 |
| 64.19.6 | Tvector3_single.length . . . . .           | 1129 |
| 64.19.7 | Tvector3_single.squared_length . . . . .   | 1130 |

|           |                                   |             |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| 64.20     | Tvector4_double                   | 1130        |
| 64.20.1   | Description                       | 1130        |
| 64.20.2   | Method overview                   | 1130        |
| 64.20.3   | Tvector4_double.init_zero         | 1130        |
| 64.20.4   | Tvector4_double.init_one          | 1130        |
| 64.20.5   | Tvector4_double.init              | 1130        |
| 64.20.6   | Tvector4_double.length            | 1131        |
| 64.20.7   | Tvector4_double.squared_length    | 1131        |
| 64.21     | Tvector4_extended                 | 1131        |
| 64.21.1   | Description                       | 1131        |
| 64.21.2   | Method overview                   | 1131        |
| 64.21.3   | Tvector4_extended.init_zero       | 1131        |
| 64.21.4   | Tvector4_extended.init_one        | 1131        |
| 64.21.5   | Tvector4_extended.init            | 1132        |
| 64.21.6   | Tvector4_extended.length          | 1132        |
| 64.21.7   | Tvector4_extended.squared_length  | 1132        |
| 64.22     | Tvector4_single                   | 1132        |
| 64.22.1   | Description                       | 1132        |
| 64.22.2   | Method overview                   | 1132        |
| 64.22.3   | Tvector4_single.init_zero         | 1132        |
| 64.22.4   | Tvector4_single.init_one          | 1133        |
| 64.22.5   | Tvector4_single.init              | 1133        |
| 64.22.6   | Tvector4_single.length            | 1133        |
| 64.22.7   | Tvector4_single.squared_length    | 1133        |
| <b>65</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'mmx'</b>   | <b>1134</b> |
| 65.1      | Used units                        | 1134        |
| 65.2      | Overview                          | 1134        |
| 65.3      | Constants, types and variables    | 1134        |
| 65.3.1    | Constants                         | 1134        |
| 65.3.2    | Types                             | 1135        |
| 65.4      | Procedures and functions          | 1136        |
| 65.4.1    | emms                              | 1136        |
| 65.4.2    | femms                             | 1137        |
| <b>66</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Mouse'</b> | <b>1138</b> |
| 66.1      | Used units                        | 1138        |
| 66.2      | Overview                          | 1138        |
| 66.3      | Writing a custom mouse driver     | 1138        |
| 66.4      | Constants, types and variables    | 1140        |
| 66.4.1    | Constants                         | 1140        |

|           |                                     |             |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 66.4.2    | Types                               | 1141        |
| 66.4.3    | Variables                           | 1142        |
| 66.5      | Procedures and functions            | 1142        |
| 66.5.1    | DetectMouse                         | 1142        |
| 66.5.2    | DoneMouse                           | 1143        |
| 66.5.3    | GetMouseButtons                     | 1143        |
| 66.5.4    | GetMouseDriver                      | 1144        |
| 66.5.5    | GetMouseEvent                       | 1144        |
| 66.5.6    | GetMouseX                           | 1144        |
| 66.5.7    | GetMouseY                           | 1145        |
| 66.5.8    | HideMouse                           | 1145        |
| 66.5.9    | InitMouse                           | 1146        |
| 66.5.10   | PollMouseEvent                      | 1146        |
| 66.5.11   | PutMouseEvent                       | 1147        |
| 66.5.12   | SetMouseDriver                      | 1147        |
| 66.5.13   | SetMouseXY                          | 1147        |
| 66.5.14   | ShowMouse                           | 1148        |
| 66.6      | TMouseDriver                        | 1148        |
| 66.7      | TMouseEvent                         | 1149        |
| <b>67</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Objects'</b> | <b>1150</b> |
| 67.1      | Used units                          | 1150        |
| 67.2      | Overview                            | 1150        |
| 67.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 1150        |
| 67.3.1    | Constants                           | 1150        |
| 67.3.2    | Types                               | 1153        |
| 67.3.3    | Variables                           | 1155        |
| 67.4      | Procedures and functions            | 1155        |
| 67.4.1    | Abstract                            | 1155        |
| 67.4.2    | CallPointerConstructor              | 1156        |
| 67.4.3    | CallPointerLocal                    | 1156        |
| 67.4.4    | CallPointerMethod                   | 1156        |
| 67.4.5    | CallPointerMethodLocal              | 1157        |
| 67.4.6    | CallVoidConstructor                 | 1157        |
| 67.4.7    | CallVoidLocal                       | 1157        |
| 67.4.8    | CallVoidMethod                      | 1158        |
| 67.4.9    | CallVoidMethodLocal                 | 1158        |
| 67.4.10   | DisposeStr                          | 1158        |
| 67.4.11   | LongDiv                             | 1158        |
| 67.4.12   | LongMul                             | 1159        |

---

|          |                                 |      |
|----------|---------------------------------|------|
| 67.4.13  | NewStr . . . . .                | 1159 |
| 67.4.14  | RegisterObjects . . . . .       | 1160 |
| 67.4.15  | RegisterType . . . . .          | 1160 |
| 67.4.16  | SetStr . . . . .                | 1162 |
| 67.5     | LongRec . . . . .               | 1162 |
| 67.6     | PtrRec . . . . .                | 1162 |
| 67.7     | TStreamRec . . . . .            | 1162 |
| 67.8     | TStrIndexRec . . . . .          | 1163 |
| 67.9     | WordRec . . . . .               | 1163 |
| 67.10    | TBufStream . . . . .            | 1163 |
| 67.10.1  | Description . . . . .           | 1163 |
| 67.10.2  | Method overview . . . . .       | 1164 |
| 67.10.3  | TBufStream.Init . . . . .       | 1164 |
| 67.10.4  | TBufStream.Done . . . . .       | 1164 |
| 67.10.5  | TBufStream.Close . . . . .      | 1165 |
| 67.10.6  | TBufStream.Flush . . . . .      | 1165 |
| 67.10.7  | TBufStream.Truncate . . . . .   | 1166 |
| 67.10.8  | TBufStream.Seek . . . . .       | 1166 |
| 67.10.9  | TBufStream.Open . . . . .       | 1166 |
| 67.10.10 | TBufStream.Read . . . . .       | 1167 |
| 67.10.11 | TBufStream.Write . . . . .      | 1167 |
| 67.11    | TCollection . . . . .           | 1167 |
| 67.11.1  | Description . . . . .           | 1167 |
| 67.11.2  | Method overview . . . . .       | 1168 |
| 67.11.3  | TCollection.Init . . . . .      | 1168 |
| 67.11.4  | TCollection.Load . . . . .      | 1168 |
| 67.11.5  | TCollection.Done . . . . .      | 1169 |
| 67.11.6  | TCollection.At . . . . .        | 1169 |
| 67.11.7  | TCollection.IndexOf . . . . .   | 1170 |
| 67.11.8  | TCollection.GetItem . . . . .   | 1171 |
| 67.11.9  | TCollection.LastThat . . . . .  | 1171 |
| 67.11.10 | TCollection.FirstThat . . . . . | 1172 |
| 67.11.11 | TCollection.Pack . . . . .      | 1173 |
| 67.11.12 | TCollection.FreeAll . . . . .   | 1174 |
| 67.11.13 | TCollection.DeleteAll . . . . . | 1175 |
| 67.11.14 | TCollection.Free . . . . .      | 1175 |
| 67.11.15 | TCollection.Insert . . . . .    | 1176 |
| 67.11.16 | TCollection.Delete . . . . .    | 1176 |
| 67.11.17 | TCollection.AtFree . . . . .    | 1177 |
| 67.11.18 | TCollection.FreeItem . . . . .  | 1178 |

|          |                        |      |
|----------|------------------------|------|
| 67.11.19 | TCollection.AtDelete   | 1178 |
| 67.11.20 | TCollection.ForEach    | 1179 |
| 67.11.21 | TCollection.SetLimit   | 1180 |
| 67.11.22 | TCollection.Error      | 1180 |
| 67.11.23 | TCollection.AtPut      | 1180 |
| 67.11.24 | TCollection.AtInsert   | 1181 |
| 67.11.25 | TCollection.Store      | 1182 |
| 67.11.26 | TCollection.PutItem    | 1182 |
| 67.12    | TDosStream             | 1182 |
| 67.12.1  | Description            | 1182 |
| 67.12.2  | Method overview        | 1182 |
| 67.12.3  | TDosStream.Init        | 1183 |
| 67.12.4  | TDosStream.Done        | 1183 |
| 67.12.5  | TDosStream.Close       | 1183 |
| 67.12.6  | TDosStream.Truncate    | 1184 |
| 67.12.7  | TDosStream.Seek        | 1184 |
| 67.12.8  | TDosStream.Open        | 1185 |
| 67.12.9  | TDosStream.Read        | 1186 |
| 67.12.10 | TDosStream.Write       | 1186 |
| 67.13    | TMemoryStream          | 1187 |
| 67.13.1  | Description            | 1187 |
| 67.13.2  | Method overview        | 1187 |
| 67.13.3  | TMemoryStream.Init     | 1187 |
| 67.13.4  | TMemoryStream.Done     | 1187 |
| 67.13.5  | TMemoryStream.Truncate | 1188 |
| 67.13.6  | TMemoryStream.Read     | 1188 |
| 67.13.7  | TMemoryStream.Write    | 1189 |
| 67.14    | TObject                | 1189 |
| 67.14.1  | Description            | 1189 |
| 67.14.2  | Method overview        | 1189 |
| 67.14.3  | TObject.Init           | 1189 |
| 67.14.4  | TObject.Free           | 1190 |
| 67.14.5  | TObject.Is_Object      | 1190 |
| 67.14.6  | TObject.Done           | 1190 |
| 67.15    | TPoint                 | 1191 |
| 67.15.1  | Description            | 1191 |
| 67.16    | TRect                  | 1191 |
| 67.16.1  | Description            | 1191 |
| 67.16.2  | Method overview        | 1191 |
| 67.16.3  | TRect.Empty            | 1191 |

|          |                              |      |
|----------|------------------------------|------|
| 67.16.4  | TRect.Equals                 | 1192 |
| 67.16.5  | TRect.Contains               | 1193 |
| 67.16.6  | TRect.Copy                   | 1193 |
| 67.16.7  | TRect.Union                  | 1194 |
| 67.16.8  | TRect.Intersect              | 1194 |
| 67.16.9  | TRect.Move                   | 1195 |
| 67.16.10 | TRect.Grow                   | 1196 |
| 67.16.11 | TRect.Assign                 | 1196 |
| 67.17    | TResourceCollection          | 1197 |
| 67.17.1  | Description                  | 1197 |
| 67.17.2  | Method overview              | 1197 |
| 67.17.3  | TResourceCollection.KeyOf    | 1197 |
| 67.17.4  | TResourceCollection.GetItem  | 1198 |
| 67.17.5  | TResourceCollection.FreeItem | 1198 |
| 67.17.6  | TResourceCollection.PutItem  | 1198 |
| 67.18    | TResourceFile                | 1198 |
| 67.18.1  | Description                  | 1198 |
| 67.18.2  | Method overview              | 1199 |
| 67.18.3  | TResourceFile.Init           | 1199 |
| 67.18.4  | TResourceFile.Done           | 1199 |
| 67.18.5  | TResourceFile.Count          | 1199 |
| 67.18.6  | TResourceFile.KeyAt          | 1200 |
| 67.18.7  | TResourceFile.Get            | 1200 |
| 67.18.8  | TResourceFile.SwitchTo       | 1200 |
| 67.18.9  | TResourceFile.Flush          | 1200 |
| 67.18.10 | TResourceFile.Delete         | 1201 |
| 67.18.11 | TResourceFile.Put            | 1201 |
| 67.19    | TSortedCollection            | 1201 |
| 67.19.1  | Description                  | 1201 |
| 67.19.2  | Method overview              | 1202 |
| 67.19.3  | TSortedCollection.Init       | 1202 |
| 67.19.4  | TSortedCollection.Load       | 1202 |
| 67.19.5  | TSortedCollection.KeyOf      | 1202 |
| 67.19.6  | TSortedCollection.IndexOf    | 1203 |
| 67.19.7  | TSortedCollection.Compare    | 1203 |
| 67.19.8  | TSortedCollection.Search     | 1204 |
| 67.19.9  | TSortedCollection.Insert     | 1205 |
| 67.19.10 | TSortedCollection.Store      | 1206 |
| 67.20    | TStrCollection               | 1207 |
| 67.20.1  | Description                  | 1207 |

---

|          |                            |      |
|----------|----------------------------|------|
| 67.20.2  | Method overview            | 1207 |
| 67.20.3  | TStrCollection.Compare     | 1207 |
| 67.20.4  | TStrCollection.GetItem     | 1208 |
| 67.20.5  | TStrCollection.FreeItem    | 1208 |
| 67.20.6  | TStrCollection.PutItem     | 1208 |
| 67.21    | TStream                    | 1209 |
| 67.21.1  | Description                | 1209 |
| 67.21.2  | Method overview            | 1209 |
| 67.21.3  | TStream.Init               | 1209 |
| 67.21.4  | TStream.Get                | 1209 |
| 67.21.5  | TStream.StrRead            | 1210 |
| 67.21.6  | TStream.GetPos             | 1211 |
| 67.21.7  | TStream.GetSize            | 1211 |
| 67.21.8  | TStream.ReadStr            | 1212 |
| 67.21.9  | TStream.Open               | 1213 |
| 67.21.10 | TStream.Close              | 1213 |
| 67.21.11 | TStream.Reset              | 1213 |
| 67.21.12 | TStream.Flush              | 1214 |
| 67.21.13 | TStream.Truncate           | 1214 |
| 67.21.14 | TStream.Put                | 1214 |
| 67.21.15 | TStream.StrWrite           | 1215 |
| 67.21.16 | TStream.WriteStr           | 1215 |
| 67.21.17 | TStream.Seek               | 1215 |
| 67.21.18 | TStream.Error              | 1215 |
| 67.21.19 | TStream.Read               | 1216 |
| 67.21.20 | TStream.Write              | 1216 |
| 67.21.21 | TStream.CopyFrom           | 1217 |
| 67.22    | TStringCollection          | 1217 |
| 67.22.1  | Description                | 1217 |
| 67.22.2  | Method overview            | 1218 |
| 67.22.3  | TStringCollection.GetItem  | 1218 |
| 67.22.4  | TStringCollection.Compare  | 1218 |
| 67.22.5  | TStringCollection.FreeItem | 1219 |
| 67.22.6  | TStringCollection.PutItem  | 1219 |
| 67.23    | TStringList                | 1219 |
| 67.23.1  | Description                | 1219 |
| 67.23.2  | Method overview            | 1220 |
| 67.23.3  | TStringList.Load           | 1220 |
| 67.23.4  | TStringList.Done           | 1220 |
| 67.23.5  | TStringList.Get            | 1220 |

|           |                                     |             |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 67.24     | TStrListMaker                       | 1221        |
| 67.24.1   | Description                         | 1221        |
| 67.24.2   | Method overview                     | 1221        |
| 67.24.3   | TStrListMaker.Init                  | 1221        |
| 67.24.4   | TStrListMaker.Done                  | 1221        |
| 67.24.5   | TStrListMaker.Put                   | 1221        |
| 67.24.6   | TStrListMaker.Store                 | 1222        |
| 67.25     | TUnSortedStrCollection              | 1222        |
| 67.25.1   | Description                         | 1222        |
| 67.25.2   | Method overview                     | 1222        |
| 67.25.3   | TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert       | 1222        |
| <b>68</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'objpas'</b>  | <b>1224</b> |
| 68.1      | Used units                          | 1224        |
| 68.2      | Overview                            | 1224        |
| 68.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 1224        |
| 68.3.1    | Constants                           | 1224        |
| 68.3.2    | Types                               | 1224        |
| <b>69</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'ports'</b>   | <b>1226</b> |
| 69.1      | Used units                          | 1226        |
| 69.2      | Overview                            | 1226        |
| 69.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 1226        |
| 69.3.1    | Variables                           | 1226        |
| 69.4      | tport                               | 1227        |
| 69.4.1    | Description                         | 1227        |
| 69.4.2    | Property overview                   | 1227        |
| 69.4.3    | tport.pp                            | 1227        |
| 69.5      | tportl                              | 1228        |
| 69.5.1    | Description                         | 1228        |
| 69.5.2    | Property overview                   | 1228        |
| 69.5.3    | tportl.pp                           | 1228        |
| 69.6      | tportw                              | 1228        |
| 69.6.1    | Description                         | 1228        |
| 69.6.2    | Property overview                   | 1228        |
| 69.6.3    | tportw.pp                           | 1228        |
| <b>70</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'printer'</b> | <b>1229</b> |
| 70.1      | Used units                          | 1229        |
| 70.2      | Overview                            | 1229        |
| 70.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 1229        |

|           |                                      |             |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 70.3.1    | Variables                            | 1229        |
| 70.4      | Procedures and functions             | 1229        |
| 70.4.1    | AssignLst                            | 1229        |
| 70.4.2    | InitPrinter                          | 1230        |
| 70.4.3    | IsLstAvailable                       | 1230        |
| <b>71</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'sharemem'</b> | <b>1231</b> |
| 71.1      | Used units                           | 1231        |
| 71.2      | Overview                             | 1231        |
| <b>72</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Sockets'</b>  | <b>1232</b> |
| 72.1      | Used units                           | 1232        |
| 72.2      | Overview                             | 1232        |
| 72.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 1232        |
| 72.3.1    | Constants                            | 1232        |
| 72.3.2    | Types                                | 1258        |
| 72.4      | Procedures and functions             | 1261        |
| 72.4.1    | Accept                               | 1261        |
| 72.4.2    | Bind                                 | 1262        |
| 72.4.3    | CloseSocket                          | 1263        |
| 72.4.4    | Connect                              | 1263        |
| 72.4.5    | fpaccept                             | 1265        |
| 72.4.6    | fpbind                               | 1266        |
| 72.4.7    | fpconnect                            | 1267        |
| 72.4.8    | fpgetpeername                        | 1269        |
| 72.4.9    | fpgetsockname                        | 1269        |
| 72.4.10   | fpgetsockopt                         | 1270        |
| 72.4.11   | fplisten                             | 1270        |
| 72.4.12   | fprecv                               | 1270        |
| 72.4.13   | fprecvfrom                           | 1271        |
| 72.4.14   | fpseend                              | 1271        |
| 72.4.15   | fpseendto                            | 1272        |
| 72.4.16   | fpsetsockopt                         | 1272        |
| 72.4.17   | fpshutdown                           | 1273        |
| 72.4.18   | fpsocket                             | 1273        |
| 72.4.19   | fpsocketpair                         | 1274        |
| 72.4.20   | HostAddrToStr                        | 1274        |
| 72.4.21   | HostAddrToStr6                       | 1274        |
| 72.4.22   | HostToNet                            | 1274        |
| 72.4.23   | htonl                                | 1275        |
| 72.4.24   | htons                                | 1275        |

|           |                                     |             |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 72.4.25   | NetAddrToStr                        | 1275        |
| 72.4.26   | NetAddrToStr6                       | 1275        |
| 72.4.27   | NetToHost                           | 1276        |
| 72.4.28   | NToHl                               | 1276        |
| 72.4.29   | NToHs                               | 1276        |
| 72.4.30   | ShortHostToNet                      | 1276        |
| 72.4.31   | ShortNetToHost                      | 1277        |
| 72.4.32   | Sock2File                           | 1277        |
| 72.4.33   | Sock2Text                           | 1277        |
| 72.4.34   | socketerror                         | 1277        |
| 72.4.35   | Str2UnixSockAddr                    | 1278        |
| 72.4.36   | StrToHostAddr                       | 1278        |
| 72.4.37   | StrToHostAddr6                      | 1278        |
| 72.4.38   | StrToNetAddr                        | 1278        |
| 72.4.39   | StrToNetAddr6                       | 1279        |
| 72.4.40   | TryStrToHostAddr                    | 1279        |
| 72.4.41   | TryStrToHostAddr6                   | 1279        |
| 72.5      | linger                              | 1279        |
| 72.6      | sockaddr_in                         | 1279        |
| 72.7      | sockaddr_in6                        | 1280        |
| 72.8      | sockaddr_un                         | 1280        |
| 72.9      | TUnixSockAddr                       | 1280        |
| 72.10     | ucred                               | 1280        |
| <b>73</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Strings'</b> | <b>1281</b> |
| 73.1      | Used units                          | 1281        |
| 73.2      | Overview                            | 1281        |
| 73.3      | Procedures and functions            | 1281        |
| 73.3.1    | stralloc                            | 1281        |
| 73.3.2    | strcat                              | 1281        |
| 73.3.3    | strcomp                             | 1282        |
| 73.3.4    | strcopy                             | 1282        |
| 73.3.5    | strdispose                          | 1283        |
| 73.3.6    | strecopy                            | 1284        |
| 73.3.7    | strend                              | 1284        |
| 73.3.8    | stricomp                            | 1285        |
| 73.3.9    | stripos                             | 1285        |
| 73.3.10   | striscan                            | 1286        |
| 73.3.11   | strlcat                             | 1286        |
| 73.3.12   | strlcomp                            | 1287        |

|           |                                      |             |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 73.3.13   | strcpy                               | 1287        |
| 73.3.14   | strlen                               | 1288        |
| 73.3.15   | strlcomp                             | 1288        |
| 73.3.16   | strlower                             | 1289        |
| 73.3.17   | strmove                              | 1289        |
| 73.3.18   | strnew                               | 1290        |
| 73.3.19   | strpas                               | 1291        |
| 73.3.20   | strpcopy                             | 1291        |
| 73.3.21   | strpos                               | 1292        |
| 73.3.22   | strriscan                            | 1292        |
| 73.3.23   | strrscan                             | 1293        |
| 73.3.24   | strscan                              | 1293        |
| 73.3.25   | strupper                             | 1293        |
| <b>74</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'StrUtils'</b> | <b>1294</b> |
| 74.1      | Used units                           | 1294        |
| 74.2      | Constants, types and variables       | 1294        |
| 74.2.1    | Resource strings                     | 1294        |
| 74.2.2    | Constants                            | 1294        |
| 74.2.3    | Types                                | 1295        |
| 74.3      | Procedures and functions             | 1297        |
| 74.3.1    | AddChar                              | 1297        |
| 74.3.2    | AddCharR                             | 1297        |
| 74.3.3    | AnsiContainsStr                      | 1297        |
| 74.3.4    | AnsiContainsText                     | 1298        |
| 74.3.5    | AnsiEndsStr                          | 1298        |
| 74.3.6    | AnsiEndsText                         | 1298        |
| 74.3.7    | AnsiIndexStr                         | 1298        |
| 74.3.8    | AnsiIndexText                        | 1299        |
| 74.3.9    | AnsiLeftStr                          | 1299        |
| 74.3.10   | AnsiMatchStr                         | 1299        |
| 74.3.11   | AnsiMatchText                        | 1300        |
| 74.3.12   | AnsiMidStr                           | 1300        |
| 74.3.13   | AnsiProperCase                       | 1300        |
| 74.3.14   | AnsiReplaceStr                       | 1300        |
| 74.3.15   | AnsiReplaceText                      | 1301        |
| 74.3.16   | AnsiResemblesText                    | 1301        |
| 74.3.17   | AnsiReverseString                    | 1301        |
| 74.3.18   | AnsiRightStr                         | 1302        |
| 74.3.19   | AnsiStartsStr                        | 1302        |

|         |  |      |
|---------|--|------|
| 74.3.20 | <a href="#">AnsiStartsText</a>                       | 1302 |
| 74.3.21 | <a href="#">BinToHex</a>                             | 1303 |
| 74.3.22 | <a href="#">ContainsStr</a>                          | 1303 |
| 74.3.23 | <a href="#">ContainsText</a>                         | 1303 |
| 74.3.24 | <a href="#">Copy2Space</a>                           | 1304 |
| 74.3.25 | <a href="#">Copy2SpaceDel</a>                        | 1304 |
| 74.3.26 | <a href="#">Copy2Symb</a>                            | 1304 |
| 74.3.27 | <a href="#">Copy2SymbDel</a>                         | 1305 |
| 74.3.28 | <a href="#">Dec2Numb</a>                             | 1305 |
| 74.3.29 | <a href="#">DecodeSoundexInt</a>                     | 1305 |
| 74.3.30 | <a href="#">DecodeSoundexWord</a>                    | 1305 |
| 74.3.31 | <a href="#">DelChars</a>                             | 1306 |
| 74.3.32 | <a href="#">DelSpace</a>                             | 1306 |
| 74.3.33 | <a href="#">DelSpace1</a>                            | 1306 |
| 74.3.34 | <a href="#">DupeString</a>                           | 1306 |
| 74.3.35 | <a href="#">EndsStr</a>                              | 1307 |
| 74.3.36 | <a href="#">EndsText</a>                             | 1307 |
| 74.3.37 | <a href="#">ExtractDelimited</a>                     | 1307 |
| 74.3.38 | <a href="#">ExtractSubstr</a>                        | 1308 |
| 74.3.39 | <a href="#">ExtractWord</a>                          | 1308 |
| 74.3.40 | <a href="#">ExtractWordPos</a>                       | 1308 |
| 74.3.41 | <a href="#">FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive</a> | 1309 |
| 74.3.42 | <a href="#">FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive</a>   | 1309 |
| 74.3.43 | <a href="#">FindPart</a>                             | 1310 |
| 74.3.44 | <a href="#">GetCmdLineArg</a>                        | 1310 |
| 74.3.45 | <a href="#">Hex2Dec</a>                              | 1311 |
| 74.3.46 | <a href="#">Hex2Dec64</a>                            | 1311 |
| 74.3.47 | <a href="#">HexToBin</a>                             | 1311 |
| 74.3.48 | <a href="#">IfThen</a>                               | 1311 |
| 74.3.49 | <a href="#">in(string,):Boolean</a>                  | 1312 |
| 74.3.50 | <a href="#">in(UnicodeString,):Boolean</a>           | 1312 |
| 74.3.51 | <a href="#">IndexStr</a>                             | 1312 |
| 74.3.52 | <a href="#">IndexText</a>                            | 1312 |
| 74.3.53 | <a href="#">IntToBin</a>                             | 1313 |
| 74.3.54 | <a href="#">IntToRoman</a>                           | 1313 |
| 74.3.55 | <a href="#">IsEmptyStr</a>                           | 1313 |
| 74.3.56 | <a href="#">IsWild</a>                               | 1313 |
| 74.3.57 | <a href="#">IsWordPresent</a>                        | 1314 |
| 74.3.58 | <a href="#">LeftBStr</a>                             | 1314 |
| 74.3.59 | <a href="#">LeftStr</a>                              | 1314 |

|         |                     |      |
|---------|---------------------|------|
| 74.3.60 | MatchStr            | 1315 |
| 74.3.61 | MatchText           | 1315 |
| 74.3.62 | MidBStr             | 1315 |
| 74.3.63 | MidStr              | 1316 |
| 74.3.64 | NaturalCompareText  | 1316 |
| 74.3.65 | NPos                | 1316 |
| 74.3.66 | Numb2Dec            | 1317 |
| 74.3.67 | Numb2USA            | 1317 |
| 74.3.68 | PadCenter           | 1317 |
| 74.3.69 | PadLeft             | 1318 |
| 74.3.70 | PadRight            | 1318 |
| 74.3.71 | PosEx               | 1318 |
| 74.3.72 | PosSet              | 1319 |
| 74.3.73 | PosSetEx            | 1319 |
| 74.3.74 | RandomFrom          | 1319 |
| 74.3.75 | Removeleadingchars  | 1319 |
| 74.3.76 | RemovePadChars      | 1320 |
| 74.3.77 | RemoveTrailingChars | 1320 |
| 74.3.78 | ReplaceStr          | 1320 |
| 74.3.79 | ReplaceText         | 1321 |
| 74.3.80 | ResemblesText       | 1321 |
| 74.3.81 | ReverseString       | 1321 |
| 74.3.82 | RightBStr           | 1321 |
| 74.3.83 | RightStr            | 1322 |
| 74.3.84 | RomanToInt          | 1322 |
| 74.3.85 | RomanToIntDef       | 1322 |
| 74.3.86 | RPos                | 1323 |
| 74.3.87 | RPosEx              | 1323 |
| 74.3.88 | SearchBuf           | 1323 |
| 74.3.89 | Soundex             | 1324 |
| 74.3.90 | SoundexCompare      | 1324 |
| 74.3.91 | SoundexInt          | 1325 |
| 74.3.92 | SoundexProc         | 1325 |
| 74.3.93 | SoundexSimilar      | 1325 |
| 74.3.94 | SoundexWord         | 1326 |
| 74.3.95 | SplitCommandLine    | 1326 |
| 74.3.96 | SplitString         | 1326 |
| 74.3.97 | StartsStr           | 1326 |
| 74.3.98 | StartsText          | 1327 |
| 74.3.99 | StringReplace       | 1327 |

|           |                                    |             |
|-----------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| 74.3.100  | StringsReplace                     | 1327        |
| 74.3.101  | StuffString                        | 1328        |
| 74.3.102  | Tab2Space                          | 1328        |
| 74.3.103  | TrimLeftSet                        | 1329        |
| 74.3.104  | TrimRightSet                       | 1329        |
| 74.3.105  | TrimSet                            | 1329        |
| 74.3.106  | TryRomanToInt                      | 1329        |
| 74.3.107  | WordCount                          | 1330        |
| 74.3.108  | WordPosition                       | 1330        |
| 74.3.109  | XorDecode                          | 1330        |
| 74.3.110  | XorEncode                          | 1331        |
| 74.3.111  | XorString                          | 1331        |
| <b>75</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'System'</b> | <b>1332</b> |
| 75.1      | Overview                           | 1332        |
| 75.2      | Unicode and codepage support       | 1332        |
| 75.3      | Miscellaneous functions            | 1333        |
| 75.4      | Operating System functions         | 1334        |
| 75.5      | String handling                    | 1334        |
| 75.6      | Mathematical routines              | 1335        |
| 75.7      | Memory management functions        | 1336        |
| 75.8      | File handling functions            | 1336        |
| 75.9      | Run-Time Error behaviour           | 1337        |
| 75.10     | Constants, types and variables     | 1337        |
| 75.10.1   | Constants                          | 1337        |
| 75.10.2   | Types                              | 1365        |
| 75.10.3   | Variables                          | 1409        |
| 75.11     | Procedures and functions           | 1414        |
| 75.11.1   | Abs                                | 1414        |
| 75.11.2   | AbstractError                      | 1415        |
| 75.11.3   | AcquireExceptionObject             | 1415        |
| 75.11.4   | add(variant,variant):variant       | 1415        |
| 75.11.5   | AddExitProc                        | 1415        |
| 75.11.6   | Addr                               | 1416        |
| 75.11.7   | Align                              | 1416        |
| 75.11.8   | AllocMem                           | 1417        |
| 75.11.9   | AnsiToUtf8                         | 1417        |
| 75.11.10  | Append                             | 1417        |
| 75.11.11  | ArcTan                             | 1418        |
| 75.11.12  | ArrayStringToPPchar                | 1418        |

|          |                                  |      |
|----------|----------------------------------|------|
| 75.11.13 | Assert                           | 1419 |
| 75.11.14 | Assign                           | 1419 |
| 75.11.15 | assign(Comp):olevariant          | 1420 |
| 75.11.16 | assign(Comp):variant             | 1420 |
| 75.11.17 | assign(extended):olevariant      | 1420 |
| 75.11.18 | assign(extended):variant         | 1420 |
| 75.11.19 | assign(olevariant):Comp          | 1420 |
| 75.11.20 | assign(olevariant):extended      | 1421 |
| 75.11.21 | assign(olevariant):Real          | 1421 |
| 75.11.22 | assign(olevariant):single        | 1421 |
| 75.11.23 | assign(olevariant):UnicodeString | 1421 |
| 75.11.24 | assign(Real):olevariant          | 1421 |
| 75.11.25 | assign(Real):variant             | 1421 |
| 75.11.26 | assign(Real48):extended          | 1421 |
| 75.11.27 | assign(single):olevariant        | 1422 |
| 75.11.28 | assign(single):variant           | 1422 |
| 75.11.29 | assign(UCS4String):variant       | 1422 |
| 75.11.30 | assign(UnicodeString):olevariant | 1422 |
| 75.11.31 | assign(UnicodeString):variant    | 1422 |
| 75.11.32 | assign(UTF8String):variant       | 1422 |
| 75.11.33 | assign(variant):Comp             | 1423 |
| 75.11.34 | assign(variant):extended         | 1423 |
| 75.11.35 | assign(variant):Real             | 1423 |
| 75.11.36 | assign(variant):single           | 1423 |
| 75.11.37 | assign(variant):unicodestring    | 1423 |
| 75.11.38 | assign(variant):UTF8String       | 1423 |
| 75.11.39 | Assigned                         | 1423 |
| 75.11.40 | BasicEventCreate                 | 1424 |
| 75.11.41 | BasicEventDestroy                | 1424 |
| 75.11.42 | BasicEventResetEvent             | 1425 |
| 75.11.43 | BasicEventSetEvent               | 1425 |
| 75.11.44 | BasicEventWaitFor                | 1425 |
| 75.11.45 | BeginThread                      | 1425 |
| 75.11.46 | BEtoN                            | 1426 |
| 75.11.47 | BinStr                           | 1426 |
| 75.11.48 | BlockRead                        | 1427 |
| 75.11.49 | BlockWrite                       | 1428 |
| 75.11.50 | Break                            | 1428 |
| 75.11.51 | BsfByte                          | 1430 |
| 75.11.52 | BsfDWord                         | 1430 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.53 BsfQWord . . . . .                        | 1430 |
| 75.11.54 BsfWord . . . . .                         | 1431 |
| 75.11.55 BsrByte . . . . .                         | 1431 |
| 75.11.56 BsrDWord . . . . .                        | 1431 |
| 75.11.57 BsrQWord . . . . .                        | 1431 |
| 75.11.58 BsrWord . . . . .                         | 1432 |
| 75.11.59 CaptureBacktrace . . . . .                | 1432 |
| 75.11.60 ChDir . . . . .                           | 1432 |
| 75.11.61 Chr . . . . .                             | 1433 |
| 75.11.62 Close . . . . .                           | 1433 |
| 75.11.63 CloseThread . . . . .                     | 1434 |
| 75.11.64 CompareByte . . . . .                     | 1434 |
| 75.11.65 CompareChar . . . . .                     | 1435 |
| 75.11.66 CompareChar0 . . . . .                    | 1436 |
| 75.11.67 CompareDWord . . . . .                    | 1437 |
| 75.11.68 CompareWord . . . . .                     | 1438 |
| 75.11.69 Concat . . . . .                          | 1439 |
| 75.11.70 Continue . . . . .                        | 1439 |
| 75.11.71 Copy . . . . .                            | 1441 |
| 75.11.72 CopyArray . . . . .                       | 1442 |
| 75.11.73 Cos . . . . .                             | 1442 |
| 75.11.74 CSeg . . . . .                            | 1442 |
| 75.11.75 Dec . . . . .                             | 1443 |
| 75.11.76 Default . . . . .                         | 1444 |
| 75.11.77 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove . . . . .         | 1444 |
| 75.11.78 DefaultAnsi2WideMove . . . . .            | 1444 |
| 75.11.79 DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove . . . . .         | 1445 |
| 75.11.80 Delete . . . . .                          | 1445 |
| 75.11.81 Dispose . . . . .                         | 1446 |
| 75.11.82 divide(variant,variant):variant . . . . . | 1447 |
| 75.11.83 DoneCriticalSection . . . . .             | 1447 |
| 75.11.84 DoneThread . . . . .                      | 1447 |
| 75.11.85 DSeg . . . . .                            | 1447 |
| 75.11.86 DumpExceptionBacktrace . . . . .          | 1448 |
| 75.11.87 Dump_Stack . . . . .                      | 1448 |
| 75.11.88 DynArrayBounds . . . . .                  | 1448 |
| 75.11.89 DynArrayClear . . . . .                   | 1449 |
| 75.11.90 DynArrayDim . . . . .                     | 1449 |
| 75.11.91 DynArrayIndex . . . . .                   | 1449 |
| 75.11.92 DynArraySetLength . . . . .               | 1449 |

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 75.11.93 DynArraySize . . . . .                   | 1450 |
| 75.11.94 EmptyMethod . . . . .                    | 1450 |
| 75.11.95 EndThread . . . . .                      | 1450 |
| 75.11.96 EnterCriticalSection . . . . .           | 1451 |
| 75.11.97 EnumResourceLanguages . . . . .          | 1451 |
| 75.11.98 EnumResourceNames . . . . .              | 1452 |
| 75.11.99 EnumResourceTypes . . . . .              | 1452 |
| 75.11.100EOF . . . . .                            | 1452 |
| 75.11.101EOLn . . . . .                           | 1453 |
| 75.11.102equal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . . | 1454 |
| 75.11.103Erase . . . . .                          | 1454 |
| 75.11.104Error . . . . .                          | 1455 |
| 75.11.105Exclude . . . . .                        | 1455 |
| 75.11.106Exit . . . . .                           | 1456 |
| 75.11.107Exp . . . . .                            | 1458 |
| 75.11.108Fail . . . . .                           | 1458 |
| 75.11.109FilePos . . . . .                        | 1459 |
| 75.11.110FileSize . . . . .                       | 1460 |
| 75.11.111FillByte . . . . .                       | 1460 |
| 75.11.112FillChar . . . . .                       | 1461 |
| 75.11.113FillDWord . . . . .                      | 1462 |
| 75.11.114FillWord . . . . .                       | 1462 |
| 75.11.115Finalize . . . . .                       | 1463 |
| 75.11.116FinalizeArray . . . . .                  | 1463 |
| 75.11.117FindResource . . . . .                   | 1463 |
| 75.11.118FindResourceEx . . . . .                 | 1464 |
| 75.11.119float_raise . . . . .                    | 1465 |
| 75.11.120Flush . . . . .                          | 1465 |
| 75.11.121FlushThread . . . . .                    | 1466 |
| 75.11.122FMADouble . . . . .                      | 1466 |
| 75.11.123FMAExtended . . . . .                    | 1466 |
| 75.11.124FMASingle . . . . .                      | 1466 |
| 75.11.125FPower10 . . . . .                       | 1466 |
| 75.11.126Frac . . . . .                           | 1466 |
| 75.11.127FreeLibrary . . . . .                    | 1467 |
| 75.11.128Freemem . . . . .                        | 1467 |
| 75.11.129Freememory . . . . .                     | 1468 |
| 75.11.130FreeResource . . . . .                   | 1468 |
| 75.11.131Get8087CW . . . . .                      | 1468 |
| 75.11.132GetCPUCount . . . . .                    | 1468 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.133GetCurrentThreadId . . . . .                          | 1469 |
| 75.11.134GetDir . . . . .                                      | 1469 |
| 75.11.135GetDynLibsManager . . . . .                           | 1469 |
| 75.11.136GetFPCHeapStatus . . . . .                            | 1470 |
| 75.11.137GetHeapStatus . . . . .                               | 1470 |
| 75.11.138GetLoadErrorStr . . . . .                             | 1470 |
| 75.11.139GetMem . . . . .                                      | 1470 |
| 75.11.140GetMemory . . . . .                                   | 1471 |
| 75.11.141GetMemoryManager . . . . .                            | 1471 |
| 75.11.142GetMXCSR . . . . .                                    | 1471 |
| 75.11.143GetProcAddress . . . . .                              | 1471 |
| 75.11.144GetProcedureAddress . . . . .                         | 1471 |
| 75.11.145GetProcessID . . . . .                                | 1472 |
| 75.11.146GetResourceManager . . . . .                          | 1472 |
| 75.11.147GetSSECSR . . . . .                                   | 1472 |
| 75.11.148GetTextCodePage . . . . .                             | 1472 |
| 75.11.149GetThreadID . . . . .                                 | 1473 |
| 75.11.150GetThreadManager . . . . .                            | 1473 |
| 75.11.151GetTypeKind . . . . .                                 | 1473 |
| 75.11.152GetUnicodeStringManager . . . . .                     | 1473 |
| 75.11.153GetVariantManager . . . . .                           | 1474 |
| 75.11.154GetWideStringManager . . . . .                        | 1474 |
| 75.11.155get_caller_addr . . . . .                             | 1474 |
| 75.11.156get_caller_frame . . . . .                            | 1475 |
| 75.11.157get_caller_stackinfo . . . . .                        | 1475 |
| 75.11.158get_cmdline . . . . .                                 | 1475 |
| 75.11.159get_frame . . . . .                                   | 1475 |
| 75.11.160Get_pc_addr . . . . .                                 | 1476 |
| 75.11.161greaterthan(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .        | 1476 |
| 75.11.162greaterthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . . | 1476 |
| 75.11.163Halt . . . . .  | 1476 |
| 75.11.164HexStr . . . . .                                      | 1477 |
| 75.11.165Hi . . . . .  | 1477 |
| 75.11.166High . . . . .  | 1478 |
| 75.11.167HINSTANCE . . . . .                                   | 1480 |
| 75.11.168Inc . . . . .   | 1480 |
| 75.11.169Include . . . . .                                     | 1481 |
| 75.11.170IndexByte . . . . .                                   | 1481 |
| 75.11.171IndexChar . . . . .                                   | 1482 |
| 75.11.172IndexChar0 . . . . .                                  | 1483 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 75.11.173IndexDWord . . . . .                               | 1483 |
| 75.11.174IndexQWord . . . . .                               | 1484 |
| 75.11.175Indexword . . . . .                                | 1484 |
| 75.11.176InitCriticalSection . . . . .                      | 1485 |
| 75.11.177Initialize . . . . .                               | 1485 |
| 75.11.178InitializeArray . . . . .                          | 1487 |
| 75.11.179InitThread . . . . .                               | 1487 |
| 75.11.180InitThreadVars . . . . .                           | 1487 |
| 75.11.181Insert . . . . .                                   | 1488 |
| 75.11.182Int . . . . .                                      | 1488 |
| 75.11.183intdivide(variant,variant):variant . . . . .       | 1489 |
| 75.11.184InterlockedCompareExchange . . . . .               | 1489 |
| 75.11.185InterlockedCompareExchange64 . . . . .             | 1490 |
| 75.11.186InterlockedCompareExchangePointer . . . . .        | 1490 |
| 75.11.187InterlockedDecrement . . . . .                     | 1490 |
| 75.11.188InterlockedDecrement64 . . . . .                   | 1490 |
| 75.11.189InterlockedExchange . . . . .                      | 1491 |
| 75.11.190InterlockedExchange64 . . . . .                    | 1491 |
| 75.11.191InterlockedExchangeAdd . . . . .                   | 1491 |
| 75.11.192InterlockedExchangeAdd64 . . . . .                 | 1491 |
| 75.11.193InterlockedIncrement . . . . .                     | 1492 |
| 75.11.194InterlockedIncrement64 . . . . .                   | 1492 |
| 75.11.195IOResult . . . . .                                 | 1492 |
| 75.11.196IsDynArrayRectangular . . . . .                    | 1493 |
| 75.11.197IsMemoryManagerSet . . . . .                       | 1494 |
| 75.11.198Is_IntResource . . . . .                           | 1494 |
| 75.11.199KillThread . . . . .                               | 1494 |
| 75.11.200LeaveCriticalSection . . . . .                     | 1494 |
| 75.11.201leftshift(variant,variant):variant . . . . .       | 1495 |
| 75.11.202Length . . . . .                                   | 1495 |
| 75.11.203lessthan(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .        | 1496 |
| 75.11.204lessthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . . | 1496 |
| 75.11.205LEtoN . . . . .                                    | 1496 |
| 75.11.206Ln . . . . .                                       | 1497 |
| 75.11.207Lo . . . . .                                       | 1497 |
| 75.11.208LoadLibrary . . . . .                              | 1498 |
| 75.11.209LoadResource . . . . .                             | 1498 |
| 75.11.210LockResource . . . . .                             | 1499 |
| 75.11.211logicaland(variant,variant):variant . . . . .      | 1499 |
| 75.11.212logicalnot(variant):variant . . . . .              | 1499 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.213logicalor(variant,variant):variant . . . . .  | 1499 |
| 75.11.214logicalxor(variant,variant):variant . . . . . | 1500 |
| 75.11.215longjmp . . . . .                             | 1500 |
| 75.11.216Low . . . . .                                 | 1500 |
| 75.11.217LowerCase . . . . .                           | 1501 |
| 75.11.218MakeLangID . . . . .                          | 1501 |
| 75.11.219MemSize . . . . .                             | 1502 |
| 75.11.220MkDir . . . . .                               | 1502 |
| 75.11.221modulus(variant,variant):variant . . . . .    | 1502 |
| 75.11.222Move . . . . .                                | 1502 |
| 75.11.223MoveChar0 . . . . .                           | 1503 |
| 75.11.224multiply(variant,variant):variant . . . . .   | 1504 |
| 75.11.225negative(variant):variant . . . . .           | 1504 |
| 75.11.226New . . . . .                                 | 1504 |
| 75.11.227NtoBE . . . . .                               | 1505 |
| 75.11.228NtoLE . . . . .                               | 1505 |
| 75.11.229Null . . . . .                                | 1505 |
| 75.11.230OctStr . . . . .                              | 1505 |
| 75.11.231Odd . . . . .                                 | 1506 |
| 75.11.232Ofs . . . . .                                 | 1506 |
| 75.11.233Ord . . . . .                                 | 1507 |
| 75.11.234Pack . . . . .                                | 1508 |
| 75.11.235ParamCount . . . . .                          | 1508 |
| 75.11.236ParamStr . . . . .                            | 1509 |
| 75.11.237Pi . . . . .                                  | 1509 |
| 75.11.238PopCnt . . . . .                              | 1510 |
| 75.11.239Pos . . . . .                                 | 1510 |
| 75.11.240power(variant,variant):variant . . . . .      | 1511 |
| 75.11.241Pred . . . . .                                | 1511 |
| 75.11.242Prefetch . . . . .                            | 1512 |
| 75.11.243Ptr . . . . .                                 | 1512 |
| 75.11.244RaiseList . . . . .                           | 1513 |
| 75.11.245Random . . . . .                              | 1513 |
| 75.11.246Randomize . . . . .                           | 1514 |
| 75.11.247Read . . . . .                                | 1514 |
| 75.11.248ReadBarrier . . . . .                         | 1515 |
| 75.11.249ReadDependencyBarrier . . . . .               | 1515 |
| 75.11.250ReadLn . . . . .                              | 1515 |
| 75.11.251ReadStr . . . . .                             | 1516 |
| 75.11.252ReadWriteBarrier . . . . .                    | 1516 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.253Real2Double . . . . .                         | 1517 |
| 75.11.254ReAllocMem . . . . .                          | 1517 |
| 75.11.255ReAllocMemory . . . . .                       | 1518 |
| 75.11.256ReleaseExceptionObject . . . . .              | 1518 |
| 75.11.257Rename . . . . .                              | 1518 |
| 75.11.258Reset . . . . .                               | 1519 |
| 75.11.259ResumeThread . . . . .                        | 1520 |
| 75.11.260Rewrite . . . . .                             | 1520 |
| 75.11.261rightshift(variant,variant):variant . . . . . | 1521 |
| 75.11.262Rmdir . . . . .                               | 1521 |
| 75.11.263RolByte . . . . .                             | 1522 |
| 75.11.264RolDWord . . . . .                            | 1522 |
| 75.11.265RolQWord . . . . .                            | 1522 |
| 75.11.266RolWord . . . . .                             | 1523 |
| 75.11.267RorByte . . . . .                             | 1523 |
| 75.11.268RorDWord . . . . .                            | 1523 |
| 75.11.269RorQWord . . . . .                            | 1523 |
| 75.11.270RorWord . . . . .                             | 1524 |
| 75.11.271Round . . . . .                               | 1524 |
| 75.11.272RTLEventCreate . . . . .                      | 1525 |
| 75.11.273RTLEventDestroy . . . . .                     | 1525 |
| 75.11.274RTLEventResetEvent . . . . .                  | 1525 |
| 75.11.275RTLEventSetEvent . . . . .                    | 1525 |
| 75.11.276RTLEventWaitFor . . . . .                     | 1526 |
| 75.11.277RunError . . . . .                            | 1526 |
| 75.11.278SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .                     | 1526 |
| 75.11.279SarInt64 . . . . .                            | 1527 |
| 75.11.280SarLongint . . . . .                          | 1527 |
| 75.11.281SarShortint . . . . .                         | 1527 |
| 75.11.282SarSmallint . . . . .                         | 1527 |
| 75.11.283Seek . . . . .                                | 1528 |
| 75.11.284SeekEOF . . . . .                             | 1528 |
| 75.11.285SeekEOLn . . . . .                            | 1529 |
| 75.11.286Seg . . . . .                                 | 1530 |
| 75.11.287Set8087CW . . . . .                           | 1530 |
| 75.11.288SetCodePage . . . . .                         | 1530 |
| 75.11.289SetDynLibsManager . . . . .                   | 1531 |
| 75.11.290Setjmp . . . . .                              | 1531 |
| 75.11.291SetLength . . . . .                           | 1532 |
| 75.11.292SetMemoryManager . . . . .                    | 1533 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.293SetMultiByteConversionCodePage . . . . .    | 1533 |
| 75.11.294SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage . . . . .    | 1533 |
| 75.11.295SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage . . . . . | 1534 |
| 75.11.296SetMXCSR . . . . .                          | 1534 |
| 75.11.297SetResourceManager . . . . .                | 1534 |
| 75.11.298SetSSECSR . . . . .                         | 1534 |
| 75.11.299SetString . . . . .                         | 1535 |
| 75.11.300SetTextBuf . . . . .                        | 1535 |
| 75.11.301SetTextCodePage . . . . .                   | 1536 |
| 75.11.302SetTextLineEnding . . . . .                 | 1536 |
| 75.11.303SetThreadDebugName . . . . .                | 1537 |
| 75.11.304SetThreadManager . . . . .                  | 1537 |
| 75.11.305SetUnicodeStringManager . . . . .           | 1537 |
| 75.11.306SetVariantManager . . . . .                 | 1538 |
| 75.11.307SetWideStringManager . . . . .              | 1538 |
| 75.11.308ShortCompareText . . . . .                  | 1538 |
| 75.11.309Sin . . . . .                               | 1539 |
| 75.11.310SizeOf . . . . .                            | 1539 |
| 75.11.311SizeofResource . . . . .                    | 1540 |
| 75.11.312Slice . . . . .                             | 1540 |
| 75.11.313Space . . . . .                             | 1540 |
| 75.11.314SPtr . . . . .                              | 1541 |
| 75.11.315Sqr . . . . .                               | 1541 |
| 75.11.316Sqrt . . . . .                              | 1542 |
| 75.11.317SSeg . . . . .                              | 1542 |
| 75.11.318StackTop . . . . .                          | 1542 |
| 75.11.319Str . . . . .                               | 1543 |
| 75.11.320StringCodePage . . . . .                    | 1544 |
| 75.11.321StringElementSize . . . . .                 | 1545 |
| 75.11.322StringOfChar . . . . .                      | 1545 |
| 75.11.323StringRefCount . . . . .                    | 1545 |
| 75.11.324StringToPPChar . . . . .                    | 1546 |
| 75.11.325StringToUnicodeChar . . . . .               | 1546 |
| 75.11.326StringToWideChar . . . . .                  | 1546 |
| 75.11.327StrLen . . . . .                            | 1547 |
| 75.11.328StrPas . . . . .                            | 1547 |
| 75.11.329subtract(variant,variant):variant . . . . . | 1547 |
| 75.11.330Succ . . . . .                              | 1548 |
| 75.11.331SuspendThread . . . . .                     | 1548 |
| 75.11.332Swap . . . . .                              | 1548 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 75.11.333SwapEndian . . . . .                            | 1549 |
| 75.11.334SysAllocMem . . . . .                           | 1549 |
| 75.11.335SysAssert . . . . .                             | 1549 |
| 75.11.336SysBacktraceStr . . . . .                       | 1550 |
| 75.11.337SysFlushStdIO . . . . .                         | 1550 |
| 75.11.338SysFreemem . . . . .                            | 1550 |
| 75.11.339SysFreememSize . . . . .                        | 1550 |
| 75.11.340SysGetFPCHeapStatus . . . . .                   | 1551 |
| 75.11.341SysGetHeapStatus . . . . .                      | 1551 |
| 75.11.342SysGetmem . . . . .                             | 1551 |
| 75.11.343SysInitExceptions . . . . .                     | 1551 |
| 75.11.344SysInitFPU . . . . .                            | 1552 |
| 75.11.345SysInitStdIO . . . . .                          | 1552 |
| 75.11.346SysMemSize . . . . .                            | 1552 |
| 75.11.347SysReAllocMem . . . . .                         | 1552 |
| 75.11.348SysResetFPU . . . . .                           | 1552 |
| 75.11.349SysSetCtrlBreakHandler . . . . .                | 1553 |
| 75.11.350SysTryResizeMem . . . . .                       | 1553 |
| 75.11.351ThreadGetPriority . . . . .                     | 1553 |
| 75.11.352ThreadSetPriority . . . . .                     | 1553 |
| 75.11.353ThreadSwitch . . . . .                          | 1554 |
| 75.11.354ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName . . . . . | 1554 |
| 75.11.355Trunc . . . . .                                 | 1554 |
| 75.11.356Truncate . . . . .                              | 1555 |
| 75.11.357TryEnterCriticalSection . . . . .               | 1555 |
| 75.11.358TypeInfo . . . . .                              | 1556 |
| 75.11.359TypeOf . . . . .                                | 1556 |
| 75.11.360UCS4StringToUnicodeString . . . . .             | 1556 |
| 75.11.361UCS4StringToWideString . . . . .                | 1556 |
| 75.11.362Unassigned . . . . .                            | 1556 |
| 75.11.363UnicodeCharLenToString . . . . .                | 1557 |
| 75.11.364UnicodeCharLenToStrVar . . . . .                | 1557 |
| 75.11.365UnicodeCharToString . . . . .                   | 1557 |
| 75.11.366UnicodeCharToStrVar . . . . .                   | 1558 |
| 75.11.367UnicodeStringToUCS4String . . . . .             | 1558 |
| 75.11.368UnicodeToUtf8 . . . . .                         | 1558 |
| 75.11.369UniqueString . . . . .                          | 1558 |
| 75.11.370UnloadLibrary . . . . .                         | 1559 |
| 75.11.371UnlockResource . . . . .                        | 1559 |
| 75.11.372UnPack . . . . .                                | 1559 |

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| 75.11.373UpCase                    | 1559 |
| 75.11.374Utf8CodePointLen          | 1560 |
| 75.11.375UTF8Decode                | 1561 |
| 75.11.376UTF8Encode                | 1561 |
| 75.11.377Utf8ToAnsi                | 1561 |
| 75.11.378UTF8ToString              | 1562 |
| 75.11.379Utf8ToUnicode             | 1562 |
| 75.11.380Val                       | 1562 |
| 75.11.381VarArrayGet               | 1563 |
| 75.11.382VarArrayPut               | 1563 |
| 75.11.383VarArrayRedim             | 1564 |
| 75.11.384VarCast                   | 1564 |
| 75.11.385WaitForThreadTerminate    | 1564 |
| 75.11.386WideCharLenToString       | 1565 |
| 75.11.387WideCharLenToStrVar       | 1565 |
| 75.11.388WideCharToString          | 1565 |
| 75.11.389WideCharToStrVar          | 1566 |
| 75.11.390WideStringToUCS4String    | 1566 |
| 75.11.391Write                     | 1566 |
| 75.11.392WriteBarrier              | 1567 |
| 75.11.393WriteLn                   | 1567 |
| 75.11.394WriteStr                  | 1568 |
| 75.12 TDoubleRec                   | 1569 |
| 75.12.1 Method overview            | 1570 |
| 75.12.2 Property overview          | 1570 |
| 75.12.3 TDoubleRec.Mantissa        | 1570 |
| 75.12.4 TDoubleRec.Fraction        | 1570 |
| 75.12.5 TDoubleRec.Exponent        | 1571 |
| 75.12.6 TDoubleRec.SpecialType     | 1571 |
| 75.12.7 TDoubleRec.BuildUp         | 1571 |
| 75.12.8 TDoubleRec.Sign            | 1571 |
| 75.12.9 TDoubleRec.Exp             | 1571 |
| 75.12.10 TDoubleRec.Frac           | 1572 |
| 75.13 TExtended80Rec               | 1572 |
| 75.13.1 Method overview            | 1573 |
| 75.13.2 Property overview          | 1573 |
| 75.13.3 TExtended80Rec.Mantissa    | 1573 |
| 75.13.4 TExtended80Rec.Fraction    | 1573 |
| 75.13.5 TExtended80Rec.Exponent    | 1574 |
| 75.13.6 TExtended80Rec.SpecialType | 1574 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 75.13.7  | <a href="#">TExtended80Rec.BuildUp</a>     | 1574 |
| 75.13.8  | <a href="#">TExtended80Rec.Sign</a>        | 1574 |
| 75.13.9  | <a href="#">TExtended80Rec.Exp</a>         | 1574 |
| 75.14    | <a href="#">tinterfaceentry</a>            | 1575 |
| 75.14.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>          | 1575 |
| 75.14.2  | <a href="#">tinterfaceentry.IID</a>        | 1575 |
| 75.14.3  | <a href="#">tinterfaceentry.IIDStr</a>     | 1575 |
| 75.15    | <a href="#">TSingleRec</a>                 | 1576 |
| 75.15.1  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>            | 1577 |
| 75.15.2  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>          | 1577 |
| 75.15.3  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Mantissa</a>        | 1577 |
| 75.15.4  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Fraction</a>        | 1577 |
| 75.15.5  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Exponent</a>        | 1577 |
| 75.15.6  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.SpecialType</a>     | 1578 |
| 75.15.7  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.BuildUp</a>         | 1578 |
| 75.15.8  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Sign</a>            | 1578 |
| 75.15.9  | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Exp</a>             | 1578 |
| 75.15.10 | <a href="#">TSingleRec.Frac</a>            | 1578 |
| 75.16    | <a href="#">TVmt</a>                       | 1579 |
| 75.16.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>          | 1579 |
| 75.16.2  | <a href="#">TVmt.vParent</a>               | 1580 |
| 75.17    | <a href="#">IDispatch</a>                  | 1580 |
| 75.17.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                | 1580 |
| 75.17.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>            | 1580 |
| 75.17.3  | <a href="#">IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount</a> | 1580 |
| 75.17.4  | <a href="#">IDispatch.GetTypeInfo</a>      | 1580 |
| 75.17.5  | <a href="#">IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames</a>    | 1580 |
| 75.17.6  | <a href="#">IDispatch.Invoke</a>           | 1581 |
| 75.18    | <a href="#">IEnumerable</a>                | 1581 |
| 75.18.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                | 1581 |
| 75.18.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>            | 1581 |
| 75.18.3  | <a href="#">IEnumerable.GetEnumerator</a>  | 1581 |
| 75.19    | <a href="#">IEnumerator</a>                | 1581 |
| 75.19.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                | 1581 |
| 75.19.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>            | 1582 |
| 75.19.3  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>          | 1582 |
| 75.19.4  | <a href="#">IEnumerator.GetCurrent</a>     | 1582 |
| 75.19.5  | <a href="#">IEnumerator.MoveNext</a>       | 1582 |
| 75.19.6  | <a href="#">IEnumerator.Reset</a>          | 1583 |
| 75.19.7  | <a href="#">IEnumerator.Current</a>        | 1583 |

|          |                                     |      |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 75.20    | IInvokable                          | 1583 |
| 75.20.1  | Description                         | 1583 |
| 75.21    | IUnknown                            | 1583 |
| 75.21.1  | Description                         | 1583 |
| 75.21.2  | Method overview                     | 1584 |
| 75.21.3  | IUnknown.QueryInterface             | 1584 |
| 75.21.4  | IUnknown._AddRef                    | 1584 |
| 75.21.5  | IUnknown._Release                   | 1584 |
| 75.22    | TAggregatedObject                   | 1584 |
| 75.22.1  | Description                         | 1584 |
| 75.22.2  | Method overview                     | 1584 |
| 75.22.3  | Property overview                   | 1585 |
| 75.22.4  | TAggregatedObject.Create            | 1585 |
| 75.22.5  | TAggregatedObject.Controller        | 1585 |
| 75.23    | TContainedObject                    | 1585 |
| 75.23.1  | Description                         | 1585 |
| 75.23.2  | Interfaces overview                 | 1585 |
| 75.24    | TInterfacedObject                   | 1586 |
| 75.24.1  | Description                         | 1586 |
| 75.24.2  | Interfaces overview                 | 1586 |
| 75.24.3  | Method overview                     | 1586 |
| 75.24.4  | Property overview                   | 1586 |
| 75.24.5  | TInterfacedObject.destroy           | 1586 |
| 75.24.6  | TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction | 1586 |
| 75.24.7  | TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction | 1587 |
| 75.24.8  | TInterfacedObject.NewInstance       | 1587 |
| 75.24.9  | TInterfacedObject.RefCount          | 1587 |
| 75.25    | TObject                             | 1587 |
| 75.25.1  | Description                         | 1587 |
| 75.25.2  | Method overview                     | 1588 |
| 75.25.3  | TObject.Create                      | 1588 |
| 75.25.4  | TObject.Destroy                     | 1589 |
| 75.25.5  | TObject.newInstance                 | 1589 |
| 75.25.6  | TObject.FreeInstance                | 1589 |
| 75.25.7  | TObject.SafeCallException           | 1590 |
| 75.25.8  | TObject.DefaultHandler              | 1590 |
| 75.25.9  | TObject.Free                        | 1590 |
| 75.25.10 | TObject.InitInstance                | 1590 |
| 75.25.11 | TObject.CleanupInstance             | 1591 |
| 75.25.12 | TObject.ClassType                   | 1591 |

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| 75.25.13  | TObject.ClassInfo . . . . .                    | 1591        |
| 75.25.14  | TObject.ClassName . . . . .                    | 1591        |
| 75.25.15  | TObject.ClassNameIs . . . . .                  | 1592        |
| 75.25.16  | TObject.ClassParent . . . . .                  | 1592        |
| 75.25.17  | TObject.InstanceSize . . . . .                 | 1592        |
| 75.25.18  | TObject.InheritsFrom . . . . .                 | 1592        |
| 75.25.19  | TObject.StringMessageTable . . . . .           | 1593        |
| 75.25.20  | TObject.MethodAddress . . . . .                | 1593        |
| 75.25.21  | TObject.MethodName . . . . .                   | 1593        |
| 75.25.22  | TObject.FieldAddress . . . . .                 | 1593        |
| 75.25.23  | TObject.AfterConstruction . . . . .            | 1594        |
| 75.25.24  | TObject.BeforeDestruction . . . . .            | 1594        |
| 75.25.25  | TObject.DefaultHandlerStr . . . . .            | 1594        |
| 75.25.26  | TObject.Dispatch . . . . .                     | 1594        |
| 75.25.27  | TObject.DispatchStr . . . . .                  | 1595        |
| 75.25.28  | TObject.GetInterface . . . . .                 | 1595        |
| 75.25.29  | TObject.GetInterfaceByStr . . . . .            | 1595        |
| 75.25.30  | TObject.GetInterfaceWeak . . . . .             | 1596        |
| 75.25.31  | TObject.GetInterfaceEntry . . . . .            | 1596        |
| 75.25.32  | TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr . . . . .       | 1596        |
| 75.25.33  | TObject.GetInterfaceTable . . . . .            | 1596        |
| 75.25.34  | TObject.UnitName . . . . .                     | 1597        |
| 75.25.35  | TObject.QualifiedClassName . . . . .           | 1597        |
| 75.25.36  | TObject.Equals . . . . .                       | 1597        |
| 75.25.37  | TObject.GetHashCode . . . . .                  | 1597        |
| 75.25.38  | TObject.ToString . . . . .                     | 1598        |
| <b>76</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'sysutils' . . . . .</b> | <b>1599</b> |
| 76.1      | Used units . . . . .                           | 1599        |
| 76.2      | Overview . . . . .                             | 1599        |
| 76.3      | Type Helpers for basic types . . . . .         | 1599        |
| 76.4      | Localization support . . . . .                 | 1600        |
| 76.5      | Unicode and codepage awareness . . . . .       | 1600        |
| 76.6      | Miscellaneous conversion routines . . . . .    | 1601        |
| 76.7      | Date/time routines . . . . .                   | 1602        |
| 76.8      | File Name handling routines . . . . .          | 1602        |
| 76.9      | File input/output routines . . . . .           | 1603        |
| 76.10     | PChar related functions . . . . .              | 1604        |
| 76.11     | Date and time formatting characters . . . . .  | 1605        |
| 76.12     | Formatting strings . . . . .                   | 1606        |

|          |                                |      |
|----------|--------------------------------|------|
| 76.13    | String functions               | 1606 |
| 76.14    | Constants, types and variables | 1607 |
| 76.14.1  | Constants                      | 1607 |
| 76.14.2  | Types                          | 1614 |
| 76.14.3  | Variables                      | 1626 |
| 76.15    | Procedures and functions       | 1631 |
| 76.15.1  | AbandonSignalHandler           | 1631 |
| 76.15.2  | Abort                          | 1631 |
| 76.15.3  | AddDisk                        | 1631 |
| 76.15.4  | AddTerminateProc               | 1632 |
| 76.15.5  | AdjustLineBreaks               | 1632 |
| 76.15.6  | AnsiCompareFileName            | 1632 |
| 76.15.7  | AnsiCompareStr                 | 1633 |
| 76.15.8  | AnsiCompareText                | 1634 |
| 76.15.9  | AnsiDequotedStr                | 1635 |
| 76.15.10 | AnsiExtractQuotedStr           | 1635 |
| 76.15.11 | AnsiLastChar                   | 1636 |
| 76.15.12 | AnsiLowerCase                  | 1636 |
| 76.15.13 | AnsiLowerCaseFileName          | 1637 |
| 76.15.14 | AnsiPos                        | 1637 |
| 76.15.15 | AnsiQuotedStr                  | 1637 |
| 76.15.16 | AnsiSameStr                    | 1638 |
| 76.15.17 | AnsiSameText                   | 1638 |
| 76.15.18 | AnsiStrComp                    | 1638 |
| 76.15.19 | AnsiStrIComp                   | 1639 |
| 76.15.20 | AnsiStrLastChar                | 1640 |
| 76.15.21 | AnsiStrLComp                   | 1641 |
| 76.15.22 | AnsiStrLIComp                  | 1641 |
| 76.15.23 | AnsiStrLower                   | 1642 |
| 76.15.24 | AnsiStrPos                     | 1643 |
| 76.15.25 | AnsiStrRScan                   | 1643 |
| 76.15.26 | AnsiStrScan                    | 1643 |
| 76.15.27 | AnsiStrUpper                   | 1644 |
| 76.15.28 | AnsiUpperCase                  | 1644 |
| 76.15.29 | AnsiUpperCaseFileName          | 1645 |
| 76.15.30 | AppendStr                      | 1645 |
| 76.15.31 | ApplicationName                | 1646 |
| 76.15.32 | AssignStr                      | 1646 |
| 76.15.33 | BCDToInt                       | 1647 |
| 76.15.34 | Beep                           | 1647 |

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 76.15.35 BoolToStr . . . . .              | 1648 |
| 76.15.36 ByteLength . . . . .             | 1648 |
| 76.15.37 BytesOf . . . . .                | 1648 |
| 76.15.38 ByteToCharIndex . . . . .        | 1649 |
| 76.15.39 ByteToCharLen . . . . .          | 1649 |
| 76.15.40 ByteType . . . . .               | 1649 |
| 76.15.41 CallTerminateProcs . . . . .     | 1649 |
| 76.15.42 ChangeFileExt . . . . .          | 1650 |
| 76.15.43 CharInSet . . . . .              | 1650 |
| 76.15.44 CharToByteLen . . . . .          | 1650 |
| 76.15.45 CheckOSError . . . . .           | 1650 |
| 76.15.46 CodePageNameToCodePage . . . . . | 1651 |
| 76.15.47 CodePageToCodePageName . . . . . | 1651 |
| 76.15.48 CompareMem . . . . .             | 1651 |
| 76.15.49 CompareMemRange . . . . .        | 1651 |
| 76.15.50 CompareStr . . . . .             | 1652 |
| 76.15.51 CompareText . . . . .            | 1653 |
| 76.15.52 ComposeDateTime . . . . .        | 1654 |
| 76.15.53 ConcatPaths . . . . .            | 1654 |
| 76.15.54 CreateDir . . . . .              | 1654 |
| 76.15.55 CreateGUID . . . . .             | 1655 |
| 76.15.56 CurrentYear . . . . .            | 1655 |
| 76.15.57 CurrToStr . . . . .              | 1656 |
| 76.15.58 CurrToStrF . . . . .             | 1656 |
| 76.15.59 Date . . . . .                   | 1656 |
| 76.15.60 DateTimeToFileDate . . . . .     | 1657 |
| 76.15.61 DateTimeToStr . . . . .          | 1657 |
| 76.15.62 DateTimeToString . . . . .       | 1658 |
| 76.15.63 DateTimeToSystemTime . . . . .   | 1659 |
| 76.15.64 DateTimeToTimeStamp . . . . .    | 1660 |
| 76.15.65 DateToStr . . . . .              | 1660 |
| 76.15.66 DayOfWeek . . . . .              | 1661 |
| 76.15.67 DecodeDate . . . . .             | 1662 |
| 76.15.68 DecodeDateFully . . . . .        | 1662 |
| 76.15.69 DecodeTime . . . . .             | 1662 |
| 76.15.70 DeleteFile . . . . .             | 1663 |
| 76.15.71 DirectoryExists . . . . .        | 1664 |
| 76.15.72 DiskFree . . . . .               | 1664 |
| 76.15.73 DiskSize . . . . .               | 1665 |
| 76.15.74 DisposeStr . . . . .             | 1665 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 76.15.75 DoDirSeparators . . . . .              | 1665 |
| 76.15.76 EncodeDate . . . . .                   | 1666 |
| 76.15.77 EncodeTime . . . . .                   | 1667 |
| 76.15.78 ExceptAddr . . . . .                   | 1667 |
| 76.15.79 ExceptFrameCount . . . . .             | 1668 |
| 76.15.80 ExceptFrames . . . . .                 | 1668 |
| 76.15.81 ExceptionErrorMessage . . . . .        | 1668 |
| 76.15.82 ExceptObject . . . . .                 | 1668 |
| 76.15.83 ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter . . . . .  | 1669 |
| 76.15.84 ExcludeTrailingBackslash . . . . .     | 1669 |
| 76.15.85 ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter . . . . . | 1669 |
| 76.15.86 ExecuteProcess . . . . .               | 1670 |
| 76.15.87 ExeSearch . . . . .                    | 1670 |
| 76.15.88 ExpandFileName . . . . .               | 1671 |
| 76.15.89 ExpandFileNameCase . . . . .           | 1671 |
| 76.15.90 ExpandUNCFileName . . . . .            | 1672 |
| 76.15.91 ExtractFileDir . . . . .               | 1673 |
| 76.15.92 ExtractFileDrive . . . . .             | 1674 |
| 76.15.93 ExtractFileExt . . . . .               | 1674 |
| 76.15.94 ExtractFileName . . . . .              | 1674 |
| 76.15.95 ExtractFilePath . . . . .              | 1675 |
| 76.15.96 ExtractRelativePath . . . . .          | 1675 |
| 76.15.97 ExtractShortPathName . . . . .         | 1676 |
| 76.15.98 FileAge . . . . .                      | 1676 |
| 76.15.99 FileClose . . . . .                    | 1677 |
| 76.15.100FileCreate . . . . .                   | 1677 |
| 76.15.101FileDateToDateTime . . . . .           | 1679 |
| 76.15.102FileExists . . . . .                   | 1679 |
| 76.15.103FileFlush . . . . .                    | 1680 |
| 76.15.104FileGetAttr . . . . .                  | 1680 |
| 76.15.105FileGetDate . . . . .                  | 1681 |
| 76.15.106FileGetSymLinkTarget . . . . .         | 1682 |
| 76.15.107FileIsReadOnly . . . . .               | 1682 |
| 76.15.108FileOpen . . . . .                     | 1682 |
| 76.15.109FileRead . . . . .                     | 1683 |
| 76.15.110FileSearch . . . . .                   | 1684 |
| 76.15.111FileSeek . . . . .                     | 1685 |
| 76.15.112FileSetAttr . . . . .                  | 1686 |
| 76.15.113FileSetDate . . . . .                  | 1686 |
| 76.15.114FileTruncate . . . . .                 | 1687 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 76.15.115FileWrite . . . . .                   | 1687 |
| 76.15.116FindClose . . . . .                   | 1687 |
| 76.15.117FindCmdLineSwitch . . . . .           | 1688 |
| 76.15.118FindFirst . . . . .                   | 1688 |
| 76.15.119FindNext . . . . .                    | 1689 |
| 76.15.120FloattoCurr . . . . .                 | 1690 |
| 76.15.121FloatToDateTime . . . . .             | 1690 |
| 76.15.122FloatToDecimal . . . . .              | 1690 |
| 76.15.123FloatToStr . . . . .                  | 1691 |
| 76.15.124FloatToStrF . . . . .                 | 1692 |
| 76.15.125FloatToText . . . . .                 | 1694 |
| 76.15.126FloatToTextFmt . . . . .              | 1695 |
| 76.15.127FmtStr . . . . .                      | 1695 |
| 76.15.128ForceDirectories . . . . .            | 1696 |
| 76.15.129Format . . . . .                      | 1696 |
| 76.15.130FormatBuf . . . . .                   | 1703 |
| 76.15.131FormatCurr . . . . .                  | 1704 |
| 76.15.132FormatDateTime . . . . .              | 1704 |
| 76.15.133FormatFloat . . . . .                 | 1705 |
| 76.15.134FreeAndNil . . . . .                  | 1706 |
| 76.15.135FreeMemAndNil . . . . .               | 1706 |
| 76.15.136GetAppConfigDir . . . . .             | 1707 |
| 76.15.137GetAppConfigFile . . . . .            | 1707 |
| 76.15.138GetCurrentDir . . . . .               | 1708 |
| 76.15.139GetDirs . . . . .                     | 1708 |
| 76.15.140GetDriveIDFromLetter . . . . .        | 1709 |
| 76.15.141GetEnvironmentString . . . . .        | 1709 |
| 76.15.142GetEnvironmentVariable . . . . .      | 1710 |
| 76.15.143GetEnvironmentVariableCount . . . . . | 1710 |
| 76.15.144GetFileAsString . . . . .             | 1710 |
| 76.15.145GetFileContents . . . . .             | 1711 |
| 76.15.146GetFileHandle . . . . .               | 1711 |
| 76.15.147GetLastError . . . . .                | 1711 |
| 76.15.148GetLocalTime . . . . .                | 1711 |
| 76.15.149GetLocalTimeOffset . . . . .          | 1711 |
| 76.15.150GetModuleName . . . . .               | 1712 |
| 76.15.151GetTempDir . . . . .                  | 1712 |
| 76.15.152GetTempFileName . . . . .             | 1713 |
| 76.15.153GetTickCount . . . . .                | 1713 |
| 76.15.154GetTickCount64 . . . . .              | 1713 |

---

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 76.15.155GetUserDir . . . . .                   | 1714 |
| 76.15.156GuidCase . . . . .                     | 1714 |
| 76.15.157GUIDToString . . . . .                 | 1714 |
| 76.15.158HashName . . . . .                     | 1714 |
| 76.15.159HookSignal . . . . .                   | 1715 |
| 76.15.160IncAMonth . . . . .                    | 1715 |
| 76.15.161IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter . . . . .  | 1715 |
| 76.15.162IncludeTrailingBackslash . . . . .     | 1716 |
| 76.15.163IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter . . . . . | 1716 |
| 76.15.164IncMonth . . . . .                     | 1716 |
| 76.15.165InquireSignal . . . . .                | 1717 |
| 76.15.166IntToHex . . . . .                     | 1717 |
| 76.15.167IntToStr . . . . .                     | 1718 |
| 76.15.168IsDelimiter . . . . .                  | 1719 |
| 76.15.169IsEqualGUID . . . . .                  | 1719 |
| 76.15.170IsLeadChar . . . . .                   | 1719 |
| 76.15.171IsLeapYear . . . . .                   | 1719 |
| 76.15.172IsPathDelimiter . . . . .              | 1720 |
| 76.15.173IsValidIdent . . . . .                 | 1720 |
| 76.15.174LastDelimiter . . . . .                | 1721 |
| 76.15.175LeftStr . . . . .                      | 1721 |
| 76.15.176LoadStr . . . . .                      | 1722 |
| 76.15.177LowerCase . . . . .                    | 1722 |
| 76.15.178MsecsToTimeStamp . . . . .             | 1723 |
| 76.15.179NewStr . . . . .                       | 1723 |
| 76.15.180Now . . . . .                          | 1724 |
| 76.15.181OutOfMemoryError . . . . .             | 1724 |
| 76.15.182QuotedStr . . . . .                    | 1725 |
| 76.15.183RaiseLastError . . . . .               | 1725 |
| 76.15.184RemoveDir . . . . .                    | 1725 |
| 76.15.185RenameFile . . . . .                   | 1726 |
| 76.15.186ReplaceDate . . . . .                  | 1726 |
| 76.15.187ReplaceTime . . . . .                  | 1727 |
| 76.15.188RightStr . . . . .                     | 1727 |
| 76.15.189SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .              | 1727 |
| 76.15.190SameFileName . . . . .                 | 1728 |
| 76.15.191SameStr . . . . .                      | 1728 |
| 76.15.192SameText . . . . .                     | 1728 |
| 76.15.193SetCurrentDir . . . . .                | 1728 |
| 76.15.194SetDirSeparators . . . . .             | 1729 |

|                                  |      |
|----------------------------------|------|
| 76.15.195ShowException . . . . . | 1729 |
| 76.15.196Sleep . . . . .         | 1730 |
| 76.15.197SScanf . . . . .        | 1730 |
| 76.15.198StrAlloc . . . . .      | 1731 |
| 76.15.199StrBufSize . . . . .    | 1731 |
| 76.15.200StrByteType . . . . .   | 1732 |
| 76.15.201strcat . . . . .        | 1732 |
| 76.15.202StrCharLength . . . . . | 1733 |
| 76.15.203strcomp . . . . .       | 1733 |
| 76.15.204StrCopy . . . . .       | 1733 |
| 76.15.205StrDispose . . . . .    | 1734 |
| 76.15.206strecopy . . . . .      | 1734 |
| 76.15.207strend . . . . .        | 1735 |
| 76.15.208StrFmt . . . . .        | 1735 |
| 76.15.209stricomp . . . . .      | 1736 |
| 76.15.210StringOf . . . . .      | 1737 |
| 76.15.211StringReplace . . . . . | 1737 |
| 76.15.212StringToGUID . . . . .  | 1737 |
| 76.15.213strlcat . . . . .       | 1738 |
| 76.15.214strlcomp . . . . .      | 1738 |
| 76.15.215StrLCopy . . . . .      | 1739 |
| 76.15.216StrLen . . . . .        | 1740 |
| 76.15.217StrLFmt . . . . .       | 1740 |
| 76.15.218strlicomp . . . . .     | 1741 |
| 76.15.219strlower . . . . .      | 1741 |
| 76.15.220StrMove . . . . .       | 1742 |
| 76.15.221strnew . . . . .        | 1742 |
| 76.15.222StrNextChar . . . . .   | 1743 |
| 76.15.223StrPas . . . . .        | 1743 |
| 76.15.224StrPCopy . . . . .      | 1744 |
| 76.15.225StrPLCopy . . . . .     | 1744 |
| 76.15.226strpos . . . . .        | 1744 |
| 76.15.227strrscan . . . . .      | 1745 |
| 76.15.228StrScan . . . . .       | 1745 |
| 76.15.229StrToBool . . . . .     | 1746 |
| 76.15.230StrToBoolDef . . . . .  | 1746 |
| 76.15.231StrToCurr . . . . .     | 1746 |
| 76.15.232StrToCurrDef . . . . .  | 1747 |
| 76.15.233StrToDate . . . . .     | 1747 |
| 76.15.234StrToDateDef . . . . .  | 1748 |

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| 76.15.235StrToDateTime        | 1748 |
| 76.15.236StrToDateTimeDef     | 1749 |
| 76.15.237StrToDWord           | 1749 |
| 76.15.238StrToDWordDef        | 1750 |
| 76.15.239StrToFloat           | 1750 |
| 76.15.240StrToFloatDef        | 1751 |
| 76.15.241StrToInt             | 1751 |
| 76.15.242StrToInt64           | 1752 |
| 76.15.243StrToInt64Def        | 1752 |
| 76.15.244StrToIntDef          | 1753 |
| 76.15.245StrToQWord           | 1753 |
| 76.15.246StrToQWordDef        | 1754 |
| 76.15.247StrToTime            | 1754 |
| 76.15.248StrToTimeDef         | 1755 |
| 76.15.249StrToUInt            | 1755 |
| 76.15.250StrToUInt64          | 1755 |
| 76.15.251StrToUInt64Def       | 1755 |
| 76.15.252StrToUIntDef         | 1755 |
| 76.15.253strupper             | 1755 |
| 76.15.254Supports             | 1756 |
| 76.15.255SysErrorMessage      | 1756 |
| 76.15.256SystemTimeToDateTime | 1757 |
| 76.15.257TextToFloat          | 1757 |
| 76.15.258Time                 | 1758 |
| 76.15.259TimeStampToDateTime  | 1759 |
| 76.15.260TimeStampToMsecs     | 1759 |
| 76.15.261TimeToStr            | 1760 |
| 76.15.262Trim                 | 1760 |
| 76.15.263TrimLeft             | 1761 |
| 76.15.264TrimRight            | 1762 |
| 76.15.265TryEncodeDate        | 1762 |
| 76.15.266TryEncodeTime        | 1763 |
| 76.15.267TryFloatToCurr       | 1763 |
| 76.15.268TryStringToGUID      | 1763 |
| 76.15.269TryStrToBool         | 1764 |
| 76.15.270TryStrToCurr         | 1764 |
| 76.15.271TryStrToDate         | 1764 |
| 76.15.272TryStrToDateTime     | 1765 |
| 76.15.273TryStrToDWord        | 1765 |
| 76.15.274TryStrToFloat        | 1766 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| 76.15.275TryStrToInt . . . . .                 | 1766 |
| 76.15.276TryStrToInt64 . . . . .               | 1766 |
| 76.15.277TryStrToQWord . . . . .               | 1767 |
| 76.15.278TryStrToTime . . . . .                | 1767 |
| 76.15.279TryStrToUInt . . . . .                | 1767 |
| 76.15.280TryStrToUInt64 . . . . .              | 1767 |
| 76.15.281UIntToStr . . . . .                   | 1767 |
| 76.15.282UnhookSignal . . . . .                | 1768 |
| 76.15.283UnicodeCompareStr . . . . .           | 1768 |
| 76.15.284UnicodeCompareText . . . . .          | 1768 |
| 76.15.285UnicodeFmtStr . . . . .               | 1769 |
| 76.15.286UnicodeFormat . . . . .               | 1769 |
| 76.15.287UnicodeFormatBuf . . . . .            | 1769 |
| 76.15.288UnicodeLowerCase . . . . .            | 1770 |
| 76.15.289UnicodeSameStr . . . . .              | 1770 |
| 76.15.290UnicodeSameText . . . . .             | 1770 |
| 76.15.291UnicodeStringReplace . . . . .        | 1771 |
| 76.15.292UnicodeUpperCase . . . . .            | 1771 |
| 76.15.293UpperCase . . . . .                   | 1771 |
| 76.15.294VendorName . . . . .                  | 1772 |
| 76.15.295WideBytesOf . . . . .                 | 1772 |
| 76.15.296WideCompareStr . . . . .              | 1772 |
| 76.15.297WideCompareText . . . . .             | 1773 |
| 76.15.298WideFmtStr . . . . .                  | 1773 |
| 76.15.299WideFormat . . . . .                  | 1773 |
| 76.15.300WideFormatBuf . . . . .               | 1774 |
| 76.15.301WideLowerCase . . . . .               | 1774 |
| 76.15.302WideSameStr . . . . .                 | 1774 |
| 76.15.303WideSameText . . . . .                | 1775 |
| 76.15.304WideStrAlloc . . . . .                | 1775 |
| 76.15.305WideStringOf . . . . .                | 1775 |
| 76.15.306WideStringReplace . . . . .           | 1775 |
| 76.15.307WideUpperCase . . . . .               | 1776 |
| 76.15.308WrapText . . . . .                    | 1776 |
| 76.16 TRawbyteSearchRec . . . . .              | 1777 |
| 76.16.1 Property overview . . . . .            | 1777 |
| 76.16.2 TRawbyteSearchRec.TimeStamp . . . . .  | 1777 |
| 76.17 TRawbyteSymLinkRec . . . . .             | 1777 |
| 76.17.1 Property overview . . . . .            | 1778 |
| 76.17.2 TRawbyteSymLinkRec.TimeStamp . . . . . | 1778 |

---

|         |                              |      |
|---------|------------------------------|------|
| 76.18   | TUnicodeSearchRec            | 1778 |
| 76.18.1 | Property overview            | 1778 |
| 76.18.2 | TUnicodeSearchRec.TimeStamp  | 1779 |
| 76.19   | TUnicodeSymLinkRec           | 1779 |
| 76.19.1 | Property overview            | 1779 |
| 76.19.2 | TUnicodeSymLinkRec.TimeStamp | 1779 |
| 76.20   | EAbort                       | 1779 |
| 76.20.1 | Description                  | 1779 |
| 76.21   | EAbstractError               | 1779 |
| 76.21.1 | Description                  | 1779 |
| 76.22   | EAccessViolation             | 1780 |
| 76.22.1 | Description                  | 1780 |
| 76.23   | EArgumentException           | 1780 |
| 76.23.1 | Description                  | 1780 |
| 76.24   | EArgumentNilException        | 1780 |
| 76.24.1 | Description                  | 1780 |
| 76.25   | EArgumentOutOfRangeException | 1780 |
| 76.25.1 | Description                  | 1780 |
| 76.26   | EAssertionFailed             | 1780 |
| 76.26.1 | Description                  | 1780 |
| 76.27   | EBusError                    | 1781 |
| 76.27.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.28   | EControlC                    | 1781 |
| 76.28.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.29   | EConvertError                | 1781 |
| 76.29.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.30   | EDirectoryNotFoundException  | 1781 |
| 76.30.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.31   | EDivByZero                   | 1781 |
| 76.31.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.32   | EEncodingError               | 1781 |
| 76.32.1 | Description                  | 1781 |
| 76.33   | EExternal                    | 1782 |
| 76.33.1 | Description                  | 1782 |
| 76.34   | EExternalException           | 1782 |
| 76.34.1 | Description                  | 1782 |
| 76.35   | EFileNotFoundException       | 1782 |
| 76.35.1 | Description                  | 1782 |
| 76.36   | EFormatError                 | 1782 |
| 76.36.1 | Description                  | 1782 |

|         |                               |      |
|---------|-------------------------------|------|
| 76.37   | EHeapMemoryError              | 1782 |
| 76.37.1 | Description                   | 1782 |
| 76.37.2 | Method overview               | 1782 |
| 76.37.3 | EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance | 1783 |
| 76.38   | EInOutError                   | 1783 |
| 76.38.1 | Description                   | 1783 |
| 76.39   | EIntError                     | 1783 |
| 76.39.1 | Description                   | 1783 |
| 76.40   | EIntfCastError                | 1783 |
| 76.40.1 | Description                   | 1783 |
| 76.41   | EIntOverflow                  | 1783 |
| 76.41.1 | Description                   | 1783 |
| 76.42   | EInvalidCast                  | 1783 |
| 76.42.1 | Description                   | 1783 |
| 76.43   | EInvalidContainer             | 1784 |
| 76.43.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.44   | EInvalidInsert                | 1784 |
| 76.44.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.45   | EInvalidOp                    | 1784 |
| 76.45.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.46   | EInvalidOpException           | 1784 |
| 76.47   | EInvalidPointer               | 1784 |
| 76.47.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.48   | EMathError                    | 1784 |
| 76.48.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.49   | ENoConstructException         | 1784 |
| 76.49.1 | Description                   | 1784 |
| 76.50   | ENoDynLibsSupport             | 1785 |
| 76.51   | ENoThreadSupport              | 1785 |
| 76.51.1 | Description                   | 1785 |
| 76.52   | ENotImplemented               | 1785 |
| 76.52.1 | Description                   | 1785 |
| 76.53   | ENotSupportedException        | 1785 |
| 76.53.1 | Description                   | 1785 |
| 76.54   | ENoWideStringSupport          | 1785 |
| 76.54.1 | Description                   | 1785 |
| 76.55   | EObjectCheck                  | 1785 |
| 76.55.1 | Description                   | 1785 |
| 76.56   | EOSError                      | 1785 |
| 76.56.1 | Description                   | 1785 |

---

|         |                          |      |
|---------|--------------------------|------|
| 76.57   | EOutOfMemory             | 1786 |
| 76.57.1 | Description              | 1786 |
| 76.58   | EOverflow                | 1786 |
| 76.58.1 | Description              | 1786 |
| 76.59   | EPackageError            | 1786 |
| 76.59.1 | Description              | 1786 |
| 76.60   | EPathNotFoundException   | 1786 |
| 76.60.1 | Description              | 1786 |
| 76.61   | EPathTooLongException    | 1786 |
| 76.61.1 | Description              | 1786 |
| 76.62   | EPrivilege               | 1787 |
| 76.62.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.63   | EProgrammerNotFound      | 1787 |
| 76.64   | EPropReadOnly            | 1787 |
| 76.64.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.65   | EPropWriteOnly           | 1787 |
| 76.65.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.66   | ERangeError              | 1787 |
| 76.66.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.67   | ESafecallException       | 1787 |
| 76.67.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.68   | ESigQuit                 | 1787 |
| 76.69   | EStackOverflow           | 1787 |
| 76.69.1 | Description              | 1787 |
| 76.70   | EThreadError             | 1788 |
| 76.71   | EUnderflow               | 1788 |
| 76.71.1 | Description              | 1788 |
| 76.72   | EVariantError            | 1788 |
| 76.72.1 | Description              | 1788 |
| 76.72.2 | Method overview          | 1788 |
| 76.72.3 | EVariantError.CreateCode | 1788 |
| 76.73   | Exception                | 1788 |
| 76.73.1 | Description              | 1788 |
| 76.73.2 | Method overview          | 1789 |
| 76.73.3 | Property overview        | 1789 |
| 76.73.4 | Exception.Create         | 1789 |
| 76.73.5 | Exception.CreateFmt      | 1789 |
| 76.73.6 | Exception.CreateRes      | 1789 |
| 76.73.7 | Exception.CreateResFmt   | 1790 |
| 76.73.8 | Exception.CreateHelp     | 1790 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 76.73.9  | Exception.CreateFmtHelp . . . . .               | 1790 |
| 76.73.10 | Exception.CreateResHelp . . . . .               | 1790 |
| 76.73.11 | Exception.CreateResFmtHelp . . . . .            | 1791 |
| 76.73.12 | Exception.ToString . . . . .                    | 1791 |
| 76.73.13 | Exception.HelpContext . . . . .                 | 1791 |
| 76.73.14 | Exception.Message . . . . .                     | 1791 |
| 76.74    | EZeroDivide . . . . .                           | 1792 |
| 76.74.1  | Description . . . . .                           | 1792 |
| 76.75    | IReadWriteSync . . . . .                        | 1792 |
| 76.75.1  | Description . . . . .                           | 1792 |
| 76.75.2  | Method overview . . . . .                       | 1792 |
| 76.75.3  | IReadWriteSync.BeginRead . . . . .              | 1792 |
| 76.75.4  | IReadWriteSync.EndRead . . . . .                | 1792 |
| 76.75.5  | IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite . . . . .             | 1793 |
| 76.75.6  | IReadWriteSync.EndWrite . . . . .               | 1793 |
| 76.76    | TANSISTRINGBUILDER . . . . .                    | 1793 |
| 76.76.1  | Method overview . . . . .                       | 1793 |
| 76.76.2  | Property overview . . . . .                     | 1794 |
| 76.76.3  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Create . . . . .             | 1794 |
| 76.76.4  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Append . . . . .             | 1794 |
| 76.76.5  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat . . . . .       | 1794 |
| 76.76.6  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine . . . . .         | 1795 |
| 76.76.7  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Clear . . . . .              | 1795 |
| 76.76.8  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo . . . . .             | 1795 |
| 76.76.9  | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity . . . . .     | 1795 |
| 76.76.10 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Equals . . . . .             | 1795 |
| 76.76.11 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Insert . . . . .             | 1795 |
| 76.76.12 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Remove . . . . .             | 1796 |
| 76.76.13 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Replace . . . . .            | 1796 |
| 76.76.14 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.ToString . . . . .           | 1796 |
| 76.76.15 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Chars . . . . .              | 1797 |
| 76.76.16 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Length . . . . .             | 1797 |
| 76.76.17 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Capacity . . . . .           | 1797 |
| 76.76.18 | TANSISTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity . . . . .        | 1797 |
| 76.77    | TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding . . . . .             | 1797 |
| 76.77.1  | Description . . . . .                           | 1797 |
| 76.77.2  | Method overview . . . . .                       | 1797 |
| 76.77.3  | TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.Clone . . . . .       | 1797 |
| 76.77.4  | TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble . . . . . | 1798 |
| 76.78    | TBooleanHelper . . . . .                        | 1798 |

|          |                           |      |
|----------|---------------------------|------|
| 76.78.1  | Description               | 1798 |
| 76.78.2  | Method overview           | 1798 |
| 76.78.3  | TBooleanHelper.Parse      | 1798 |
| 76.78.4  | TBooleanHelper.Size       | 1799 |
| 76.78.5  | TBooleanHelper.ToString   | 1799 |
| 76.78.6  | TBooleanHelper.TryParse   | 1799 |
| 76.78.7  | TBooleanHelper.ToInteger  | 1799 |
| 76.79    | TByteBoolHelper           | 1800 |
| 76.79.1  | Description               | 1800 |
| 76.79.2  | Method overview           | 1800 |
| 76.79.3  | TByteBoolHelper.Parse     | 1800 |
| 76.79.4  | TByteBoolHelper.Size      | 1800 |
| 76.79.5  | TByteBoolHelper.ToString  | 1800 |
| 76.79.6  | TByteBoolHelper.TryParse  | 1801 |
| 76.79.7  | TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger | 1801 |
| 76.80    | TByteHelper               | 1801 |
| 76.80.1  | Description               | 1801 |
| 76.80.2  | Method overview           | 1802 |
| 76.80.3  | TByteHelper.Parse         | 1802 |
| 76.80.4  | TByteHelper.Size          | 1802 |
| 76.80.5  | TByteHelper.ToString      | 1802 |
| 76.80.6  | TByteHelper.TryParse      | 1803 |
| 76.80.7  | TByteHelper.ToBoolean     | 1803 |
| 76.80.8  | TByteHelper.ToDouble      | 1803 |
| 76.80.9  | TByteHelper.ToExtended    | 1803 |
| 76.80.10 | TByteHelper.ToBinString   | 1804 |
| 76.80.11 | TByteHelper.ToHexString   | 1804 |
| 76.80.12 | TByteHelper.ToSingle      | 1804 |
| 76.80.13 | TByteHelper.SetBit        | 1804 |
| 76.80.14 | TByteHelper.ClearBit      | 1804 |
| 76.80.15 | TByteHelper.ToggleBit     | 1805 |
| 76.80.16 | TByteHelper.TestBit       | 1805 |
| 76.81    | TCardinalHelper           | 1805 |
| 76.81.1  | Description               | 1805 |
| 76.81.2  | Method overview           | 1805 |
| 76.81.3  | TCardinalHelper.Parse     | 1805 |
| 76.81.4  | TCardinalHelper.Size      | 1806 |
| 76.81.5  | TCardinalHelper.ToString  | 1806 |
| 76.81.6  | TCardinalHelper.TryParse  | 1806 |
| 76.81.7  | TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean | 1806 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 76.81.8  | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToDouble</a>         | 1807 |
| 76.81.9  | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToExtended</a>       | 1807 |
| 76.81.10 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToBinString</a>      | 1807 |
| 76.81.11 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToHexString</a>      | 1807 |
| 76.81.12 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToSingle</a>         | 1807 |
| 76.81.13 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.SetBit</a>           | 1808 |
| 76.81.14 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ClearBit</a>         | 1808 |
| 76.81.15 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.ToggleBit</a>        | 1808 |
| 76.81.16 | <a href="#">TCardinalHelper.TestBit</a>          | 1808 |
| 76.82    | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper</a>                    | 1808 |
| 76.82.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                      | 1808 |
| 76.82.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                  | 1808 |
| 76.82.3  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>                | 1809 |
| 76.82.4  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity</a>         | 1809 |
| 76.82.5  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.IsNan</a>              | 1809 |
| 76.82.6  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity</a> | 1809 |
| 76.82.7  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity</a> | 1810 |
| 76.82.8  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Parse</a>              | 1810 |
| 76.82.9  | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Size</a>               | 1810 |
| 76.82.10 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.ToString</a>           | 1810 |
| 76.82.11 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.TryParse</a>           | 1811 |
| 76.82.12 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.BuildUp</a>            | 1811 |
| 76.82.13 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Exponent</a>           | 1812 |
| 76.82.14 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Fraction</a>           | 1812 |
| 76.82.15 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Mantissa</a>           | 1812 |
| 76.82.16 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.SpecialType</a>        | 1813 |
| 76.82.17 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Bytes</a>              | 1813 |
| 76.82.18 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Words</a>              | 1813 |
| 76.82.19 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Sign</a>               | 1813 |
| 76.82.20 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Exp</a>                | 1814 |
| 76.82.21 | <a href="#">TDoubleHelper.Frac</a>               | 1814 |
| 76.83    | <a href="#">TEncoding</a>                        | 1814 |
| 76.83.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                      | 1814 |
| 76.83.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                  | 1815 |
| 76.83.3  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>                | 1815 |
| 76.83.4  | <a href="#">TEncoding.Clone</a>                  | 1815 |
| 76.83.5  | <a href="#">TEncoding.Convert</a>                | 1815 |
| 76.83.6  | <a href="#">TEncoding.IsStandardEncoding</a>     | 1816 |
| 76.83.7  | <a href="#">TEncoding.GetBufferEncoding</a>      | 1816 |
| 76.83.8  | <a href="#">TEncoding.GetEncoding</a>            | 1816 |

|          |                                    |      |
|----------|------------------------------------|------|
| 76.83.9  | TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount          | 1817 |
| 76.83.10 | TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount          | 1817 |
| 76.83.11 | TEncoding.GetPreamble              | 1817 |
| 76.83.12 | TEncoding.GetString                | 1818 |
| 76.83.13 | TEncoding.CodePage                 | 1818 |
| 76.83.14 | TEncoding.EncodingName             | 1818 |
| 76.83.15 | TEncoding.IsSingleByte             | 1818 |
| 76.83.16 | TEncoding.ANSI                     | 1819 |
| 76.83.17 | TEncoding.ASCII                    | 1819 |
| 76.83.18 | TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode         | 1819 |
| 76.83.19 | TEncoding.Default                  | 1819 |
| 76.83.20 | TEncoding.SystemEncoding           | 1820 |
| 76.83.21 | TEncoding.Unicode                  | 1820 |
| 76.83.22 | TEncoding.UTF7                     | 1820 |
| 76.83.23 | TEncoding.UTF8                     | 1820 |
| 76.84    | TExtendedHelper                    | 1821 |
| 76.84.1  | Description                        | 1821 |
| 76.84.2  | Method overview                    | 1821 |
| 76.84.3  | Property overview                  | 1821 |
| 76.84.4  | TExtendedHelper.ToString           | 1821 |
| 76.84.5  | TExtendedHelper.Parse              | 1822 |
| 76.84.6  | TExtendedHelper.TryParse           | 1822 |
| 76.84.7  | TExtendedHelper.IsNan              | 1823 |
| 76.84.8  | TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity         | 1823 |
| 76.84.9  | TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity | 1823 |
| 76.84.10 | TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity | 1824 |
| 76.84.11 | TExtendedHelper.Size               | 1824 |
| 76.84.12 | TExtendedHelper.BuildUp            | 1824 |
| 76.84.13 | TExtendedHelper.Exponent           | 1825 |
| 76.84.14 | TExtendedHelper.Fraction           | 1825 |
| 76.84.15 | TExtendedHelper.Mantissa           | 1825 |
| 76.84.16 | TExtendedHelper.SpecialType        | 1825 |
| 76.84.17 | TExtendedHelper.Bytes              | 1826 |
| 76.84.18 | TExtendedHelper.Words              | 1826 |
| 76.84.19 | TExtendedHelper.Sign               | 1826 |
| 76.84.20 | TExtendedHelper.Exp                | 1826 |
| 76.84.21 | TExtendedHelper.Frac               | 1827 |
| 76.85    | TGuidHelper                        | 1827 |
| 76.85.1  | Description                        | 1827 |
| 76.85.2  | Method overview                    | 1827 |

---

|          |                                      |      |
|----------|--------------------------------------|------|
| 76.85.3  | TGuidHelper.Create . . . . .         | 1827 |
| 76.85.4  | TGuidHelper.NewGuid . . . . .        | 1828 |
| 76.85.5  | TGuidHelper.ToArray . . . . .        | 1828 |
| 76.85.6  | TGuidHelper.ToString . . . . .       | 1828 |
| 76.86    | TInt64Helper . . . . .               | 1829 |
| 76.86.1  | Description . . . . .                | 1829 |
| 76.86.2  | Method overview . . . . .            | 1829 |
| 76.86.3  | TInt64Helper.Parse . . . . .         | 1829 |
| 76.86.4  | TInt64Helper.Size . . . . .          | 1829 |
| 76.86.5  | TInt64Helper.ToString . . . . .      | 1830 |
| 76.86.6  | TInt64Helper.TryParse . . . . .      | 1830 |
| 76.86.7  | TInt64Helper.ToBoolean . . . . .     | 1830 |
| 76.86.8  | TInt64Helper.ToDouble . . . . .      | 1830 |
| 76.86.9  | TInt64Helper.ToExtended . . . . .    | 1831 |
| 76.86.10 | TInt64Helper.ToBinString . . . . .   | 1831 |
| 76.86.11 | TInt64Helper.ToHexString . . . . .   | 1831 |
| 76.86.12 | TInt64Helper.ToSingle . . . . .      | 1831 |
| 76.86.13 | TInt64Helper.SetBit . . . . .        | 1831 |
| 76.86.14 | TInt64Helper.ClearBit . . . . .      | 1832 |
| 76.86.15 | TInt64Helper.ToggleBit . . . . .     | 1832 |
| 76.86.16 | TInt64Helper.TestBit . . . . .       | 1832 |
| 76.87    | TIntegerHelper . . . . .             | 1832 |
| 76.87.1  | Description . . . . .                | 1832 |
| 76.87.2  | Method overview . . . . .            | 1832 |
| 76.87.3  | TIntegerHelper.Size . . . . .        | 1832 |
| 76.87.4  | TIntegerHelper.ToString . . . . .    | 1833 |
| 76.87.5  | TIntegerHelper.Parse . . . . .       | 1833 |
| 76.87.6  | TIntegerHelper.TryParse . . . . .    | 1833 |
| 76.87.7  | TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean . . . . .   | 1834 |
| 76.87.8  | TIntegerHelper.ToDouble . . . . .    | 1834 |
| 76.87.9  | TIntegerHelper.ToExtended . . . . .  | 1834 |
| 76.87.10 | TIntegerHelper.ToBinString . . . . . | 1834 |
| 76.87.11 | TIntegerHelper.ToHexString . . . . . | 1834 |
| 76.87.12 | TIntegerHelper.ToSingle . . . . .    | 1835 |
| 76.87.13 | TIntegerHelper.SetBit . . . . .      | 1835 |
| 76.87.14 | TIntegerHelper.ClearBit . . . . .    | 1835 |
| 76.87.15 | TIntegerHelper.ToggleBit . . . . .   | 1835 |
| 76.87.16 | TIntegerHelper.TestBit . . . . .     | 1835 |
| 76.88    | TLongBoolHelper . . . . .            | 1835 |
| 76.88.1  | Description . . . . .                | 1835 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 76.88.2  | Method overview                                     | 1836 |
| 76.88.3  | TLongBoolHelper.Parse                               | 1836 |
| 76.88.4  | TLongBoolHelper.Size                                | 1836 |
| 76.88.5  | TLongBoolHelper.ToString                            | 1836 |
| 76.88.6  | TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse                          | 1837 |
| 76.88.7  | TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger                           | 1837 |
| 76.89    | TMBCSEncoding                                       | 1837 |
| 76.89.1  | Description   | 1837 |
| 76.89.2  | Method overview                                     | 1837 |
| 76.89.3  | TMBCSEncoding.Create                                | 1837 |
| 76.89.4  | TMBCSEncoding.Clone                                 | 1838 |
| 76.89.5  | TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxByteCount                       | 1838 |
| 76.89.6  | TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxCharCount                       | 1838 |
| 76.89.7  | TMBCSEncoding.GetPreamble                           | 1838 |
| 76.90    | TMREWException                                      | 1839 |
| 76.91    | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer                | 1839 |
| 76.91.1  | Description   | 1839 |
| 76.91.2  | Interfaces overview                                 | 1839 |
| 76.91.3  | Method overview                                     | 1839 |
| 76.91.4  | Property overview                                   | 1839 |
| 76.91.5  | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create         | 1839 |
| 76.91.6  | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy        | 1840 |
| 76.91.7  | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite     | 1840 |
| 76.91.8  | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite       | 1840 |
| 76.91.9  | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread      | 1840 |
| 76.91.10 | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread        | 1841 |
| 76.91.11 | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.RevisionLevel  | 1841 |
| 76.91.12 | TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.WriterThreadID | 1841 |
| 76.92    | TNativeIntHelper                                    | 1841 |
| 76.92.1  | Description   | 1841 |
| 76.92.2  | Method overview                                     | 1842 |
| 76.92.3  | TNativeIntHelper.Parse                              | 1842 |
| 76.92.4  | TNativeIntHelper.Size                               | 1842 |
| 76.92.5  | TNativeIntHelper.ToString                           | 1842 |
| 76.92.6  | TNativeIntHelper.TryParse                           | 1843 |
| 76.92.7  | TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean                          | 1843 |
| 76.92.8  | TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble                           | 1843 |
| 76.92.9  | TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended                         | 1843 |
| 76.92.10 | TNativeIntHelper.ToBinString                        | 1844 |
| 76.92.11 | TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString                        | 1844 |

---

|          |                               |      |
|----------|-------------------------------|------|
| 76.92.12 | TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle     | 1844 |
| 76.92.13 | TNativeIntHelper.SetBit       | 1844 |
| 76.92.14 | TNativeIntHelper.ClearBit     | 1844 |
| 76.92.15 | TNativeIntHelper.ToggleBit    | 1845 |
| 76.92.16 | TNativeIntHelper.TestBit      | 1845 |
| 76.93    | TNativeUIntHelper             | 1845 |
| 76.93.1  | Description                   | 1845 |
| 76.93.2  | Method overview               | 1845 |
| 76.93.3  | TNativeUIntHelper.Parse       | 1845 |
| 76.93.4  | TNativeUIntHelper.Size        | 1846 |
| 76.93.5  | TNativeUIntHelper.ToString    | 1846 |
| 76.93.6  | TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse    | 1846 |
| 76.93.7  | TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean   | 1846 |
| 76.93.8  | TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble    | 1847 |
| 76.93.9  | TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended  | 1847 |
| 76.93.10 | TNativeUIntHelper.ToBinString | 1847 |
| 76.93.11 | TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString | 1847 |
| 76.93.12 | TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle    | 1847 |
| 76.93.13 | TNativeUIntHelper.SetBit      | 1848 |
| 76.93.14 | TNativeUIntHelper.ClearBit    | 1848 |
| 76.93.15 | TNativeUIntHelper.ToggleBit   | 1848 |
| 76.93.16 | TNativeUIntHelper.TestBit     | 1848 |
| 76.94    | TQWordHelper                  | 1848 |
| 76.94.1  | Description                   | 1848 |
| 76.94.2  | Method overview               | 1848 |
| 76.94.3  | TQWordHelper.Parse            | 1849 |
| 76.94.4  | TQWordHelper.Size             | 1849 |
| 76.94.5  | TQWordHelper.ToString         | 1849 |
| 76.94.6  | TQWordHelper.TryParse         | 1849 |
| 76.94.7  | TQWordHelper.ToBoolean        | 1850 |
| 76.94.8  | TQWordHelper.ToDouble         | 1850 |
| 76.94.9  | TQWordHelper.ToExtended       | 1850 |
| 76.94.10 | TQWordHelper.ToBinString      | 1850 |
| 76.94.11 | TQWordHelper.ToHexString      | 1850 |
| 76.94.12 | TQWordHelper.ToSingle         | 1851 |
| 76.94.13 | TQWordHelper.SetBit           | 1851 |
| 76.94.14 | TQWordHelper.ClearBit         | 1851 |
| 76.94.15 | TQWordHelper.ToggleBit        | 1851 |
| 76.94.16 | TQWordHelper.TestBit          | 1851 |
| 76.95    | TShortIntHelper               | 1851 |

|          |                                  |      |
|----------|----------------------------------|------|
| 76.95.1  | Description                      | 1851 |
| 76.95.2  | Method overview                  | 1852 |
| 76.95.3  | TShortIntHelper.Parse            | 1852 |
| 76.95.4  | TShortIntHelper.Size             | 1852 |
| 76.95.5  | TShortIntHelper.ToString         | 1852 |
| 76.95.6  | TShortIntHelper.TryParse         | 1853 |
| 76.95.7  | TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean        | 1853 |
| 76.95.8  | TShortIntHelper.ToDouble         | 1853 |
| 76.95.9  | TShortIntHelper.ToExtended       | 1853 |
| 76.95.10 | TShortIntHelper.ToBinString      | 1854 |
| 76.95.11 | TShortIntHelper.ToHexString      | 1854 |
| 76.95.12 | TShortIntHelper.ToSingle         | 1854 |
| 76.95.13 | TShortIntHelper.SetBit           | 1854 |
| 76.95.14 | TShortIntHelper.ClearBit         | 1854 |
| 76.95.15 | TShortIntHelper.ToggleBit        | 1855 |
| 76.95.16 | TShortIntHelper.TestBit          | 1855 |
| 76.96    | TSimpleRWSync                    | 1855 |
| 76.96.1  | Description                      | 1855 |
| 76.96.2  | Interfaces overview              | 1855 |
| 76.96.3  | Method overview                  | 1855 |
| 76.96.4  | TSimpleRWSync.Create             | 1855 |
| 76.96.5  | TSimpleRWSync.Destroy            | 1856 |
| 76.96.6  | TSimpleRWSync.Beginwrite         | 1856 |
| 76.96.7  | TSimpleRWSync.Endwrite           | 1856 |
| 76.96.8  | TSimpleRWSync.Beginread          | 1856 |
| 76.96.9  | TSimpleRWSync.Endread            | 1857 |
| 76.97    | TSingleHelper                    | 1857 |
| 76.97.1  | Description                      | 1857 |
| 76.97.2  | Method overview                  | 1857 |
| 76.97.3  | Property overview                | 1857 |
| 76.97.4  | TSingleHelper.IsNan              | 1857 |
| 76.97.5  | TSingleHelper.IsInfinity         | 1858 |
| 76.97.6  | TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity | 1858 |
| 76.97.7  | TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity | 1858 |
| 76.97.8  | TSingleHelper.Parse              | 1859 |
| 76.97.9  | TSingleHelper.Size               | 1859 |
| 76.97.10 | TSingleHelper.ToString           | 1859 |
| 76.97.11 | TSingleHelper.TryParse           | 1860 |
| 76.97.12 | TSingleHelper.BuildUp            | 1860 |
| 76.97.13 | TSingleHelper.Exponent           | 1861 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 76.97.14 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Fraction</a>                  | 1861 |
| 76.97.15 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Mantissa</a>                  | 1861 |
| 76.97.16 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.SpecialType</a>               | 1861 |
| 76.97.17 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Bytes</a>                     | 1862 |
| 76.97.18 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Words</a>                     | 1862 |
| 76.97.19 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Sign</a>                      | 1862 |
| 76.97.20 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Exp</a>                       | 1862 |
| 76.97.21 | <a href="#">TSingleHelper.Frac</a>                      | 1863 |
| 76.98    | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper</a>                         | 1863 |
| 76.98.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                             | 1863 |
| 76.98.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                         | 1863 |
| 76.98.3  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.Parse</a>                   | 1863 |
| 76.98.4  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.Size</a>                    | 1864 |
| 76.98.5  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToString</a>                | 1864 |
| 76.98.6  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.TryParse</a>                | 1864 |
| 76.98.7  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean</a>               | 1865 |
| 76.98.8  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToBinString</a>             | 1865 |
| 76.98.9  | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString</a>             | 1865 |
| 76.98.10 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle</a>                | 1865 |
| 76.98.11 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble</a>                | 1865 |
| 76.98.12 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended</a>              | 1866 |
| 76.98.13 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.SetBit</a>                  | 1866 |
| 76.98.14 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ClearBit</a>                | 1866 |
| 76.98.15 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToggleBit</a>               | 1866 |
| 76.98.16 | <a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.TestBit</a>                 | 1866 |
| 76.99    | <a href="#">TStringHelper</a>                           | 1866 |
| 76.99.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                             | 1866 |
| 76.99.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                         | 1868 |
| 76.99.3  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>                       | 1869 |
| 76.99.4  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Compare</a>                   | 1869 |
| 76.99.5  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal</a>            | 1870 |
| 76.99.6  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.CompareText</a>               | 1870 |
| 76.99.7  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Copy</a>                      | 1870 |
| 76.99.8  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Create</a>                    | 1871 |
| 76.99.9  | <a href="#">TStringHelper.EndsText</a>                  | 1871 |
| 76.99.10 | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Equals</a>                    | 1871 |
| 76.99.11 | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Format</a>                    | 1872 |
| 76.99.12 | <a href="#">TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty</a>             | 1872 |
| 76.99.13 | <a href="#">TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyOrWhiteSpace</a> | 1872 |
| 76.99.14 | <a href="#">TStringHelper.Join</a>                      | 1872 |

|          |                                  |      |
|----------|----------------------------------|------|
| 76.99.15 | TStringHelper.LowerCase          | 1873 |
| 76.99.16 | TStringHelper.Parse              | 1873 |
| 76.99.17 | TStringHelper.ToBoolean          | 1873 |
| 76.99.18 | TStringHelper.ToDouble           | 1874 |
| 76.99.19 | TStringHelper.ToExtended         | 1874 |
| 76.99.20 | TStringHelper.ToInt64            | 1874 |
| 76.99.21 | TStringHelper.ToInteger          | 1875 |
| 76.99.22 | TStringHelper.ToSingle           | 1875 |
| 76.99.23 | TStringHelper.UpperCase          | 1875 |
| 76.99.24 | TStringHelper.CompareTo          | 1876 |
| 76.99.25 | TStringHelper.Contains           | 1876 |
| 76.99.26 | TStringHelper.CopyTo             | 1876 |
| 76.99.27 | TStringHelper.CountChar          | 1876 |
| 76.99.28 | TStringHelper.DeQuotedString     | 1877 |
| 76.99.29 | TStringHelper.EndsWith           | 1877 |
| 76.99.30 | TStringHelper.GetHashCode        | 1877 |
| 76.99.31 | TStringHelper.IndexOf            | 1877 |
| 76.99.32 | TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted    | 1878 |
| 76.99.33 | TStringHelper.IndexOfAny         | 1878 |
| 76.99.34 | TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted | 1879 |
| 76.99.35 | TStringHelper.Insert             | 1879 |
| 76.99.36 | TStringHelper.IsDelimiter        | 1880 |
| 76.99.37 | TStringHelper.IsEmpty            | 1880 |
| 76.99.38 | TStringHelper.LastDelimiter      | 1880 |
| 76.99.39 | TStringHelper.LastIndexOf        | 1880 |
| 76.99.40 | TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny     | 1881 |
| 76.99.41 | TStringHelper.PadLeft            | 1881 |
| 76.99.42 | TStringHelper.PadRight           | 1882 |
| 76.99.43 | TStringHelper.QuotedString       | 1882 |
| 76.99.44 | TStringHelper.Remove             | 1882 |
| 76.99.45 | TStringHelper.Replace            | 1883 |
| 76.99.46 | TStringHelper.Split              | 1883 |
| 76.99.47 | TStringHelper.StartsWith         | 1884 |
| 76.99.48 | TStringHelper.Substring          | 1884 |
| 76.99.49 | TStringHelper.ToCharArray        | 1885 |
| 76.99.50 | TStringHelper.ToLower            | 1885 |
| 76.99.51 | TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant   | 1885 |
| 76.99.52 | TStringHelper.ToUpper            | 1885 |
| 76.99.53 | TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant   | 1886 |
| 76.99.54 | TStringHelper.Trim               | 1886 |

|           |                                      |      |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|------|
| 76.99.55  | TStringHelper.TrimLeft               | 1886 |
| 76.99.56  | TStringHelper.TrimRight              | 1886 |
| 76.99.57  | TStringHelper.TrimEnd                | 1887 |
| 76.99.58  | TStringHelper.TrimStart              | 1887 |
| 76.99.59  | TStringHelper.Chars                  | 1887 |
| 76.99.60  | TStringHelper.Length                 | 1887 |
| 76.100    | TUnicodeEncoding                     | 1887 |
| 76.100.1  | Description                          | 1887 |
| 76.100.2  | Method overview                      | 1888 |
| 76.100.3  | TUnicodeEncoding.Create              | 1888 |
| 76.100.4  | TUnicodeEncoding.Clone               | 1888 |
| 76.100.5  | TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxByteCount     | 1888 |
| 76.100.6  | TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxCharCount     | 1888 |
| 76.100.7  | TUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble         | 1889 |
| 76.101    | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER                | 1889 |
| 76.101.1  | Method overview                      | 1889 |
| 76.101.2  | Property overview                    | 1889 |
| 76.101.3  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Create         | 1889 |
| 76.101.4  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Append         | 1889 |
| 76.101.5  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat   | 1890 |
| 76.101.6  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine     | 1890 |
| 76.101.7  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Clear          | 1890 |
| 76.101.8  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo         | 1890 |
| 76.101.9  | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity | 1891 |
| 76.101.10 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Equals         | 1891 |
| 76.101.11 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Insert         | 1891 |
| 76.101.12 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Remove         | 1892 |
| 76.101.13 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Replace        | 1892 |
| 76.101.14 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.ToString       | 1892 |
| 76.101.15 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Chars          | 1892 |
| 76.101.16 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Length         | 1892 |
| 76.101.17 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Capacity       | 1893 |
| 76.101.18 | TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity    | 1893 |
| 76.102    | TUTF7Encoding                        | 1893 |
| 76.102.1  | Description                          | 1893 |
| 76.102.2  | Method overview                      | 1893 |
| 76.102.3  | TUTF7Encoding.Create                 | 1893 |
| 76.102.4  | TUTF7Encoding.Clone                  | 1893 |
| 76.102.5  | TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxByteCount        | 1894 |
| 76.102.6  | TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxCharCount        | 1894 |

|           |                                   |             |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| 76.103    | TUTF8Encoding                     | 1894        |
| 76.103.1  | Description                       | 1894        |
| 76.103.2  | Method overview                   | 1894        |
| 76.103.3  | TUTF8Encoding.Create              | 1894        |
| 76.103.4  | TUTF8Encoding.Clone               | 1895        |
| 76.103.5  | TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxByteCount     | 1895        |
| 76.103.6  | TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxCharCount     | 1895        |
| 76.103.7  | TUTF8Encoding.GetPreamble         | 1895        |
| 76.104    | TWordBoolHelper                   | 1896        |
| 76.104.1  | Description                       | 1896        |
| 76.104.2  | Method overview                   | 1896        |
| 76.104.3  | TWordBoolHelper.Parse             | 1896        |
| 76.104.4  | TWordBoolHelper.Size              | 1896        |
| 76.104.5  | TWordBoolHelper.ToString          | 1896        |
| 76.104.6  | TWordBoolHelper.TryParse          | 1897        |
| 76.104.7  | TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger         | 1897        |
| 76.105    | TWordHelper                       | 1897        |
| 76.105.1  | Description                       | 1897        |
| 76.105.2  | Method overview                   | 1898        |
| 76.105.3  | TWordHelper.Parse                 | 1898        |
| 76.105.4  | TWordHelper.Size                  | 1898        |
| 76.105.5  | TWordHelper.ToString              | 1898        |
| 76.105.6  | TWordHelper.TryParse              | 1899        |
| 76.105.7  | TWordHelper.ToBoolean             | 1899        |
| 76.105.8  | TWordHelper.ToDouble              | 1899        |
| 76.105.9  | TWordHelper.ToExtended            | 1899        |
| 76.105.10 | TWordHelper.ToBinString           | 1900        |
| 76.105.11 | TWordHelper.ToHexString           | 1900        |
| 76.105.12 | TWordHelper.ToSingle              | 1900        |
| 76.105.13 | TWordHelper.SetBit                | 1900        |
| 76.105.14 | TWordHelper.ClearBit              | 1900        |
| 76.105.15 | TWordHelper.ToggleBit             | 1901        |
| 76.105.16 | TWordHelper.TestBit               | 1901        |
| <b>77</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Types'</b> | <b>1902</b> |
| 77.1      | Used units                        | 1902        |
| 77.2      | Overview                          | 1902        |
| 77.3      | Constants, types and variables    | 1902        |
| 77.3.1    | Constants                         | 1902        |
| 77.3.2    | Types                             | 1907        |

|         |  |      |
|---------|--|------|
| 77.4    | Procedures and functions               | 1913 |
| 77.4.1  | Bounds                                 | 1913 |
| 77.4.2  | CenterPoint                            | 1914 |
| 77.4.3  | EqualRect                              | 1914 |
| 77.4.4  | InflateRect                            | 1914 |
| 77.4.5  | IntersectRect                          | 1914 |
| 77.4.6  | IsRectEmpty                            | 1915 |
| 77.4.7  | OffsetRect                             | 1915 |
| 77.4.8  | Point                                  | 1915 |
| 77.4.9  | PtInRect                               | 1915 |
| 77.4.10 | Rect                                   | 1916 |
| 77.4.11 | Size                                   | 1916 |
| 77.4.12 | UnionRect                              | 1916 |
| 77.5    | TPoint                                 | 1916 |
| 77.5.1  | Method overview                        | 1918 |
| 77.5.2  | TPoint.Zero                            | 1918 |
| 77.5.3  | TPoint.Add                             | 1918 |
| 77.5.4  | TPoint.Distance                        | 1918 |
| 77.5.5  | TPoint.IsZero                          | 1918 |
| 77.5.6  | TPoint.Subtract                        | 1918 |
| 77.5.7  | TPoint.SetLocation                     | 1918 |
| 77.5.8  | TPoint.Offset                          | 1919 |
| 77.5.9  | TPoint.PointInCircle                   | 1919 |
| 77.5.10 | TPoint.equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean    | 1919 |
| 77.5.11 | TPoint.notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean | 1919 |
| 77.5.12 | TPoint.add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint       | 1919 |
| 77.5.13 | TPoint.subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint  | 1919 |
| 77.5.14 | TPoint.assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint      | 1919 |
| 77.5.15 | TPoint.explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint    | 1919 |
| 77.6    | TPointF                                | 1920 |
| 77.6.1  | Method overview                        | 1921 |
| 77.6.2  | TPointF.Add                            | 1921 |
| 77.6.3  | TPointF.Distance                       | 1921 |
| 77.6.4  | TPointF.DotProduct                     | 1921 |
| 77.6.5  | TPointF.IsZero                         | 1921 |
| 77.6.6  | TPointF.Subtract                       | 1922 |
| 77.6.7  | TPointF.SetLocation                    | 1922 |
| 77.6.8  | TPointF.Offset                         | 1922 |
| 77.6.9  | TPointF.Scale                          | 1922 |
| 77.6.10 | TPointF.Ceiling                        | 1922 |

|         |   |      |
|---------|---|------|
| 77.6.11 | TPointF.Truncate                          | 1922 |
| 77.6.12 | TPointF.Floor                             | 1922 |
| 77.6.13 | TPointF.Round                             | 1922 |
| 77.6.14 | TPointF.Length                            | 1923 |
| 77.6.15 | TPointF.Create                            | 1923 |
| 77.6.16 | TPointF.equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean    | 1923 |
| 77.6.17 | TPointF.notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean | 1923 |
| 77.6.18 | TPointF.add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF      | 1923 |
| 77.6.19 | TPointF.subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF | 1923 |
| 77.6.20 | TPointF.negative(TPointF):TPointF         | 1923 |
| 77.6.21 | TPointF.multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single  | 1923 |
| 77.6.22 | TPointF.multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF  | 1924 |
| 77.6.23 | TPointF.multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF  | 1924 |
| 77.7    | TRect                                     | 1924 |
| 77.7.1  | Method overview                           | 1925 |
| 77.7.2  | Property overview                         | 1926 |
| 77.7.3  | TRect.Create                              | 1926 |
| 77.7.4  | TRect.equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean          | 1926 |
| 77.7.5  | TRect.notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean       | 1926 |
| 77.7.6  | TRect.add(TRect,TRect):TRect              | 1926 |
| 77.7.7  | TRect.multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect         | 1926 |
| 77.7.8  | TRect.Empty                               | 1926 |
| 77.7.9  | TRect.NormalizeRect                       | 1926 |
| 77.7.10 | TRect.IsEmpty                             | 1927 |
| 77.7.11 | TRect.Contains                            | 1927 |
| 77.7.12 | TRect.IntersectsWith                      | 1927 |
| 77.7.13 | TRect.Intersect                           | 1927 |
| 77.7.14 | TRect.Union                               | 1927 |
| 77.7.15 | TRect.Offset                              | 1927 |
| 77.7.16 | TRect.SetLocation                         | 1927 |
| 77.7.17 | TRect.Inflate                             | 1927 |
| 77.7.18 | TRect.CenterPoint                         | 1928 |
| 77.7.19 | TRect.SplitRect                           | 1928 |
| 77.7.20 | TRect.Height                              | 1928 |
| 77.7.21 | TRect.Width                               | 1928 |
| 77.7.22 | TRect.Size                                | 1928 |
| 77.7.23 | TRect.Location                            | 1928 |
| 77.8    | TRectF                                    | 1928 |
| 77.8.1  | Method overview                           | 1929 |
| 77.8.2  | Property overview                         | 1929 |

|          |                                     |      |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 77.8.3   | TRectF.Union                        | 1929 |
| 77.8.4   | TRectF.Offset                       | 1929 |
| 77.8.5   | TRectF.Width                        | 1930 |
| 77.8.6   | TRectF.Height                       | 1930 |
| 77.9     | TSize                               | 1930 |
| 77.9.1   | Method overview                     | 1931 |
| 77.9.2   | Property overview                   | 1931 |
| 77.9.3   | TSize.Add                           | 1931 |
| 77.9.4   | TSize.Distance                      | 1931 |
| 77.9.5   | TSize.IsZero                        | 1931 |
| 77.9.6   | TSize.Subtract                      | 1931 |
| 77.9.7   | TSize.equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean    | 1931 |
| 77.9.8   | TSize.notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean | 1931 |
| 77.9.9   | TSize.add(TSize,TSize):TSize        | 1932 |
| 77.9.10  | TSize.subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize   | 1932 |
| 77.9.11  | TSize.Width                         | 1932 |
| 77.9.12  | TSize.Height                        | 1932 |
| 77.10    | IClassFactory                       | 1932 |
| 77.10.1  | Description                         | 1932 |
| 77.10.2  | Method overview                     | 1932 |
| 77.10.3  | IClassFactory.CreateInstance        | 1932 |
| 77.10.4  | IClassFactory.LockServer            | 1933 |
| 77.11    | ISequentialStream                   | 1933 |
| 77.11.1  | Description                         | 1933 |
| 77.11.2  | Method overview                     | 1933 |
| 77.11.3  | ISequentialStream.Read              | 1933 |
| 77.11.4  | ISequentialStream.Write             | 1933 |
| 77.12    | IStream                             | 1933 |
| 77.12.1  | Description                         | 1933 |
| 77.12.2  | Method overview                     | 1934 |
| 77.12.3  | IStream.Seek                        | 1934 |
| 77.12.4  | IStream.SetSize                     | 1934 |
| 77.12.5  | IStream.CopyTo                      | 1934 |
| 77.12.6  | IStream.Commit                      | 1935 |
| 77.12.7  | IStream.Revert                      | 1935 |
| 77.12.8  | IStream.LockRegion                  | 1935 |
| 77.12.9  | IStream.UnlockRegion                | 1935 |
| 77.12.10 | IStream.Stat                        | 1936 |
| 77.12.11 | IStream.Clone                       | 1936 |
| 77.13    | TBitConverter                       | 1936 |

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| 77.13.1   | Method overview                          | 1936        |
| 77.13.2   | TBitConverter.UnsafeFrom                 | 1936        |
| 77.13.3   | TBitConverter.From                       | 1936        |
| 77.13.4   | TBitConverter.UnsafeInTo                 | 1937        |
| 77.13.5   | TBitConverter.InTo                       | 1937        |
| <b>78</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'TypeInfo'</b>     | <b>1938</b> |
| 78.1      | Used units                               | 1938        |
| 78.2      | Overview                                 | 1938        |
| 78.3      | Auxiliary functions                      | 1938        |
| 78.4      | Getting or setting property values       | 1939        |
| 78.5      | Examining published property information | 1939        |
| 78.6      | Constants, types and variables           | 1940        |
| 78.6.1    | Constants                                | 1940        |
| 78.6.2    | Types                                    | 1943        |
| 78.7      | Procedures and functions                 | 1950        |
| 78.7.1    | AddEnumElementAliases                    | 1950        |
| 78.7.2    | AlignPTypeInfo                           | 1950        |
| 78.7.3    | AlignTParamFlags                         | 1950        |
| 78.7.4    | AlignTypeData                            | 1950        |
| 78.7.5    | DerefTypeInfoPtr                         | 1950        |
| 78.7.6    | FindPropInfo                             | 1950        |
| 78.7.7    | GetDynArrayProp                          | 1951        |
| 78.7.8    | GetEnumeratedAliasValue                  | 1952        |
| 78.7.9    | GetEnumName                              | 1952        |
| 78.7.10   | GetEnumNameCount                         | 1952        |
| 78.7.11   | GetEnumProp                              | 1953        |
| 78.7.12   | GetEnumValue                             | 1954        |
| 78.7.13   | GetFloatProp                             | 1954        |
| 78.7.14   | GetInt64Prop                             | 1955        |
| 78.7.15   | GetInterfaceProp                         | 1956        |
| 78.7.16   | GetMethodProp                            | 1956        |
| 78.7.17   | GetObjectProp                            | 1958        |
| 78.7.18   | GetObjectPropClass                       | 1959        |
| 78.7.19   | GetOrdProp                               | 1960        |
| 78.7.20   | GetPropInfo                              | 1961        |
| 78.7.21   | GetPropInfos                             | 1961        |
| 78.7.22   | GetPropList                              | 1962        |
| 78.7.23   | GetPropValue                             | 1963        |
| 78.7.24   | GetRawByteStrProp                        | 1963        |

|         |                          |      |
|---------|--------------------------|------|
| 78.7.25 | GetRawInterfaceProp      | 1964 |
| 78.7.26 | GetSetProp               | 1964 |
| 78.7.27 | GetStrProp               | 1965 |
| 78.7.28 | GetTypeData              | 1966 |
| 78.7.29 | GetUnicodeStrProp        | 1966 |
| 78.7.30 | GetVariantProp           | 1967 |
| 78.7.31 | GetWideStrProp           | 1967 |
| 78.7.32 | IsPublishedProp          | 1967 |
| 78.7.33 | IsReadableProp           | 1968 |
| 78.7.34 | IsStoredProp             | 1968 |
| 78.7.35 | IsWriteableProp          | 1969 |
| 78.7.36 | PropIsType               | 1969 |
| 78.7.37 | PropType                 | 1970 |
| 78.7.38 | RemoveEnumElementAliases | 1971 |
| 78.7.39 | SetDynArrayProp          | 1971 |
| 78.7.40 | SetEnumProp              | 1971 |
| 78.7.41 | SetFloatProp             | 1972 |
| 78.7.42 | SetInt64Prop             | 1972 |
| 78.7.43 | SetInterfaceProp         | 1973 |
| 78.7.44 | SetMethodProp            | 1973 |
| 78.7.45 | SetObjectProp            | 1974 |
| 78.7.46 | SetOrdProp               | 1974 |
| 78.7.47 | SetPropValue             | 1975 |
| 78.7.48 | SetRawByteStrProp        | 1975 |
| 78.7.49 | SetRawInterfaceProp      | 1975 |
| 78.7.50 | SetSetProp               | 1975 |
| 78.7.51 | SetStrProp               | 1976 |
| 78.7.52 | SetToString              | 1976 |
| 78.7.53 | SetUnicodeStrProp        | 1977 |
| 78.7.54 | SetVariantProp           | 1978 |
| 78.7.55 | SetWideStrProp           | 1978 |
| 78.7.56 | StringToSet              | 1978 |
| 78.8    | TArrayTypeData           | 1979 |
| 78.8.1  | Property overview        | 1979 |
| 78.8.2  | TArrayTypeData.ElType    | 1979 |
| 78.8.3  | TArrayTypeData.Dims      | 1980 |
| 78.9    | TClassData               | 1980 |
| 78.9.1  | Property overview        | 1980 |
| 78.9.2  | TClassData.UnitName      | 1980 |
| 78.9.3  | TClassData.PropertyTable | 1980 |

|         |                                 |      |
|---------|---------------------------------|------|
| 78.10   | TInterfaceData                  | 1981 |
| 78.10.1 | Property overview               | 1981 |
| 78.10.2 | TInterfaceData.UnitName         | 1981 |
| 78.10.3 | TInterfaceData.PropertyTable    | 1981 |
| 78.10.4 | TInterfaceData.MethodTable      | 1981 |
| 78.11   | TInterfaceRawData               | 1982 |
| 78.11.1 | Property overview               | 1982 |
| 78.11.2 | TInterfaceRawData.UnitName      | 1982 |
| 78.11.3 | TInterfaceRawData.IIDStr        | 1982 |
| 78.11.4 | TInterfaceRawData.PropertyTable | 1982 |
| 78.11.5 | TInterfaceRawData.MethodTable   | 1983 |
| 78.12   | TIntfMethodEntry                | 1983 |
| 78.12.1 | Property overview               | 1983 |
| 78.12.2 | TIntfMethodEntry.Name           | 1984 |
| 78.12.3 | TIntfMethodEntry.Param          | 1984 |
| 78.12.4 | TIntfMethodEntry.ResultLocs     | 1984 |
| 78.12.5 | TIntfMethodEntry.Tail           | 1984 |
| 78.12.6 | TIntfMethodEntry.Next           | 1984 |
| 78.13   | TIntfMethodTable                | 1984 |
| 78.13.1 | Property overview               | 1985 |
| 78.13.2 | TIntfMethodTable.Method         | 1985 |
| 78.14   | TManagedField                   | 1985 |
| 78.14.1 | Property overview               | 1985 |
| 78.14.2 | TManagedField.TypeRef           | 1985 |
| 78.15   | TParameterLocation              | 1985 |
| 78.15.1 | Property overview               | 1986 |
| 78.15.2 | TParameterLocation.Reference    | 1986 |
| 78.15.3 | TParameterLocation.RegType      | 1986 |
| 78.15.4 | TParameterLocation.ShiftVal     | 1986 |
| 78.16   | TParameterLocations             | 1986 |
| 78.16.1 | Property overview               | 1987 |
| 78.16.2 | TParameterLocations.Location    | 1987 |
| 78.16.3 | TParameterLocations.Tail        | 1987 |
| 78.17   | TProcedureParam                 | 1987 |
| 78.17.1 | Property overview               | 1988 |
| 78.17.2 | TProcedureParam.ParamType       | 1988 |
| 78.17.3 | TProcedureParam.Flags           | 1988 |
| 78.18   | TProcedureSignature             | 1988 |
| 78.18.1 | Method overview                 | 1988 |
| 78.18.2 | Property overview               | 1989 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 78.18.3  | <a href="#">TProcedureSignature.GetParam</a>   | 1989 |
| 78.18.4  | <a href="#">TProcedureSignature.ResultType</a> | 1989 |
| 78.19    | <a href="#">TPropData</a>                      | 1989 |
| 78.19.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 1990 |
| 78.19.2  | <a href="#">TPropData.Prop</a>                 | 1990 |
| 78.19.3  | <a href="#">TPropData.Tail</a>                 | 1990 |
| 78.20    | <a href="#">TPropInfo</a>                      | 1990 |
| 78.20.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 1991 |
| 78.20.2  | <a href="#">TPropInfo.PropType</a>             | 1991 |
| 78.20.3  | <a href="#">TPropInfo.Tail</a>                 | 1991 |
| 78.20.4  | <a href="#">TPropInfo.Next</a>                 | 1991 |
| 78.21    | <a href="#">TTypeData</a>                      | 1991 |
| 78.21.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 2006 |
| 78.21.2  | <a href="#">TTypeData.BaseType</a>             | 2007 |
| 78.21.3  | <a href="#">TTypeData.CompType</a>             | 2007 |
| 78.21.4  | <a href="#">TTypeData.ParentInfo</a>           | 2007 |
| 78.21.5  | <a href="#">TTypeData.RecInitData</a>          | 2007 |
| 78.21.6  | <a href="#">TTypeData.HelperParent</a>         | 2007 |
| 78.21.7  | <a href="#">TTypeData.ExtendedInfo</a>         | 2008 |
| 78.21.8  | <a href="#">TTypeData.IntfParent</a>           | 2008 |
| 78.21.9  | <a href="#">TTypeData.RawIntfParent</a>        | 2008 |
| 78.21.10 | <a href="#">TTypeData.IIDStr</a>               | 2008 |
| 78.21.11 | <a href="#">TTypeData.ElType2</a>              | 2008 |
| 78.21.12 | <a href="#">TTypeData.ElType</a>               | 2009 |
| 78.21.13 | <a href="#">TTypeData.InstanceType</a>         | 2009 |
| 78.21.14 | <a href="#">TTypeData.RefType</a>              | 2009 |
| 78.22    | <a href="#">TVmtFieldEntry</a>                 | 2009 |
| 78.22.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 2009 |
| 78.22.2  | <a href="#">TVmtFieldEntry.Tail</a>            | 2010 |
| 78.22.3  | <a href="#">TVmtFieldEntry.Next</a>            | 2010 |
| 78.23    | <a href="#">TVmtFieldTable</a>                 | 2010 |
| 78.23.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 2010 |
| 78.23.2  | <a href="#">TVmtFieldTable.Field</a>           | 2010 |
| 78.24    | <a href="#">TVmtMethodParam</a>                | 2010 |
| 78.24.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 2011 |
| 78.24.2  | <a href="#">TVmtMethodParam.Name</a>           | 2011 |
| 78.24.3  | <a href="#">TVmtMethodParam.Tail</a>           | 2011 |
| 78.24.4  | <a href="#">TVmtMethodParam.Next</a>           | 2011 |
| 78.25    | <a href="#">TVmtMethodTable</a>                | 2012 |
| 78.25.1  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>              | 2012 |

|           |   |             |
|-----------|---|-------------|
| 78.25.2   | TVmtMethodTable.Entry                   | 2012        |
| 78.26     | EPropertyConvertError                   | 2012        |
| 78.26.1   | Description                             | 2012        |
| 78.27     | EPropertyError                          | 2012        |
| 78.27.1   | Description                             | 2012        |
| <b>79</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'unicodedata'</b> | <b>2013</b> |
| 79.1      | Overview                                | 2013        |
| 79.2      | Constants, types and variables          | 2014        |
| 79.2.1    | Resource strings                        | 2014        |
| 79.2.2    | Constants                               | 2014        |
| 79.2.3    | Types                                   | 2018        |
| 79.3      | Procedures and functions                | 2020        |
| 79.3.1    | AddAliasCollation                       | 2020        |
| 79.3.2    | BytesToName                             | 2021        |
| 79.3.3    | BytesToString                           | 2021        |
| 79.3.4    | CanonicalOrder                          | 2021        |
| 79.3.5    | CompareSortKey                          | 2021        |
| 79.3.6    | ComputeSortKey                          | 2022        |
| 79.3.7    | FilterString                            | 2022        |
| 79.3.8    | FindCollation                           | 2022        |
| 79.3.9    | FreeCollation                           | 2022        |
| 79.3.10   | FromUCS4                                | 2023        |
| 79.3.11   | GetCollationCount                       | 2023        |
| 79.3.12   | GetProps                                | 2023        |
| 79.3.13   | GetPropUCA                              | 2023        |
| 79.3.14   | IncrementalCompareString                | 2024        |
| 79.3.15   | LoadCollation                           | 2024        |
| 79.3.16   | NormalizeNFD                            | 2025        |
| 79.3.17   | PrepareCollation                        | 2025        |
| 79.3.18   | RegisterCollation                       | 2026        |
| 79.3.19   | ToUCS4                                  | 2026        |
| 79.3.20   | UnicodeIsHighSurrogate                  | 2026        |
| 79.3.21   | UnicodeIsLowSurrogate                   | 2027        |
| 79.3.22   | UnicodeIsSurrogatePair                  | 2027        |
| 79.3.23   | UnicodeToLower                          | 2027        |
| 79.3.24   | UnicodeToUpper                          | 2028        |
| 79.3.25   | UnregisterCollation                     | 2028        |
| 79.3.26   | UnregisterCollations                    | 2028        |
| 79.4      | TCollationTable                         | 2029        |

|         |  |      |
|---------|--|------|
| 79.4.1  | Method overview                              | 2029 |
| 79.4.2  | Property overview                            | 2029 |
| 79.4.3  | TCollationTable.NormalizeName                | 2029 |
| 79.4.4  | TCollationTable.Clear                        | 2030 |
| 79.4.5  | TCollationTable.IndexOf                      | 2030 |
| 79.4.6  | TCollationTable.Find                         | 2030 |
| 79.4.7  | TCollationTable.Add                          | 2030 |
| 79.4.8  | TCollationTable.Remove                       | 2030 |
| 79.4.9  | TCollationTable.Item                         | 2030 |
| 79.4.10 | TCollationTable.Count                        | 2030 |
| 79.4.11 | TCollationTable.Capacity                     | 2031 |
| 79.5    | TUCA_DataBook                                | 2031 |
| 79.5.1  | Method overview                              | 2031 |
| 79.5.2  | TUCA_DataBook.IsVariable                     | 2031 |
| 79.6    | TUCA_PropItemContextRec                      | 2032 |
| 79.6.1  | Method overview                              | 2032 |
| 79.6.2  | TUCA_PropItemContextRec.GetCodePoints        | 2032 |
| 79.6.3  | TUCA_PropItemContextRec.GetWeights           | 2032 |
| 79.7    | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec              | 2032 |
| 79.7.1  | Method overview                              | 2033 |
| 79.7.2  | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetLeftNode  | 2033 |
| 79.7.3  | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetRightNode | 2033 |
| 79.8    | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec                  | 2033 |
| 79.8.1  | Method overview                              | 2033 |
| 79.8.2  | Property overview                            | 2033 |
| 79.8.3  | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.GetData          | 2034 |
| 79.8.4  | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.Find             | 2034 |
| 79.8.5  | TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.Data             | 2034 |
| 79.9    | TUCA_PropItemRec                             | 2034 |
| 79.9.1  | Method overview                              | 2035 |
| 79.9.2  | Property overview                            | 2035 |
| 79.9.3  | TUCA_PropItemRec.HasCodePoint                | 2035 |
| 79.9.4  | TUCA_PropItemRec.IsValid                     | 2035 |
| 79.9.5  | TUCA_PropItemRec.GetWeightArray              | 2036 |
| 79.9.6  | TUCA_PropItemRec.GetSelfOnlySize             | 2036 |
| 79.9.7  | TUCA_PropItemRec.GetContextual               | 2036 |
| 79.9.8  | TUCA_PropItemRec.GetContext                  | 2036 |
| 79.9.9  | TUCA_PropItemRec.IsDeleted                   | 2036 |
| 79.9.10 | TUCA_PropItemRec.IsWeightCompress_1          | 2036 |
| 79.9.11 | TUCA_PropItemRec.IsWeightCompress_2          | 2037 |

|          |  |      |
|----------|--|------|
| 79.9.12  | TUCA_PropItemRec.CodePoint . . . . .                                   | 2037 |
| 79.9.13  | TUCA_PropItemRec.Contextual . . . . .                                  | 2037 |
| 79.10    | TUC_Prop . . . . .   | 2037 |
| 79.10.1  | Property overview . . . . .  | 2038 |
| 79.10.2  | TUC_Prop.Category . . . . .  | 2038 |
| 79.10.3  | TUC_Prop.WhiteSpace . . . . .  | 2038 |
| 79.10.4  | TUC_Prop.HangulSyllable . . . . .                                      | 2038 |
| 79.10.5  | TUC_Prop.NumericValue . . . . .  | 2039 |
| 79.11    | TUInt24Rec . . . . .   | 2039 |
| 79.11.1  | Method overview . . . . .  | 2042 |
| 79.11.2  | TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal . . . . .                     | 2043 |
| 79.11.3  | TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt . . . . .                      | 2043 |
| 79.11.4  | TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word . . . . .                         | 2043 |
| 79.11.5  | TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte . . . . .                         | 2043 |
| 79.11.6  | TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec . . . . .                     | 2044 |
| 79.11.7  | TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .              | 2044 |
| 79.11.8  | TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .                | 2044 |
| 79.11.9  | TUInt24Rec.equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .                | 2044 |
| 79.11.10 | TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean . . . . .                 | 2044 |
| 79.11.11 | TUInt24Rec.equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .                 | 2045 |
| 79.11.12 | TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean . . . . .                    | 2045 |
| 79.11.13 | TUInt24Rec.equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .                    | 2045 |
| 79.11.14 | TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean . . . . .                    | 2045 |
| 79.11.15 | TUInt24Rec.equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .                    | 2045 |
| 79.11.16 | TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .           | 2045 |
| 79.11.17 | TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .             | 2046 |
| 79.11.18 | TUInt24Rec.notequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .             | 2046 |
| 79.11.19 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .        | 2046 |
| 79.11.20 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .          | 2046 |
| 79.11.21 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .          | 2046 |
| 79.11.22 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . . | 2047 |
| 79.11.23 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .   | 2047 |
| 79.11.24 | TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .   | 2047 |
| 79.11.25 | TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .          | 2047 |
| 79.11.26 | TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .            | 2047 |
| 79.11.27 | TUInt24Rec.less than(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .            | 2048 |
| 79.11.28 | TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .   | 2048 |
| 79.11.29 | TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean . . . . .     | 2048 |
| 79.11.30 | TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean . . . . .     | 2048 |

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>80 Reference for unit 'unicodeducet'</b>   | <b>2049</b> |
| 80.1 Used units . . . . .                     | 2049        |
| 80.2 Overview . . . . .                       | 2049        |
| <b>81 Reference for unit 'Unix'</b>           | <b>2050</b> |
| 81.1 Used units . . . . .                     | 2050        |
| 81.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 2050        |
| 81.2.1 Constants . . . . .                    | 2050        |
| 81.2.2 Types . . . . .                        | 2056        |
| 81.2.3 Variables . . . . .                    | 2065        |
| 81.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 2066        |
| 81.3.1 AssignPipe . . . . .                   | 2066        |
| 81.3.2 AssignStream . . . . .                 | 2067        |
| 81.3.3 FpExecL . . . . .                      | 2068        |
| 81.3.4 FpExecLE . . . . .                     | 2069        |
| 81.3.5 FpExecLP . . . . .                     | 2070        |
| 81.3.6 FpExecLPE . . . . .                    | 2071        |
| 81.3.7 FpExecV . . . . .                      | 2071        |
| 81.3.8 FpExecVP . . . . .                     | 2072        |
| 81.3.9 FpExecVPE . . . . .                    | 2073        |
| 81.3.10 fpFlock . . . . .                     | 2074        |
| 81.3.11 fpfStatFS . . . . .                   | 2074        |
| 81.3.12 fpfsync . . . . .                     | 2074        |
| 81.3.13 fpgettimeofday . . . . .              | 2075        |
| 81.3.14 fpStatFS . . . . .                    | 2075        |
| 81.3.15 fpSystem . . . . .                    | 2075        |
| 81.3.16 FSearch . . . . .                     | 2076        |
| 81.3.17 GetDomainName . . . . .               | 2077        |
| 81.3.18 GetHostName . . . . .                 | 2077        |
| 81.3.19 GetLocalTimezone . . . . .            | 2078        |
| 81.3.20 GetTimezoneFile . . . . .             | 2078        |
| 81.3.21 PClose . . . . .                      | 2078        |
| 81.3.22 POpen . . . . .                       | 2079        |
| 81.3.23 ReadTimezoneFile . . . . .            | 2080        |
| 81.3.24 ReReadLocalTime . . . . .             | 2080        |
| 81.3.25 SeekDir . . . . .                     | 2080        |
| 81.3.26 Telldir . . . . .                     | 2081        |
| 81.3.27 WaitProcess . . . . .                 | 2081        |
| 81.3.28 WIFSTOPPED . . . . .                  | 2081        |
| 81.3.29 W_EXITCODE . . . . .                  | 2082        |

|           |                                      |             |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 81.3.30   | W_STOPCODE                           | 2082        |
| <b>82</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'unixcp'</b>   | <b>2083</b> |
| 82.1      | Used units                           | 2083        |
| 82.2      | Overview                             | 2083        |
| 82.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 2083        |
| 82.3.1    | Constants                            | 2083        |
| 82.3.2    | Types                                | 2086        |
| 82.4      | Procedures and functions             | 2086        |
| 82.4.1    | GetCodepageByName                    | 2086        |
| 82.4.2    | GetCodepageData                      | 2087        |
| 82.4.3    | GetSystemCodepage                    | 2087        |
| 82.5      | TUnixCpData                          | 2087        |
| <b>83</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'unixtype'</b> | <b>2088</b> |
| 83.1      | Overview                             | 2088        |
| 83.2      | Constants, types and variables       | 2088        |
| 83.2.1    | Constants                            | 2088        |
| 83.2.2    | Types                                | 2090        |
| 83.3      | mbstate_t                            | 2100        |
| 83.4      | pthread_attr_t                       | 2100        |
| 83.5      | pthread_condattr_t                   | 2100        |
| 83.6      | pthread_cond_t                       | 2101        |
| 83.7      | pthread_mutexattr_t                  | 2101        |
| 83.8      | pthread_rwlockattr_t                 | 2101        |
| 83.9      | sched_param                          | 2101        |
| 83.10     | sem_t                                | 2101        |
| 83.11     | timespec                             | 2102        |
| 83.12     | timeval                              | 2102        |
| 83.13     | TStatfs                              | 2102        |
| 83.14     | _pthread_fastlock                    | 2103        |
| <b>84</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'unixutil'</b> | <b>2104</b> |
| 84.1      | Used units                           | 2104        |
| 84.2      | Overview                             | 2104        |
| 84.3      | Constants, types and variables       | 2104        |
| 84.3.1    | Variables                            | 2104        |
| 84.4      | Procedures and functions             | 2104        |
| 84.4.1    | ArrayStringToPPchar                  | 2104        |
| 84.4.2    | EpochToLocal                         | 2105        |
| 84.4.3    | GregorianToJulian                    | 2105        |

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| 84.4.4    | JulianToGregorian . . . . .              | 2106        |
| 84.4.5    | LocalToEpoch . . . . .                   | 2106        |
| 84.4.6    | StringToPPChar . . . . .                 | 2106        |
| <b>85</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'Variants'</b>     | <b>2108</b> |
| 85.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 2108        |
| 85.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 2108        |
| 85.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 2108        |
| 85.3.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 2108        |
| 85.3.2    | Types . . . . .                          | 2109        |
| 85.3.3    | Variables . . . . .                      | 2111        |
| 85.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 2113        |
| 85.4.1    | DynArrayFromVariant . . . . .            | 2113        |
| 85.4.2    | DynArrayToVariant . . . . .              | 2113        |
| 85.4.3    | FindCustomVariantType . . . . .          | 2113        |
| 85.4.4    | FindVarData . . . . .                    | 2114        |
| 85.4.5    | GetPropValue . . . . .                   | 2114        |
| 85.4.6    | GetVariantProp . . . . .                 | 2114        |
| 85.4.7    | HandleConversionException . . . . .      | 2115        |
| 85.4.8    | Null . . . . .                           | 2115        |
| 85.4.9    | SetClearVarToEmptyParam . . . . .        | 2115        |
| 85.4.10   | SetPropValue . . . . .                   | 2115        |
| 85.4.11   | SetVariantProp . . . . .                 | 2116        |
| 85.4.12   | Unassigned . . . . .                     | 2116        |
| 85.4.13   | VarArrayAsPSafeArray . . . . .           | 2116        |
| 85.4.14   | VarArrayCreate . . . . .                 | 2116        |
| 85.4.15   | VarArrayCreateError . . . . .            | 2117        |
| 85.4.16   | VarArrayDimCount . . . . .               | 2117        |
| 85.4.17   | VarArrayHighBound . . . . .              | 2118        |
| 85.4.18   | VarArrayLock . . . . .                   | 2118        |
| 85.4.19   | VarArrayLockedError . . . . .            | 2118        |
| 85.4.20   | VarArrayLowBound . . . . .               | 2119        |
| 85.4.21   | VarArrayOf . . . . .                     | 2119        |
| 85.4.22   | VarArrayRef . . . . .                    | 2119        |
| 85.4.23   | VarArrayUnlock . . . . .                 | 2119        |
| 85.4.24   | VarAsError . . . . .                     | 2120        |
| 85.4.25   | VarAsType . . . . .                      | 2120        |
| 85.4.26   | VarBadIndexError . . . . .               | 2120        |
| 85.4.27   | VarBadTypeError . . . . .                | 2120        |
| 85.4.28   | VarCastError . . . . .                   | 2121        |

|         |                                     |      |
|---------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 85.4.29 | <a href="#">VarCastErrorOle</a>     | 2121 |
| 85.4.30 | <a href="#">VarCheckEmpty</a>       | 2121 |
| 85.4.31 | <a href="#">VarClear</a>            | 2121 |
| 85.4.32 | <a href="#">VarCompareValue</a>     | 2122 |
| 85.4.33 | <a href="#">VarCopyNoInd</a>        | 2122 |
| 85.4.34 | <a href="#">VarEnsureRange</a>      | 2122 |
| 85.4.35 | <a href="#">VarFromDateTime</a>     | 2122 |
| 85.4.36 | <a href="#">VarInRange</a>          | 2123 |
| 85.4.37 | <a href="#">VarInvalidArgError</a>  | 2123 |
| 85.4.38 | <a href="#">VarInvalidNullOp</a>    | 2123 |
| 85.4.39 | <a href="#">VarInvalidOp</a>        | 2123 |
| 85.4.40 | <a href="#">VarIsArray</a>          | 2124 |
| 85.4.41 | <a href="#">VarIsBool</a>           | 2124 |
| 85.4.42 | <a href="#">VarIsByRef</a>          | 2124 |
| 85.4.43 | <a href="#">VarIsClear</a>          | 2124 |
| 85.4.44 | <a href="#">VarIsCustom</a>         | 2125 |
| 85.4.45 | <a href="#">VarIsEmpty</a>          | 2125 |
| 85.4.46 | <a href="#">VarIsEmptyParam</a>     | 2125 |
| 85.4.47 | <a href="#">VarIsError</a>          | 2125 |
| 85.4.48 | <a href="#">VarIsFloat</a>          | 2126 |
| 85.4.49 | <a href="#">VarIsNull</a>           | 2126 |
| 85.4.50 | <a href="#">VarIsNumeric</a>        | 2126 |
| 85.4.51 | <a href="#">VarIsOrdinal</a>        | 2126 |
| 85.4.52 | <a href="#">VarIsStr</a>            | 2127 |
| 85.4.53 | <a href="#">VarIsType</a>           | 2127 |
| 85.4.54 | <a href="#">VarNotImplError</a>     | 2127 |
| 85.4.55 | <a href="#">VarOutOfMemoryError</a> | 2127 |
| 85.4.56 | <a href="#">VarOverflowError</a>    | 2128 |
| 85.4.57 | <a href="#">VarRangeCheckError</a>  | 2128 |
| 85.4.58 | <a href="#">VarResultCheck</a>      | 2128 |
| 85.4.59 | <a href="#">VarSameValue</a>        | 2128 |
| 85.4.60 | <a href="#">VarSupports</a>         | 2129 |
| 85.4.61 | <a href="#">VarToDateTime</a>       | 2129 |
| 85.4.62 | <a href="#">VarToStr</a>            | 2129 |
| 85.4.63 | <a href="#">VarToStrDef</a>         | 2129 |
| 85.4.64 | <a href="#">VarToUnicodeStr</a>     | 2130 |
| 85.4.65 | <a href="#">VarToUnicodeStrDef</a>  | 2130 |
| 85.4.66 | <a href="#">VarToWideStr</a>        | 2130 |
| 85.4.67 | <a href="#">VarToWideStrDef</a>     | 2130 |
| 85.4.68 | <a href="#">VarType</a>             | 2131 |

|         |                            |      |
|---------|----------------------------|------|
| 85.4.69 | VarTypeAsText              | 2131 |
| 85.4.70 | VarTypeDeRef               | 2131 |
| 85.4.71 | VarTypeIsValidArrayType    | 2131 |
| 85.4.72 | VarTypeIsValidElementType  | 2132 |
| 85.4.73 | VarUnexpectedError         | 2132 |
| 85.5    | EVariantArrayCreateError   | 2132 |
| 85.5.1  | Description                | 2132 |
| 85.6    | EVariantArrayLockedError   | 2132 |
| 85.6.1  | Description                | 2132 |
| 85.7    | EVariantBadIndexError      | 2133 |
| 85.7.1  | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.8    | EVariantBadVarTypeError    | 2133 |
| 85.8.1  | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.9    | EVariantDispatchError      | 2133 |
| 85.9.1  | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.10   | EVariantInvalidArgError    | 2133 |
| 85.10.1 | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.11   | EVariantInvalidNullOpError | 2133 |
| 85.11.1 | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.12   | EVariantInvalidOpError     | 2133 |
| 85.12.1 | Description                | 2133 |
| 85.13   | EVariantNotAnArrayError    | 2134 |
| 85.13.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.14   | EVariantNotImplError       | 2134 |
| 85.14.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.15   | EVariantOutOfMemoryError   | 2134 |
| 85.15.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.16   | EVariantOverflowError      | 2134 |
| 85.16.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.17   | EVariantParamNotFoundError | 2134 |
| 85.17.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.18   | EVariantRangeCheckError    | 2134 |
| 85.18.1 | Description                | 2134 |
| 85.19   | EVariantTypeCastError      | 2135 |
| 85.19.1 | Description                | 2135 |
| 85.20   | EVariantUnexpectedError    | 2135 |
| 85.20.1 | Description                | 2135 |
| 85.21   | IVarInstanceReference      | 2135 |
| 85.21.1 | Description                | 2135 |
| 85.21.2 | Method overview            | 2135 |

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| 85.21.3  | <a href="#">IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance</a>   | 2135 |
| 85.22    | <a href="#">IVarInvokeable</a>                      | 2136 |
| 85.22.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                         | 2136 |
| 85.22.2  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                     | 2136 |
| 85.22.3  | <a href="#">IVarInvokeable.DoFunction</a>           | 2136 |
| 85.22.4  | <a href="#">IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure</a>          | 2136 |
| 85.22.5  | <a href="#">IVarInvokeable.GetProperty</a>          | 2137 |
| 85.22.6  | <a href="#">IVarInvokeable.SetProperty</a>          | 2137 |
| 85.23    | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType</a>                  | 2137 |
| 85.23.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                         | 2137 |
| 85.23.2  | <a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>                 | 2138 |
| 85.23.3  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                     | 2138 |
| 85.23.4  | <a href="#">Property overview</a>                   | 2138 |
| 85.23.5  | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Create</a>           | 2138 |
| 85.23.6  | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Destroy</a>          | 2138 |
| 85.23.7  | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.IsClear</a>          | 2139 |
| 85.23.8  | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Cast</a>             | 2139 |
| 85.23.9  | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.CastTo</a>           | 2139 |
| 85.23.10 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.CastToOle</a>        | 2139 |
| 85.23.11 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Clear</a>            | 2140 |
| 85.23.12 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Copy</a>             | 2140 |
| 85.23.13 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp</a>         | 2140 |
| 85.23.14 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp</a>          | 2141 |
| 85.23.15 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.CompareOp</a>        | 2141 |
| 85.23.16 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.Compare</a>          | 2141 |
| 85.23.17 | <a href="#">TCustomVariantType.VarType</a>          | 2142 |
| 85.24    | <a href="#">TInvokeableVariantType</a>              | 2142 |
| 85.24.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                         | 2142 |
| 85.24.2  | <a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>                 | 2142 |
| 85.24.3  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                     | 2142 |
| 85.24.4  | <a href="#">TInvokeableVariantType.DoFunction</a>   | 2142 |
| 85.24.5  | <a href="#">TInvokeableVariantType.DoProcedure</a>  | 2143 |
| 85.24.6  | <a href="#">TInvokeableVariantType.GetProperty</a>  | 2143 |
| 85.24.7  | <a href="#">TInvokeableVariantType.SetProperty</a>  | 2143 |
| 85.25    | <a href="#">TPublishableVariantType</a>             | 2144 |
| 85.25.1  | <a href="#">Description</a>                         | 2144 |
| 85.25.2  | <a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>                 | 2144 |
| 85.25.3  | <a href="#">Method overview</a>                     | 2144 |
| 85.25.4  | <a href="#">TPublishableVariantType.GetProperty</a> | 2144 |
| 85.25.5  | <a href="#">TPublishableVariantType.SetProperty</a> | 2144 |

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| <b>86</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'video'</b>        | <b>2145</b> |
| 86.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 2145        |
| 86.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 2145        |
| 86.3      | Examples utility unit . . . . .          | 2146        |
| 86.4      | Writing a custom video driver . . . . .  | 2147        |
| 86.5      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 2150        |
| 86.5.1    | Constants . . . . .                      | 2150        |
| 86.5.2    | Types . . . . .                          | 2154        |
| 86.5.3    | Variables . . . . .                      | 2155        |
| 86.6      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 2156        |
| 86.6.1    | ClearScreen . . . . .                    | 2156        |
| 86.6.2    | DefaultErrorHandler . . . . .            | 2157        |
| 86.6.3    | DoneVideo . . . . .                      | 2157        |
| 86.6.4    | GetCapabilities . . . . .                | 2157        |
| 86.6.5    | GetCursorType . . . . .                  | 2158        |
| 86.6.6    | GetLockScreenCount . . . . .             | 2159        |
| 86.6.7    | GetVideoDriver . . . . .                 | 2160        |
| 86.6.8    | GetVideoMode . . . . .                   | 2160        |
| 86.6.9    | GetVideoModeCount . . . . .              | 2161        |
| 86.6.10   | GetVideoModeData . . . . .               | 2162        |
| 86.6.11   | InitVideo . . . . .                      | 2162        |
| 86.6.12   | LockScreenUpdate . . . . .               | 2163        |
| 86.6.13   | SetCursorPos . . . . .                   | 2163        |
| 86.6.14   | SetCursorType . . . . .                  | 2164        |
| 86.6.15   | SetVideoDriver . . . . .                 | 2165        |
| 86.6.16   | SetVideoMode . . . . .                   | 2165        |
| 86.6.17   | UnlockScreenUpdate . . . . .             | 2165        |
| 86.6.18   | UpdateScreen . . . . .                   | 2166        |
| 86.7      | TVideoDriver . . . . .                   | 2166        |
| 86.8      | TVideoMode . . . . .                     | 2167        |
| <b>87</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'WinCRT'</b>       | <b>2168</b> |
| 87.1      | Used units . . . . .                     | 2168        |
| 87.2      | Overview . . . . .                       | 2168        |
| 87.3      | Constants, types and variables . . . . . | 2168        |
| 87.3.1    | Variables . . . . .                      | 2168        |
| 87.4      | Procedures and functions . . . . .       | 2168        |
| 87.4.1    | delay . . . . .                          | 2168        |
| 87.4.2    | keypressed . . . . .                     | 2169        |
| 87.4.3    | nosound . . . . .                        | 2169        |

|           |                                     |             |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 87.4.4    | readkey                             | 2169        |
| 87.4.5    | sound                               | 2169        |
| 87.4.6    | textmode                            | 2170        |
| <b>88</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'WinDirs'</b> | <b>2171</b> |
| 88.1      | Used units                          | 2171        |
| 88.2      | Overview                            | 2171        |
| 88.3      | Constants, types and variables      | 2171        |
| 88.3.1    | Constants                           | 2171        |
| 88.4      | Procedures and functions            | 2185        |
| 88.4.1    | ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID              | 2185        |
| 88.4.2    | ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL              | 2185        |
| 88.4.3    | GetWindowsSpecialDir                | 2185        |
| 88.4.4    | GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode         | 2185        |
| 88.4.5    | GetWindowsSystemDirectory           | 2185        |
| 88.4.6    | GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode    | 2186        |
| <b>89</b> | <b>Reference for unit 'x86'</b>     | <b>2187</b> |
| 89.1      | Used units                          | 2187        |
| 89.2      | Overview                            | 2187        |
| 89.3      | Procedures and functions            | 2187        |
| 89.3.1    | fpIOperm                            | 2187        |
| 89.3.2    | fpIoPL                              | 2188        |
| 89.3.3    | ReadPort                            | 2188        |
| 89.3.4    | ReadPortB                           | 2188        |
| 89.3.5    | ReadPortL                           | 2189        |
| 89.3.6    | ReadPortW                           | 2189        |
| 89.3.7    | WritePort                           | 2189        |
| 89.3.8    | WritePortB                          | 2190        |
| 89.3.9    | WritePortl                          | 2190        |
| 89.3.10   | WritePortW                          | 2190        |

## About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the Free Pascal Run-Time library (RTL).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

**Declaration** The exact declaration of the function.

**Description** What does the procedure exactly do ?

**Errors** What errors can occur.

**See Also** Cross references to other related functions/commands.

## 0.1 Overview

The Run-Time Library is the basis of all Free Pascal programs. It contains the basic units that most programs will use, and are made available on all platforms supported by Free pascal (well, more or less).

There are units for compatibility with the Turbo Pascal Run-Time library, and there are units for compatibility with Delphi.

On top of these two sets, there are also a series of units to handle keyboard/mouse and text screens in a cross-platform way.

Other units include platform specific units that implement the specifics of a platform, these are usually needed to support the Turbo Pascal or Delphi units.

Units that fall outside the above outline do not belong in the RTL, but should be included in the packages, or in the FCL.

# Chapter 1

## Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'

### 1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'BaseUnix'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 1.2 Overview

The BaseUnix unit was implemented by Marco Van de Voort. It contains basic Unix functionality. It supersedes the Linux unit of version 1.0.X of the compiler, but only implements a cleaned up, portable subset of that unit.

For porting FPC to new Unix-like platforms, it should be sufficient to implement the functionality in this unit for the new platform.

### 1.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 1.3.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`AT_EMPTY_PATH = $1000`

`AT_FDCWD = - 100`

Flag for various \*at calls to indicate current working directory

`AT_NO_AUTOMOUNT = $800`

AT\_RECURSIVE = \$8000

AT\_REMOVEDIR = \$200

**Unlink at: specify rmdir behaviour**

AT\_STATX\_DONT\_SYNC = \$4000

AT\_STATX\_FORCE\_SYNC = \$2000

AT\_STATX\_SYNC\_AS\_STAT = \$0000

AT\_STATX\_SYNC\_TYPE = \$6000

AT\_SYMLINK\_FOLLOW = \$400

AT\_SYMLINK\_NOFOLLOW = \$100

BITSINWORD = 8 \* sizeof(cuLong)

**Number of bits in a word.**

clone\_flags\_fork = \$01200011

**Request fork behaviour for clone call**

ESysE2BIG = 7

**System error: Argument list too long**

ESysEACCES = 13

**System error: Permission denied**

ESysEADDRINUSE = 98

**System error: Address already in use**

ESysEADDRNOTAVAIL = 99

**System error: Cannot assign requested address**

ESysEADV = 68

**System error: Advertise error**

ESysEAFNOSUPPORT = 97

System error: Address family not supported by protocol

ESysEAGAIN = 11

System error: Try again

ESysEALREADY = 114

System error: Operation already in progress

ESysEBADE = 52

System error: Invalid exchange

ESysEBADF = 9

System error: Bad file number

ESysEBADFD = 77

System error: File descriptor in bad state

ESysEBADMSG = 74

System error: Not a data message

ESysEBADR = 53

System error: Invalid request descriptor

ESysEBADRQC = 56

System error: Invalid request code

ESysEBADSLT = 57

System error: Invalid slot

ESysEBFONT = 59

System error: Bad font file format

ESysEBUSY = 16

System error: Device or resource busy

ESysECANCELED = 125

Operation canceled

ESysECHILD = 10

System error: No child processes

ESysECHRNG = 44

System error: Channel number out of range

ESysECOMM = 70

System error: Communication error on send

ESysECONNABORTED = 103

System error: Software caused connection abort

ESysECONNREFUSED = 111

System error: Connection refused

ESysECONNRESET = 104

System error: Connection reset by peer

ESysEDEADLK = 35

System error: Resource deadlock would occur

ESysEDEADLOCK = ESysEDEADLK

System error: File locking deadlock error

ESysEDESTADDRREQ = 89

System error: Destination address required

ESysEDOM = 33

System error: Math argument out of domain of func

ESysEDOTDOT = 73

System error: RFS specific error

ESysEDQUOT = 122

System error: Quota exceeded

ESysEEXIST = 17

System error: File exists

ESysEFAULT = 14

System error: Bad address

ESysEFBIG = 27

System error: File too large

ESysEHOSTDOWN = 112

System error: Host is down

ESysEHOSTUNREACH = 113

System error: No route to host

ESysEIDRM = 43

System error: Identifier removed

ESysEILSEQ = 84

System error: Illegal byte sequence

ESysEINPROGRESS = 115

System error: Operation now in progress

ESysEINTR = 4

System error: Interrupted system call

ESysEINVAL = 22

System error: Invalid argument

ESysEIO = 5

System error: I/O error

ESysEISCONN = 106

System error: Transport endpoint is already connected

ESysEISDIR = 21

System error: Is a directory

ESysEISNAM = 120

System error: Is a named type file

ESysEKEYEXPIRED = 127

Key has expired (Linux kernel module)

ESysEKEYREJECTED = 129

Key was rejected by service (Linux kernel module)

ESysEKEYREVOKED = 128

Key has been revoked (Linux kernel module)

ESysEL2HLT = 51

System error: Level 2 halted

ESysEL2NSYNC = 45

System error: Level 2 not synchronized

ESysEL3HLT = 46

System error: Level 3 halted

ESysEL3RST = 47

System error: Level 3 reset

ESysELIBACC = 79

System error: Can not access a needed shared library

ESysELIBBAD = 80

System error: Accessing a corrupted shared library

ESysELIBEXEC = 83

System error: Cannot exec a shared library directly

ESysELIBMAX = 82

System error: Attempting to link in too many shared libraries

ESysELIBSCN = 81

System error: .lib section in a.out corrupted

ESysELNRNG = 48

System error: Link number out of range

ESysELOOP = 40

System error: Too many symbolic links encountered

ESysEMEDIUMTYPE = 124

Wrong medium type

ESysEMFILE = 24

System error: Too many open files

ESysEMLINK = 31

System error: Too many links

ESysEMSGSIZE = 90

System error: Message too long

ESysEMULTIHOP = 72

System error: Multihop attempted

ESysENAMETOOLONG = 36

System error: File name too long

ESysENAVAIL = 119

System error: No XENIX semaphores available

ESysENETDOWN = 100

System error: Network is down

ESysENETRESET = 102

System error: Network dropped connection because of reset

ESysENETUNREACH = 101

System error: Network is unreachable

ESysENFILE = 23

System error: File table overflow

ESysENOANO = 55

System error: No anode

ESysENOBUFFS = 105

System error: No buffer space available

ESysENOCSSI = 50

System error: No CSI structure available

ESysENODATA = 61

System error: No data available

ESysENODEV = 19

System error: No such device

ESysENOENT = 2

System error: No such file or directory

ESysENOEXEC = 8

System error: Exec format error

ESysENOKEY = 126

Required key not available (Linux kernel module)

ESysENOLCK = 37

System error: No record locks available

ESysENOLINK = 67

System error: Link has been severed

ESysENOMEDIUM = 123

No medium present

ESysENOMEM = 12

System error: Out of memory

ESysENOMSG = 42

System error: No message of desired type

ESysENONET = 64

System error: Machine is not on the network

ESysENOPKG = 65

System error: Package not installed

ESysENOPROTOOPT = 92

System error: Protocol not available

ESysENOSPC = 28

System error: No space left on device

ESysENOSR = 63

System error: Out of streams resources

ESysENOSTR = 60

System error: Device not a stream

ESysENOSYS = 38

System error: Function not implemented

ESysENOTBLK = 15

System error: Block device required

ESysENOTCONN = 107

System error: Transport endpoint is not connected

ESysENOTDIR = 20

System error: Not a directory

ESysENOTEMPTY = 39

System error: Directory not empty

ESysENOTNAM = 118

System error: Not a XENIX named type file

ESysENOTRECOVERABLE = 131

State not recoverable (mutexes)

ESysENOTSOCK = 88

System error: Socket operation on non-socket

ESysENOTTY = 25

System error: Not a typewriter

ESysENOTUNIQ = 76

System error: Name not unique on network

ESysENXIO = 6

System error: No such device or address

ESysEOPNOTSUPP = 95

System error: Operation not supported on transport endpoint

ESysEOVERFLOW = 75

System error: Value too large for defined data type

ESysEOWNERDEAD = 130

Owner died (mutexes)

ESysEPERM = 1

System error: Operation not permitted.

ESysEPFNOSUPPORT = 96

System error: Protocol family not supported

ESysEPIPE = 32

System error: Broken pipe

ESysEPROTO = 71

System error: Protocol error

ESysEPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

System error: Protocol not supported

ESysEPROTOTYPE = 91

System error: Protocol wrong type for socket

ESysERANGE = 34

System error: Math result not representable

ESysEREMCHG = 78

System error: Remote address changed

ESysEREMOTE = 66

System error: Object is remote

ESysEREMOTEIO = 121

System error: Remote I/O error

ESysERESTART = 85

System error: Interrupted system call should be restarted

ESysERFKILL = 132

Operation not possible due to RF-Kill (wireless)

ESysEROFS = 30

System error: Read-only file system

ESysESHUTDOWN = 108

System error: Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown

ESysESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

System error: Socket type not supported

ESysESPIPE = 29

System error: Illegal seek

ESysESRCH = 3

System error: No such process

ESysESRMNT = 69

System error: Srmount error

ESysESTALE = 116

System error: Stale NFS file handle

ESysESTRPIPE = 86

System error: Streams pipe error

ESysETIME = 62

System error: Timer expired

ESysETIMEDOUT = 110

System error: Connection timed out

ESysETOOMANYREFS = 109

System error: Too many references: cannot splice

ESysETXTBSY = 26

System error: Text (code segment) file busy

ESysEUCLEAN = 117

System error: Structure needs cleaning

ESysEUNATCH = 49

System error: Protocol driver not attached

ESysEUSERS = 87

System error: Too many users

ESysEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEAGAIN

System error: Operation would block

ESysEXDEV = 18

System error: Cross-device link

ESysEXFULL = 54

System error: Exchange full

FD\_MAXFDSET = 1024

Maximum elements in a TFDSet ([175](#)) array.

FPE\_FLTDIV = 3

Value signalling floating point divide by zero in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTINV = 7

Value signalling floating point invalid operation in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTOVF = 4

Value signalling floating point overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTRES = 6

Value signalling floating point inexact result in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTSUB = 8

Value signalling floating point subscript out of range in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTUND = 5

Value signalling floating point underflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTDIV = 1

Value signalling integer divide in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTOVF = 2

Value signalling integer overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

F\_GetFd = 1

fpFCntl (187) command: Get close-on-exec flag

F\_GetFl = 3

fpFCntl (187) command: Get file descriptor flags

F\_GetLk = 5

fpFCntl (187) command: Get lock

F\_GetOwn = 9

fpFCntl (187) command: get owner of file descriptor events

F\_OK = 0

fpAccess (178) call test: file exists.

F\_SetFd = 2

fpFCntl (187) command: Set close-on-exec flag

F\_SetFl = 4

fpFCntl (187) command: Set file descriptor flags

`F_SetLk = 6`

`fpFCntl (187)` command: Set lock

`F_SetLkW = 7`

`fpFCntl (187)` command: Test lock

`F_SetOwn = 8`

`fpFCntl (187)` command: Set owner of file descriptor events

`ln2bitmask = 1 shl ln2bitsinword - 1`

Last bit in word.

`ln2bitsinword = 6`

Power of 2 number of bits in word.

`MAP_ANON = MAP_ANONYMOUS`

Anonymous memory mapping (data private to application)

`MAP_ANONYMOUS = $20`

`FpMMap (201)` map type: Don't use a file

`MAP_DENYWRITE = $800`

`FpMMap (201)` option: Ignored.

`MAP_EXECUTABLE = $1000`

`FpMMap (201)` option: Ignored.

`MAP_FAILED = pointer(- 1)`

Memory mapping failed error code

`MAP_FIXED = $10`

`FpMMap (201)` map type: Interpret addr exactly

`MAP_GROWSDOWN = $100`

`FpMMap (201)` option: Memory grows downward (like a stack)

`MAP_LOCKED = $2000`

`FpMMap (201)` option: lock the pages in memory.

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

FpMMap (201) option: Do not reserve swap pages for this memory.

MAP\_PRIVATE = \$2

FpMMap (201) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

FpMMap (201) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

FpMMap (201) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

O\_APPEND = \$400

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Append to file

O\_CREAT = \$40

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

O\_DIRECT = \$4000

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Minimize caching effects

O\_DIRECTORY = \$10000

fpOpen (204) file open mode: File must be directory.

O\_EXCL = \$80

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Open exclusively

O\_NDELAY = O\_NONBLOCK

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Alias for O\_NonBlock (155)

O\_NOCTTY = \$100

fpOpen (204) file open mode: No TTY control.

O\_NOFOLLOW = \$20000

fpOpen (204) file open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`O_NONBLOCK = 800`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`O_RDONLY = 0`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Read only

`O_RDWR = 2`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Read/Write

`O_SYNC = 1000`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Write to disc at once

`O_TRUNC = 200`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`O_WRONLY = 1`

`fpOpen (204)` file open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`POLLERR = 8`

Error condition on output file descriptor

`POLLHUP = 10`

Hang up

`POLLIN = 1`

Data is available for reading

`POLLNVAL = 20`

Invalid request, file descriptor not open.

`POLLOUT = 4`

Writing data will not block the write call

`POLLPRI = 2`

Urgent data is available for reading.

POLLRDBAND = \$0080

Priority data ready for reading.

POLLRDNORM = \$0040

Same as POLLIN.

POLLWRBAND = \$0200

Priority data may be written.

POLLWRNORM = \$0100

Equivalent to POLLOUT.

PRIO\_PGRP = `UnixType.PRIO_PGRP`

Easy access alias for `unixtype.PRIO_PGRP` ([2088](#))

PRIO\_PROCESS = `UnixType.PRIO_PROCESS`

Easy access alias for `unixtype.PRIO_PROCESS` ([2088](#))

PRIO\_USER = `UnixType.PRIO_USER`

Easy access alias for `unixtype.PRIO_USER` ([2088](#))

PROT\_EXEC = \$4

`FpMMap` ([201](#)) memory access: page can be executed

PROT\_NONE = \$0

`FpMMap` ([201](#)) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

`FpMMap` ([201](#)) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

`FpMMap` ([201](#)) memory access: page can be written

RLIMIT\_AS = 9

RLimit request address space limit

RLIMIT\_CORE = 4

RLimit request max core file size

RLIMIT\_CPU = 0

RLimit request CPU time in ms

RLIMIT\_DATA = 2

RLimit request max data size

RLIMIT\_FSIZE = 1

RLimit request maximum file size

RLIMIT\_LOCKS = 10

RLimit request maximum file locks held

RLIMIT\_MEMLOCK = 8

RLimit request max locked-in-memory address space

RLIMIT\_NOFILE = 7

RLimit request max number of open files

RLIMIT\_NPROC = 6

RLimit request max number of processes

RLIMIT\_RSS = 5

RLimit request max resident set size

RLIMIT\_STACK = 3

RLimit request max stack size

R\_OK = 4

fpAccess (178) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

SA\_NOCLDWAIT = 2

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NODEFER = \$40000000

Sigaction options: Do not mask signal in its own signal handler

SA\_NOMASK = SA\_NODEFER

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

SA\_ONESHOT = SA\_RESETHAND

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

SA\_ONSTACK = \$08000000

SA\_ONSTACK is used in the `sigaction` (216) to indicate the signal handler must be called on an alternate signal stack provided by `sigaltstack(2)`. If an alternate stack is not available, the default stack will be used.

SA\_RESETHAND = \$80000000

Sigaction options: Restore signal action to default state when signal handler exits.

SA\_RESTART = \$10000000

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

SA\_RESTORER = \$04000000

Signal restorer handler

SA\_SIGINFO = 4

Sigaction options: The signal handler takes 3 arguments, not one.

SEEK\_CUR = 1

`fpLSeek` (198) option: Set position relative to current position.

SEEK\_END = 2

`fpLSeek` (198) option: Set position relative to end of file.

SEEK\_SET = 0

`fpLSeek` (198) option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7

Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTERM = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

`SIGUSR2 = 12`

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

`SIGVTALRM = 26`

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

`SIGWINCH = 28`

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

`SIGXCPU = 24`

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

`SIGXFSZ = 25`

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

`SIG_BLOCK = 0`

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

`SIG_DFL = 0`

Signal handler: Default signal handler

`SIG_ERR = - 1`

Signal handler: error

`SIG_IGN = 1`

Signal handler: Ignore signal

`SIG_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG_MAXSIG`

Maximum system signal number.

`SIG_SETMASK = 2`

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

`SIG_UNBLOCK = 1`

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

`SI_PAD_SIZE = 128 div sizeof(longint) - 3`

Signal information pad size.

`SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN`

Max system name length.

`S_IFBLK = 24576`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Block device

`S_IFCHR = 8192`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Character device

`S_IFDIR = 16384`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Directory

`S_IFIFO = 4096`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: FIFO

`S_IFLNK = 40960`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Link

`S_IFMT = 61440`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: File type bit mask

`S_IFREG = 32768`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Regular file

`S_IFSOCK = 49152`

File (`#rtl.baseunix.stat (234)` record) mode: Socket

`S_IRGRP = %0000100000`

Mode flag: Read by group.

`S_IROTH = %0000000100`

Mode flag: Read by others.

`S_IRUSR = %0100000000`

Mode flag: Read by owner.

`S_IRWXG = S_IRGRP or S_IWGRP or S_IXGRP`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by groups.

`S_IRWXO = S_IROTH or S_IWOTH or S_IXOTH`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by others.

`S_IRWXU = S_IRUSR or S_IWUSR or S_IXUSR`

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by user.

`S_ISGID = &2000`

Mode flag: Set Group ID on execution.

`S_ISUID = &4000`

Mode flag: Set user ID on execution.

`S_ISVTX = &1000`

Mode flag: Set sticky bit.

`S_IWGRP = %0000010000`

Mode flag: Write by group.

`S_IWOTH = %0000000010`

Mode flag: Write by others.

`S_IWUSR = %0010000000`

Mode flag: Write by owner.

`S_IXGRP = %0000001000`

Mode flag: Execute by group.

`S_IXOTH = %0000000001`

Mode flag: Execute by others.

`S_IXUSR = %0001000000`

Mode flag: Execute by owner.

`UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of utsname (239) domain name.

`UTSNAME_LENGTH = SYS_NMLN`

Max length of `utsname` (239) system name, release, version, machine.

`UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of `utsname` (239) node name.

`WNOHANG = 1`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid` (229) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

`wordsinfdset = FD_MAXFDSET div BITSINWORD`

Number of words in a `TFDSet` (175) array

`wordsinsigset = SIG_MAXSIG div BITSINWORD`

Number of words in a signal set.

`WUNTRACED = 2`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid` (229) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

`W_OK = 2`

`fpAccess` (178) call test: write allowed

`X_OK = 1`

`fpAccess` (178) call test: execute allowed

`_STAT_VER = _STAT_VER_LINUX`

Stat version number

`_STAT_VER_KERNEL = 1`

Current version of stat record

`_STAT_VER_LINUX = 3`

Version of Linux stat record

`_STAT_VER_LINUX_OLD = 1`

Old kernel definition of stat

`_STAT_VER_SVR4 = 2`

SVR 4 definition of stat

### 1.3.2 Types

`Blkcnt64_t = cuint64`

64-bit block count

`Blkcnt_t = cuint`

Block count type.

`Blksize_t = cuint`

Block size type.

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` ([2090](#))

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Floating-point real format

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`clong = UnixType.clong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

Character offset type

`cschar = UnixType.cschar`

Signed character type

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`csigned = UnixType.csigned`

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` ([165](#)).

`csint = UnixType.csint`

Signed integer

`csize_t = UnixType.size_t`

Character size type

`cslong = UnixType.cslong`

The size is CPU dependent.

`cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong`

`cslonglong` is an alias for `clonglong` ([166](#)).

`csshort = UnixType.csshort`

Short signed integer type

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` ([2091](#))

`cuint = UnixType.cuint`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`culong = UnixType.culong`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong = UnixType.culonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([2092](#))

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = UnixType.gid_t`

Group ID type.

`ino_t = UnixType.ino_t`

Inode type.

`kernel_gid_t = cuint`

`kernel_gid_t` may differ from the `libc` type used to describe group IDs.

`kernel_loff_t = clonglong`

Long kernel offset type

`kernel_mode_t = cuint`

`kernel_mode_t` may differ from the `libc` type used to describe file modes.

`kernel_off_t = clong`

Kernel offset type

`kernel_uid_t = cuint`

`kernel_uid_t` may differ from the `libc` type used to describe user IDs.

`mode_t = UnixType.mode_t`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

Number of links type.

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

Offset type.

`PBlkCnt = ^Blkcnt_t`

pointer to `TBlkCnt` (175) type.

`PBlkSize = ^Blksize_t`

Pointer to `TBlkSize` (175) type.

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` (165)

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` (2093)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (165) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (165) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to cInt (165) type.

```
pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

```
pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32
```

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

```
pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64
```

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

```
pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = UnixType.pClock
```

Pointer to TClock (175) type.

```
pclong = UnixType.pclong
```

Pointer to cLong (166) type.

```
pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = UnixType.pcschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (166).

```
pcshort = UnixType.pcshort
```

Pointer to cShort (166) type.

```
pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (166).

```
pcsint = UnixType.pcsint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (166)

```
pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t
```

Pointer to csize\_t

```
pcslong = UnixType.pcslong
```

Pointer to the signed long cslong ([166](#))

```
pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong ([166](#))

```
pcssshort = UnixType.pcssshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort ([166](#))

```
pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar ([2094](#))

```
pcuint = UnixType.pcuint
```

Pointer to cUInt ([167](#)) type.

```
pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to cuLong ([167](#)) type.

```
pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned
```

Alias for #rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned ([2095](#))

```
pcushort = UnixType.pcushort
```

Pointer to cuShort ([167](#)) type.

```
pDev = UnixType.pDev
```

Pointer to TDev (175) type.

```
pDir = ^Dir
```

Pointer to TDir (175) record

```
pDirent = ^Dirent
```

Pointer to TDirent (175) record.

```
pFDSet = ^TFDSet
```

Pointer to TFDSet (175) type.

```
pFilDes = ^TFilDes
```

Pointer to TFilDes (175) type.

```
pfpstate = ^tfpstate
```

Pointer to tfpstate (235) record.

```
pGid = UnixType.pGid
```

Pointer to TGid (175) type.

```
pGrpArr = ^TGrpArr
```

Pointer to TGrpArr (175) array.

```
pid_t = UnixType.pid_t
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = UnixType.pIno
```

Pointer to TIno (176) type.

```
piovec = ^tiovec
```

pointer to a iovec (233) record

```
pMode = UnixType.pMode
```

Pointer to TMode (176) type.

```
pnLink = UnixType.pnLink
```

Pointer to TnLink (176) type.

```
pOff = UnixType.pOff
```

Pointer to TOff (176) type.

```
pPid = UnixType.pPid
```

Pointer to TPid (176) type.

```
ppollfd = ^pollfd
```

Pointer to tpollfd.

```
PRLimit = ^TRLimit
```

Pointer to TRLimit (236) record

```
psigactionrec = ^sigactionrec
```

Pointer to SigActionRec (233) record type.

```
PSigContext = ^TSigContext
```

Pointer to #rtl.baseunix.TSigContext (237) record type.

```
psiginfo = ^tsiginfo
```

Pointer to #rtl.baseunix.TSigInfo (238) record type.

```
psigset = ^tsigset
```

Pointer to SigSet (174) type.

```
pSize = UnixType.pSize
```

Pointer to TSize (177) type.

```
pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t
```

Pointer to Size\_t

```
pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen
```

Pointer to TSockLen (177) type.

```
psSize = UnixType.psSize
```

Pointer to TsSize (177) type

```
PStat = ^Stat
```

Pointer to TStat (177) type.

```
pstatfs = UnixType.PStatFs
```

This is an alias for the type defined in the `#rtl.unixtype` (2088) unit.

```
pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t
```

Thread conditional variable type.

```
pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t
```

Thread mutex type.

```
pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t
```

POSIX thread type.

```
pTime = UnixType.pTime
```

Pointer to TTime (177) type.

```
ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec
```

Pointer to timespec (175) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (175) type.

```
ptimezone = ^timezone
```

Pointer to TimeZone (236) record.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (176) type.

```
PTms = ^tms
```

Pointer to TTms (177) type.

```
Pucontext = ^Tucontext
```

Pointer to TUContext (238) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (177) type.

```
pUtimBuf = ^UTimBuf
```

Pointer to TUTimBuf (177) type.

```
PUtsName = ^TUTsName
```

Pointer to TUnitsName (177) type.

```
rlim_t = culong
```

rlim\_t is used as the type for the various fields in the TRLimit (236) record.

```
sigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t
```

When installing a signal handler, the actual signal handler must be of type SigActionHandler.

```
sigactionhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt; info: psiginfo;
    context: PSigContext)
```

Standard signal action handler prototype

```
signalhandler = signalhandler_t
```

Simple signal handler prototype

```
signalhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt)
```

Standard signal handler prototype

```
sigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t
```

Alias for sigrestorerhandler\_t (174) type.

```
sigrestorerhandler_t = procedure
```

Standard signal action restorer prototype

```
sigset = sigset_t
```

Signal set type

```
sigset_t = Array[0..wordsinsigset-1] of culong
```

Signal set type

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

TBlkCnt = Blkcnt\_t

Alias for Blkcnt\_t (165) type.

TBlkSize = Blksize\_t

Alias for blksize\_t (165) type.

TClock = UnixType.TClock

Alias for clock\_t (166) type.

TDev = UnixType.TDev

Alias for dev\_t (167) type.

TDIr = Dir

Alias for Dir (232) type.

TDirent = Dirent

Alias for Dirent (232) type.

TFDSet = Array[0..(FD\_MAXFDSETdivBITSINWORD)-1] of TFDSetEl

File descriptor set for fpSelect (213) call.

TFDSetEl = culong

Type alias for an element of the TFDSet

TFilDes = Array[0..1] of cint

Array of file descriptors as used in fpPipe (207) call.

TGid = UnixType.TGid

Alias for gid\_t (167) type.

TGrpArr = Array[0..0] of TGid

Array of gid\_t (167) IDs

timespec = UnixType.timespec

Short time specification type.

timeval = UnixType.timeval

Time specification type.

`time_t = UnixType.time_t`

Time span type

`TIno = UnixType.TIno`

Alias for `ino_t` (167) type.

`TIOCtlRequest = UnixType.TIOCtlRequest`

Easy access alias for `unixtype.TIOCtlRequest` (2098)

`tiovec = iovec`

Alias for the `iovec` (233) record type.

`TMode = UnixType.TMode`

Alias for `mode_t` (168) type.

`TnLink = UnixType.TnLink`

Alias for `nlink_t` (168) type.

`TOff = UnixType.TOff`

Alias for `off_t` (168) type.

`TPid = UnixType.TPid`

Alias for `pid_t` (171) type.

`tpollfd = pollfd`

Alias for `pollfd` type

`tsigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t`

Alias for `sigactionhandler_t` (174) type.

`tsignalhandler = signalhandler_t`

Alias for `signalhandler_t` (174) type.

`tsigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t`

Alias for `sigrestorerhandler_t` (174) type.

`tsigset = sigset_t`

Alias for `SigSet` (174) type.

`TSize = UnixType.TSize`

Alias for `size_t` (174) type

`TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen`

Alias for `socklen_t` (174) type.

`TsSize = UnixType.TsSize`

Alias for `ssize_t` (174) type

`TStat = Stat`

Alias for `Stat` (234) type.

`tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs`

Record describing a file system in the `unix.fstatfs` (140) call.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime` (177) type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec` (175) type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval` (175) type.

`TTimeZone = timezone`

Alias for `TimeZone` (236) record.

`TTms = tms`

Alias for `Tms` (236) record type.

`TUid = UnixType.TUid`

Alias for `uid_t` (177) type.

`TUtimBuf = UtimBuf`

Alias for `UtimBuf` (239) type.

`TUtsName = UtsName`

Alias for `UtsName` (239) type.

`uid_t = UnixType.uid_t`

User ID type

## 1.4 Procedures and functions

### 1.4.1 CreateShellArgV

**Synopsis:** Create a null-terminated array of strings from a command-line string

**Declaration:** `function CreateShellArgV(const prog: string) : ppchar`  
`function CreateShellArgV(const prog: RawByteString) : ppchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CreateShellArgV` creates a command-line string for executing a shell command using 'sh -c'. The result is a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings suitable for use in `fpExecv` (185) and friends.

**Errors:** If no more memory is available, a heap error may occur.

See also: `fpExecv` (185), `FreeShellArgV` (230)

### 1.4.2 FpAccess

**Synopsis:** Check file access

**Declaration:** `function FpAccess(pathname: pChar; aMode: cint) : cint`  
`function FpAccess(const pathname: RawByteString; aMode: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpAccess` tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If the user has the requested rights, zero is returned. If access is denied, or an error occurred, a nonzero value is returned.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**sys\_eaccess**The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval**Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `FpChown` (181), `FpChmod` (180)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** Example26;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

```
begin
  if fpAccess ( '/etc/passwd',W_OK)=0 then
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Better check your system. ');
      Writeln ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file ! ');
    end;
end.
```

---

### 1.4.3 FpAlarm

**Synopsis:** Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

**Declaration:** `function FpAlarm(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpAlarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Seconds` seconds. When `Seconds` seconds have elapsed, the system will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Seconds` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Seconds`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none. A negative value indicates an error.

See also: `fpSigAction` ([216](#)), `fpPause` ([207](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Procedure** `AlarmHandler`(`Sig` : `cint`); **cdecl**;

```
begin
  Writeln ( 'Got to alarm handler ');
end;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Setting alarm handler ');
  fpSignal(SIGALRM,SignalHandler(@AlarmHandler));
  Writeln ( 'Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds ');
  fpAlarm(10);
  Writeln ( 'Pausing ');
  fpPause;
  Writeln ( 'Pause returned ');
end.
```

---

### 1.4.4 FpChdir

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpChdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpChdir(const path: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpChDir` sets the current working directory to `Path`.

It returns zero if the call was successful, -1 on error.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpChDir`: `system.chdir`. Please use `fpChDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.chdir` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `fpGetCwd` ([191](#))

### 1.4.5 FpChmod

Synopsis: Change file permission bits

Declaration: `function FpChmod(path: pChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpChmod(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpChmod` sets the `Mode` bits of the file in `Path` to `Mode`. `Mode` can be specified by 'or'-ing the following values:

**S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.

**S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.

**S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.

**S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.

**S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.

**S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.

**S\_IRGRP**Read by group.

**S\_IWGRP**Write by group.

**S\_IXGRP**Execute by group.

**S\_IROTH**Read by others.

**S\_IWOTH**Write by others.

**S\_IXOTH**Execute by others.

**S\_IRWXO**Read, write, execute by others.

**S\_IRWXG**Read, write, execute by groups.

**S\_IRWXU**Read, write, execute by user.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChown` (181), `fpAccess` (178)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`, `Unix`;

**Var** `F` : `Text`;

**begin**

```

{ Create a file }
Assign (f, 'testex21');
Rewrite (F);
Writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
Writeln (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
Close (F);
fpChmod ('testex21', &777);
{ File is now executable }
fpexecl ('./testex21', []);

```

**end.**

---

## 1.4.6 FpChown

**Synopsis:** Change owner of file

**Declaration:** `function FpChown(path: pChar; owner: TUid; group: TGid) : cint`  
`function FpChown(const path: RawByteString; owner: TUid; group: TGid)`  
`: cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpChown` sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in `Path` to `Owner, Group`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The file is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop** Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChmod` ([180](#)), `fpAccess` ([178](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** UID : TUid;  
       GID : TGid;  
       F : Text;

**begin**

```

  Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
  Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln (UID);
  Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln (GID);
  Assign (f, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (f);
  Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
  Writeln (f, 'UID : ', UID);
  Writeln (f, 'GID : ', GID);
  Close (F);
  if fpChown ('test.txt', UID, GID) <> 0 then
    if fpgeterrno = ESysEPerm then
      Writeln ('You are not root !')
    else
      Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ', fpgeterrno)
    else
      Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.
```

---

### 1.4.7 FpClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClose(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpClose` closes a file with file descriptor `Fd`. The function returns zero if the file was closed successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

For an example, see `FpOpen` ([204](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([204](#)), `FpRead` ([209](#)), `FpWrite` ([230](#)), `FpFTruncate` ([190](#)), `FpLSeek` ([198](#))

### 1.4.8 FpClosedir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClosedir(var dirp: Dir) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpCloseDir` closes the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see `fpOpenDir` (206).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpOpenDir` (206), `FpReadDir` (210)

### 1.4.9 FpDup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function FpDup(fildes: cint) : cint`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: text; var newfile: text) : cint`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: File; var newfile: File) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpDup` returns a file descriptor that is a duplicate of the file descriptor `fildes`.

The second and third forms make `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in case it is a `Text` file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, these calls do not have the same functionality as the `dup` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the file position in both files.

The function returns a negative value in case of an error, a positive value is a file handle, and indicates success.

Errors: A negative value can be one of the following error codes:

`sys_ebadf` `OldFile` hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile` Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup2` (184)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex31.pp`

---

```

program Example31 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses baseunix ;

var f : text ;

begin
  if fpdup (output,f)=-1 then
    Writeln ('Dup Failed !');
    writeln ('This is written to stdout.');
```

---

```

    writeln (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');flush(f);
    writeln
end.

```

---

### 1.4.10 FpDup2

Synopsis: Duplicate one file handle to another

Declaration: `function FpDup2(fildes: cint; fildes2: cint) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: text; var newfile: text) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: File; var newfile: File) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Makes `fildes2` or `NewFile` an exact copy of `fildes` or `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in the case of text or untyped files.

After a call to `fdup2`, the 2 file descriptors point to the same physical device (a file, socket, or a terminal).

`NewFile` can be an assigned file. If `newfile` or `fildes` was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup2` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the file position in both files.

The function returns the new file descriptor number, on error -1 is returned, and the error can be retrieved with `fpgeterrno` ([192](#))

Errors: In case of error, the following error codes can be reported:

`sys_ebadfOldFile` (or `fildes`) hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile`Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup` ([183](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex32.pp`

---

```

program Example32;

{ Program to demonstrate the FpDup2 function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
    Assign (f, 'text.txt');
    Rewrite (F);
    For i:=1 to 10 do writeln (F, 'Line : ',i);
    if fpdup2 (output,f)=-1 then
        Writeln ('Dup2 Failed !');
    writeln ('This is written to stdout. ');
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');
    flush(f);
    writeln;
    { Remove file. Comment this if you want to check flushing.}

```

---

```
    fpUnlink ( 'text.txt' );
end.
```

---

### 1.4.11 FpExecv

Synopsis: Execute process

Declaration: `function FpExecv(path: pChar; argv: ppChar) : cint`  
`function FpExecv(const path: RawByteString; argv: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` ([192](#))

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted .

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecve` ([186](#)), `fpFork` ([189](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/ls';  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

```
  GetMem (PP, 3 * SizeOf (Pchar));
  PP[0] := Arg0;
  PP[1] := Arg1;
  PP[3] := Nil;
  { Execute '/bin/ls -l', with current environment }
  fpExecv ('/bin/ls', pp);
```

**end.**

---

### 1.4.12 FpExecve

Synopsis: Execute process using environment

Declaration: `function FpExecve(path: PChar; argv: PPChar; envp: PPChar) : cint`  
`function FpExecve(const path: RawByteString; argv: PPChar; envp: PPChar)`  
`: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`, and the environment in `envp`. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. On success, `execve` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)), and includes the following:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted .

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecv` ([185](#)), `fpFork` ([189](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';  
 Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP, 3 \* **SizeOf**(Pchar));  
 PP[0] := Arg0;  
 PP[1] := Arg1;  
 PP[3] := **Nil**;  
*{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*  
*{ Env is defined in system.inc }*  
 fpExecVe ('/bin/lS', pp, envp);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.13 FpExit

Synopsis: Exit the current process

Declaration: `procedure FpExit (Status: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExit` exits the currently running process, and report `Status` as the exit status.

**Remark** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the `Halt` call instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpFork` ([189](#)), `FpExecve` ([186](#))

### 1.4.14 FpFcntl

Synopsis: File control operations.

Declaration: `function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint) : cint`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint; arg: cint) : cint`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint; var arg: FLock) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Read/set a file's attributes. `Fildes` a valid file descriptor. `Cmd` specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFd**Read the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFl**Read the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFd**Set the `close_on_exec` flag of `fildes`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is the `flock` record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

The function returns 0 if successful, -1 otherwise.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Use `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)) for extended error information.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain or sys\_eaccess**For , if the lock is held by another process.

### 1.4.15 **fpfdfillset**

Synopsis: Set all file descriptors in the set.

Declaration: `function fpfdfillset(var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfdfillset` sets all file descriptors in `nset`.

See also: `FpSelect` (213), `FpFD_ZERO` (189), `FpFD_IsSet` (188), `FpFD_Clr` (188), `FpFD_Set` (188)

### 1.4.16 **fpFD\_CLR**

Synopsis: Clears a file descriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_CLR(fdno: cint; var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fdno` in file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (213).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (213), `FpFD_ZERO` (189), `FpFD_Set` (188), `FpFD_IsSet` (188)

### 1.4.17 **fpFD\_ISSET**

Synopsis: Check whether a file descriptor is set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ISSET(fdno: cint; const nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fdNo` in file descriptor set `fds` is set. It returns zero if the descriptor is not set, 1 if it is set. If the number of the file descriptor is wrong, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (213).

Errors: If an invalid file descriptor number is passed, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSelect` (213), `FpFD_ZERO` (189), `FpFD_Clr` (188), `FpFD_Set` (188)

### 1.4.18 **fpFD\_SET**

Synopsis: Set a file descriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_SET(fdno: cint; var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` sets file descriptor `fdno` in file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (213).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (213), `FpFD_ZERO` (189), `FpFD_Clr` (188), `FpFD_IsSet` (188)

### 1.4.19 fpFD\_ZERO

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ZERO(out nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_ZERO` clears all the file descriptors in the file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (213).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (213), `FpFD_Clr` (188), `FpFD_Set` (188), `FpFD_IsSet` (188)

### 1.4.20 FpFork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function FpFork : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `FpFork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `fpGetPPid` (194)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain** Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `fpExecve` (186), `#rtl.linux.Clone` (969)

### 1.4.21 FPFStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpFStat(fd: cint; var sb: Stat) : cint`  
`function FPFStat(var F: Text; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FPFStat(var F: File; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Fda** valid file descriptor.

**Fan** opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` (234). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**sys\_enoent** `Path` does not exist.

See also: `FpStat` (221), `FpLStat` (199)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
    { Make a file }
    assign (f, 'test.fil');
    rewrite (f);
    for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
    close (f);
    { Do the call on made file. }
    if fpstat ('test.fil', info) <= 0 then
        begin
            writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
            halt (1);
        end;
    writeln;
    writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
    writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
    writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);
    writeln ('nlink   : ', info.st_nlink);
    writeln ('uid     : ', info.st_uid);
    writeln ('gid     : ', info.st_gid);
    writeln ('rdev    : ', info.st_rdev);
    writeln ('Size    : ', info.st_size);
    writeln ('Blksize : ', info.st_blksize);
    writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.st_blocks);
    writeln ('atime   : ', info.st_atime);
    writeln ('mtime   : ', info.st_mtime);
    writeln ('ctime   : ', info.st_ctime);
    { Remove file }
    erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.22 FpFtruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function FpFtruncate(fd: cint; flength: TOff) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFtruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `flength` bytes, where `flength` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates that an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([204](#)), `FpClose` ([182](#)), `FpRead` ([209](#)), `FpWrite` ([230](#)), `FpLSeek` ([198](#))

### 1.4.23 FpGetcwd

Synopsis: Retrieve the current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpGetcwd(path: pChar; siz: TSize) : pChar`  
`function FpGetcwd : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgetCWD` returns the current working directory of the running process. It is returned in `Path`, which points to a memory location of at least `siz` bytes.

If the function is successful, a pointer to `Path` is returned, or a string with the result. On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

Errors: On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

See also: `FpGetPID` ([194](#)), `FpGetUID` ([196](#))

### 1.4.24 FpGetegid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetegid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetegid` returns the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetGid` ([193](#)), `FpGetUid` ([196](#)), `FpGetEUid` ([192](#)), `FpGetPid` ([194](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([194](#)), `fpSetUID` ([216](#)), `FpSetGid` ([214](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ('Group Id = ',fpgetgid, ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid);`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.25 FpGetEnv

Synopsis: Return value of environment variable.

Declaration: `function FpGetEnv(name: pChar) : pChar`  
`function FpGetEnv(name: string) : pChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPGetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `Name`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accommodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex41.pp

---

```

Program Example41 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }

Uses BaseUnix ;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Path is : ', fpGetenv ( 'PATH' ) );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.26 fpgeterrno

Synopsis: Retrieve extended error information.

Declaration: `function fpgeterrno : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgeterrno` returns extended information on the latest error. It is set by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpseterrno` ([214](#))

### 1.4.27 FpGeteuid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function FpGeteuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGeteuid` returns the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetUid` ([196](#)), `FpGetGid` ([193](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([191](#)), `FpGetPid` ([194](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([194](#)), `fpSetUID` ([216](#)), `FpSetGid` ([214](#))

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }

Uses BaseUnix ;

begin
  writeLn ( 'User Id = ', fpgetuid, ' Effective user Id = ', fpgeteuid );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.28 FpGetgid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetgid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetgid` returns the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetEGid` (191), `FpGetUid` (196), `FpGetEUid` (192), `FpGetPid` (194), `FpGetPPid` (194), `fpSetUID` (216), `FpSetGid` (214)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid , ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid );`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.29 FpGetgroups

Synopsis: Get the list of supplementary groups.

Declaration: `function FpGetgroups(gidsetsize: cint; var grouplist: TGrpArr) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetgroups` returns up to `gidsetsize` groups in `GroupList`

If the function is successful, then number of groups that were stored is returned. On error, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (192)

See also: `FpGetpgrp` (193), `FpGetGID` (193), `FpGetEGID` (191)

### 1.4.30 FpGetpgrp

Synopsis: Get process group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpgrp : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetpgrp` returns the process group ID of the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpGetPID` (194), `fpGetPPID` (194), `FpGetGID` (193), `FpGetUID` (196)

### 1.4.31 FpGetpid

Synopsis: Return current process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetpid` returns the process ID of the currently running process.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpGetpid`: `system.GetProcessID`. Please use `fpGetpid` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.GetProcessID` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetPPid` ([194](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ', `fpgetpid` , ' Parent process Id = ', `fpgetppid` );

**end.**

---

### 1.4.32 FpGetppid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetppid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetppid` returns the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetPid` ([194](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ', `fpgetpid` , ' Parent process Id = ', `fpgetppid` );

**end.**

---

### 1.4.33 fpGetPriority

Synopsis: Return process priority

Declaration: `function fpGetPriority(Which: cint; Who: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPriority` returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. Which can be one of the predefined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case `Who` is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see `FpNice` (204).

Errors: Error information is returned solely by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function: a priority can be a positive or negative value.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: `FpSetPriority` (215), `FpNice` (204)

### 1.4.34 FpGetRLimit

Synopsis: Get process resource limits

Declaration: `function FpGetRLimit(resource: cint; rlim: PRLimit) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetRLimit` gets the resource limits for the current process: `resource` determines the resource of which the kernel should return the limits (one of the many `RLIMIT_*` constants). `rlim` should point to a `TRLimit` (236) record and on success will contain the resource limits.

The function returns zero if the resource limits were correctly returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and `fpgeterrno` (192) can be used to retrieve the error code.

See also: `FpSetRLimit` (215)

### 1.4.35 FpGetsid

Synopsis: Get current session ID

Declaration: `function FpGetsid(pid: TPid) : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetsid` returns the session ID of the process `pid`. The return value is the session ID of the process. (it equals the PID of the session leader). The process `pid` must be in the same session as the current process.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be obtained with `fpGetErrno`.

See also: `FpGetpgid` (193), `FpGetpid` (194), `FpGetPpid` (194)

### 1.4.36 FpGetuid

Synopsis: Return current user ID

Declaration: `function FpGetuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetuid` returns the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetGid` ([193](#)), `FpGetEuid` ([192](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([191](#)), `FpGetPid` ([194](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([194](#)), `fpSetUID` ([216](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEuid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ('User Id = ',fpgetuid,' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid);`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.37 FpIOctl

Synopsis: General kernel IOCTL call.

Declaration: `function FpIOctl(Handle: cint; Ndx: TIOctlRequest; Data: Pointer) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: This is a general interface to the Unix/ Linux `ioctl` call. It performs various operations on the file descriptor `Handle`. `Ndx` describes the operation to perform. `Data` points to data needed for the `Ndx` function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under Linux.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54;`

**uses** `BaseUnix,Termio;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOCtl function. }*

**var**

`tios : Termios;`

**begin**

`{$ifdef FreeBSD}`

`fpIOctl(1,TIOCGETA,@tios); // these constants are very OS dependant.`

`// see the tcgetattr example for a better way`

`{$endif}`

`WriteLn('Input Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8));`

---

```

    WriteLn('Output Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));
    WriteLn('Line Flags   : $',hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));
    WriteLn('Control Flags: $',hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));
end.

```

---

### 1.4.38 FpKill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

Declaration: `function FpKill(pid: TPid; sig: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpKill` sends a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid`>0 then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals -1, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid`<-1 then the signal is sent to process group -`Pid`.

The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)):

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process `Pid`.

See also: `FpSigAction` ([216](#)), `FpSignal` ([219](#))

### 1.4.39 FpLink

Synopsis: Create a hard link to a file

Declaration: `function FpLink(existing: pChar; newone: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpLink(const existing: RawByteString;`  
`const newone: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpLink` makes `NewOne` point to the same file as `Existing`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns zero if the call was successful, and returns a non-zero value if the call failed.

Errors: The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_exdev**`Existing` and `NewOne` are not on the same file system.

**sys\_eperm**The file system containing `Existing` and `NewOne` doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing `NewOne` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `Existing` or `NewOne` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eexist** NewOne already exists.

**sys\_emlink** Existing has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop** existing or NewOne has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing NewOne has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm** Existing points to . or .. of a directory.

See also: [fpSymLink \(222\)](#), [fpUnLink \(227\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex21.pp

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** F : Text;

    S : **String**;

**begin**

    Assign (F, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**Writeln** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');

    Close(f);

*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*

**if** fpLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 **then**

**writeln** ('Error when linking !');

*{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*

**If** fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

    Assign (f, 'new.txt');

**Reset** (F);

**While not EOF**(f) **do**

**begin**

**Readln**(F,S);

**Writeln** ('> ',s);

**end**;

    Close (f);

*{ Remove new.txt also }*

**If not** FPUntlink ('new.txt') <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

**end.**

---

#### 1.4.40 FpLseek

**Synopsis:** Set file pointer position.

**Declaration:** function FpLseek(fd: cint; offset: TOff; whence: cint) : TOff

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpLseek sets the current file position of file fd to Offset, starting from Whence, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetOffset** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurOffset** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endOffset** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new file position, or -1 of an error occurred.

For an example, see [FpOpen \(204\)](#).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using [fpGetErrno \(192\)](#).

See also: [FpOpen \(204\)](#), [FpWrite \(230\)](#), [FpClose \(182\)](#), [FpRead \(209\)](#), [FpFTruncate \(190\)](#)

### 1.4.41 **fpLstat**

Synopsis: Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

**Declaration:** `function fpLstat(path: pchar; Info: PStat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat(const path: RawByteString; Info: PStat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat(path: pchar; var Info: Stat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat(const Filename: RawByteString; var Info: Stat) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpLstat` gets information about the link specified in `Path` (or `FileName`, and stores it in `Info`, which points to a record of type `TStat`. Contrary to `FpFstat (189)`, it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure. failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the [FpGetErrno \(192\)](#) function.

`sys_enoentPath` does not exist.

See also: [FpFStat \(189\)](#), [#rtl.unixtype.TStatFS \(2102\)](#)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex29.pp`

---

```
program example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
```

---

```

writeln ('Result of stat on file ''test.fil''.');
writeln ('Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ('Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ('nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ('uid     : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ('gid     : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ('rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ('Size    : ',info.st_size);
writeln ('Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ('Blocks  : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ('atime   : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ('mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ('ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);

If fpSymLink ('test.fil','test.lnk')<>0 then
  writeln ('Link failed ! Errno : ',fpgeterrno);

if fplstat ('test.lnk',@info)<>0 then
  begin
    writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
    halt (1);
  end;
writeln;
writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.');
writeln ('Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ('Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ('nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ('uid     : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ('gid     : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ('rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ('Size    : ',info.st_size);
writeln ('Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ('Blocks  : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ('atime   : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ('mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ('ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);
{ Remove file and link }
erase (f);
fpunlink ('test.lnk');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.42 FpMkdir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function FpMkdir(path: pChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkdir(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMkDir` creates a new directory `Path`, and sets the new directory's mode to `Mode`. `Path` can be an absolute path or a relative path. Note that only the last element of the directory will be created, higher level directories must already exist, and must be writeable by the current user.

On success, 0 is returned. if the function fails, -1 is returned.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpMkDir`: `system.mkdir`. Please use `fpMkDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.mkdir` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `fpGetCWD` (191), `fpChDir` (180)

### 1.4.43 FpMkfifo

Synopsis: Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

Declaration: `function FpMkfifo(path: pChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkfifo(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpMkFifo` creates named a named pipe in the file system, with name `Path` and mode `Mode`.

The function returns zero if the command was successful, and nonzero if it failed.

Errors: The error codes include:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

### 1.4.44 Fpmmmap

Synopsis: Create memory map of a file

Declaration: `function Fpmmmap(start: pointer; len: size_t; prot: cint; flags: cint; fd: cint; offst: off_t) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMMap` maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different arguments determine what and how the file is mapped:

**adr** Address where to mmap the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**len** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the mmap call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, `MMap` will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS** `fd` does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options `MAP_SHARED` and `MAP_PRIVATE` must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**off** Offset to be used in file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (192) function.

**Sys\_EBADF**fd is not a valid file descriptor and MAP\_ANONYMOUS was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCESS**MAP\_PRIVATE was specified, but fd is not open for reading. Or MAP\_SHARED was asked and PROT\_WRITE is set, fd is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL**One of the record fields Start, length or offset is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY**MAP\_DENYWRITE was set but the object specified by fd is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN**fd is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM**Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: FpMUnMap (203)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex66.pp

**Program** Example66;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** S : String;  
       fd : cint;  
       Len : longint;  
       // args : tmmargs;  
       P : PChar;

**begin**

  s:= 'This is the string';  
  Len:=Length(S);  
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O\_wrOnly or o\_creat);  
  **If** fd=-1 **then**  
    **Halt**(1);  
  **If** fpWrite(fd,S[1],Len)=-1 **then**  
    **Halt**(2);  
  fpClose(fd);  
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O\_rdOnly);  
  **if** fd=-1 **then**  
    **Halt**(3);  
  P:=Pchar(fpmmmap(nil, len+1, PROT\_READ or PROT\_WRITE, MAP\_PRIVATE, fd, 0));

**If** longint(P)=-1 **then**  
    **Halt**(4);  
  **Writeln**('Read in memory : ',P);  
  fpclose(fd);  
  **if** fpMUnMap(P, Len)<>0 **Then**  
    **Halt**(fpgeterrno);

**end.**

### 1.4.45 Fpmprotect

**Declaration:** function Fpmprotect(start: pointer; len: size\_t; prot: cint) : cint

**Visibility:** default

### 1.4.46 Fpmunmap

Synopsis: Unmap previously mapped memory block

Declaration: `function Fpmunmap(start: pointer; len: size_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMUnMap` unmaps the memory block of size `Len`, pointed to by `Adr`, which was previously allocated with `FpMMap` (201).

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FpMMap` (201).

Errors: In case of error the function returns a nonzero value, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function. See `FpMMap` (201) for possible error values.

See also: `FpMMap` (201)

### 1.4.47 FpNanoSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for a short time

Declaration: `function FpNanoSleep(req: ptimespec; rem: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpNanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be -1, and `ErrNo` will be set to `EINTR`

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

Errors: If an error occurred or the call was interrupted, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpPause` (207), `FpAlarm` (179)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program example72;

  { Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
  Req, Rem : TimeSpec;
  Res : Longint;

begin
  With Req do
    begin
      tv_sec := 10;
      tv_nsec := 100;
    end;
  Write ('NanoSleep returned : ');
  Flush (Output);
  Res := (fpNanoSleep (@Req, @rem));

```

---

```

Writeln(res);
If (res<>0) then
  With rem do
    begin
      Writeln('Remaining seconds      : ',tv_sec);
      Writeln('Remaining nanoseconds : ',tv_nsec);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.48 fpNice

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpNice(N: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Nice` adds `-N` to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative `N`, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. On error, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([192](#)) function.

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative `N`, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` ([195](#)), `FpSetPriority` ([215](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

```

begin
  writeln('Setting priority to 5');
  fpsetpriority(prio_process,fpgetpid,5);
  writeln('New priority = ',fpgetpriority(prio_process,fpgetpid));
  writeln('Doing nice 10');
  fpnice(10);
  writeln('New Priority = ',fpgetpriority(prio_process,fpgetpid));
end.

```

---

### 1.4.49 FpOpen

Synopsis: Open file and return file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpOpen(path: pChar; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: pChar; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(const path: RawByteString; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(const path: RawByteString; flags: cint; Mode: TMode)`  
`: cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: ShortString; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: ShortString; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpOpen` opens a file in `Path` with flags `flags` and mode `Mode` One of the following:

**O\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**O\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**O\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may beOR-ed with one of the following constants:

**O\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**O\_ExcIf** if the file is opened with `O_Creat` and it already exists, the call will fail.

**O\_NoCtty** If the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**O\_Trunc** If the file exists, it will be truncated.

**O\_Append** the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**O\_NonBlock** The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**O\_NDelay** Idem as `O_NonBlock`

**O\_Sync** The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**O\_NoFollow** if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (Linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**O\_Directory** if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (Linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

`Path` can be of type `PChar` or `String`. The optional `mode` argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the `umask` setting. The real permissions are `Mode` and not `umask`. The return value of the function is the file descriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpClose` (182), `FpRead` (209), `FpWrite` (230), `FpFTruncate` (190), `FpLSeek` (198)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fpOpen, fpwrite and fpClose functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Const** `Line : String[80] = 'This is easy writing !';`

**Var** `FD : CInt`;

**begin**

`FD:=fpOpen ('Test.dat',O_WrOnly or O_Creat);`

`if FD>0 then`

`begin`

`if length(Line)<>fpwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) then`

`Writeln ('Error when writing to file !');`

`fpClose(FD);`

`end;`

**end.**

---

### 1.4.50 FpOpendir

Synopsis: Open a directory for reading

Declaration: `function FpOpendir(dirname: pChar) : pDir`  
`function FpOpendir(const dirname: RawByteString) : pDir`  
`function FpOpendir(dirname: ShortString) : pDir`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpOpenDir` opens the directory `DirName`, and returns a `pdir` pointer to a `Dir` (232) record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, `nil` is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpCloseDir` (183), `FpReadDir` (210)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex35.pp`

---

**Program** `Example35;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the  
 OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and TellDir functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Var** `TheDir : PDir;`  
`ADirent : PDirent;`  
`Entry : Longint;`

**begin**

`TheDir:=fpOpenDir(' ./ ');`

**Repeat**

*//* `Entry:=fpTellDir(TheDir);`  
`ADirent:=fpReadDir (TheDir^);`

**If** `ADirent<>Nil` **then**

**With** `ADirent^` **do**

**begin**

`Writeln ('Entry No : ',Entry);`

`Writeln ('Inode : ',d_fileno);`

*//* `Writeln ('Offset : ',d_off);`

`Writeln ('Reclen : ',d_reclen);`

`Writeln ('Name : ',pchar(@d_name[0]));`

**end;**

**Until** `ADirent=Nil;`

**Repeat**

`Write ('Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ');`

`ReadLn (Entry);`

**If** `Entry<>-1` **then**

**begin**

*//* `fpSeekDir (TheDir, Entry);`

*// not implemented for various platforms*

`ADirent:=fpReadDir (TheDir^);`

**If** `ADirent<>Nil` **then**

**With** `ADirent^` **do**

**begin**

`Writeln ('Entry No : ',Entry);`

`Writeln ('Inode : ',d_fileno);`

*//* `Writeln ('Offset : ',d_off);`

`Writeln ('Reclen : ',d_reclen);`

`Writeln ('Name : ',pchar(@d_name[0]));`

---

```

        end;
    end;
    Until Entry=-1;
    fpCloseDir (TheDir^);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.51 FpPause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal to arrive

Declaration: `function FpPause : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPause` puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return control to the process.

For an example, see `fpAlarm` ([179](#)).

### 1.4.52 FpPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function FpPipe(var fildes: TFilDes) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. The file handles are returned in the array `fildes`. The input handle is in the 0-th element of the array, the output handle is in the 1-st element.

The function returns zero if everything went successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: In case the function fails, the following return values are possible:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `#rtl.unix.POpen` ([2079](#)), `fpMkFifo` ([201](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
s : **String**;

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Assigning Pipes.');

**If** assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);

**Writeln** ('Writing to pipe, and flushing.');

**Writeln** (pipo, 'This is a textstring'); close(pipo);

---

```

Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
While not eof(pipi) do
begin
  Readln (pipi,s);
  Writeln ('Read from pipe : ',s);
end;
close (pipi);
writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
writeln
end.

```

---

### 1.4.53 FpPoll

Synopsis: Poll a file descriptor for events.

Declaration: `function FpPoll(fds: ppollfd; nfds: cuint; timeout: clong) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPoll` waits for events on file descriptors. `fds` points to an array of `tpollfd` records, each of these records describes a file descriptor on which to wait for events. The number of file descriptors is given by `nfds`. `>timeout` specifies the maximum time (in milliseconds) to wait for events.

On timeout, the result value is 0. If an event occurred on some descriptors, then the return value is the number of descriptors on which an event (or error) occurred. The `revents` field of the `tpollfd` records will contain the events for the file descriptor it described.

See also: `tpollfd` ([176](#))

### 1.4.54 FpPRead

Synopsis: Positional read: read from file descriptor at a certain position.

Declaration: `function FpPRead(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize; offset: TOff) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPRead` reads `nbytes` bytes from file descriptor `fd` into buffer `buf` starting at offset `offset`. Offset is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpReadV` ([211](#)), `FpPWrite` ([208](#))

### 1.4.55 FpPWrite

Synopsis: Positional write: write to file descriptor at a certain position.

Declaration: `function FpPWrite(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize; offset: TOff) : TSize`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpPWrite` writes `nbytes` bytes from buffer `buf` into file descriptor `fd` starting at offset `offset`. Offset is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 on error.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpPRead` (208), `FpWriteV` (230)

### 1.4.56 FpRead

**Synopsis:** Read data from file descriptor

**Declaration:** `function FpRead(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpRead(fd: cint; var buf; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpdRead` reads at most `nbytes` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpOpen` (204), `FpClose` (182), `FpWrite` (230), `FpFTruncate` (190), `FpLSeek` (198)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Const** `Data : string[10] = '1234567890';`

**Var** `FD : cint;`  
`l : longint;`

**begin**

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly or o_creat,&666);`

`if fd>0 then`

`begin`

*{ Fill file with data }*

`for l:=1 to 10 do`

`if fpWrite (FD,Data[l],10)<>10 then`

`begin`

`writeln ('Error when writing !');`

`halt(1);`

`end;`

`fpClose(FD);`

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_rdonly);`

*{ Read data again }*

`If FD>0 then`

`begin`

`For l:=1 to 5 do`

`if fpRead (FD,Data[l],10)<>10 then`

`begin`

---

```

        Writeln ( 'Error when Reading !');
        Halt (2);
    end;
fpClose(FD);
{ Truncating file at 60 bytes }
{ For truncating , file must be open or write }
FD:=fpOpen( 'test.dat',o_wronly,&666);
if FD>0 then
begin
    if fpfTruncate(FD,60)<>0 then
        Writeln( 'Error when truncating !');
    fpClose (FD);
end;
end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.57 FpReaddir

Synopsis: Read entry from directory

Declaration: `function FpReaddir(var dirp: Dir) : pDirent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a `dirent` (232) record describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `FpOpenDir` (206).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpCloseDir` (183), `FpOpenDir` (206)

### 1.4.58 fpReadLink

Synopsis: Read destination of symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: size_t) : cint`  
`function fpReadLink(const Name: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link `name` is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

Errors: On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function.

**SYS\_ENOTDIR** part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG** a pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT** the link name does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES** No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP** Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO** An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT** The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: [FpSymLink \(222\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex62.pp

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;  
       S : **String**;

**begin**  
     Assign (F, 'test.txt');  
     **Rewrite** (F);  
     **Writeln** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');  
     Close(f);  
     *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
     **if** fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **writeln** ('Error when symlinking !');  
     S := fpReadLink ('new.txt');  
     **If** S = '' **then**  
         **Writeln** ('Error reading link !')  
     **Else**  
         **Writeln** ('Link points to : ', S);  
     *{ Now remove links }*  
     **If** fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');  
     **If** fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.59 FpReadV

**Synopsis:** Vector read: Read into multiple buffers

**Declaration:** `function FpReadV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpReadV reads data from file descriptor `fd` and writes it into `iovcnt` buffers described by the `tiovec` [\(176\)](#) buffers pointed to by `iov`. It works like `fpRead` [\(209\)](#) only on multiple buffers.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FpWriteV \(230\)](#), [FpPWrite \(208\)](#), [FpPRead \(208\)](#)

### 1.4.60 FpRename

Synopsis: Rename file

Declaration: `function FpRename(old: pChar; newpath: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpRename(const old: RawByteString;`  
`const newpath: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRename` renames the file `Old` to `NewPath`. `NewPath` can be in a different directory than `Old`, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the `Old` file will be preserved.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpRename`: `system.rename`. Please use `fpRename` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rename` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

**sys\_eisdir**`NewPath` exists and is a directory, but `Old` is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**`NewPath` and `Old` are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty** or **sys\_eexist**`NewPath` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**`Old` or `NewPath` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**`NewPath` is part of `Old`.

**sys\_emlink**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have the maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of `Old` or `NewPath` is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong**Either `Old` or `NewPath` is too long.

**sys\_enoenta** directory component in `Old` or `NewPath` didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem**not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`NewPath` or `Old` is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `Old` or `NewPath`

**sys\_enosp**the file system has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `FpUnLink` ([227](#))

### 1.4.61 FpRmdir

Synopsis: Remove a directory.

Declaration: `function FpRmdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpRmdir(const path: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRmdir` removes the directory `Path` from the system. The directory must be empty for this call to succeed, and the user must have the necessary permissions in the parent directory. Only the last component of the directory is removed, i.e. higher-lying directories are not removed.

On success, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpRmdir`: `system.rmdir`. Please use `fpRmdir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rmdir` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

### 1.4.62 fpSelect

Synopsis: Wait for events on file descriptors

Declaration: `function FPSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet; exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet; exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: cint) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: time_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSelect` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDSet`s to see if the following I/O operation on the file descriptors will block.

`readfds`, `writefds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if the following read operation will block. The entries in `writefds` are checked to see if the following write operation will block, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions `fpFD_ZERO` (189), `fpFD_Clr` (188), `fpFD_Set` (188) or `fpFD_IsSet` (188) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the value of the largest file descriptor in one of the sets, + 1. In other words, it is the position of the last bit which is set in the array of bits.

`TimeOut` can be used to set a time limit. If `TimeOut` can be two types :

1. `TimeOut` is of type `ptimeval` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `TimeOut` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `TimeOut` is of type `cint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `TimeOut` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `TimeOut` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

The variant with the text file will execute the `FpSelect` call on the file descriptor associated with the text file `T`

Errors: On error, the function returns -1. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTRA** non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `N` is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** `Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `fpFD_ZERO` (189), `fpFD_Clr` (188), `fpFD_Set` (188), `fpFD_IsSet` (188)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** FDS : Tfdset;

**begin**

  fpfd\_zero(FDS);

  fpfd\_set(0,FDS);

**Writeln** ('Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.');

*{ Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }*

  fpSelect (1,@FDS,**nil**,**nil**,**nil**);

*{ Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }*

**readln**;

**Writeln** ('Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...');

  Fpfd\_zero(FDS);

  FpFd\_set (0,FDS);

**if** fpSelect (1,@FDS,**nil**,**nil**,2000)>0 **then**

**Writeln** ('Thank you !')

*{ FD\_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }*

**else**

**Writeln** ('Too late !');

**end**.

---

### 1.4.63 fpseterrno

Synopsis: Set extended error information.

Declaration: `procedure fpseterrno(err: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpseterrno` sets the extended information on the latest error. It is called by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Unless a direct kernel call is performed, there should never be any need to call this function.

See also: `fpgeterrno` ([192](#))

### 1.4.64 FpSetgid

Synopsis: Set the current group ID

Declaration: `function FpSetgid(gid: TGid) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the group ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setgid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` ([192](#)).

See also: `FpSetUid` ([216](#)), `FpGetGid` ([193](#)), `FpGetUid` ([196](#)), `FpGetEUid` ([192](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([191](#)), `FpGetPid` ([194](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([194](#))

### 1.4.65 fpSetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpSetPriority(Which: cint; Who: cint; What: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetPriority` sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. Which can be one of the predefined constants:

**Prio\_Process**`Who` is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**`Who` is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**`Who` is interpreted as user ID

`Prio` is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see `FpNice` (204).

The function returns zero on success, -1 on failure

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` (195), `FpNice` (204)

### 1.4.66 FpSetRLimit

Synopsis: Set process resource limits

Declaration: `function FpSetRLimit(Resource: cint; rlim: PRLimit) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSetRLimit` sets the resource limits for the current process: `resource` determines the resource of which the kernel should set the limits (one of the many `RLIMIT_*` constants). `rlim` should point to a `TRLimit` (236) record which contains the new limits for the resource indicated in `resource`.

The function returns zero if the resource limits were successfully set.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and `fpgeterrno` (192) can be used to retrieve the error code.

See also: `FpGetRLimit` (195)

### 1.4.67 FpSetsid

Synopsis: Create a new session.

Declaration: `function FpSetsid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSetsid` creates a new session (process group). It returns the new process group id (as returned by `FpGetpgrp` (193)). This call will fail if the current process is already the process group leader.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (192)

### 1.4.68 fpsettimeofday

Synopsis: Set kernel time

Declaration: `function fpsettimeofday(tp: ptimeval; tzp: ptimezone) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSetTimeOfDay` sets the kernel time to the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT specified in the `tp` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account time-zones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FPGetTimeOfDay` ([2075](#))

### 1.4.69 FpSetuid

Synopsis: Set the current user ID

Declaration: `function FpSetuid(uid: TUid) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the user ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setuid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` ([192](#)).

See also: `FpGetGid` ([193](#)), `FpGetUid` ([196](#)), `FpGetEUid` ([192](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([191](#)), `FpGetPid` ([194](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([194](#)), `FpSetGid` ([214](#))

### 1.4.70 FPSigaction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `function FPSigaction(sig: cint; act: psigactionrec; oact: psigactionrec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPSigaction` changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` ([233](#)) record. `Sig` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `Sig` is taken from it. If `Oact` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If `sig` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**sys\_einval** an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault** `Act`, `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr** System call was interrupted.

See also: `FpSigProcMask` (220), `FpSigPending` (219), `FpSigSuspend` (220), `FpKill` (197)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `example57`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function. }

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses BaseUnix;

Var
    oa, na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;

begin
    writeln ('Receiving signal: ', sig);
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^.sa_Handler := SigActionHandler (@DoSig);
    fillchar (na^.Sa_Mask, sizeof(na^.sa_mask), #0);
    na^.Sa_Flags := 0;
    { $ifdef Linux } // Linux specific
    na^.Sa_Restorer := Nil;
    { $endif }
    if fpSigAction (SigUsr1, na, oa) <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln ('Error: ', fpgeterrno, '.');
            halt (1);
        end;
    Writeln ('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
    readln;
end.
```

---

### 1.4.71 FpSigAddSet

Synopsis: Set a signal in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigAddSet (var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigAddSet` adds signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (218), `FpSigFillSet` (218), `FpSigDelSet` (218), `FpSigIsMember` (218)

### 1.4.72 `FpSigDelSet`

Synopsis: Remove a signal from a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigDelSet (var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigDelSet` removes signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (218), `FpSigFillSet` (218), `FpSigAddSet` (217), `FpSigIsMember` (218)

### 1.4.73 `FpsigEmptySet`

Synopsis: Clear all signals from signal set.

Declaration: `function FpsigEmptySet (var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigEmptySet` clears all signals from the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigFillSet` (218), `FpSigAddSet` (217), `FpSigDelSet` (218), `FpSigIsMember` (218)

### 1.4.74 `FpSigFillSet`

Synopsis: Set all signals in signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigFillSet (var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigFillSet` sets all signals in the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (218), `FpSigAddSet` (217), `FpSigDelSet` (218), `FpSigIsMember` (218)

### 1.4.75 `FpSigIsMember`

Synopsis: Check whether a signal appears in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigIsMember (const nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigIsMember` checks whether `Signo` appears in the set `nset`. If it is a member, then 1 is returned. If not, zero is returned.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (218), `FpSigFillSet` (218), `FpSigAddSet` (217), `FpSigDelSet` (218)

### 1.4.76 FpSignal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FpSignal(signum: LongInt; Handler: signalhandler)  
: signalhandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSignal` installs a new signal handler (specified by `Handler`) for signal `SigNum`.

This call has a subset of the functionality provided by the `FpSigAction` (216) call. The return value for `FpSignal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `FpSigAction` (216), `FpKill` (197)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `example58;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function. }*

*{  
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.  
replace pid with the real pid of this program.  
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.  
}*

**uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;`

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal: ',sig);`

**end;**

**begin**

`if fpSignal(SigUsr1, SignalHandler(@DoSig))=signalhandler(SIG_ERR) then`

`begin`

`writeln('Error: ',fpGetErrno, '.');`

`halt(1);`

`end;`

`Writeln('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');`

`readln;`

**end.**

---

### 1.4.77 FpSigPending

Synopsis: Return set of currently pending signals

Declaration: `function FpSigPending(var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigpending` allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.)

The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: [fpSigAction \(216\)](#), [fpSigProcMask \(220\)](#), [fpSigSuspend \(220\)](#), [fpSignal \(219\)](#), [fpKill \(197\)](#)

### 1.4.78 FpSigProcMask

Synopsis: Set list of blocked signals

Declaration: 

```
function FpSigProcMask(how: cint; nset: psigset; oset: psigset) : cint
function FpSigProcMask(how: cint; constref nset: tsigset;
var oset: tsigset) : cint
```

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on How :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the `nset` argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in `nset` are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so `nset`.

If `oset` is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: `Errno` is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**`oset` or `nset` point to an address outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: [fpSigAction \(216\)](#), [fpSigPending \(219\)](#), [fpSigSuspend \(220\)](#), [fpKill \(197\)](#)

### 1.4.79 FpSigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: 

```
function FpSigSuspend(const sigmask: tsigset) : cint
```

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigSuspend` temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in `SigMask`, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: [fpSigAction \(216\)](#), [fpSigProcMask \(220\)](#), [fpSigPending \(219\)](#), [fpSignal \(219\)](#), [fpKill \(197\)](#)

### 1.4.80 FpSigTimedWait

Synopsis: Wait for signal, with timeout

Declaration: 

```
function FpSigTimedWait(const sigset: tsigset; info: psiginfo;
timeout: ptimespec) : cint
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigTimedWait` will suspend the current thread and wait for one of the signals in `sigset` to be delivered. information on the delivered signal is placed in the location provided by `info` (or in `info` itself, if the `Var` variant of the call is used). If the signal is not delivered within the time limit set in `timeout`, then the call will return -1, and `fpGetErrno` will return `EAGAIN`.

On success, the signal number is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be obtained with `fpGetErrno`.

See also: `FpSigSuspend` ([220](#))

### 1.4.81 FpSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for several seconds

Declaration: `function FpSleep(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `seconds` has passed, then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and the return value is the remaining time till the end of the intended period.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

See also: `fpPause` ([207](#)), `fpAlarm` ([179](#)), `fpNanoSleep` ([203](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex73.pp`

---

```

program example73;

  { Program to demonstrate the FpSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
  Res : Longint;

begin
  Write('Sleep returned : ');
  Flush(Output);
  Res:=(fpSleep(10));
  Writeln(res);
  If (res<>0) then
    Writeln('Remaining seconds      : ',res);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.82 FpStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpStat(path: pChar; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat(const path: RawByteString; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat(path: ShortString; var buf: Stat) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in `Path`, and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` ([234](#)). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

`sys_enoentPath` does not exist.

See also: [FpStat \(221\)](#), [FpLStat \(199\)](#)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.st_nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.st_uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.st_gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.st_rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.st_size);
  writeln ('Blksize : ', info.st_blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.st_blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.st_atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.st_mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.st_ctime);
  { Remove file }
  erase (f);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.83 fpSymlink

**Synopsis:** Create a symbolic link

**Declaration:** `function fpSymlink(oldname: pchar; newname: pchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SymLink` makes `NewName` point to the file in `OldName`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function.

- sys\_eperm**The file system containing oldpath and newpath does not support linking files.
- sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or NewPath has no search (=execute) permission.
- sys\_enoent**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.
- sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is nor a directory.
- sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.
- sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only file system.
- sys\_eexist**NewPath already exists.
- sys\_eloop**OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.
- sys\_enospc**The device containing NewPath has no room for another entry.

See also: `FpLink` (197), `FpUnLink` (227), `FpReadLink` (210)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** baseunix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;  
       S : String;

**begin**  
   Assign (F, 'test.txt');  
   **Rewrite** (F);  
   **Writeln** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');  
   Close(f);  
   *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
   **if** fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
     **writeln** ('Error when symlinking !');  
   *{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt*  
   *Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }*  
   **If** fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 **then**  
     **Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');  
   Assign (f, 'new.txt');  
   *{ This should fail, since the symbolic link*  
   *points to a non-existent file ! }*  
   {\$i-}  
   **Reset** (F);  
   {\$i+}  
   **If** IOResult=0 **then**  
     **Writeln** ('This shouldn''t happen');  
   *{ Now remove new.txt also }*  
   **If** fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
     **Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');  
**end.**

---

#### 1.4.84 **fpS\_ISBLK**

Synopsis: Is file a block device

Declaration: `function fpS_ISBLK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISBLK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([189](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([226](#))

#### 1.4.85 **fpS\_ISCHR**

Synopsis: Is file a character device

Declaration: `function fpS_ISCHR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISCHR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([189](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([223](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([226](#))

#### 1.4.86 **fpS\_ISDIR**

Synopsis: Is file a directory

Declaration: `function fpS_ISDIR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so, it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` ([189](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([223](#)), `fpS_ISFIFO` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([226](#))

#### 1.4.87 **fpS\_ISFIFO**

Synopsis: Is file a FIFO

Declaration: `function fpS_ISFIFO(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISFIFO` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([189](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([223](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([226](#))

### 1.4.88 fpS\_ISLNK

Synopsis: Is file a symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpS_ISLNK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISLNK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (189), `FpS_ISFIFO` (224), `FpS_ISREG` (225), `FpS_ISCHR` (224), `FpS_ISBLK` (223), `FpS_ISDIR` (224), `FpS_ISSOCK` (226)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex53.pp`

**Program** `Example53;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the S\_ISLNK function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix;`

**Var** `Info : Stat;`

**begin**

**if** `fpLStat (paramstr(1), @info)=0` **then**

**begin**

**if** `fpS_ISLNK(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a link');

**if** `fpS_ISREG(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a regular file');

**if** `fpS_ISDIR(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a directory');

**if** `fpS_ISCHR(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a character device file');

**if** `fpS_ISBLK(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a block device file');

**if** `fpS_ISFIFO(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a named pipe (FIFO)');

**if** `fpS_ISSOCK(info.st_mode)` **then**

**WriteLn** ('File is a socket');

**end;**

**end.**

### 1.4.89 fpS\_ISREG

Synopsis: Is file a regular file

Declaration: `function fpS_ISREG(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISREG` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (189), `FpS_ISFIFO` (224), `FpS_ISLNK` (225), `FpS_ISCHR` (224), `FpS_ISBLK` (223), `FpS_ISDIR` (224), `FpS_ISSOCK` (226)

### 1.4.90 fpS\_ISSOCK

Synopsis: Is file a Unix socket

Declaration: `function fpS_ISSOCK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISSOCK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([189](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([225](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([223](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([224](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([225](#))

### 1.4.91 fptime

Synopsis: Return the current Unix time

Declaration: `function FpTime(var tloc: TTime) : TTime`  
`function fptime : time_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpTime` returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 GMT, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST. The result is also stored in `tloc`, if it is specified.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fptime function. }*

**Uses** baseunix;

**begin**

**Write** ('Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ');

**WriteLn** (fptime);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.92 FpTimes

Synopsis: Return execution times for the current process

Declaration: `function FpTimes(var buffer: tms) : TClock`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpTimes` stores the execution time of the current process and child processes in `buffer`.

The return value (on Linux) is the number of clock ticks since boot time. On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `fpUTime` ([228](#))

### 1.4.93 FpUmask

Synopsis: Set file creation mask.

Declaration: `function FpUmask (cmask: TMode) : TMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpUmask` changes the file creation mask for the current user to `cmask`. The current mask is returned.

See also: `fpChmod` ([180](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex27.pp`

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Old Umask was : ',fpUmask(&111));

**WRitELn** ( 'New Umask is : ',&111);

**end.**

### 1.4.94 FpUname

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function FpUname (var name: UtsName) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Uname` gets the name and configuration of the current Linux kernel, and returns it in the `name` record.

On success, 0 is returned, on error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `FpUTime` ([228](#))

### 1.4.95 FpUnlink

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function FpUnlink (path: pChar) : cint`

`function FpUnlink (const path: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUnlink` decreases the link count on file `Path`. `Path` can be of type `AnsiString` or `PChar`. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to erase files: `system.erase`. Please use `fpUnlink` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.erase` will work on all operating systems.

For an example, see `FpLink` ([197](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**sys\_eaccess** You have no write access right in the directory containing `Path`, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of `Path`.

**sys\_eperm** The directory containing `pathname` has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent** A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir** `Path` refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** `Path` is on a read-only file system.

See also: `FpLink` (197), `FpSymLink` (222)

## 1.4.96 FpUtime

Synopsis: Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

Declaration: `function FpUtime(path: pChar; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`  
`function FpUtime(const path: RawByteString; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUtime` sets the access and modification times of the file specified in `Path`. the `times` record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `time_t` (commonly a `longint`). They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some file systems (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

**sys\_eaccess** One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: `FpTime` (226), `FpChown` (181), `FpAccess` (178)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function. }*

**Uses** `Dos, BaseUnix, Unix, UnixUtil`;

**Var** `utim : utimbuf`;  
`dow, msec, year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word`;

**begin**  
*{ Set access and modification time of executable source }*  
`GetTime (hour, minute, second, msec);`  
`GetDate (year, month, day, dow);`  
`utim.actime := LocalToEpoch (year, month, day, hour, minute, second);`

---

```

    utim.modtime:=utim.actime;
    if Fputime('ex25.pp',@utim)<>0 then
        writeln('Call to UTime failed !')
    else
        begin
            Write('Set access and modification times to : ');
            Write(Hour:2,':',minute:2,':',second,',',' ');
            Writeln(Day:2,'/',month:2,'/',year:4);
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 1.4.97 FpWait

Synopsis: Wait for a child to exit.

Declaration: `function FpWait(var stat_loc: cint) : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpWait` suspends the current process and waits for any child to exit or stop due to a signal. It reports the exit status of the exited child in `stat_loc`.

The return value of the function is the process ID of the child that exited, or -1 on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` ([192](#)).

See also: `fpFork` ([189](#)), `fpExecve` ([186](#)), `fpWaitPid` ([229](#))

### 1.4.98 FpWaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: `function FpWaitpid(pid: TPid; stat_loc: pcint; options: cint) : TPid`  
`function FpWaitPid(pid: TPid; var Status: cint; Options: cint) : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpWaitPid` waits for a child process with process ID `Pid` to exit. The value of `Pid` can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of `pid`.

**Pid = -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of `Pid`.

The `Options` parameter can be used to specify further how `fpWaitPid` behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes `fpWaitpid` to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes `fpWaitPid` to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes `fpWaitPid` also to wait for threads created by the `#rtl.linux.Clone` ([969](#)) call.

The exit status of the process that caused `fpWaitPID` is reported in `stat_loc` or `Status`.

Upon return, it returns the process id of the process that exited, 0 if no process exited, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see `fpFork` (189).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (192).

See also: `fpFork` (189), `fpExecve` (186), `fpWait` (229)

### 1.4.99 FpWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWrite(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpWrite(fd: cint; const buf; nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWrite` writes at most `nbytes` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (192).

See also: `FpOpen` (204), `FpClose` (182), `FpRead` (209), `FpFTruncate` (190), `FpLSeek` (198)

### 1.4.100 FpWriteV

Synopsis: Vector write: Write from multiple buffers to a file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWriteV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWriteV` writes data to file descriptor `fd`. The data is taken from `iovcnt` buffers described by the `tiovec` (176) buffers pointed to by `iov`. It works like `fpWrite` (230) only from multiple buffers.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpReadV` (211), `FpPWrite` (208), `FpPRead` (208)

### 1.4.101 FreeShellArgV

Synopsis: Free the result of a `CreateShellArgV` (178) function

Declaration: `procedure FreeShellArgV(p: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeShellArgV` frees the memory pointed to by `P`, which was allocated by a call to `CreateShellArgV` (178).

Errors: None.

See also: `CreateShellArgV` (178)

#### 1.4.102 **wexitStatus**

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the `fpWaitPID` (229) result.

Declaration: `function wexitStatus(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WEXITSTATUS` can be used to extract the exit status from `Status`, the result of the `FpWaitPID` (229) call.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (229), `WTERMSIG` (232), `WSTOPSIG` (231), `WIFEXITED` (231), `WIFSIGNALED` (231)

#### 1.4.103 **wifexited**

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function wifexited(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFEXITED` checks `Status` and returns `True` if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (229), `WTERMSIG` (232), `WSTOPSIG` (231), `WIFSIGNALED` (231), `WEXITSTATUS` (231)

#### 1.4.104 **wifsignaled**

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function wifsignaled(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSIGNALED` returns `True` if `Status` indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (229), `WTERMSIG` (232), `WSTOPSIG` (231), `WIFEXITED` (231), `WEXITSTATUS` (231)

#### 1.4.105 **wstopsig**

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function wstopsig(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WSTOPSIG` is an alias for `WEXITSTATUS` (231).

See also: `FpWaitPID` (229), `WTERMSIG` (232), `WIFEXITED` (231), `WIFSIGNALED` (231), `WEXITSTATUS` (231)

### 1.4.106 wtermSIG

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function wtermSIG(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: WTERMSIG extracts from Status the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: [FpWaitPID \(229\)](#), [WSTOPSIG \(231\)](#), [WIFEXITED \(231\)](#), [WIFSIGNALED \(231\)](#), [WEXITSTATUS \(231\)](#)

## 1.5 Dir

```

Dir = record
  dd_fd : LongInt;
  dd_loc : LongInt;
  dd_size : LongInt
  ;
  dd_buf : pDirent;
  dd_nextoff : Cardinal;
  dd_max : Integer
  ;
  dd_lock : pointer;
end

```

Record used in [fpOpenDir \(206\)](#) and [fpReadDir \(210\)](#) calls

## 1.6 Dirent

```

Dirent = record
  d_fileno : ino64_t;
  d_off : off_t;
  d_reclen
  : cushort;
  d_type : cuchar;
  d_name : Array[0..4095-sizeof(ino64_t
  )-sizeof(off_t)-sizeof(cushort)-sizeof(cuchar)] of Char;
end

```

Record used in the [fpReadDir \(210\)](#) function to return files in a directory.

## 1.7 FLock

```

FLock = record
  l_type : cshort;
  l_whence : cshort;
  l_start
  : kernel_off_t;
  l_len : kernel_off_t;

```

```

    l_pid : pid_t;
end

```

Lock description type for `fpFCntl` (187) lock call.

## 1.8 iovec

```

iovec = record
    iov_base : pointer;
    iov_len : size_t;
end

```

`iovec` is used in `freadv` (211) for IO to multiple buffers to describe a buffer location.

## 1.9 pollfd

```

pollfd = record
    fd : cint;
    events : cshort;
    revents : cshort
;
end

```

`pollfd` is used in the `fpPoll` (208) call to describe the various actions.

## 1.10 sigactionrec

```

sigactionrec = record
    sa_handler : sigactionhandler_t;
    sa_flags
    : culong;
    sa_restorer : sigrestorerhandler_t;
    sa_mask : sigset_t
;
end

```

Record used in `fpSigAction` (216) call.

## 1.11 Stat

```

Stat = packed record
    st_dev : QWord;
    __pad0_ : Array[0..3] of
    Byte;
    __st_ino_ : Cardinal;
    st_mode : Cardinal;
    st_nlink :

```

```

Cardinal;
st_uid : Cardinal;
st_gid : Cardinal;
st_rdev : QWord
;
__pad3_ : Array[0..3] of Byte;
st_size : QWord;
st_blksize
: Cardinal;
st_blocks : QWord;
st_atime : Cardinal;
st_atime_nsec
: Cardinal;
st_mtime : Cardinal;
st_mtime_nsec : Cardinal;
st_ctime : Cardinal;
st_ctime_nsec : Cardinal;
st_ino : QWord
;
end

```

Record describing an inode (file) in the FPFstat ([189](#)) call.

## 1.12 tfpreg

```

tfpreg = record
  significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
  exponent :
    Word;
end

```

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

## 1.13 tfpstate

```

tfpstate = record
  cw : Cardinal;
  sw : Cardinal;
  tag : Cardinal
;
  ipoff : Cardinal;
  cssel : Cardinal;
  dataoff : Cardinal;
  datasel : Cardinal;
  st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
  status : Word
;
  magic : Word;
  fxsr_env : Array[0..5] of dword;
  mxcsr : dword
;

```

```

    reserved : dword;
    fxsr_st : Array[0..7] of tfpxreg;
    xmmreg
      : Array[0..7] of txmmreg;
case Byte of
1: (
    padding : Array[0.
      .43] of dword;
case Byte of
1: (
    padding2 : Array[0..11] of dword
    ;
);
2: (
    sw_reserved : tfpx_sw_bytes;
);
);
2: (
    padding1 : Array
      [0..43] of dword;
);
end

```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

## 1.14 tfpxreg

```

tfpxreg = record
    significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
    exponent
      : Word;
    padding : Array[0..2] of Word;
end

```

## 1.15 tfpx\_sw\_bytes

```

tfpx_sw_bytes = record
    magic1 : dword;
    extended_size : dword;
    xfeatures : QWord;
    xstate_size : dword;
    padding : Array[0.
      .6] of dword;
end

```

## 1.16 timezone

```

timezone = record

```

```

    tz_minuteswest : cint;
    tz_dsttime : cint;
end

```

Record describing a timezone

## 1.17 tms

```

tms = record
    tms_utime : clock_t;
    tms_stime : clock_t;
    tms_cutime
        : clock_t;
    tms_cstime : clock_t;
end

```

Record containing timings for `fpTimes` (226) call.

## 1.18 TRLimit

```

TRLimit = record
    rlim_cur : rlim_t;
    rlim_max : rlim_t;
end

```

TRLimit is the structure used by the kernel to return resource limit information in.

## 1.19 tsigaltstack

```

tsigaltstack = record
    ss_sp : pointer;
    ss_flags : LongInt;
    ss_size
        : LongInt;
end

```

Provide the location of an alternate signal handler stack.

## 1.20 TSigContext

```

TSigContext = record
    gs : Word;
    __gsh : Word;
    fs : Word;
    __fsh
        : Word;
end

```

```

es : Word;
__esh : Word;
ds : Word;
__dsh : Word
;
edi : Cardinal;
esi : Cardinal;
ebp : Cardinal;
esp : Cardinal
;
ebx : Cardinal;
edx : Cardinal;
ecx : Cardinal;
eax : Cardinal
;
trapno : Cardinal;
err : Cardinal;
eip : Cardinal;
cs :
Word;
__csh : Word;
eflags : Cardinal;
esp_at_signal : Cardinal
;
ss : Word;
__ssh : Word;
fpstate : pfpstate;
oldmask : Cardinal
;
cr2 : Cardinal;
end

```

This type is CPU dependent. Cross-platform code should not use the contents of this record.

## 1.21 tsiginfo

```

tsiginfo = record
  si_signo : LongInt;
  si_errno : LongInt;
  si_code
  : LongInt;
  _sifields : record
    case LongInt of
      0: (
        _pad
        : Array[0..(SI_PAD_SIZE)-1] of LongInt;
      );
      1: (
        _kill : record
        _pid : pid_t;
        _uid : uid_t;
        end;
    end;
end;

```

```

);
2: (
  _timer : record
    _timer1 : dword;
    _timer2 : dword;
  end;
);
3: (
  _rt : record
    _pid : pid_t;
    _uid
: uid_t;
    _sigval : pointer;
  end;
);
4: (
  _sigchld
: record
    _pid : pid_t;
    _uid : uid_t;
    _status :
LongInt;
    _utime : clock_t;
    _stime : clock_t;
  end
;
);
5: (
  _sigfault : record
    _addr : pointer;
  end
;
);
6: (
  _sigpoll : record
    _band : LongInt;
    _fd
: LongInt;
  end;
);
end;
end

```

This type describes the signal that occurred.

## 1.22 TUcontext

```

TUcontext = record
  uc_flags : Cardinal;
  uc_link : Pucontext;
  uc_stack : tsigaltstack;
  uc_mcontext : TSigContext;

```

```

    uc_sigmask
    : tsigset;
end

```

This structure is used to describe the user context in a program or thread. It is not used in this unit, but is provided for completeness.

## 1.23 txmmreg

```

txmmreg = record
    element : Array[0..3] of dword;
end

```

## 1.24 UTimBuf

```

UTimBuf = record
    actime : time_t;
    modtime : time_t;
end

```

Record used in `fpUtime` ([228](#)) to set file access and modification times.

## 1.25 UtsName

```

UtsName = record
    Sysname : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
    Nodename : Array[0..UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
    Release
    : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
    Version : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
    Machine : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
    Domain
    : Array[0..UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH-1] of Charplatform;
end

```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly. Note that the `Domain` field is a GNU extension, and may not be available on all platforms.

## Chapter 2

# Reference for unit 'Character'

### 2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'Character'

| Name        | Page                 |
|-------------|----------------------|
| System      | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unicodedata | <a href="#">2013</a> |

### 2.2 Overview

The character unit contains the TCharacter ([248](#)) class, which consists mainly of class functions. It should not be constructed, but its class methods can be used. All class methods also exist as regular methods.

Many routines depend on Unicode collation data to be present in the binary (or distributed on disc with the application. This data can be loaded using the routines in the unicodedata ([2013](#)) unit.. The FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in .bco files which can be loaded using the LoadCollation ([2024](#)) routine from that unit.

### 2.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 2.3.1 Types

TCharacterOption = (coIgnoreInvalidSequence)

Table 2.2: Enumeration values for type TCharacterOption

| Value                   | Explanation                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| coIgnoreInvalidSequence | Ignore invalid unicodecode sequences |

TCharacterOption is used in the toUpper ([248](#)) and toLower ([247](#)) functions to control the behaviour of the function.

TCharacterOptions = Set of TCharacterOption

TCharacterOptions is the set of TCharacterOption, used in toUpper (248) and toLower (247) functions to control the behaviour of the function.

```
TUnicodeCategory = (ucUppercaseLetter, ucLowercaseLetter,
    ucTitlecaseLetter, ucModifierLetter, ucOtherLetter,
    ucNonSpacingMark, ucCombiningMark, ucEnclosingMark
    ,
        ucDecimalNumber, ucLetterNumber, ucOtherNumber
    ,
        ucConnectPunctuation, ucDashPunctuation,
ucOpenPunctuation, ucClosePunctuation,
ucInitialPunctuation, ucFinalPunctuation,
ucOtherPunctuation, ucMathSymbol, ucCurrencySymbol,
ucModifierSymbol, ucOtherSymbol, ucSpaceSeparator,
ucLineSeparator, ucParagraphSeparator, ucControl,
ucFormat, ucSurrogate, ucPrivateUse, ucUnassigned)
```

Table 2.3: Enumeration values for type TUnicodeCategory

| Value                | Explanation  |
|----------------------|--|
| ucClosePunctuation   | Punctuation, close (Pe)  |
| ucCombiningMark      | Mark, spacing combining (Mc)   |
| ucConnectPunctuation | Punctuation, connector (Pc)  |
| ucControl            | Other, control (Cc)  |
| ucCurrencySymbol     | Symbol, currency (Sc)  |
| ucDashPunctuation    | Punctuation, dash (Pd)   |
| ucDecimalNumber      | Number, decimal digit (Nd)   |
| ucEnclosingMark      | Mark, enclosing (Me)   |
| ucFinalPunctuation   | Punctuation, final quote (Pf, may behave like Ps or Pe depending on usage)   |
| ucFormat             | Other, format (Cf)   |
| ucInitialPunctuation | Punctuation, initial quote (Pi, may behave like Ps or Pe depending on usage) |
| ucLetterNumber       | Number, letter (Nl)  |
| ucLineSeparator      | Separator, line (Zl)   |
| ucLowercaseLetter    | Letter, lowercase (Ll)   |
| ucMathSymbol         | Symbol, math (Sm)  |
| ucModifierLetter     | Letter, modifier (Lm)  |
| ucModifierSymbol     | Symbol, modifier (Sk)  |
| ucNonSpacingMark     | Mark, nonspacing (Mn)  |
| ucOpenPunctuation    | Punctuation, open (Ps)   |
| ucOtherLetter        | Letter, other (Lo)   |
| ucOtherNumber        | Number, other (No)   |
| ucOtherPunctuation   | Punctuation, other (Po)  |
| ucOtherSymbol        | Symbol, other (So)   |
| ucParagraphSeparator | Separator, paragraph (Zp)  |
| ucPrivateUse         | Other, private use (Co)  |
| ucSpaceSeparator     | Separator, space (Zs)  |
| ucSurrogate          | Other, surrogate (Cs)  |
| ucTitlecaseLetter    | Letter, titlecase (Lt)   |
| ucUnassigned         | Other, not assigned (including noncharacters) (Cn)                           |
| ucUppercaseLetter    | Letter, uppercase (Lu)   |

This enumeration type contains the characterization of all possible Unicode characters. It is used in the `GetUnicodeCategory` (243) and `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (250) functions.

`TUnicodeCategorySet = Set of TUnicodeCategory`

`TUnicodeCategorySet` is the set of `TUnicodeCategory` (241). It is used internally in the `TCharacter` (248) class.

## 2.4 Procedures and functions

### 2.4.1 ConvertFromUtf32

**Synopsis:** alias for `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32`

**Declaration:** `function ConvertFromUtf32 (AChar: UCS4Char) : UnicodeString`

**Visibility:** default

Description: `ConvertFromUtf32` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (249).

See also: `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (249)

### 2.4.2 ConvertToUtf32

Synopsis: alias for `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32`

Declaration: 

```
function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
                        : UCS4Char; Overload
function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer;
                        out ACharLength: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload
function ConvertToUtf32(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;
                        const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : UCS4Char
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertToUtf32` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (249).

See also: `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (249)

### 2.4.3 GetNumericValue

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.GetNumericValue`

Declaration: 

```
function GetNumericValue(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Double; Overload
function GetNumericValue(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
                        : Double; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetNumericValue` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.GetNumericValue` (250).

See also: `TCharacter.GetNumericValue` (250)

### 2.4.4 GetUnicodeCategory

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory`

Declaration: 

```
function GetUnicodeCategory(AChar: UnicodeChar) : TUnicodeCategory
                        ; Overload
function GetUnicodeCategory(const AString: UnicodeString;
                        AIndex: Integer) : TUnicodeCategory
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetUnicodeCategory` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (250).

See also: `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (250)

### 2.4.5 IsControl

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsControl`

Declaration: `function IsControl(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsControl(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsControl` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsControl` ([250](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsControl` ([250](#))

### 2.4.6 IsDigit

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsDigit`

Declaration: `function IsDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsDigit(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDigit` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsDigit` ([251](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsDigit` ([251](#))

### 2.4.7 IsHighSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsHighSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsHighSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsHighSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate` ([252](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate` ([252](#))

### 2.4.8 IsLetter

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLetter`

Declaration: `function IsLetter(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLetter(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLetter` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLetter` ([253](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsLetter` ([253](#))

### 2.4.9 IsLetterOrDigit

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit`

Declaration: `function IsLetterOrDigit (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLetterOrDigit (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLetterOrDigit` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit` ([253](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit` ([253](#))

### 2.4.10 IsLower

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLower`

Declaration: `function IsLower (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLower (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLower` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLower` ([254](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsLower` ([254](#))

### 2.4.11 IsLowSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsLowSurrogate (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLowSurrogate (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLowSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate` ([252](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate` ([252](#))

### 2.4.12 IsNumber

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsNumber`

Declaration: `function IsNumber (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsNumber (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsNumber` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsNumber` ([254](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsNumber` ([254](#))

### 2.4.13 IsPunctuation

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsPunctuation`

Declaration: `function IsPunctuation(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsPunctuation(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPunctuation` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsPunctuation` ([255](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsPunctuation` ([255](#))

### 2.4.14 IsSeparator

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSeparator`

Declaration: `function IsSeparator(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSeparator(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSeparator` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSeparator` ([255](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSeparator` ([255](#))

### 2.4.15 IsSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSurrogate` ([251](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsSurrogate` ([251](#))

### 2.4.16 IsSurrogatePair

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair`

Declaration: `function IsSurrogatePair(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;`  
`const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function IsSurrogatePair(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSurrogatePair` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair` ([252](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair` ([252](#))

### 2.4.17 IsSymbol

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSymbol`

Declaration: `function IsSymbol(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSymbol(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSymbol` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSymbol` ([255](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSymbol` ([255](#))

### 2.4.18 IsUpper

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsUpper`

Declaration: `function IsUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsUpper(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsUpper` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsUpper` ([256](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsUpper` ([256](#))

### 2.4.19 IsWhiteSpace

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace`

Declaration: `function IsWhiteSpace(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsWhiteSpace(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWhiteSpace` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace` ([256](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace` ([256](#))

### 2.4.20 ToLower

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.ToLower`

Declaration: `function ToLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload`  
`function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToLower` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ToLower` ([257](#))

See also: `TCharacter.ToLower` ([257](#))

### 2.4.21 ToUpper

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.ToUpper`

Declaration: `function ToUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload`  
`function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToUpper` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ToUpper` ([257](#))

See also: `TCharacter.ToUpper` ([257](#))

## 2.5 TCharacter

### 2.5.1 Description

`TCharacter` is provided for Delphi compatibility. All it's class functions and methods are also available as regular functions.

### 2.5.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                          | Description   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">249</a> | <code>ConvertFromUtf32</code>   | Convert a UTF32 character to <code>UnicodeString</code>                 |
| <a href="#">249</a> | <code>ConvertToUtf32</code>     | Convert a UTF16 character to a UTF32 character                          |
| <a href="#">248</a> | <code>Create</code>             | Constructor (do not call)   |
| <a href="#">250</a> | <code>GetNumericValue</code>    | Get the numeric value of the character                                  |
| <a href="#">250</a> | <code>GetUnicodeCategory</code> | Get the Unicode category of a character                                 |
| <a href="#">250</a> | <code>IsControl</code>          | Check whether a Unicode character is a Unicode control character        |
| <a href="#">251</a> | <code>IsDigit</code>            | Check whether a Unicode character is a digit                            |
| <a href="#">252</a> | <code>IsHighSurrogate</code>    | Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the high range      |
| <a href="#">253</a> | <code>IsLetter</code>           | Check if a Unicode character is a letter.                               |
| <a href="#">253</a> | <code>IsLetterOrDigit</code>    | Check if a Unicode character is a letter or digit                       |
| <a href="#">254</a> | <code>IsLower</code>            | Check if a Unicode character is a lowercase letter                      |
| <a href="#">252</a> | <code>IsLowSurrogate</code>     | Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the low range       |
| <a href="#">254</a> | <code>IsNumber</code>           | Check if a Unicode character is a number                                |
| <a href="#">255</a> | <code>IsPunctuation</code>      | Check if a Unicode character is a punctuation character                 |
| <a href="#">255</a> | <code>IsSeparator</code>        | Check if a Unicode character is a separator character                   |
| <a href="#">251</a> | <code>IsSurrogate</code>        | Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate                        |
| <a href="#">252</a> | <code>IsSurrogatePair</code>    | Check if a pair of characters is a set of high/low surrogate characters |
| <a href="#">255</a> | <code>IsSymbol</code>           | Check if a Unicode character is a symbol character                      |
| <a href="#">256</a> | <code>IsUpper</code>            | Check whether a Unicode character is an uppercase letter                |
| <a href="#">256</a> | <code>IsWhiteSpace</code>       | Check whether a Unicode character is a whitespace character             |
| <a href="#">257</a> | <code>ToLower</code>            | Convert a character or string to lowercase                              |
| <a href="#">257</a> | <code>ToUpper</code>            | Convert a character or string to uppercase                              |

### 2.5.3 TCharacter.Create

Synopsis: Constructor (do not call)

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is provided for completeness and Delphi compatibility, but should not be called in FPC code, it will raise an exception.

Errors: Any attempt to call `Create` will result in an exception being raised.

## 2.5.4 TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32

Synopsis: Convert a UTF32 character to UnicodeString

Declaration: `class function ConvertFromUtf32(AChar: UCS4Char) : UnicodeString; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` converts a single UTF32 character `AChar` to a UTF16 string. This is the opposite of `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (249).

The result is a string, since multiple UTF16 characters can be needed to encode a single UTF32 character.

Errors: If `AChar` is not in the valid range of UTF32 characters, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240), `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (249)

## 2.5.5 TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32

Synopsis: Convert a UTF16 character to a UTF32 character

Declaration: `class function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`  
`class function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer; out ACharLength: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`  
`class function ConvertToUtf32(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar; const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` converts a UTF16-encoded Unicode character to a Unicode32 character. This is the opposite of `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (249). The function exists in several overloaded versions, to be able to present the Unicode character in one of 2 ways:

1. As a position `AIndex` (in `unicodechar` units) in a string `AString` to a Unicode32 character. The source is a string, since multiple UTF16 characters can be needed to encode a single UTF32 character. In this form, Optionally, the character length (1 or 2) can be returned in `ACharLength`.
2. As 2 UTF16 Unicode characters, representing the high and low surrogate pairs: `AHighSurrogate` and `ALowSurrogate`.

Errors: If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.



Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsControl` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucControl`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `GetUnicodeCategory` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSeparator` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.9 TCharacter.IsDigit

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a digit

**Declaration:** `class function IsDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsDigit(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsDigit` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucDecimalNumber`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSeparator` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.10 TCharacter.IsSurrogate

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate

**Declaration:** `class function IsSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString;`  
`AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSurrogate` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucSurrogate`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240), `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)



```
class function IsSurrogatePair(const AString: UnicodeString;
                              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSurrogatePair` returns `True` if `AHighSurrogate` and `ALowSurrogate` form a valid Unicode surrogate pair. (`AHighSurrogate` is a high surrogate and `ALowSurrogate` a matching low surrogate) The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a pair of UTF16 encoded characters starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240), `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.14 TCharacter.IsLetter

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a letter.

```
Declaration: class function IsLetter(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsLetter(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
: Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsLetter` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the letter categories (`ucUppercaseLetter`, `ucLowercaseLetter`, `ucTitlecaseLetter`, `ucModifierLetter`, `ucOtherLetter`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240), `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.15 TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a letter or digit

```
Declaration: class function IsLetterOrDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsLetterOrDigit(const AString: UnicodeString;
                              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsLetterOrDigit` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the letter categories (`ucUppercaseLetter`, `ucLowercaseLetter`, `ucTitlecaseLetter`, `ucModifierLetter`, `ucOtherLetter`, `ucDecimalNumber`, `ucLetterNumber`). The character can be specified as

a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.16 TCharacter.IsLower

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a lowercase letter

**Declaration:** `class function IsLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsLower(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsLower` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucLowercaseLetter`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.17 TCharacter.IsNumber

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a number

**Declaration:** `class function IsNumber(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsNumber(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNumber` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the number categories (`ucDecimalNumber`, `ucLetterNumber`, `ucOtherNumber`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.18 TCharacter.IsPunctuation

## Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a punctuation character

```
Declaration: class function IsPunctuation(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
      class function IsPunctuation(const AString: UnicodeString;
              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsPunctuation` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the punctuation categories (`ucConnectPunctuation`, `ucDashPunctuation`, `ucOpenPunctuation`, `ucClosePunctuation`, `ucInitialPunctuation`, `ucFinalPunctuation`, `ucOtherPunctuation`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (240) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(250\)](#), [IsDigit \(251\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(251\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(252\)](#), [IsLetter \(253\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(253\)](#), [IsLower \(254\)](#), [IsNumber \(254\)](#), [IsSymbol \(255\)](#), [IsUpper \(256\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(256\)](#)

### 2.5.19 TCharacter.IsSeparator

## Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a separator character

```
Declaration: class function IsSeparator(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsSeparator(const AString: UnicodeString;
AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSeparator` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the separator categories (`ucSpaceSeparator`, `ucLineSeparator`, `ucParagraphSeparator`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (240) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(250\)](#), [IsDigit \(251\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(251\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(252\)](#), [IsLetter \(253\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(253\)](#), [IsLower \(254\)](#), [IsNumber \(254\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(255\)](#), [IsSymbol \(255\)](#), [IsUpper \(256\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(256\)](#)

### 2.5.20 TCharacter.IsSymbol

### Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a symbol character

```
Declaration: class function IsSymbol(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
              class function IsSymbol(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
              : Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSymbol` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the symbol categories (`ucMathSymbol`, `ucCurrencySymbol`, `ucModifierSymbol`, `ucOtherSymbol`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSeparator` (255), `IsUpper` (256), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.21 TCharacter.IsUpper

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is an uppercase letter

**Declaration:** `class function IsUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsUpper(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsUpper` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucUppercaseLetter`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (250), `IsDigit` (251), `IsSurrogate` (251), `IsHighSurrogate` (252), `IsLowSurrogate` (252), `IsSurrogatePair` (252), `IsLetter` (253), `IsLetterOrDigit` (253), `IsLower` (254), `IsNumber` (254), `IsPunctuation` (255), `IsSeparator` (255), `IsSymbol` (255), `IsWhiteSpace` (256)

### 2.5.22 TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a whitespace character

**Declaration:** `class function IsWhiteSpace(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsWhiteSpace(const AString: UnicodeString;`  
`AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsUpper` returns `True` if a Unicode character has is a whitespace character. It checks the character properties. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (240) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(250\)](#), [IsDigit \(251\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(251\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(252\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(252\)](#), [IsLetter \(253\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(253\)](#), [IsLower \(254\)](#), [IsNumber \(254\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(255\)](#), [IsSeparator \(255\)](#), [IsSymbol \(255\)](#), [IsUpper \(256\)](#)

### 2.5.23 TCharacter.ToLower

**Synopsis:** Convert a character or string to lowercase

**Declaration:**

```
class function ToLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload
    ; Static
class function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
class function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString;
    const AOptions: TCharacterOptions) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLower` converts the Unicode character `AChar` or string `AString` to lowercase. Options determines the behaviour of the conversion: if `AOptions` contains `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` then no exception will be raised when the string or character contains an invalid Unicode sequence. The default behaviour is to raise an `EArgumentException (240)` exception when this happens.

**Errors:** If an invalid character is encountered, an `EArgumentException (240)` exception is raised, unless `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` is specified in the options.

See also: [TCharacter.ToUpper \(257\)](#), [TCharacter.IsLower \(254\)](#), [TCharacter.IsUpper \(256\)](#)

### 2.5.24 TCharacter.ToUpper

**Synopsis:** Convert a character or string to uppercase

**Declaration:**

```
class function ToUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload
    ; Static
class function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
class function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString;
    const AOptions: TCharacterOptions) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToUpper` converts the Unicode character `AChar` or string `AString` to uppercase. Options determines the behaviour of the conversion: if `AOptions` contains `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` then no exception will be raised when the string or character contains an invalid Unicode sequence. The default behaviour is to raise an `EArgumentException (240)` exception when this happens.

**Errors:** If an invalid character is encountered, an `EArgumentException (240)` exception is raised, unless `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` is specified in the options.

See also: [TCharacter.ToUpper \(257\)](#), [TCharacter.IsLower \(254\)](#), [TCharacter.IsUpper \(256\)](#)

## Chapter 3

# Reference for unit 'charset'

### 3.1 Used units

Table 3.1: Used units by unit 'charset'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 3.2 Overview

The charset unit can be used to load single-byte character set (code page) descriptions. It is used in the `fpwidingstring` ([258](#)) unit to add support for converting single-byte codepage strings to Unicode strings (and vice versa).

Data of a code page may be included using one of the ready-made units, or can be loaded (in a binary form) at runtime with the `loadbinaryunicodemapping` ([260](#)) function. The binary files have the `.bcm` extension and are produced by the `creumap` utility distributed with Free Pascal.

Pre-made units are available for the following codepages: `cp895` ([258](#)), `cp932` ([258](#)), `cp936` ([258](#)), `cp949` ([258](#)) and `cp950` ([258](#)).

### 3.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 3.3.1 Constants

```
BINARY_MAPPING_FILE_EXT = '.bcm'
```

`BINARY_MAPPING_FILE_EXT` contains the default extension of a file containing a binary-coded map.

#### 3.3.2 Types

```
preversecharmapping = ^treversecharmapping
```

Pointer to `treversecharmapping`

```
punicodecharmapping = ^tunicodecharmapping
```

Pointer to tunicodecharmapping

```
punicodemap = ^tunicodemap
```

Pointer to tunicodemap

```
tunicodechar = Word
```

tunicodechar is a type used to represent Unicode characters in this file, it should not be used for other Unicode routines.

```
tunicodecharmappingflag = (umf_noinfo, umf_leadbyte, umf_undefined,
    umf_unused)
```

Table 3.2: Enumeration values for type tunicodecharmappingflag

| Value         | Explanation                                  |
|---------------|--|
| umf_leadbyte  | Unicode character uses leading byte          |
| umf_noinfo    | No extra information about Unicode character |
| umf_undefined | Currently unused                             |
| umf_unused    | Unused position in code page                 |

tunicodecharmappingflag contains various Flags describing information about a Unicode character.

```
tunicodestring = ^tunicodechar
```

tunicodestring is a type used to represent Unicode strings in this file, it should not be used for other Unicode routines.

## 3.4 Procedures and functions

### 3.4.1 getascii

**Synopsis:** Convert Unicode character or string to single-byte character or string.

**Declaration:**

```
function getascii(c: tunicodechar; p: punicodemap) : string
function getascii(c: tunicodechar; p: punicodemap; ABuffer: PAnsiChar;
    ABufferLen: LongInt) : LongInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** getascii converts a Unicode character *c* to one or more single-byte characters according to the map in *p*. The result can be a string containing up to 2 characters, or the number of characters copied to the buffer *ABuffer* with length *ABufferLen*.

**Errors:** If the character cannot be translated, ASCII character 63 is returned (or copied to the buffer). In the case of the buffer variant of the function, -1 is then returned. If the buffer is not large enough, -1 is returned.

See also: [getunicode \(260\)](#)

### 3.4.2 getmap

Synopsis: Find a codepage map

Declaration: `function getmap(const s: string) : puniconemap`  
`function getmap(cp: Word) : puniconemap`

Visibility: default

Description: `getmap` looks in the registered codepage mappings and returns the mapping for the requested codepage. The codepage can be specified using a name `s` or a numerical identifier `cp`. The search is case sensitive.

Errors: if the requested map is not found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `registermapping` (262), `registerbinarymapping` (261), `mappingavailable` (261)

### 3.4.3 getunicode

Synopsis: Map single-byte character to Unicode character.

Declaration: `function getunicode(c: Char; p: puniconemap) : tuniconedchar`  
`function getunicode(AAnsiStr: PAnsiChar; AAnsiLen: LongInt;`  
`AMap: puniconemap; ADest: tuniconestring) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: The first form of `getunicode` will map a single character `c` to its Unicode equivalent for mapping `p`. If no equivalent can be found, 0 is returned.

The second form of `getunicode` will transform a string (specified using a pointer `AAnsiStr` to a buffer with length `AAnsiLen`) to a Unicode string using single byte codepage map `AMap`. It returns the number of Unicode characters. If `ADest` is `Nil` then just the number of characters is returned. If `ADest` is not `nil`, it must point to a buffer large enough to contain the Unicode string, and the converted string will be copied to it.

Errors: No checking on the validity of the buffers is done.

See also: `getascii` (259)

### 3.4.4 loadbinaryunicodemapping

Synopsis: Load binary single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file or memory

Declaration: `function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const directory: string;`  
`const cpname: string) : puniconemap`  
`; Overload`  
`function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const filename: string) : puniconemap`  
`; Overload`  
`function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const AData: Pointer;`  
`const ADataLength: Integer)`  
`: puniconemap; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `loadbinaryunicodemapping` loads a binary description of a single-byte Unicode mapping. The mapping can reside in a file, in which case the file to load can be specified using a filename `filename` or using a directory `directory` and codepage name `cpname`. In the latter case, a

suffix consisting of `_le` or `_be` depending on the endianness of the current platform will be appended, and the filename extension is `.bcm`. Note that the file names may be case sensitive.

The data can also be loaded from a memory block `AData` with size `ADataLength`.

It will produce an in-memory map of the file. It returns a pointer to the map, or `Nil` if something went wrong. The resulting mapping can be registered using [registermapping \(262\)](#).

Errors: On error, `Nil` is returned.

See also: [loadunicodemapping \(261\)](#), [registermapping \(262\)](#)

### 3.4.5 loadunicodemapping

Synopsis: Load textual single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file

Declaration: 

```
function loadunicodemapping(const cpname: string; const f: string;
                           cp: Word) : puniconemap
```

Visibility: default

Description: `loadunicodemapping` loads a text description of a single-byte Unicode mapping. It will analyse the textual description in file `f`, and produce an in-memory map of the file. It returns a pointer to the map, or `Nil` if something went wrong. The Unicode map name must be specified in `cpName`, and the numerical identifier in `cp`

The resulting mapping can be registered using [registermapping \(262\)](#).

Errors: On error, `Nil` is returned.

See also: [loadbinaryunicodemapping \(260\)](#), [registermapping \(262\)](#)

### 3.4.6 mappingavailable

Synopsis: Check if a mapping is available for a specified code page.

Declaration: 

```
function mappingavailable(const s: string) : Boolean
function mappingavailable(cp: Word) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `mappingavailable` returns `True` if a mapping for a specified code page (using name `s` or numerical identifier `cp`) is available, or `False` if it is not.

See also: [registermapping \(262\)](#), [registerbinarymapping \(261\)](#), [getmap \(260\)](#)

### 3.4.7 registerbinarymapping

Synopsis: Load and register binary single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file

Declaration: 

```
function registerbinarymapping(const directory: string;
                              const cpname: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `registerbinarymapping` calls [loadbinaryunicodemapping \(260\)](#) using `directory` and `cpname` and registers the resulting mapping, if any was successfully loaded, using [registermapping \(262\)](#). It returns `True` if the operation was successful.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: [loadbinaryunicodemapping \(260\)](#), [registermapping \(262\)](#)

### 3.4.8 registermapping

Synopsis: Register mapping

Declaration: `procedure registermapping(p: punicomemap)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterMapping` registers mapping `p` in the registry of single-byte codepages. No attempt is made to avoid double registrations. In case of doubles, the last registered mapping will be used first.

See also: `loadunicodemapping` (261), `loadbinaryunicodemapping` (260), `registerbinarymapping` (261)

## 3.5 treversecharmapping

```
treversecharmapping = packed record
  unicode : tunicodechar;
  char1
    : Byte;
  char2 : Byte;
end
```

`treversecharmapping` describes how a Unicode character can be created in terms of single-byte characters.

## 3.6 TSerializedMapHeader

```
TSerializedMapHeader = packed record
  cpName : string;
  cp : UInt16
  ;
  mapLength : UInt32;
  lastChar : Int32;
  reverseMapLength : UInt32
  ;
end
```

`TSerializedMapHeader` is a record describing the binary map data file. The contents of this record can be found at offset zero of a (.bcm) file containing a single-byte Unicode map.

## 3.7 tunicodecharmapping

```
tunicodecharmapping = packed record
  unicode : tunicodechar;
  flag
    : tunicodecharmappingflag;
  reserved : Byte;
end
```

`tunicodecharmapping` describes a Unicode character. An array of these mappings is built for each character in the single-byte character set,

### 3.8 tunicodemap

```
tunicodemap = record
  cpname : string;
  cp : Word;
  map : punicodecharmapping
;
  lastchar : LongInt;
  reversemap : preversecharmapping;
  reversemaplength
  : LongInt;
  next : tunicodemap;
  internalmap : Boolean;
end
```

`tunicodemap` describes a complete mapping between a single-byte code page and a Unicode character set. It contains both a forward and backward mapping.

## Chapter 4

# Reference for unit 'Classes'

### 4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'Classes'

| Name      | Page                 |
|-----------|----------------------|
| rtlconsts | ??                   |
| System    | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils  | <a href="#">1599</a> |
| Types     | <a href="#">1902</a> |
| TypeInfo  | <a href="#">1938</a> |

### 4.2 Overview

This documentation describes the FPC `classes` unit. The `Classes` unit contains basic classes for the Free Component Library (FCL):

- a `TList` ([406](#)) class for maintaining lists of pointers,
- `TStringList` ([460](#)) for lists of strings,
- `TCollection` ([356](#)) to manage collections of objects
- `TStream` ([445](#)) classes to support streaming.

Furthermore it introduces methods for object persistence, and classes that understand an owner-owned relationship, with automatic memory management.

### 4.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 4.3.1 Constants

`BITSHIFT` = 5

Used to calculate the size of a bits array

`dupAccept = Types.dupAccept`

Duplicate values can be added to the list.

`dupError = Types.dupError`

If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an `EStringListError` (303) exception is raised.

`dupIgnore = Types.dupIgnore`

Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.

`FilerSignature : Array[1..4] of Char = 'TPF0'`

Constant that is found at the start of a binary stream containing a streamed component.

`fmCreate = $FF00`

`TFileStream.Create` (387) creates a new file if needed.

`fmOpenRead = 0`

`TFileStream.Create` (387) opens a file with read-only access.

`fmOpenReadWrite = 2`

`TFileStream.Create` (387) opens a file with read-write access.

`fmOpenWrite = 1`

`TFileStream.Create` (387) opens a file with write-only access.

`MASK = 31`

Bitmask with all bits on.

`MaxBitFlags = $7FFFFFFE0`

Maximum number of bits in `TBits` collection.

`MaxBitRec = MaxBitFlags div SizeOf(cardinal) * 8`

Maximum number of bit records in `TBits`.

`MaxListSize = Maxint div 16`

This constant sets the maximum number of elements in a `TList` (406).

`scAlt = $8000`

Indicates ALT key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scCtrl = $4000
```

indicates CTRL key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scNone = 0
```

Indicates no special key is pressed in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scShift = $2000
```

Indicates Shift key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
SGUIDObserved = '{663C603C-3F3C-4CC5-823C-AC8079F979E5}'
```

Observed interface GUID as a string

```
SGUIDObserver = '{BC7376EA-199C-4C2A-8684-F4805F0691CA}'
```

Observer interface GUID as a string

```
soFromBeginning = 0
```

Seek (447) starts relative to the stream origin.

```
soFromCurrent = 1
```

Seek (447) starts relative to the current position in the stream.

```
soFromEnd = 2
```

Seek (447) starts relative to the stream end.

```
toEOF = Char(0)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when the end of the input stream was reached.

```
toFloat = Char(4)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when a floating point value was found in the input stream.

```
toInteger = Char(3)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when an integer was found in the input stream.

```
toString = Char(2)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when a string was found in the input stream.

```
toSymbol = Char(1)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when a symbol was found in the input stream.

```
toWString = Char(5)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (426) when a widestring was found in the input stream.

### 4.3.2 Types

`HMODULE = PtrInt`

FPC doesn't support modules yet, so this is a dummy type.

`HRSRC = TFPResourceHandle deprecated`

This type is provided for Delphi compatibility, it is used for resource streams.

`PPointerList = ^TPointerList`

Pointer to an array of pointers.

`PStringItem = ^TStringItem`

Pointer to a `TStringItem` (300) record.

`PStringItemList = ^TStringItemList`

Pointer to a `TStringItemList` (279).

`TActiveXRegType = (axrComponentOnly, axrIncludeDescendants)`

Table 4.2: Enumeration values for type `TActiveXRegType`

| Value                              | Explanation |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| <code>axrComponentOnly</code>      |             |
| <code>axrIncludeDescendants</code> |             |

This type is provided for compatibility only, and is currently not used in Free Pascal.

`TAlignment = (taLeftJustify, taRightJustify, taCenter)`

Table 4.3: Enumeration values for type `TAlignment`

| Value                       | Explanation                             |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>taCenter</code>       | Text is displayed centered.             |
| <code>taLeftJustify</code>  | Text is displayed aligned to the left   |
| <code>taRightJustify</code> | Text is displayed aligned to the right. |

The `TAlignment` type is used to specify the alignment of the text in controls that display a text.

```
TAncestorNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  const ComponentName: string;
  ComponentClass: TPersistentClass;
  var Component: TComponent) of object
```

This event occurs when an ancestor component cannot be found.

`TBasicActionClass = Class of TBasicAction`

`TBasicAction` (330) class reference.

`TBasicActionLinkClass = Class of TBasicActionLink`

`TBasicActionLink` (334) class reference.

`TBiDiMode = (bdLeftToRight, bdRightToLeft, bdRightToLeftNoAlign,  
bdRightToLeftReadingOnly)`

Table 4.4: Enumeration values for type `TBiDiMode`

| Value                                 | Explanation  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>bdLeftToRight</code>            | Texts read from left to right.                       |
| <code>bdRightToLeft</code>            | Texts read from right to left.                       |
| <code>bdRightToLeftNoAlign</code>     | Texts read from right to left, but not right-aligned |
| <code>bdRightToLeftReadingOnly</code> | Texts read from right to left                        |

`TBiDiMode` describes bi-directional support for displaying texts.

`TBitArray = Array[0..MaxBitRec-1] of Cardinal`

Array to store bits.

`TCollectionItemClass = Class of TCollectionItem`

`TCollectionItemClass` is used by the `TCollection.ItemClass` (362) property of `TCollection` (356) to identify the descendant class of `TCollectionItem` (364) which should be created and managed.

`TCollectionNotification = (cnAdded, cnExtracting, cnDeleting)`

Table 4.5: Enumeration values for type `TCollectionNotification`

| Value                     | Explanation                               |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>cnAdded</code>      | An item is added to the collection.       |
| <code>cnDeleting</code>   | An item is deleted from the collection.   |
| <code>cnExtracting</code> | An item is extracted from the collection. |

`TCollectionNotification` is used in the `TCollection` (356) class to send notifications about changes to the collection.

`TCollectionSortCompare = function(Item1: TCollectionItem;  
Item2: TCollectionItem) : Integer`

`TCollectionSortCompare` is the prototype for a callback used in the `TCollection.Sort` (361) method. The procedure should compare `Item1` and `Item2` and return an integer:

**Result < 0** if `Item1` comes before `Item2`

**Result = 0** if `Item1` is at the same level as `Item2`

**Result > 0** if `Item1` comes after `Item2`

`TComponentClass = Class of TComponent`

The `TComponentClass` type is used when constructing `TComponent` (366) descendant instances and when registering components.

`TComponentName = String`

Names of components are of type `TComponentName`. By specifying a different type, the Object inspector can handle this property differently than a standard string property.

```
TComponentState= Set of (csLoading,csReading,csWriting,csDestroying
,
                        csDesigning,csAncestor,csUpdating,csFixups
,
                        csFreeNotification,csInline,csDesignInstance
)
```

Table 4.6: Enumeration values for type

| Value                           | Explanation   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code>csAncestor</code>         | The component is being streamed as part of a frame (?)          |
| <code>csDesigning</code>        | The component is being designed in an IDE.                      |
| <code>csDesignInstance</code>   | ??  |
| <code>csDestroying</code>       | The component is being destroyed.                               |
| <code>csFixups</code>           | The component's references to other components are being fixed. |
| <code>csFreeNotification</code> | Indicates whether the component has freenotifications           |
| <code>csInline</code>           | Component is part of a frame (?).                               |
| <code>csLoading</code>          | The component is being loaded from the stream.                  |
| <code>csReading</code>          | Properties are being read from the stream.                      |
| <code>csUpdating</code>         | The component is being updated.                                 |
| <code>csWriting</code>          | Properties are being written to the stream.                     |

The following values are possible:

**csLoading** The component (and all child components) are being loaded from a stream. This means that a `TReader` (430) instance is reading properties from this and child components from a stream and is applying the values found in the stream to the properties.

**csReading** The properties of this component are being read from a stream. This means that a `TReader` (430) instance is reading properties from this component from a stream and is applying the values.

**csWriting** The properties of this component are being written to a stream. This means that a `TWriter` (511) instance is writing properties from this component to a stream.

**csDestroying** The component is being destroyed.

**csDesigning** The component is being designed in an IDE.

**csAncestor** The component has a design ancestor. This is used to record differences between a component and its design ancestor. For example a form `TForm2` inherited from a form `TForm1`. `TForm1` and all its components are copied to `TForm2`. `TForm2` and all its inherited components have `csAncestor` set. Only differences between `TForm1` and `TForm2` are stored in the stream of `TForm2`. The child components of a frame put onto a form have `csAncestor` too.

**csInline** The component is a nested top level component. For example a frame on a form. The children of the frame do not have `csInline`, unless they are other frames.

**csDesignInstance** The component is designed (`csDesigning`) and is a root component, meaning it has no owner (`Owner=nil`).

**csFixups** The component's references to other components are being fixed. While reading a component from stream, it can happen that the stream contains a component reference property with a name of a component that was not yet created and read from the stream. Such properties are saved, and the missing references are resolved when the complete stream was read. This resolving step is called fixing up references, and the `csFixups` flag is set during this step.

**csFreeNotification** This flag indicates that the component has free notifications registered with `TComponent.FreeNotification` (370)

```
TComponentStyle= Set of (csInheritable,csCheckPropAvail,csSubComponent
,
                        csTransient)
```

Table 4.7: Enumeration values for type

| Value                         | Explanation   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>csCheckPropAvail</code> | ??  |
| <code>csInheritable</code>    | The component can be on inherited forms.                |
| <code>csSubComponent</code>   | Subcomponent - streamed as part of the owning component |
| <code>csTransient</code>      | Transient component                                     |

Describes the style of the component.

```
TCreateComponentEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  ComponentClass: TComponentClass;
  var Component: TComponent) of object
```

Event handler type, occurs when a component instance must be created when a component is read from a stream.

```
TDataModuleClass = Class of TDataModule
```

`TDataModuleClass` defines the class pointer for `TDataModule` (380).

`TDuplicates = Types.TDuplicates`

Type to describe what to do with duplicate values in a `TStringlist` (460).

`TExceptionClass = Class of Exception`

`TExceptionClass` is the class pointer for the `Exception` (1788) class, defined in the `SysUtils` (1599) unit.

`TFilerFlag = (ffInherited, ffChildPos, ffInline)`

Table 4.8: Enumeration values for type `TFilerFlag`

| Value                    | Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>ffChildPos</code>  | The position of the child on it's parent is included. |
| <code>ffInherited</code> | Stored object is an inherited object.                 |
| <code>ffInline</code>    | Used for frames.                                      |

The `TFiler` class uses this enumeration type to decide whether the streamed object was streamed as part of an inherited form or not.

`TFilerFlags = Set of TFilerFlag`

Set of `TFilerFlag` (271)

```
TFindAncestorEvent = procedure(Writer: TWriter; Component: TComponent
;
                                const Name: string;
    var Ancestor: TComponent;
    var RootAncestor: TComponent) of object
```

Event that occurs w

```
TFindComponentClassEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
    const ClassName: string;
    var ComponentClass: TComponentClass)
of object
```

Event handler type, occurs when a component class pointer must be found when reading a component from a stream.

`TFindGlobalComponent = function(const Name: string) : TComponent`

`TFindGlobalComponent` is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name `Name`, or `Nil` if none is found.

The variable `FindGlobalComponent` (288) is a callback of type `TFindGlobalComponent`. It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the designer to redirect the link to a new component.

```
TFindMethodEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader; const MethodName: string
;
                                var Address: CodePointer;
var Error: Boolean) of object
```

If a [TReader \(430\)](#) instance needs to locate a method and it doesn't find it in the streamed form, then the [OnFindMethod \(441\)](#) event handler will be called, if one is installed. This event can be assigned in order to use different locating methods. If a method is found, then its address should be returned in `Address`. The `Error` should be set to `True` if the reader should raise an exception after the event was handled. If it is set to `False` no exception will be raised, even if no method was found. On entry, `Error` will be set to `True`.

```
TFPObservedOperation = (ooChange, ooFree, ooAddItem, ooDeleteItem, ooCustom
)
```

Table 4.9: Enumeration values for type `TFPObservedOperation`

| Value                     | Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>ooAddItem</code>    | An item is added to the observed object (generally a list).     |
| <code>ooChange</code>     | The observed object has changed.                                |
| <code>ooCustom</code>     | Custom event.   |
| <code>ooDeleteItem</code> | An item is deleted from the observed object (generally a list). |
| <code>ooFree</code>       | The observed object is being freed.                             |

`TFPObservedOperation` enumerates the possible operations that can be reported to an observer. Which of these operations is reported depends on the implementation of the observed object.

```
TGetChildProc = procedure(Child: TComponent) of object
```

Callback used when obtaining child components.

```
TGetStrProc = procedure(const S: string) of object
```

This event is used as a callback to retrieve string values. It is used, among other things, to pass along string properties in property editors.

```
THandle = System.THandle
```

This type is used as the handle for [THandleStream \(397\)](#) stream descendants

```
THelpContext = - MaxLongint..MaxLongint
```

Range type to specify help contexts.

```
THelpEvent = function(Command: Word; Data: LongInt;
var CallHelp: Boolean) : Boolean of object
```

This event is used for display of online help.

```
THelpType = (htKeyword, htContext)
```

Table 4.10: Enumeration values for type THelpType

| Value     | Explanation                 |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| htContext | Help type: Context ID help. |
| htKeyword | Help type: Keyword help     |

Enumeration type specifying the kind of help requested.

```
TIdentToInt = function(const Ident: string; var Int: LongInt) :
    Boolean
```

TIdentToInt is a callback used to look up identifiers (Ident) and return an integer value corresponding to this identifier (Int). The callback should return True if a value corresponding to integer Ident was found, False if not.

A callback of type TIdentToInt should be specified when an integer is registered using the RegisterIntegerConsts (296) call.

```
TInitComponentHandler = function(Instance: TComponent;
    RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean
```

TInitComponentHandler is a callback type. It is used in the InitInheritedComponent (291) call to initialize a component. Callbacks of this type are registered with the RegisterInitComponentHandler (296) call.

```
TIntToIdent = function(Int: LongInt; var Ident: string) : Boolean
```

TIntToIdent is a callback used to look up integers (Ident) and return an identifier (Ident) that can be used to represent this integer value in an IDE. The callback should return True if a value corresponding to integer Ident was found, False if not.

A callback of type TIntToIdent should be specified when an integer is registered using the RegisterIntegerConsts (296) call.

```
TLeftRight = taLeftJustify..taRightJustify
```

TLeftRight is a subrange type based on the TAlignment (267) enumerated type. It contains only the left and right alignment constants.

```
TListAssignOp = (laCopy, laAnd, laOr, laXor, laSrcUnique, laDestUnique
    )
```

Table 4.11: Enumeration values for type TListAssignOp

| Value        | Explanation  |
|--------------|--|
| laAnd        | Remove all elements not first second list  |
| laCopy       | Clear list and copy all strings from second list.                                    |
| laDestUnique | Keep all elements that exists only in list2  |
| laOr         | Add all elements from second (and optional third) list, eliminate duplicates         |
| laSrcUnique  | Just keep all elements that exist only in source list                                |
| laXor        | Remove elements in second lists, Add all elements from second list not in first list |

This type determines what operation `TList.Assign` (412) or `TFPList.assign` (393) performs.

```
TListCallback = Types.TListCallback
```

`TListCallback` is the method callback prototype for the function that is passed to the `TFPList.ForEachCall` (394) call. The `data` argument will be filled with all the pointers in the list (one per call) and the `arg` argument is the `Arg` argument passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TListNotification = (lnAdded,lnExtracted,lnDeleted)
```

Table 4.12: Enumeration values for type `TListNotification`

| Value                    | Explanation  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>lnAdded</code>     | List change notification: Element added to the list.       |
| <code>lnDeleted</code>   | List change notification: Element deleted from the list.   |
| <code>lnExtracted</code> | List change notification: Element extracted from the list. |

Kind of list notification event.

```
TListSortCompare = function(Item1: Pointer; Item2: Pointer) :
    Integer
```

Callback type for the list sort algorithm.

```
TListStaticCallback = Types.TListStaticCallback
```

`TListCallback` is the procedural callback prototype for the function that is passed to the `TFPList.ForEachCall` (394) call. The `data` argument will be filled with all the pointers in the list (one per call) and the `arg` argument is the `Arg` argument passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction = (mnvaValue,mnvaName,mnvaEmpty,
    mnvaError)
```

Table 4.13: Enumeration values for type `TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction`

| Value                  | Explanation |
|------------------------|-------------|
| <code>mnvaEmpty</code> |             |
| <code>mnvaError</code> |             |
| <code>mnvaName</code>  |             |
| <code>mnvaValue</code> |             |

```
TMissingNameValueSeparatorActions = Set of
    TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction
```

```
TNotifyCallBack = procedure(Sender: TObject; AData: Pointer)
```

TNotifyCallback is used to notify about thread termination when using static callbacks. When called, the Sender will contain the thread which is terminating, and AData is the AData parameter passed to TThread.ExecuteInThread (499).

TNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject) of object

Most event handlers are implemented as a property of type TNotifyEvent. When this is set to a certain method of a class, when the event occurs, the method will be called, and the class that generated the event will pass itself along as the Sender argument.

TObjectTextEncoding = (oteDFM,oteLFM)

Table 4.14: Enumeration values for type TObjectTextEncoding

| Value  | Explanation  |
|--------|--|
| oteDFM | Characters are in DFM (Delphi) format: widechar encoded. |
| oteLFM | Characters are in LFM format: UTF-8 encoded.             |

TObjectTextEncoding is an enumerated type which denotes the encoding of non ASCII characters in an object stream file. It is needed for correct encoding when reading string values in the text stream.

TOperation = (opInsert,opRemove)

Table 4.15: Enumeration values for type TOperation

| Value    | Explanation  |
|----------|--|
| opInsert | A new component is being inserted in the child component list. |
| opRemove | A component is being removed from the child component list.    |

Operation of which a component is notified.

TPersistentClass = Class of TPersistent

TPersistentClass is the class reference type for the TPersistent (426) class.

TPoint = Types.TPoint

This record describes a coordinate. It is used to handle the Top (366) and Left (366) properties of TComponent (366).

X represents the X-Coordinate of the point described by the record. Y represents the Y-Coordinate of the point described by the record.

TPointerList = Array[0..MaxListSize-1] of Pointer

Type for an Array of pointers.

```
TPropertyNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  var PropName: string;
  IsPath: Boolean;
                                var
  Handled: Boolean;
                                var Skip: Boolean
) of object
```

TPropertyNotFoundEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnPropertyNotFound (440) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Handled should be set to True if the handler redirected the unknown property successfully, and Skip should be set to True if the value should be skipped. IsPath determines whether the property refers to a sub-property.

```
TReadComponentsProc = procedure(Component: TComponent) of object
```

Callback type when reading a component from a stream

```
TReaderError = procedure(Reader: TReader; const Message: string;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

Event handler type, called when an error occurs during the streaming.

```
TReaderProc = procedure(Reader: TReader) of object
```

The TReaderProc reader procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a TPersistent (426) descendant to read user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The Reader argument is the writer object which can be used read properties from the stream.

```
TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  const Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  var Content: string) of
  object
```

TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnReadStringProperty (442) event handler. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Content is the string as it was read from the stream.

```
TRect = Types.TRect
```

TRect describes a rectangle in space with its upper-left (in (Top,Left>)) and lower-right (in (Bottom,Right)) corners.

```
TReferenceNameEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader; var Name: string
)
                                of object
```

Occurs when a named object needs to be looked up.

```
TSeekOrigin = (soBeginning, soCurrent, soEnd)
```

Table 4.16: Enumeration values for type TSeekOrigin

| Value       | Explanation   |
|-------------|---|
| soBeginning | Offset is interpreted relative to the start of the stream.            |
| soCurrent   | Offset is interpreted relative to the current position in the stream. |
| soEnd       | Offset is interpreted relative to the end of the stream.              |

Specifies the origin of the TStream.Seek (447) method.

```
TSetMethodPropertyEvent = procedure (Reader: TReader;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const TheMethodName: string;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

TSetMethodPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnSetMethodProperty (441) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read, and TheMethodName is the name of the method that the property should be set to. Handled should be set to True if the handler set the property successfully.

```
TSetNameEvent = procedure (Reader: TReader; Component: TComponent;
  var Name: string) of object
```

Occurs when the reader needs to set a component's name.

```
TShiftState = Set of TShiftStateEnum
```

This type is used when describing a shortcut key or when describing what special keys are pressed on a keyboard when a key event is generated.

The set contains the special keys that can be used in combination with a 'normal' key.

```
TShiftStateEnum = (ssShift, ssAlt, ssCtrl, ssLeft, ssRight, ssMiddle,
  ssDouble, ssMeta, ssSuper, ssHyper, ssAltGr, ssCaps
  , ssNum,
  ssScroll, ssTriple, ssQuad, ssExtral, ssExtra2
  )
```

Table 4.17: Enumeration values for type TShiftStateEnum

| Value    | Explanation                  |
|----------|------------------------------|
| ssAlt    | Alt key pressed              |
| ssAltGr  | Alt-GR key pressed.          |
| ssCaps   | Caps lock key pressed        |
| ssCtrl   | Ctrl key pressed             |
| ssDouble | Double mouse click.          |
| ssExtra1 | Extra key 1                  |
| ssExtra2 | Extra key 2                  |
| ssHyper  | Hyper key pressed.           |
| ssLeft   | Left mouse button pressed.   |
| ssMeta   | Meta key pressed.            |
| ssMiddle | Middle mouse button pressed. |
| ssNum    | Num lock key pressed         |
| ssQuad   | Quadruple mouse click        |
| ssRight  | Right mouse button pressed.  |
| ssScroll | Scroll lock key pressed      |
| ssShift  | Shift key pressed            |
| ssSuper  | Super key pressed.           |
| ssTriple | Triple mouse click           |

Keyboard/Mouse shift state enumerator

```
TShortCut = (Word) .. (Word)
```

Enumeration type to identify shortcut key combinations.

```
TSmallPoint = Types.TSmallPoint
```

Same as TPoint (275), only the X and Y ranges are limited to 2-byte integers instead of 4-byte integers.

```
TStreamOwnership = (soReference, soOwned)
```

Table 4.18: Enumeration values for type TStreamOwnership

| Value       | Explanation  |
|-------------|--|
| soOwned     | Stream is owned: it will be freed when the adapter is freed. |
| soReference | Stream is referenced only, it is not freed by the adapter    |

The ownership of a streamadapter determines what happens with the stream on which a TStreamAdapter (455) acts, when the adapter is freed.

```
TStreamProc = procedure(Stream: TStream) of object
```

Procedure type used in streaming.

```
TStringItemList = Array[0..MaxListSize] of TStringItem
```

This declaration is provided for Delphi compatibility, it is not used in Free Pascal.

```
TStringListSortCompare = function(List: TStringList; Index1: Integer
;
                                Index2: Integer) : Integer
```

Callback type used in stringlist compares.

```
TStringsClass = Class of TStrings
```

```
TStringsFilterMethod = function(const s: string) : Boolean of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethod = procedure(const CurrentValue: string) of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethodEx = procedure(const CurrentValue: string;
const index: Integer) of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethodExObj = procedure(const CurrentValue: string
;
                                const index: Integer;
Obj: TObject) of object
```

```
TStringsMapMethod = function(const s: string) : string of object
```

```
TStringsOption = (soStrictDelimiter, soWriteBOM, soTrailingLineBreak
,
soUseLocale, soPreserveBOM)
```

Table 4.19: Enumeration values for type TStringsOption

| Value               | Explanation  |
|---------------------|--|
| soPreserveBOM       | If this option is enabled, TStrings.WriteBOM (487) is set in TStrings.LoadFromStream (476) or TStrings.SaveToStream (485). |
| soStrictDelimiter   | See TStrings.StrictDelimiter (484).  |
| soTrailingLineBreak | See TStrings.TrailingLineBreak (484).  |
| soUseLocale         | See TStrings.UseLocale (486).  |
| soWriteBOM          | See TStrings.WriteBOM (487).   |

TStringsOption is the type used in the TStrings.Options (483) set property, and it lists various strings options. It has the following values:

**soStrictDelimiter** See TStrings.StrictDelimiter (484).

**soWriteBOM** See TStrings.WriteBOM (487).

**soTrailingLineBreak** See TStrings.TrailingLineBreak (484).

**soUseLocale** See TStrings.UseLocale (486).

**soPreserveBOM** If this option is enabled, TStrings.WriteBOM (487) is set in TStrings.LoadFromStream (476) or TStrings.LoadFromFile (476) according to BOM presence in the loaded file.

TStringsOptions = Set of TStringsOption

TStringsOptions is the set type for enumeration TStringsOption (279).

```
TStringsReduceMethod = function(const s1: string; const s2: string
)
: string of object
```

TStringsSortStyle = (sslNone, sslUser, sslAuto)

Table 4.20: Enumeration values for type TStringsSortStyle

| Value   | Explanation                                     |
|---------|---|
| sslAuto | The TStrings instance keeps the strings sorted. |
| sslNone | The strings are not sorted                      |
| sslUser | The strings are kept sorted by the user.        |

TStringsSortStyle is the type used in the TStringList.SortStyle (465) property, and describes how the strings are sorted when the TStringList.Sorted (463) property is True. It has the following values:

**sslNone** The strings are not sorted

**sslUser** The strings are kept sorted by the user.

**sslAuto** The TStrings instance keeps the strings sorted.

TStringsSortStyles = Set of TStringsSortStyle

TStringsSortStyles is the set type for enumeration TStringsSortStyle (280).

TSynchronizeProcVar = procedure

Synchronize callback type

TThreadExecuteCallBack = procedure(AData: Pointer)

TThreadExecuteCallBack is the signature of the static procedure to be used when executing something in a thread using TThread.ExecuteInThread (499) when no status reporting is required.

TThreadExecuteHandler = TThreadMethod

`TThreadExecuteHandler` is the signature of the method to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) when no status reporting is required.

```
TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack = procedure (AData: Pointer;
    ReportStatus: TThreadReportStatus
)
```

`TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack` is the signature of a procedure to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) when status reporting is required.

On entry in the method, `AData` is the `AData` parameter passed to `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499). `ReportStatus` is passed to the method, and the threaded procedure can call `ReportStatus` at various stages to report about the status of the method: The status will be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (495), so calls to `ReportStatus` will be blocked as long as the status was not reported.

```
TThreadExecuteStatusHandler = procedure
    (ReportStatus: TThreadReportStatus)
of object
```

`TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` is the signature of the method to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) when status reporting is required.

On entry in the method, `ReportStatus` is passed to the method, and the method can call `ReportStatus` at various stages to report about the status of the method: The status will be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (495), and calls `ReportStatus` will be blocked as long as the status was not reported.

```
TThreadMethod = procedure of object
```

Procedure variable used when synchronizing threads.

```
TThreadPriority = (tpIdle, tpLowest, tpLower, tpNormal, tpHigher, tpHighest
,
    tpTimeCritical)
```

Table 4.21: Enumeration values for type `TThreadPriority`

| Value                       | Explanation                                     |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>tpHigher</code>       | Thread runs at high priority                    |
| <code>tpHighest</code>      | Thread runs at highest possible priority.       |
| <code>tpIdle</code>         | Thread only runs when other processes are idle. |
| <code>tpLower</code>        | Thread runs at a lower priority.                |
| <code>tpLowest</code>       | Thread runs at the lowest priority.             |
| <code>tpNormal</code>       | Thread runs at normal process priority.         |
| <code>tpTimeCritical</code> | Thread runs at realtime priority.               |

Enumeration specifying the priority at which a thread runs.

```
TThreadReportStatus = procedure (const status: string) of object
```

`TThreadReportStatus` is the callback prototype for the `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) method. This callback is used to report thread status to the main thread: the `Status` string can be used to report the status of thread execution.

```
TThreadStatusNotifyCallBack = procedure(Sender: TThread;
    AData: Pointer;
    const status: string)
```

`TThreadStatusNotifyCallBack` is the signature of the callback to be provided when executing a static procedure in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) when status reporting is required.

This callback will be called in the main thread. When called, it has the thread whose status is reported in `Sender`, `AData` is the `AData` parameter passed to `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499). Finally, the status message in `ReportStatus` is passed to the callback.

Note that the thread reporting its status is blocked while the callback is being handled: The status is be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (495).

```
TThreadStatusNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TThread;
    const status: string) of object
```

`TThreadStatusNotifyEvent` is the signature of the method to be provided when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (499) when status reporting is required.

This event handler will be called in the main thread. When called, it has the thread whose status is reported in `Sender`, and the status message in `ReportStatus` is passed to the method.

Note that the thread reporting its status is blocked while the callback is being handled: The status is be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (495).

```
TTopBottom = taAlignTop..taAlignBottom
```

```
TValueType = (vaNull, vaList, vaInt8, vaInt16, vaInt32, vaExtended, vaString
    ,
    vaIdent, vaFalse, vaTrue, vaBinary, vaSet, vaLString, vaNil
    ,
    vaCollection, vaSingle, vaCurrency, vaDate, vaWString
    , vaInt64,
    vaUTF8String, vaUString, vaQWord)
```

Table 4.22: Enumeration values for type TValueType

| Value        | Explanation                              |
|--------------|--|
| vaBinary     | Binary data follows.                     |
| vaCollection | Collection follows                       |
| vaCurrency   | Currency value follows                   |
| vaDate       | Date value follows                       |
| vaExtended   | Extended value.                          |
| vaFalse      | Boolean False value.                     |
| vaIdent      | Identifier.                              |
| vaInt16      | Integer value, 16 bits long.             |
| vaInt32      | Integer value, 32 bits long.             |
| vaInt64      | Integer value, 64 bits long.             |
| vaInt8       | Integer value, 8 bits long.              |
| vaList       | Identifies the start of a list of values |
| vaLString    | Ansistring data follows.                 |
| vaNil        | Nil pointer.                             |
| vaNull       | Empty value. Ends a list.                |
| vaQWord      | QWord (64-bit word) value                |
| vaSet        | Set data follows.                        |
| vaSingle     | Single type follows.                     |
| vaString     | String value.                            |
| vaTrue       | Boolean True value.                      |
| vaUString    | UnicodeString value                      |
| vaUTF8String | UTF8 encoded Unicode string.             |
| vaWString    | Widestring value follows.                |

Enumerated type used to identify the kind of streamed property

```
TVerticalAlignment = (taAlignTop, taAlignBottom, taVerticalCenter)
```

Table 4.23: Enumeration values for type TVerticalAlignment

| Value            | Explanation |
|------------------|-------------|
| taAlignBottom    |             |
| taAlignTop       |             |
| taVerticalCenter |             |

```
TWriteMethodPropertyEvent = procedure(Writer: TWriter;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const MethodValue: TMethod;
  const DefMethodValue: TMethod;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

TWriteMethodPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty (518) event. Writer is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being written, and MethodValue is the value of the method that the property was set to. DefMethodCodeValue is set to the default

value of the property (Nil or the parent value). Handled should be set to True if the handler set the property successfully.

`TWriterProc = procedure(Writer: TWriter) of object`

The `TWriterProc` writer procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a `TPersistent` (426) descendant to write user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The `Writer` argument is the writer object which can be used write properties to the stream.

### 4.3.3 Variables

`AddDataModule : procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object`

`AddDataModule` can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when a new instance of a `TDataModule` (380) descendant is created.

`ApplicationHandleException : procedure(Sender: TObject) of object`

`ApplicationHandleException` can be set by an application object to handle any exceptions that may occur when a `TDataModule` (380) is created.

`ApplicationShowException : procedure(E: Exception) of object`

Unused.

`CreateVCLComObjectProc : procedure(Component: TComponent) = Nil`

`CreateVCLComObjectProc` is called by `TComponent` if it needs to create a `IVCLComObject` interface for itself (when the `ComObject` property is read). It passes itself as the `Component` parameter.

`GlobalNameSpace : IReadWriteSync`

An interface protecting the global namespace. Used when reading/writing to the global namespace list during streaming of forms.

`MainThreadID : TThreadID`

ID of main thread. Unused at this point.

`RegisterComponentsProc : procedure(const Page: string;  
ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

`RegisterComponentsProc` can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered. Application programmers should never have to set `RegisterComponentsProc`

`RegisterNoIconProc : procedure(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass  
)`

`RegisterNoIconProc` can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered, and which do not need an Icon in the component palette. Application programmers should never have to set `RegisterComponentsProc`

`RemoveDataModule : procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object`

`RemoveDataModule` can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when an instance of a `TDataModule` (380) descendant is freed.

`WakeMainThread : TNotifyEvent = Nil`

`WakeMainThread` is a handler, which, when set, is called by the `TThread.Synchronize` (495) routine to signal the main thread that a synchronization routine is waiting in the queue.

This handler is by default empty. An actual implementation depends on the main program logic (usually an event loop) and must be provided by the event loop logic: the event loop will normally call `CheckSynchronize` (286) at regular intervals. The `WakeMainThread` can make sure this happens as soon as possible.

While this handle should alert the main program thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization, the call is executed by the thread, and should therefore NOT synchronize the thread, but should somehow signal the main thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization. For example, by sending a message.

## 4.4 Procedures and functions

### 4.4.1 ActivateClassGroup

Synopsis: Activates a class group

Declaration: `function ActivateClassGroup(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `ActivateClassGroup` activates the group of classes to which `AClass` belongs. The function returns the class that was last used to activate the class group.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

Errors: If `AClass` does not belong to a class group, an exception is raised.

See also: `StartClassGroup` (298), `GroupDescendentsWith` (290), `ClassGroupOf` (287)

### 4.4.2 BeginGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented

Declaration: `procedure BeginGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented

### 4.4.3 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration: `procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PChar; HexValue: PChar;  
BinBufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

**Errors:** No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` (290)

#### 4.4.4 Bounds

**Synopsis:** Returns a `TRect` structure with the bounding rect of the given location and size.

**Declaration:** `function Bounds(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; AWidth: Integer; AHeight: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Bounds` returns a `TRect` (276) record with the given origin (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and dimensions (`AWidth`, `AHeight`) filled in. The bottom-right corner is calculated by adding `AWidth` to `ALeft` and `AHeight` to `ATop`. As a result, a rectangle with width/height set to 0 is exactly 1 pixel.

See also: `Rect` (294)

#### 4.4.5 CheckSynchronize

**Synopsis:** Check whether there are any synchronize calls in the synchronize queue.

**Declaration:** `function CheckSynchronize(timeout: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CheckSynchronize` should be called regularly by the main application thread to handle any `TThread.Synchronize` (495) calls that may be waiting for execution by the main thread. If any such calls are waiting for execution by the main thread, they are executed at once, in the order that they were scheduled.

The function returns `True` if any `Synchronize` method was executed.

`TimeOut` is the maximum amount of time (in milliseconds) that the `CheckSynchronize` routine will wait for synchronisation requests to appear in the queue.

Calling this routine more often will ensure that synchronize requests are handled faster.

This routine may not be called from any thread other than the main thread, as it will execute the waiting requests.

Threads may call the `WakeMainThread` (285) to signal the main thread that the synchronisation queue contains items, and thus speed up the execution of the synchronize calls.

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (495), `WakeMainThread` (285)

#### 4.4.6 ClassGroupOf

Synopsis: Returns the class group to which an instance or class belongs

Declaration: `function ClassGroupOf(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`  
`function ClassGroupOf(Instance: TPersistent) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClassGroupOf` returns the class group to which `AClass` or `Instance` belongs.

Errors: The result is `Nil` if no matching class group is found.

See also: `StartClassGroup` (298), `ActivateClassGroup` (285), `GroupDescendentsWith` (290)

#### 4.4.7 CollectionsEqual

Synopsis: Returns `True` if two collections are equal.

Declaration: `function CollectionsEqual(C1: TCollection; C2: TCollection) : Boolean`  
`function CollectionsEqual(C1: TCollection; C2: TCollection;`  
`Owner1: TComponent; Owner2: TComponent)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CollectionsEqual` is not yet implemented. It simply returns `False`

#### 4.4.8 EndGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure EndGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

#### 4.4.9 ExtractStrings

Synopsis: Split a string in different words.

Declaration: `function ExtractStrings(Separators: TSysCharSet;`  
`WhiteSpace: TSysCharSet; Content: PChar;`  
`Strings: TStrings; AddEmptyStrings: Boolean)`  
`: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractStrings` splits `Content` (a null-terminated string) into words, and adds the words to the `Strings` stringlist. The words are separated by `Separators` and any characters in `whitespace` are stripped from the strings. The space and CR/LF characters are always considered `whitespace`.

Errors: No length checking is performed on `Content`. If no null-termination character is present, an access violation may occur. Likewise, if `Strings` is not valid, an access violation may occur.

#### 4.4.10 FindClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function FindClass(const AClassName: string) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, an exception is raised.

The `GetClass` (289) function does not raise an exception when it does not find the class, but returns a `Nil` pointer instead.

See also: `RegisterClass` (295), `GetClass` (289)

#### 4.4.11 FindGlobalComponent

Synopsis: Callback used when a component must be found.

Declaration: `function FindGlobalComponent(const Name: string) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindGlobalComponent` is a callback of type `TFindGlobalComponent` (271). It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the user to redirect the link to a new component.

It is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name `Name`, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: `TFindGlobalComponent` (271)

#### 4.4.12 FindIdentToInt

Synopsis: Return the string to integer converter for an integer type

Declaration: `function FindIdentToInt(AIntegerType: Pointer) : TIdentToInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindIdentToInt` returns the handler that handles the conversion of a string representation to an integer that can be used in component streaming, when `IdentToInt` (290) is called.

Errors: `Nil` is returned if no handler is registered for the given type.

#### 4.4.13 FindIntToIdent

Synopsis: Return the integer to string converter for an integer type

Declaration: `function FindIntToIdent(AIntegerType: Pointer) : TIntToIdent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindIntToIdent` returns the handler that handles the conversion of an integer to a string representation that can be used in component streaming, when `IntToIdent` (291) is called.

Errors: `Nil` is returned if no handler is registered for the given type.

See also: `IntToIdent` (291), `TIntToIdent` (273), `FindIdentToInt` (288)

#### 4.4.14 FindNestedComponent

Synopsis: Finds the component with name path starting at the indicated root component.

Declaration: `function FindNestedComponent (Root: TComponent; APath: string;  
CStyle: Boolean) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNestedComponent` will descend through the list of owned components (starting at `Root`) and will return the component whose name path matches `NamePath`. As a path separator the characters `.` (dot), `-` (dash) and `>` (greater than) can be used

See also: `GlobalFixupReferences` ([290](#))

#### 4.4.15 GetClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function GetClass (const AClassName: string) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, `Nil` is returned.

The `FindClass` ([288](#)) function will raise an exception if it does not find the class.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([295](#)), `GetClass` ([289](#))

#### 4.4.16 GetFixupInstanceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component, whose reference contains `ReferenceRootName`

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupInstanceNames (Root: TComponent;  
const ReferenceRootName: string;  
Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupInstanceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of classes that contain unresolved references to the `Root` component in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` ([289](#)), `GlobalFixupReferences` ([290](#))

#### 4.4.17 GetFixupReferenceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component.

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupReferenceNames (Root: TComponent; Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupReferenceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of properties that must be resolved for the component `Root` in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupInstanceNames` ([289](#)), `GlobalFixupReferences` ([290](#))

#### 4.4.18 GlobalFixupReferences

Synopsis: Called to resolve unresolved references after forms are loaded.

Declaration: `procedure GlobalFixupReferences`

Visibility: default

Description: `GlobalFixupReferences` runs over the list of unresolved references and tries to resolve them. This routine should under normal circumstances not be called in an application programmer's code. It is called automatically by the streaming system after a component has been instantiated and its properties read from a stream. It will attempt to resolve references to other global components.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` (289), `GetFixupInstanceNames` (289)

#### 4.4.19 GroupDescendentsWith

Synopsis: Provided for Delphi compatibility

Declaration: `procedure GroupDescendentsWith(AClass: TPersistentClass;  
AClassGroup: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GroupDescendentsWith` exists for Delphi compatibility, it doesn't actually do anything in Free Pascal.

See also: `RegisterClasses` (295)

#### 4.4.20 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` (285)

#### 4.4.21 IdentToInt

Synopsis: Looks up an integer value in a integer-to-identifier map list.

Declaration: `function IdentToInt(const Ident: string; out Int: LongInt;  
const Map: Array of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IdentToInt` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Name` field matches `Ident` and returns the corresponding integer value in `Int`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: `TIdentToInt` (273), `TIntToIdent` (273), `IntToIdent` (291), `TIdentMapEntry` (299)

#### 4.4.22 InitComponentRes

Synopsis: Provided for Delphi compatibility only

Declaration: `function InitComponentRes(const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is provided for Delphi compatibility. It always returns `false`.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(293\)](#)

#### 4.4.23 InitInheritedComponent

Synopsis: Initializes a component descending from `RootAncestor`

Declaration: `function InitInheritedComponent(Instance: TComponent;  
RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitInheritedComponent` should be called from a constructor to read properties of the component `Instance` from the streaming system. The `RootAncestor` class is the root class from which `Instance` is a descendant. This must be one of `TDatamodule`, `TCustomForm` or `TFrame`. The function returns `True` if the properties were successfully read from a stream or `False` if some error occurred.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(293\)](#), [ReadComponentResEx \(294\)](#), [ReadComponentResFile \(294\)](#)

#### 4.4.24 IntToIdent

Synopsis: Looks up an identifier for an integer value in a identifier-to-integer map list.

Declaration: `function IntToIdent(Int: LongInt; var Ident: string;  
const Map: Array of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToIdent` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Value` field matches `Int` and returns the corresponding identifier in `Ident`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: [TIdentToInt \(273\)](#), [TIntToIdent \(273\)](#), [IdentToInt \(290\)](#), [TIdentMapEntry \(299\)](#)

#### 4.4.25 InvalidPoint

Synopsis: Check whether a point is invalid.

Declaration: `function InvalidPoint(X: Integer; Y: Integer) : Boolean  
function InvalidPoint(const At: TPoint) : Boolean  
function InvalidPoint(const At: TSmallPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InvalidPoint` returns `True` if the `X` and `Y` coordinates (of the `TPoint` or `TSmallPoint` records, if one of these versions is used) are `-1`.

See also: [TPoint \(275\)](#), [TSmallPoint \(278\)](#), [PointsEqual \(293\)](#)

#### 4.4.26 LineStart

Synopsis: Finds the start of a line in `Buffer` before `BufPos`.

Declaration: `function LineStart(Buffer: PChar; BufPos: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineStart` reversely scans `Buffer` starting at `BufPos` for a linefeed character. It returns a pointer at the linefeed character.

#### 4.4.27 NotifyGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure NotifyGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

#### 4.4.28 ObjectBinaryToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a binary to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectBinaryToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream;  
Encoding: TObjectTextEncoding)  
procedure ObjectBinaryToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectBinaryToText` reads an object stream in binary format from `Input` and writes the object stream in text format to `Output`. No components are instantiated during the process, this is a pure conversion routine.

See also: `ObjectTextToBinary` ([292](#))

#### 4.4.29 ObjectResourceToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a (windows) resource to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectResourceToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectResourceToText` reads the resource header from the `Input` stream and then passes the streams to `ObjectBinaryToText` ([292](#))

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` ([292](#)), `ObjectTextToResource` ([293](#))

#### 4.4.30 ObjectTextToBinary

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectTextToBinary(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

#### 4.4.31 ObjectTextToResource

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a text to a (windows) resource format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectTextToResource (Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectTextToResource` reads an object stream in text format from `Input` and writes a resource stream to `Output`.

Note that for the current implementation of this method in Free Pascal, the output stream should support positioning. (e.g. it should not be a pipe)

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` (292), `ObjectResourceToText` (292)

#### 4.4.32 Point

Synopsis: Returns a `TPoint` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function Point (AX: Integer; AY: Integer) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Point` returns a `TPoint` (275) record with the given coordinates `AX` and `AY` filled in.

See also: `TPoint` (275), `SmallPoint` (298), `Rect` (294), `Bounds` (286)

#### 4.4.33 PointsEqual

Synopsis: Check whether two `TPoint` variables are equal.

Declaration: `function PointsEqual (const P1: TPoint; const P2: TPoint) : Boolean`  
`function PointsEqual (const P1: TSmallPoint; const P2: TSmallPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PointsEqual` compares the `P1` and `P2` points (of type `TPoint` (275) or `TSmallPoint` (278)) and returns `True` if the X and Y coordinates of the points are equal, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `TPoint` (275), `TSmallPoint` (278), `InvalidPoint` (291)

#### 4.4.34 ReadComponentRes

Synopsis: Read component properties from a resource in the current module

Declaration: `function ReadComponentRes (const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)`  
`: TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadComponentRes` will read the component's properties from the resource `ResName` in the current module (always program module). It returns `Nil` if the resource was not found. It returns `Instance` if the resource was found and successfully applied to the component.

Errors: The function may raise an exception if the stream contains wrong data.

See also: `ReadComponentResEx` (294)

#### 4.4.35 ReadComponentResEx

Synopsis: Read component properties from a resource in the specified module

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResEx(HInstance: THandle; const ResName: string)  
: TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadComponentRes` will locate the resource `ResName` in instance `HInstance` (the current program, normally). It returns `Nil` if the resource was not found. It returns an instantiated component with all properties found in the stream, applied. This requires that the component is registered using `registerclass`.

Errors: The function may raise an exception if the stream contains wrong data.

See also: `ReadComponentRes` ([293](#))

#### 4.4.36 ReadComponentResFile

Synopsis: Read component properties from a specified resource file

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResFile(const FileName: string;  
Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadComponentResFile` starts reading properties for `Instance` from the file `FileName`. It creates a filestream from `FileName` and then calls the `TStream.ReadComponentRes` ([449](#)) method to read the state of the component from the stream.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponentRes` ([449](#)), `WriteComponentResFile` ([299](#))

#### 4.4.37 Rect

Synopsis: Returns a `TRect` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function Rect(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; ARight: Integer;  
ABottom: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rect` returns a `TRect` ([276](#)) record with the given top-left (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and bottom-right (`ABottom`, `ARight`) corners filled in.

No checking is done to see whether the coordinates are valid.

See also: `TRect` ([276](#)), `Point` ([293](#)), `SmallPoint` ([298](#)), `Bounds` ([286](#))

#### 4.4.38 RedirectFixupReferences

Synopsis: Redirects references under the `root` object from `OldRootName` to `NewRootName`

Declaration: `procedure RedirectFixupReferences(Root: TComponent;  
const OldRootName: string;  
const NewRootName: string)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RedirectFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and replaces references to a root object named `OldRootName` with references to root object `NewRootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RedirectFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support redirection of broken component links.

See also: `RemoveFixupReferences` ([297](#))

#### 4.4.39 RegisterClass

**Synopsis:** Registers a class with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClass (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClass` registers the class `AClass` in the streaming system. After the class has been registered, it can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClasses` ([295](#)), `RegisterClassAlias` ([295](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([295](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([298](#))

#### 4.4.40 RegisterClassAlias

**Synopsis:** Registers a class alias with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClassAlias (AClass: TPersistentClass;  
const Alias: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClassAlias` registers a class alias in the streaming system. If a reference to a class `Alias` is encountered in a stream, then an instance of the class `AClass` will be created instead by the streaming code.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([295](#)), `RegisterClasses` ([295](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([295](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([298](#))

#### 4.4.41 RegisterClasses

**Synopsis:** Registers multiple classes with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClasses (AClasses: Array of TPersistentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClasses` registers the specified classes `AClass` in the streaming system. After the classes have been registered, they can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([295](#)), `RegisterClassAlias` ([295](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([295](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([298](#))

#### 4.4.42 RegisterComponents

**Synopsis:** Registers components for the component palette.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterComponents (const Page: string;  
ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterComponents` registers the component on the appropriate component page. The component pages can be used by an IDE to display the known components so an application programmer may pick and use the components in his programs.

`RegisterComponents` inserts the component class in the correct component page. If the `RegisterComponentsProc` procedure is set, this is called as well. Note that this behaviour is different from Delphi's behaviour where an exception will be raised if the procedural variable is not set.

See also: `RegisterClass` (295), `RegisterNoIcon` (297)

#### 4.4.43 RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc

**Synopsis:** Register a component searching handler

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc`  
`(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` registers a global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. When `FindGlobalComponent` (288) is called, then this callback will be used to search for the component.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` (288), `UnRegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` (299)

#### 4.4.44 RegisterInitComponentHandler

**Synopsis:** Register a component initialization handler

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterInitComponentHandler(ComponentClass: TComponentClass;`  
`Handler: TInitComponentHandler)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterInitComponentHandler` registers a component initialization handler `Handler` for the component `ComponentClass`. This handler will be used to initialize descendants of `ComponentClass` in the `InitInheritedComponent` (291) call.

See also: `InitInheritedComponent` (291), `TInitComponentHandler` (273)

#### 4.4.45 RegisterIntegerConsts

**Synopsis:** Registers some integer-to-identifier mappings.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterIntegerConsts(IntegerType: Pointer;`  
`IdentToIntFn: TIdentToInt;`  
`IntToIdentFn: TIntToIdent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterIntegerConsts` registers a pair of callbacks to be used when an integer of type `IntegerType` must be mapped to an identifier (using `IntToIdentFn`) or when an identifier must be mapped to an integer (using `IdentToIntFn`).

Component programmers can use `RegisterIntegerConsts` to associate a series of identifier strings with integer values for a property. A necessary condition is that the property should have a

separate type declared using the `type integer` syntax. If a type of integer is defined in this way, an IDE can show symbolic names for the values of these properties.

The `IntegerType` should be a pointer to the type information of the integer type. The `IntToIdentFn` and `IdentToIntFn` are two callbacks that will be used when converting between the identifier and integer value and vice versa. The functions `IdentToInt` (290) and `IntToIdent` (291) can be used to implement these callback functions.

See also: `TIdentToInt` (273), `TIntToIdent` (273), `IdentToInt` (290), `IntToIdent` (291)

#### 4.4.46 RegisterNoIcon

Synopsis: Registers components that have no icon on the component palette.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterNoIcon(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterNoIcon` performs the same function as `RegisterComponents` (295) except that it calls `RegisterNoIconProc` (284) instead of `RegisterComponentsProc` (284)

See also: `RegisterNoIconProc` (284), `RegisterComponents` (295)

#### 4.4.47 RegisterNonActiveX

Synopsis: Register non-activex component.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterNonActiveX  
(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass;  
AxRegType: TActiveXRegType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented in Free Pascal

#### 4.4.48 RemoveFixupReferences

Synopsis: Removes references to rootname from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixupReferences(Root: TComponent;  
const RootName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and removes references to a root object pointing at `Root` or a root component named `RootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RemoveFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support removal of broken component links.

See also: `RedirectFixupReferences` (294)

#### 4.4.49 RemoveFixups

Synopsis: Removes Instance from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixups (Instance: TPersistent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixups` removes all entries for component Instance from the list of unresolved references.

See also: [RedirectFixupReferences \(294\)](#), [RemoveFixupReferences \(297\)](#)

#### 4.4.50 SmallPoint

Synopsis: Returns a `TSmallPoint` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function SmallPoint (AX: SmallInt; AY: SmallInt) : TSmallPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SmallPoint` returns a `TSmallPoint` (278) record with the given coordinates AX and AY filled in.

See also: [TSmallPoint \(278\)](#), [Point \(293\)](#), [Rect \(294\)](#), [Bounds \(286\)](#)

#### 4.4.51 StartClassGroup

Synopsis: Start new class group.

Declaration: `procedure StartClassGroup (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartClassGroup` starts a new class group and adds AClass to it.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

See also: [GroupDescendentsWith \(290\)](#), [ActivateClassGroup \(285\)](#), [ClassGroupOf \(287\)](#)

#### 4.4.52 UnRegisterClass

Synopsis: Unregisters a class from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClass (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterClass` removes the class AClass from the class definitions in the streaming system.

See also: [UnRegisterClasses \(298\)](#), [UnRegisterModuleClasses \(299\)](#), [RegisterClass \(295\)](#)

#### 4.4.53 UnRegisterClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters multiple classes from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClasses (AClasses: Array of TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterClasses` removes the classes in AClasses from the class definitions in the streaming system.

#### 4.4.54 UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc

Synopsis: Remove a previously registered component searching handler.

Declaration: `procedure UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc`  
`(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` unregisters the previously registered global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. After this call, when `FindGlobalComponent` (288) is called, then this callback will be no longer be used to search for the component.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` (288), `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` (296)

#### 4.4.55 UnRegisterModuleClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters classes registered by module.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterModuleClasses (Module: HMODULE)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterModuleClasses` unregisters all classes which reside in the module `Module`. For each registered class, the definition pointer is checked to see whether it resides in the module, and if it does, the definition is removed.

See also: `UnRegisterClass` (298), `UnRegisterClasses` (298), `RegisterClasses` (295)

#### 4.4.56 WriteComponentResFile

Synopsis: Write component properties to a specified resource file

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentResFile (const FileName: string;`  
`Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteComponentResFile` starts writing properties of `Instance` to the file `FileName`. It creates a filestream from `FileName` and then calls `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450) method to write the state of the component to the stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450), `ReadComponentResFile` (294)

### 4.5 TIdentMapEntry

```
TIdentMapEntry = record
  Value : Integer;
  Name  : string;
end
```

`TIdentMapEntry` is used internally by the `IdentToInt` (290) and `IntToIdent` (291) calls to store the mapping between the identifiers and the integers they represent.

## 4.6 TStringItem

```
TStringItem = record
  FString : string;
  FObject : TObject;
end
```

The `TStringItem` is used to store the string and object items in a `TStringList` (460) string list instance. It should never be used directly.

## 4.7 EBitsError

### 4.7.1 Description

When an index of a bit in a `TBits` (349) is out of the valid range (0 to `Count-1`) then a `EBitsError` exception is raised.

## 4.8 EClassNotFound

### 4.8.1 Description

When the streaming system needs to create a component, it looks for the class pointer (VMT) in the list of registered classes by its name. If this name is not found, then an `EClassNotFound` is raised.

See also: `EFileError` (301)

## 4.9 EComponentError

### 4.9.1 Description

When an error occurs during the registration of a component, or when naming a component, then a `EComponentError` is raised. Possible causes are:

1. An name with an illegal character was assigned to a component.
2. A component with the same name and owner already exists.
3. The component registration system isn't set up properly.

See also: `TComponent` (366), `TComponent.Name` (376)

## 4.10 EFCREATEError

### 4.10.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during creation of a new file in the `Filestream Constructor` (387), a `EFCREATEError` is raised.

See also: `EStreamError` (303), `EOpenError` (301)

## 4.11 EFileError

### 4.11.1 Description

This class serves as an ancestor class for exceptions that are raised when an error occurs during component streaming. A `EFileError` exception is raised when a class is registered twice.

See also: `EStreamError` (303), `EReadError` (302)

## 4.12 EOpenError

### 4.12.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during the opening of a file in the `Filestream Constructor` (387), a `EOpenError` is raised.

See also: `EStreamError` (303), `EFCREATEError` (300)

## 4.13 EInvalidImage

### 4.13.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 4.14 EInvalidOperation

### 4.14.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 4.15 EListError

### 4.15.1 Description

If an error occurs in one of the `TList` (406) or `TStrings` (465) methods, then a `EListError` exception is raised. This can occur in one of the following cases:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. An attempt was made to reduce the capacity of the list below the current element count.
4. An attempt was made to set the list count to a negative value.
5. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
6. An attempt was made to move an item to a position outside the list's bounds.

See also: `TList` (406), `TStrings` (465)

## 4.16 EMethodNotFound

### 4.16.1 Description

This exception is no longer used in the streaming system. This error is replaced by a `EReadError` (302).

See also: `EFileError` (301), `EReadError` (302)

## 4.17 EObserver

### 4.17.1 Description

`EObserver` is an error that is raised when an object is registered as an observer, and it does not implement the `IFPObserver` (306) interface.

See also: `IFPObserver` (306), `IFPObserver.FPOAttachObserver` (305)

## 4.18 EOutOfResources

### 4.18.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 4.19 EParserError

### 4.19.1 Description

When an error occurs during the parsing of a stream, an `EParserError` is raised. Usually this indicates that an invalid token was found on the input stream, or the token read from the stream wasn't the expected token.

See also: `TParser` (420)

## 4.20 EReadError

### 4.20.1 Description

If an error occurs when reading from a stream, a `EReadError` exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. Not enough data is available when reading from a stream
2. The stream containing a component's data contains invalid data. this will occur only when reading a component from a stream.

See also: `EFileError` (301), `EWriteError` (304)

## 4.21 EResNotFound

### 4.21.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 4.22 EStreamError

### 4.22.1 Description

An `EStreamError` is raised when an error occurs during reading from or writing to a stream: Possible causes are

1. Not enough data is available in the stream.
2. Trying to seek beyond the beginning or end of the stream.
3. Trying to set the capacity of a memory stream and no memory is available.
4. Trying to write to a read-only stream, such as a resource stream.
5. Trying to read from a write-only stream.

See also: `EFCREATEERROR` ([300](#))

## 4.23 EStringListError

### 4.23.1 Description

When an error occurs in one of the methods of `TStrings` ([465](#)) then an `EStringListError` is raised. This can have one of the following causes:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
4. An attempt was made to add a duplicate entry to a `TStringList` ([460](#)) when `TStringList.Duplicates` ([463](#)) is `False`.

See also: `TStrings` ([465](#)), `TStringList` ([460](#))

## 4.24 EThread

### 4.24.1 Description

Thread error exception.

## 4.25 EThreadDestroyCalled

### 4.25.1 Description

Exception raised when a thread is destroyed illegally.

## 4.26 EThreadExternalException

### 4.26.1 Description

`EThreadExternalException` is raised by for example `TThread.CheckTerminated` (496) and `TThread.SetReturnValue` (496) when the thread was not created by the Free Pascal program, but by an external code base (for example a DLL, or the calling application in a DLL).

See also: `TThread.CheckTerminated` (496), `TThread.SetReturnValue` (496)

## 4.27 EWriteError

### 4.27.1 Description

If an error occurs when writing to a stream, a `EWriteError` exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. The stream doesn't allow writing.
2. An error occurred when writing a property to a stream.

See also: `EFileError` (301), `EReadError` (302)

## 4.28 IDesignerNotify

### 4.28.1 Description

`IDesignerNotify` is an interface that can be used to communicate changes to a designer mechanism. It offers functionality for detecting changes, and notifications when the component is destroyed.

### 4.28.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                    | Description                            |
|---------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">304</a> | <code>Modified</code>     | Notify that the component is modified. |
| <a href="#">304</a> | <code>Notification</code> | Notification of owner changes          |

### 4.28.3 IDesignerNotify.Modified

Synopsis: Notify that the component is modified.

Declaration: `procedure Modified`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Modified` can be used to notify a designer of changes, indicating that components should be streamed.

### 4.28.4 IDesignerNotify.Notification

Synopsis: Notification of owner changes

**Declaration:** `procedure Notification (AnObject: TPersistent; Operation: TOperation)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Notification` is the interface counterpart of `TComponent.Notification` (368) which is used to communicate adds to the components.

See also: `TComponent.Notification` (368)

## 4.29 IFPObserved

### 4.29.1 Description

`IFPObserved` is an interface which can be implemented in objects that must be observable. Objects that wish to observe the object can register themselves with the `FPOAttachObserver` (264) call, and must be detached using the `FPODetachObserver` (264) call.

This interface is not reference counted, so care must be taken that the `ooFree` message is sent with `FPONotifyObservers` (264) when the object is freed.

See also: `FPONotifyObservers` (264)

### 4.29.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                          | Description                                    |
|------|---------------------------------|--|
| 305  | <code>FPOAttachObserver</code>  | Attach a new observer to the object            |
| 306  | <code>FPODetachObserver</code>  | Remove an observer from the list of observers. |
| 306  | <code>FPONotifyObservers</code> | Notify all observers                           |

### 4.29.3 IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver

**Synopsis:** Attach a new observer to the object

**Declaration:** `procedure FPOAttachObserver (AObserver: TObject)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FPOAttachObserver` must be called with an object instance `AObserver` that implements the `IFPObserver` (306) interface. The `FPOObservedChanged` (307) method of the interface will be called whenever `FPONotifyObservers` (264) is used to notify observers of a change. Objects implementing this interface should check that `AObserver` actually implements the `IFPObserver` (306) interface.

Do not make assumptions on how the interface behaves if `FPOAttachObserver` is called more than once with the same interface. It may add the object to the list of observers unconditionally (in which case it will be notified twice) or it may check that it is not yet in the list.

**Errors:** If `AObserver` does not implement the `IFPObserver` (306) interface, an `EObserver` (302) exception must be raised. No other errors should be raised, other than a possible out of memory error.

See also: `IFPObserver` (306), `FPOObservedChanged` (307), `FPONotifyObservers` (264)

#### 4.29.4 IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver

Synopsis: Remove an observer from the list of observers.

Declaration: `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPODetachObserver` removes the `AObserver` object from the list of observers. If it was not in the list, then this is silently accepted. Once removed, it will no longer receive notifications when `FPOObservedChanged` (307) is called.

If the object was added more than once using `FPOAttachObserver` (264), then it depends on the implementor of the interface whether or `FPODetachObserver` must be called an equal number of times.

See also: `IFPObserver` (306), `FPOObservedChanged` (307), `FPONotifyObservers` (264), `FPOAttachObserver` (264)

#### 4.29.5 IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers

Synopsis: Notify all observers

Declaration: `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;  
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPONotifyObservers` notifies all observers of the object that a change has occurred. It calls `FPOObservedChanged` (307) on the `IFPObserver` (306) interface of all attached objects, and passes on `ASender` (normally this is `Self`), `AOperation` and `Data`. What `Data` is, depends on the implementor of the interface.

There is no guaranteed order in which the change notifications are delivered to the observers. This is an implementation-specific detail, which should not be relied upon in any way.

See also: `IFPObserver` (306), `FPOObservedChanged` (307), `FPODetachObserver` (264), `FPOAttachObserver` (264)

### 4.30 IFPObserver

#### 4.30.1 Description

`IFPObserver` is the interface an object must implement if it wishes to receive change notifications from another object. The presence of this interface will be checked when the object registers itself using `IFPObserver.FPOAttachObserver` (306). The change notifications arrive because the `FPOObservedChanged` (264) method is called by the observed object.

See also: `IFPObserved` (305), `FPOAttachObserver` (305)

#### 4.30.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                          | Description                          |
|------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 307  | <code>FPOObservedChanged</code> | Entry point for change notifications |

### 4.30.3 IFPObserver.FPObserverChanged

Synopsis: Entry point for change notifications

Declaration: `procedure FPObserverChanged (ASender: TObject;  
Operation: TFPObserverOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPObserverChanged` is the method that is called by an observed object (`IFPObserver` (305)) when it calls `FPNotifyObservers` (306). The `Sender` is the object under observation, the `Operation` and `Data` are the parameters used in the call to `FPNotifyObservers`.

See also: `IFPObserver` (305), `FPNotifyObservers` (306)

## 4.31 IInterfaceComponentReference

### 4.31.1 Description

`IInterfaceComponentReference` is an interface to return the component that implements a given interface. It is implemented by `TComponent` (366).

See also: `TComponent` (366)

### 4.31.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                    | Description               |
|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <a href="#">307</a> | <code>GetComponent</code> | Return component instance |

### 4.31.3 IInterfaceComponentReference.GetComponent

Synopsis: Return component instance

Declaration: `function GetComponent : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetComponent` returns the component instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponent` (366)

## 4.32 IInterfaceList

### 4.32.1 Description

`IInterfaceList` is an interface for maintaining a list of interfaces, strongly resembling the standard `TList` (406) class. It offers the same list of public methods as `TList`, with the exception that it uses interfaces instead of pointers.

All interfaces in the list should descend from `IUnknown`.

More detailed descriptions of how the various methods behave can be found in the `TList` reference.

See also: `TList` (406)

**4.32.2 Method overview**

| Page                | Method      | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------|--|
| <a href="#">311</a> | Add         | Add an interface to the list                       |
| <a href="#">310</a> | Clear       | Clear the list                                     |
| <a href="#">310</a> | Delete      | Remove an interface from the list                  |
| <a href="#">310</a> | Exchange    | Exchange 2 interfaces in the list                  |
| <a href="#">310</a> | First       | Return the first non-empty interface in the list.  |
| <a href="#">308</a> | Get         | Retrieve an interface pointer from the list.       |
| <a href="#">308</a> | GetCapacity | Return the capacity of the list.                   |
| <a href="#">309</a> | GetCount    | Return the current number of elements in the list. |
| <a href="#">311</a> | IndexOf     | Return the index of an interface.                  |
| <a href="#">311</a> | Insert      | Insert an interface in the list.                   |
| <a href="#">311</a> | Last        | Returns the last non-nil interface in the list.    |
| <a href="#">312</a> | Lock        | Lock the list                                      |
| <a href="#">309</a> | Put         | Write an item to the list                          |
| <a href="#">311</a> | Remove      | Remove an interface from the list                  |
| <a href="#">309</a> | SetCapacity | Set the capacity of the list                       |
| <a href="#">309</a> | SetCount    | Set the number of items in the list                |
| <a href="#">312</a> | Unlock      | Unlock the list.                                   |

**4.32.3 Property overview**

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description   |
|---------------------|------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">312</a> | Capacity   | rw     | Capacity of the list  |
| <a href="#">312</a> | Count      | rw     | Current number of elements in the list.                                 |
| <a href="#">313</a> | Items      | rw     | Provides Index-based, sequential, access to the interfaces in the list. |

**4.32.4 IList.Get**

Synopsis: Retrieve an interface pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Get(i: Integer) : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns the interface pointer at position `i` in the list. It serves as the `Read` method for the `Items` ([313](#)) property.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Items` ([313](#)), `TList.Items` ([414](#))

**4.32.5 IList.GetCapacity**

Synopsis: Return the capacity of the list.

Declaration: `function GetCapacity : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCapacity` returns the current capacity of the list. It serves as the `Read` method for the `Capacity` ([312](#)) property.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` ([312](#)), `TList.Capacity` ([413](#))

#### 4.32.6 **InterfaceList.Count**

Synopsis: Return the current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `function GetCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: It serves as the `Read` method for the `Count` (312) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Count` (312), `TList.Count` (414)

#### 4.32.7 **InterfaceList.Put**

Synopsis: Write an item to the list

Declaration: `procedure Put(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the interface `Item` at position `I` in the list. It serves as the `Write` method for the `Items` (313) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Items` (313), `TList.Items` (414)

#### 4.32.8 **InterfaceList.SetCapacity**

Synopsis: Set the capacity of the list

Declaration: `procedure SetCapacity(NewCapacity: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCapacity` sets the capacity of the list to `NewCapacity`. It serves as the `Write` method for the `Capacity` (312) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Capacity` (312), `TList.Capacity` (413)

#### 4.32.9 **InterfaceList.SetCount**

Synopsis: Set the number of items in the list

Declaration: `procedure SetCount(NewCount: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCount` sets the count of the list to `NewCount`. It serves as the `Write` method for the `Capacity` (312)

See also: `InterfaceList.Count` (312), `TList.Count` (414)

#### 4.32.10 **IInterfaceList.Clear**

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clear` removes all interfaces from the list. All interfaces in the list will be cleared (i.e. their reference count will decrease with 1)

See also: `TList.Clear` ([409](#))

#### 4.32.11 **IInterfaceList.Delete**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `procedure Delete(index: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` removes the interface at position `Index` from the list. It does this by explicitly clearing the interface and then removing the slot.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([409](#)), `IInterfaceList.Add` ([311](#)), `IInterfaceList.Delete` ([310](#)), `IInterfaceList.Insert` ([311](#))

#### 4.32.12 **IInterfaceList.Exchange**

Synopsis: Exchange 2 interfaces in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(index1: Integer; index2: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exchange` exchanges 2 interfaces in the list at locations `index1` and `Index2`.

See also: `TList.Exchange` ([410](#)), `IInterfaceList.Add` ([311](#)), `IInterfaceList.Delete` ([310](#)), `IInterfaceList.Insert` ([311](#))

#### 4.32.13 **IInterfaceList.First**

Synopsis: Return the first non-empty interface in the list.

Declaration: `function First : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `First` returns the first non-empty interface in the list.

See also: `TList.First` ([411](#)), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` ([311](#)), `IInterfaceList.Last` ([311](#))

**4.32.14 IList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Return the index of an interface.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the location in the list of the interface `Item`. If there is no such interface in the list, then -1 is returned.

See also: `TList.IndexOf` (411), `IInterfaceList.First` (310), `IInterfaceList.Last` (311)

**4.32.15 IList.Add**

Synopsis: Add an interface to the list

Declaration: `function Add(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Add` adds the interface `Item` to the list, and returns the position at which it has been added.

See also: `TList.Add` (409), `IInterfaceList.Insert` (311), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (310)

**4.32.16 IList.Insert**

Synopsis: Insert an interface in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts the interface `Item` in the list, at position `I`, shifting all items one position.

See also: `TList.Insert` (411), `IInterfaceList.Add` (311), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (310)

**4.32.17 IList.Last**

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil interface in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `Last` returns the last non-empty interface in the list.

See also: `TList.Last` (412), `IInterfaceList.First` (310), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (311)

**4.32.18 IList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Remove` searches for the first occurrence of `Item` in the list and deletes it.

See also: `TList.Remove` (412), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (310), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (311)

#### 4.32.19 **IInterfaceList.Lock**

Synopsis: Lock the list

Declaration: `procedure Lock`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lock` locks the list. After a call to lock, the object list can only be accessed by the current thread, until `Unlock` (312) is called.

See also: `TInterfaceList.Lock` (403), `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (312)

#### 4.32.20 **IInterfaceList.Unlock**

Synopsis: Unlock the list.

Declaration: `procedure Unlock`

Visibility: default

Description: `Unlock` unlocks a locked list. After a call to `Unlock`, other threads are again able to access the list.

See also: `TInterfaceList.Unlock` (403), `IInterfaceList.Lock` (312)

#### 4.32.21 **IInterfaceList.Capacity**

Synopsis: Capacity of the list

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the maximum number of elements the list can hold without needing to reallocate memory for the list. It can be set to improve speed when adding a lot of items to the list.

See also: `TList.Capacity` (413), `IInterfaceList.Count` (312)

#### 4.32.22 **IInterfaceList.Count**

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list. Setting it to a larger number will allocate empty slots. Setting it to a smaller number will clear any interfaces that fall outside the new border.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` (312), `TList.Count` (414)

### 4.32.23 InterfaceList.Items

Synopsis: Provides Index-based, sequential, access to the interfaces in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: Integer]: IUnknown; default`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the interface list and provides index-based array access to the interfaces in the list. Allowed values for `Index` include 0 to `Count-1`

See also: `IInterfaceList.Count` (312), `TList.Items` (414)

## 4.33 IStreamPersist

### 4.33.1 Description

`IStreamPersist` defines an interface for object persistence streaming to a stream. Any class implementing this interface is expected to be able to save or load it's state from or to a stream.

See also: `TPersistent` (426), `TComponent` (366), `TStream` (445)

### 4.33.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                      | Description                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <a href="#">313</a> | <code>LoadFromStream</code> | Load persistent data from stream. |
| <a href="#">313</a> | <code>SaveToStream</code>   | Save persistent data to stream.   |

### 4.33.3 IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load persistent data from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFromStream` is the method called when the object should load it's state from the stream stream. It should be able to read the data which was written using the `SaveToStream` method.

See also: `TPersistent` (426), `TComponent` (366), `TStream` (445), `IStreamPersist.SaveToStream` (313)

### 4.33.4 IStreamPersist.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save persistent data to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SaveFromStream` is the method called when the object should load it's state from the stream stream. The data written by this method should be readable by the `LoadFromStream` method.

See also: `TPersistent` (426), `TComponent` (366), `TStream` (445), `IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream` (313)

## 4.34 IStringsAdapter

### 4.34.1 Description

Is not yet supported in Free Pascal.

See also: TStrings ([465](#))

### 4.34.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method           | Description                               |
|---------------------|------------------|---|
| <a href="#">314</a> | ReferenceStrings | Add a reference to the indicated strings. |
| <a href="#">314</a> | ReleaseStrings   | Release the reference to the strings.     |

### 4.34.3 IStringsAdapter.ReferenceStrings

Synopsis: Add a reference to the indicated strings.

Declaration: `procedure ReferenceStrings(S: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

### 4.34.4 IStringsAdapter.ReleaseStrings

Synopsis: Release the reference to the strings.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseStrings`

Visibility: default

## 4.35 IVCLComObject

### 4.35.1 Description

IVCLComObject is used by TComponent to implement the IUnknown interface used by COM automation servers. Partially, it is the translation to pascal of the IDispatch interface definition by Microsoft. If TComponent needs to return an IUnknown interface, it creates a IVCLComObject interface instead.

See also: TComponent.VCLComObject ([376](#))

### 4.35.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method            | Description   |
|---------------------|-------------------|---|
| <a href="#">316</a> | FreeOnRelease     | Is called by TComponent.FreeOnRelease                           |
| <a href="#">315</a> | GetIDsOfNames     | The IDispatch: GetIDsOfNames call for automation servers.       |
| <a href="#">315</a> | GetTypeInfo       | The IDispatch: GetTypeInfo call for automation servers          |
| <a href="#">315</a> | GetTypeInfoCount  | The IDispatch: GetTypeInfoCount call for automation servers     |
| <a href="#">315</a> | Invoke            | The IDispatch: Invoke call for automation servers.              |
| <a href="#">316</a> | SafeCallException | This method can be invoked if an exception occurs during Invoke |

### 4.35.3 IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount

Synopsis: The IDispatch::TypeInfoCount call for automation servers

Declaration: `function TypeInfoCount(out Count: Integer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfoCount` must return in `Count` either 0 or 1 to indicate that it provides type information (1) or not (0).

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo` (315)

### 4.35.4 IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo

Synopsis: The IDispatch::TypeInfo call for automation servers

Declaration: `function TypeInfo(Index: Integer; LocaleID: Integer; out TypeInfo) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfo` must return the `Index`-th entry in the type information of the component in `TypeInfo`. The `LocaleID` argument can be used to indicate the locale of the caller, as different type information can be returned depending on the locale.

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount` (315)

### 4.35.5 IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames

Synopsis: The IDispatch::GetIDsOfNames call for automation servers.

Declaration: `function GetIDsOfNames(const IID: TGuid; Names: Pointer; NameCount: Integer; LocaleID: Integer; DispIDs: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetIDsOfNames` must return in `DispIDs` the dispatch Ids for the `NameCount` names of the methods listed in `Names`. The `LocaleID` indicates the locale of the caller.

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.Invoke` (315)

### 4.35.6 IVCLComObject.Invoke

Synopsis: The IDispatch::Invoke call for automation servers.

Declaration: `function Invoke(DispID: Integer; const IID: TGuid; LocaleID: Integer; Flags: Word; var Params; VarResult: Pointer; ExcepInfo: Pointer; ArgErr: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Invoke` must invoke the method designated by `DispID`. `IID` can be ignored. `LocaleID` is used by the caller to indicate the locale it is using. The `Flags` argument describes the context in which `Invoke` is called: a method, or property getter/setter. The `Params` argument contains the parameters to the call. The result should be in `VarResult`. On error, `ExcepInfo` and `ArgError` should be filled.

The function should return 0 (`S_OK`) if all went well.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames` (315)

### 4.35.7 `IVCLComObject.SafeCallException`

**Synopsis:** This method can be invoked if an exception occurs during `Invoke`

**Declaration:** `function SafeCallException(ExceptObject: TObject;  
ExceptAddr: CodePointer) : HRESULT`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeCallException` is called to handle an exception during invocation of the `Invoke` method. The `TObject` implementation of this method returns `E_UNEXPECTED`.

See also: `IVCLComObject.Invoke` (315)

### 4.35.8 `IVCLComObject.FreeOnRelease`

**Synopsis:** Is called by `TComponent.FreeOnRelease`

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeOnRelease`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeOnRelease` is called by `TComponent.FreeOnRelease` (371) for the `IVCLComObject` interface implemented by `TComponent`.

See also: `TComponent.FreeOnRelease` (371)

## 4.36 `TAbstractObjectReader`

### 4.36.1 Description

The Free Pascal streaming mechanism, while compatible with Delphi's mechanism, differs from it in the sense that the streaming mechanism uses a driver class when streaming components. The `TAbstractObjectReader` class is the base driver class for reading property values from streams. It consists entirely of abstract methods, which must be implemented by descendant classes.

Different streaming mechanisms can be implemented by making a descendant from `TAbstractObjectReader`. The `TBinaryObjectReader` (336) class is such a descendant class, which streams data in binary (Delphi compatible) format.

All methods described in this class, must be implemented by descendant classes.

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader` (336)

### 4.36.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                          | Description  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">318</a> | <code>BeginComponent</code>     | Marks the reading of a new component.                          |
| <a href="#">318</a> | <code>BeginProperty</code>      | Marks the reading of a property value.                         |
| <a href="#">318</a> | <code>BeginRootComponent</code> | Starts the reading of the root component.                      |
| <a href="#">317</a> | <code>FlushBuffer</code>        | Flush the buffer   |
| <a href="#">317</a> | <code>NextValue</code>          | Returns the type of the next value in the stream.              |
| <a href="#">319</a> | <code>Read</code>               | Read raw data from stream                                      |
| <a href="#">319</a> | <code>ReadBinary</code>         | Read binary data from the stream.                              |
| <a href="#">320</a> | <code>ReadCurrency</code>       | Read a currency value from the stream.                         |
| <a href="#">320</a> | <code>ReadDate</code>           | Read a date value from the stream.                             |
| <a href="#">319</a> | <code>ReadFloat</code>          | Read a float value from the stream.                            |
| <a href="#">320</a> | <code>ReadIdent</code>          | Read an identifier from the stream.                            |
| <a href="#">321</a> | <code>ReadInt16</code>          | Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.                         |
| <a href="#">322</a> | <code>ReadInt32</code>          | Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.                         |
| <a href="#">322</a> | <code>ReadInt64</code>          | Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.                         |
| <a href="#">321</a> | <code>ReadInt8</code>           | Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.                         |
| <a href="#">322</a> | <code>ReadSet</code>            | Reads a set from the stream.                                   |
| <a href="#">323</a> | <code>ReadSignature</code>      | Read resource signature  |
| <a href="#">319</a> | <code>ReadSingle</code>         | Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.               |
| <a href="#">323</a> | <code>ReadStr</code>            | Read a shortstring from the stream                             |
| <a href="#">323</a> | <code>ReadString</code>         | Read a string of type <code>StringType</code> from the stream. |
| <a href="#">324</a> | <code>ReadUnicodeString</code>  | Read a Unicode string value                                    |
| <a href="#">318</a> | <code>ReadValue</code>          | Reads the type of the next value.                              |
| <a href="#">323</a> | <code>ReadWideString</code>     | Read a widestring value from the stream.                       |
| <a href="#">324</a> | <code>SkipComponent</code>      | Skip till the end of the component.                            |
| <a href="#">324</a> | <code>SkipValue</code>          | Skip the current value.  |

### 4.36.3 TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([385](#))

### 4.36.4 TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value in the stream.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This function should return the type of the next value in the stream, but should not read the actual value, i.e. the stream position should not be altered by this method. This is used to 'peek' in the stream what value is next.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` ([318](#))

#### 4.36.5 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Reads the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This function returns the type of the next value in the stream and reads it. i.e. after the call to this method, the stream is positioned to read the value of the type returned by this function.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` (318)

#### 4.36.6 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent

Synopsis: Starts the reading of the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This function can be used to initialize the driver class for reading a component. It is called once at the beginning of the read process, and is immediately followed by a call to `BeginComponent` (318).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` (318)

#### 4.36.7 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a new component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (var Flags: TFileFlags;  
var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: string; var CompName: string)  
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This method is called when the streaming process wants to start reading a new component.

Descendant classes should override this method to read the start of a component new component definition and return the needed arguments. `Flags` should be filled with any flags that were found at the component definition, as well as `AChildPos`. The `CompClassName` should be filled with the class name of the streamed component, and the `CompName` argument should be filled with the name of the component.

`AChildPos` is used to change the ordering in which components appear below their parent component when streaming descendant forms.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty` (318)

#### 4.36.8 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a property value.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeginProperty` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a new property. The return value of the function is the name of the property which can be read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` (318)

### 4.36.9 TAbstractObjectReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader.Read` (339), `TReader.Read` (434)

### 4.36.10 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary

Synopsis: Read binary data from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBinary` is called when binary data should be read from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a value type of `vaBinary`). The data should be stored in the `DestData` memory stream by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

### 4.36.11 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a float value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a value type of `vaExtended`). The return value should be the value of the float.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

### 4.36.12 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ReadSingle` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a single-type float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a value type of `vaSingle`). The return value should be the value of the float.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

### 4.36.13 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate

**Synopsis:** Read a date value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadDate` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a date/time value from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a value type of `vaDate`). The return value should be the date/time value. (This value can be stored as a float, since `TDateTime` is nothing but a float.)

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

### 4.36.14 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency

**Synopsis:** Read a currency value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadCurrency : Currency; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be read from the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes, and should return the currency value read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` (328)

### 4.36.15 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent

**Synopsis:** Read an identifier from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadIdent` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read an identifier of type `ValueType` from the stream after a call to `ReadValue` (318) returned `vaIdent`. The identifier should be returned as a string. Note that in some cases the identifier does not actually have to be in the stream. The following table indicates which identifiers must actually be read:

Table 4.24:

| ValueType | Expected value  |
|-----------|---|
| valIdent  | Read from stream.                                       |
| vaNil     | 'Nil'. This does not have to be read from the stream.   |
| vaFalse   | 'False'. This does not have to be read from the stream. |
| vaTrue    | 'True'. This does not have to be read from the stream.  |
| vaNull    | 'Null'. This does not have to be read from the stream.  |

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

#### 4.36.16 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8

Synopsis: Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt8` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 8 bits (1 byte) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a `valuetype` of `vaInt8`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 1 byte.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

#### 4.36.17 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16

Synopsis: Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt16` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 16 bits (2 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a `valuetype` of `vaInt16`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 2 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

**4.36.18 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32**

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt32` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 32 bits (4 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a valuetype of `vaInt32`). The return value is the value of the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 4 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

**4.36.19 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64**

Synopsis: Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt64` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an `int64` value with a size of 64 bits (8 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a valuetype of `vaInt64`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 8 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

**4.36.20 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet**

Synopsis: Reads a set from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a set from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a valuetype of `vaSet`). The return value is the contents of the set, encoded in a bitmask the following way:

For each (enumerated) value in the set, the bit corresponding to the ordinal value of the enumerated value should be set. i.e. as `1 shl ord(value)`.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

**4.36.21 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature**

Synopsis: Read resource signature

Declaration: `procedure ReadSignature; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSignature` reads the streaming signature from a stream. This method does nothing. It must be implemented by descendents that have a signature header in the stream. (such as binary streams)

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (325), `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature` (341)

**4.36.22 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr**

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a string from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (323)

**4.36.23 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString**

Synopsis: Read a string of type `StringType` from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a string from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (318) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (319), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (320), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (322), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (322), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (323)

**4.36.24 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString**

Synopsis: Read a widestring value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ReadWideString` is called when a widestring-typed value should be read from the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` ([329](#))

#### 4.36.25 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString

**Synopsis:** Read a Unicode string value

**Declaration:** `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadUnicodeString` should read a `UnicodeString` value from the stream. (indicated by the `vaUString` value type).

Descendant classes should override this method to actually read a `UnicodeString` value.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString` ([348](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` ([323](#))

#### 4.36.26 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent

**Synopsis:** Skip till the end of the component.

**Declaration:** `procedure SkipComponent (SkipComponentInfos: Boolean); Virtual  
; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** This method is used to skip the entire declaration of a component in the stream. Each descendant of `TAbstractObjectReader` should implement this in a way which is optimal for the implemented stream format.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` ([318](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue` ([324](#))

#### 4.36.27 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue

**Synopsis:** Skip the current value.

**Declaration:** `procedure SkipValue; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SkipValue` should be used when skipping a value in the stream; The method should determine the type of the value which should be skipped by itself, if this is necessary.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent` ([324](#))

### 4.37 TAbstractObjectWriter

#### 4.37.1 Description

Abstract driver class for writing component data.

**4.37.2 Method overview**

| Page                | Method                          | Description                                    |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">325</a> | <code>BeginCollection</code>    | Start writing a collection.                    |
| <a href="#">325</a> | <code>BeginComponent</code>     | Start writing a component                      |
| <a href="#">326</a> | <code>BeginList</code>          | Start writing a list.                          |
| <a href="#">326</a> | <code>BeginProperty</code>      | Start writing a property                       |
| <a href="#">326</a> | <code>EndList</code>            | Mark the end of a list.                        |
| <a href="#">326</a> | <code>EndProperty</code>        | Marks the end of writing of a property.        |
| <a href="#">326</a> | <code>FlushBuffer</code>        | Flush the buffer                               |
| <a href="#">327</a> | <code>Write</code>              | Write raw data to stream                       |
| <a href="#">327</a> | <code>WriteBinary</code>        | Writes binary data to the stream.              |
| <a href="#">327</a> | <code>WriteBoolean</code>       | Writes a boolean value to the stream.          |
| <a href="#">328</a> | <code>WriteCurrency</code>      | Write a currency value to the stream           |
| <a href="#">328</a> | <code>WriteDate</code>          | Writes a date type to the stream.              |
| <a href="#">327</a> | <code>WriteFloat</code>         | Writes a float value to the stream.            |
| <a href="#">328</a> | <code>WriteIdent</code>         | Writes an identifier to the stream.            |
| <a href="#">328</a> | <code>WriteInteger</code>       | Writes an integer value to the stream          |
| <a href="#">329</a> | <code>WriteMethodName</code>    | Writes a methodname to the stream.             |
| <a href="#">329</a> | <code>WriteSet</code>           | Writes a set value to the stream.              |
| <a href="#">325</a> | <code>WriteSignature</code>     | Write stream signature to the stream           |
| <a href="#">327</a> | <code>WriteSingle</code>        | Writes a single-type real value to the stream. |
| <a href="#">329</a> | <code>WriteString</code>        | Writes a string value to the stream.           |
| <a href="#">328</a> | <code>WriteUInt64</code>        | Write an unsigned 64-bit integer               |
| <a href="#">330</a> | <code>WriteUnicodeString</code> | Write a Unicode string to the stream.          |
| <a href="#">329</a> | <code>WriteVariant</code>       | Write a variant to the stream                  |
| <a href="#">329</a> | <code>WriteWideString</code>    | Write a widestring value to the stream         |

**4.37.3 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection**

Synopsis: Start writing a collection.

Declaration: `procedure BeginCollection; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Start writing a collection.

**4.37.4 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent**

Synopsis: Start writing a component

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (Component: TComponent; Flags: TFileFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Start writing a component

**4.37.5 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature**

Synopsis: Write stream signature to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSignature; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `WriteSignature` writes the streaming signature to a stream. This method does nothing, it must be implemented by descendents that have a signature header in the stream. (such as binary streams)

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` ([323](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([344](#))

#### 4.37.6 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList

**Synopsis:** Start writing a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginList; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Start writing a list.

#### 4.37.7 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList

**Synopsis:** Mark the end of a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndList; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Mark the end of a list.

#### 4.37.8 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty

**Synopsis:** Start writing a property

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: string); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Start writing a property

#### 4.37.9 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty

**Synopsis:** Marks the end of writing of a property.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndProperty; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Marks the end of writing of a property.

#### 4.37.10 TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer

**Synopsis:** Flush the buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([385](#)), `TWriter.FlushBuffer` ([512](#))

#### 4.37.11 TAbstractObjectWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.Write` ([346](#)), `TWriter.Write` ([513](#))

#### 4.37.12 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes binary data to the stream.

#### 4.37.13 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

#### 4.37.14 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a float value to the stream.

#### 4.37.15 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

#### 4.37.16 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a date type to the stream.

#### 4.37.17 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency(const Value: Currency); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be written to the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency` ([320](#))

#### 4.37.18 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an identifier to the stream.

#### 4.37.19 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an integer value to the stream

#### 4.37.20 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64

Synopsis: Write an unsigned 64-bit integer

Declaration: `procedure WriteUInt64(Value: QWord); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteUInt64` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a 64-bit unsigned `Value` (value type `QWord`) to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64` ([347](#))

#### 4.37.21 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteVariant

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant(const Value: Variant); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a simple variant type to the stream. `WriteVariant` does not write arrays types or complex types.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([349](#))

#### 4.37.22 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a methodname to the stream.

#### 4.37.23 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a set value to the stream.

#### 4.37.24 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a string value to the stream.

#### 4.37.25 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteWideString

Synopsis: Write a widestring value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be written to the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` ([323](#))

### 4.37.26 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString); Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a `unicodestring` (value type `vaUString`) value to the stream.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString` (348)

## 4.38 TBasicAction

### 4.38.1 Description

`TBasicAction` implements a basic action class from which all actions are derived. It introduces all basic methods of an action, and implements functionality to maintain a list of clients, i.e. components that are connected with this action.

Do not create instances of `TBasicAction`. Instead, create a descendant class and create an instance of this class instead.

See also: `TBasicActionLink` (334), `TComponent` (366)

### 4.38.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method            | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| <a href="#">330</a> | Create            | Creates a new instance of a <code>TBasicAction</code> (330) class.   |
| <a href="#">331</a> | Destroy           | Destroys the action.   |
| <a href="#">332</a> | Execute           | Triggers the <code>OnExecute</code> (333) event                      |
| <a href="#">332</a> | ExecuteTarget     | Executes the action on the <code>Target</code> object                |
| <a href="#">331</a> | HandlesTarget     | Determines whether <code>Target</code> can be handled by this action |
| <a href="#">332</a> | RegisterChanges   | Registers a new client with the action.                              |
| <a href="#">332</a> | UnRegisterChanges | Unregisters a client from the list of clients                        |
| <a href="#">333</a> | Update            | Triggers the <code>OnUpdate</code> (334) event                       |
| <a href="#">331</a> | UpdateTarget      | Notify client controls when the action updates itself.               |

### 4.38.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties      | Access | Description                                      |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">333</a> | ActionComponent | rw     | Returns the component that initiated the action. |
| <a href="#">333</a> | OnExecute       | rw     | Event triggered when the action executes.        |
| <a href="#">334</a> | OnUpdate        | rw     | Event triggered when the application is idle.    |

### 4.38.4 TBasicAction.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a `TBasicAction` (330) class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the list of clients controls (or action lists).

Under normal circumstances it should not be necessary to create a `TBasicAction` descendant manually, actions are created in an IDE.

See also: `Destroy` ([331](#)), `AssignClient` ([330](#))

#### 4.38.5 `TBasicAction.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the action.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` cleans up the list of client controls and then calls the inherited destructor.

An application programmer should not call `Destroy` directly; Instead `Free` should be called, if it needs to be called at all. Normally the controlling class (e.g. a `TActionList`) will destroy the action.

#### 4.38.6 `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget`

**Synopsis:** Determines whether `Target` can be handled by this action

**Declaration:** `function HandlesTarget(Target: TObject) : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `HandlesTarget` returns `True` if `Target` is a valid client for this action and if so, if it is in a suitable state to execute the action. An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

In `TBasicAction` this method is empty; descendant classes should override this method to implement appropriate checks.

See also: `UpdateTarget` ([331](#)), `ExecuteTarget` ([332](#))

#### 4.38.7 `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget`

**Synopsis:** Notify client controls when the action updates itself.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateTarget(Target: TObject); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `UpdateTarget` should update the client control specified by `Target` when the action updates itself. In `TBasicAction`, the implementation of `UpdateTarget` is empty. Descendant classes should override and implement `UpdateTarget` to actually update the `Target` object.

An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

See also: `HandlesTarget` ([331](#)), `ExecuteTarget` ([332](#))

#### 4.38.8 TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget

Synopsis: Executes the action on the `Target` object

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteTarget (Target: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteTarget` performs the action on the `Target` object. In `TBasicAction` this method does nothing. Descendant classes should implement the action to be performed. For instance an action to post data in a dataset could call the `Post` method of the dataset.

An application programmer should never call `ExecuteTarget` directly.

See also: `HandlesTarget` (331), `UpdateTarget` (332), `Execute` (332)

#### 4.38.9 TBasicAction.Execute

Synopsis: Triggers the `OnExecute` (333) event

Declaration: `function Execute : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` triggers the `OnExecute` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event handler was called, `False` otherwise.

#### 4.38.10 TBasicAction.RegisterChanges

Synopsis: Registers a new client with the action.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterChanges (Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterChanges` adds `Value` to the list of clients.

See also: `UnregisterChanges` (332)

#### 4.38.11 TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges

Synopsis: Unregisters a client from the list of clients

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterChanges (Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnregisterChanges` removes `Value` from the list of clients. This is called for instance when the action is destroyed, or when the client is assigned a new action.

See also: `UnregisterChanges` (332), `Destroy` (331)

### 4.38.12 TBasicAction.Update

Synopsis: Triggers the OnUpdate ([334](#)) event

Declaration: `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` triggers the `OnUpdate` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event was triggered, or `False` if no event was assigned.

Application programmers should never run `Update` directly. The `Update` method is called automatically by the action mechanism; Normally this is in the Idle time of an application. An application programmer should assign the `OnUpdate` ([334](#)) event, and perform any checks in that handler.

See also: `OnUpdate` ([334](#)), `Execute` ([332](#)), `UpdateTarget` ([331](#))

### 4.38.13 TBasicAction.ActionComponent

Synopsis: Returns the component that initiated the action.

Declaration: `Property ActionComponent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActionComponent` is set to the component that caused the action to execute, e.g. a `toolbutton` or a menu item. The property is set just before the action executes, and is reset to `nil` after the action was executed.

See also: `Execute` ([332](#)), `OnExecute` ([333](#))

### 4.38.14 TBasicAction.OnExecute

Synopsis: Event triggered when the action executes.

Declaration: `Property OnExecute : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnExecute` is the event triggered when the action is activated (executed). The event is triggered e.g. when the user clicks e.g. on a menu item or a button associated to the action. The application programmer should provide a `OnExecute` event handler to execute whatever code is necessary when the button is pressed or the menu item is chosen.

Note that assigning an `OnExecute` handler will result in the `Execute` ([332](#)) method returning a `True` value. Predefined actions (such as dataset actions) will check the result of `Execute` and will not perform their normal task if the `OnExecute` handler was called.

See also: `Execute` ([332](#)), `OnUpdate` ([334](#))

### 4.38.15 TBasicAction.OnUpdate

Synopsis: Event triggered when the application is idle.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnUpdate` is the event triggered when the application is idle, and the action is being updated. The `OnUpdate` event can be used to set the state of the action, for instance disable it if the action cannot be executed at this point in time.

See also: [Update \(333\)](#), [OnExecute \(333\)](#)

## 4.39 TBasicActionLink

### 4.39.1 Description

`TBasicActionLink` links an Action to its clients. With each client for an action, a `TBasicActionLink` class is instantiated to handle the communication between the action and the client. It passes events between the action and its clients, and thus presents the action with a uniform interface to the clients.

An application programmer should never use a `TBasicActionLink` instance directly; They are created automatically when an action is associated with a component. Component programmers should create specialized descendants of `TBasicActionLink` which communicate changes in the action to the component.

See also: [TBasicAction \(330\)](#)

### 4.39.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method  | Description   |
|---------------------|---------|---|
| <a href="#">334</a> | Create  | Creates a new instance of the <code>TBasicActionLink</code> class |
| <a href="#">335</a> | Destroy | Destroys the <code>TBasicActionLink</code> instance.              |
| <a href="#">335</a> | Execute | Calls the action's <code>Execute</code> method.                   |
| <a href="#">335</a> | Update  | Calls the action's <code>Update</code> method                     |

### 4.39.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description   |
|---------------------|------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">336</a> | Action     | rw     | The action to which the link was assigned.                  |
| <a href="#">336</a> | OnChange   | rw     | Event handler triggered when the action's properties change |

### 4.39.4 TBasicActionLink.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TBasicActionLink` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AClient: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of a `TBasicActionLink` and assigns `AClient` as the client of the link.

Application programmers should never instantiate `TBasicActionLink` classes directly. An instance is created automatically when an action is assigned to a control (client).

Component programmers can override the `create` constructor to initialize further properties.

See also: `Destroy` (335)

#### 4.39.5 `TBasicActionLink.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the `TBasicActionLink` instance.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` unregisters the `TBasicActionLink` with the action, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Application programmers should never call `Destroy` directly. If a link should be destroyed at all, the `Free` method should be called instead.

See also: `Create` (334)

#### 4.39.6 `TBasicActionLink.Execute`

**Synopsis:** Calls the action's `Execute` method.

**Declaration:** `function Execute(AComponent: TComponent) : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Execute` sets the `ActionComponent` (333) property of the associated `Action` (336) to `AComponent` and then calls the `Action`'s `execute` (332) method. After the action has executed, the `ActionComponent` property is cleared again.

The return value of the function is the return value of the `Action`'s `execute` method.

Application programmers should never call `Execute` directly. This method will be called automatically when the associated control is activated. (e.g. a button is clicked on)

Component programmers should call `Execute` whenever the action should be activated.

See also: `Action` (336), `TBasicAction.ActionComponent` (333), `TBasicAction.Execute` (332), `TBasicAction.onExecute` (333)

#### 4.39.7 `TBasicActionLink.Update`

**Synopsis:** Calls the action's `Update` method

**Declaration:** `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Update` calls the associated `Action`'s `Update` (333) method.

Component programmers can override the `Update` method to provide additional processing when the `Update` method occurs.

### 4.39.8 TBasicActionLink.Action

Synopsis: The action to which the link was assigned.

Declaration: `Property Action : TBasicAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Action` represents the Action (330) which was assigned to the client. Setting this property will unregister the client at the old action (if one existed) and registers the client at the new action.

See also: `TBasicAction` (330)

### 4.39.9 TBasicActionLink.OnChange

Synopsis: Event handler triggered when the action's properties change

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnChange` is the event triggered when the action's properties change.

Application programmers should never need to assign this event. Component programmers can assign this event to have a client control reflect any changes in an Action's properties.

See also: `Change` (334), `TBasicAction.Change` (330)

## 4.40 TBinaryObjectReader

### 4.40.1 Description

The `TBinaryObjectReader` class reads component data stored in binary form in a file. For this, it overrides or implements all abstract methods from `TAbstractObjectReader` (316). No new functionality is added by this class, it is a driver class for the streaming system.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.WriteComponent` (450) call should be used.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader` (316), `TBinaryObjectWriter` (343)

### 4.40.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                          | Description                                |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">338</a> | <code>BeginComponent</code>     | Start reading a component.                 |
| <a href="#">339</a> | <code>BeginProperty</code>      | Start reading a property.                  |
| <a href="#">338</a> | <code>BeginRootComponent</code> | Start reading the root component.          |
| <a href="#">337</a> | <code>Create</code>             | Creates a new binary data reader instance. |
| <a href="#">337</a> | <code>Destroy</code>            | Destroys the binary data reader.           |
| <a href="#">338</a> | <code>NextValue</code>          | Return the type of the next value.         |
| <a href="#">339</a> | <code>Read</code>               | Read raw data from stream                  |
| <a href="#">339</a> | <code>ReadBinary</code>         | Start reading a binary value.              |
| <a href="#">340</a> | <code>ReadCurrency</code>       | Read a currency value from the stream.     |
| <a href="#">340</a> | <code>ReadDate</code>           | Read a date.                               |
| <a href="#">339</a> | <code>ReadFloat</code>          | Read a float value                         |
| <a href="#">340</a> | <code>ReadIdent</code>          | Read an identifier                         |
| <a href="#">340</a> | <code>ReadInt16</code>          | Read a 16-bits integer.                    |
| <a href="#">341</a> | <code>ReadInt32</code>          | Read a 32-bits integer.                    |
| <a href="#">341</a> | <code>ReadInt64</code>          | Read a 64-bits integer.                    |
| <a href="#">340</a> | <code>ReadInt8</code>           | Read an 8-bits integer.                    |
| <a href="#">341</a> | <code>ReadSet</code>            | Read a set                                 |
| <a href="#">341</a> | <code>ReadSignature</code>      | Reads the filer signature                  |
| <a href="#">339</a> | <code>ReadSingle</code>         | Read a single-size float value             |
| <a href="#">342</a> | <code>ReadStr</code>            | Read a short string                        |
| <a href="#">342</a> | <code>ReadString</code>         | Read a string                              |
| <a href="#">342</a> | <code>ReadUnicodeString</code>  | Read a Unicode string value                |
| <a href="#">338</a> | <code>ReadValue</code>          | Read the next value in the stream          |
| <a href="#">342</a> | <code>ReadWideString</code>     | Read a widestring value from the stream.   |
| <a href="#">343</a> | <code>SkipComponent</code>      | Skip a component's data                    |
| <a href="#">343</a> | <code>SkipValue</code>          | Skip a value's data                        |

### 4.40.3 TBinaryObjectReader.Create

**Synopsis:** Creates a new binary data reader instance.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` instantiates a new binary component data reader. The `Stream` stream is the stream from which data will be read. The `BufSize` argument is the size of the internal buffer that will be used by the reader. This can be used to optimize the reading process.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader` ([316](#))

### 4.40.4 TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy

**Synopsis:** Destroys the binary data reader.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` frees the buffer allocated when the instance was created. It also positions the stream on the last used position in the stream (the buffering may cause the reader to read more bytes than were actually used.)

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader.Create` ([337](#))

#### 4.40.5 TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Return the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` returns the type of the next value in a binary stream, but does not read the value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.6 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Read the next value in the stream

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` reads the next value in a binary stream and returns the type of the read value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.7 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent

Synopsis: Start reading the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginRootComponent` starts reading the root component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.8 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent

Synopsis: Start reading a component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (var Flags: TFileFlags;  
var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: string; var CompName: string)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.9 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Start reading a property.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in TAbstractObjectReader (316)

#### 4.40.10 TBinaryObjectReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: TAbstractObjectReader.Read (319), TReader.Read (434)

#### 4.40.11 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary

Synopsis: Start reading a binary value.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: ReadBinary reads a binary value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in TAbstractObjectReader (316)

#### 4.40.12 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a float value

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: ReadFloat reads a float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in TAbstractObjectReader (316)

#### 4.40.13 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single-size float value

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: ReadSingle reads a single-sized float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in TAbstractObjectReader (316)

#### 4.40.14 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date.

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadDate` reads a date value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.15 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadCurrency : Currency; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `var>ReadCurrency` reads a currency-typed value from a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency` (320), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` (347)

#### 4.40.16 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent

Synopsis: Read an identifier

Declaration: `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadIdent` reads an identifier from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.17 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8

Synopsis: Read an 8-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read8Int` reads an 8-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.18 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16

Synopsis: Read a 16-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Read16Int` reads a 16-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.19 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32`

**Synopsis:** Read a 32-bits integer.

**Declaration:** `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read32Int` reads a 32-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.20 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64`

**Synopsis:** Read a 64-bits integer.

**Declaration:** `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read64Int` reads a 64-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.21 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet`

**Synopsis:** Read a set

**Declaration:** `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadSet` reads a set from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.22 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature`

**Synopsis:** Reads the filer signature

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadSignature; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadSignature` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectReader` to read the signature (TPF0) from binary streams.

**Errors:** If the stream does not start with the correct signature, an `EReadError` (302) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` (323), `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (325), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (344)

#### 4.40.23 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a short string

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a short string from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.24 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string of type `StringType` from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.40.25 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadWideString

Synopsis: Read a widestring value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `var>ReadWideString` reads a widestring-typed value from a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` (323), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteWideString` (348)

#### 4.40.26 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a Unicode string value

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectReader` to read a `UnicodeString` value from the binary stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString` (324)

#### 4.40.27 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent

Synopsis: Skip a component's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipComponent (SkipComponentInfos: Boolean);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of a component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316).

#### 4.40.28 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue

Synopsis: Skip a value's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipValue;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of the next value in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

### 4.41 TBinaryObjectWriter

#### 4.41.1 Description

Driver class which stores component data in binary form.

**4.41.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method             | Description                                       |
|------|--------------------|---|
| 345  | BeginCollection    | Start writing a collection.                       |
| 345  | BeginComponent     | Start writing a component                         |
| 345  | BeginList          | Start writing a list.                             |
| 346  | BeginProperty      | Start writing a property                          |
| 344  | Create             | Creates a new instance of a binary object writer. |
| 344  | Destroy            | Destroys an instance of the binary object writer. |
| 345  | EndList            | Mark the end of a list.                           |
| 346  | EndProperty        | Marks the end of writing of a property.           |
| 345  | FlushBuffer        | Flush the buffer                                  |
| 346  | Write              | Write raw data to stream                          |
| 346  | WriteBinary        | Writes binary data to the stream.                 |
| 346  | WriteBoolean       | Writes a boolean value to the stream.             |
| 347  | WriteCurrency      | Write a currency-valued type to a stream          |
| 347  | WriteDate          | Writes a date type to the stream.                 |
| 346  | WriteFloat         | Writes a float value to the stream.               |
| 347  | WriteIdent         | Writes an identifier to the stream.               |
| 347  | WriteInteger       | Writes an integer value to the stream.            |
| 348  | WriteMethodName    | Writes a methodname to the stream.                |
| 348  | WriteSet           | Writes a set value to the stream.                 |
| 344  | WriteSignature     | Write stream signature to the stream              |
| 347  | WriteSingle        | Writes a single-type real value to the stream.    |
| 348  | WriteStr           | Write a string to the binary stream               |
| 348  | WriteString        | Writes a string value to the stream.              |
| 347  | WriteUInt64        | Write an unsigned 64-bit integer                  |
| 348  | WriteUnicodeString | Write a Unicode string to the stream.             |
| 349  | WriteVariant       | Write a variant to the stream                     |
| 348  | WriteWideString    | Write a widestring-valued type to a stream        |

**4.41.3 TBinaryObjectWriter.Create**

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

**4.41.4 TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy**

Synopsis: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

**4.41.5 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature**

Synopsis: Write stream signature to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteSignature; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteSignature` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write the signature (TPF0) to binary streams.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (325), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` (323), `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature` (341)

#### 4.41.6 TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer

**Synopsis:** Flush the buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

**See also:** `TFile.FlushBuffer` (385), `TWriter.FlushBuffer` (512), `TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` (326)

#### 4.41.7 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection

**Synopsis:** Start writing a collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginCollection; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.8 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent

**Synopsis:** Start writing a component

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginComponent(Component: TComponent; Flags: TFileFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.9 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList

**Synopsis:** Start writing a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginList; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.10 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList

**Synopsis:** Mark the end of a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndList; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.11 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Start writing a property

Declaration: `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: string); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.12 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty

Synopsis: Marks the end of writing of a property.

Declaration: `procedure EndProperty; Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.13 TBinaryObjectWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.Write` ([327](#)), `TWriter.Write` ([513](#))

#### 4.41.14 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.15 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.16 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.17 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.18 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.19 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency-valued type to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency(const Value: Currency); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteCurrency` writes a currency-typed value to a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectWriter` (324).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` (328)

#### 4.41.20 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.21 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.22 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64

Synopsis: Write an unsigned 64-bit integer

Declaration: `procedure WriteUInt64(Value: QWord); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUInt64` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write an unsigned 64-bit integer (`QWord`) to the stream. It tries to use the smallest possible storage for the value that is passed. (largest valuetype will be `vaQWord`).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64` (328)

**4.41.23 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName**

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: string); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.24 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet**

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.25 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a string to the binary stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteStr` writes a string value to the binary stream. It is exposed so it can be used in `DefineProperties`.

**4.41.26 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.27 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteWideString**

Synopsis: Write a widestring-valued type to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteWidestring` writes a widestring-typed value to a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectWriter` ([324](#)).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` ([329](#))

**4.41.28 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString**

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` is overridden `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write a `unicodestring` (value type `vaUString`) value to the stream. It simply writes the character length and then all widecharacters.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` ([330](#))

### 4.41.29 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant(const VarValue: Variant);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write a simple variant type to the stream. `WriteVariant` does not write arrays types or complex types. Only null, integer (ordinal) float and string types are written.

Errors: If a non-supported type is written, then an `EWriteError` exception is.

## 4.42 TBits

### 4.42.1 Description

`TBits` can be used to store collections of bits in an indexed array. This is especially useful for storing collections of booleans: Normally the size of a boolean is the size of the smallest enumerated type, i.e. 1 byte. Since a bit can take 2 values it can be used to store a boolean as well. Since `TBits` can store 8 bits in a byte, it takes 8 times less space to store an array of booleans in a `TBits` class then it would take to store them in a conventional array.

`TBits` introduces methods to store and retrieve bit values, apply masks, and search for bits.

### 4.42.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                    | Description   |
|---------------------|---------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">351</a> | <code>AndBits</code>      | Performs an <code>and</code> operation on the bits.   |
| <a href="#">351</a> | <code>Clear</code>        | Clears a particular bit.  |
| <a href="#">351</a> | <code>Clearall</code>     | Clears all bits in the array.   |
| <a href="#">351</a> | <code>CopyBits</code>     | Copy bits from one bits set to another  |
| <a href="#">350</a> | <code>Create</code>       | Creates a new bits collection.  |
| <a href="#">350</a> | <code>Destroy</code>      | Destroys a bit collection   |
| <a href="#">353</a> | <code>Equals</code>       | Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.  |
| <a href="#">354</a> | <code>FindFirstBit</code> | Find first bit with a particular value  |
| <a href="#">354</a> | <code>FindNextBit</code>  | Searches the next bit with a particular value.  |
| <a href="#">354</a> | <code>FindPrevBit</code>  | Searches the previous bit with a particular value.  |
| <a href="#">353</a> | <code>Get</code>          | Retrieve the value of a particular bit  |
| <a href="#">350</a> | <code>GetFSize</code>     | Returns the number of records used to store the bits.   |
| <a href="#">353</a> | <code>Grow</code>         | Expands the bits array to the requested size.   |
| <a href="#">352</a> | <code>NotBits</code>      | Performs a <code>not</code> operation on the bits.  |
| <a href="#">355</a> | <code>OpenBit</code>      | Returns the position of the first bit that is set to <code>False</code> .   |
| <a href="#">352</a> | <code>OrBits</code>       | Performs an <code>or</code> operation on the bits.  |
| <a href="#">353</a> | <code>SetIndex</code>     | Sets the start position for <code>FindNextBit</code> ( <a href="#">354</a> ) and <code>FindPrevBit</code> ( <a href="#">354</a> ) |
| <a href="#">350</a> | <code>SetOn</code>        | Turn a particular bit on.   |
| <a href="#">352</a> | <code>XorBits</code>      | Performs a <code>xor</code> operation on the bits.  |

### 4.42.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties        | Access          | Description                        |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">355</a> | <code>Bits</code> | <code>rw</code> | Access to all bits in the array.   |
| <a href="#">355</a> | <code>Size</code> | <code>rw</code> | Current size of the array of bits. |

#### 4.42.4 TBits.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new bits collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TheSize: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new bit collection with initial size `TheSize`. The size of the collection can be changed later on.

All bits are initially set to zero.

See also: `Destroy` ([350](#))

#### 4.42.5 TBits.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a bit collection

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys a previously created bit collection and releases all memory used to store the bit collection.

`Destroy` should never be called directly, `Free` should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([350](#))

#### 4.42.6 TBits.GetFSize

Synopsis: Returns the number of records used to store the bits.

Declaration: `function GetFSize : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFSize` returns the number of records used to store the current number of bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `Size` ([355](#))

#### 4.42.7 TBits.SetOn

Synopsis: Turn a particular bit on.

Declaration: `procedure SetOn(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetOn` turns on the bit at position `bit`, i.e. sets it to 1. If `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` ([353](#)).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` ([300](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` ([355](#)), `Clear` ([351](#))

#### 4.42.8 TBits.Clear

Synopsis: Clears a particular bit.

Declaration: `procedure Clear(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the bit at position `bit`. If the array `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` (353).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` (300) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (355), `seton` (351)

#### 4.42.9 TBits.Clearall

Synopsis: Clears all bits in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Clearall`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearAll` clears all bits in the array, i.e. sets them to zero. `ClearAll` works faster than clearing all individual bits, since it uses the packed nature of the bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bits` (355), `clear` (351)

#### 4.42.10 TBits.CopyBits

Synopsis: Copy bits from one bits set to another

Declaration: `procedure CopyBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyBits` copies the bits from `BitSet` to the current `Bits`. Existing bits will be overwritten. The two sets of bits will be equal after this operation.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.Equals` (353)

#### 4.42.11 TBits.AndBits

Synopsis: Performs an and operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure AndBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an and operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`. If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are cleared.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (351), `OrBits` (352), `XOrBits` (352), `NotBits` (352)

#### 4.42.12 TBits.OrBits

Synopsis: Performs an `or` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure OrBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an `or` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the `or` operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (351), `andBits` (351), `XorBits` (352), `NotBits` (352)

#### 4.42.13 TBits.XorBits

Synopsis: Performs a `xor` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure XorBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `XorBits` performs a `xor` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the `xor` operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (351), `andBits` (351), `OrBits` (352), `NotBits` (352)

#### 4.42.14 TBits.NotBits

Synopsis: Performs a `not` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure NotBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NotBits` performs a `not` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `Bitset`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (351), `andBits` (351), `OrBits` (352), `XorBits` (352)

#### 4.42.15 TBits.Get

Synopsis: Retrieve the value of a particular bit

Declaration: `function Get (Bit: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Get` returns `True` if the bit at position `bit` is set, or `False` if it is not set.

Errors: If `bit` is not a valid bit index then an `EBitsError` (300) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (355), `FindFirstBit` (354), `seton` (350)

#### 4.42.16 TBits.Grow

Synopsis: Expands the bits array to the requested size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow (NBit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Grow` expands the bit array so it can at least contain `nbit` bits. If `nbit` is less than the current size, nothing happens.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to complete the operation, then an `EBitsError` (300) is raised.

See also: `Size` (355)

#### 4.42.17 TBits.Equals

Synopsis: Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Override; Overload`  
`function Equals (BitSet: TBits) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `equals` returns `True` if all the bits in `BitSet` are the same as the ones in the current `BitSet`; if not, `False` is returned.

If the sizes of the two `BitSets` are different, the arrays are still reported equal when all the bits in the larger set, which are not present in the smaller set, are zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (351), `andBits` (351), `OrBits` (352), `XOrBits` (352)

#### 4.42.18 TBits.SetIndex

Synopsis: Sets the start position for `FindNextBit` (354) and `FindPrevBit` (354)

Declaration: `procedure SetIndex (Index: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetIndex` sets the search start position for `FindNextBit` (354) and `FindPrevBit` (354) to `Index`. This means that these calls will start searching from position `Index`.

This mechanism provides an alternative to `FindFirstBit` (354) which can also be used to position for the `FindNextBit` and `FindPrevBit` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindNextBit \(354\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(354\)](#), [FindFirstBit \(354\)](#), [OpenBit \(355\)](#)

#### 4.42.19 TBits.FindFirstBit

Synopsis: Find first bit with a particular value

Declaration: `function FindFirstBit (State: Boolean) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindFirstBit` searches for the first bit with value `State`. It returns the position of this bit, or `-1` if no such bit was found.

The search starts at position 0 in the array. If the first search returned a positive result, the found position is saved, and the [FindNextBit \(354\)](#) and [FindPrevBit \(354\)](#) will use this position to resume the search. To start a search from a certain position, the start position can be set with the [SetIndex \(353\)](#) instead.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindNextBit \(354\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(354\)](#), [OpenBit \(355\)](#), [SetIndex \(353\)](#)

#### 4.42.20 TBits.FindNextBit

Synopsis: Searches the next bit with a particular value.

Declaration: `function FindNextBit : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNextBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the next bit with the value specified in the [FindFirstBit \(354\)](#). The search is done towards the end of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with [SetIndex \(353\)](#).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindFirstBit \(354\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(354\)](#), [OpenBit \(355\)](#), [SetIndex \(353\)](#)

#### 4.42.21 TBits.FindPrevBit

Synopsis: Searches the previous bit with a particular value.

Declaration: `function FindPrevBit : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPrevBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the previous bit with the value specified in the [FindFirstBit \(354\)](#). The search is done towards the beginning of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with [SetIndex \(353\)](#).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindFirstBit \(354\)](#), [FindNextBit \(354\)](#), [OpenBit \(355\)](#), [SetIndex \(353\)](#)

#### 4.42.22 TBits.OpenBit

Synopsis: Returns the position of the first bit that is set to `False`.

Declaration: `function OpenBit : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `OpenBit` returns the position of the first bit whose value is 0 (`False`), or -1 if no open bit was found. This call is equivalent to `FindFirstBit(False)`, except that it doesn't set the position for the next searches.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindNextBit` (354), `FindPrevBit` (354), `FindFirstBit` (354), `SetIndex` (353)

#### 4.42.23 TBits.Bits

Synopsis: Access to all bits in the array.

Declaration: `Property Bits[Bit: LongInt]: Boolean; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bits` allows indexed access to all of the bits in the array. It gives `True` if the bit is 1, `False` otherwise; Assigning to this property will set, respectively clear the bit.

Errors: If an index is specified which is out of the allowed range then an `EBitsError` (300) exception is raised.

See also: `Size` (355)

#### 4.42.24 TBits.Size

Synopsis: Current size of the array of bits.

Declaration: `Property Size : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Size` is the current size of the bit array. Setting this property will adjust the size; this is equivalent to calling `Grow(Value-1)`

Errors: If an invalid size (negative or too large) is specified, a `EBitsError` (300) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (355)

### 4.43 TBytesStream

#### 4.43.1 Description

`TBytesStream` is a stream that uses an array of byte (`TBytes` (264)) to keep the stream data. it overrides the `TMemoryStream` (416) memory allocation routine to use the array of bytes. The array of bytes is exposed through the `Bytes` (264) property.

See also: `TBytes` (264), `TMemoryStream` (416), `Bytes` (264)

### 4.43.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method | Description   |
|---------------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">356</a> | Create | Create a new instance of the stream, initializing it with an array of bytes |

### 4.43.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                           |
|---------------------|------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">356</a> | Bytes      | r      | The stream data as an array of bytes. |

### 4.43.4 TBytesStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the stream, initializing it with an array of bytes

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ABytes: TBytes); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance and initializes the memory with the data in `ABytes`.

See also: `TBytes` ([264](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([416](#)), `Bytes` ([264](#))

### 4.43.5 TBytesStream.Bytes

Synopsis: The stream data as an array of bytes.

Declaration: `Property Bytes : TBytes`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Bytes` provides byte-sized access to the array of bytes that represent the stream data. As a pointer value, it equals `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([380](#)), meaning that `Memory` points to the first byte in the array.

See also: `TBytes` ([264](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([416](#)), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([380](#))

## 4.44 TCollection

### 4.44.1 Description

`TCollection` implements functionality to manage a collection of named objects. Each of these objects needs to be a descendant of the `TCollectionItem` ([364](#)) class. Exactly which type of object is managed can be seen from the `TCollection.ItemClass` ([362](#)) property.

Normally, no `TCollection` is created directly. Instead, a descendants of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` ([364](#)) are created as a pair.

See also: `TCollectionItem` ([364](#))

#### 4.44.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method        | Description   |
|---------------------|---------------|---|
| <a href="#">358</a> | Add           | Creates and adds a new item to the collection.  |
| <a href="#">358</a> | Assign        | Assigns one collection to another.  |
| <a href="#">358</a> | BeginUpdate   | Start an update batch.  |
| <a href="#">359</a> | Clear         | Removes all items from the collection.  |
| <a href="#">357</a> | Create        | Creates a new collection.   |
| <a href="#">359</a> | Delete        | Delete an item from the collection.   |
| <a href="#">357</a> | Destroy       | Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.   |
| <a href="#">359</a> | EndUpdate     | Ends an update batch.   |
| <a href="#">361</a> | Exchange      | Exchange 2 items in the collection  |
| <a href="#">360</a> | FindItemID    | Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its TCollectionItem.ID ( <a href="#">365</a> ) property. |
| <a href="#">360</a> | GetEnumerator | Create an IEnumerator instance  |
| <a href="#">360</a> | GetNamePath   | Overrides TPersistent.GetNamePath ( <a href="#">428</a> ) to return a proper pathname.                    |
| <a href="#">360</a> | Insert        | Insert an item in the collection.   |
| <a href="#">361</a> | Move          |   |
| <a href="#">358</a> | Owner         | Owner of the collection.  |
| <a href="#">361</a> | Sort          | Sort the items in the collection  |

#### 4.44.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                                    |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">361</a> | Count      | r      | Number of items in the collection.             |
| <a href="#">362</a> | ItemClass  | r      | Class pointer for each item in the collection. |
| <a href="#">362</a> | Items      | rw     | Indexed array of items in the collection.      |

#### 4.44.4 TCollection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new collection.

Declaration: constructor Create(AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of the TCollection class which will manage objects of class AItemClass. It creates the list used to hold all objects, and stores the AItemClass for the adding of new objects to the collection.

See also: TCollection.ItemClass ([362](#)), TCollection.Destroy ([357](#))

#### 4.44.5 TCollection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy first clears the collection, and then frees all memory allocated to this instance.

Don't call Destroy directly, call Free instead.

See also: TCollection.Create ([357](#))

#### 4.44.6 TCollection.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the collection.

Declaration: `function Owner : TPersistent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Owner` returns a reference to the owner of the collection. This property is required by the object inspector to be able to show the collection.

#### 4.44.7 TCollection.Add

Synopsis: Creates and adds a new item to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` instantiates a new item of class `TCollection.ItemClass` (362) and adds it to the list. The newly created object is returned.

See also: `TCollection.ItemClass` (362), `TCollection.Clear` (359)

#### 4.44.8 TCollection.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns one collection to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` assigns the contents of one collection to another. It does this by clearing the items list, and adding as much elements as there are in the `Source` collection; it assigns to each created element the contents of it's counterpart in the `Source` element.

Two collections cannot be assigned to each other if instances of the `ItemClass` classes cannot be assigned to each other.

Errors: If the objects in the collections cannot be assigned to one another, then an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `TPersistent.Assign` (427), `TCollectionItem` (364)

#### 4.44.9 TCollection.BeginUpdate

Synopsis: Start an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginUpdate` is called at the beginning of a batch update. It raises the update count with 1.

Call `BeginUpdate` at the beginning of a series of operations that will change the state of the collection. This will avoid the call to `TCollection.Update` (356) for each operation. At the end of the operations, a corresponding call to `EndUpdate` must be made. It is best to do this in the context of a `Try ... finally` block:

```

With MyCollection Do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some Lengthy operations
  finally
    EndUpdate;
  end;

```

This insures that the number of calls to `BeginUpdate` always matches the number of calls to `TCollection.EndUpdate` (359), even in case of an exception.

See also: `TCollection.EndUpdate` (359), `TCollection.Changed` (356), `TCollection.Update` (356)

#### 4.44.10 TCollection.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all items from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` will clear the collection, i.e. each item in the collection is destroyed and removed from memory. After a call to `Clear`, `Count` is zero.

See also: `TCollection.Add` (358), `TCollectionItem.Destroy` (364), `TCollection.Destroy` (357)

#### 4.44.11 TCollection.EndUpdate

Synopsis: Ends an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndUpdate` signals the end of a series of operations that change the state of the collection, possibly triggering an update event. It does this by decreasing the update count with 1 and calling `TCollection.Changed` (356) it should always be used in conjunction with `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (358), preferably in the `Finally` section of a `Try ... Finally` block.

See also: `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (358), `TCollection.Changed` (356), `TCollection.Update` (356)

#### 4.44.12 TCollection.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at (zero based) position `Index` from the collection. This will result in a `cnDeleted` notification.

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (362), `TCollection.Insert` (360), `TCollection.Clear` (359)

#### 4.44.13 TCollection.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TCollectionEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1581) interface for `TCollection`. It creates a `TCollectionEnumerator` (362) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1581) interface.

See also: `TCollectionEnumerator` (362), `IEnumerator` (1581), `IEnumerable` (1581)

#### 4.44.14 TCollection.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Overrides `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (428) to return a proper pathname.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNamePath` returns the name path for this collection. If the following conditions are satisfied:

1. There is an owner object.
2. The owner object returns a non-empty name path.
3. The `TCollection.Propname` (356) property is not empty

collection has an owner and the owning object has a name, then the function returns the owner name, followed by the propname. If one of the conditions is not satisfied, then the classname is returned.

See also: `TCollection.GetOwner` (356), `TCollection.Propname` (356)

#### 4.44.15 TCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an item in the collection.

Declaration: `function Insert(Index: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` creates a new item instance and inserts it in the collection at position `Index`, and returns the new instance.

In contrast, `TCollection.Add` (358) adds a new item at the end.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Add` (358), `TCollection.Delete` (359), `TCollection.Items` (362)

#### 4.44.16 TCollection.FindItemID

Synopsis: Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its `TCollectionItem.ID` (365) property.

Declaration: `function FindItemID(ID: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FindItemID` searches through the collection for the item that has a value of `ID` for its `TCollectionItem.ID` (365) property, and returns the found item. If no such item is found in the collection, `Nil` is returned.

The routine performs a linear search, so this can be slow on very large collections.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (362), `TCollectionItem.ID` (365)

#### 4.44.17 TCollection.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchange 2 items in the collection

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(const Index1: Integer; const index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the items at indexes `Index1` and `Index2` in the collection.

**Errors:** If one of the two indexes is invalid (less than zero or larger than the number of items) an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `Items` (362), `TCollectionItem.Index` (366)

#### 4.44.18 TCollection.Move

**Declaration:** `procedure Move(const Index1: Integer; const index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.44.19 TCollection.Sort

**Synopsis:** Sort the items in the collection

**Declaration:** `procedure Sort(const Compare: TCollectionSortCompare)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Sort` sorts the items in the collection, and uses the `Compare` procedure to compare 2 items in the collection. It is more efficient to use this method than to perform the sort manually, because the list items are manipulated directly.

For more information on how the `Compare` function should behave, see the `TCollectionSortCompare` (269) type.

See also: `TCollectionSortCompare` (269)

#### 4.44.20 TCollection.Count

**Synopsis:** Number of items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `Property Count : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Count` contains the number of items in the collection.

**Remark** The items in the collection are identified by their `TCollectionItem.Index` (366) property, which is a zero-based index, meaning that it can take values between 0 and `Count-1`, borders included.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Index` (366), `TCollection.Items` (362)

#### 4.44.21 TCollection.ItemClass

Synopsis: Class pointer for each item in the collection.

Declaration: `Property ItemClass : TCollectionItemClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ItemClass` is the class pointer with which each new item in the collection is created. It is the value that was passed to the collection's constructor when it was created, and does not change during the lifetime of the collection.

See also: `TCollectionItem` (364), `TCollection.Items` (362)

#### 4.44.22 TCollection.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array of items in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the collection. Since the array is zero-based, `Index` should be an integer between 0 and `Count-1`.

It is possible to set or retrieve an element in the array. When setting an element of the array, the object that is assigned should be compatible with the class of the objects in the collection, as given by the `TCollection.ItemClass` (362) property.

Adding an element to the array can be done with the `TCollection.Add` (358) method. The array can be cleared with the `TCollection.Clear` (359) method. Removing an element of the array should be done by freeing that element.

See also: `TCollection.Count` (361), `TCollection.ItemClass` (362), `TCollection.Clear` (359), `TCollection.Add` (358)

### 4.45 TCollectionEnumerator

#### 4.45.1 Description

`TCollectionEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581) interface for the `TCollection` (356) class, so the `TCollection` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TCollection.GetEnumerator` (360) method of `TCollection`.

See also: `TCollection` (356), `TCollection.GetEnumerator` (360), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581)

#### 4.45.2 Method overview

| Page | Method     | Description   |
|------|------------|---|
| 363  | Create     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TCollectionEnumerator</code>             |
| 363  | GetCurrent | Return the current pointer in the list                                      |
| 363  | MoveNext   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the collection. |

### 4.45.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                 |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">363</a> | Current    | r      | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.45.4 TCollectionEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TCollectionEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (ACollection: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TCollectionEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the collection `ACollection` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TCollection` ([356](#))

### 4.45.5 TCollectionEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current `TCollectionItem` ([364](#)) instance in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([363](#)), `TCollectionItem` ([364](#))

### 4.45.6 TCollectionEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the collection.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the collection, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([363](#))

### 4.45.7 TCollectionEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([363](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([363](#))

## 4.46 TCollectionItem

### 4.46.1 Description

TCollectionItem and TCollection (356) form a pair of base classes that manage a collection of named objects. The TCollectionItem is the named object that is managed, it represents one item in the collection. An item in the collection is represented by three properties: TCollectionItem.DisplayName (366), TCollection.Index (356) and TCollectionItem.ID (365).

A TCollectionItem object is never created directly. To manage a set of named items, it is necessary to make a descendant of TCollectionItem to which needed properties and methods are added. This descendant can then be managed with a TCollection (356) class. The managing collection will create and destroy it's items by itself, it should therefore never be necessary to create TCollectionItem descendants manually.

See also: TCollection (356)

### 4.46.2 Method overview

| Page | Method      | Description                                     |
|------|-------------|---|
| 364  | Create      | Creates a new instance of this collection item. |
| 364  | Destroy     | Destroys this collection item.                  |
| 365  | GetNamePath | Returns the namepath of this collection item.   |

### 4.46.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties  | Access | Description  |
|------|-------------|--------|--|
| 365  | Collection  | rw     | Pointer to the collection managing this item.                                  |
| 366  | DisplayName | rw     | Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.                           |
| 365  | ID          | r      | Initial index of this item.  |
| 366  | Index       | rw     | Index of the item in its managing collection TCollection.Items (362) property. |

### 4.46.4 TCollectionItem.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of this collection item.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new item in a TCollection (356). It is called by the TCollection.Add (358) function and should under normal circumstances never be called directly. called

See also: TCollectionItem.Destroy (364)

### 4.46.5 TCollectionItem.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys this collection item.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` removes the item from the managing collection and Destroys the item instance.

This is the only way to remove items from a collection;

See also: `TCollectionItem.Create` (364)

#### 4.46.6 `TCollectionItem.GetNamePath`

**Synopsis:** Returns the namepath of this collection item.

**Declaration:** `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `GetNamePath` overrides the `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (428) method to return the name of the managing collection and appends its `TCollectionItem.Index` (366) property.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Collection` (365), `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (428), `TCollectionItem.Index` (366)

#### 4.46.7 `TCollectionItem.Collection`

**Synopsis:** Pointer to the collection managing this item.

**Declaration:** `Property Collection : TCollection`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Collection` points to the collection managing this item. This property can be set to point to a new collection. If this is done, the old collection will be notified that the item should no longer be managed, and the new collection is notified that it should manage this item as well.

See also: `TCollection` (356)

#### 4.46.8 `TCollectionItem.ID`

**Synopsis:** Initial index of this item.

**Declaration:** `Property ID : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** `ID` is the initial value of `TCollectionItem.Index` (366); it doesn't change after the index changes. It can be used to uniquely identify the item. The `ID` property doesn't change as items are added and removed from the collection.

While the `TCollectionItem.Index` (366) property forms a continuous series, `ID` does not. If items are removed from the collection, their `ID` is not used again, leaving gaps. Only when the collection is initially created, the `ID` and `Index` properties will be equal.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (362), `TCollectionItem.Index` (366)

#### 4.46.9 TCollectionItem.Index

Synopsis: Index of the item in its managing collection TCollection.Items (362) property.

Declaration: `Property Index : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Index` is the current index of the item in its managing collection's TCollection.Items (362) property. This property may change as items are added and removed from the collection.

The index of an item is zero-based, i.e. the first item has index zero. The last item has index `Count-1` where `Count` is the number of items in the collection.

The `Index` property of the items in a collection form a continuous series ranging from 0 to `Count-1`. The `TCollectionItem.ID` (365) property does not form a continuous series, but can also be used to identify an item.

See also: `TCollectionItem.ID` (365), `TCollection.Items` (362)

#### 4.46.10 TCollectionItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DisplayName` contains the name of this item as shown in the object inspector. For `TCollectionItem` this returns always the class name of the managing collection, followed by the index of the item.

`TCollectionItem` does not implement any functionality to store the `DisplayName` property. The property can be set, but this will have no effect other than that the managing collection is notified of a change. The actual displayname will remain unchanged. To store the `DisplayName` property, `TCollectionItem` descendants should override the `TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName` (364) and `TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName` (364) to add storage functionality.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Index` (366), `TCollectionItem.ID` (365), `TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName` (364), `TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName` (364)

### 4.47 TComponent

#### 4.47.1 Description

`TComponent` is the base class for any set of classes that needs owner-owned functionality, and which needs support for property streaming. All classes that should be handled by an IDE (Integrated Development Environment) must descend from `TComponent`, as it includes all support for streaming all its published properties.

Components can 'own' other components. `TComponent` introduces methods for enumerating the child components. It also allows to name the owned components with a unique name. Furthermore, functionality for sending notifications when a component is removed from the list or removed from memory altogether is also introduced in `TComponent`.

`TComponent` introduces a form of automatic memory management: When a component is destroyed, all its child components will be destroyed first.

**4.47.2 Interfaces overview**

| Page                 | Interfaces                   | Description                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">307</a>  | IInterfaceComponentReference | Interface for checking component references  |
| <a href="#">1583</a> | IUnknown                     | Basic interface for all COM-based interfaces |

**4.47.3 Method overview**

| Page                | Method                 | Description  |
|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">369</a> | BeforeDestruction      | Overrides standard BeforeDestruction.                                      |
| <a href="#">368</a> | Create                 | Creates a new instance of the component.                                   |
| <a href="#">369</a> | Destroy                | Destroys the instance of the component.                                    |
| <a href="#">369</a> | DestroyComponents      | Destroy child components.  |
| <a href="#">369</a> | Destroying             | Called when the component is being destroyed                               |
| <a href="#">370</a> | ExecuteAction          | Standard action execution method.  |
| <a href="#">370</a> | FindComponent          | Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.             |
| <a href="#">370</a> | FreeNotification       | Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.             |
| <a href="#">371</a> | FreeOnRelease          | Part of the IVCLComObject interface.                                       |
| <a href="#">371</a> | GetEnumerator          | Create an IEnumerator instance   |
| <a href="#">371</a> | GetNamePath            | Returns the name path of this component.                                   |
| <a href="#">371</a> | GetParentComponent     | Returns the parent component.  |
| <a href="#">372</a> | HasParent              | Does the component have a parent ?   |
| <a href="#">372</a> | InsertComponent        | Insert the given component in the list of owned components.                |
| <a href="#">373</a> | IsImplementorOf        | Checks if the current component is the implementor of the interface        |
| <a href="#">368</a> | Notification           | Called by components that are freed and which received a FreeNotification. |
| <a href="#">373</a> | ReferenceInterface     | Interface implementation of Notification                                   |
| <a href="#">372</a> | RemoveComponent        | Remove the given component from the list of owned components.              |
| <a href="#">370</a> | RemoveFreeNotification | Remove a component from the Free Notification list.                        |
| <a href="#">372</a> | SafeCallException      | Part of the IVCLComObject Interface.                                       |
| <a href="#">373</a> | SetSubComponent        | Sets the csSubComponent style.   |
| <a href="#">373</a> | UpdateAction           | Updates the state of an action.  |
| <a href="#">368</a> | WriteState             | Writes the component to a stream.  |

**4.47.4 Property overview**

| Page                | Properties     | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|----------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">374</a> | ComObject      | r      | Interface reference implemented by the component   |
| <a href="#">374</a> | ComponentCount | r      | Count of owned components                          |
| <a href="#">374</a> | ComponentIndex | rw     | Index of component in it's owner's list.           |
| <a href="#">374</a> | Components     | r      | Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components. |
| <a href="#">375</a> | ComponentState | r      | Current component's state.                         |
| <a href="#">375</a> | ComponentStyle | r      | Current component's style.                         |
| <a href="#">375</a> | DesignInfo     | rw     | Information for IDE designer.                      |
| <a href="#">376</a> | Name           | rws    | Name of the component.                             |
| <a href="#">376</a> | Owner          | r      | Owner of this component.                           |
| <a href="#">376</a> | Tag            | rw     | Tag value of the component.                        |
| <a href="#">376</a> | VCLComObject   | rw     | Not implemented.                                   |

### 4.47.5 TComponent.Notification

**Synopsis:** Called by components that are freed and which received a FreeNotification.

**Declaration:** `procedure Notification(AComponent: TComponent; Operation: TOperation)  
; Virtual`

**Visibility:** protected

**Description:** `Notification` is called whenever a child component is destroyed, inserted or removed from the list of owned component. Components that were requested to send a notification when they are freed ((with `FreeNotification` (370)) will also call `Notification` when they are freed.

The `AComponent` parameter specifies which component sends the notification, and `Operation` specifies whether the component is being inserted into or removed from the child component list, or whether it is being destroyed.

Descendants of `TComponent` can use `FreeNotification` (370) to request notification of the destruction of another object. By overriding the `Notification` method, they can do special processing (typically, set a reference to this component to `Nil`) when this component is destroyed. The `Notification` method is called quite often in the streaming process, so speed should be a consideration when overriding this method.

See also: `TOperation` (275), `TComponent.FreeNotification` (370), `TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification` (370)

### 4.47.6 TComponent.WriteState

**Synopsis:** Writes the component to a stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteState(Writer: TWriter); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `WriteState` writes the component's current state to a stream through the writer (511) object `writer`. Values for all published properties of the component can be written to the stream. Normally there is no need to call `WriteState` directly. The streaming system calls `WriteState` itself.

The `TComponent` (366) implementation of `WriteState` simply calls `TWriter.WriteData` (511). Descendant classes can, however, override `WriteState` to provide additional processing of stream data.

See also: `ReadState` (366), `TStream.WriteComponent` (450), `TWriter.WriteData` (511)

### 4.47.7 TComponent.Create

**Synopsis:** Creates a new instance of the component.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of a `TComponent` class. If `AOwner` is not `Nil`, the new component attempts to insert itself in the list of owned components of the owner.

See also: `Insert` (366), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.8 TComponent.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the component.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` sends a `opRemove` notification to all components in the free-notification list. After that, all owned components are destroyed by calling `DestroyComponents` (369) (and hence removed from the list of owned components). When this is done, the component removes itself from its owner's child component list. After that, the parent's `destroy` method is called.

See also: Notification (368), Owner (376), `DestroyComponents` (369), Components (374)

#### 4.47.9 TComponent.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard `BeforeDestruction`.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is overridden by `TComponent` to set the `csDestroying` flag in `TComponent.ComponentState` (375)

See also: `TComponent.ComponentState` (375)

#### 4.47.10 TComponent.DestroyComponents

Synopsis: Destroy child components.

Declaration: `procedure DestroyComponents`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DestroyComponents` calls the destructor of all owned components, till no more components are left in the Components (374) array.

Calling the destructor of an owned component has as the effect that the component will remove itself from the list of owned components, if nothing has disrupted the sequence of destructors.

Errors: If an overridden 'destroy' method does not call it's inherited destructor or raises an exception, it's `TComponent.Destroy` (369) destructor will not be called, which may result in an endless loop.

See also: `Destroy` (369), Components (374)

#### 4.47.11 TComponent.Destroying

Synopsis: Called when the component is being destroyed

Declaration: `procedure Destroying`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroying` sets the `csDestroying` flag in the component's state (366) property, and does the same for all owned components.

It is not necessary to call `Destroying` directly, the destructor `Destroy` (369) does this automatically.

See also: State (366), `Destroy` (369)

#### 4.47.12 TComponent.ExecuteAction

Synopsis: Standard action execution method.

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `ExecuteAction` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: `TBasicAction` (330), `TBasicAction.ExecuteAction` (330), `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` (331), `TComponent.UpdateAction` (373)

#### 4.47.13 TComponent.FindComponent

Synopsis: Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.

Declaration: `function FindComponent(const AName: string) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindComponent` searches the component with name `AName` in the list of owned components. If `AName` is empty, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Components` (374), `Name` (376)

#### 4.47.14 TComponent.FreeNotification

Synopsis: Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure FreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeNotification` inserts `AComponent` in the freenotification list. When the component is destroyed, the `Notification` (368) method is called for all components in the freenotification list.

See also: `Components` (374), `Notification` (368), `TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification` (370)

#### 4.47.15 TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification

Synopsis: Remove a component from the Free Notification list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveFreeNotification` removes `AComponent` from the freenotification list.

See also: `TComponent.FreeNotification` (370)

#### 4.47.16 TComponent.FreeOnRelease

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` interface.

Declaration: `procedure FreeOnRelease`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not yet implemented.

#### 4.47.17 TComponent.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TComponentEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1581) interface for `TComponent`. It creates a `TComponentEnumerator` (377) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1581) interface. The enumerator enumerates all child components of the component instance.

See also: `TComponentEnumerator` (377), `IEnumerator` (1581), `IEnumerable` (1581)

#### 4.47.18 TComponent.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns the name path of this component.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNamePath` returns the name of the component as it will be shown in the object inspector.

`TComponent` overrides `GetNamePath` so it returns the `Name` (376) property of the component.

See also: `Name` (376), `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (428)

#### 4.47.19 TComponent.GetParentComponent

Synopsis: Returns the parent component.

Declaration: `function GetParentComponent : TComponent; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetParentComponent` can be implemented to return the parent component of this component. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `Nil`. Descendant classes must override this method to return the visual parent of the component.

See also: `HasParent` (372), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.20 TComponent.HasParent

Synopsis: Does the component have a parent ?

Declaration: `function HasParent : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasParent` can be implemented to return whether the parent of the component exists. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `False`, and should be overridden by descendant classes to return `True` when a parent is available. If `HasParent` returns `True`, then `GetParentComponent` (371) will return the parent component.

See also: `HasParent` (372), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.21 TComponent.InsertComponent

Synopsis: Insert the given component in the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure InsertComponent (AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertComponent` attempts to insert `AComponent` in the list with owned components. It first calls `ValidateComponent` (366) to see whether the component can be inserted. It then checks whether there are no name conflicts by calling `ValidateRename` (366). If neither of these checks have raised an exception the component is inserted, and notified of the insert.

See also: `RemoveComponent` (372), `Insert` (366), `ValidateContainer` (366), `ValidateRename` (366), `Notification` (368)

#### 4.47.22 TComponent.RemoveComponent

Synopsis: Remove the given component from the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveComponent (AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveComponent` will send an `opRemove` notification to `AComponent` and will then proceed to remove `AComponent` from the list of owned components.

See also: `InsertComponent` (372), `Remove` (366), `ValidateRename` (366), `Notification` (368)

#### 4.47.23 TComponent.SafeCallException

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` Interface.

Declaration: `function SafeCallException (ExceptObject: TObject;  
ExceptAddr: CodePointer) : HRESULT; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but not implemented.

#### 4.47.24 TComponent.SetSubComponent

Synopsis: Sets the `csSubComponent` style.

Declaration: `procedure SetSubComponent (ASubComponent : Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetSubComponent` includes `csSubComponent` in the `ComponentStyle` (375) property if `ASubComponent` is `True`, and excludes it again if `ASubComponent` is `False`.

See also: `TComponent.ComponentStyle` (375)

#### 4.47.25 TComponent.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Updates the state of an action.

Declaration: `function UpdateAction (Action : TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `UpdateTarget` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: `TBasicAction` (330), `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget` (331), `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` (331), `TBasicAction.ExecuteAction` (330)

#### 4.47.26 TComponent.IsImplementorOf

Synopsis: Checks if the current component is the implementor of the interface

Declaration: `function IsImplementorOf (const Intf : IInterface) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsImplementorOf` returns `True` if the current component implements the given interface. The interface should descend from `IInterfaceComponentReference` (307) and the `GetComponent` method should return the current instance.

See also: `IInterfaceComponentReference` (307)

#### 4.47.27 TComponent.ReferenceInterface

Synopsis: Interface implementation of Notification

Declaration: `procedure ReferenceInterface (const intf : IInterface; op : TOperation)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReferenceInterface` can be used to notify an interface of a component operation: it is the equivalent of the `TComponent.Notification` (368) method of `TComponent` for interfaces. If the interface implements `IInterfaceComponentReference` (307), then the component that implements the interface is notified of the given operation `Op`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponent.Notification` (368), `IInterfaceComponentReference` (307)

#### 4.47.28 TComponent.ComObject

Synopsis: Interface reference implemented by the component

Declaration: `Property ComObject : IUnknown`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ComObject` returns the COM interface represented by the component. If the component does not represent a COM interface, reading this property will raise an `EComponentError` (300).

See also: `EComponentError` (300)

#### 4.47.29 TComponent.Components

Synopsis: Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components.

Declaration: `Property Components[Index: Integer]: TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Components` provides indexed access to the list of owned components. `Index` can range from 0 to `ComponentCount-1` (374).

See also: `ComponentCount` (374), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.30 TComponent.ComponentCount

Synopsis: Count of owned components

Declaration: `Property ComponentCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ComponentCount` returns the number of components that the current component owns. It can be used to determine the valid index range in the `Component` (374) array.

See also: `Components` (374), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.31 TComponent.ComponentIndex

Synopsis: Index of component in it's owner's list.

Declaration: `Property ComponentIndex : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ComponentIndex` is the index of the current component in its owner's list of components. If the component has no owner, the value of this property is -1.

See also: `Components` (374), `ComponentCount` (374), `Owner` (376)

**4.47.32 TComponent.ComponentState**

Synopsis: Current component's state.

Declaration: `Property ComponentState : TComponentState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ComponentState` indicates the current state of the component. It is a set of flags which indicate the various stages in the lifetime of a component. The following values can occur in this set:

Table 4.25: Component states

| Flag                            | Meaning   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code>csLoading</code>          | The component is being loaded from stream               |
| <code>csReading</code>          | Component properties are being read from stream.        |
| <code>csWriting</code>          | Component properties are being written to stream.       |
| <code>csDestroying</code>       | The component or one of it's owners is being destroyed. |
| <code>csAncestor</code>         | The component is being streamed as part of a frame      |
| <code>csUpdating</code>         | The component is being updated                          |
| <code>csFixups</code>           | References to other components are being resolved       |
| <code>csFreeNotification</code> | The component has freenotifications.                    |
| <code>csInline</code>           | The component is being loaded as part of a frame        |
| <code>csDesignInstance</code>   | ? not used.   |

The component state is set by various actions such as reading it from stream, destroying it etc.

See also: [SetAncestor \(366\)](#), [SetDesigning \(366\)](#), [SetInline \(366\)](#), [SetDesignInstance \(366\)](#), [Updating \(366\)](#), [Updated \(366\)](#), [Loaded \(366\)](#)

**4.47.33 TComponent.ComponentStyle**

Synopsis: Current component's style.

Declaration: `Property ComponentStyle : TComponentStyle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Current component's style.

**4.47.34 TComponent.DesignInfo**

Synopsis: Information for IDE designer.

Declaration: `Property DesignInfo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `DesignInformation` can be used by an IDE to store design information in the component. It should not be used by an application programmer.

See also: [Tag \(376\)](#)

#### 4.47.35 TComponent.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of this component.

Declaration: `Property Owner : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Owner` returns the owner of this component. The owner cannot be set except by explicitly inserting the component in another component's owned components list using that component's `InsertComponent` (372) method, or by removing the component from it's owner's owned component list using the `RemoveComponent` (372) method.

See also: `Components` (374), `InsertComponent` (372), `RemoveComponent` (372)

#### 4.47.36 TComponent.VCLComObject

Synopsis: Not implemented.

Declaration: `Property VCLComObject : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `VCLComObject` is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

#### 4.47.37 TComponent.Name

Synopsis: Name of the component.

Declaration: `Property Name : TComponentName`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the name of the component. This name should be a valid identifier, i.e. must start with a letter or underscore, and can contain only letters, numbers and the underscore character. When attempting to set the name of a component, the name will be checked for validity. Furthermore, when a component is owned by another component, the name must be either empty or must be unique among the child component names.

By "letters", 7-bit letters are meant.

Errors: Attempting to set the name to an invalid value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: `ValidateRename` (366), `Owner` (376)

#### 4.47.38 TComponent.Tag

Synopsis: Tag value of the component.

Declaration: `Property Tag : PtrInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Tag` can be used to store an integer value in the component. This value is streamed together with all other published properties. It can be used for instance to quickly identify a component in an event handler.

See also: `Name` ([376](#))

## 4.48 TComponentEnumerator

### 4.48.1 Description

`TComponentEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` ([1581](#)) interface for the `TComponent` ([366](#)) class, so the `TComponent` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop over the `TComponent.Components` ([374](#)) child components of the component. It is returned by the `TComponent.GetEnumerator` ([371](#)) method of `TComponent`.

See also: `TComponent` ([366](#)), `TComponent.GetEnumerator` ([371](#)), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` ([1581](#))

### 4.48.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                  | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">377</a> | <code>Create</code>     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TComponentEnumerator</code>                             |
| <a href="#">377</a> | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Return the current pointer in the list   |
| <a href="#">378</a> | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component. |

### 4.48.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access         | Description                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">378</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.48.4 TComponentEnumerator.Create

**Synopsis:** Initialize a new instance of `TComponentEnumerator`

**Declaration:** `constructor Create (AComponent: TComponent)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` initializes a new instance of `TComponentEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the component `AComponent` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TComponent` ([366](#))

### 4.48.5 TComponentEnumerator.GetCurrent

**Synopsis:** Return the current pointer in the list

**Declaration:** `function GetCurrent : TComponent`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `GetCurrent` returns the current `TComponent` ([366](#)) child component instance in the enumerator.

**Errors:** No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([378](#)), `TComponent.Components` ([374](#))

### 4.48.6 TComponentEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next child in the components child components, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last child in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` (377)

### 4.48.7 TComponentEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` (377) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` (377)

## 4.49 TCustomMemoryStream

### 4.49.1 Description

`TCustomMemoryStream` is the parent class for streams that stored their data in memory. It introduces all needed functions to handle reading from and navigating through the memory, and introduces a `Memory` (380) property which points to the memory area where the stream data is kept.

The only thing which `TCustomMemoryStream` does not do is obtain memory to store data when writing data or the writing of data. This functionality is implemented in descendant streams such as `TMemoryStream` (416). The reason for this approach is that this way it is possible to create e.g. read-only descendants of `TCustomMemoryStream` that point to a fixed part in memory which can be read from, but not written to.

**Remark** Since `TCustomMemoryStream` is an abstract class, do not create instances of `TMemoryStream` directly. Instead, create instances of descendants such as `TMemoryStream` (416).

See also: `TMemoryStream` (416), `TStream` (445)

### 4.49.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                    | Description   |
|------|---------------------------|---|
| 379  | <code>Read</code>         | Reads <code>Count</code> bytes from the stream into <code>buffer</code> . |
| 380  | <code>SaveToFile</code>   | Writes the contents of the stream to a file.                              |
| 379  | <code>SaveToStream</code> | Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.               |
| 379  | <code>Seek</code>         | Sets a new position in the stream.  |

### 4.49.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                                    |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">380</a> | Memory     | r      | Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream. |

### 4.49.4 TCustomMemoryStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads `Count` bytes from the stream into `buffer`.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the stream into the memory pointed to by `buffer`. It returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method overrides the `TStream.Read` ([446](#)) method of `TStream` ([445](#)). It will read as much bytes as are still available in the memory area pointer to by `Memory` ([380](#)). After the bytes are read, the internal stream position is updated.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([380](#)), `TStream.Read` ([446](#))

### 4.49.5 TCustomMemoryStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Sets a new position in the stream.

**Declaration:** `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Seek` overrides the abstract `TStream.Seek` ([447](#)) method. It simply updates the internal stream position, and returns the new position.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether the new position is still a valid position, i.e. whether the position is still within the range `0..Size`. Attempting a seek outside the valid memory range of the stream may result in an exception at the next read or write operation.

See also: `TStream.Position` ([454](#)), `TStream.Size` ([455](#)), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([380](#))

### 4.49.6 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `SaveToStream` writes the contents of the memory stream to `Stream`. The content of `Stream` is not cleared first. The current position of the memory stream is not changed by this action.

**Remark** This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` ([449](#)) method:

```
Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self, Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `SaveToStream` writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when writing to `Stream` an `EStreamError` ([303](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile` ([380](#)), `TStream.CopyFrom` ([449](#))

### 4.49.7 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the stream to a file.

**Declaration:** `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the stream to a file with name `FileName`. It simply creates a filestream and writes the contents of the memorystream to this file stream using `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (379).

**Remark** This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` (449) method:

```
Stream:=TFileStream.Create(fmCreate,FileName);
Seek(0,soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self,Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when creating or writing to the file, an `EStreamError` (303) exception may occur.

**See also:** `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (379), `TFileStream` (386), `TStream.CopyFrom` (449)

### 4.49.8 TCustomMemoryStream.Memory

**Synopsis:** Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Memory : Pointer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Memory` points to the memory area where stream keeps it's data. The property is read-only, so the pointer cannot be set this way.

**Remark** Do not write to the memory pointed to by `Memory`, since the memory content may be read-only, and thus writing to it may cause errors.

**See also:** `TStream.Size` (455)

## 4.50 TDataModule

### 4.50.1 Description

`TDataModule` is a container for non-visual objects which can be used in an IDE to group non-visual objects which can be used by various other containers (forms) in a project. Notably, data access components are typically stored on a datamodule. Web components and services can also be implemented as descendants of datamodules.

`TDataModule` introduces some events which make it easier to program, and provides the needed streaming capabilities for persistent storage.

An IDE will typically allow to create a descendant of `TDataModule` which contains non-visual components in it's published property list.

**See also:** `TDataModule.OnCreate` (383)

### 4.50.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method            | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| <a href="#">382</a> | AfterConstruction | Overrides standard TObject ( <a href="#">1587</a> ) behaviour. |
| <a href="#">382</a> | BeforeDestruction |  |
| <a href="#">381</a> | Create            | Create a new instance of a TDataModule.                        |
| <a href="#">381</a> | CreateNew         |  |
| <a href="#">382</a> | Destroy           | Destroys the TDataModule instance.                             |

### 4.50.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties     | Access | Description   |
|---------------------|----------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">382</a> | DesignOffset   | rw     | Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.    |
| <a href="#">383</a> | DesignPPI      | rw     | Design Time PPI   |
| <a href="#">383</a> | DesignSize     | rw     | Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.        |
| <a href="#">384</a> | OldCreateOrder | rw     | Determines when OnCreate and OnDestroy are triggered.   |
| <a href="#">383</a> | OnCreate       | rw     | Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.   |
| <a href="#">383</a> | OnDestroy      | rw     | Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed. |

### 4.50.4 TDataModule.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TDataModule.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDataModule` and calls `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([381](#)). After that it reads the published properties from a stream using `InitInheritedComponent` ([291](#)) if a descendant class is instantiated. If the `OldCreateOrder` ([384](#)) property is `True`, the `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([383](#)) event is called.

Errors: An exception can be raised during the streaming operation.

See also: `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([381](#))

### 4.50.5 TDataModule.CreateNew

Synopsis:

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent)`  
`constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; CreateMode: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateNew` creates a new instance of the class, but bypasses the streaming mechanism. The `CreateMode` parameter (by default zero) is not used in `TDataModule`. If the `AddDataModule` ([284](#)) handler is set, then it is called, with the newly created instance as an argument.

See also: `TDataModule.Create` ([381](#)), `AddDataModule` ([284](#)), `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([383](#))

#### 4.50.6 TDataModule.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TDataModule instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the TDataModule instance. If the `OldCreateOrder` (384) property is `True` the `OnDestroy` (383) event handler is called prior to destroying the data module.

Before calling the inherited `destroy`, the `RemoveDataModule` (285) handler is called if it is set, and `Self` is passed as a parameter.

Errors: An event can be raised during the `OnDestroy` event handler.

See also: `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (383), `RemoveDataModule` (285)

#### 4.50.7 TDataModule.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard TObject (1587) behaviour.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` calls the `OnCreate` (383) handler if the `OldCreateOrder` (384) property is `False`.

See also: `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (384), `TDataModule.OnCreate` (383)

#### 4.50.8 TDataModule.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` calls the `OnDestroy` (383) handler if the `OldCreateOrder` (384) property is `False`.

See also: `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (384), `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (383)

#### 4.50.9 TDataModule.DesignOffset

Synopsis: Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: `Property DesignOffset : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `DesignOffset` is the position of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: `TDataModule.DesignSize` (383)

#### 4.50.10 TDataModule.DesignSize

Synopsis: Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: `Property DesignSize : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DesignSize` is the size of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: `TDataModule.DesignOffset` ([382](#))

#### 4.50.11 TDataModule.DesignPPI

Synopsis: Design Time PPI

Declaration: `Property DesignPPI : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DesignPPI` exists for the benefit of graphical designers, to store the PPI at which the module was designed. It is not used in FPC itself.

#### 4.50.12 TDataModule.OnCreate

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.

Declaration: `Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `OnCreate` event is triggered when the datamodule is created and streamed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the `OldCreateOrder` ([384](#)) property.

See also: `TDataModule.Create` ([381](#)), `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([381](#)), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` ([384](#))

#### 4.50.13 TDataModule.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed.

Declaration: `Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `OnDestroy` event is triggered when the datamodule is destroyed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the `OldCreateOrder` ([384](#)) property.

See also: `TDataModule.Destroy` ([382](#)), `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([383](#)), `TDataModule.Create` ([381](#)), `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([381](#)), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` ([384](#))

#### 4.50.14 TDataModule.OldCreateOrder

**Synopsis:** Determines when `OnCreate` and `OnDestroy` are triggered.

**Declaration:** `Property OldCreateOrder : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `published`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `OldCreateOrder` determines when exactly the `OnCreate` (383) and `OnDestroy` (383) event handlers are called.

If set to `True`, then the `OnCreate` event handler is called after the data module was streamed. If it is set to `False`, then the handler is called prior to the streaming process.

If set to `True`, then the `OnDestroy` event handler is called before the data module is removed from the streaming system. If it is set to `False`, then the handler is called after the data module was removed from the streaming process.

See also: `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (383), `TDataModule.OnCreate` (383), `TDataModule.Destroy` (382), `TDataModule.Create` (381), `TDataModule.CreateNew` (381), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (384)

### 4.51 TFiler

#### 4.51.1 Description

Class responsible for streaming of components.

#### 4.51.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                            | Description      |
|------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| 385  | <code>DefineBinaryProperty</code> |                  |
| 384  | <code>DefineProperty</code>       |                  |
| 385  | <code>FlushBuffer</code>          | Flush the buffer |

#### 4.51.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties                  | Access          | Description  |
|------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| 386  | <code>Ancestor</code>       | <code>rw</code> | Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.    |
| 386  | <code>IgnoreChildren</code> | <code>rw</code> | Determines whether children will be streamed as well.                |
| 385  | <code>LookupRoot</code>     | <code>r</code>  | Component used to look up ancestor components.                       |
| 385  | <code>Root</code>           | <code>rw</code> | The root component is the initial component which is being streamed. |

#### 4.51.4 TFiler.DefineProperty

**Synopsis:**

**Declaration:** `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; ReadData: TReaderProc; WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:**

### 4.51.5 TFiler.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
ReadData: TStreamProc;  
WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

### 4.51.6 TFiler.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer by calling the `flushbuffer` on the driver. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer` ([317](#))

### 4.51.7 TFileer.Root

Synopsis: The root component is the initial component which is being streamed.

Declaration: `Property Root : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The streaming process will stream a component and all the components which it owns. The `Root` component is the component which is initially streamed.

See also: `LookupRoot` ([385](#))

### 4.51.8 TFileer.LookupRoot

Synopsis: Component used to look up ancestor components.

Declaration: `Property LookupRoot : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: When comparing inherited component's values against parent values, the values are compared with the component in `LookupRoot`. Initially, it is set to `Root` ([385](#)).

See also: `Root` ([385](#))

### 4.51.9 TFile.Ancestor

Synopsis: Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.

Declaration: `Property Ancestor : TPersistent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: When streaming a component, this is the parent component. Only properties that differ from the parent's property value will be streamed.

See also: [Root \(385\)](#), [LookupRoot \(385\)](#)

### 4.51.10 TFile.IgnoreChildren

Synopsis: Determines whether children will be streamed as well.

Declaration: `Property IgnoreChildren : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: By default, all children (i.e. owned objects) will also be streamed when streaming a component. This property can be used to prevent owned objects from being streamed.

## 4.52 TFileStream

### 4.52.1 Description

`TFileStream` is a `TStream` ([445](#)) descendant that stores or reads it's data from a named file in the file system of the operating system.

To this end, it overrides some of the methods in `TStream` and implements them for the case of files on disk, and it adds the `FileName` ([388](#)) property to the list of public properties.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` ([387](#)), `TStream` ([445](#))

### 4.52.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method  | Description               |
|---------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| <a href="#">387</a> | Create  | Creates a file stream.    |
| <a href="#">387</a> | Destroy | Destroys the file stream. |

### 4.52.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                 |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">388</a> | FileName   | r      | The filename of the stream. |

#### 4.52.4 TFileStream.Create

**Synopsis:** Creates a file stream.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word)`  
`constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word;`  
`Rights: Cardinal)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of a `TFileStream` class. It opens the file `AFileName` with mode `Mode`, which can have one of the following values:

Table 4.26:

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>fmCreate</code>        | <code>TFileStream.Create</code> (387) creates a new file if needed.        |
| <code>fmOpenRead</code>      | <code>TFileStream.Create</code> (387) opens a file with read-only access.  |
| <code>fmOpenWrite</code>     | <code>TFileStream.Create</code> (387) opens a file with write-only access. |
| <code>fmOpenReadWrite</code> | <code>TFileStream.Create</code> (387) opens a file with read-write access. |

These constants (except `fmCreate`) can be OR-ed with the following to specify how sharing and file locking is supposed to be handled:

Table 4.27:

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>fmShareCompat</code>    | Open file in DOS share-compatibility mode   |
| <code>fmShareExclusive</code> | Lock file for exclusive use                 |
| <code>fmShareDenyWrite</code> | Lock file so other processes can only read. |
| <code>fmShareDenyRead</code>  | Lock file so other processes cannot read.   |
| <code>fmShareDenyNone</code>  | Do not lock file.                           |

Note that sharing is advisory on Unix-like platforms.

After the file has been opened in the requested mode and a handle has been obtained from the operating system, the inherited constructor is called.

**Errors:** If the file could not be opened in the requested mode, an `EFOpenError` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream` (445), `TFileStream.FileName` (388), `THandleStream.Create` (397)

#### 4.52.5 TFileStream.Destroy

**Synopsis:** Destroys the file stream.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy;` Override

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Destroy` closes the file (causing possible buffered data to be written to disk) and then calls the inherited destructor.

Do not call `destroy` directly, instead call the `Free` method. `Destroy` does not check whether `Self` is `nil`, while `Free` does.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` (387)

### 4.52.6 TFileStream.FileName

Synopsis: The filename of the stream.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FileName` is the name of the file that the stream reads from or writes to. It is the name as passed in the constructor of the stream; it cannot be changed. To write to another file, the stream must be freed and created again with the new filename.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` (387)

## 4.53 TFPList

### 4.53.1 Description

`TFPList` is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. Contrary to `TList` (406), `TFPList` has no notification mechanism. If no notification mechanism is used, it is better to use `TFPList` instead of `TList`, as the performance of `TFPList` is much higher.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a `TStrings` (465) descendant such as `TStringList` (460). To manage general objects, a `TCollection` (356) class exists, from which a descendant can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

See also: `TStrings` (465), `TCollection` (356)

### 4.53.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                     | Description  |
|------|----------------------------|--|
| 389  | <code>Add</code>           | Adds a new pointer to the list.  |
| 389  | <code>AddList</code>       | Add all pointers from another list   |
| 393  | <code>Assign</code>        | <code>Assign</code> performs the given operation on the list.              |
| 389  | <code>Clear</code>         | Clears the pointer list.   |
| 390  | <code>Delete</code>        | Removes a pointer from the list.   |
| 389  | <code>Destroy</code>       | Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. |
| 390  | <code>Error</code>         | Raises an <code>EListError</code> (301) exception.                         |
| 390  | <code>Exchange</code>      | Exchanges two pointers in the list.  |
| 390  | <code>Expand</code>        | Increases the capacity of the list if needed.                              |
| 391  | <code>Extract</code>       | Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.                    |
| 391  | <code>First</code>         | Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.                             |
| 394  | <code>ForEachCall</code>   | Call a procedure or method for each pointer in the list.                   |
| 391  | <code>GetEnumerator</code> | Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance                                |
| 391  | <code>IndexOf</code>       | Returns the index of a given pointer.                                      |
| 392  | <code>IndexOfItem</code>   | Search an item in the list   |
| 392  | <code>Insert</code>        | Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.                     |
| 392  | <code>Last</code>          | Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.                              |
| 392  | <code>Move</code>          | Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.                  |
| 393  | <code>Pack</code>          | Removes <code>Nil</code> pointers from the list and frees unused memory.   |
| 393  | <code>Remove</code>        | Removes a value from the list.   |
| 393  | <code>Sort</code>          | Sorts the pointers in the list.  |

### 4.53.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">394</a> | Capacity   | rw     | Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list. |
| <a href="#">394</a> | Count      | rw     | Current number of pointers in the list.                                    |
| <a href="#">395</a> | Items      | rw     | Provides access to the pointers in the list.                               |
| <a href="#">395</a> | List       | r      | Memory array where pointers are stored.                                    |

### 4.53.4 TFPList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

### 4.53.5 TFPList.AddList

Synopsis: Add all pointers from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (AList: TFPList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddList` adds all pointers from `AList` to the list. If a pointer is already present, it is added a second time.

See also: `TFPList.Assign` ([393](#)), `TList.AddList` ([409](#))

### 4.53.6 TFPList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Expand` ([390](#)) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` ([392](#)) method instead.

See also: `Delete` ([390](#)), `Grow` ([406](#)), `Insert` ([392](#))

### 4.53.7 TFPList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `Destroy` ([389](#))

#### 4.53.8 TFPList.Delete

**Synopsis:** Removes a pointer from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

#### 4.53.9 TFPList.Error

**Synopsis:** Raises an `EListError` ([301](#)) exception.

**Declaration:** `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Error` raises an `EListError` ([301](#)) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

#### 4.53.10 TFPList.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchanges two pointers in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` ([301](#)) exception will be raised.

#### 4.53.11 TFPList.Expand

**Synopsis:** Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

**Declaration:** `function Expand : TFPList`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `Capacity` ([394](#))

#### 4.53.12 TFPList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` searches for the first occurrence of `Item` in the list and deletes it from the list. If `Item` was found, it's value is returned. If `Item` was not found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPList.Delete` ([390](#))

#### 4.53.13 TFPList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Last` ([392](#))

#### 4.53.14 TFPList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPListEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` ([1581](#)) interface for `TFPList`. It creates a `TFPListEnumerator` ([395](#)) instance and returns it's `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)) interface.

See also: `TFPListEnumerator` ([395](#)), `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)), `IEnumerable` ([1581](#))

#### 4.53.15 TFPList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

#### 4.53.16 TFPList.IndexOfItem

Synopsis: Search an item in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOfItem(Item: Pointer; Direction: TDirection) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfItem` has the same function as the `IndexOf` (264) function: it searches for `Item` in the list, and returns the index of the first found matching pointer. If none is found, -1 is returned.

In difference with the `IndexOf` function, it accepts a parameter `Direction` indicating the search direction: from the beginning of the list till the end of the list, or from the end of the list till the beginning. The `IndexOf` function starts at the beginning of the list. The search direction is only important if the item can appear multiple times in the list.

See also: `TFPList.TDirection` (??), `TFPList.IndexOf` (391)

#### 4.53.17 TFPList.Insert

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `Add` (389), `Delete` (390)

#### 4.53.18 TFPList.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `First` (391)

#### 4.53.19 TFPList.Move

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`

If `CurIndex` or `Newindex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` (390)

### 4.53.20 TFPList.Assign

Synopsis: Assign performs the given operation on the list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(ListA: TFPList; AOperator: TListAssignOp;  
ListB: TFPList)`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign can be used to merge or assign lists. It is an extended version of the usual `TPersistent.Assign` mechanism. The arguments `ListA` and `ListB` are used as sources of pointers to add or remove elements from the current list, depending on the operation `AOperation`. The available operations are documented in the `TListAssignOp` (273) type.

See also: `TFPList.Add` (389), `TFPList.Clear` (389)

### 4.53.21 TFPList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Remove searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `Delete` (390), `IndexOf` (391), `Insert` (392)

### 4.53.22 TFPList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes `Nil` pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: Pack removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TFPList.Clear` (389)

### 4.53.23 TFPList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.

- if the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

#### 4.53.24 TFPList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure or method for each pointer in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListCallback; arg: pointer)`  
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListStaticCallback; arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` iterates over all pointers in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the pointer and the additional `arg` data pointer. `Proc2Call` can be a method or a static procedure.

Errors: None.

See also: `TListStaticCallback` ([274](#)), `TListCallback` ([274](#))

#### 4.53.25 TFPList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` ([389](#)) or `insert` ([392](#)), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `SetCapacity` ([388](#)), `Count` ([394](#))

#### 4.53.26 TFPList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.

### 4.53.27 TFPList.Items

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TFPList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

### 4.53.28 TFPList.List

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

## 4.54 TFPListEnumerator

### 4.54.1 Description

`TFPListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581) interface for the `TFPList` (388) class, so the `TFPList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TFPList.GetEnumerator` (391) method of `TFPList`.

See also: `TFPList` (388), `TFPList.GetEnumerator` (391), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581)

### 4.54.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                  | Description   |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">395</a> | <code>Create</code>     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TFPListEnumerator</code>           |
| <a href="#">396</a> | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Return the current pointer in the list                                |
| <a href="#">396</a> | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list. |

### 4.54.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access         | Description                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">396</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.54.4 TFPListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TFPListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AList: TFPList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFPListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the list `AList` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TFPList` ([388](#))

#### 4.54.5 `TFPListEnumerator.GetCurrent`

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current pointer in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([396](#))

#### 4.54.6 `TFPListEnumerator.MoveNext`

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([396](#))

#### 4.54.7 `TFPListEnumerator.Current`

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([396](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([396](#))

## 4.55 THandleStream

### 4.55.1 Description

`THandleStream` is an abstract descendant of the `TStream` (445) class that provides methods for a stream to handle all reading and writing to and from a handle, provided by the underlying OS. To this end, it overrides the `Read` (397) and `Write` (398) methods of `TStream`.

#### Remark

- `THandleStream` does not obtain a handle from the OS by itself, it just handles reading and writing to such a handle by wrapping the system calls for reading and writing; Descendant classes should obtain a handle from the OS by themselves and pass it on in the inherited constructor.
- Contrary to Delphi, no seek is implemented for `THandleStream`, since pipes and sockets do not support this. The seek is implemented in descendant methods that support it.

See also: `TStream` (445), `TFileStream` (386)

### 4.55.2 Method overview

| Page | Method              | Description                              |
|------|---------------------|--|
| 397  | <code>Create</code> | Create a handlestream from an OS Handle. |
| 397  | <code>Read</code>   | Overrides standard read method.          |
| 398  | <code>Seek</code>   | Overrides the <code>Seek</code> method.  |
| 398  | <code>Write</code>  | Overrides standard write method.         |

### 4.55.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties          | Access | Description                  |
|------|---------------------|--------|------------------------------|
| 398  | <code>Handle</code> | r      | The OS handle of the stream. |

### 4.55.4 THandleStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a handlestream from an OS Handle.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AHandle: THandle)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `THandleStream` class. It stores `AHandle` in an internal variable and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TStream` (445)

### 4.55.5 THandleStream.Read

Synopsis: Overrides standard read method.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Read` overrides the `Read` (446) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (398) property to read the `Count` bytes into `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while reading, the number of bytes actually read will be returned.

**Errors:** If the operating system reports an error while reading from the handle, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `THandleStream.Write` (398), `THandleStream.Handle` (398)

#### 4.55.6 THandleStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Overrides standard write method.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Write` overrides the `Write` (447) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (398) property to write the `Count` bytes from `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while writing, the number of bytes actually written will be returned.

**Errors:** If the operating system reports an error while writing to the handle, 0 is returned.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `THandleStream.Write` (398), `THandleStream.Handle` (398)

#### 4.55.7 THandleStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Overrides the `Seek` method.

**Declaration:** `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `seek` uses the `FileSeek` (1685) method to position the stream on the desired position. Note that handle stream descendants (notably pipes) can override the method to prevent the seek.

#### 4.55.8 THandleStream.Handle

**Synopsis:** The OS handle of the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Handle : THandle`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** `Handle` represents the Operating system handle to which reading and writing is done. The handle can be read only, i.e. it cannot be set after the `THandleStream` instance was created. It should be passed to the constructor `THandleStream.Create` (397)

**See also:** `THandleStream` (397), `THandleStream.Create` (397)

## 4.56 TInterfacedPersistent

### 4.56.1 Description

TInterfacedPersistent is a direct descendant of TPersistent (426) which implements the #rtl.system.IInterface (1367) interface. In particular, it implements the QueryInterface as a public method.

See also: IInterface (1367)

### 4.56.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces | Description                                  |
|----------------------|------------|--|
| <a href="#">1367</a> | IInterface | Basic interface for all COM based interfaces |

### 4.56.3 Method overview

| Page                | Method            | Description                                      |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| <a href="#">399</a> | AfterConstruction | Overrides the standard AfterConstruction method. |
| <a href="#">399</a> | QueryInterface    | Implementation of IInterface.QueryInterface      |

### 4.56.4 TInterfacedPersistent.QueryInterface

Synopsis: Implementation of IInterface.QueryInterface

Declaration: `function QueryInterface(const IID: TGuid; out Obj) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: QueryInterface simply calls GetInterface using the specified IID, and returns the correct values.

See also: TObject.GetInterface (1595)

### 4.56.5 TInterfacedPersistent.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Overrides the standard AfterConstruction method.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: AfterConstruction is overridden to do some extra interface housekeeping: a reference to the IInterface interface of the owning class is obtained (if it exists).

## 4.57 TInterfaceList

### 4.57.1 Description

TInterfaceList is a standard implementation of the IInterfaceList (307) interface. It uses a TThreadList (508) instance to store the list of interfaces.

See also: IInterfaceList (307), TList (406)

### 4.57.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                | Interfaces                  | Description                                     |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">307</a> | <code>IInterfaceList</code> | Interface for maintaining a list of interfaces. |

### 4.57.3 Method overview

| Page                | Method                     | Description  |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">402</a> | <code>Add</code>           | Add an interface to the list                                 |
| <a href="#">401</a> | <code>Clear</code>         | Removes all interfaces from the list.                        |
| <a href="#">400</a> | <code>Create</code>        | Create a new instance of <code>TInterfaceList</code>         |
| <a href="#">401</a> | <code>Delete</code>        | Delete an interface from the list.                           |
| <a href="#">400</a> | <code>Destroy</code>       | Destroys the list of interfaces                              |
| <a href="#">401</a> | <code>Exchange</code>      | Exchange 2 interfaces in the list                            |
| <a href="#">404</a> | <code>Expand</code>        | Expands the list   |
| <a href="#">401</a> | <code>First</code>         | Returns the first non- <code>Nil</code> element in the list. |
| <a href="#">402</a> | <code>GetEnumerator</code> | Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance                  |
| <a href="#">402</a> | <code>IndexOf</code>       | Returns the index of an interface.                           |
| <a href="#">402</a> | <code>Insert</code>        | Insert an interface to the list                              |
| <a href="#">403</a> | <code>Last</code>          | Returns the last non- <code>Nil</code> element in the list.  |
| <a href="#">403</a> | <code>Lock</code>          | Lock the list  |
| <a href="#">403</a> | <code>Remove</code>        | Remove an interface from the list                            |
| <a href="#">403</a> | <code>Unlock</code>        | UnLocks a locked list  |

### 4.57.4 Property overview

| Page                | Properties            | Access          | Description                                 |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---|
| <a href="#">404</a> | <code>Capacity</code> | <code>rw</code> | The current capacity of the list.           |
| <a href="#">404</a> | <code>Count</code>    | <code>rw</code> | The current number of elements in the list. |
| <a href="#">404</a> | <code>Items</code>    | <code>rw</code> | Array-based access to the list's items.     |

### 4.57.5 `TInterfaceList.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TInterfaceList`

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TInterfaceList` class. It sets up the internal structures needed to store the list of interfaces.

See also: `Destroy` ([400](#))

### 4.57.6 `TInterfaceList.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroys the list of interfaces

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first calls `Clear` ([401](#)) and then frees the `TInterfaceList` instance from memory.

Note that the `Clear` method decreases the reference count of all interfaces.

See also: `Create` ([400](#)), `Clear` ([401](#))

### 4.57.7 TInterfaceList.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all interfaces from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Clear` (310) method. It removes all interfaces from the list. It does this by setting each element in the list to `Nil`, in this way the reference count of each interface in the list is decreased.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Clear` (310), `Add` (402), `Destroy` (400), `TList.Clear` (409), `TFPList.Clear` (389)

### 4.57.8 TInterfaceList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an interface from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Delete` (310) method. It clears the slot first and then removes the element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Delete` (310), `TInterfaceList.Remove` (403), `TInterfaceList.Add` (402), `TList.Delete` (409), `TFPList.Delete` (390)

### 4.57.9 TInterfaceList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange 2 interfaces in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(index1: Integer; index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Exchange` (310) method. It exchanges the position of 2 interfaces in the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Exchange` (310), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (401), `TInterfaceList.Add` (402), `TList.Exchange` (410), `TFPList.Exchange` (390)

### 4.57.10 TInterfaceList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-`Nil` element in the list.

Declaration: `function First : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.First` (310) method. It returns the first non-`Nil` element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.First` (310), `TList.First` (411)

#### 4.57.11 TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TInterfaceListEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1581) interface for `TInterfaceList`. It creates a `TInterfaceListEnumerator` (405) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1581) interface. The enumerator enumerates all interfaces in the list.

See also: `TInterfaceListEnumerator` (405), `IEnumerator` (1581), `IEnumerable` (1581)

#### 4.57.12 TInterfaceList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of an interface.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (311) method. It returns the zero-based index in the list of the indicated interface, or -1 if the index is not in the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (311), `TList.IndexOf` (411)

#### 4.57.13 TInterfaceList.Add

Synopsis: Add an interface to the list

Declaration: `function Add(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Add` (311) method. It adds an interface to the list, and returns the location of the new element in the list. This operation will increment the reference count of the interface.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Add` (311), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (401), `TInterfaceList.Insert` (402), `TList.Add` (409), `TFPList.Add` (389)

#### 4.57.14 TInterfaceList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an interface to the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Insert` (311) method. It inserts an interface in the list at the indicated position. This operation will increment the reference count of the interface.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Insert` (311), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (401), `TInterfaceList.Add` (402), `TList.Insert` (411), `TFPList.Insert` (392)

**4.57.15 TInterfaceList.Last**

Synopsis: Returns the last non-`Nil` element in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Last` (311) method. It returns the last non-`Nil` element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Last` (311), `TInterfaceList.First` (401), `TList.Last` (412), `TFPList.Last` (392)

**4.57.16 TInterfaceList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Remove` (311) method. It removes the first occurrence of the interface from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Remove` (311), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (401), `TInterfaceList.IndexOf` (402), `TList.Remove` (412), `TFPList.Remove` (393)

**4.57.17 TInterfaceList.Lock**

Synopsis: Lock the list

Declaration: `procedure Lock`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Lock` locks the list. It is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Lock` (312) method. It limits access to the list to the current thread.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Lock` (312), `TInterfaceList.Unlock` (403), `TThreadList.LockList` (510)

**4.57.18 TInterfaceList.Unlock**

Synopsis: UnLocks a locked list

Declaration: `procedure Unlock`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unlock` unlocks the list. It is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (312) method. After a call to unlock, the current thread releases the list for manipulation by other threads.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (312), `TInterfaceList.Lock` (403), `TThreadList.UnlockList` (510)

### 4.57.19 TInterfaceList.Expand

Synopsis: Expands the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TInterfaceList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` calls the `expand` method from the internally used list. It returns itself.

See also: `TList.Expand` ([410](#))

### 4.57.20 TInterfaceList.Capacity

Synopsis: The current capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of elements that the list can contain without needing to allocate more memory.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` ([312](#)), `TInterfaceList.Count` ([404](#)), `TList.Capacity` ([413](#)), `TFPList.Capacity` ([394](#))

### 4.57.21 TInterfaceList.Count

Synopsis: The current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the number of elements in the list. This can include `Nil` elements. Note that the elements are zero-based, and thus are indexed from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Count` ([312](#)), `TInterfaceList.Items` ([404](#)), `TInterfaceList.Capacity` ([404](#)), `TList.Count` ([414](#)), `TFPList.Count` ([394](#))

### 4.57.22 TInterfaceList.Items

Synopsis: Array-based access to the list's items.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: IUnknown; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the elements in the list. Note that the elements are zero-based, and thus are indexed from 0 to `Count-1`. The items are read-write. It is not possible to add elements to the list by accessing an element with index larger or equal to `Count` ([404](#)).

See also: `IInterfaceList.Items` ([313](#)), `TInterfaceList.Count` ([404](#)), `TList.Items` ([414](#)), `TFPList.Items` ([395](#))

## 4.58 TInterfaceListEnumerator

### 4.58.1 Description

`TInterfaceListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581) interface for the `TInterfaceList` (399) class, so the `TInterfaceList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop over the `TInterfaceList.Components` (399) child components of the component. It is returned by the `TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator` (402) method of `TInterfaceList`.

See also: `TInterfaceList` (399), `TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator` (402), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581)

### 4.58.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                  | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">405</a> | <code>Create</code>     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TInterfaceListEnumerator</code>                         |
| <a href="#">405</a> | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Return the current pointer in the list   |
| <a href="#">406</a> | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component. |

### 4.58.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access         | Description                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">406</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.58.4 TInterfaceListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TInterfaceListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TInterfaceList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TInterfaceListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the component `AComponent` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TInterfaceList` (399)

### 4.58.5 TInterfaceListEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current interface in the `TInterfaceList` (399) list.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` (406), `TInterfaceList.Components` (399)

### 4.58.6 TInterfaceListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next interface in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last interface in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` (405)

### 4.58.7 TInterfaceListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` (405) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` (405)

## 4.59 TList

### 4.59.1 Description

`TList` is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. It has an event notification mechanism which allows to notify of list changes. This slows down some of `TList` mechanisms, and if no notification is used, `TFPList` (388) may be used instead.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a `TStrings` (465) descendant such as `TStringList` (460). To manage general objects, a `TCollection` (356) class exists, from which a descendant can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

See also: `TStrings` (465), `TCollection` (356)

### 4.59.2 Interfaces overview

| Page | Interfaces               | Description  |
|------|--------------------------|--|
| 305  | <code>IFPObserved</code> | Interface implemented by an object that can be observed. |

### 4.59.3 Method overview

| Page                | Method             | Description  |
|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| <a href="#">409</a> | Add                | Adds a new pointer to the list.  |
| <a href="#">409</a> | AddList            | Add all pointers from another list   |
| <a href="#">412</a> | Assign             | Copy the contents of other lists.  |
| <a href="#">409</a> | Clear              | Clears the pointer list.   |
| <a href="#">407</a> | Create             | Class to manage collections of pointers.                                   |
| <a href="#">409</a> | Delete             | Removes a pointer from the list.   |
| <a href="#">407</a> | Destroy            | Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. |
| <a href="#">410</a> | Error              | Raises an <code>EListError</code> ( <a href="#">301</a> ) exception.       |
| <a href="#">410</a> | Exchange           | Exchanges two pointers in the list.  |
| <a href="#">410</a> | Expand             | Increases the capacity of the list if needed.                              |
| <a href="#">410</a> | Extract            | Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.                    |
| <a href="#">411</a> | First              | Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.                             |
| <a href="#">408</a> | FPOAttachObserver  | Add an observer to the list of observers                                   |
| <a href="#">408</a> | FPODetachObserver  | Remove an observer from the list of observers                              |
| <a href="#">408</a> | FPONotifyObservers | Notify observers of changes in the list                                    |
| <a href="#">411</a> | GetEnumerator      | Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance                                |
| <a href="#">411</a> | IndexOf            | Returns the index of a given pointer.                                      |
| <a href="#">411</a> | Insert             | Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.                     |
| <a href="#">412</a> | Last               | Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.                              |
| <a href="#">412</a> | Move               | Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.                  |
| <a href="#">413</a> | Pack               | Removes <code>Nil</code> pointers from the list and frees unused memory.   |
| <a href="#">412</a> | Remove             | Removes a value from the list.   |
| <a href="#">413</a> | Sort               | Sorts the pointers in the list.  |

### 4.59.4 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">413</a> | Capacity   | rw     | Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list. |
| <a href="#">414</a> | Count      | rw     | Current number of pointers in the list.                                    |
| <a href="#">414</a> | Items      | rw     | Provides access to the pointers in the list.                               |
| <a href="#">414</a> | List       | r      | Memory array where pointers are stored.                                    |

### 4.59.5 TList.Create

Synopsis: Class to manage collections of pointers.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TList.Create` creates a new instance of `TList`. It clears the list and prepares it for use.

See also: `TList` ([406](#)), `TList.Destroy` ([407](#))

### 4.59.6 TList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

#### 4.59.7 TList.FPOAttachObserver

**Synopsis:** Add an observer to the list of observers

**Declaration:** `procedure FPOAttachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPOAttachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (305) interface in `TList`. It adds a new observer to the list of observers. Calling this multiple times will add the observed object multiple times to the list.

**Errors:** An `EObserver` exception may be raised if `AObject` does not implement the `IFPObserver` (306) interface.

See also: `IFPObserver` (306), `IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver` (305), `IFPObserved` (305)

#### 4.59.8 TList.FPODetachObserver

**Synopsis:** Remove an observer from the list of observers

**Declaration:** `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPODetachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (305) interface in `TList`. It removes the first found instance of the observer from the list of observers.

See also: `IFPObserved` (305), `IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver` (306), `IFPObserver` (306)

#### 4.59.9 TList.FPONotifyObservers

**Synopsis:** Notify observers of changes in the list

**Declaration:** `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;  
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPONotifyObservers` is called to notify observers of changes in the list. The following notifications are sent:

**ooAddItem** when a pointer is added. `Data` is the pointer that is added.

**ooDeleteItem** when a pointer is deleted or extracted. `Data` is the pointer that is deleted or extracted.

**ooChange** called when 2 pointers are exchanged.

**ooFree** Called when the list is freed.

See also: `FPODetachObserver` (264), `FPOAttachObserver` (264), `Add` (264), `Exchange` (264), `Delete` (264), `Extract` (264)

#### 4.59.10 TList.AddList

Synopsis: Add all pointers from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (AList: TList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all pointers from `AList` to the list. If a pointer is already present, it is added a second time.

See also: `TList.Assign` (412), `TFPList.AddList` (389)

#### 4.59.11 TList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Grow` (406) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` (411) method instead.

See also: `Delete` (409), `Grow` (406), `Insert` (411)

#### 4.59.12 TList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `Destroy` (407)

#### 4.59.13 TList.Delete

Synopsis: Removes a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete (Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

**4.59.14 TList.Error**

Synopsis: Raises an `EListError` (301) exception.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` (301) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

**4.59.15 TList.Exchange**

Synopsis: Exchanges two pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` (301) exception will be raised.

**4.59.16 TList.Expand**

Synopsis: Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

Declaration: `function Expand : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `Capacity` (413)

**4.59.17 TList.Extract**

Synopsis: Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` searched for an occurrence of `item`, and if a match is found, the match is deleted from the list. If no match is found, nothing is deleted. If `Item` was found, the result is `Item`. If `Item` was not found, the result is `Nil`. A `lnExtracted` notification event is triggered if an element is extracted from the list.

See also: `TList.Delete` (409), `TList.IndexOf` (411), `TList.Remove` (412)

**4.59.18 TList.First**

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Last` ([412](#))

**4.59.19 TList.GetEnumerator**

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TListEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` ([1581](#)) interface for `TList`. It creates a `TListEnumerator` ([414](#)) instance and returns it's `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)) interface.

See also: `TListEnumerator` ([414](#)), `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)), `IEnumerable` ([1581](#))

**4.59.20 TList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

**4.59.21 TList.Insert**

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` ([301](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Add` ([409](#)), `Delete` ([409](#))

#### 4.59.22 TList.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `First` ([411](#))

#### 4.59.23 TList.Move

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`.

If `CurIndex` or `Newindex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` ([301](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` ([410](#))

#### 4.59.24 TList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of other lists.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (ListA: TList; AOperator: TListAssignOp; ListB: TList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` can be used to merge or assign lists. It is an extended version of the usual `TPersistent.Assign` mechanism. The arguments `ListA` and `ListB` are used as sources of pointers to add or remove elements from the current list, depending on the operation `AOperation`. The available operations are documented in the `TListAssignOp` ([273](#)) type.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([409](#))

#### 4.59.25 TList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `Delete` ([409](#)), `IndexOf` ([411](#)), `Insert` ([411](#))

#### 4.59.26 TList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes Nil pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TList.Clear` (409)

#### 4.59.27 TList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

#### 4.59.28 TList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` (409) or `insert` (411), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `SetCapacity` (406), `Count` (414)

### 4.59.29 TList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.

### 4.59.30 TList.Items

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

### 4.59.31 TList.List

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

## 4.60 TListEnumerator

### 4.60.1 Description

`TListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581) interface for the `TList` (406) class, so the `TList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TList.GetEnumerator` (411) method of `TList`.

See also: `TList` (406), `TList.GetEnumerator` (411), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581)

### 4.60.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                  | Description   |
|------|-------------------------|---|
| 415  | <code>Create</code>     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TListEnumerator</code>             |
| 415  | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Return the current pointer in the list                                |
| 415  | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list. |

### 4.60.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                 |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">415</a> | Current    | r      | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.60.4 TListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the list `AList` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TList` ([406](#))

### 4.60.5 TListEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current pointer in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([415](#))

### 4.60.6 TListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([415](#))

### 4.60.7 TListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([415](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([415](#))

## 4.61 TMemoryStream

### 4.61.1 Description

`TMemoryStream` is a `TStream` (445) descendant that stores its data in memory. It descends directly from `TCustomMemoryStream` (378) and implements the necessary to allocate and de-allocate memory directly from the heap. It implements the `Write` (417) method which is missing in `TCustomMemoryStream`.

`TMemoryStream` also introduces methods to load the contents of another stream or a file into the memory stream.

It is not necessary to do any memory management manually, as the stream will allocate or de-allocate memory as needed. When the stream is freed, all allocated memory will be freed as well.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream` (378), `TStream` (445)

### 4.61.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                      | Description  |
|------|-----------------------------|--|
| 416  | <code>Clear</code>          | Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.      |
| 416  | <code>Destroy</code>        | Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream. |
| 417  | <code>LoadFromFile</code>   | Loads the contents of a file into memory.                  |
| 416  | <code>LoadFromStream</code> | Loads the contents of a stream into memory.                |
| 417  | <code>SetSize</code>        | Sets the size for the memory stream.                       |
| 417  | <code>Write</code>          | Writes data to the stream's memory.                        |

### 4.61.3 TMemoryStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the memory stream, thus in effect freeing any memory allocated for it, and then frees the memory stream.

### 4.61.4 TMemoryStream.Clear

Synopsis: Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` sets the position and size to 0, and sets the capacity of the stream to 0, thus freeing all memory allocated for the stream.

See also: `TStream.Size` (455), `TStream.Position` (454), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` (380)

### 4.61.5 TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the contents of a stream into memory.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the memorybuffer of the stream. Any previous contents of the memory stream are overwritten. Memory is allocated as needed.

**Remark** The `LoadFromStream` uses the `Size` (455) property of `Stream` to determine how much memory must be allocated. Some streams do not allow the stream size to be determined, so care must be taken when using this method.

This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` (449) method:

```
Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
CopyFrom(Stream, Stream.Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `LoadFromStream` reads the contents of the stream as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when reading from the stream, an `EStreamError` (303) may occur.

See also: `TStream.CopyFrom` (449), `TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile` (417)

#### 4.61.6 TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile

**Synopsis:** Loads the contents of a file into memory.

**Declaration:** `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of the file with name `FileName` into the memory stream. The current contents of the memory stream is replaced by the contents of the file. Memory is allocated as needed.

The `LoadFromFile` method simply creates a filestream and then calls the `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (416) method.

See also: `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (416)

#### 4.61.7 TMemoryStream.SetSize

**Synopsis:** Sets the size for the memory stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetSize(const NewSize: Int64); Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SetSize` sets the size of the memory stream to `NewSize`. This will set the capacity of the stream to `NewSize` and correct the current position in the stream when needed.

See also: `TStream.Position` (454), `TStream.Size` (455)

#### 4.61.8 TMemoryStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Writes data to the stream's memory.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream's memory, starting at the current position in the stream. If more memory is needed than currently allocated, more memory will be allocated. Any contents in the memory stream at the current position will be overwritten. The function returns the number of bytes actually written (which should under normal circumstances always equal `Count`).

This method overrides the `TStream.Write` (447) method.

**Errors:** If no more memory could be allocated, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.Read` (379)

## 4.62 TOwnedCollection

### 4.62.1 Description

`TOwnedCollection` automatically maintains owner information, so it can be displayed in an IDE. Collections that should be displayed in an IDE should descend from `TOwnedCollection` or must implement a `GetOwner` function.

See also: `TCollection` (356)

### 4.62.2 Method overview

| Page | Method              | Description  |
|------|---------------------|--|
| 418  | <code>Create</code> | Create a new <code>TOwnerCollection</code> instance. |

### 4.62.3 TOwnedCollection.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new `TOwnerCollection` instance.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent;  
                                  AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of `TOwnedCollection` and stores the `AOwner` references. It will the value returned in the `TCollection.Owner` (358) property of the collection. The `ItemClass` class reference is passed on to the inherited constructor, and will be used to create new instances in the `Insert` (360) and `Add` (358) methods.

See also: `TCollection.Create` (357), `TCollection.Owner` (358)

## 4.63 TOwnerStream

### 4.63.1 Description

`TOwnerStream` can be used when creating stream chains such as when using encryption and compression streams. It keeps a reference to the source stream and will automatically free the source stream when ready (if the `SourceOwner` (420) property is set to `True`).

See also: `TStream` (445), `TOwnerStream.Source` (419), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` (420)

### 4.63.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method  | Description  |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| <a href="#">419</a> | Create  | Create a new instance of <code>TOwnerStream</code> .                   |
| <a href="#">419</a> | Destroy | Destroys the <code>TOwnerStream</code> instance and the source stream. |

### 4.63.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties  | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">419</a> | Source      | r      | Reference to the source stream.                    |
| <a href="#">420</a> | SourceOwner | rw     | Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source |

### 4.63.4 TOwnerStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TOwnerStream`.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TOwnerStream` and stores the reference to `ASource`. If `SourceOwner` is `True`, the source stream will also be freed when the instance is destroyed.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Destroy` ([419](#)), `TOwnerStream.Source` ([419](#)), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` ([420](#))

### 4.63.5 TOwnerStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TOwnerStream` instance and the source stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the source stream if the `SourceOwner` property is `True`.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Create` ([419](#)), `TOwnerStream.Source` ([419](#)), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` ([420](#))

### 4.63.6 TOwnerStream.Source

Synopsis: Reference to the source stream.

Declaration: `Property Source : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Source` is the source stream. It should be used by descendant streams to access the source stream to read from or write to.

Do not free the `Source` reference directly if `SourceOwner` is `True`. In that case the owner stream instance will free the source stream itself.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Create` ([419](#))

### 4.63.7 TOwnerStream.SourceOwner

Synopsis: Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source

Declaration: `Property SourceOwner : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `SourceOwner` indicates whether the `TOwnerStream` owns it's `Source` stream or not. If this property is `True` then the `Source` stream is freed when the `TOwnerStream` instance is freed.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Source` (419), `TOwnerStream.Destroy` (419)

## 4.64 TParser

### 4.64.1 Description

This class breaks a stream of text data in tokens. Its primary use is to help reading the contents of a form file (usually a file with `dfm`, `xfm` or `lfm` extension), and for this reason it isn't suitable to be used as a general parser.

The parser is always positioned on a certain token, whose type is stored in the `Token` (426) property. Various methods are provided to obtain the token value in the desired format.

To advance to the next token, invoke `NextToken` (423) method.

See also: `TParser.Token` (426), `TParser.NextToken` (423)

### 4.64.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                           | Description  |
|------|----------------------------------|--|
| 421  | <code>CheckToken</code>          | Checks whether the token if of the given type.                               |
| 421  | <code>CheckTokenSymbol</code>    | Checks whether the token equals the given symbol                             |
| 421  | <code>Create</code>              | Creates a new parser instance.   |
| 421  | <code>Destroy</code>             | Destroys the parser instance.  |
| 422  | <code>Error</code>               | Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (302) exception with the given message   |
| 422  | <code>ErrorFmt</code>            | Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (302) exception and formats the message. |
| 422  | <code>ErrorStr</code>            | Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (302) exception with the given message   |
| 422  | <code>HexToBinary</code>         | Writes hexadecimal data to a stream.   |
| 423  | <code>NextToken</code>           | Reads the next token and returns its type.                                   |
| 423  | <code>SourcePos</code>           | Returns the current position in the stream.                                  |
| 423  | <code>TokenComponentIdent</code> | Returns the path of a subcomponent starting from the current token.          |
| 424  | <code>TokenFloat</code>          | Returns the current token as a float.  |
| 424  | <code>TokenInt</code>            | Returns the current token as an integer.                                     |
| 424  | <code>TokenString</code>         | Returns the current token as a string.                                       |
| 425  | <code>TokenSymbolIs</code>       | Returns <code>True</code> if the token equals the given symbol.              |
| 425  | <code>TokenWideString</code>     | Returns the current token as a widestring                                    |

### 4.64.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                    |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| <a href="#">425</a> | FloatType  | r      | The type of a float token.     |
| <a href="#">426</a> | SourceLine | r      | Current source line number.    |
| <a href="#">426</a> | Token      | r      | The type of the current token. |

### 4.64.4 TParser.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new parser instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TParser` instance, using `Stream` as the stream to read data from, and reads the first token from the stream.

Errors: If an error occurs while parsing the first token, an `EParserError` ([302](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` ([423](#)), `TParser.Token` ([426](#))

### 4.64.5 TParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the parser instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the parser instance.

Errors: None.

### 4.64.6 TParser.CheckToken

Synopsis: Checks whether the token is of the given type.

Declaration: `procedure CheckToken(T: Char)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks whether the token is of the given type.

Errors: If current token isn't of type `T`, an `EParserError` ([302](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.Token` ([426](#))

### 4.64.7 TParser.CheckTokenSymbol

Synopsis: Checks whether the token equals the given symbol

Declaration: `procedure CheckTokenSymbol(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckTokenSymbol` performs a case-insensitive comparison of current token value with `S`.

Current token must be of type `toSymbol` ([266](#)), otherwise an `EParserError` ([302](#)) exception is raised.

Errors: If the comparison fails, or current token isn't a symbol, an `EParserError` (302) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.TokenSymbolIs` (425), `toSymbol` (266)

#### 4.64.8 `TParser.Error`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Ident: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception with the given message

#### 4.64.9 `TParser.ErrorFmt`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception and formats the message.

Declaration: `procedure ErrorFmt(const Ident: string; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception and formats the message.

#### 4.64.10 `TParser.ErrorStr`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure ErrorStr(const Message: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParserError` (302) exception with the given message

#### 4.64.11 `TParser.HexToBinary`

Synopsis: Writes hexadecimal data to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure HexToBinary(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `HexToBinary` reads a sequence of hexadecimal characters from the input stream and converts them to a sequence of bytes which is written to `Stream`. Each byte is represented by two contiguous hexadecimal characters.

Whitespace is allowed between hexadecimal characters if it doesn't appear between two characters that form the same byte.

`HexToBinary` stops when the first non-hexadecimal and non-whitespace character is found, or the end of the input stream is reached.

**Remark** This method begins reading after the current token: that is, current token, even if it's a valid hexadecimal value, isn't included.

Errors: If a single hexadecimal character is found, an `EParserError` (302) exception is raised.

#### 4.64.12 TParser.NextToken

Synopsis: Reads the next token and returns its type.

Declaration: `function NextToken : Char`

Visibility: public

Description: `NextToken` parses the next token in the stream and returns its type. The type of the token can also be retrieved later reading `Token` (426) property.

If the end of the stream is reached, `toEOF` (266) is returned.

For details about token types, see `TParser.Token` (426)

Errors: If an error occurs while parsing the token, an `EParserError` (302) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.Token` (426)

#### 4.64.13 TParser.SourcePos

Synopsis: Returns the current position in the stream.

Declaration: `function SourcePos : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: **Remark** This is not the character position relative to the current source line, but the byte offset from the beginning of the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.SourceLine` (426)

#### 4.64.14 TParser.TokenComponentIdent

Synopsis: Returns the path of a subcomponent starting from the current token.

Declaration: `function TokenComponentIdent : string`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token is `toSymbol` (266), `TokenComponentIdent` tries to find subcomponent names separated by a dot (.). The returned string is the longest subcomponent path found. If there are no subcomponents, current symbol is returned.

**Remark** After this method has been called, subsequent calls to `TokenString` (424) or `TokenWideString` (425) return the same value returned by `TokenComponentIdent`.

##### Example

If source stream contains `a.b.c` and `TParser` is positioned on the first token (`a`), this method returns `a.b.c`.

Errors: If `Token` (426) isn't `toSymbol` (266), or no valid symbol is found after a dot, an `EParserError` (302) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.Token` (426), `TParser.TokenString` (424), `TParser.TokenWideString` (425), `toSymbol` (266)

#### 4.64.15 TParser.TokenFloat

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a float.

Declaration: `function TokenFloat : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: If current token type is `toFloat` (266), this method returns the token value as a float.

To specify a negative number, no space must exist between unary minus and number.

Floating point numbers can be postfixed with a character that specifies the floating point type. See `FloatType` (425) for further information.

**Remark** In the input stream the decimal separator, if present, must be a dot ( . ).

Errors: If `Token` (426) isn't `toFloat` (266), an `EParserError` (302) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.FloatType` (425), `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.Token` (426), `toFloat` (266)

#### 4.64.16 TParser.TokenInt

Synopsis: Returns the current token as an integer.

Declaration: `function TokenInt : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: If current token type is `toInteger` (266), this method returns the token value as an integer.

In the input stream an integer can be an hexadecimal (prefixed by ' \$ ' character) or decimal number. Decimal numbers can be prefixed by an unary minus: if this is the case, no space must exist between minus and number.

Errors: If `Token` (426) isn't `toInteger` (266), an `EConvertError` (264) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.Token` (426), `toInteger` (266)

#### 4.64.17 TParser.TokenString

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a string.

Declaration: `function TokenString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: If current token type is `toString` (266) or `toWString` (266), this method returns the contents of the string. That is, enclosing quotes are removed, embedded quotes are unescaped and control strings are converted to the appropriate sequence of characters.

If current token type isn't a string, a string containing the token representation in the input stream is returned, without any conversion: hexadecimal integers are returned with the leading \$, and floating point suffixes like `s`, `c` or `d` are kept. For tokens whose type isn't a special type, return value of `TokenString` equals `Token` (426).

**Remark** If `Token` (426) is `toWString` (266), `TokenWideString` (425) should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.TokenWideString` (425), `TParser.Token` (426), `toString` (266), `toWString` (266)

**4.64.18 TParser.TokenWideString**

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a widestring

Declaration: `function TokenWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token type is `toWString` (266), this method returns the contents of the string. That is, enclosing quotes are removed, embedded quotes are unescaped and control strings are converted to the appropriate sequence of characters.

If current token isn't a widestring, `TokenWideString` behaviour is the same as `TokenString` (424).

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TokenString` (424), `TParser.Token` (426), `toWString` (266)

**4.64.19 TParser.TokenSymbols**

Synopsis: Returns `True` if the token equals the given symbol.

Declaration: `function TokenSymbolIs(const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TokenSymbolIs` performs a case-insensitive comparison of current token value with `S`.

If current token isn't of type `toSymbol` (266), or comparison fails, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.CheckTokenSymbol` (421), `TParser.Token` (426)

**4.64.20 TParser.FloatType**

Synopsis: The type of a float token.

Declaration: `Property FloatType : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Floating point numbers can be postfix with a character specifying the type of floating point value.

When specified, this property holds the character postfix to the number.

It can be one of the following values:

Table 4.28:

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| s or S | Value is a single.   |
| c or C | Value is a currency. |
| d or D | Value is a date.     |

If `Token` (426) isn't `toFloat` (266) or one of the above characters wasn't specified, `FloatType` is the null character (zero).

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.Token` (426), `TParser.TokenFloat` (424), `toFloat` (266)

### 4.64.21 TParser.SourceLine

Synopsis: Current source line number.

Declaration: `Property SourceLine : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Current source line number.

See also: `TParser.SourcePos` (423)

### 4.64.22 TParser.Token

Synopsis: The type of the current token.

Declaration: `Property Token : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: This property holds the type of the current token. When `Token` isn't one of the special token types (whose value can be retrieved with specific methods) it is the character representing the current token.

Special token types:

Table 4.29:

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>toEOF</code> (266)     | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when the end of the input stream was reached.              |
| <code>toSymbol</code> (266)  | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when a symbol was found in the input stream.               |
| <code>toString</code> (266)  | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when a string was found in the input stream.               |
| <code>toInteger</code> (266) | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when an integer was found in the input stream.             |
| <code>toFloat</code> (266)   | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when a floating point value was found in the input stream. |
| <code>toWString</code> (266) | Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (426) when a wstring was found in the input stream.              |

To advance to the next token, use `NextToken` (423) method.

See also: `TParser.CheckToken` (421), `TParser.NextToken` (423), `TParser.TokenComponentIdent` (423), `TParser.TokenFloat` (424), `TParser.TokenInt` (424), `TParser.TokenString` (424), `TParser.TokenWideString` (425)

## 4.65 TPersistent

### 4.65.1 Description

`TPersistent` is the basic class for the streaming system. Since it is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state, the compiler generates RTTI (Run-Time Type Information) for it and all classes that descend from it. This information can be used to stream all properties of classes.

It also introduces functionality to assign the contents of 2 classes to each other.

`TPersistent` implements the `IFPObserved` (305) interface for the benefit of descendant classes, but does not call `IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers` (306). Descendants such as `TStrings` (465) and `TCollection` (356) and `TCollectionItem` (364) do use it.

See also: TComponent (366), IFPObserved (305), TStrings (465), TCollection (356), TCollectionItem (364)

### 4.65.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                | Interfaces  | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------|--|
| <a href="#">305</a> | IFPObserved | Interface implemented by an object that can be observed. |

### 4.65.3 Method overview

| Page                | Method             | Description   |
|---------------------|--------------------|---|
| <a href="#">427</a> | Assign             | Assign the contents of one class to another.                      |
| <a href="#">427</a> | Destroy            | Destroys the TPersistent instance.                                |
| <a href="#">428</a> | FPOAttachObserver  | Add an observer to the list of observers.                         |
| <a href="#">428</a> | FPODetachObserver  | Remove an observer from the list of observers                     |
| <a href="#">428</a> | FPONotifyObservers | Notify observers of changes.                                      |
| <a href="#">428</a> | GetNamePath        | Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance. |

### 4.65.4 TPersistent.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TPersistent instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` disposes of the persistent object. This method should never be called directly. Instead the `Free` method should be used.

### 4.65.5 TPersistent.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of one class to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies the contents of `Source` to `Self`, if the classes of the destination and source classes are compatible.

The `TPersistent` implementation of `Assign` does nothing but calling the `AssignTo` ([426](#)) method of source. This means that if the destination class does not know how to assign the contents of the source class, the source class instance is asked to assign itself to the destination class. This means that it is necessary to implement only one of the two methods so that two classes can be assigned to one another.

**Remark** In general, a statement of the form

```
Destination:=Source;
```

(where `Destination` and `Source` are classes) does not achieve the same as a statement of the form

```
Destination.Assign(Source);
```

After the former statement, both `Source` and `Destination` will point to the same object. The latter statement will copy the *contents* of the `Source` class to the `Destination` class.

See also: `AssignTo` ([426](#))

#### 4.65.6 TPersistent.FPOAttachObserver

Synopsis: Add an observer to the list of observers.

Declaration: `procedure FPOAttachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FPOAttachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (305) interface in `TPersistent`. It adds a new observer to the list of observers. Calling this multiple times will add the observed object multiple times to the list.

Errors: An `EObserver` exception may be raised if `AObject` does not implement the `IFPObserved` (306) interface.

See also: `IFPObserved` (306), `IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver` (305), `IFPObserved` (305)

#### 4.65.7 TPersistent.FPODetachObserver

Synopsis: Remove an observer from the list of observers

Declaration: `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FPODetachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (305) interface in `TPersistent`. It removes the first found instance of the observer from the list of observers.

See also: `IFPObserved` (305), `IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver` (306), `IFPObserved` (306)

#### 4.65.8 TPersistent.FPONotifyObservers

Synopsis: Notify observers of changes.

Declaration: `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;  
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FPONotifyObservers` can be called to notify observers of changes in the object. This method simply passes on the parameters that it receives to all attached `IFPObserved` (306) interfaces.

`TPersistent` does not call `FPONotifyObservers`. It is implemented for the benefit of descendant classes.

See also: `IFPObserved` (305), `IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers` (306), `IFPObserved` (306)

#### 4.65.9 TPersistent.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNamePath` returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance. This can be used to display a name for this instance in a Object designer.

`GetNamePath` constructs a name by recursively prepending the `Classname` of the Owner instance to the `Classname` of this instance, separated by a dot.

See also: `TPersistent.GetOwner` (426)

## 4.66 TProxyStream

### 4.66.1 Description

TProxyStream is a proxy class for the #rtl.types.IStream ([1933](#)) interface. It implements all stream methods by relaying them to the IStream interface.

See also: #rtl.types.IStream ([1933](#)), TStreamAdapter ([455](#))

### 4.66.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method | Description                                      |
|---------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">430</a> | Check  | Check errors                                     |
| <a href="#">429</a> | Create | Create a new instance of the TProxyStream class. |
| <a href="#">429</a> | Read   |  |
| <a href="#">429</a> | Seek   |  |
| <a href="#">429</a> | Write  |  |

### 4.66.3 TProxyStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TProxyStream class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const Stream: IStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TProxyStream class. It saves var stream for use in the other methods.

See also: #rtl.types.IStream ([1933](#))

### 4.66.4 TProxyStream.Read

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.5 TProxyStream.Write

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.6 TProxyStream.Seek

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.7 TProxyStream.Check

Synopsis: Check errors

Declaration: `procedure Check(err: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Check` will check the result of the `IStream` interface. This method must be overridden by descendant classes to return interface-specific errors.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream` ([1933](#))

## 4.67 TRawByteStringStream

### 4.67.1 Method overview

| Page                | Method                   | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">430</a> | <code>Create</code>      |             |
| <a href="#">430</a> | <code>DataString</code>  |             |
| <a href="#">430</a> | <code>ReadString</code>  |             |
| <a href="#">430</a> | <code>WriteString</code> |             |

### 4.67.2 TRawByteStringStream.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(const aData: RawByteString); Overload`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.3 TRawByteStringStream.DataString

Declaration: `function DataString : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.4 TRawByteStringStream.ReadString

Declaration: `function ReadString(Count: LongInt) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.5 TRawByteStringStream.WriteString

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const AString: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

## 4.68 TReader

### 4.68.1 Description

The `TReader` class is a reader class that implements generic component streaming capabilities, independent of the format of the data in the stream. It uses a driver class `TAbstractObjectReader`

(316) to do the actual reading of data. The interface of the `TReader` class should be identical to the interface in Delphi.

Note that the `TReader` design is such that it can read a single component from a stream. It will read all children of this component, but it is not designed to read multiple components in succession from one stream.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.ReadComponent` (449) call should be used.

See also: `TFile` (384), `TWriter` (511), `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

#### 4.68.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                            | Description   |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 433  | <code>BeginReferences</code>      | Initializes the component referencing mechanism.                                      |
| 433  | <code>CheckValue</code>           | Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type <code>Value</code> |
| 439  | <code>CopyValue</code>            | Copy a value to a writer.   |
| 432  | <code>Create</code>               | Creates a new reader class  |
| 433  | <code>DefineBinaryProperty</code> | Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.                                 |
| 433  | <code>DefineProperty</code>       | Reads a user-defined property from the stream.  |
| 432  | <code>Destroy</code>              | Destroys a reader class.  |
| 433  | <code>EndOfList</code>            | Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.                            |
| 434  | <code>EndReferences</code>        | Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.  |
| 434  | <code>FixupReferences</code>      | Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.                                 |
| 432  | <code>FlushBuffer</code>          | Flush the buffer  |
| 434  | <code>NextValue</code>            | Returns the type of the next value.   |
| 434  | <code>Read</code>                 | Read raw data from stream   |
| 434  | <code>ReadBoolean</code>          | Reads a boolean from the stream.  |
| 435  | <code>ReadChar</code>             | Reads a character from the stream.  |
| 435  | <code>ReadCollection</code>       | Reads a collection from the stream.   |
| 435  | <code>ReadComponent</code>        | Starts reading a component from the stream.   |
| 436  | <code>ReadComponents</code>       | Starts reading child components from the stream.                                      |
| 436  | <code>ReadCurrency</code>         | Read a currency value from the stream.  |
| 436  | <code>ReadDate</code>             | Reads a date from the stream  |
| 436  | <code>ReadFloat</code>            | Reads a float from the stream.  |
| 437  | <code>ReadIdent</code>            | Reads an identifier from the stream.  |
| 437  | <code>ReadInt64</code>            | Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.   |
| 437  | <code>ReadInteger</code>          | Reads an integer from the stream  |
| 437  | <code>ReadListBegin</code>        | Checks for the beginning of a list.   |
| 438  | <code>ReadListEnd</code>          | Checks for the end of a list.   |
| 438  | <code>ReadRootComponent</code>    | Starts reading a root component.  |
| 437  | <code>ReadSet</code>              | Read a set value from the stream  |
| 438  | <code>ReadSignature</code>        | Read stream signature from the stream   |
| 436  | <code>ReadSingle</code>           | Reads a single-type real from the stream.   |
| 438  | <code>ReadString</code>           | Reads a string from the stream.   |
| 435  | <code>ReadUnicodeChar</code>      | Read Unicode character  |
| 439  | <code>ReadUnicodeString</code>    | Read a <code>UnicodeString</code> value from the stream                               |
| 439  | <code>ReadValue</code>            | Reads the next value type from the stream.  |
| 438  | <code>ReadVariant</code>          | Read a variant from the stream  |
| 435  | <code>ReadWideChar</code>         | Read widechar from the stream   |
| 439  | <code>ReadWideString</code>       | Read a <code>WideString</code> value from the stream.                                 |

### 4.68.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">439</a> | Driver               | r      | The driver in use for streaming the data.                          |
| <a href="#">441</a> | OnAncestorNotFound   | rw     | Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.        |
| <a href="#">442</a> | OnCreateComponent    | rw     | Handler called when a component needs to be created.               |
| <a href="#">440</a> | OnError              | rw     | Handler called when an error occurs.                               |
| <a href="#">442</a> | OnFindComponentClass | rw     | Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found. |
| <a href="#">441</a> | OnFindMethod         | rw     | Handler to find or change a method address.                        |
| <a href="#">440</a> | OnPropertyNotFound   | rw     | Handler for treating missing properties.                           |
| <a href="#">442</a> | OnReadStringProperty | rw     | Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.         |
| <a href="#">441</a> | OnReferenceName      | rw     | Handler called when another component is referenced.               |
| <a href="#">441</a> | OnSetMethodProperty  | rw     | Handler for setting method properties.                             |
| <a href="#">441</a> | OnSetName            | rw     | Handler called when setting a component name.                      |
| <a href="#">440</a> | Owner                | rw     | Owner of the component being read                                  |
| <a href="#">440</a> | Parent               | rw     | Parent of the component being read.                                |

### 4.68.4 TReader.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new reader class

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new reader class

### 4.68.5 TReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a reader class.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys a reader class.

### 4.68.6 TReader.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([385](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer` ([317](#))

#### 4.68.7 TReader.BeginReferences

Synopsis: Initializes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: `procedure BeginReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: When streaming components, the streaming mechanism keeps a list of existing components that can be referenced to. This method initializes up that system.

#### 4.68.8 TReader.CheckValue

Synopsis: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type `Value`

Declaration: `procedure CheckValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type `Value`

#### 4.68.9 TReader.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; AReadData: TReaderProc;  
WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

#### 4.68.10 TReader.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
AReadData: TStreamProc;  
WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

#### 4.68.11 TReader.EndOfList

Synopsis: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

Declaration: `function EndOfList : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

#### 4.68.12 TReader.EndReferences

Synopsis: Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: `procedure EndReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: When streaming components, the streaming mechanism keeps a list of existing components that can be referenced to. This method cleans up that system.

#### 4.68.13 TReader.FixupReferences

Synopsis: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

Declaration: `procedure FixupReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

#### 4.68.14 TReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the type of the next value.

#### 4.68.15 TReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.Read` ([319](#)), `TBinaryObjectReader.Read` ([339](#))

#### 4.68.16 TReader.ReadBoolean

Synopsis: Reads a boolean from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a boolean from the stream.

#### 4.68.17 TReader.ReadChar

Synopsis: Reads a character from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadChar : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a character from the stream.

#### 4.68.18 TReader.ReadWideChar

Synopsis: Read widechar from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadWideChar : WideChar`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TReader.ReadWideChar` reads a widechar from the stream. This actually reads a widestring and returns the first character.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideString` ([439](#)), `TWriter.WriteWideChar` ([514](#))

#### 4.68.19 TReader.ReadUnicodeChar

Synopsis: Read Unicode character

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeChar : UnicodeChar`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadUnicodeChar` reads a single Unicode character from the stream. It does this by reading a `UnicodeString` string from the stream and returning the first character.

Errors: If the string has a length different from 1, an `EReadError` exception will occur.

See also: `TReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([439](#))

#### 4.68.20 TReader.ReadCollection

Synopsis: Reads a collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadCollection(Collection: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a collection from the stream.

#### 4.68.21 TReader.ReadComponent

Synopsis: Starts reading a component from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Component: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a component from the stream.

#### 4.68.22 TReader.ReadComponents

Synopsis: Starts reading child components from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadComponents(AOwner: TComponent; AParent: TComponent;  
Proc: TReadComponentsProc)`

Visibility: public

Description: Starts reading child components from the stream.

#### 4.68.23 TReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Reads a float from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a float from the stream.

#### 4.68.24 TReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

#### 4.68.25 TReader.ReadDate

Synopsis: Reads a date from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a date from the stream

#### 4.68.26 TReader.ReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadCurrency` reads a currency typed value from the stream and returns the result. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TWriter.WriteCurrency` ([515](#))

#### 4.68.27 TReader.ReadIdent

Synopsis: Reads an identifier from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadIdent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an identifier from the stream.

#### 4.68.28 TReader.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Reads an integer from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an integer from the stream

#### 4.68.29 TReader.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

#### 4.68.30 TReader.ReadSet

Synopsis: Read a set value from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSet` reads a set of elements with type `EnumType` and returns them as an integer where each element is encoded in a bit of the integer. Thus, at most an enumerated type with 32 elements can be read with this function.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of `EnumType`. It is assumed to be a valid `PTypeInfo` pointer.

See also: `TWriter.WriteSet` ([515](#))

#### 4.68.31 TReader.ReadListBegin

Synopsis: Checks for the beginning of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the beginning of a list.

#### 4.68.32 TReader.ReadListEnd

Synopsis: Checks for the end of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the end of a list.

#### 4.68.33 TReader.ReadRootComponent

Synopsis: Starts reading a root component.

Declaration: `function ReadRootComponent (ARoot: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a root component.

#### 4.68.34 TReader.ReadVariant

Synopsis: Read a variant from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadVariant : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadVariant` reads the next value from the stream and returns it as a variant. No variant array can be read from the stream, only single values.

Errors: If no variant manager is installed, the function will raise an `EReadError` exception. If the next value is not a simple value, again an `EReadError` exception is raised. exception is

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([349](#))

#### 4.68.35 TReader.ReadSignature

Synopsis: Read stream signature from the stream

Declaration: `procedure ReadSignature`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSignature` is called when starting to read a root component from a stream. Some streams contain a signature (header) to detect whether the stream contains correct data.

Errors: If the stream does not start with the correct signature, an `EReadError` ([302](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` ([323](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([325](#))

#### 4.68.36 TReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a string from the stream.

#### 4.68.37 TReader.ReadWideString

Synopsis: Read a WideString value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadWidestring` reads a widestring typed value from the stream and returns the result. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TWriter.WriteString` ([517](#))

#### 4.68.38 TReader.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a UnicodeString value from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` reads a `UnicodeString` string from the stream. The stream can contain a string from any type, it will be converted to `UniCodeString`.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([324](#)), `TWriter.WriteUnicodeString` ([517](#))

#### 4.68.39 TReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Reads the next value type from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads the next value type from the stream.

#### 4.68.40 TReader.CopyValue

Synopsis: Copy a value to a writer.

Declaration: `procedure CopyValue (Writer: TWriter)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyValue` reads the next value from the reader stream, and writes it to the passed `Writer`.

#### 4.68.41 TReader.Driver

Synopsis: The driver in use for streaming the data.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectReader`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The driver in use for streaming the data.

#### 4.68.42 TReader.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the component being read

Declaration: `Property Owner : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Owner of the component being read

#### 4.68.43 TReader.Parent

Synopsis: Parent of the component being read.

Declaration: `Property Parent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Parent of the component being read.

#### 4.68.44 TReader.OnError

Synopsis: Handler called when an error occurs.

Declaration: `Property OnError : TReaderError`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when an error occurs.

#### 4.68.45 TReader.OnPropertyNotFound

Synopsis: Handler for treating missing properties.

Declaration: `Property OnPropertyNotFound : TPropertyNotFoundEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnPropertyNotFound` can be used to take appropriate action when a property is read from a stream and no such property is found in the RTTI information of the Instance that is being read from the stream. It can be set at runtime, or at design time by an IDE.

For more information about the meaning of the various arguments to the event handler, see `TPropertyNotFoundEvent` ([276](#)).

See also: `TPropertyNotFoundEvent` ([276](#)), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` ([441](#)), `TReader.OnReadStringProperty` ([442](#))

#### 4.68.46 TReader.OnFindMethod

Synopsis: Handler to find or change a method address.

Declaration: `Property OnFindMethod : TFindMethodEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler to find or change a method address.

#### 4.68.47 TReader.OnSetMethodProperty

Synopsis: Handler for setting method properties.

Declaration: `Property OnSetMethodProperty : TSetMethodPropertyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnSetMethodProperty` can be set to handle the setting of method properties. This handler can be used by an IDE to prevent methods from actually being assigned when an object is being streamed in the designer.

See also: `TReader.OnReadStringProperty` ([442](#)), `TReader.OnPropertyNotFound` ([440](#))

#### 4.68.48 TReader.OnSetName

Synopsis: Handler called when setting a component name.

Declaration: `Property OnSetName : TSetNameEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when setting a component name.

#### 4.68.49 TReader.OnReferenceName

Synopsis: Handler called when another component is referenced.

Declaration: `Property OnReferenceName : TReferenceNameEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when another component is referenced.

#### 4.68.50 TReader.OnAncestorNotFound

Synopsis: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

Declaration: `Property OnAncestorNotFound : TAncestorNotFoundEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

#### 4.68.51 TReader.OnCreateComponent

Synopsis: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

Declaration: Property OnCreateComponent : TCreateComponentEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

#### 4.68.52 TReader.OnFindComponentClass

Synopsis: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

Declaration: Property OnFindComponentClass : TFindComponentClassEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

#### 4.68.53 TReader.OnReadStringProperty

Synopsis: Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.

Declaration: Property OnReadStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnReadStringProperty is called whenever a string property is read from the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is loaded. See TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent (276) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: TReader.OnPropertyNotFound (440), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty (441), TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent (276)

### 4.69 TRecall

#### 4.69.1 Description

TRecall is a helper class used to copy published properties of a class (the reference object) in another class (the storage object). The reference object and storage object must be assignable to each other.

The TRecall can be used to store the state of a persistent class, and restore it at a later time.

When a TRecall object is created, it gets passed a reference instance and a storage instance. It immediately stores the properties of the reference object in the storage object.

The Store (443) method can be called throughout the lifetime of the reference object to update the stored properties.

When the TRecall instance is destroyed then the properties are copied from the storage object to the reference object. The storage object is freed automatically.

If the properties should not be copied back from the storage to the reference object, the Forget (444) can be called.

See also: `TRecall.Create` (443), `TRecall.Destroy` (443), `TRecall.Forget` (444), `TRecall.Store` (443), `TPersistent.Assign` (427)

#### 4.69.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method               | Description  |
|---------------------|----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">443</a> | <code>Create</code>  | Creates a new instance of <code>TRecall</code> .   |
| <a href="#">443</a> | <code>Destroy</code> | Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the <code>TRecall</code> instance. |
| <a href="#">444</a> | <code>Forget</code>  | Clear the reference property.  |
| <a href="#">443</a> | <code>Store</code>   | Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.  |

#### 4.69.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties             | Access         | Description           |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <a href="#">444</a> | <code>Reference</code> | <code>r</code> | The reference object. |

#### 4.69.4 TRecall.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of `TRecall`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStorage: TPersistent; AReference: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TRecall` and initializes the `Reference` and `Storage` instances. It calls `Store` (443) to assign the reference object properties to the storage instance.

See also: `TRecall.Store` (443), `TRecall.Destroy` (443)

#### 4.69.5 TRecall.Destroy

Synopsis: Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the `TRecall` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` assigns the storage instance to the reference instance, if the latter is still valid. After this, it frees the storage and calls the inherited `destroy`.

Errors: `Destroy` does not check whether the reference (444) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call `TRecall.Forget` (444) to clear the reference instance.

See also: `TRecall.Store` (443), `TRecall.Forget` (444)

#### 4.69.6 TRecall.Store

Synopsis: Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.

Declaration: `procedure Store`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Store` assigns the reference instance to the storage instance. This will only work if the two classes can be assigned to each other.

This method can be used to refresh the storage.

**Errors:** `Store` does not check whether the reference (444) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call `TRecall.Forget` (444) to clear the reference instance.

#### 4.69.7 TRecall.Forget

**Synopsis:** Clear the reference property.

**Declaration:** `procedure Forget`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Forget` sets the `Reference` (444) property to `Nil`. When the `TRecall` instance is destroyed, the reference instance will not be restored.

Note that after a call to `Forget`, a call to `Store` (443) has no effect.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRecall.Reference` (444), `TRecall.Store` (443), `TRecall.Destroy` (443)

#### 4.69.8 TRecall.Reference

**Synopsis:** The reference object.

**Declaration:** `Property Reference : TPersistent`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** `Reference` is the instance of the reference object. Do not free the reference directly. Call `Forget` (444) to clear the reference and then free the reference object.

See also: `TRecall.Forget` (444)

### 4.70 TResourceStream

#### 4.70.1 Description

Stream that reads its data from a resource object.

#### 4.70.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                    | Description   |
|------|---------------------------|---|
| 445  | <code>Create</code>       | Creates a new instance of a resource stream.                |
| 445  | <code>CreateFromID</code> | Creates a new instance of a resource stream with a resource |
| 445  | <code>Destroy</code>      | Destroys the instance of the resource stream.               |

### 4.70.3 TResourceStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

Declaration: constructor `Create(Instance: TFPResourceHMODULE; const ResName: string; ResType: PChar)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

### 4.70.4 TResourceStream.CreateFromID

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream with a resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateFromID(Instance: TFPResourceHMODULE; ResID: Integer; ResType: PChar)`

Visibility: public

Description: The resource is loaded from the loaded module (identified by the handle `Instance`), identifier `ResID` and type `ResType`.

### 4.70.5 TResourceStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

## 4.71 TStream

### 4.71.1 Description

`TStream` is the base class for all streaming classes. It defines methods for reading (446), writing (447) from and to streams, as well as functions to determine the size of the stream as well as the current position of the stream.

Descendant classes such as `TMemoryStream` (416) or `TFileStream` (386) then override these methods to write streams to memory or file.

See also: `TMemoryStream` (416), `TFileStream` (386), `TStringStream` (489)

### 4.71.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method              | Description  |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| <a href="#">449</a> | CopyFrom            | Copy data from one stream to another   |
| <a href="#">451</a> | FixupResourceHeader | Not implemented in FPC   |
| <a href="#">446</a> | Read                | Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.     |
| <a href="#">453</a> | ReadAnsiString      | Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.                         |
| <a href="#">448</a> | ReadBuffer          | Reads data from the stream to a buffer   |
| <a href="#">451</a> | ReadByte            | Read a byte from the stream and return its value.                                |
| <a href="#">449</a> | ReadComponent       | Reads component data from a stream   |
| <a href="#">449</a> | ReadComponentRes    | Reads component data and resource header from a stream                           |
| <a href="#">452</a> | ReadDWord           | Read a DWord from the stream and return its value.                               |
| <a href="#">452</a> | ReadQWord           | Read a QWord value from the stream and return its value                          |
| <a href="#">451</a> | ReadResHeader       | Read a resource header from the stream.  |
| <a href="#">452</a> | ReadWord            | Read a word from the stream and return its value.                                |
| <a href="#">447</a> | Seek                | Sets the current position in the stream  |
| <a href="#">447</a> | Write               | Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written. |
| <a href="#">454</a> | WriteAnsiString     | Write an ansistring to the stream.   |
| <a href="#">448</a> | WriteBuffer         | Writes data from a buffer to the stream  |
| <a href="#">453</a> | WriteByte           | Write a byte to the stream.  |
| <a href="#">450</a> | WriteComponent      | Write component data to the stream   |
| <a href="#">450</a> | WriteComponentRes   | Write resource header and component data to a stream                             |
| <a href="#">450</a> | WriteDescendent     | Write descendent of a component  |
| <a href="#">450</a> | WriteDescendentRes  | Write descendent of a component as resource                                      |
| <a href="#">453</a> | WriteDWord          | Write a DWord to the stream.   |
| <a href="#">454</a> | WriteQWord          | Write a QWord value to the stream  |
| <a href="#">451</a> | WriteResourceHeader | Write resource header to the stream  |
| <a href="#">453</a> | WriteWord           | Write a word to the stream.  |

### 4.71.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                         |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">454</a> | Position   | rw     | The current position in the stream. |
| <a href="#">455</a> | Size       | rw     | The current size of the stream.     |

### 4.71.4 TStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Read attempts to read `Count` from the stream to `Buffer` and returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method should be used when the number of bytes is not determined. If a specific number of bytes is expected, use `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([448](#)) instead.

As implemented in `TStream`, `Read` does nothing but raises an `EStreamError` ([303](#)) exception to indicate that reading is not supported. Descendant classes that allow reading must override this method to do the actual reading.

Descendant classes should (if they don't explicitly raise an exception) return a positive value ( $\geq 0$ ), where zero indicates an error.

Errors: In case a descendant class does not allow reading from the stream, an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadBuffer` (448)

### 4.71.5 TStream.Write

Synopsis: Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` attempts to write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream. It returns the actual number of bytes written to the stream.

This method should be used when the number of bytes that should be written is not determined. If a specific number of bytes should be written, use `TStream.WriteBuffer` (448) instead.

As implemented in `TStream`, `Write` does nothing but raises `EStreamError` (303) exception to indicate that writing is not supported. Descendant classes that allow writing must override this method to do the actual writing.

Descendant classes should (if they don't explicitly raise an exception) return a positive value ( $\geq 0$ ), where zero indicates an error.

Errors: In case a descendant class does not allow writing to the stream, an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteBuffer` (448)

### 4.71.6 TStream.Seek

Synopsis: Sets the current position in the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Overload  
function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64  
; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position of the stream to `Offset` bytes from `Origin`. There is a 32-bit variant of this function and a 64-bit variant. The difference can be made by choosing the correct `Offset` parameter: the integer-typed parameter selects the 32-bit variant, the parameter of type `TSeekOrigin` (277) selects the 64-bit variant of the function.

The `Origin` parameter for the 32-bit version can have one of the following values:

Table 4.30:

| Constant                     | Meaning  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>soFromBeginning</code> | Set the position relative to the start of the stream.            |
| <code>soFromCurrent</code>   | Set the position relative to the current position in the stream. |
| <code>soFromEnd</code>       | Set the position relative to the end of the stream.              |

These values are defined in the `SysUtils` (264) unit.

The `Origin` parameter for the 64-bit version has one of the following values:

Table 4.31:

| Value                    | Meaning   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>soBeginning</code> | Offset is interpreted relative to the start of the stream.            |
| <code>soCurrent</code>   | Offset is interpreted relative to the current position in the stream. |
| <code>soEnd</code>       | Offset is interpreted relative to the end of the stream.              |

Offset should be negative when the origin is `SoFromEnd` (`soEnd`). It should be positive for `soFromBeginning` and can have both signs for `soFromCurrent`.

This is an abstract method, which must be overridden by descendant classes. They may choose not to implement this method for all values of `Origin` and `Offset`.

**Remark** Internally, all calls are re-routed to the 64-bit version of the call. When creating a descendant of `TStream`, the 64-bit version of the call should be overridden.

**Errors:** An exception may be raised if this method is called with an invalid pair of `Offset`, `Origin` values. e.g. a negative offset for `soFromBeginning` (or `soBeginning`).

See also: `TStream.Position` (454)

#### 4.71.7 TStream.ReadBuffer

**Synopsis:** Reads data from the stream to a buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadBuffer(var Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadBuffer` reads `Count` bytes of the stream into `Buffer`. If the stream does not contain `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

`ReadBuffer` should be used to read in a fixed number of bytes, such as when reading structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Read` (446) instead. `ReadBuffer` uses `Read` internally to do the actual reading.

**Errors:** If the stream does not allow to read `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteBuffer` (448)

#### 4.71.8 TStream.WriteBuffer

**Synopsis:** Writes data from a buffer to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteBuffer(const Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `WriteBuffer` writes `Count` bytes to the stream from `Buffer`. If the stream does not allow `Count` bytes to be written, then an exception is raised.

`WriteBuffer` should be used to write a fixed number of bytes, such as when writing structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Write` (447) instead. `WriteBuffer` uses `Write` internally to do the actual writing.

**Errors:** If the stream does not allow to write `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadBuffer` (448)

### 4.71.9 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from one stream to another

Declaration: `function CopyFrom(Source: TStream; Count: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from `Source` and writes them to the current stream. This updates the current position in the stream. After the action is completed, the number of bytes copied is returned. If `Count` is zero, then the whole contents of the `Source` stream is copied. It is positioned on the first byte of data, and `Size` bytes are copied. Note that this cannot be used with streams that do not allow seeking or do not allow determining the size of the stream.

This can be used to quickly copy data from one stream to another or to copy the whole contents of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.Write` (447)

### 4.71.10 TStream.ReadComponent

Synopsis: Reads component data from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponent` reads a component state from the stream and transfers this state to `Instance`. If `Instance` is `nil`, then it is created first based on the type stored in the stream. `ReadComponent` returns the component as it is read from the stream.

`ReadComponent` simply creates a `TReader` (430) object and calls its `ReadRootComponent` (438) method.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (450), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (449), `TReader.ReadRootComponent` (438)

### 4.71.11 TStream.ReadComponentRes

Synopsis: Reads component data and resource header from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponentRes(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponentRes` reads a resource header from the stream, and then calls `ReadComponent` (449) to read the component state from the stream into `Instance`.

This method is usually called by the global streaming method when instantiating forms and datamodules as created by an IDE. It should be used mainly on Windows, to store components in Windows resources.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (449), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450)

#### 4.71.12 TStream.WriteComponent

Synopsis: Write component data to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent (Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponent` writes the published properties of `Instance` to the stream, so they can later be read with `TStream.ReadComponent` (449). This method is intended to be used by an IDE, to preserve the state of a form or datamodule as designed in the IDE.

`WriteComponent` simply calls `WriteDescendant` (445) with `Nil` ancestor.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (449), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450)

#### 4.71.13 TStream.WriteComponentRes

Synopsis: Write resource header and component data to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentRes (const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponentRes` writes a `ResName` resource header to the stream and then calls `WriteComponent` (450) to write the published properties of `Instance` to the stream.

This method is intended for use by an IDE that can use it to store forms or datamodules as designed in a Windows resource stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (450), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (449)

#### 4.71.14 TStream.WriteDescendent

Synopsis: Write descendent of a component

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent (Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendent` will create a `TWriter` (511) writer class and write `Instance` as a descendent of `Ancestor` using the writer. This is used to create diff streams: only the properties where `Instance` differs from `Ancestor` are written to the stream.

See also: `TWriter.WriteDescendent` (514)

#### 4.71.15 TStream.WriteDescendentRes

Synopsis: Write descendent of a component as resource

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendentRes (const ResName: string;  
Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendentRes` calls `WriteDescendent` as a resource stream.

See also: `TWriter.WriteDescendent` (514)

#### 4.71.16 TStream.WriteResourceHeader

Synopsis: Write resource header to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteResourceHeader(const ResName: string;  
var FixupInfo: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteResourceHeader` writes a resource-file header for a resource called `ResName`. It returns in `FixupInfo` the argument that should be passed on to `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (451).

`WriteResourceHeader` should not be used directly. It is called by the `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450) and `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (445) methods.

See also: `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (451), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450), `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (445)

#### 4.71.17 TStream.FixupResourceHeader

Synopsis: Not implemented in FPC

Declaration: `procedure FixupResourceHeader(FixupInfo: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FixupResourceHeader` is used to write the size of the resource after a component was written to stream. The size is determined from the current position, and it is written at position `FixupInfo`. After that the current position is restored.

`FixupResourceHeader` should never be called directly; it is handled by the streaming system.

See also: `TStream.WriteResourceHeader` (451), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (450), `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (445)

#### 4.71.18 TStream.ReadResHeader

Synopsis: Read a resource header from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadResHeader`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadResourceHeader` reads a resource file header from the stream. It positions the stream just beyond the header.

`ReadResourceHeader` should not be called directly, it is called by the streaming system when needed.

Errors: If the resource header is invalid an `EInvalidImage` (301) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (449), `EInvalidImage` (301)

#### 4.71.19 TStream.ReadByte

Synopsis: Read a byte from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadByte : Byte`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ReadByte` reads one byte from the stream and returns its value.

**Errors:** If the byte cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (446) function.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteByte` (453), `TStream.ReadWord` (452), `TStream.ReadDWord` (452), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453)

#### 4.71.20 `TStream.ReadWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a word from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** `function ReadWord : Word`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadWord` reads one `Word` (i.e. 2 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (446) function.

**Errors:** If the word cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteWord` (453), `TStream.ReadByte` (451), `TStream.ReadDWord` (452), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453)

#### 4.71.21 `TStream.ReadDWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a `DWord` from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** `function ReadDWord : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadDWord` reads one `DWord` (i.e. 4 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (446) function.

**Errors:** If the `DWord` cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteDWord` (453), `TStream.ReadByte` (451), `TStream.ReadWord` (452), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453)

#### 4.71.22 `TStream.ReadQWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a `QWord` value from the stream and return its value

**Declaration:** `function ReadQWord : QWord`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadQWord` reads a `QWord` value (8 bytes) from the stream and returns its value.

**Errors:** If not enough bytes are available on the stream, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteByte` (453), `TStream.ReadWord` (452), `TStream.ReadDWord` (452), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453)

### 4.71.23 TStream.ReadAnsiString

Synopsis: Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadAnsiString : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadAnsiString` reads an ansistring from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the read function several times. The Ansistring should be stored as 4 bytes (a DWord) representing the length of the string, and then the string value itself. The `WriteAnsiString` (454) function writes an ansistring in such a format.

Errors: If the AnsiString cannot be read, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` (446), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (454), `TStream.ReadByte` (451), `TStream.ReadWord` (452), `TStream.ReadDWord` (452)

### 4.71.24 TStream.WriteByte

Synopsis: Write a byte to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteByte(b: Byte)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteByte` writes the byte B to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (447) function. The byte can be read from the stream using the `ReadByte` (451) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadByte` (451), `TStream.WriteWord` (453), `TStream.WriteDWord` (453), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (454)

### 4.71.25 TStream.WriteWord

Synopsis: Write a word to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWord(w: Word)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteWord` writes the word W (i.e. 2 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (447) function. The word can be read from the stream using the `ReadWord` (452) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadWord` (452), `TStream.WriteByte` (453), `TStream.WriteDWord` (453), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (454)

### 4.71.26 TStream.WriteDWord

Synopsis: Write a DWord to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWord(d: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `WriteDWord` writes the `DWord D` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (447) function. The `DWord` can be read from the stream using the `ReadDWord` (452) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadDWord` (452), `TStream.WriteByte` (453), `TStream.WriteWord` (453), `TStream.WriteString` (454)

#### 4.71.27 TStream.WriteQWord

**Synopsis:** Write a `QWord` value to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteQWord(q: QWord)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteQWord` writes the word `W` (i.e. 8 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (447) function. The word can be read from the stream using the `ReadQWord` (452) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadByte` (451), `TStream.WriteWord` (453), `TStream.WriteDWord` (453), `TStream.WriteString` (454)

#### 4.71.28 TStream.WriteString

**Synopsis:** Write an ansistring to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteAnsiString(const S: string); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteAnsiString` writes the `AnsiString S` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (447) function. The ansistring is written as a 4 byte length specifier, followed by the ansistring's content. The ansistring can be read from the stream using the `ReadAnsiString` (453) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (303) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (447), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453), `TStream.WriteByte` (453), `TStream.WriteWord` (453), `TStream.WriteDWord` (453)

#### 4.71.29 TStream.Position

**Synopsis:** The current position in the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Position : Int64`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read, Write`

**Description:** `Position` can be read to determine the current position in the stream. It can be written to set the (absolute) position in the stream. The position is zero-based, so to set the position at the beginning of the stream, the position must be set to zero.

**Remark** Not all `TStream` descendants support setting the position in the stream, so this should be used with care.

**Errors:** Some descendants may raise an `EStreamError` (303) exception if they do not support setting the stream position.

See also: `TStream.Size` (455), `TStream.Seek` (447)

### 4.71.30 TStream.Size

**Synopsis:** The current size of the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Size : Int64`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Size` can be read to determine the stream size or to set the stream size.

**Remark** Not all descendants of `TStream` support getting or setting the stream size; they may raise an exception if the `Size` property is read or set.

See also: `TStream.Position` (454), `TStream.Seek` (447)

## 4.72 TStreamAdapter

### 4.72.1 Description

Implements `IStream` for `TStream` (445) descendants

### 4.72.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces           | Description            |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <a href="#">1933</a> | <code>IStream</code> | COM stream abstraction |

### 4.72.3 Method overview

| Page                | Method                    | Description  |
|---------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">459</a> | <code>Clone</code>        | Clone the stream                                     |
| <a href="#">458</a> | <code>Commit</code>       | Commit data to the stream                            |
| <a href="#">457</a> | <code>CopyTo</code>       | Copy data to destination stream                      |
| <a href="#">456</a> | <code>Create</code>       | Create a new instance of <code>TStreamAdapter</code> |
| <a href="#">456</a> | <code>Destroy</code>      | Free the <code>TStreamAdapter</code> instance        |
| <a href="#">458</a> | <code>LockRegion</code>   | Lock a region of the stream                          |
| <a href="#">456</a> | <code>Read</code>         | Read from the stream.                                |
| <a href="#">458</a> | <code>Revert</code>       | Revert operations on the stream                      |
| <a href="#">457</a> | <code>Seek</code>         | Set the stream position                              |
| <a href="#">457</a> | <code>SetSize</code>      | Set the stream size                                  |
| <a href="#">459</a> | <code>Stat</code>         | Return statistical data about the stream             |
| <a href="#">458</a> | <code>UnlockRegion</code> | Unlock a region of the stream                        |
| <a href="#">456</a> | <code>Write</code>        | Write to the stream                                  |

#### 4.72.4 Property overview

| Page                | Properties      | Access | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">459</a> | Stream          | r      | Stream on which adaptor works                                     |
| <a href="#">459</a> | StreamOwnership | rw     | Determines what happens with the stream when the adaptor is freed |

#### 4.72.5 TStreamAdapter.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TStreamAdapter`

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; Ownership: TStreamOwnership)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TStreamAdapter`. It initializes `TStreamAdapter.Stream` ([459](#)) with `Stream` and initializes `StreamOwnership` ([459](#)) with `Ownership`.

`TStreamAdapter` is an abstract class: descendants must be created that implement the actual functionality.

See also: `StreamOwnership` ([459](#)), `TStreamAdapter.Stream` ([459](#))

#### 4.72.6 TStreamAdapter.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TStreamAdapter` instance

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Explicitly free the `TStreamAdapter` instance. Normally, this is done automatically if a reference to the `IStream` interface is freed.

#### 4.72.7 TStreamAdapter.Read

Synopsis: Read from the stream.

Declaration: function `Read(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbRead: PDWord) : HRESULT`  
; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` implements `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Read` ([1933](#)) by reading from the stream specified at creation.

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Read` ([1933](#))

#### 4.72.8 TStreamAdapter.Write

Synopsis: Write to the stream

Declaration: function `Write(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbWritten: PDWord) : HRESULT`  
; Virtual

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Write` implements `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Write` ([1933](#)) by writing to the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Write` ([1933](#))

#### 4.72.9 TStreamAdapter.Seek

**Synopsis:** Set the stream position

**Declaration:** `function Seek(dlibMove: Largeint; dwOrigin: DWORD;  
out libNewPosition: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Seek` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Seek` ([1934](#)) by setting the position of the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.IStream.Seek` ([1934](#))

#### 4.72.10 TStreamAdapter.SetSize

**Synopsis:** Set the stream size

**Declaration:** `function SetSize(libNewSize: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SetSize` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.SetSize` ([1934](#)) by setting the size of the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.IStream.SetSize` ([1934](#))

#### 4.72.11 TStreamAdapter.CopyTo

**Synopsis:** Copy data to destination stream

**Declaration:** `function CopyTo(stm: IStream; cb: LargeUint; out cbRead: LargeUint;  
out cbWritten: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `CopyTo` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.CopyTo` ([1934](#)).

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

#### 4.72.12 TStreamAdapter.Commit

Synopsis: Commit data to the stream

Declaration: `function Commit(grfCommitFlags: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Commit` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Commit` ([1935](#)).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Commit` ([1935](#))

#### 4.72.13 TStreamAdapter.Revert

Synopsis: Revert operations on the stream

Declaration: `function Revert : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Revert` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Revert` ([1935](#)).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Revert` ([1935](#))

#### 4.72.14 TStreamAdapter.LockRegion

Synopsis: Lock a region of the stream

Declaration: `function LockRegion(libOffset: LargeUint; cb: LargeUint;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `LockRegion` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.LockRegion` ([1935](#)).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.LockRegion` ([1935](#))

#### 4.72.15 TStreamAdapter.UnlockRegion

Synopsis: Unlock a region of the stream

Declaration: `function UnlockRegion(libOffset: LargeUint; cb: LargeUint;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnLockRegion` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.UnLockRegion` ([1935](#)).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.UnLockRegion` ([1935](#))

#### 4.72.16 TStreamAdapter.Stat

Synopsis: Return statistical data about the stream

Declaration: `function Stat(out statstg: TStatStg; grfStatFlag: DWORD) : HRESULT  
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Stat` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Stat` (1936).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Stat` (1936)

#### 4.72.17 TStreamAdapter.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the stream

Declaration: `function Clone(out stm: IStream) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Clone` (1936).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Clone` (1936)

#### 4.72.18 TStreamAdapter.Stream

Synopsis: Stream on which adaptor works

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: This is the stream on which the adaptor works. It was specified at creation.

#### 4.72.19 TStreamAdapter.StreamOwnership

Synopsis: Determines what happens with the stream when the adaptor is freed

Declaration: `Property StreamOwnership : TStreamOwnership`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StreamOwnership` determines what happens when the adaptor

## 4.73 TStringList

### 4.73.1 Description

`TStringList` is a descendant class of `TStrings` (465) that implements all of the abstract methods introduced there. It also introduces some additional methods:

- Sort the list, or keep the list sorted at all times
- Special handling of duplicates in sorted lists
- Notification of changes in the list

See also: `TStrings` (465), `TStringList.Duplicates` (463), `TStringList.Sorted` (463)

### 4.73.2 Method overview

| Page | Method     | Description   |
|------|------------|---|
| 461  | Add        | Implements the <code>TStrings.Add</code> (468) function.      |
| 461  | Clear      | Implements the <code>TStrings.Clear</code> (471) function.    |
| 463  | CustomSort | Sort the stringlist using a custom sort algorithm             |
| 461  | Delete     | Implements the <code>TStrings.Delete</code> (471) function.   |
| 460  | Destroy    | Destroys the stringlist.                                      |
| 461  | Exchange   | Implements the <code>TStrings.Exchange</code> (472) function. |
| 462  | Find       | Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.         |
| 462  | IndexOf    | Overrides the <code>TStrings.IndexOf</code> (474) property.   |
| 462  | Insert     | Overrides the <code>TStrings.Insert</code> (475) method.      |
| 462  | Sort       | Sorts the strings in the list.                                |

### 4.73.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties    | Access | Description   |
|------|---------------|--------|---|
| 464  | CaseSensitive | rw     | Indicates whether comparing strings happens in a case sensitive manner.     |
| 463  | Duplicates    | rw     | Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings. |
| 464  | OnChange      | rw     | Event triggered after the list was modified.                                |
| 464  | OnChanging    | rw     | Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.                      |
| 465  | OwnsObjects   | rw     | Determines whether the stringlist owns it's objects or not.                 |
| 463  | Sorted        | rw     | Determines whether the list is sorted or not.                               |
| 465  | SortStyle     | rw     | Sort style for strings  |

### 4.73.4 TStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the stringlist.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the stringlist, release all memory allocated for the storage of the strings, and then calls the inherited `destroy` method.

**Remark** Any objects associated to strings in the list will *not* be destroyed; it is the responsibility of the caller to destroy all objects associated with strings in the list.

### 4.73.5 TStringList.Add

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Add (468) function.

Declaration: `function Add(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Add will add S to the list. If the list is sorted and the string S is already present in the list and TStringList.Duplicates (463) is dupError then an EStringListError (303) exception is raised. If Duplicates is set to dupIgnore then the return value is the index of the previous entry.

If the list is sorted, new strings will not necessarily be added to the end of the list, rather they will be inserted at their alphabetical position.

Errors: If the list is sorted and the string S is already present in the list and TStringList.Duplicates (463) is dupError then an EStringListError (303) exception is raised.

See also: TStringList.Insert (462), TStringList.Duplicates (463)

### 4.73.6 TStringList.Clear

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Clear (471) function.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Implements the TStringList.Clear (471) function.

### 4.73.7 TStringList.Delete

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Delete (471) function.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Implements the TStringList.Delete (471) function.

### 4.73.8 TStringList.Exchange

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Exchange (472) function.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Exchange will exchange two items in the list as described in TStringList.Exchange (472).

**Remark** Exchange will not check whether the list is sorted or not; if Exchange is called on a sorted list and the strings are not identical, the sort order of the list will be destroyed.

See also: TStringList.Sorted (463), TStringList.Exchange (472)

### 4.73.9 TStringList.Find

Synopsis: Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.

Declaration: `function Find(const S: string; out Index: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` returns `True` if the string `S` is present in the list. Upon exit, the `Index` parameter will contain the position of the string in the list. If the string is not found, the function will return `False` and `Index` will contain the position where the string will be inserted if it is added to the list.

#### Remark

1. Use this method only on sorted lists. For unsorted lists, use `TStringList.IndexOf` (462) instead.
2. `Find` uses a binary search method to locate the string

### 4.73.10 TStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Overrides the `TStrings.IndexOf` (474) property.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the ancestor method `TStrings.indexOf` (474). It tries to optimize the search by executing a binary search if the list is sorted. The function returns the position of `S` if it is found in the list, or -1 if the string is not found in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOf` (474), `TStringList.Find` (462)

### 4.73.11 TStringList.Insert

Synopsis: Overrides the `TStrings.Insert` (475) method.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` will insert the string `S` at position `Index` in the list. If the list is sorted, an `EStringListError` (303) exception will be raised instead. `Index` is a zero-based position.

Errors: If `Index` contains an invalid value (less than zero or larger than `Count`, or the list is sorted, an `EStringListError` (303) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStringList.Add` (461), `TStrings.Insert` (475), `TStrings.InsertObject` (475)

### 4.73.12 TStringList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the strings in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` will sort the strings in the list using the quicksort algorithm. If the list has its `TStringList.Sorted` (463) property set to `True` then nothing will be done.

See also: `TStringList.Sorted` (463)

### 4.73.13 TStringList.CustomSort

**Synopsis:** Sort the stringlist using a custom sort algorithm

**Declaration:** `procedure CustomSort (CompareFn: TStringListSortCompare); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `CustomSort` sorts the stringlist with a custom comparison function. The function should compare 2 elements in the list, and return a negative number if the first item is before the second. It should return 0 if the elements are equal, and a positive result indicates that the second elements should be before the first.

See also: `TStringList.Sorted` (463), `TStringList.Sort` (462)

### 4.73.14 TStringList.Duplicates

**Synopsis:** Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings.

**Declaration:** `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Duplicates` describes what to do in case a duplicate value is added to the list:

Table 4.32:

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>dupIgnore</code> | Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.   |
| <code>dupError</code>  | If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an <code>EStringListError</code> (303) exception is raised. |
| <code>dupAccept</code> | Duplicate values can be added to the list.  |

If the stringlist is not sorted, the `Duplicates` setting is ignored.

### 4.73.15 TStringList.Sorted

**Synopsis:** Determines whether the list is sorted or not.

**Declaration:** `Property Sorted : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Sorted` can be set to `True` in order to cause the list of strings to be sorted. Further additions to the list will be inserted at the correct position so the list remains sorted at all times. Setting the property to `False` has no immediate effect, but will allow strings to be inserted at any position.

#### Remark

1. When `Sorted` is `True`, `TStringList.Insert` (462) cannot be used. For sorted lists, `TStringList.Add` (461) should be used instead.
2. If `Sorted` is `True`, the `TStringList.Duplicates` (463) setting has effect. This setting is ignored when `Sorted` is `False`.

See also: `TStringList.Sort` (462), `TStringList.Duplicates` (463), `TStringList.Add` (461), `TstringList.Insert` (462)

#### 4.73.16 TStringList.CaseSensitive

**Synopsis:** Indicates whether comparing strings happens in a case sensitive manner.

**Declaration:** `Property CaseSensitive : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `CaseSensitive` indicates how string values are compared: When `True` this happens case sensitively, and when `False`, the comparison is done in a case insensitive manner.

This property influences `IndexOf` (474), `Find` (462), `IndexOfName` (474) and `Sort` (462).

See also: `IndexOf` (474), `Find` (462), `IndexOfName` (474), `Sort` (462)

#### 4.73.17 TStringList.OnChange

**Synopsis:** Event triggered after the list was modified.

**Declaration:** `Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `OnChange` can be assigned to respond to changes that have occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings are added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The `OnChange` event is triggered after the modification took place. When the modification is about to happen, an `TStringList.OnChanging` (464) event occurs.

See also: `TStringList.OnChanging` (464)

#### 4.73.18 TStringList.OnChanging

**Synopsis:** Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.

**Declaration:** `Property OnChanging : TNotifyEvent`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `OnChanging` can be assigned to respond to changes that will occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings will be added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The `Onchanging` event is triggered before the modification will take place. When the modification has happened, an `TStringList.OnChange` (464) event occurs.

See also: `TStringList.OnChange` (464)

### 4.73.19 TStringList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Determines whether the stringlist owns it's objects or not.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsObjects` can be set to `true` to let the stringlist instance own the objects in the list: if an element is removed from the list, the associated object (if there is any) will be freed as well. The same is true if the list is cleared or destroyed.

See also: `TStrings.Objects` ([483](#))

### 4.73.20 TStringList.SortStyle

Synopsis: Sort style for strings

Declaration: `Property SortStyle : TStringsSortStyle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SortStyle` sets the sort style for the `TStringList` instance. Setting it to `sslAuto` will keep the list sorted automatically at all times.

`Find` ([462](#)) (and hence `IndexOf` ([474](#))) will use a binary search if `SortStyle` differs from `sslNone`. if `SortStyle` is `sslNone`, then it will raise an exception.

See also: `TStringsSortStyle` ([280](#)), `TStrings.Sorted` ([465](#))

## 4.74 TStrings

### 4.74.1 Description

`TStrings` implements an abstract class to manage an array of strings. It introduces methods to set and retrieve strings in the array, searching for a particular string, concatenating the strings and so on. It also allows an arbitrary object to be associated with each string.

It also introduces methods to manage a series of `name=value` settings, as found in many configuration files.

An instance of `TStrings` is never created directly, instead a descendant class such as `TStringList` ([460](#)) should be created. This is because `TStrings` is an abstract class which does not implement all methods; `TStrings` also doesn't store any strings, this is the functionality introduced in descendants such as `TStringList` ([460](#)).

`TStrings` implements the `IFPObserved` ([305](#)) interface: when the stringlist is changed, a `ooChanged` notification is sent to all observers.

See also: `TStringList` ([460](#)), `IFPObserved` ([305](#))

**4.74.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method           | Description  |
|------|------------------|--|
| 468  | Add              | Add a string to the list   |
| 470  | AddCommaText     |  |
| 470  | AddDelimitedtext |  |
| 468  | AddObject        | Add a string and associated object to the list.                      |
| 469  | AddPair          | Add a name-value pair  |
| 469  | AddStrings       | Add contents of another stringlist to this list.                     |
| 470  | AddText          | Add text to the string list.   |
| 470  | Append           | Add a string to the list.  |
| 470  | Assign           | Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.               |
| 471  | BeginUpdate      | Mark the beginning of an update batch.                               |
| 471  | Clear            | Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.            |
| 467  | Create           | Initializ a new TStrings instance                                    |
| 471  | Delete           | Delete a string from the list.                                       |
| 468  | Destroy          | Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.     |
| 472  | EndUpdate        | Mark the end of an update batch.                                     |
| 472  | Equals           | Compares the contents of two stringlists.                            |
| 472  | Exchange         | Exchanges two strings in the list.                                   |
| 473  | ExtractName      | Extract the name part of a string                                    |
| 473  | Fill             |  |
| 473  | Filter           |  |
| 473  | ForEach          |  |
| 473  | GetEnumerator    | Create an IEnumerator instance                                       |
| 473  | GetNameValue     | Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index. |
| 474  | GetText          | Returns the contents as a PChar                                      |
| 474  | IndexOf          | Find a string in the list and return its position.                   |
| 474  | IndexOfName      | Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.                   |
| 474  | IndexOfObject    | Finds an object in the list and returns its index.                   |
| 475  | Insert           | Insert a string in the list.   |
| 475  | InsertObject     | Insert a string and associated object in the list.                   |
| 475  | LastIndexOf      |  |
| 476  | LoadFromFile     | Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.                  |
| 476  | LoadFromStream   | Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.                |
| 476  | Map              |  |
| 476  | Move             | Move a string from one place in the list to another.                 |
| 477  | Pop              |  |
| 477  | Reduce           |  |
| 477  | Reverse          |  |
| 478  | SaveToFile       | Save the contents of the list to a file.                             |
| 478  | SaveToStream     | Save the contents of the string to a stream.                         |
| 469  | SetStrings       |  |
| 479  | SetText          | Set the contents of the list from a PChar.                           |
| 478  | Shift            |  |
| 478  | Slice            |  |
| 468  | ToObjectArray    |  |
| 468  | ToStringArray    |  |

**4.74.3 Property overview**

| Page                | Properties                      | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">479</a> | AlwaysQuote                     | rw     | Always quote strings in DelimitedText  |
| <a href="#">479</a> | Capacity                        | rw     | Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand. |
| <a href="#">479</a> | CommaText                       | rw     | Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.  |
| <a href="#">480</a> | Count                           | r      | Number of strings in the list.   |
| <a href="#">481</a> | DefaultEncoding                 | rw     | Default encoding of stringlist   |
| <a href="#">481</a> | DelimitedText                   | rw     | Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.  |
| <a href="#">481</a> | Delimiter                       | rw     | Delimiter character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">481</a> ).                                       |
| <a href="#">482</a> | Encoding                        | r      | Current encoding of stringlist   |
| <a href="#">482</a> | LineBreak                       | rw     | LineBreak character to use   |
| <a href="#">482</a> | MissingNameValueSeparatorAction | rw     |  |
| <a href="#">482</a> | Names                           | r      | Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.  |
| <a href="#">483</a> | NameValueSeparator              | rw     | Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs   |
| <a href="#">483</a> | Objects                         | rw     | Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.                                   |
| <a href="#">483</a> | Options                         | rw     | A set of TStringOptions ( <a href="#">279</a> ) - various boolean properties.                            |
| <a href="#">484</a> | QuoteChar                       | rw     | Quote character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">481</a> ).   |
| <a href="#">484</a> | SkipLastLineBreak               | rw     | Do not add a linebreak to the last item  |
| <a href="#">484</a> | StrictDelimiter                 | rw     | Should only the delimiter character be considered a delimiter  |
| <a href="#">485</a> | Strings                         | rw     | Indexed access to the strings in the list.   |
| <a href="#">485</a> | StringsAdapter                  | rw     | Not implemented in Free Pascal.  |
| <a href="#">485</a> | Text                            | rw     | Contents of the list as one big string.  |
| <a href="#">486</a> | TextLineBreakStyle              | rw     | Determines which line breaks to use in the Text ( <a href="#">485</a> ) property                         |
| <a href="#">484</a> | TrailingLineBreak               | rw     | Add a linebreak to the last item   |
| <a href="#">486</a> | UseLocale                       | rw     | Determines what methods are used in strings comparison.  |
| <a href="#">487</a> | ValueFromIndex                  | rw     | Return the value part of a string based on it's index.   |
| <a href="#">487</a> | Values                          | rw     | Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.   |
| <a href="#">487</a> | WriteBOM                        | rw     | Write BOM when writing stringlist to stream  |

**4.74.4 TString.Create**

**Synopsis:** Initialize a new TString instance

**Declaration:** `constructor Create`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` initializes the codepage variables of a new TString instance. Note that TString is

an abstract class, you must always instantiate a descendent such as `TStringList` ([460](#))

Errors: Only an `EOutOfMemory` exception can occur.

See also: `TStringList` ([460](#))

#### 4.74.5 `TStrings.Destroy`

Synopsis: Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` is the destructor of `TStrings` it does nothing except calling the inherited destructor.

#### 4.74.6 `TStrings.ToObjectArray`

Declaration: `function ToObjectArray(aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer) : TObjectDynArray  
; Overload  
function ToObjectArray : TObjectDynArray; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

#### 4.74.7 `TStrings.ToStringArray`

Declaration: `function ToStringArray(aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer) : TStringDynArray  
; Overload  
function ToStringArray : TStringDynArray; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

#### 4.74.8 `TStrings.Add`

Synopsis: Add a string to the list

Declaration: `function Add(const S: string) : Integer; Virtual; Overload  
function Add(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const) : Integer  
; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `S` at the end of the list and returns the index of `S` in the list (which should equal `Tstrings.Count` ([480](#)))

See also: `TStrings.Objects` ([483](#)), `TStrings.AddObject` ([468](#)), `TStrings.Insert` ([475](#)), `TStrings.Delete` ([471](#)), `TStrings.Strings` ([485](#)), `TStrings.Count` ([480](#))

#### 4.74.9 `TStrings.AddObject`

Synopsis: Add a string and associated object to the list.

Declaration: `function AddObject(const S: string; AObject: TObject) : Integer  
; Virtual; Overload  
function AddObject(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const;  
AObject: TObject) : Integer; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddObject adds S to the list of strings, and associates AObject with it. It returns the index of S.

**Remark** An object added to the list is not automatically destroyed by the list when the list is destroyed or the string it is associated with is deleted. It is the responsibility of the application to destroy any objects associated with strings.

See also: TStrings.Add (468), TStrings.Strings (485), TStrings.Objects (483), TStrings.InsertObject (475)

#### 4.74.10 TStrings.AddPair

**Synopsis:** Add a name-value pair

**Declaration:**

```
function AddPair(const AName: string; const AValue: string) : TStrings
                ; Overload
function AddPair(const AName: string; const AValue: string;
                AObject: TObject) : TStrings; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddPair adds a Name=Value pair with the AName and AValue parameters, optionally with object AObject. It uses the correct NameValueSeparator (264) character to do so.

AddPair does not test whether aName already exists, so it is possible to add duplicate names.

Errors: None.

See also: TStrings.GetNameValue (473), TStrings.NameValueSeparator (483), TStrings.Add (468), TStrings.AddObject (468)

#### 4.74.11 TStrings.AddStrings

**Synopsis:** Add contents of another stringlist to this list.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure AddStrings(TheStrings: TStrings); Virtual; Overload
procedure AddStrings(TheStrings: TStrings; ClearFirst: Boolean)
                ; Overload
procedure AddStrings(const TheStrings: Array of string); Virtual
                ; Overload
procedure AddStrings(const TheStrings: Array of string;
                ClearFirst: Boolean); Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddStrings adds the contents of TheStrings to the stringlist. Any associated objects are added as well.

See also: TStrings.Add (468), TStrings.Assign (470)

#### 4.74.12 TStrings.SetStrings

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetStrings(TheStrings: TStrings); Virtual; Overload
procedure SetStrings(TheStrings: Array of string); Virtual; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**4.74.13 TStrings.AddText**

Synopsis: Add text to the string list.

Declaration: `procedure AddText(const S: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddText` adds `S` to the strings. It is identical in function to setting `Text` (264) but does not clear the list of strings first: `S` is split into lines, and each line is added to the list.

See also: `TString.Text` (264)

**4.74.14 TStrings.AddCommaText**

Declaration: `procedure AddCommaText(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

**4.74.15 TStrings.AddDelimitedtext**

Declaration: `procedure AddDelimitedText(const S: string; ADelimiter: Char;  
AStrictDelimiter: Boolean); Overload`  
`procedure AddDelimitedtext(const S: string); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

**4.74.16 TStrings.Append**

Synopsis: Add a string to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Append(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Append` does the same as `TStrings.Add` (468), only it does not return the index of the inserted string.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (468)

**4.74.17 TStrings.Assign**

Synopsis: Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` replaces the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `Source` if `Source` is also of type `TStrings`. Any associated objects are copied as well.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (468), `TStrings.AddStrings` (469), `TPersistent.Assign` (427)

### 4.74.18 TStrings.BeginUpdate

**Synopsis:** Mark the beginning of an update batch.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginUpdate`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `BeginUpdate` increases the update count by one. It is advisable to call `BeginUpdate` before lengthy operations on the stringlist. At the end of these operation, `TStrings.EndUpdate` (472) should be called to mark the end of the operation. Descendant classes may use this information to perform optimizations. e.g. updating the screen only once after many strings were added to the list.

All `TStrings` methods that modify the string list call `BeginUpdate` before the actual operation, and call `endUpdate` when the operation is finished. Descendant classes should also call these methods when modifying the string list.

**Remark** Always put the corresponding call to `TStrings.EndUpdate` (472) in the context of a `Finally` block, to ensure that the update count is always decreased at the end of the operation, even if an exception occurred:

```
With MyStrings do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some lengthy operation.
  Finally
    EndUpdate
  end;
```

See also: `TStrings.EndUpdate` (472)

### 4.74.19 TStrings.Clear

**Synopsis:** Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Clear` will remove all strings and their associated objects from the list. After a call to `clear`, `TStrings.Count` (480) is zero.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Clear`. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` (460) implement this method.

See also: `TStrings.Objects` (483), `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Delete` (471), `TStrings.Count` (480)

### 4.74.20 TStrings.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete a string from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Delete` deletes the string at position `Index` from the list. The associated object is also removed from the list, but not destroyed. `Index` is zero-based, and should be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Delete`. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` (460) implement this method.

**Errors:** If `Index` is not in the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (303) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Insert` (475), `TStrings.Objects` (483), `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Clear` (471)

#### 4.74.21 TStrings.EndUpdate

**Synopsis:** Mark the end of an update batch.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndUpdate`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `EndUpdate` should be called at the end of a lengthy operation on the stringlist, but only if there was a call to `BeginUpdate` before the operation was started. It is best to put the call to `EndUpdate` in the context of a `Finally` block, so it will be called even if an exception occurs.

For more information, see `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (471).

`TStrings` implements the `IFPObserved` (305) interface: when `EndUpdate` is called, a `ooChanged` notification is sent to all observers.

See also: `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (471), `IFPObserved` (305)

#### 4.74.22 TStrings.Equals

**Synopsis:** Compares the contents of two stringlists.

**Declaration:** `function Equals(Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Override; Overload`  
`function Equals(TheStrings: TStrings) : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Equals` compares the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `TheStrings`. If the contents match, i.e. the stringlist contain an equal amount of strings, and all strings match, then `True` is returned. If the number of strings in the lists is unequal, or they contain one or more different strings, `False` is returned.

##### Remark

1. The strings are compared case-insensitively.
2. The associated objects are not compared

See also: `TStrings.Objects` (483), `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Count` (480), `TStrings.Assign` (470)

#### 4.74.23 TStrings.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchanges two strings in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the strings at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. The associated objects are also exchanged.

Both indexes must be in the range of valid indexes, i.e. must have a value between 0 and `Count-1`.

**Errors:** If either `Index1` or `Index2` is not in the range of valid indexes, an `EStringListError` (303) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Move` (476), `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Count` (480)

**4.74.24 TStrings.ExtractName**

Synopsis: Extract the name part of a string

Declaration: `function ExtractName(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ExtractName` returns the name part (the part before the `NameValueSeparator` (483) character) of the string. If the character is not present, an empty string is returned. The resulting string is not trimmed, it can end or start with spaces.

See also: `NameValueSeparator` (483)

**4.74.25 TStrings.Filter**

Declaration: `procedure Filter(aFilter: TStringsFilterMethod; aList: TStrings)`  
`function Filter(aFilter: TStringsFilterMethod) : TStrings`

Visibility: public

**4.74.26 TStrings.Fill**

Declaration: `procedure Fill(const aValue: string; aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer)`

Visibility: public

**4.74.27 TStrings.ForEach**

Declaration: `procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethod)`  
`procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethodEx)`  
`procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethodExObj)`

Visibility: public

**4.74.28 TStrings.GetEnumerator**

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TStringsEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1581) interface for `TStrings`. It creates a `TStringsEnumerator` (488) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1581) interface.

See also: `TStringsEnumerator` (488), `IEnumerator` (1581), `IEnumerable` (1581)

**4.74.29 TStrings.GetNameValue**

Synopsis: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on its index.

Declaration: `procedure GetNameValue(Index: Integer; out AName: string;`  
`out AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on its index.

### 4.74.30 TStrings.GetText

Synopsis: Returns the contents as a PChar

Declaration: `function GetText : PChar; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetText` allocates a memory buffer and copies the contents of the stringlist to this buffer as a series of strings, separated by an end-of-line marker. The buffer is zero terminated.

**Remark** The caller is responsible for freeing the returned memory buffer.

### 4.74.31 TStrings.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find a string in the list and return its position.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Virtual`  
`function IndexOf(const S: string; aStart: Integer) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches the list for `S`. The search is case-insensitive. If a matching entry is found, its position is returned. if no matching string is found, `-1` is returned.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of the string is returned.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (474), `TStrings.IndexOfName` (474), `TStrings.Strings` (485)

### 4.74.32 TStrings.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: string) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` searches in the list of strings for a name-value pair with name part `Name`. If such a pair is found, it returns the index of the pair in the stringlist. If no such pair is found, the function returns `-1`. The search is done case-insensitive.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of a matching name-value pair is returned.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOf` (474), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (474), `TStrings.Strings` (485)

### 4.74.33 TStrings.IndexOfObject

Synopsis: Finds an object in the list and returns its index.

Declaration: `function IndexOfObject(AObject: TObject) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IndexOfObject` searches through the list of strings till it find a string associated with `AObject`, and returns the index of this string. If no such string is found, `-1` is returned.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of a string with associated object `AObject` is returned; if more strings in the list can be associated with `AObject`, they will not be found by this routine.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

#### 4.74.34 TStrings.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a string in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: string); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Insert` inserts the string `S` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

**Remark**

1. All methods that add strings to the list use `Insert` to add a string to the list.
2. If the string has an associated object, use `TStrings.InsertObject` (475) instead.

**Errors:** If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (303) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TStrings.Add` (468), `TStrings.InsertObject` (475), `TStrings.Append` (470), `TStrings.Delete` (471)

#### 4.74.35 TStrings.InsertObject

**Synopsis:** Insert a string and associated object in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure InsertObject(Index: Integer; const S: string;  
AObject: TObject)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `InsertObject` inserts the string `S` and its associated object `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

**Errors:** If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (303) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TStrings.Insert` (475), `TStrings.AddObject` (468), `TStrings.Append` (470), `TStrings.Delete` (471)

#### 4.74.36 TStrings.LastIndexOf

**Declaration:** `function LastIndexOf(const S: string; aStart: Integer) : Integer  
; Virtual  
function LastIndexOf(const S: string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**4.74.37 TStrings.LoadFromFile**

Synopsis: Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string); Virtual; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)`  
`procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; AEncoding: TEncoding)`  
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of a file into the stringlist. Each line in the file (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

`LoadFromFile` simply creates a file stream (386) with the given filename, and then executes `TStrings.LoadfromStream` (476); after that the file stream object is destroyed again.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromStream` (476), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (478), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (478)

**4.74.38 TStrings.LoadFromStream**

Synopsis: Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)`  
`; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; AEncoding: TEncoding)`  
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the stringlist. Each line in the stream (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromFile` (476), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (478), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (478)

**4.74.39 TStrings.Map**

Declaration: `procedure Map(aMap: TStringsMapMethod; aList: TStrings)`  
`function Map(aMap: TStringsMapMethod) : TStrings`

Visibility: public

**4.74.40 TStrings.Move**

Synopsis: Move a string from one place in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Move` moves the string at position `CurIndex` so it has position `NewIndex` after the move operation. The object associated to the string is also moved. `CurIndex` and `NewIndex` should be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

**Remark** `NewIndex` is *not* the position in the stringlist before the move operation starts. The move operation

- 1.removes the string from position `CurIndex`
- 2.inserts the string at position `NewIndex`

This may not lead to the desired result if `NewIndex` is bigger than `CurIndex`. Consider the following example:

```
With MyStrings do
begin
  Clear;
  Add('String 0');
  Add('String 1');
  Add('String 2');
  Add('String 3');
  Add('String 4');
  Move(1,3);
end;
```

After the `Move` operation has completed, 'String 1' will be between 'String 3' and 'String 4'.

**Errors:** If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (303) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Exchange` (472)

#### 4.74.41 TStrings.Pop

**Declaration:** `function Pop : string`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.42 TStrings.Reduce

**Declaration:** `function Reduce(aReduceMethod: TStringsReduceMethod;  
const startingValue: string) : string`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.43 TStrings.Reverse

**Declaration:** `function Reverse : TStrings  
procedure Reverse(aList: TStrings)`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.44 TStrings.SaveToFile

**Synopsis:** Save the contents of the list to a file.

```
Declaration: procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string); Virtual; Overload
              procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)
                              ; Overload
              procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string; AEncoding: TEncoding)
                              ; Virtual; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SaveToFile` saves the contents of the stringlist to the file with name `FileName`. It writes the strings to the file, separated by end-of-line markers, so each line in the file will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

`SaveToFile` creates a file stream (386) with name `FileName`, calls `TStrings.SaveToStream` (478) and then destroys the file stream object.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (303) exception can be raised if the file `FileName` cannot be opened, or if it cannot be written to.

See also: [TStrings.SaveToStream \(478\)](#), [Tstrings.LoadFromStream \(476\)](#), [TStrings.LoadFromFile \(476\)](#)

#### 4.74.45 TStrings.SaveToStream

**Synopsis:** Save the contents of the string to a stream.

```
Declaration: procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual; Overload
              procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)
                          ; Overload
              procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream; AEncoding: TEncoding); Virtual
                          ; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SaveToStream` saves the contents of the stringlist to `Stream`. It writes the strings to the stream, separated by end-of-line markers, so each 'line' in the stream will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

**Errors:** An `EStreamError` (303) exception can be raised if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: [TStrings.SaveToFile \(478\)](#), [Tstrings.LoadFromStream \(476\)](#), [TStrings.LoadFromFile \(476\)](#)

#### 4.74.46 TStrings.Shift

```
Declaration: function Shift : string
```

Visibility: public

#### 4.74.47 TStrings.Slice

```
Declaration: procedure Slice(fromIndex: Integer; aList: TStrings)
              function Slice(fromIndex: Integer) : TStrings
```

Visibility: public

**4.74.48 TStrings.SetText**

Synopsis: Set the contents of the list from a PChar.

Declaration: `procedure SetText(TheText: PChar); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetText` parses the contents of `TheText` and fills the stringlist based on the contents. It regards `TheText` as a series of strings, separated by end-of-line markers. Each of these strings is added to the stringlist.

See also: `TStrings.Text` ([485](#))

**4.74.49 TStrings.AlwaysQuote**

Synopsis: Always quote strings in `DelimitedText`

Declaration: `Property AlwaysQuote : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AlwaysQuote` tells the stringlist instance to quote strings in `DelimitedText` ([481](#)) . The default is to quote strings only when they have whitespace in them.

See also: `DelimitedText` ([481](#)), `CommaText` ([481](#)), `StrictDelimiter` ([484](#))

**4.74.50 TStrings.Capacity**

Synopsis: Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of strings that the list can hold before it tries to allocate more memory.

`TStrings` returns `TStrings.Count` ([480](#)) when read. Trying to set the capacity has no effect. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` ([460](#)) can override this property such that it actually sets the new capacity.

See also: `TStringList` ([460](#)), `TStrings.Count` ([480](#))

**4.74.51 TStrings.CommaText**

Synopsis: Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.

Declaration: `Property CommaText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CommaText` represents the stringlist as a single string, consisting of a comma-separated concatenation of the strings in the list. If one of the strings contains spaces, comma's or quotes it will be enclosed by double quotes. Any double quotes in a string will be doubled. For instance the following strings:

```
Comma,string
Quote"string
Space string
NormalSttring
```

is converted to

```
"Comma,string","Quote""String","Space string",NormalString
```

Conversely, when setting the `CommaText` property, the text will be parsed according to the rules outlined above, and the strings will be set accordingly. Note that spaces will in this context be regarded as string separators, unless the string as a whole is contained in double quotes. Spaces that occur next to a delimiter will be ignored. The following string:

```
"Comma,string" , "Quote""String",Space string,, NormalString
```

Will be converted to

```
Comma,String
Quote"String
Space
String

NormalString
```

This is a special case of the `TStrings.DelimitedText` (481) property where the quote character is always the double quote, and the delimiter is always the colon.

See also: `TStrings.Text` (485), `TStrings.SetText` (479)

#### 4.74.52 TStrings.Count

Synopsis: Number of strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the current number of strings in the list. `TStrings` does not implement this property; descendant classes should override the property read handler to return the correct value.

Strings in the list are always uniquely identified by their `Index`; the index of a string is zero-based, i.e. it's supported range is 0 to `Count-1`. trying to access a string with an index larger than or equal to `Count` will result in an error. Code that iterates over the list in a stringlist should always take into account the zero-based character of the list index.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Objects` (483), `TStrings.Capacity` (479)

#### 4.74.53 TStrings.DefaultEncoding

Synopsis: Default encoding of stringlist

Declaration: `Property DefaultEncoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DefaultEncoding` is the default encoding used by the `TStrings` instance. It is not the actual encoding, as specified by `Encoding` (482).

See also: `Encoding` (482)

#### 4.74.54 TStrings.DelimitedText

Synopsis: Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.

Declaration: `Property DelimitedText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DelimitedText` returns all strings, properly quoted with `QuoteChar` (484) and separated by the `Delimiter` (481) character.

Strings are quoted if they contain a space or any character with ASCII value less than 32.

The `CommaText` (479) property is a special case of delimited text where the delimiter character is a comma and the quote character is a double quote.

If `StrictDelimiter` (484) is set to `True`, then no quoting is done (The `QuoteChar` property is disregarded completely): the returned text will contain the items in the stringlist, separated by the `Delimiter` character. When writing the `DelimitedText` property, the text will be split at all occurrences of the `Delimiter` character; however, when reading, the `QuoteChar` property will be taken into account.

See also: `TStrings.Delimiter` (481), `TStrings.Text` (485), `TStrings.QuoteChar` (484), `TStrings.CommaText` (479)

#### 4.74.55 TStrings.Delimiter

Synopsis: Delimiter character used in `DelimitedText` (481).

Declaration: `Property Delimiter : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Delimiter` is the delimiter character used to separate the different strings in the stringlist when they are read or set through the `DelimitedText` (481) property.

See also: `TStrings.DelimitedText` (481)

#### 4.74.56 TStrings.Encoding

Synopsis: Current encoding of stringlist

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Encoding` is the current encoding used by the `TStrings` instance, and which was specified in the constructor. It is not the default encoding, as specified by `DefaultEncoding` (481).

See also: `DefaultEncoding` (481)

#### 4.74.57 TStrings.LineBreak

Synopsis: `LineBreak` character to use

Declaration: `Property LineBreak : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LineBreak` is the character used to separate lines when reading or writing `TStrings.Text` (485), and it is also used when reading from file.

See also: `TStrings.Text` (485)

#### 4.74.58 TStrings.MissingNameValueSeparatorAction

Declaration: `Property MissingNameValueSeparatorAction : TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

#### 4.74.59 TStrings.Names

Synopsis: Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the names of the name-value pairs in the list. It returns the name part of the `Index`-th string in the list.

**Remark** The index is not an index based on the number of name-value pairs in the list. It is the name part of the name-value pair a string `Index` in the list. If the string at position `Index` is not a name-value pair (i.e. does not contain the equal sign (=)), then an empty name is returned.

See also: `TStrings.Values` (487), `TStrings.IndexOfName` (474)

#### 4.74.60 TStrings.NameValueSeparator

Synopsis: Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs

Declaration: `Property NameValueSeparator : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `NameValueSeparator` is the character used to separate name,value pair. By default, this is the equal sign (=), resulting in `Name=Value` pairs.

It can be set to a colon for `Name : Value` pairs.

#### 4.74.61 TStrings.Objects

Synopsis: Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Objects[Index: Integer]: TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Objects` provides indexed access to the objects associated to the strings in the list. `Index` is a zero-based index and must be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

Setting the `objects` property will not free the previously associated object, if there was one. The caller is responsible for freeing the object that was previously associated to the string.

`TStrings` does not implement any storage for objects. Reading the `Objects` property will always return `Nil`, Setting the property will have no effect. It is the responsibility of the descendant classes to provide storage for the associated objects.

Errors: If an `Index` outside the valid range is specified, an `EStringListError` (303) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (474), `TStrings.Names` (482), `TStrings.Values` (487)

#### 4.74.62 TStrings.Options

Synopsis: A set of `TStringsOption` (279) - various boolean properties.

Declaration: `Property Options : TStringsOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Set `Options` instead of the underlying boolean properties.

See also: `TStringsOption` (279)

#### 4.74.63 TStrings QuoteChar

Synopsis: Quote character used in DelimitedText (481).

Declaration: `Property QuoteChar : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QuoteChar` is the character used by the `DelimitedText` (481) property to quote strings that have a space or non-printing character in it.

#### 4.74.64 TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak

Synopsis: Do not add a linebreak to the last item

Declaration: `Property SkipLastLineBreak : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SkipLastLineBreak` can be set to `True` to omit a linebreak character after the last string in the `TStrings.Text` (485). This also means when writing to file, that the file will not have a terminating linebreak character.

Note that `SkipLastLineBreak` has the opposite meaning to `TStrings.TrailingLineBreak` (484).

See also: `TStrings.TrailingLineBreak` (484), `TStrings.LineBreak` (482), `TStrings.Text` (485), `TStrings.Options` (483)

#### 4.74.65 TStrings.TrailingLineBreak

Synopsis: Add a linebreak to the last item

Declaration: `Property TrailingLineBreak : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TrailingLineBreak` can be set to `False` to omit a linebreak character after the last string in the `TStrings.Text` (485). This also means when writing to file, that the file will not have a terminating linebreak character.

Note that `TrailingLineBreak` has the opposite meaning to `TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak` (484).

See also: `TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak` (484), `TStrings.LineBreak` (482), `TStrings.Text` (485), `TStrings.Options` (483)

#### 4.74.66 TStrings.StrictDelimiter

Synopsis: Should only the delimiter character be considered a delimiter

Declaration: `Property StrictDelimiter : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `StrictDelimiter` can be used to indicate that only the delimiter character should be considered a delimiter when setting `DelimitedText` (481): under normal circumstances, quotes and spaces are considered specially (see the `TStrings.CommaText` (479) property for more information).

When `StrictDelimiter` is set to `True` then only the `Delimiter` (481) character is considered when splitting the text in items: no quoting whatsoever is performed when writing the `DelimitedText` property. However, when reading the `DelimitedText` property, quoted strings are taken into account (so a quoted string can contain a delimiter that is treated as text instead of a delimiter).

See also: `DelimitedText` (481), `CommaText` (479), `Delimiter` (481), `TStrings.Options` (483)

#### 4.74.67 TStrings.Strings

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the strings in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Strings[Index: Integer]: string; default`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Strings` is the default property of `TStrings`. It provides indexed read-write access to the list of strings. Reading it will return the string at position `Index` in the list. Writing it will set the string at position `Index`.

`Index` is the position of the string in the list. It is zero-based, i.e. valued values range from 0 (the first string in the list) till `Count-1` (the last string in the list). When browsing through the strings in the list, this fact must be taken into account.

To access the objects associated with the strings in the list, use the `TStrings.Objects` (483) property. The name parts of name-value pairs can be accessed with the `TStrings.Names` (482) property, and the values can be set or read through the `TStrings.Values` (487) property.

Searching through the list can be done using the `TStrings.IndexOf` (474) method.

**Errors:** If `Index` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (303) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Count` (480), `TStrings.Objects` (483), `TStrings.Names` (482), `TStrings.Values` (487), `TStrings.IndexOf` (474)

#### 4.74.68 TStrings.StringsAdapter

**Synopsis:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

**Declaration:** `Property StringsAdapter : IStringsAdapter`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

#### 4.74.69 TStrings.Text

**Synopsis:** Contents of the list as one big string.

**Declaration:** `Property Text : string`

**Visibility:** public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Text` returns, when read, the contents of the stringlist as one big string consisting of all strings in the list, separated by an end-of-line marker. When this property is set, the string will be cut into smaller strings, based on the positions of end-of-line markers in the string. Any previous content of the stringlist will be lost.

**Remark** If any of the strings in the list contains an end-of-line marker, then the resulting string will appear to contain more strings than actually present in the list. To avoid this ambiguity, use the `TStrings.CommaText` (479) property instead.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Count` (480), `TStrings.CommaText` (479)

#### 4.74.70 `TStrings.TextLineBreakStyle`

**Synopsis:** Determines which line breaks to use in the `Text` (485) property

**Declaration:** `Property TextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `TextLineBreakStyle` determines which linebreak style is used when constructing the `Text` property: the same rules are used as in the writing to text files:

**tlbsLFLines** are separated with a linefeed character #10.

**tlbsCRLFLines** are separated with a carriage-return/linefeed character pair: #13#10.

**tlbsCRLines** are separated with a carriage-return character #13.

It has no effect when setting the text property.

See also: `Text` (485)

#### 4.74.71 `TStrings.UseLocale`

**Synopsis:** Determines what methods are used in strings comparison.

**Declaration:** `Property UseLocale : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** Set `UseLocale` to `True` to use `AnsiCompareStr` (264) and `AnsiCompareText` (264) for comparing strings in the `TStrings` object.

Set `UseLocale` to `False` to use `CompareStr` (264) and `CompareText` (264) for comparing strings in the `TStrings` object.

The default value is `True`.

See also: `TStrings.Options` (483)

#### 4.74.72 TStrings.ValueFromIndex

Synopsis: Return the value part of a string based on it's index.

Declaration: `Property ValueFromIndex[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ValueFromIndex` returns the value part of a string based on the string index. The value part are all characters in the string after the `NameValueSeparator` (483) character, or all characters if the `NameValueSeparator` character is not present.

#### 4.74.73 TStrings.Values

Synopsis: Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Values[Name: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Values` represents the value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

When reading this property, if there is a name-value pair in the list of strings that has name part `Name`, then the corresponding value is returned. If there is no such pair, an empty string is returned.

When writing this value, first it is checked whether there exists a name-value pair in the list with name `Name`. If such a pair is found, it's value part is overwritten with the specified value. If no such pair is found, a new name-value pair is added with the specified `Name` and value.

##### Remark

- 1.Names are compared case-insensitively.
- 2.Any character, including whitespace, up till the first equal (=) sign in a string is considered part of the name.

See also: `TStrings.Names` (482), `TStrings.Strings` (485), `TStrings.Objects` (483)

#### 4.74.74 TStrings.WriteBOM

Synopsis: Write BOM when writing stringlist to stream

Declaration: `Property WriteBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WriteBOM` signals the stringlist to write a BOM Marker to the stream if the stringlist is written to stream using `TStrings.SaveToStream` (478) or `TStrings.SaveToFile` (478)

See also: `TStrings.SaveToStream` (478), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (478), `TStrings.Options` (483)

## 4.75 TStringsEnumerator

### 4.75.1 Description

`TStringsEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581) interface for the `TStrings` (465) class, so the `TStrings` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TStrings.GetEnumerator` (473) method of `TStrings`.

See also: `TStrings` (465), `TStrings.GetEnumerator` (473), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1581)

### 4.75.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                  | Description   |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">488</a> | <code>Create</code>     | Initialize a new instance of <code>TStringsEnumerator</code>          |
| <a href="#">488</a> | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Return the current pointer in the list                                |
| <a href="#">488</a> | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list. |

### 4.75.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access         | Description                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">489</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Current pointer in the list |

### 4.75.4 TStringsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TStringsEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStrings: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TStringsEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the stringlist `AStrings` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TStrings` (465)

### 4.75.5 TStringsEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current string item in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` (488), `TStringItem` (300)

### 4.75.6 TStringsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the stringlist, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` (488)

#### 4.75.7 TStringsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` (488) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` (488)

### 4.76 TStringStream

#### 4.76.1 Description

`TStringStream` stores its data in an `ansistring`. The contents of this string is available as the `DataStream` (492) property. It also introduces some methods to read or write parts of the stringstream's data as a string.

The main purpose of a `TStringStream` is to be able to treat a string as a stream from which can be read.

See also: `TStream` (445), `TStringStream.DataStream` (492), `TStringStream.ReadString` (492), `TStringStream.WriteString` (492)

#### 4.76.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                          | Description  |
|------|---------------------------------|--|
| 490  | <code>Create</code>             | Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content. |
| 490  | <code>CreateRaw</code>          | Create stringstream using codepage of string             |
| 490  | <code>Destroy</code>            | Free the instance of the stream                          |
| 491  | <code>ReadAnsiString</code>     | Read an <code>ansistring</code> from the stream          |
| 492  | <code>ReadString</code>         | Reads a string of length <code>Count</code>              |
| 491  | <code>ReadUnicodeString</code>  | Read a unicode string from the stream                    |
| 491  | <code>WriteAnsiString</code>    | Write an <code>ansistring</code> to the stream           |
| 492  | <code>WriteString</code>        | <code>WriteString</code> writes a string to the stream.  |
| 491  | <code>WriteUnicodeString</code> | Write a unicode string to the stream                     |

### 4.76.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties        | Access | Description  |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">492</a> | DataStream        | r      | Contains the contents of the stream in string form |
| <a href="#">493</a> | Encoding          | r      | Encoding of the string with the data               |
| <a href="#">493</a> | OwnsEncoding      | r      | Does the stream instance owns the encoding         |
| <a href="#">492</a> | UnicodeDataStream | r      | Datastring as unicode string                       |

### 4.76.4 TStringStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ABytes: TBytes); Override; Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string; AEncoding: TEncoding;`  
`AOwnsEncoding: Boolean); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string; ACodePage: Integer); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString; AEncoding: TEncoding;`  
`AOwnsEncoding: Boolean); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString; ACodePage: Integer)`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TStringStream` instance and sets its initial content to `AString`. The position is still 0 but the size of the stream will equal the length of the string.

The `Encoding` argument specifies the codepage with which the bytes in the string will be interpreted. If it is not specified (or `Nil`) the system default encoding will be used. The correct encoding can be detected from the string by using the `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([490](#)) constructor.

See also: `TStringStream.DataString` ([492](#)), `TStringStream.UnicodeDataStream` ([492](#)), `TStringStream.Encoding` ([493](#)), `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([490](#))

### 4.76.5 TStringStream.CreateRaw

Synopsis: Create stringstream using codepage of string

Declaration: `constructor CreateRaw(const AString: RawByteString); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateRaw` will create the stream using the codepage of the string passed on in the constructor. The default constructor uses the default codepage of the system.

See also: `TStringStream.Create` ([490](#))

### 4.76.6 TStringStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance of the stream

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the encoding if it owns it and calls the inherited destructor.

#### 4.76.7 TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a unicode string from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString(Count: LongInt) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` will read a unicodestring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary..

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (445), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (453), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (491)

#### 4.76.8 TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString

Synopsis: Write a unicode string to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const AString: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` will write a unicodestring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary.

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (445), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (491), `TStringStream.ReadAnsiString` (491), `TStringStream.WriteAnsiString` (491)

#### 4.76.9 TStringStream.ReadAnsiString

Synopsis: Read an ansistring from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadAnsiString(Count: LongInt) : AnsiString; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadAnsiString` will read an ansistring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary..

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (445), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (491), `TStringStream.WriteAnsiString` (491), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (491)

#### 4.76.10 TStringStream.WriteAnsiString

Synopsis: Write an ansistring to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteAnsiString(const AString: AnsiString); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteAnsiString` will write an ansistring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary.

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (445), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (491), `TStringStream.ReadAnsiString` (491), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (491)

#### 4.76.11 TStringStream.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string of length `Count`

Declaration: `function ReadString(Count: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads `Count` bytes from the stream and returns the read bytes as a string. If less than `Count` bytes were available, the string has as many characters as bytes could be read.

The `ReadString` method is a wrapper around the `Read` ([489](#)) method. It does not do the same string as the `TStream.ReadAnsiString` ([453](#)) method, which first reads a length integer to determine the length of the string to be read.

See also: `TStringStream.Read` ([489](#)), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` ([453](#))

#### 4.76.12 TStringStream.WriteString

Synopsis: `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const AString: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

#### 4.76.13 TStringStream.DataString

Synopsis: Contains the contents of the stream in string form

Declaration: `Property DataString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Contains the contents of the stream in string form

#### 4.76.14 TStringStream.UnicodeDataString

Synopsis: `Datastring` as unicode string

Declaration: `Property UnicodeDataString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `UnicodeDataString` returns the data string as a unicode encoded string.

See also: `TStringStream.DataString` ([492](#))

### 4.76.15 TStringStream.OwnsEncoding

Synopsis: Does the stream instance owns the encoding

Declaration: `Property OwnsEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `OwnsEncoding` indicates whether the stream instance owns the encoding or not. If it owns the encoding, it will be freed when the stream instance is freed.

See also: `TStringStream.Encoding` ([493](#))

### 4.76.16 TStringStream.Encoding

Synopsis: Encoding of the string with the data

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Encoding` is the encoding of the string which contains the data. If the encoding was not specified (or detected) in the constructor, this is the default system encoding.

See also: `TStringStream.OwnsEncoding` ([493](#)), `TStringStream.Create` ([490](#)), `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([490](#))

## 4.77 TTextObjectWriter

### 4.77.1 Description

Not yet implemented.

## 4.78 TThread

### 4.78.1 Description

The `TThread` class encapsulates the native thread support of the operating system. To create a thread, declare a descendant of the `TThread` object and override the `Execute` ([494](#)) method. In this method, the `tthread`'s code should be executed. To run a thread, create an instance of the `tthread` descendant, and call its `execute` method.

It is also possible to simply execute a method or static procedure in a thread using the `TThread.ExecuteInThread` ([499](#)) class method.

See also: `EThread` ([303](#)), `TThread.Execute` ([494](#)), `TThread.ExecuteInThread` ([499](#))

**4.78.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method                 | Description  |
|------|------------------------|--|
| 503  | AfterConstruction      | Code to be executed after construction but before execute.                 |
| 496  | CheckTerminated        | Check if the current thread has finished executing.                        |
| 495  | Create                 | Creates a new thread.  |
| 496  | CreateAnonymousThread  | Execute code in an anonymous thread  |
| 495  | Destroy                | Destroys the thread object.  |
| 494  | Execute                | Execute method. Must be overridden in a descendant thread.                 |
| 499  | ExecuteInThread        | Execute a method or static procedure in a thread                           |
| 498  | GetSystemTimes         | Return CPU stats   |
| 498  | GetTickCount           | Return tick count (32-bit)   |
| 498  | GetTickCount64         | Return tick count (64-bit)   |
| 496  | NameThreadForDebugging | Set a thread name  |
| 495  | Queue                  | Queue a method for execution in the main thread                            |
| 497  | RemoveQueuedEvents     | Remove methods scheduled for execution from queue                          |
| 504  | Resume                 | Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see <code>TThread.Start</code> |
| 496  | SetReturnValue         | Set return value of a thread   |
| 497  | Sleep                  | Prevent thread execution   |
| 497  | SpinWait               | Prevent thread execution in a spin-wait loop                               |
| 503  | Start                  | Starts a thread that was created in a suspended state.                     |
| 504  | Suspend                | Suspends the thread's execution.   |
| 495  | Synchronize            | Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.        |
| 504  | Terminate              | Signals the thread it should terminate.                                    |
| 505  | WaitFor                | Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.             |
| 498  | Yield                  | Yield execution to other threads   |

**4.78.3 Property overview**

| Page | Properties        | Access | Description  |
|------|-------------------|--------|--|
| 505  | CurrentThread     | r      | Return current thread instance   |
| 507  | ExternalThread    | r      | Is the thread instance an external thread ?                              |
| 508  | FatalException    | r      | Exception that occurred during thread execution                          |
| 507  | Finished          | r      | Has the thread finished executing  |
| 506  | FreeOnTerminate   | rw     | Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing. |
| 506  | Handle            | r      | Returns the thread handle.   |
| 506  | IsSingleProcessor | r      | Is the current system single processor or not                            |
| 508  | OnTerminate       | rw     | Event called when the thread terminates.                                 |
| 507  | Priority          | rw     | Returns the thread priority.   |
| 505  | ProcessorCount    | r      | Return the processor count for this system                               |
| 507  | Suspended         | rw     | Indicates whether the thread is suspended.                               |
| 508  | ThreadID          | r      | Returns the thread ID.   |

**4.78.4 TThread.Execute**

Synopsis: Execute method. Must be overridden in a descendant thread.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `protected`

**Description:** `Execute` is a method that must be overridden in descendant classes of the thread. It must contain the code that must execute in the thread. The `Execute` method is responsible for checking `Terminated` (264) at regular intervals: when it is set to `True` the execute method must exit.

See also: `Terminated` (264)

#### 4.78.5 `TThread.Synchronize`

**Synopsis:** Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.

**Declaration:** `procedure Synchronize(AMethod: TThreadMethod)`  
`class procedure Synchronize(AThread: TThread; AMethod: TThreadMethod)`

**Visibility:** `protected`

**Description:** Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.

#### 4.78.6 `TThread.Queue`

**Synopsis:** `Queue` a method for execution in the main thread

**Declaration:** `procedure Queue(aMethod: TThreadMethod)`  
`class procedure Queue(aThread: TThread; aMethod: TThreadMethod); Static`

**Visibility:** `protected`

**Description:** `Queue` schedules a method `aMethod` for execution in the main thread. In difference with `TThread.Synchronize` (495), `Queue` just posts the method for execution in a queue, and does not wait for it to be executed, so this call returns at once.

In the class procedure overloaded version of this call, the thread for which the method must be posted is the first argument. In the protected version of this call (used in the `tthread` instance), this argument is not there, and the thread instance is used.

When a thread object is destroyed (after it has finished executing) all its queued calls are removed from the queue list.

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (495), `TThread.RemoveQueuedEvents` (497)

#### 4.78.7 `TThread.Create`

**Synopsis:** Creates a new thread.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(CreateSuspended: Boolean; const StackSize: SizeUInt)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Creates a new thread.

#### 4.78.8 `TThread.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the thread object.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Destroys the thread object.

### 4.78.9 TThread.CreateAnonymousThread

Synopsis: Execute code in an anonymous thread

Declaration: `class function CreateAnonymousThread(aProc: TProcedure) : TThread  
; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateAnonymousThread` will create an instance of a `TThread` descendant and calls `aProc` in this procedure. This can be used to quickly execute a method in another thread without having to explicitly declare a thread for such purposes. It returns the created `TThread` instance, which can be checked for termination etc.

Note that this method differs slightly from Delphi in that FPC does not yet support anonymous methods, so the signature of `aProc` differs slightly.

See also: `TThread.CheckTerminated` ([496](#))

### 4.78.10 TThread.NameThreadForDebugging

Synopsis: Set a thread name

Declaration: `class procedure NameThreadForDebugging(aThreadName: UnicodeString;  
aThreadID: TThreadID); Static  
class procedure NameThreadForDebugging(aThreadName: AnsiString;  
aThreadID: TThreadID); Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `NameThreadForDebugging` sets the name of thread `aThreadID` to `aThreadName`. The thread name can be Unicode or ansistring. This is mainly useful for debugging purposes, as thread names are more easily recognizable than IDs.

Note that this requires OS support, so at the moment it is Windows and Unix only.

### 4.78.11 TThread.SetReturnValue

Synopsis: Set return value of a thread

Declaration: `class procedure SetReturnValue(aValue: Integer); Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TThread.SetReturnValue` sets the return value of an internally created thread.

Errors: If the thread was not created by the FPC program, an `EThreadExternalException` ([304](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `EThreadExternalException` ([304](#)), `TThread.CheckTerminated` ([496](#))

### 4.78.12 TThread.CheckTerminated

Synopsis: Check if the current thread has finished executing.

Declaration: `class function CheckTerminated : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public



**Description:** `Sleep` blocks the execution of the thread for `aMilliseconds`. This function simply calls `sysutils.sleep` (264)

In difference with `TThread.SpinWait` (497), a thread switch may occur during the sleep.

See also: `SysUtils.Sleep` (264), `TThread.SpinWait` (497)

#### 4.78.16 `TThread.Yield`

**Synopsis:** Yield execution to other threads

**Declaration:** `class procedure Yield; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `TThread.Yield` yields the processor to other threads. It can be called from methods outside the thread class itself.

#### 4.78.17 `TThread.GetSystemTimes`

**Synopsis:** Return CPU stats

**Declaration:** `class procedure GetSystemTimes(out aSystemTimes: TSystemTimes); Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `GetSystemTimes` is provided for Delphi compatibility only, it currently returns empty values only.

See also: `TSystemTimes` (264)

#### 4.78.18 `TThread.GetTickCount`

**Synopsis:** Return tick count (32-bit)

**Declaration:** `class function GetTickCount : LongWord; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `GetTickCount` is deprecated and should not be used. Use `TThread.GetTickCount64` (498) instead.

See also: `TThread.GetTickCount64` (498)

#### 4.78.19 `TThread.GetTickCount64`

**Synopsis:** Return tick count (64-bit)

**Declaration:** `class function GetTickCount64 : QWord; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `GetTickCount64` simply calls `SysUtils.GetTickCount64` (264) and is implemented for Delphi compatibility only.

See also: `SysUtils.GetTickCount64` (264)

**4.78.20 TThread.ExecuteInThread**

Synopsis: Execute a method or static procedure in a thread

Declaration:

```

class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteHandler;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyEvent) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteStatusHandler;
                               AOnStatus: TThreadStatusNotifyEvent;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyEvent) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteCallback;
                               AData: Pointer;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyCallback) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteStatusCallback;
                               AOnStatus: TThreadStatusNotifyCallback;
                               AData: Pointer;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyCallback) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

Description: `TThread.ExecuteInThread` is a class method which allows to quickly execute a method or procedure in a thread. The method or procedure to be executed is passed in `Method`, this can be a method or a plain (static) procedure.

The caller can be notified of thread termination: In the optional argument `AOnTerminate` a callback (procedure or method, depending on the signature) can be specified that will be called when the thread terminated. This callback is executed in the main thread.

The signature of `AMethod` determines whether status reporting is enabled or not. If the method of type `TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` (281) or `TThreadExecuteStatusCallback` (281), then an extra `AOnStatus` callback must be specified. This callback will be called in the main thread whenever the thread wishes to be report its status. The status callback should not do extensive work, because while the status callback is called, thread execution is suspended.

When using a plain procedure, extra data can be passed on to the procedure in `AData`. The `AData` pointer will be passed to the thread method, and also to the thread status callback and thread termination callback.

See also: `TThreadExecuteHandler` (281), `TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` (281), `TThreadExecuteStatusCallback` (281), `TThreadExecuteCallback` (280)

Listing: `./classesex/tthrc.pp`

---

```

program tthrc;

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

Var
  D : Integer;

Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject; AData : Pointer);

begin
  WriteLn('Thread ', TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', PInteger(AData)^);
end;

```

```

Procedure DoThread(AData : Pointer);

Var
  I : integer;

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Sleep(10*Random(30));
      WriteIn( 'Thread ',TThread.CurrentThread.ThreadID, ' ping ',I );
      Inc( PInteger(AData)^, i );
    end;
  end;

Var
  T1,T2 : TThread;

begin
  T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread (@DoThread,@D, @DoneThread);
  T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread (@DoThread,@D, @DoneThread);
  WriteIn( 'Main thread done' );
  T1.WaitFor;
  T2.WaitFor;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthre.pp

---

```

program tthre;

{$mode objfpc}
{$H+}

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

Type
  TTestThread = Class(TObject)
    D : Integer;
    Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure DoThread;
    Procedure Run;
  end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoneThread(Sender : TObject);

begin
  WriteIn( 'Thread ',TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', D);
end;

Procedure TTestThread.DoThread;

Var
  I : integer;

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin

```

```

        Sleep(10*Random(30));
        Writeln('Thread ',TThread.CurrentThread.ThreadID,' ping ',I);
        Inc(D,i);
    end;
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.Run;

```

```

Var

```

```

    T1,T2 : TThread;

```

```

begin

```

```

    T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@DoneThread);

```

```

    T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@DoneThread);

```

```

    Writeln('Main thread done');

```

```

    T1.WaitFor;

```

```

    T2.WaitFor;

```

```

end;

```

```

begin

```

```

    With TTestThread.Create do

```

```

        try

```

```

            Run;

```

```

        finally

```

```

            Free;

```

```

        end;

```

```

end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthrcs.pp

---

```

program tthrcs;

```

```

{$h+}

```

```

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

```

```

Var

```

```

    D : Integer;

```

```

    DoneThreads : INteger;

```

```

Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject; Data : Pointer);

```

```

begin

```

```

    Inc(DoneThreads);

```

```

    Writeln('Thread ',TThread(Sender).ThreadID,' done. D is currently: ', PInteger(Data)^);

```

```

end;

```

```

Procedure ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; AData : Pointer;Const status : String);

```

```

begin

```

```

    Writeln('Thread ',Sender.ThreadID,' Status report : ',Status);

```

```

end;

```

```

Procedure DoThread(AData : Pointer; Report : TThreadReportStatus);

```

```

Var

```

```

    I : integer;

```

```

begin

```

```

    for i:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            Sleep(10*Random(30));
            Report( 'Ping ' + IntToStr(i));
            Inc( PInteger(AData)^, i);
        end;
    end;

Var
    T1,T2 : TThread;

begin
    DoneThreads:=0;
    T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@D,@DoneThread);
    T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@D,@DoneThread);
    WriteLn('Main thread loop');
    While DoneThreads<2 do
        begin
            Sleep(10);
            CheckSynchronize;
        end;
        T1.WaitFor;
        T2.WaitFor;
    end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthres.pp

---

```

program tthrc;

```

```

{$mode objfpc}
{$H+}

```

```

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

```

**Type**

```

TTestThread = Class(TObject)
    D : Integer;
    DoneThreads : integer;
    Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; Const status : String);
    Procedure DoThread(Report: TThreadReportStatus);
    Procedure Run;
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoneThread(Sender : TObject);

```

```

begin
    Inc(DoneThreads);
    WriteLn('Thread ', TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', D);
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; Const status : String);

```

```

begin
    WriteLn('Thread ', Sender.ThreadID, ' Status report : ', Status);
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoThread(Report : TThreadReportStatus);

```

---

```

Var
  I : integer;

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Sleep(10*Random(30));
      Report('Ping '+IntToStr(i));
      Inc(D,i);
    end;
  end;

Procedure TTestThread.Run;

Var
  T1,T2 : TThread;

begin
  DoneThreads:=0;
  T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@DoneThread);
  T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@DoneThread);
  Writeln('Main thread loop');
  While DoneThreads<2 do
    begin
      Sleep(10);
      CheckSynchronize;
    end;
  T1.WaitFor;
  T2.WaitFor;
end;

begin
  With TTestThread.Create do
    try
      Run;
    finally
      Free;
    end;
end.

```

---

#### 4.78.21 TThread.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Code to be executed after construction but before execute.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterConstruction` is overridden in `TThread`, it actually starts the thread if it was created with `CreateSuspended` equal to `False`, i.e. not suspended. When overriding this method, the inherited method must be called, or the thread will never be started.

#### 4.78.22 TThread.Start

Synopsis: Starts a thread that was created in a suspended state.

Declaration: `procedure Start`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The effect of this method is currently the same as calling `TThread.Resume` after creating a thread in a suspended state. This method was added for Delphi-compatibility, where it was introduced after `TThread.Suspend` and `TThread.Resume` were deprecated.

See also: `TThread.Create` ([495](#))

#### 4.78.23 TThread.Resume

Synopsis: Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see `TThread.Start`

Declaration: `procedure Resume`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see `TThread.Start`

See also: `TThread.Start` ([503](#)), `TThread.Suspend` ([504](#))

#### 4.78.24 TThread.Suspend

Synopsis: Suspends the thread's execution.

Declaration: `procedure Suspend`

Visibility: `public`

Description: On non-Windows platforms, a thread can only suspend itself. Other threads can wake up a suspended thread by calling `TThread.Start`.

See also: `TThread.Resume` ([504](#)), `TThread.Start` ([503](#))

#### 4.78.25 TThread.Terminate

Synopsis: Signals the thread it should terminate.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Terminate` sets the `TThread.Terminated` ([493](#)) flag. It does not in any way attempt to terminate the thread in any other way, this just signals the thread that it should stop executing at the earliest possible moment.

See also: `TThread.Terminated` ([493](#)), `TThread.WaitFor` ([505](#)), `TThread.FreeOnTerminate` ([506](#)), `OnTerminate` ([508](#))

#### 4.78.26 TThread.WaitFor

Synopsis: Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

Declaration: `function WaitFor : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `WaitFor` waits for the thread to terminate, and returns the exit status. Note that when executed in the main thread, this method calls `CheckSynchronize` (286), this is done to avoid deadlocks: if the thread is waiting for a `synchronize` (495), then the `synchronize` methods will be executed and then the `WaitFor` will return.

See also: `TThread.Terminated` (493), `TThread.WaitFor` (505), `TThread.FreeOnTerminate` (506), `TThread.Synchronize` (495)

#### 4.78.27 TThread.CurrentThread

Synopsis: Return current thread instance

Declaration: `Property CurrentThread : TThread`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TThread.CurrentThread` can be used to get the current thread instance. This is useful in code that is not inside a `TThread` implementation, but which needs access to the current thread.

For threads that were created outside of FPC code (DLLs or a calling program) this will return a dummy `TThread` instance.

See also: `TThread.ExternalThread` (507)

#### 4.78.28 TThread.ProcessorCount

Synopsis: Return the processor count for this system

Declaration: `Property ProcessorCount : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessorCount` returns the processor count for this system.

Whether this is the number of cores or the number of CPUs present in the hardware, is deliberately unspecified. The number of cores can also vary during the lifetime of the program, and the FPC implementation does not guarantee that this will always match, the value is set at program start.

As such, the number specified should only be used as an indication of how many threads can be executed at once by the system.

See also: `TThread.IsSingleProcessor` (506)

#### 4.78.29 TThread.IsSingleProcessor

Synopsis: Is the current system single processor or not

Declaration: `Property IsSingleProcessor : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TThread.IsSingleProcessor` returns `True` if `TThread.ProcessorCount` (505) is less than or equal to 1, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TThread.ProcessorCount` (505)

#### 4.78.30 TThread.FreeOnTerminate

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.

Declaration: `Property FreeOnTerminate : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `FreeOnTerminate`, when set to `True` indicates that the tread instance will freed automatically as soon as the thread stops executing. You can use the `OnTerminate` (508) property to get a notification of when the thread has terminated and will be freed.

When setting this property to `True`, in general you may not read or write any property of the `TThread` instance from a different thread, because there is no guarantee that the thread instance still exists in memory. This implies 2 things:

- 1.The `OnTerminate` event handler should be set before setting `FreeOnTerminate` to `True`
- 2.The properties can still be read and set in the `OnTerminate` event handler, as the thread instance is then still guaranteed to exist.

See also: `OnTerminate` (508)

#### 4.78.31 TThread.Handle

Synopsis: Returns the thread handle.

Declaration: `Property Handle : TThreadID`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the thread handle.

### 4.78.32 TThread.ExternalThread

Synopsis: Is the thread instance an external thread ?

Declaration: `Property ExternalThread : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ExternalThread` returns `True` if the thread is an externally created thread. If the thread was created by the FPC program, this returns `False`. This is useful for examining instances returned by `TThread.CurrentThread` (505).

See also: `TThread.CurrentThread` (505)

### 4.78.33 TThread.Priority

Synopsis: Returns the thread priority.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TThreadPriority`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Returns the thread priority.

### 4.78.34 TThread.Suspended

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

Declaration: `Property Suspended : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

### 4.78.35 TThread.Finished

Synopsis: Has the thread finished executing

Declaration: `Property Finished : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Finished` is `True` when `TThread.Execue` (493) has finished executing, but the thread is still cleaning up (calling `OnTerminate`, etc).

See also: `TThread.Execue` (493), `TThread.OnTerminate` (508)

### 4.78.36 TThread.ThreadID

Synopsis: Returns the thread ID.

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the thread ID.

### 4.78.37 TThread.OnTerminate

Synopsis: Event called when the thread terminates.

Declaration: `Property OnTerminate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `TThread.OnTerminate` is called when the thread terminates. The event is always called in the context of the main thread, i.e. using `TThread.Synchronize` (495)

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (495), `TThread.FreeOnTerminate` (506)

### 4.78.38 TThread.FatalException

Synopsis: Exception that occurred during thread execution

Declaration: `Property FatalException : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FatalException` contains the exception that occurred during the thread's execution.

## 4.79 TThreadList

### 4.79.1 Description

`TThreadList` is a thread-safe `TList` (406) implementation. Unlike `TList`, it can be accessed read-write by multiple threads: the list implementation will take care of locking the list when adding or removing items from the list.

See also: `TList` (406)

### 4.79.2 Method overview

| Page | Method     | Description                           |
|------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 509  | Add        | Adds an element to the list.          |
| 509  | Clear      | Removes all elements from the list.   |
| 509  | Create     | Creates a new thread-safe list.       |
| 509  | Destroy    | Destroys the list instance.           |
| 510  | LockList   | Locks the list for exclusive access.  |
| 510  | Remove     | Removes an item from the list.        |
| 510  | UnlockList | Unlocks the list after it was locked. |

### 4.79.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                          |
|---------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">510</a> | Duplicates | rw     | Describes what to do with duplicates |

### 4.79.4 TThreadList.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new thread-safe list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TThreadList` instance. It initializes a critical section and an internal list object.

See also: `TThreadList.Destroy` ([509](#))

### 4.79.5 TThreadList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` finalizes the critical section, clears the internal list object and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TThreadList.Create` ([509](#))

### 4.79.6 TThreadList.Add

Synopsis: Adds an element to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` attempts to lock the list and adds the pointer `Item` to the list. After the pointer was added, the list is unlocked again.

See also: `LockList` ([510](#)), `Clear` ([509](#)), `Remove` ([510](#)), `UnlockList` ([510](#))

### 4.79.7 TThreadList.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all elements from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` attempts to lock the list and then clears the list; all items are removed from the list. After the list is cleared, it is again unlocked.

See also: `LockList` ([510](#)), `Add` ([509](#)), `Remove` ([510](#)), `UnlockList` ([510](#))

#### 4.79.8 TThreadList.LockList

Synopsis: Locks the list for exclusive access.

Declaration: `function LockList : TList`

Visibility: public

Description: `LockList` locks the list for exclusive access. Locklist uses an internal critical section, so all rules for multiple locking of critical sections apply to locklist/unlocklist as well.

See also: `Clear` (509), `Add` (509), `Remove` (510), `UnlockList` (510)

#### 4.79.9 TThreadList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` attempts to lock the list and then removes `Item` from the list. After the item is removed, the list is again unlocked.

See also: `LockList` (510), `Add` (509), `Clear` (509), `UnlockList` (510)

#### 4.79.10 TThreadList.UnlockList

Synopsis: Unlocks the list after it was locked.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockList`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnLockList` unlocks the list when it was locked for exclusive access. `UnLocklist` and `LockList` use an internal critical section, so all rules for multiple locking/unlocking of critical sections apply.

See also: `Clear` (509), `Add` (509), `Remove` (510), `lockList` (510)

#### 4.79.11 TThreadList.Duplicates

Synopsis: Describes what to do with duplicates

Declaration: `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Duplicates` describes what the threadlist should do when a duplicate pointer is added to the list. It is identical in behaviour to the `Duplicates` (463) property of `TStringList` (460).

See also: `TDuplicates` (271)

## 4.80 TWriter

### 4.80.1 Description

The `TWriter` class is a writer class that implements generic component streaming capabilities, independent of the format of the data in the stream. It uses a driver class `TAbstractObjectWriter` (324) to do the actual reading of data. The interface of the `TWriter` class should be identical to the interface in Delphi.

Note that the `TWriter` design is such that it will write a single component to a stream. It will write all children of this component, but it is not designed to write multiple components in succession to one stream.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.WriteComponent` (450) call should be used.

See also: `TFile` (384), `TWriter` (511), `TAbstractObjectReader` (316)

### 4.80.2 Method overview

| Page | Method               | Description  |
|------|----------------------|--|
| 512  | Create               | Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.              |
| 513  | DefineBinaryProperty | Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties. |
| 512  | DefineProperty       | Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties. |
| 512  | Destroy              | Destroys the writer instance.                                |
| 512  | FlushBuffer          | Flush the buffer   |
| 513  | Write                | Write raw data to stream                                     |
| 513  | WriteBoolean         | Write boolean value to the stream.                           |
| 514  | WriteChar            | Write a character to the stream.                             |
| 513  | WriteCollection      | Write a collection to the stream.                            |
| 513  | WriteComponent       | Stream a component to the stream.                            |
| 515  | WriteCurrency        | Write a currency value to the stream                         |
| 515  | WriteDate            | Write a date to the stream.                                  |
| 514  | WriteDescendent      | Write descendent to stream                                   |
| 514  | WriteFloat           | Write a float to the stream.                                 |
| 515  | WriteIdent           | Write an identifier to the stream.                           |
| 515  | WriteInteger         | Write an integer to the stream.                              |
| 516  | WriteListBegin       | Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.                  |
| 516  | WriteListEnd         | Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.                   |
| 516  | WriteRootComponent   | Write a root component to the stream.                        |
| 515  | WriteSet             | Write a set value to the stream                              |
| 516  | WriteSignature       | Write a signature to the stream                              |
| 514  | WriteSingle          | Write a single-type real to the stream.                      |
| 516  | WriteString          | Write a string to the stream.                                |
| 517  | WriteUnicodeString   | Write a Unicode string to the stream.                        |
| 517  | WriteVariant         | Write a variant to the stream                                |
| 514  | WriteWideChar        | Write widechar to stream                                     |
| 517  | WriteWideString      | Write a widestring value to the stream                       |

### 4.80.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties            | Access | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">518</a> | Driver                | r      | Driver used when writing to the stream.                   |
| <a href="#">517</a> | OnFindAncestor        | rw     | Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found. |
| <a href="#">518</a> | OnWriteMethodProperty | rw     | Handler from writing method properties.                   |
| <a href="#">518</a> | OnWriteStringProperty | rw     | Event handler for translating strings written to stream.  |
| <a href="#">518</a> | PropertyPath          | r      | Path to the property that is currently being written      |
| <a href="#">517</a> | RootAncestor          | rw     | Ancestor of root component.                               |

### 4.80.4 TWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADriver: TAbstractObjectWriter)`  
`constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

### 4.80.5 TWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the writer instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the writer instance.

### 4.80.6 TWriter.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([385](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` ([345](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` ([326](#))

### 4.80.7 TWriter.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; ReadData: TReaderProc;`  
`AWriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)`  
`; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

#### 4.80.8 TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
ReadData: TStreamProc;  
AWriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

#### 4.80.9 TWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.Write` ([346](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.Write` ([327](#))

#### 4.80.10 TWriter.WriteBoolean

Synopsis: Write boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: Write boolean value to the stream.

#### 4.80.11 TWriter.WriteCollection

Synopsis: Write a collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteCollection(Value: TCollection)`

Visibility: public

Description: Write a collection to the stream.

#### 4.80.12 TWriter.WriteComponent

Synopsis: Stream a component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent(Component: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: Stream a component to the stream.

#### 4.80.13 TWriter.WriteChar

Synopsis: Write a character to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteChar(Value: Char)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a character to the stream.

#### 4.80.14 TWriter.WriteWideChar

Synopsis: Write widechar to stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideChar(Value: WideChar)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteWideChar` writes a widechar to the stream. This actually writes a widestring of length 1.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideChar` ([435](#)), `TWriter.WriteString` ([517](#))

#### 4.80.15 TWriter.WriteDescendent

Synopsis: Write descendent to stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent(ARoot: TComponent; AAncestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteDescendent` writes `ARoot` as a descendent of `AAncestor`. This is used to create diff streams: only the properties where `ARoot` differs from `AAncestor` are written to the stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteDescendent` ([450](#))

#### 4.80.16 TWriter.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Write a float to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a float to the stream.

#### 4.80.17 TWriter.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Write a single-type real to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a single-type real to the stream.

**4.80.18 TWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Write a date to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a date to the stream.

**4.80.19 TWriter.WriteCurrency**

Synopsis: Write a currency value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency(const Value: Currency)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteCurrency` writes a currency typed value to the stream. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TReader.ReadCurrency` ([436](#))

**4.80.20 TWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Write an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an identifier to the stream.

**4.80.21 TWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Write an integer to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: LongInt); Overload`  
`procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an integer to the stream.

**4.80.22 TWriter.WriteSet**

Synopsis: Write a set value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteSet` writes a set `Value` consisting of elements with type `EnumType`. The set must be encoded as an integer where each element is encoded in a bit of the integer. Thus, at most an enumerated type with 32 elements can be written with this method.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of `EnumType`. It is assumed to be a valid `PTypeInfo` pointer.

See also: `TReader.ReadSet` ([437](#))

#### 4.80.23 TWriter.WriteListBegin

Synopsis: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

#### 4.80.24 TWriter.WriteListEnd

Synopsis: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.

#### 4.80.25 TWriter.WriteSignature

Synopsis: Write a signature to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSignature`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteSignature` writes the streaming signature (if any) to a stream. It is called once, at the start of writing the root component to a stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([325](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([344](#))

#### 4.80.26 TWriter.WriteRootComponent

Synopsis: Write a root component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteRootComponent (ARoot: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a root component to the stream.

#### 4.80.27 TWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a string to the stream.

**4.80.28 TWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a widestring value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteWideString` writes a currency typed value to the stream. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideString` ([439](#))

**4.80.29 TWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` writes `Value`, a `UnicodeString` string to the stream. It simply passes the string on to the `WriteUnicodeString` method of the writer driver class.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString` ([348](#)), `TReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([439](#))

**4.80.30 TWriter.WriteVariant**

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant(const VarValue: Variant)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` writes `Value`, a simple variant, to the stream. It simply passes the string on to the `WriteVariant` method of the writer driver class.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([349](#)), `TReader.ReadVariant` ([438](#))

**4.80.31 TWriter.RootAncestor**

Synopsis: Ancestor of root component.

Declaration: `Property RootAncestor : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Ancestor of root component.

**4.80.32 TWriter.OnFindAncestor**

Synopsis: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

Declaration: `Property OnFindAncestor : TFindAncestorEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

**4.80.33 TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty**

Synopsis: Handler from writing method properties.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteMethodProperty : TWriteMethodPropertyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnWriteMethodProperty` can be set by an IDE or some streaming mechanism which handles dummy values for method properties; It can be used to write a real value to the stream which will be interpreted correctly when the stream is read. See `TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` (283) for a description of the arguments.

See also: `TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` (283), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` (441)

**4.80.34 TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty**

Synopsis: Event handler for translating strings written to stream.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnWriteStringProperty` is called whenever a string property is written to the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is written. See `TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent` (276) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: `TReader.OnPropertyNotFound` (440), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` (441), `TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent` (276)

**4.80.35 TWriter.Driver**

Synopsis: Driver used when writing to the stream.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectWriter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Driver used when writing to the stream.

**4.80.36 TWriter.PropertyPath**

Synopsis: Path to the property that is currently being written

Declaration: `Property PropertyPath : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `PropertyPath` is set to the property name of the class currently being written to stream. This is only done when `TPersistent` (426) descendant class properties are written.

## Chapter 5

# Reference for unit 'clocale'

### 5.1 Used units

Table 5.1: Used units by unit 'clocale'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 5.2 Overview

The `clocale` offers no API by itself: it just initializes the internationalization settings of the `sysutils` ([1599](#)) unit with the values provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `clocale` should simply be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit, links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS - therefore it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}clocale{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

## Chapter 6

# Reference for unit 'cmem'

### 6.1 Used units

Table 6.1: Used units by unit 'cmem'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 6.2 Overview

The `cmem` memory manager sets the system units memory manager to a C-based memory manager: all memory management calls are shunted through to the C memory manager, using `Malloc` ([521](#)), `Free` ([521](#)) and `ReAlloc` ([521](#)). For this reason, the `cmem` unit should be the first unit of the uses clause of the program.

The unit also offers the C memory calls directly as external declarations from the C library, but it is recommended to use the normal FPC routines for this.

Obviously, including this unit links your program to the C library.

**Remark** Note that specifying the `-gv` command-line option, to enable valgrind debugging info will implicitly add this unit to your program.

### 6.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 6.3.1 Constants

`LibName = 'c'`

`LibName` is the name of the library that is actually used. On most systems, this is simply "libc.so".

### 6.4 Procedures and functions

#### 6.4.1 CAlloc

Synopsis: Allocate memory based on item size and count

**Declaration:** `function CAlloc(unitSize: PtrUInt; UnitCount: PtrUInt) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CAlloc` allocates memory to hold `UnitCount` units of size `UnitSize` each. The memory is one block of memory. It returns a pointer to the newly allocated memory block.

See also: `Malloc` ([521](#)), `Free` ([521](#)), `Realloc` ([521](#))

### 6.4.2 Free

**Synopsis:** Free a previously allocated block

**Declaration:** `procedure Free(P: pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Free` returns the memory block pointed to by `P` to the system. After `Free` was called, the pointer `P` is no longer valid.

See also: `Malloc` ([521](#)), `ReAlloc` ([521](#))

### 6.4.3 Malloc

**Synopsis:** `Malloc` external declaration.

**Declaration:** `function Malloc(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Malloc` is the external declaration of the C libraries `malloc` call. It accepts a size parameter, and returns a pointer to a memory block of the requested size or `Nil` if no more memory could be allocated.

See also: `Free` ([521](#)), `ReAlloc` ([521](#))

### 6.4.4 ReAlloc

**Synopsis:** Reallocates a memory block

**Declaration:** `function ReAlloc(P: Pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReAlloc` re-allocates a block of memory pointed to by `p`. The new block will have size `Size`, and as much data as was available or as much data as fits is copied from the old to the new location.

See also: `Malloc` ([521](#)), `Free` ([521](#))

## Chapter 7

# Reference for unit 'collation\_de'

### 7.1 Used units

Table 7.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_de'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 7.2 Overview

The `collation_de` unit registers the German Unicode collation (de). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 8

# Reference for unit 'collation\_es'

### 8.1 Used units

Table 8.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_es'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 8.2 Overview

The `collation_es` unit registers the Spanish Unicode collation (de). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 9

# Reference for unit 'collation\_fr\_ca'

### 9.1 Used units

Table 9.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_fr\_ca'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 9.2 Overview

The `collation_fr_ca` unit registers the French Unicode collation (fr). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 10

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ja'

### 10.1 Used units

Table 10.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_ja'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 10.2 Overview

The `collation_ja` unit registers the Japanese Unicode collation (ja). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 11

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ko'

### 11.1 Used units

Table 11.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_ko'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 11.2 Overview

The `collation_ko` unit registers the Korean Unicode collation (ko). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 12

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ru'

### 12.1 Used units

Table 12.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_ru'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 12.2 Overview

The `collation_ru` unit registers the Russian Unicode collation (ru). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 13

# Reference for unit 'collation\_sv'

### 13.1 Used units

Table 13.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_sv'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 13.2 Overview

The `collation_sv` unit registers the Swedish Unicode collation (sv). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 14

# Reference for unit 'collation\_zh'

### 14.1 Used units

Table 14.1: Used units by unit 'collation\_zh'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 14.2 Overview

The `collation_zh` unit registers the Chinese Unicode collation (zh). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 15

# Reference for unit 'cp1250'

### 15.1 Used units

Table 15.1: Used units by unit 'cp1250'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 15.2 Overview

The `cp1250` unit registers single-byte codepage 1250. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1250 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 16

# Reference for unit 'cp1251'

### 16.1 Used units

Table 16.1: Used units by unit 'cp1251'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 16.2 Overview

The `cp1251` unit registers single-byte codepage 1251. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1251 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 17

# Reference for unit 'cp1252'

### 17.1 Used units

Table 17.1: Used units by unit 'cp1252'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 17.2 Overview

The `cp1252` unit registers single-byte codepage 1252. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1252 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 18

# Reference for unit 'cp1253'

### 18.1 Used units

Table 18.1: Used units by unit 'cp1253'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 18.2 Overview

The `cp1253` unit registers single-byte codepage 1253. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1253 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 19

# Reference for unit 'cp1254'

### 19.1 Used units

Table 19.1: Used units by unit 'cp1254'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 19.2 Overview

The `cp1254` unit registers single-byte codepage 1254. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1254 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 20

# Reference for unit 'cp1255'

### 20.1 Used units

Table 20.1: Used units by unit 'cp1255'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 20.2 Overview

The `cp1255` unit registers single-byte codepage 1255. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1255 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 21

# Reference for unit 'cp1256'

### 21.1 Used units

Table 21.1: Used units by unit 'cp1256'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 21.2 Overview

The `cp1256` unit registers single-byte codepage 1256. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1256 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 22

# Reference for unit 'cp1257'

### 22.1 Used units

Table 22.1: Used units by unit 'cp1257'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 22.2 Overview

The `cp1257` unit registers single-byte codepage 1257. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1257 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 23

# Reference for unit 'cp1258'

### 23.1 Used units

Table 23.1: Used units by unit 'cp1258'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 23.2 Overview

The `cp1258` unit registers single-byte codepage 1258. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1258 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 24

# Reference for unit 'cp437'

### 24.1 Used units

Table 24.1: Used units by unit 'cp437'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 24.2 Overview

The `cp437` unit registers single-byte codepage 437. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 437 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 25

# Reference for unit 'cp646'

### 25.1 Used units

Table 25.1: Used units by unit 'cp646'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 25.2 Overview

The `cp646` unit registers single-byte codepage 646. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 646 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 26

# Reference for unit 'cp850'

### 26.1 Used units

Table 26.1: Used units by unit 'cp850'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 26.2 Overview

The `cp850` unit registers single-byte codepage 850. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 850 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 27

# Reference for unit 'cp852'

### 27.1 Used units

Table 27.1: Used units by unit 'cp852'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 27.2 Overview

The `cp852` unit registers single-byte codepage 852. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 852 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 28

# Reference for unit 'cp856'

### 28.1 Used units

Table 28.1: Used units by unit 'cp856'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 28.2 Overview

The `cp856` unit registers single-byte codepage 856. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 856 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 29

# Reference for unit 'cp866'

### 29.1 Used units

Table 29.1: Used units by unit 'cp866'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 29.2 Overview

The `cp866` unit registers single-byte codepage 866. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 866 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 30

# Reference for unit 'cp874'

### 30.1 Used units

Table 30.1: Used units by unit 'cp874'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 30.2 Overview

The `cp874` unit registers single-byte codepage 874. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 874 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 31

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_1'

### 31.1 Used units

Table 31.1: Used units by unit 'cp8859\_1'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 31.2 Overview

The `cp8859_1` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-1. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-1 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 32

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_2'

### 32.1 Used units

Table 32.1: Used units by unit 'cp8859\_2'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 32.2 Overview

The `cp8859_2` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-2. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-2 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 33

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_5'

### 33.1 Used units

Table 33.1: Used units by unit 'cp8859\_5'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 33.2 Overview

The `cp8859_5` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-5. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-5 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 34

# Reference for unit 'cp895'

### 34.1 Used units

Table 34.1: Used units by unit 'cp895'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 34.2 Overview

The `cp895` unit registers single-byte codepage 895. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 895 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 35

# Reference for unit 'cp932'

### 35.1 Used units

Table 35.1: Used units by unit 'cp932'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 35.2 Overview

The `cp932` unit registers single-byte codepage 932. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 932 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 36

# Reference for unit 'cp936'

### 36.1 Used units

Table 36.1: Used units by unit 'cp936'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 36.2 Overview

The `cp936` unit registers single-byte codepage 936. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 936 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 37

# Reference for unit 'cp949'

### 37.1 Used units

Table 37.1: Used units by unit 'cp949'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 37.2 Overview

The `cp949` unit registers single-byte codepage 949. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 949 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 38

# Reference for unit 'cp950'

### 38.1 Used units

Table 38.1: Used units by unit 'cp950'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 38.2 Overview

The `cp950` unit registers single-byte codepage 950. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 950 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 39

# Reference for unit 'cpall'

### 39.1 Used units

Table 39.1: Used units by unit 'cpall'

| Name      | Page                |
|-----------|---------------------|
| cp1250    | <a href="#">530</a> |
| cp1251    | <a href="#">531</a> |
| cp1252    | <a href="#">532</a> |
| cp1253    | <a href="#">533</a> |
| cp1254    | <a href="#">534</a> |
| cp1255    | <a href="#">535</a> |
| cp1256    | <a href="#">536</a> |
| cp1257    | <a href="#">537</a> |
| cp1258    | <a href="#">538</a> |
| cp3021    | ??                  |
| cp437     | <a href="#">539</a> |
| cp646     | <a href="#">540</a> |
| cp737     | ??                  |
| cp775     | ??                  |
| cp850     | <a href="#">541</a> |
| cp852     | <a href="#">542</a> |
| cp855     | ??                  |
| cp856     | <a href="#">543</a> |
| cp857     | ??                  |
| cp860     | ??                  |
| cp861     | ??                  |
| cp862     | ??                  |
| cp863     | ??                  |
| cp864     | ??                  |
| cp865     | ??                  |
| cp866     | <a href="#">544</a> |
| cp869     | ??                  |
| cp874     | <a href="#">545</a> |
| cp8859_1  | <a href="#">546</a> |
| cp8859_10 | ??                  |
| cp8859_11 | ??                  |
| cp8859_13 | ??                  |
| cp8859_14 | ??                  |
| cp8859_15 | ??                  |
| cp8859_16 | ??                  |
| cp8859_2  | <a href="#">547</a> |
| cp8859_3  | ??                  |
| cp8859_4  | ??                  |
| cp8859_5  | <a href="#">548</a> |

## 39.2 Overview

The `cpall` unit registers all known single-byte codepages: 1251 ([555](#)), 866 ([555](#)), ISO 8856-5 ([555](#)) (cyrillic), 8859-1 ([555](#)), 8859-2 ([555](#)), 1253 ([555](#)) (greek), 850 ([555](#)), 437 ([555](#)), 1252 ([555](#)), 646 ([555](#)), 874 ([555](#)), 856 ([555](#)), 1250 ([555](#)), 1254 ([555](#)), 1255 ([555](#)), 1256 ([555](#)), 1257 ([555](#)), 1258 ([555](#)), 852 ([555](#)).

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply uses the other units so all corresponding code pages are registered.

## Chapter 40

# Reference for unit 'Crt'

### 40.1 Used units

Table 40.1: Used units by unit 'Crt'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 40.2 Overview

This chapter describes the CRT unit for Free Pascal, under all of Dos, Linux and Windows. The unit was first written for Dos by Florian Klaempfl. The unit was ported to Linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt and Peter Vreman. It works on the Linux console, and in xterm and rxvt windows under X-Windows. The functionality for both is the same, except that under Linux the use of an early implementation (versions 0.9.1 and earlier of the compiler) the CRT unit automatically cleared the screen at program startup.

There are some caveats when using the CRT unit:

- Programs using the CRT unit will *not* be usable when input/output is being redirected on the command-line.
- For similar reasons they are not usable as CGI-scripts for use with a webserver.
- The use of the CRT unit and the graph unit may not always be supported.
- The CRT unit is not thread safe.
- On Linux or other Unix OSes, executing other programs that expect special terminal behaviour (using one of the special functions in the Linux unit) will not work. The terminal is set in RAW mode, which will destroy most terminal emulation settings.
- The CRT unit stems from the TP/Dos area. It is designed to work with single-byte character sets, where 1 char = 1 byte. That means that widestrings or UTF-8 encoded (ansi)strings will not work correctly.

## 40.3 Constants, types and variables

### 40.3.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

`Blue = 1`

Blue color attribute

`Brown = 6`

Brown color attribute

`BW40 = 0`

40 columns black and white screen mode.

`BW80 = 2`

80 columns black and white screen mode.

`C40 = CO40`

40 columns color screen mode.

`C80 = CO80`

80 columns color screen mode.

`CO40 = 1`

40 columns color screen mode.

`CO80 = 3`

80 columns color screen mode.

`ConsoleMaxX = 1024`

`ConsoleMaxY = 1024`

`Cyan = 3`

Cyan color attribute

DarkGray = 8

Dark gray color attribute

Flushing = False

Font8x8 = 256

Internal ROM font mode

Green = 2

Green color attribute

LightBlue = 9

Light Blue color attribute

LightCyan = 11

Light cyan color attribute

LightGray = 7

Light gray color attribute

LightGreen = 10

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

Mono = 7

Monochrome screen mode (hercules screens)

Red = 4

Red color attribute

```
ScreenHeight : LongInt = 25
```

Current screen height.

```
ScreenWidth : LongInt = 80
```

Current screen width

```
White = 15
```

White color attribute

```
Yellow = 14
```

Yellow color attribute

### 40.3.2 Types

```
tcrtcoord = 1..255
```

`tcrtcoord` is a subrange type for denoting CRT coordinates. It supports coordinates ranging from 1 to 255. Using this type together with range-checking turned on can be used to debug CRT code.

### 40.3.3 Variables

```
CheckBreak : Boolean
```

Check for CTRL-Break keystroke. Not used.

```
CheckEOF : Boolean
```

Check for EOF on standard input. Not used.

```
CheckSnow : Boolean
```

Check snow on CGA screens. Not used.

```
ConsoleBuf : PConsoleBuf
```

```
DirectVideo : Boolean
```

The `DirectVideo` variable controls the writing to the screen. If it is `True`, the cursor is set via direct port access. If `False`, then the BIOS is used. This is defined under dos only.

```
LastMode : Word = 3
```

The `Lastmode` variable tells you which mode was last selected for the screen. It is defined on DOS only.

`TextAttr : Byte = $07`

The `TextAttr` variable controls the attributes with which characters are written to screen.

`WindMax : Word = $184f`

The upper byte of `WindMax` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMaxX` and `WindMaxY` instead.

`WindMaxX : DWord`

X coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMaxY : DWord`

Y coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMin : Word = $0`

The upper byte of `WindMin` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMinX` and `WindMinY` instead.

`WindMinX : DWord`

X coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

`WindMinY : DWord`

Y coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

## 40.4 Procedures and functions

### 40.4.1 AssignCrt

Synopsis: Assign file to CRT.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCrt (var F: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignCrt` Assigns a file `F` to the console. Everything written to the file `F` goes to the console instead. If the console contains a window, everything is written to the window instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([572](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the AssignCrt function. }

var
    F : Text;
begin
    AssignCrt(F);
    Rewrite(F); { Don't forget to open for output! }
    WriteLn(F, 'This is written to the Assigned File');
    Close(F);
end.

```

---

### 40.4.2 ClrEol

Synopsis: Clear from cursor position till end of line.

Declaration: `procedure ClrEol`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrEol` clears the current line, starting from the cursor position, to the end of the window. The cursor doesn't move

Errors: None.

See also: `DelLine` ([564](#)), `InsLine` ([566](#)), `ClrScr` ([563](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrEol function. }
var
    I, J : integer;

begin
    For I:=1 to 15 do
        For J:=1 to 80 do
            begin
                gotoxy(j, i);
                Write(j mod 10);
            end;
    Window(5,5,75,12);
    Write('This line will be cleared from',
        ' here till the right of the window');
    GotoXY(27,WhereY);
    ReadKey;
    ClrEol;
    WriteLn;
end.

```

---

### 40.4.3 ClrScr

Synopsis: Clear current window.

Declaration: `procedure ClrScr`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrScr` clears the current window (using the current colors), and sets the cursor in the top left corner of the current window.

Errors: None.

See also: Window ([572](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrScr function. }

begin
  WriteLn('Press any key to clear the screen');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Have fun with the cleared screen');
end.
```

---

### 40.4.4 cursorbig

Synopsis: Show big cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursorbig`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorBig` makes the cursor a big rectangle. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([564](#)), `CursorOff` ([563](#))

### 40.4.5 cursoroff

Synopsis: Hide cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoroff`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOff` switches the cursor off (i.e. the cursor is no longer visible). Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([564](#)), `CursorBig` ([563](#))

#### 40.4.6 cursoron

Synopsis: Display cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoron`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOn` switches the cursor on. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorBig` ([563](#)), `CursorOff` ([563](#))

#### 40.4.7 Delay

Synopsis: Delay program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Delay (MS: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delay` waits a specified number of milliseconds. The number of specified seconds is an approximation, and may be off a lot, if system load is high.

Errors: None

See also: `Sound` ([569](#)), `NoSound` ([568](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex15.pp`

---

```

Program Example15;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Delay function. }
var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn( 'Counting Down' );
  for i:=10 downto 1 do
    begin
      WriteLn(i);
      Delay(1000); { Wait one second }
    end;
  WriteLn( 'BOOM!!! ' );
end.
```

---

#### 40.4.8 DelLine

Synopsis: Delete line at cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure DelLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelLine` removes the current line. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line up, and an empty line is inserted at the bottom of the current window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: [ClrEol \(562\)](#), [InsLine \(566\)](#), [ClrScr \(563\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex11.pp

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Line 1');
  WriteLn('Line 2');
  WriteLn('Line 2');
  WriteLn('Line 3');
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Oops, Line 2 is listed twice,',
          ' let''s delete the line at the cursor position');
  GotoXY(1,3);
  ReadKey;
  DelLine;
  GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

#### 40.4.9 GotoXY

Synopsis: Set cursor position on screen.

Declaration: `procedure GotoXY(X: tcoord; Y: tcoord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GotoXY` positions the cursor at (X, Y), X in horizontal, Y in vertical direction relative to the origin of the current window. The origin is located at (1, 1), the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [WhereX \(571\)](#), [WhereY \(571\)](#), [Window \(572\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex6.pp

---

```

Program Example6;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the GotoXY function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  GotoXY(10,10);
  Write('10,10');
  GotoXY(70,20);
  Write('70,20');
  GotoXY(1,22);
end.

```

---

### 40.4.10 HighVideo

Synopsis: Switch to highlighted text mode

Declaration: `procedure HighVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `HighVideo` switches the output to highlighted text. (It sets the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([570](#)), `TextBackground` ([570](#)), `LowVideo` ([567](#)), `NormVideo` ([568](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex14.pp`

---

```
Program Example14;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the LowVideo, HighVideo, NormVideo functions. }

begin
  LowVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with LowVideo');
  HighVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with HighVideo');
  NormVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with NormVideo');
end.
```

---

### 40.4.11 InsLine

Synopsis: Insert an empty line at cursor position

Declaration: `procedure InsLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `InsLine` inserts an empty line at the current cursor position. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line down, causing the last line to disappear from the window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([562](#)), `DelLine` ([564](#)), `ClrScr` ([563](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex10.pp`

---

```
Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Line 1');
  WriteLn('Line 3');
  WriteLn;
end.
```

---

---

```

WriteLn('Oops, forgot Line 2, let''s insert at the cursor postion');
GotoXY(1,3);
ReadKey;
InsLine;
Write('Line 2');
GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

#### 40.4.12 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check if there is a keypress in the keybuffer

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyPressed` scans the keyboard buffer and sees if a key has been pressed. If this is the case, `True` is returned. If not, `False` is returned. The `Shift`, `Alt`, `Ctrl` keys are not reported. The key is not removed from the buffer, and can hence still be read after the `KeyPressed` function has been called.

Errors: None.

See also: `ReadKey` ([568](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the KeyPressed function. }

begin
  WriteLn('Waiting until a key is pressed');
  repeat
    until KeyPressed;
  { The key is not Read,
    so it should also be outputted at the commandline }
end.

```

---

#### 40.4.13 LowVideo

Synopsis: Switch to low intensity colors.

Declaration: `procedure LowVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowVideo` switches the output to non-highlighted text. (It clears the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([566](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([570](#)), `TextBackground` ([570](#)), `HighVideo` ([566](#)), `NormVideo` ([568](#))

#### 40.4.14 NormVideo

Synopsis: Return to normal (startup) modus

Declaration: `procedure NormVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `NormVideo` switches the output to the defaults, read at startup. (The defaults are read from the cursor position at startup)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([566](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([570](#)), `TextBackground` ([570](#)), `LowVideo` ([567](#)), `HighVideo` ([566](#))

#### 40.4.15 NoSound

Synopsis: Stop system speaker

Declaration: `procedure NoSound`

Visibility: default

Description: `NoSound` stops the speaker sound. This call is not supported on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sound` ([569](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex16.pp`

---

```
Program Example16;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the Sound and NoSound function. }  
  
var  
  i : longint;  
begin  
  WriteLn('You will hear some tones from your speaker');  
  i:=0;  
  while (i<15000) do  
    begin  
      inc(i,500);  
      Sound(i);  
      Delay(100);  
    end;  
  WriteLn('Quiet now!');  
  NoSound; {Stop noise}  
end.
```

---

#### 40.4.16 ReadKey

Synopsis: Read key from keybuffer

Declaration: `function ReadKey : Char`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadKey` reads 1 key from the keyboard buffer, and returns this. If an extended or function key has been pressed, then the zero ASCII code is returned. You can then read the scan code of the key with a second `ReadKey` call.

Key mappings under Linux can cause the wrong key to be reported by `ReadKey`, so caution is needed when using `ReadKey`.

Errors: None.

See also: `KeyPressed` ([567](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex3.pp`

---

```
Program Example3;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ReadKey function. }

var
  ch : char;
begin
  writeln( 'Press Left/Right , Esc=Quit ');
  repeat
    ch:=ReadKey;
    case ch of
      #0 : begin
        ch:=ReadKey; {Read ScanCode}
        case ch of
          #75 : WriteLn( 'Left ');
          #77 : WriteLn( 'Right ');
        end;
      end;
      #27 : WriteLn( 'ESC' );
    end;
  until ch=#27 {Esc}
end.
```

---

#### 40.4.17 Sound

Synopsis: Sound system speaker

**Declaration:** `procedure Sound(Hz: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Sound` sounds the speaker at a frequency of `hz`. Under Windows, a system sound is played and the frequency parameter is ignored. On other operating systems, this routine may not be implemented.

Errors: None.

See also: `NoSound` ([568](#))

### 40.4.18 TextBackground

Synopsis: Set text background

Declaration: `procedure TextBackground(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextBackground` sets the background color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([570](#)), `HighVideo` ([566](#)), `LowVideo` ([567](#)), `NormVideo` ([568](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex13.pp`

---

```
Program Example13;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the TextBackground function. }

begin
  TextColor(White);
  WriteLn('This is written in with the default background color');
  TextBackground(Green);
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Green background');
  TextBackground(Brown);
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Brown background');
  TextBackground(Black);
  WriteLn('Back with a black background');
end.
```

---

### 40.4.19 TextColor

Synopsis: Set text color

Declaration: `procedure TextColor(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextColor` sets the foreground color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextBackground` ([570](#)), `HighVideo` ([566](#)), `LowVideo` ([567](#)), `NormVideo` ([568](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex12.pp`

---

```
Program Example12;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the TextColor function. }

begin
  WriteLn('This is written in the default color');
  TextColor(Red);
  WriteLn('This is written in Red');
  TextColor(White);
```

---

---

```

WriteLn('This is written in White');
TextColor(LightBlue);
WriteLn('This is written in Light Blue');
end.

```

---

#### 40.4.20 TextMode

Synopsis: Set screen mode.

Declaration: `procedure TextMode (Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextMode` sets the textmode of the screen (i.e. the number of lines and columns of the screen). The lower byte is use to set the VGA text mode.

This procedure is only implemented on dos.

Errors: None.

See also: Window ([572](#))

#### 40.4.21 WhereX

Synopsis: Return X (horizontal) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereX : tcartcoord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereX` returns the current X-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY ([565](#)), WhereY ([571](#)), Window ([572](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Crt;

```

```

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

```

```

begin
  WriteLn('Cursor postion: X=',WhereX, ' Y=',WhereY);
end.

```

---

#### 40.4.22 WhereY

Synopsis: Return Y (vertical) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereY : tcartcoord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WhereY` returns the current Y-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GotoXY` (565), `WhereX` (571), `Window` (572)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```
Program Example7;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

begin
  WriteLn('Cursor position: X= ',WhereX, ' Y= ',WhereY);
end.
```

---

### 40.4.23 Window

**Synopsis:** Create new window on screen.

**Declaration:** `procedure Window(X1: Byte; Y1: Byte; X2: Byte; Y2: Byte)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Window` creates a window on the screen, to which output will be sent. (X1, Y1) are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the window, (X2, Y2) are the coordinates of the bottom right corner of the window. These coordinates are relative to the entire screen, with the top left corner equal to (1, 1). Further coordinate operations, except for the next `Window` call, are relative to the window's top left corner.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GotoXY` (565), `WhereX` (571), `WhereY` (571), `ClrScr` (563)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex5.pp`

---

```
Program Example5;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Window function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Creating a window from 30,10 to 50,20');
  Window(30,10,50,20);
  WriteLn('We are now writing in this small window we just created, we '+
    'can''t get outside it when writing long lines like this one');
  Write('Press any key to clear the window');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  Write('The window is cleared, press any key to restore to fullscreen');
  ReadKey;
  { Full Screen is 80x25 }
  Window(1,1,80,25);
  Clrscr;
  WriteLn('Back in Full Screen');
end.
```

---

## 40.5 TCharAttr

```
TCharAttr = packed record  
  ch : Char;  
  attr : Byte;  
end
```

# Chapter 41

## Reference for unit 'cthreads'

### 41.1 Used units

Table 41.1: Used units by unit 'cthreads'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 41.2 Overview

The `CThreads` unit initializes the system unit's thread management routines with an implementation based on the POSIX thread managing routines in the C library. This assures that C libraries that are thread-aware still work if they are linked to by a FPC program.

It doesn't offer any API by itself: the initialization section of the unit just initializes the `ThreadManager` record in the `System` ([1332](#)) unit. This is done using the `SetCThreadManager` ([575](#)) call

The `cthreads` unit simply needs to be included in the uses clause of the program, preferably the very first unit, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS, therefor it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cthreads{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

The Lazarus IDE inserts this conditional automatically for each new started program.

## 41.3 Procedures and functions

### 41.3.1 SetCThreadManager

Synopsis: Sets the thread manager to the C thread manager

Declaration: `procedure SetCThreadManager`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SetCThreadManager` actually sets the thread manager to the C thread manager. It can be called to re-set the thread manager if the thread manager was set to some other thread manager during the life-time of the program.

## Chapter 42

# Reference for unit 'ctypes'

### 42.1 Used units

Table 42.1: Used units by unit 'ctypes'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 42.2 Overview

The `ctypes` unit contains the definitions of commonly found C types. It can be used when interfaces to C libraries need to be defined. The types here are correct on all platforms, 32 or 64 bit.

The main advantage of using this file is to make sure that all C header import units use the same definitions for basic C types.

The `h2pas` program can include the `ctypes` unit automatically in the units it generates. The `-C` command-line switch can be used for this.

### 42.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 42.3.1 Types

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

C boolean (longbool)

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

C character type (No signedness specification, 8 bit integer)

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision floating point type (double)

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Single precision floating point type (single)

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

16-bit signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

32-bit signed integer (commonly: int)

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

64-bit integer

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

8-bit signed integer

`clong = UnixType.clong`

long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`clongdouble = Double`

Long precision floating point type (extended/double, depending on CPU)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

Long (64-bit) integer

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

Generic type to indicate offset

`cschar = UnixType.cschar`

C signed character type (8 bit signed integer)

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

Short integer (16 bit)

`csigned = UnixType.csigned`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csint = UnixType.csint`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csize_t = UnixType.size_t`

Generic type to contain a size of all kinds of structures

`cslong = UnixType.cslong`

Signed long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong`

Signed long (64-bit) integer

`csshort = UnixType.csshort`

Short signed integer (16 bit)

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

C unsigned character type (8 bit unsigned integer).

`cuint = UnixType.cuint`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16`

16-bit unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32`

32-bit unsigned integer

`cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64`

Unsigned 64-bit integer

`cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8`

8-bit unsigned integer

`culong = UnixType.culong`

Unsigned long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`culonglong = UnixType.culonglong`

Unsigned long (64-bit) integer

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

Short unsigned integer (16 bit)

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to `cbool` (576) type.

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Pointer to `cchar` (576) type.

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (576) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (577) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cint` (577) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to `cint16` (577) type.

`pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32`

Pointer to `cint32` (577) type.

`pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64`

Pointer to `cint64` (577) type.

`pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8`

Pointer to `cint8` (577) type.

`pclong = UnixType.pclong`

Pointer to `clong` (577) type.

`Pclongdouble = ^clongdouble`

Pointer to `clongdouble` (577) type.

`pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong`

Pointer to `clonglong` (577) type.

`pcschar = UnixType.pcschar`

Pointer to `cschar` (577) type.

`pcshort = UnixType.pcshort`

Pointer to `cshort` (577) type.

`pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned`

Pointer to `csigned` (577) type.

`pcsint = UnixType.pcsint`

Pointer to `csint` (578) type.

`pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t`

Pointer to generic size type

`pcslong = UnixType.pcslong`

Pointer to `clong` (578) type.

`pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong`

Pointer to `cslonglong` (578) type.

`pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to `csshort` (578) type.

`pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar`

Pointer to `cuchar` (578) type.

`pcuint = UnixType.pcuint`

Pointer to `cuint` (578) type.

`pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16`

Pointer to `cuint16` (578) type.

`pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32`

Pointer to `cuint32` (578) type.

`pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64`

Pointer to `cuint64` (578) type.

`pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8`

Pointer to `cuint8` (578) type.

`pculong = UnixType.pculong`

Pointer to `culong` (578) type.

`pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong`

Pointer to `culonglong` (578) type.

`pcunsigned = UnixType.punsigned`

Pointer to `cunsigned` (579) type.

`pcushort = UnixType.pcushort`

Pointer to `cushort` (579) type.

## Chapter 43

# Reference for unit 'cwstring'

### 43.1 Used units

Table 43.1: Used units by unit 'cwstring'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 43.2 Overview

The `cstring` unit offers no API by itself: it just initializes the widestring manager record of the `system` ([1332](#)) unit with an implementation that uses collation and conversion routines which are provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `cstring` should simply be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system like Windows, OS/2 or DOS. Therefore it should always be enclosed with an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cstring, {$endif}
  classes, sysutils;
```

### 43.3 Procedures and functions

#### 43.3.1 SetCWidestringManager

Synopsis: Set the Widestring manager of the system unit to the C version

Declaration: `procedure SetCWidestringManager`

Visibility: `default`

**Description:** `SetCWidestringManager` actually sets the widestring manager record of the system unit. It is called automatically by the initialization section of the unit.

## Chapter 44

# Reference for unit 'DateUtils'

### 44.1 Used units

Table 44.1: Used units by unit 'DateUtils'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| Math     | <a href="#">981</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils | <a href="#">1599</a> |

### 44.2 Overview

`DateUtils` contains a large number of date/time manipulation routines, all based on the `TDateTime` type. There are routines for date/time math, for comparing dates and times, for composing dates and decomposing dates in their constituent parts.

### 44.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 44.3.1 Constants

`ApproxDaysPerMonth : Double = 30.4375`

Average number of days in a month, measured over a year. Used in `MonthsBetween` ([634](#)).

`ApproxDaysPerYear : Double = 365.25`

Average number of days in a year, measured over 4 years. Used in `YearsBetween` ([679](#)).

`DayFriday = 5`

ISO day number for Friday

`DayMonday = 1`

ISO day number for Monday

DaySaturday = 6

ISO day number for Saturday

DaysPerWeek = 7

Number of days in a week.

DaysPerYear : Array[Boolean] of Word = (365, 366)

Array with number of days in a year. The Boolean index indicates whether it is a leap year or not.

DaySunday = 7

ISO day number for Sunday

DayThursday = 4

ISO day number for Thursday

DayTuesday = 2

ISO day number for Tuesday

DayWednesday = 3

ISO day number for Wednesday

MonthApril = 4

MonthAugust = 8

MonthDecember = 12

MonthFebruary = 2

MonthJanuary = 1

MonthJuly = 7

MonthJune = 6

MonthMarch = 3

MonthMay = 5

MonthNovember = 11

MonthOctober = 10

MonthSeptember = 9

MonthsPerYear = 12

Number of months in a year

OneHour = TDateTime(1) / HoursPerDay

One hour as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMillisecond = TDateTime(1) / MSecsPerDay

One millisecond as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMinute = TDateTime(1) / MinsPerDay

One minute as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneSecond = TDateTime(1) / SecsPerDay

One second as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs = High(Word)

Bitmask deciding what to do with each TDateTime field in recode routines

WeeksPerFortnight = 2

Number of weeks in fortnight

YearsPerCentury = 100

Number of years in a century

YearsPerDecade = 10

Number of years in a decade

YearsPerMillennium = 1000

Number of years in a millennium

## 44.4 Procedures and functions

### 44.4.1 CompareDate

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 dates, disregarding the time of day

**Declaration:** `function CompareDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareDate` compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the day part of A is earlier than the day part of B.

0 if A and B are the on same day (times may differ) .

> 0 if the day part of A is later than the day part of B.

See also: `CompareTime` (589), `CompareDateTime` (588), `SameDate` (644), `SameTime` (646), `SameDateTime` (645)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex99.pp

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy ';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

Cmp : Integer;

**begin**

Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');

Cmp:=CompareDate(D1,D2);

If Cmp<0 then

write('earlier than ')

else if Cmp>0 then

Write('later than ')

else

Write('equal to ');

WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));

end;

**Var**

D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D:=Today;

N:=Now;

Test(D,D);

Test(N,N);

Test(D+1,D);

```

Test(D-1,D);
Test(D+OneSecond,D);
Test(D-OneSecond,D);
Test(N+OneSecond,N);
Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.2 CompareDateTime

Synopsis: Compare 2 dates, taking into account the time of day

Declaration: `function CompareDateTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareDateTime compares two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if A is earlier in date/time than B.  
0 if A and B are the same date/time .  
> 0 if A is later in date/time than B.

See also: CompareTime (589), CompareDate (587), SameDate (644), SameTime (646), SameDateTime (645)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex98.pp

---

**Program** Example98;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

    Cmp : Integer;

**begin**

    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');

    Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);

    If Cmp<0 then

        write('earlier than ')

    else if Cmp>0 then

        Write('later than ')

    else

        Write('equal to ');

    WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));

**end;**

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D:=Today;
N:=Now;
Test(D,D);
Test(N,N);
Test(D+1,D);
Test(D-1,D);
Test(D+OneSecond,D);
Test(D-OneSecond,D);
Test(N+OneSecond,N);
Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

### 44.4.3 CompareTime

**Synopsis:** Compares two times of the day, disregarding the date part.

**Declaration:** `function CompareTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the time part of A is earlier than the time part of B.

0 if A and B have the same time part (dates may differ) .

> 0 if the time part of A is later than the time part of B.

See also: `CompareDateTime` (588), `CompareDate` (587), `SameDate` (644), `SameTime` (646), `SameDateTime` (645)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex100.pp`

---

**Program** Example100;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

Cmp : Integer;

**begin**

Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' has ');

Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);

If Cmp<0 then

write('earlier time than ')

else if Cmp>0 then

Write('later time than ')

else

Write('equal time with ');

```

    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, D2));
end;

Var
    D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
    D:=Today;
    N:=Now;
    Test (D,D);
    Test (N,N);
    Test (N+1,N);
    Test (N-1,N);
    Test (N+OneSecond,N);
    Test (N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.4 DateInRange

Synopsis: Checks whether a date value is in a given rang

Declaration: `function DateInRange (ADate: TDate; AStartDate: TDate; AEndDate: TDate; AInclusive: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateInRange` checks whether the value `ADate` lies between `AStartDate` and `AEndDate`, and returns `True` if it is. When `AINclusive` is `True` (the default), then the limits are included. When `AINclusive` is `False`, the limits are excluded. Only the date part of the 3 parameters is considered.

Errors: The `AStartDate` value must be before `AEndDate`, but no check is performed.

See also: `TimeInRange` (656), `DateTimeInRange` (591)

#### 44.4.5 DateOf

Synopsis: Extract the date part from a `TDateTime` indication.

Declaration: `function DateOf (const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateOf` extracts the date part from `AValue` and returns the result.

Since the `TDateTime` is actually a double with the date part encoded in the integer part, this operation corresponds to a call to `Trunc`.

See also: `TimeOf` (656), `YearOf` (678), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `HourOf` (608), `MinuteOf` (630), `SecondOf` (647), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateOf function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils`;

```

Begin
  WriteLn ( 'Date is: ', DateTimeToStr (DateOf (Now)));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.6 DateTimeInRange

**Synopsis:** Checks whether a date/time value is in a given range

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeInRange (ADateTime: TDateTime;  
                                   AStartTime: TDateTime;  
                                   AEndTime: TDateTime; aInclusive: Boolean)  
                                   : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeInRange` checks whether the value `ADateTime` lies between `AStartTime` and `AEndTime`, and returns `True` if it is. When `AInclusive` is `True` (the default), then the limits are included. When `AInclusive` is `False`, the limits are excluded.

**Errors:** The `AStartTime` value must be before `AEndTime`, but no check is performed.

See also: `DateInRange` ([590](#)), `TimeInRange` ([656](#))

#### 44.4.7 DateTimeToDosDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert `TDateTime` format to DOS date/time format

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToDosDateTime (const AValue: TDateTime) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToDosDatetime` takes `Value`, a `TDateTime` formatted timestamp, and recodes it to a MS-DOS encoded date/time value. This is a longint with the date/time encoded in the bits as:

**0-4**Seconds divided by 2  
**5-10**Minutes  
**11-15**Hours  
**16-20**Day  
**21-24**Month  
**25-31**Years since 1980

See also: `DosDateTimeToDateTime` ([601](#))

#### 44.4.8 DateTimeToJulianDate

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a Julian date representation

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToJulianDate (const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToJulianDate` converts the `AValue` date/time indication to a Julian (as opposed to Gregorian) date.

See also: `JulianDateToDateTime` ([624](#)), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` ([664](#)), `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate` ([592](#)), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` ([664](#))

#### 44.4.9 DateTimeToMac

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` timestamp to a Mac timestamp

Declaration: `function DateTimeToMac(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToMac` converts the `TDateTime` value `AValue` to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (665), `MacToDateTime` (625), `MacTimeStampToUnix` (625)

#### 44.4.10 DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` value to a modified Julian date representation

Declaration: `function DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: `DateTimeToJulianDate` (591), `JulianDateToDateTime` (624), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` (664), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` (664)

#### 44.4.11 DateTimeToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` value to Unix epoch time

Declaration: `function DateTimeToUnix(const AValue: TDateTime; AInputIsUTC: Boolean) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToUnix` converts a `TDateTime` value to a epoch time (i.e. the number of seconds elapsed since 1/1/1970).

See also: `UnixToDateTime` (666)

#### 44.4.12 DateToISO8601

Synopsis: Converts a `TDateTime` value to ISO 8601 date/time format

Declaration: `function DateToISO8601(const ADate: TDateTime; AInputIsUTC: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateToISO8601` is a `String` function used to convert the `TDateTime` value in `ADate` to ISO 8601 date/time notation.

`ADate` contains the native `TDateTime` value converted in the function.

`AInputIsUTC` indicates if the value in `ADate` represents a date/time value for the UTC time zone. When `AInputIsUTC` contains `True`, the 'Z' (Zulu time) time zone designation is used in the

converted ISO 8601 value. Otherwise, the time zone is expressed as a positive or negative number of hours and minutes (such as "-04:00") in the return value.

`DateToISO8601` calls `GetLocalTimeOffset` to determine the time zone offset in use on the local computer. The integer offset is used to adjust the value in `ADate` to the UTC time zone when necessary.

The return value contains the adjusted value in `ADate` formatted using the notation:

- `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzz±hh:nn` or
- `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzzZ` for Zulu time

Use `ISO8601ToDate` to convert the return value back to a native `TDateTime` type.

See also: `ISO8601ToDate` ([617](#))

### 44.4.13 DayOf

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part from a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function DayOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOf` returns the day of the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 31.

For an example, see `YearOf` ([678](#))

See also: `YearOf` ([678](#)), `WeekOf` ([666](#)), `MonthOf` ([634](#)), `HourOf` ([608](#)), `MinuteOf` ([630](#)), `SecondOf` ([647](#)), `MilliSecondOf` ([625](#))

### 44.4.14 DayOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part of a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheMonth` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the month will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` ([666](#)) function.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` ([594](#)), `WeekOfTheMonth` ([666](#)), `HourOfTheMonth` ([609](#)), `MinuteOfTheMonth` ([631](#)), `SecondOfTheMonth` ([648](#)), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` ([627](#))

### 44.4.15 DayOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Extracts the day of the week from a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheWeek` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the week will return 1.

See also: [DayOfTheYear \(594\)](#), [DayOfTheMonth \(593\)](#), [HourOfTheWeek \(609\)](#), [MinuteOfTheWeek \(631\)](#), [SecondOfTheWeek \(649\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(627\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Day of the Week : ', DayOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Hour of the Week : ', HourOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Week : ', MinuteOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Week : ', SecondOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Week : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheWeek(N));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.16 DayOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extracts the day of the year from a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** function DayOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DayOfTheYear returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the year till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a one-based number, i.e. January 1 will return 1.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheYear ([667](#)) function.

See also: [WeekOfTheYear \(667\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(610\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(631\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(649\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(628\)](#)

#### 44.4.17 DaysBetween

**Synopsis:** Number of whole days between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** function DaysBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DaysBetween returns the number of whole days between ANow and AThen. This means the fractional part of a day (hours, minutes, etc.) is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(679\)](#), [MonthsBetween \(634\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(668\)](#), [HoursBetween \(610\)](#), [MinutesBetween \(632\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(649\)](#), [MillisecondsBetween \(628\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex58.pp

---

**Program** Example58;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write( 'Number of days between ');

  Write( DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn( ' : ', DaysBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Now;

  D2 := Today - 23/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 1;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 25/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 26/24;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 5.4;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 2.5;

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.18 DaysInAMonth

Synopsis: Number of days in a month of a certain year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month `AMonth` in the year `AYear`. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(668\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(669\)](#), [DaysInYear \(597\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(596\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(596\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

  Y, M : Word;

```

Begin
  For Y:=1992 to 2010 do
    For M:=1 to 12 do
      WriteLn (LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInAMonth(Y,M), ' days. ');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.19 DaysInAYear

Synopsis: Number of days in a particular year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` ([668](#)), `WeeksInYear` ([669](#)), `DaysInYear` ([597](#)), `DaysInMonth` ([596](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([595](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

**For** Y:=1992 **to** 2010 **do**

**WriteLn** (Y, ' has ', DaysInAYear(Y), ' days. ');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.20 DaysInMonth

Synopsis: Return the number of days in the month in which a date occurs.

Declaration: `function DaysInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month in which `AValue` falls. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` ([668](#)), `WeeksInYear` ([669](#)), `DaysInYear` ([597](#)), `DaysInAYear` ([596](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([595](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

For M:=1 to 12 do

WriteLn(LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInMonth(EncodeDate(Y,M,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.21 DaysInYear

**Synopsis:** Return the number of days in the year in which a date occurs.

**Declaration:** function DaysInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** daysInYear returns the number of days in the year part of AValue. The return value is either 365 or 366.

**See also:** WeeksInAYear (668), WeeksInYear (669), DaysInAYear (596), DaysInMonth (596), DaysInAMonth (595)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInYear(EncodeDate(Y,1,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.22 DaySpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of days between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** function DaySpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DaySpan returns the number of Days between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a Day.

**See also:** YearSpan (680), MonthSpan (635), WeekSpan (670), HourSpan (611), MinuteSpan (633), SecondSpan (650), MilliSecondSpan (629), DaysBetween (594)

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaySpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of days between ' );

**Write**( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow));

**WriteLn**( ' : ', DaySpan(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := **Now**;

    D2 := Today - 23/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 1;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 25/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 26/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 5.4;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 2.5;

    Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.23 DecodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Decode a TDateTime value in year and year of day.

**Declaration:** procedure DecodeDateDay(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
  out ADayOfYear: Word)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DecodeDateDay decomposes the date indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, ADayOfYear.

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (602), EncodeDateMonthWeek (602), EncodeDateWeek (603), EncodeDateDay (601), DecodeDateTime (599), DecodeDateWeek (600), DecodeDateMonthWeek (599)

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex83.pp

---

**Program** Example83;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

---

```

Var
  Y,DoY : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

Begin
  DecodeDateDay(Now,Y,DoY);
  TS:=EncodeDateDay(Y,DoY);
  WriteLn( 'Today is : ',DateToStr(TS));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.24 DecodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in a month, week of month and day of week

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateMonthWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word; out AMonth: Word; out AWeekOfMonth: Word; out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDateMonthWeek` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

See also: `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `DecodeDateTime` (599), `DecodeDateWeek` (600), `DecodeDateDay` (598)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex85.pp

---

**Program** Example85;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Var
  Y,M,Wom,Dow : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

```

```

Begin
  DecodeDateMonthWeek(Now,Y,M,WoM,DoW);
  TS:=EncodeDateMonthWeek(Y,M,WoM,Dow);
  WriteLn( 'Today is : ',DateToStr(TS));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.25 DecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in a date and time value

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word; out AMonth: Word; out ADay: Word; out AHour: Word; out AMinute: Word; out ASecond: Word; out AMilliSecond: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DecodeDateTime` decomposes the date/time indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond`, `AMilliSecond`

See also: `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `DecodeDateWeek` (600), `DecodeDateDay` (598), `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (599)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** `Example79`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS` : `Word`;  
`TS` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`DecodeDateTime(Now, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS)`;  
`TS := EncodeDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS)`;  
`WriteLn('Now is : ', DateTimeToStr(TS))`;

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.26 DecodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Decode a `TDateTime` value in a week of year and day of week.

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;`  
`out AWeekOfYear: Word; out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DecodeDateWeek` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear`, `ADayOfWeek`.

See also: `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `DecodeDateTime` (599), `DecodeDateDay` (598), `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (599)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `Example81`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, W, Dow` : `Word`;  
`TS` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`DecodeDateWeek(Now, Y, W, Dow)`;  
`TS := EncodeDateWeek(Y, W, Dow)`;  
`WriteLn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS))`;

**End.**

---

### 44.4.27 DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in year, month, day of week parts

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;  
out AYear: Word; out AMonth: Word;  
out ANthDayOfWeek: Word;  
out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` decodes the date `AValue` in a `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek`. (This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.)

See also: `NthDayOfWeek` (636), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1661), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (603), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (660)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;`

`D : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth (Date, Y,M,NDoW,DoW);`

`D:=EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth (Y,M,NDoW,DoW);`

`Write (DateToStr(D), ' is the ',NDow, '-th ');`

`WriteLn (formatdateTime( 'dddd',D), ' of the month. ');`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.28 DosDateTimeToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert DOS date/time format to TDateTime format

Declaration: `function DosDateTimeToDateTime(AValue: LongInt) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosDateTimeToDateTime` takes a DOS encoded date/time `AValue` and recodes it as a `TDateTime` value.

The bit encoding of the DOS date/time is explained in the `DateTimeToDosDateTime` (591) function.

See also: `DateTimeToDosDateTime` (591)

### 44.4.29 EncodeDateDay

Synopsis: Encodes a year and day of year to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function EncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EncodeDateDay` encodes the values `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateDay` (598).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `DecodeDateDay` (598), `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `TryEncodeDateTime` (658), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (658), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (659)

### 44.4.30 EncodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week of month and day of week to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                             const AWeekOfMonth: Word;
                             const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EncodeDateTime` encodes the values `AYearAMonth`, `WeekOfMonth`, `ADayOfWeek`, to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (599).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (599), `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `TryEncodeDateTime` (658), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (659), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (658), `TryEncodeDateDay` (657), `NthDayOfWeek` (636)

### 44.4.31 EncodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Encodes a `TDateTime` value from all its parts

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                        const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;
                        const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;
                        const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EncodeDateTime` encodes the values `AYearAMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` to a date/time value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateTime` (599).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `DecodeDateTime` (599), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `EncodeDateWeek` (603), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `TryEncodeDateTime` (658), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (659), `TryEncodeDateDay` (657), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (658)

### 44.4.32 EncodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Encode a `TDateTime` value from a year, week and day of week triplet

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                        const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word)
                        : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateWeek` (600).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `DecodeDateWeek` (600), `EncodeDateTime` (602), `EncodeDateDay` (601), `TryEncodeDateTime` (658), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (659), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (658)

### 44.4.33 EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week, day of week specification to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                                const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` encodes `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek` to a valid date stamp and returns the result.

`ANthDayOfWeek` is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.

For an example, see `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (601).

**Errors:** If any of the values is not in range, then an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

**See also:** `NthDayOfWeek` (636), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1661), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (601), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (660)

### 44.4.34 EncodeTimeInterval

**Synopsis:** Encode an interval as a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeTimeInterval(Hour: Word; Minute: Word; Second: Word;
                            MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeTimeInterval` encodes a time interval expressed in Hour, Min, Sec, MSec as a `TDateTime` value and returns the value in Time.

**Errors:** If Min, Sec, MSec do not contain a valid time indication, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `TryEncodeTimeInterval` (661)

### 44.4.35 EndOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculates a TDateTime value representing the end of a specified day

**Declaration:** `function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload  
function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfDay returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of the day given by AYear, AMonth, ADay.

The day may also be indicated with a AYear, ADayOfYear pair.

See also: StartOfDay (654), StartOfDay (651), StartOfTheWeek (655), StartOfAWeek (652), StartOfAMonth (652), StartOfTheMonth (654), EndOfTheWeek (607), EndOfAWeek (605), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfAMonth (604), EndOfTheDay (606)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

Y,M,D : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);

M:=MonthOf(Today);

D:=DayOf(Today);

WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,M,D)));

DecodeDateDay(Today, Y, D);

WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,D)));

**End.**

---

### 44.4.36 EndOfAMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of the indicated month

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfAMonth returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last day of the month indicated by the AYear, AMonth pair.

See also: StartOfTheMonth (654), StartOfAMonth (652), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), StartOfAWeek (652), StartOfTheWeek (655)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex31.pp

---

```

Program Example31;

{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAMonth function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
    Fmt = '"Last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';
Var
    Y,M : Word;

Begin
    Y:=YearOf(Today);
    M:=MonthOf(Today);
    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfAMonth(Y,M)));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.37 EndOfAWeek

**Synopsis:** Return the last moment of day of the week, given a year and a week in the year.

**Declaration:**

```

function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                    const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word)
                    : TDateTime

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfAWeek returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last moment (23:59:59:999) on the indicated day of the week indicated by the AYear, AWeek, ADayOfWeek values.

The default value for ADayOfWeek is 7.

**See also:** StartOfTheWeek (655), EndOfTheWeek (607), EndOfAWeek (605), StartOfAMonth (652), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfAMonth (604)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex35.pp

---

```

Program Example35;

{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAWeek function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
    Fmt = '"Last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
    Fmt2 = '"Last-1 day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
Var
    Y,W : Word;

Begin
    Y:=YearOf(Today);
    W:=WeekOf(Today);
    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfAWeek(Y,W)));
    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt2, EndOfAWeek(Y,W,6)));
End.

```

---

### 44.4.38 EndOfAYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of a year

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfAYear returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last day of the year AYear (December 31).

See also: StartOfTheYear (655), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfA-Month (604), StartOfAWeek (652), StartOfTheWeek (655)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'Last day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfAYear (YearOf (Today))));

**End.**

---

### 44.4.39 EndOfTheDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value that represents the end of a given day.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfTheDay extracts the date part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date/-time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of this day.

See also: StartOfDay (654), StartOfADay (651), StartOfTheWeek (655), StartOfAWeek (652), StartOfA-Month (652), StartOfTheMonth (654), EndOfTheWeek (607), EndOfAWeek (605), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfAMonth (604), EndOfADay (604)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheDay (Today)) );

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.40 EndOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of the month, given a day in that month.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheMonth` extracts the year and month parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the `EndOfAMonth` (604) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAMonth` (652), `StartOfTheMonth` (654), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `Example29;`

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheMonth (Today)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.41 EndOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value which represents the end of a week, given a date in that week.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that week as the `EndOfAWeek` (605) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655), `EndOfAWeek` (605), `StartOfAMonth` (652), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33;`

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheWeek (Today)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.42 EndOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of a year, given a date in that year.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheYear` extracts the year part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that year (December 31), as the `EndOfAYear` (606) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAYear` (653), `StartOfTheYear` (655), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655), `EndOfAYear` (606)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = ' "Last day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheYear (Today) ));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.43 HourOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the hour part from a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** `function HourOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOf` returns the hour of the day part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 23.

For an example, see `YearOf` (678)

**See also:** `YearOf` (678), `WeekOf` (666), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `MinuteOf` (630), `SecondOf` (647), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

#### 44.4.44 HourOfTheDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the hour of a given TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheDay` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the day till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 will return 0.

**See also:** `HourOfTheYear` (610), `HourOfTheMonth` (609), `HourOfTheWeek` (609), `MinuteOfTheDay` (630), `SecondOfTheDay` (647), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (626)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex43.pp

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Hour of the Day : ', HourOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Day : ', MinuteOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Day : ', SecondOfDay(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Day : ',  
MilliSecondOfDay(N));

**End.**

#### 44.4.45 HourOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** function HourOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourOfTheMonth returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheMonth (666) function.

See also: WeekOfTheMonth (666), DayOfTheMonth (593), MinuteOfTheMonth (631), SecondOfTheMonth (648), MilliSecondOfTheMonth (627)

#### 44.4.46 HourOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours elapsed since the start of the week.

**Declaration:** function HourOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourOfTheWeek returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the Week till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the DayOfTheWeek (593) function.

See also: HourOfTheYear (610), HourOfTheMonth (609), HourOfDay (608), DayOfTheWeek (593), MinuteOfTheWeek (631), SecondOfTheWeek (649), MilliSecondOfTheWeek (627)

#### 44.4.47 HourOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheYear` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:59:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (667) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (667), `DayOfTheYear` (594), `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628)

#### 44.4.48 HoursBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole hours between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function HoursBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HoursBetween` returns the number of whole hours between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of an hour (minutes,seconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594), `MinutesBetween` (632), `SecondsBetween` (649), `MillisecondsBetween` (628)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the HoursBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of hours between ');

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn(' : ', HoursBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=D1-(59\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(61\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(122\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(306\*OneMinute);

```

    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.49 HourSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of hours between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function HourSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourSpan returns the number of Hours between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a Hour.

See also: YearSpan (680), MonthSpan (635), WeekSpan (670), DaySpan (597), MinuteSpan (633), SecondSpan (650), MilliSecondSpan (629), HoursBetween (610)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex67.pp

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

    Write('Number of hours between ');
    Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
    WriteLn(' : ', HourSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

    D1:=Now;
    D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
    Test(D1,D2);

```

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.50 IncDay

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of days.

Declaration: `function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfDays: Integer) : TDateTime`  
`function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncDay` adds `ANumberOfDays` days to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfDays` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (615), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1716), `IncWeek` (614), `IncHour` (612), `IncMinute` (613), `IncSecond` (614), `IncMilliSecond` (613)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex74.pp`

---

**Program** Example74;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One Day from today is ', DateToStr(IncDay(Today, 1)));`

`WriteLn('One Day ago from today is ', DateToStr(IncDay(Today, -1)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.51 IncHour

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of hours.

Declaration: `function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfHours: Int64) : TDateTime`  
`function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncHour` adds `ANumberOfHours` hours to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfHours` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (615), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1716), `IncWeek` (614), `IncDay` (612), `IncMinute` (613), `IncSecond` (614), `IncMilliSecond` (613)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** Example75

;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One Hour from now is ', DateTimeToStr(IncHour(Now, 1)));`

`WriteLn('One Hour ago from now is ', DateTimeToStr(IncHour(Now, -1)));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.52 IncMilliSecond

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of milliseconds.

Declaration: `function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMilliseconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncMilliSecond adds ANumberOfMilliseconds milliseconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfMilliseconds can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (615), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1716), IncWeek (614), IncDay (612), IncHour (612), IncSecond (614), IncMilliSecond (613)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex78.pp

---

**Program** Example78;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMilliSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ('One MilliSecond from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, 1)));  
**WriteLn** ('One MilliSecond ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, -1)));  
**End.**

---

### 44.4.53 IncMinute

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of minutes.

Declaration: `function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMinutes: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncMinute adds ANumberOfMinutes minutes to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfMinutes can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (615), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1716), IncWeek (614), IncDay (612), IncHour (612), IncSecond (614), IncMilliSecond (613)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ('One Minute from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, 1)));  
**WriteLn** ('One Minute ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, -1)));  
**End.**

---

#### 44.4.54 IncSecond

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of seconds.

Declaration: `function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
                                  const ANumberOfSeconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
          function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncSecond adds ANumberOfSeconds seconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfSeconds can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (615), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1716), IncWeek (614), IncDay (612), IncHour (612), IncSecond (614), IncMilliSecond (613)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ('One Second from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, 1)));

**WriteIn** ('One Second ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.55 IncWeek

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of weeks.

Declaration: `function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfWeeks: Integer)  
                                  : TDateTime  
          function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncWeek adds ANumberOfWeeks weeks to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfWeeks can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (615), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1716), IncDay (612), IncHour (612), IncMinute (613), IncSecond (614), IncMilliSecond (613)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex73.pp

---

**Program** Example73;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ('One Week from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(**Today**, 1)));

**WriteIn** ('One Week ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(**Today**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.56 IncYear

**Synopsis:** Increase a `TDateTime` value with a number of years.

**Declaration:** `function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfYears: Integer) : TDateTime`  
`function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncYear` adds `ANumberOfYears` years to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfYears` can be positive or negative.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1716), `IncWeek` (614), `IncDay` (612), `IncHour` (612), `IncMinute` (613), `IncSecond` (614), `IncMilliSecond` (613)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** `Example71`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One year from today is ', DateToStr(IncYear(Today, 1)));`

`WriteLn('One year ago from today is ', DateToStr(IncYear(Today, -1)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.57 InvalidDateDayError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a day is not a valid day of a year.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDateDayError(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateDayError` raises an `EConvertError` (1781) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear` and `ADayOfYear`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (616), `InvalidDateTimeError` (616), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (615), `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` (617)

#### 44.4.58 InvalidDateMonthWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year, Month, WeekOfMonth, DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDateMonthWeekError(const AYear: Word;`  
`const AMonth: Word;`  
`const AWeekOfMonth: Word;`  
`const ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1781) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `Amonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (616), `InvalidDateTimeError` (616), `InvalidDateDayError` (615), `InvalidDay-Of-WeekInMonthError` (617)

#### 44.4.59 InvalidDateTimeError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` about an invalid date-time specification.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word;
                               const ABaseDate: TDateTime)
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateTimeError` raises an `EConvertError` (1781) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (616), `InvalidDateDayError` (615), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (615), `InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError` (617)

#### 44.4.60 InvalidDateWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` with an invalid Year, WeekOfyear and DayOfWeek specification

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDateWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                               const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                               const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1781) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek`

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateTimeError` (616), `InvalidDateDayError` (615), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (615), `InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError` (617)

#### 44.4.61 InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year,Month,NthDayOfWeek,DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError(const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;  
const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` raises an `EConvertError` (1781) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ANthDayOfWeek` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateWeekError` (616), `InvalidDateTimeError` (616), `InvalidDateDayError` (615), `InvalidDate-MonthWeekError` (615)

#### 44.4.62 IsInLeapYear

**Synopsis:** Determine whether a date is in a leap year.

**Declaration:** `function IsInLeapYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsInLeapYear` returns `True` if the year part of `AValue` is leap year, or `False` if not.

**See also:** `YearOf` (678), `IsPM` (619), `IsToday` (620), `IsSameDay` (619)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsInLeapYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Current year is leap year: ',IsInLeapYear(Date));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.63 ISO8601ToDate

**Synopsis:** Converts a date/time value in ISO 8601 notation to a native `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function ISO8601ToDate(const DateString: string; ReturnUTC: Boolean)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ISO8601ToDate` is a function used to convert a string using ISO 8601 date/time notation to a native `TDateTime` type.

`DateString` contains the date/time value expressed using ISO 8601 notation.

`ReturnUTC` indicates if the `TDateTime` value should be adjusted to reflect the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) time zone. The default value for the argument is `True`.

`ISO8601ToDate` calls the `TryISO8601ToDate` function to perform the conversion, and raises an `EConvertError` exception if `DateString` contains an invalid ISO 8601 date/time value. The return value contains the native `TDateTime` value for the timestamp (adjusted to UTC when requested).

Use `DateToISO8601` to convert the native date/time value back to its representation using ISO 8601 date/time notation.

See also: `TryISO8601ToDate` ([661](#)), `DateToISO8601` ([592](#))

#### 44.4.64 ISO8601ToDateDef

**Synopsis:** Converts an ISO 8601 date/time string to a `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:**

```
function ISO8601ToDateDef(const DateString: string; ReturnUTC: Boolean;
                           aDefault: TDateTime) : TDateTime
function ISO8601ToDateDef(const DateString: string;
                           aDefault: TDateTime; ReturnUTC: Boolean)
                           : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ISO8601ToDateDef` is used to convert a date/time string in ISO 8601 format to its representation as a `TDateTime` value. `DateString` contains the ISO 8601-formatted date/time value converted in the routine. It can use one of the supported ISO 8601 date/time formats, and may contain an optional time zone offset. `DateString` uses the format returned from the `DateToISO8601` function. Each of the following represent the date/time for Noon on July 4, 2019:

- 20190714 12:00
- 2019-07-14 12:00
- 20190714 12:00:00
- 2019-07-14 12:00:00
- 20190714T12:00
- 20190714T12:00:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00:00
- 20190714T12:00:00-04:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00:00-04:00

Time values in `DateString` specified without a time zone offset are assumed to be in the local time zone.

`ReturnUTC` indicates if the value in `DateString` is adjusted to UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) in the return value.

`aDefault` contains the default `TDateTime` value used as the return value when `DateString` cannot be successfully parsed and converted.

Please note that the overloaded variant which uses `String`, `Boolean`, and `TDateTime` arguments has been deprecated. Use the variant with `String`, `TDateTime`, and `Boolean` arguments (in that order) instead.

`ISO8601ToDateDef` calls the `TryISO8601ToDate` function in its implementation.

See also: `DateToISO8601` ([592](#)), `TryISO8601ToDate` ([661](#))

**44.4.65 IsPM**

Synopsis: Determine whether a time is PM or AM.

Declaration: `function IsPM(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPM` returns `True` if the time part of `AValue` is later than 12:00 (PM, or afternoon).

See also: [YearOf \(678\)](#), [IsInLeapYear \(617\)](#), [IsToday \(620\)](#), [IsSameDay \(619\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsPM function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'Current time is PM : ', IsPM(**Now**));

**End.**

---

**44.4.66 IsSameDay**

Synopsis: Check if two date/time indications are the same day.

Declaration: `function IsSameDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSameDay` checks whether `AValue` and `ABasis` have the same date part, and returns `True` if they do, `False` if not.

See also: [Today \(656\)](#), [Yesterday \(681\)](#), [Tomorrow \(657\)](#), [IsToday \(620\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsSameDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

    I : Integer;

    D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** 3 **do**

**begin**

            D:=Today+**Random**(3)-1;

**Write** (**FormatDateTime**( 'dd mmm yyyy "is today : "', D));

**WriteIn** ( IsSameDay(D, Today));

**end**;

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.67 IsSameMonth

Synopsis: Check if 2 dates are in the same month.

Declaration: `function IsSameMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSameMonth` will return `True` if the two dates `AValue` and `ABasis` occur in the same year and month. (i.e. if their month and year parts match). Otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: `IsSameDay` (619), `IsToday` (620), `SameDate` (644)

#### 44.4.68 IsToday

Synopsis: Check whether a given date is today.

Declaration: `function IsToday(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsToday` returns `True` if `AValue` is today's date, and `False` otherwise.

See also: `Today` (656), `Yesterday` (681), `Tomorrow` (657), `IsSameDay` (619)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex20.pp`

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ This program demonstrates the IsToday function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

```
WriteLn('Today      : ', IsToday(Today));
WriteLn('Tomorrow   : ', IsToday(Tomorrow));
WriteLn('Yesterday  : ', IsToday(Yesterday));
```

**End.**

#### 44.4.69 IsValidDate

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid date indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidDate(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidDate` returns `True` when the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` form a valid date indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the day is invalid or does not exist in that particular month), `False` is returned.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: `IsValidTime` (624), `IsValidDateTime` (622), `IsValidDateDay` (621), `IsValidDateWeek` (623), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` (621)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDate function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  Y,M,D : Word;

Begin
  For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
    For M:=1 to 12 do
      For D:=1 to 31 do
        If Not IsValidDate(Y,M,D) then
          WriteLn(D, ' is not a valid day in ',Y,'/',M);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.70 IsValidDateDay

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/day of year combination is a valid date.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidDateDay returns True if AYear and ADayOfYear form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The ADayOfYear value is checked to see whether it falls within the valid range of dates for AYear.

**See also:** IsValidDate ([620](#)), IsValidTime ([624](#)), IsValidDateTime ([622](#)), IsValidDateWeek ([623](#)), IsValidDateMonthWeek ([621](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex9.pp

---

```

Program Example9;

{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateDay function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  Y : Word;

Begin
  For Y:=1996 to 2004 do
    if IsValidDateDay(Y,366) then
      WriteLn(Y, ' is a leap year');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.71 IsValidDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/month/week/day of the week combination is a valid day

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsValidDateMonthWeek` returns `True` if `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `AWeekOfMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for the `AYear`, `AMonth` combination.

See also: `IsValidDate` (620), `IsValidTime` (624), `IsValidDateTime` (622), `IsValidDateDay` (621), `IsValidDate-Week` (623)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y,W,D : Word;`  
`B : Boolean;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=2000 to 2004 do`  
    `begin`  
        `B:=True;`  
        `For W:=4 to 6 do`  
            `For D:=1 to 7 do`  
                `If B then`  
                    `begin`  
                        `B:=IsValidDateMonthWeek(Y,12,W,D);`  
                    `If Not B then`  
                        `if (D=1) then`  
                            `WriteLn('December ',Y,' has exactly ',W,' weeks.')`  
                        `else`  
                            `WriteLn('December ',Y,' has ',W,' weeks and ',D-1,' days.');`  
                        `end;`  
                `end;`  
    `end;`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.72 IsValidDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid date and time indication.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsValidTime` returns `True` when the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` form a valid date and time indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the seconds are larger than 60), `False` is returned.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: `IsValidDate` (620), `IsValidTime` (624), `IsValidDateDay` (621), `IsValidDateWeek` (623), `IsValidDate-MonthWeek` (621)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, Mo, D : Word;`  
`H, M, S, MS : Word;`  
`I : Integer;`

**Begin**

**For** `I:=1 to 10 do`

**begin**

`Y:=2000+Random(5);`

`Mo:=Random(15);`

`D:=Random(40);`

`H:=Random(32);`

`M:=Random(90);`

`S:=Random(90);`

`MS:=Random(1500);`

**If Not** `IsValidDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, M, S, MS)` **then**

`WriteLn(Y, '-', Mo, '-', D, ' ', H, ': ', M, ': ', S, '.', MS, ' is not a valid date/time.');`

**end;**

**End.**

---

### 44.4.73 IsValidDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/week/day of the week combination is a valid day.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word; const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `IsValidDateWeek` returns `True` if `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `ADayOfWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for `AYear`.

See also: `IsValidDate` (620), `IsValidTime` (624), `IsValidDateTime` (622), `IsValidDateDay` (621), `IsValidDate-MonthWeek` (621)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;

{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateWeek function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  Y,W,D : Word;
  B : Boolean;

Begin
  For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
    begin
      B:=True;
      For W:=51 to 54 do
        For D:=1 to 7 do
          If B then
            begin
              B:=IsValidDateWeek(Y,W,D);
              If Not B then
                if (D=1) then
                  Writeln(Y, ' has exactly ',W, ' weeks. ')
                else
                  Writeln(Y, ' has ',W, ' weeks and ',D-1, ' days. ');
            end;
          end;
    end;
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.74 IsValidTime

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidTime(const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

#### 44.4.75 JulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function JulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: JulianDateToDateTime converts the Julian AValue date/time indication to a regular TDateTime date/time indication.

See also: DateTimeToJulianDate ([591](#)), TryJulianDateToDateTime ([664](#)), DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate ([592](#)), TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime ([664](#))

#### 44.4.76 LocalTimeToUniversal

Synopsis: Convert local time to UTC time

Declaration: `function LocalTimeToUniversal(LT: TDateTime) : TDateTime`  
`function LocalTimeToUniversal(LT: TDateTime; TZOffset: Integer)`  
`: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `LocalTimeToUniversal` converts a local time indication to a universal time indication: it undoes the `TZOffset` time zone offset from the UT Universal time (UTC). If no `TZOffset` is specified, the local time offset as returned by `GetLocalTimeOffset` (584) is used.

Note that for times in the past or in the future, or for time zones with DST, omitting the `TZoffset` may lead to wrong results depending on `GetLocalTimeOffset` being able to compute the correct offset for the UT on the target platform. Currently only Windows Vista and newer return correct offsets for a given date. Older Windows systems or Linux/Unix return always the offset for the current date.

See also: `GetLocalTimeOffset` (584), `UniversalTimeToLocal` (665)

#### 44.4.77 MacTimeStampToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a Unix timestamp

Declaration: `function MacTimeStampToUnix(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacTimeStampToUnix` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a UNIX timestamp indication (epoch time)

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (665), `DateTimeToMac` (592), `MacToDateTime` (625)

#### 44.4.78 MacToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a TDateTime timestamp

Declaration: `function MacToDateTime(const AValue: Int64) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacToDateTime` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a valid `TDateTime` indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (665), `DateTimeToMac` (592), `MacTimeStampToUnix` (625)

#### 44.4.79 MilliSecondOf

Synopsis: Extract the millisecond part from a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MillisecondOf` returns the second of the minute part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 999.

For an example, see `YearOf` (678)

See also: `YearOf` (678), `WeekOf` (666), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `HourOf` (608), `MinuteOf` (630), `MillisecondOf` (625)

#### 44.4.80 `MillisecondOfTheDay`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the day

**Declaration:** `function MillisecondOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MillisecondOfTheDay` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfTheDay` (608) function.

See also: `MillisecondOfTheYear` (628), `MillisecondOfTheMonth` (627), `MillisecondOfTheWeek` (627), `MillisecondOfTheHour` (626), `MillisecondOfTheMinute` (626), `MillisecondOfTheSecond` (627), `HourOfTheDay` (608), `MinuteOfTheDay` (630), `SecondOfTheDay` (647)

#### 44.4.81 `MillisecondOfTheHour`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the hour

**Declaration:** `function MillisecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MillisecondOfTheHour` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (630) function.

See also: `MillisecondOfTheYear` (628), `MillisecondOfTheMonth` (627), `MillisecondOfTheWeek` (627), `MillisecondOfTheDay` (626), `MillisecondOfTheMinute` (626), `MillisecondOfTheSecond` (627), `MinuteOfTheHour` (630), `SecondOfTheHour` (648)

#### 44.4.82 `MillisecondOfTheMinute`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the minute

**Declaration:** `function MillisecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MillisecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Minute (HH:MM:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `SecondOfTheMinute` (648) function.

See also: `MillisecondOfTheYear` (628), `MillisecondOfTheMonth` (627), `MillisecondOfTheWeek` (627), `MillisecondOfTheDay` (626), `MillisecondOfTheHour` (626), `MillisecondOfTheMinute` (626), `MillisecondOfTheSecond` (627), `SecondOfTheMinute` (648)

### 44.4.83 MilliSecondOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (666) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (666), `DayOfTheMonth` (593), `HourOfTheMonth` (609), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (631), `SecondOfTheMonth` (648), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (627)

### 44.4.84 MilliSecondOfTheSecond

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the second

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the second (HH:MM:SS.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:SS.000 will return 0.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (627), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (627), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (626), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (626), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (626), `SecondOfTheMinute` (648)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** Example46;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondOfTheSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Second : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheSecond(N));

**End.**

---

### 44.4.85 MilliSecondOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Week (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the Week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (593) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (627), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (626), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (626), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (626), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (627), `DayOfTheWeek` (593), `HourOfTheWeek` (609), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (631), `SecondOfTheWeek` (649)

#### 44.4.86 `MilliSecondOfTheYear`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheYear` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (667) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (667), `DayOfTheYear` (594), `HourOfTheYear` (610), `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628)

#### 44.4.87 `MillisecondsBetween`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole milliseconds between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MillisecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MillisecondsBetween` returns the number of whole milliseconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means a fractional part of a millisecond is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594), `HoursBetween` (610), `MinutesBetween` (632), `SecondsBetween` (649)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62`;

*{ This program demonstrates the `MillisecondsBetween` function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);`

```
begin
  Write('Number of milliseconds between ');
  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', MillisecondsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**

---

```
D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
```

**End.**


---

#### 44.4.88 MilliSecondSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of milliseconds between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MilliSecondSpan returns the number of milliseconds between ANow and AThen. Since millisecond is the smallest fraction of a TDateTime indication, the returned number will always be an integer value.

See also: YearSpan ([680](#)), MonthSpan ([635](#)), WeekSpan ([670](#)), DaySpan ([597](#)), HourSpan ([611](#)), MinuteSpan ([633](#)), SecondSpan ([650](#)), MilliSecondsBetween ([628](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex70.pp

---

**Program** Example70;

```
{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondSpan function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```
Write('Number of milliseconds between ');
Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', MilliSecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**

```
D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
```

```
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
End.
```

---

#### 44.4.89 MinuteOf

Synopsis: Extract the minute part from a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function MinuteOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOf` returns the minute of the hour part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see `YearOf` (678)

See also: `YearOf` (678), `WeekOf` (666), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `HourOf` (608), `SecondOf` (647), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

#### 44.4.90 MinuteOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MinuteOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOfDay` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (608) function.

See also: `MinuteOfYear` (631), `MinuteOfMonth` (631), `MinuteOfWeek` (631), `MinuteOfTheHour` (630), `HourOfDay` (608), `SecondOfDay` (647), `MilliSecondOfDay` (626)

#### 44.4.91 MinuteOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MinuteOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOfTheHour` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:59 will return 0.

See also: `MinuteOfYear` (631), `MinuteOfMonth` (631), `MinuteOfWeek` (631), `MinuteOfDay` (630), `SecondOfTheHour` (648), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (626)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteOfTheHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Minute of the Hour : ',MinuteOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Hour : ',SecondOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Hour : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheHour(N));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.92 MinuteOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of minutes elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheMonth` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (666) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (666), `DayOfTheMonth` (593), `HourOfTheMonth` (609), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (631), `SecondOfTheMonth` (648), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (627)

#### 44.4.93 MinuteOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheWeek` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (593) function.

See also: `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (631), `MinuteOfTheDay` (630), `MinuteOfTheHour` (630), `DayOfTheWeek` (593), `HourOfTheWeek` (609), `SecondOfTheWeek` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (627)

#### 44.4.94 MinuteOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the year

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheYear` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (667) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (667), `DayOfTheYear` (594), `HourOfTheYear` (610), `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628)

#### 44.4.95 MinutesBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole minutes between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MinutesBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinutesBetween` returns the number of whole minutes between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a minute (seconds, milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594), `HoursBetween` (610), `SecondsBetween` (649), `MillisecondsBetween` (628)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex60.pp`

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinutesBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of minutes between ');

  Write( **TimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **TimeToStr**(ANow) );

  WriteLn(' : ', MinutesBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := **Now**;

  D2 := D1 - (59 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (61 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (122 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (306 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (5.4 \* OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (2.5 \* OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

### 44.4.96 MinuteSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of minutes between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteSpan returns the number of minutes between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a minute.

**See also:** YearSpan (680), MonthSpan (635), WeekSpan (670), DaySpan (597), HourSpan (611), SecondSpan (650), MilliSecondSpan (629), MinutesBetween (632)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of minutes between ');

  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn(' : ', MinuteSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=D1-(59\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(61\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(122\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(306\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

### 44.4.97 ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a modified Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** `function ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(591\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(624\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(664\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(592\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(664\)](#)

#### 44.4.98 MonthOf

Synopsis: Extract the month from a given date.

Declaration: `function MonthOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOf` returns the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 12.

For an example, see [YearOf \(678\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(678\)](#), [DayOf \(593\)](#), [WeekOf \(666\)](#), [HourOf \(608\)](#), [MinuteOf \(630\)](#), [SecondOf \(647\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(625\)](#)

#### 44.4.99 MonthOfTheYear

Synopsis: Extract the month of a `TDateTime` indication.

Declaration: `function MonthOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOfTheYear` extracts the month part of `AValue` and returns it. It is an alias for [MonthOf \(634\)](#), and is provided for completeness only, corresponding to the other `PartOfTheYear` functions.

For an example, see the [WeekOfTheYear \(667\)](#) function.

See also: [MonthOf \(634\)](#), [WeekOfTheYear \(667\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(594\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(610\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(631\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(649\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(628\)](#)

#### 44.4.100 MonthsBetween

Synopsis: Calculate the number of whole months between two `TDateTime` values

Declaration: `function MonthsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime; AExact: Boolean) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthsBetween` returns the number of whole months between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a month is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(679\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(668\)](#), [DaysBetween \(594\)](#), [HoursBetween \(610\)](#), [MinutesBetween \(632\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(649\)](#), [MillisecondsBetween \(628\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex56.pp`



---

```

Procedure Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

begin
  Write('Number of months between ');
  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  Writeln(' : ', MonthSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1 := Today;
  D2 := Today - 364;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 365;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 366;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 390;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 368;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 1000;
  Test(D1, D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.102 NthDayOfWeek

Synopsis: Calculate which occurrence of weekday in the month a given day represents

Declaration: `function NthDayOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `NthDayOfWeek` returns the occurrence of the weekday of `AValue` in the month. This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month (e.g. the third Saturday of the month).

See also: `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (602), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1661), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (601), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (603), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (660)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex104.pp`

---

**Program** Example104;

*{ This program demonstrates the NthDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Begin
  Write('Today is the ', NthDayOfWeek(Today), '-th ');
  Writeln(formatDateTime('dddd', Today), ' of the month. ');
End.

```

---

### 44.4.103 PeriodBetween

**Synopsis:** Return the period (in years, months, days) between two dates

**Declaration:** `procedure PeriodBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
out Years: Word; out months: Word;  
out days: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PeriodBetween` returns the timespan between 2 dates (`ANow` and `AThen`), expressed as a number of years, months and days in the parameters `Years`, `months` and `days`. Only complete years, months and days are reported.

If `ANow` is before `AThen`, their values are reversed so the result is always positive.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594)

### 44.4.104 PreviousDayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Given a day of the week, return the previous day of the week.

**Declaration:** `function PreviousDayOfWeek(DayOfWeek: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PreviousDayOfWeek` returns the previous day of the week. If the current day is the first day of the week (1) then the last day will be returned (7).

**Remark** Note that the days of the week are in ISO notation, i.e. 1-based.

See also: `Yesterday` (681)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22;`

`{ This program demonstrates the PreviousDayOfWeek function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`D : Word;`

**Begin**

`For D:=1 to 7 do`

`Writeln('Previous day of ',D,' is : ',PreviousDayOfWeek(D));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.105 RecodeDate

**Synopsis:** Replace date part of a `TDateTime` value with another date.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeDate(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeDate` replaces the date part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`. All other parts (the time part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` values is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(643\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(641\)](#), [RecodeDay \(639\)](#), [RecodeHour \(639\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(641\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(642\)](#), [RecodeDate \(637\)](#), [RecodeTime \(643\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(638\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex94.pp`

---

**Program** `Example94;`

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDate function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDate(Now,2001,1,1));`

`WriteLn('This moment on the first of the millenium : ',S);`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.106 RecodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Replace selected parts of a `TDateTime` value with other values

**Declaration:** `function RecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word;  
const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `RecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the predefined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs` ([586](#)), then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond`, `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range (`RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs` excepted) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(643\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(641\)](#), [RecodeDay \(639\)](#), [RecodeHour \(639\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(641\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(642\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(640\)](#), [RecodeDate \(637\)](#), [RecodeTime \(643\)](#), [TryRecodeDateTime \(664\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex96.pp`

---

**Program** `Example96;`

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

---

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

Var
  S : AnsiString;
  D : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Now;
  D:=RecodeDateTime(D,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0);
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,D);
  WriteLn('This moment in february 2000 : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.107 RecodeDay

Synopsis: Replace day part of a TDateTime value with another day.

Declaration: `function RecodeDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeDay replaces the Day part of the timestamp AValue with ADay. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the ADay value is not within a valid range (1 till the number of days in the month) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (643), RecodeMonth (641), RecodeHour (639), RecodeMinute (641), RecodeSecond (642), RecodeMilliSecond (640), RecodeDate (637), RecodeTime (643), RecodeDateTime (638)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex89.pp

---

**Program** Example89;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

```

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

```

```

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDay(Now,1));
  WriteLn('This moment on the first of the month : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.108 RecodeHour

Synopsis: Replace hours part of a TDateTime value with another hour.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeHour(const AValue: TDateTime; const AHour: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeHour` replaces the Hour part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AHour`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AHour` value is not within a valid range (0..23) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (643), `RecodeMonth` (641), `RecodeDay` (639), `RecodeMinute` (641), `RecodeSecond` (642), `RecodeMilliSecond` (640), `RecodeDate` (637), `RecodeTime` (643), `RecodeDateTime` (638)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex90.pp

---

**Program** Example90;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, RecodeHour(**Now**, 0));

**WriteIn**('Today, in the first hour : ', S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.109 RecodeMilliSecond

**Synopsis:** Replace milliseconds part of a `TDateTime` value with another millisecond.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMilliSecond` replaces the millisecond part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMilliSecond`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMilliSecond` value is not within a valid range (0..999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (643), `RecodeMonth` (641), `RecodeDay` (639), `RecodeHour` (639), `RecodeMinute` (641), `RecodeSecond` (642), `RecodeDate` (637), `RecodeTime` (643), `RecodeDateTime` (638)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex93.pp

---

**Program** Example93;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMilliSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

---

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeMilliSecond(Now,0));
  WriteLn('This moment, milliseconds stripped : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.110 RecodeMinute

**Synopsis:** Replace minutes part of a `TDateTime` value with another minute.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMinute(const AValue: TDateTime; const AMinute: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMinute` replaces the Minute part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMinute`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMinute` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** [RecodeYear \(643\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(641\)](#), [RecodeDay \(639\)](#), [RecodeHour \(639\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(642\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(640\)](#), [RecodeDate \(637\)](#), [RecodeTime \(643\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(638\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** Example91 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

```

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

```

```

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeMinute(Now,0));
  WriteLn('This moment in the first minute of the hour: ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.111 RecodeMonth

**Synopsis:** Replace month part of a `TDateTime` value with another month.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMonth` replaces the Month part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMonth`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMonth` value is not within a valid range (1..12) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (643), `RecodeDay` (639), `RecodeHour` (639), `RecodeMinute` (641), `RecodeSecond` (642), `RecodeMilliSecond` (640), `RecodeDate` (637), `RecodeTime` (643), `RecodeDateTime` (638)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex88.pp`

---

**Program** `Example88`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeMonth(Now,5));`

`WriteLn('This moment in May : ',S);`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.112 RecodeSecond

**Synopsis:** Replace seconds part of a `TDateTime` value with another second.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeSecond(const AValue: TDateTime; const ASecond: Word): TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeSecond` replaces the Second part of the timestamp `AValue` with `ASecond`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `ASecond` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (643), `RecodeMonth` (641), `RecodeDay` (639), `RecodeHour` (639), `RecodeMinute` (641), `RecodeMilliSecond` (640), `RecodeDate` (637), `RecodeTime` (643), `RecodeDateTime` (638)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex92.pp`

---

**Program** `Example92`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeSecond function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

**Var**

```

S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeSecond(Now,0));
  WriteLn('This moment, seconds stripped : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.113 RecodeTime

Synopsis: Replace time part of a TDateTime value with another time.

Declaration: `function RecodeTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeTime` replaces the time part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. All other parts (the date part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If one of the values `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `RecodeYear` (643), `RecodeMonth` (641), `RecodeDay` (639), `RecodeHour` (639), `RecodeMinute` (641), `RecodeSecond` (642), `RecodeMilliSecond` (640), `RecodeDate` (637), `RecodeDateTime` (638)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex95.pp

---

**Program** Example95;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeTime(Now,8,0,0,0));

WriteLn('Today, 8 AM : ',S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.114 RecodeYear

Synopsis: Replace year part of a TDateTime value with another year.

Declaration: `function RecodeYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeYear` replaces the year part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AYear`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AYear` value is not within a valid range (1..9999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeMonth \(641\)](#), [RecodeDay \(639\)](#), [RecodeHour \(639\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(641\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(642\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(640\)](#), [RecodeDate \(637\)](#), [RecodeTime \(643\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(638\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex87.pp

---

**Program** Example87;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, RecodeYear(**Now**, 1999));

**WriteIn**('This moment in 1999 : ', S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.115 SameDate

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TDateTime` values have the same date part.

**Declaration:** `function SameDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SameDate` compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns `True` if they are equal, `False` if they are not.

The function simply checks whether `CompareDate` ([587](#)) returns zero.

See also: [CompareDateTime \(588\)](#), [CompareDate \(587\)](#), [CompareTime \(589\)](#), [SameDateTime \(645\)](#), [SameTime \(646\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex102.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1, D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt, D1), ' is the same date as ');

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt, D2), ' : ', SameDate(D1, D2));

**end;**

---

```

Var
  D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;
  Test(D,D);
  Test(N,N);
  Test(N+1,N);
  Test(N-1,N);
  Test(N+OneSecond,N);
  Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.116 SameDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date and time parts.

**Declaration:** function SameDateTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SameDateTime compares the date/time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDateTime (588) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime (588), CompareDate (587), CompareTime (589), SameDate (644), SameTime (646)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1),' is the same datetime as ');

**WriteIn**(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameDateTime(D1,D2));

**end;**

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D:=Today;

    N:=**Now**;

    Test(D,D);

    Test(N,N);

    Test(N+1,N);

---

```

    Test(N-1,N);
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.117 SameTime

Synopsis: Check whether two `TDateTime` values have the same time part.

Declaration: `function SameTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps `A` and `B` and returns `True` if they are equal, `False` if they are not.

The function simply checks whether `CompareTime` (589) returns zero.

See also: `CompareDateTime` (588), `CompareDate` (587), `CompareTime` (589), `SameDateTime` (645), `SameDate` (644)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex103.pp`

---

**Program** `Example102;`

```
{ This program demonstrates the SameTime function }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

```
    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';
```

**Procedure** `Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);`

**begin**

```
    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same time as ');
```

```
    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameTime(D1,D2));
```

**end;**

**Var**

```
    D,N : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
    D:=Today;
```

```
    N:=Now;
```

```
    Test(D,D);
```

```
    Test(N,N);
```

```
    Test(N+1,N);
```

```
    Test(N-1,N);
```

```
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
```

```
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
```

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.118 ScanDateTime

Synopsis: Scans a string for a `TDateTime` pattern and returns the date/time

**Declaration:** `function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: string; const s: string;  
const fmt: TFormatSettings; startpos: Integer)  
: TDateTime; Overload  
function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: string; const s: string;  
startpos: Integer) : TDateTime; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ScanDateTime` scans string `S` for the date/time pattern `Pattern`, starting at position `StartPos` (default 1). Optionally, the format settings `fmt` can be specified.

In effect, this function does the opposite of what `FormatDateTime` (1704) does. The `Pattern` variable must contain a valid date/time pattern: note that not all possible `formatdatetime` patterns can be recognized, e.g., `hn` cannot be detected properly.

- There is a special placeholder: a '?' will match any character in the input string.
- Note that the / and : character will be replaced by the actual date and time separator.
- Similarly, the 'am/pm' and 'a/p' will be replaced with the actual AM/PM indicators.
- A TAB character (ASCII Code 9) will match any whitespace block

**Errors:** In case of an error, a `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `FormatDateTime` (1704)

#### 44.4.119 SecondOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the second part from a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOf` returns the second of the minute part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see `YearOf` (678)

See also: `YearOf` (678), `WeekOf` (666), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `HourOf` (608), `MinuteOf` (630), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

#### 44.4.120 SecondOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the day

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfDay` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (608) function.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (649), `SecondOfMonth` (648), `SecondOfWeek` (649), `SecondOfTheHour` (648), `SecondOfTheMinute` (648), `HourOfDay` (608), `MinuteOfDay` (630), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (626)

#### 44.4.121 SecondOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondOfTheHour` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (630) function.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `SecondOfTheMonth` (648), `SecondOfTheWeek` (649), `SecondOfTheDay` (647), `SecondOfTheMinute` (648), `MinuteOfTheHour` (630), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (626)

#### 44.4.122 SecondOfTheMinute

Synopsis: Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the minute

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the minute (HH:MM:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.999 return 0.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `SecondOfTheMonth` (648), `SecondOfTheWeek` (649), `SecondOfTheDay` (647), `SecondOfTheHour` (648), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (626)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex45.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondOfTheMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Second of the Minute : ',SecondOfTheMinute(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Minute : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheMinute(N));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.123 SecondOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Calculate number of seconds elapsed since the start of the month.

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (666) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (666), `DayOfTheMonth` (593), `HourOfTheMonth` (609), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (631), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (627)

#### 44.4.124 `SecondOfTheWeek`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (593) function.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `SecondOfTheMonth` (648), `SecondOfTheDay` (647), `SecondOfTheHour` (648), `SecondOfTheMinute` (648), `DayOfTheWeek` (593), `HourOfTheWeek` (609), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (631), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (627)

#### 44.4.125 `SecondOfTheYear`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheYear` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.999 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (667) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (667), `DayOfTheYear` (594), `HourOfTheYear` (610), `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628)

#### 44.4.126 `SecondsBetween`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole seconds between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function SecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondsBetween` returns the number of whole seconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a second (milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594), `HoursBetween` (610), `MinutesBetween` (632), `MillisecondsBetween` (628)



```

Procedure Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

begin
  Write('Number of seconds between ');
  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', SecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.128 StartOfDay

**Synopsis:** Return the start of a day as a TDateTime value, given a day indication

**Declaration:** `function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload`  
`function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word) : TDateTime; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfDay returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of the day given by AYear, AMonth, ADay.

The day may also be indicated with a AYear, ADayOfYear pair.

**See also:** StartOfDay (654), StartOfTheWeek (655), StartOfAWeek (652), StartOfAMonth (652), StartOfTheMonth (654), EndOfTheWeek (607), EndOfAWeek (605), EndOfTheYear (608), EndOfAYear (606), EndOfTheMonth (607), EndOfAMonth (604), EndOfTheDay (606), EndOfDay (604)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

---

```

Var
  Y,M,D : Word;

Begin
  Y:=YearOf(Today);
  M:=MonthOf(Today);
  D:=DayOf(Today);
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfADay(Y,M,D)));
  DecodeDateDay(Today,Y,D);
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfADay(Y,D)));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.129 StartOfAMonth

Synopsis: Return first date of month, given a year/month pair.

Declaration: `function StartOfAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: `StartOfTheMonth` (654), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex30.pp

---

**Program** Example30;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'First day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);

M:=MonthOf(Today);

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt, StartOfAMonth(Y,M)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.130 StartOfAWeek

Synopsis: Return a day of the week, given a year, week and day in the week.

Declaration: `function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word; const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime`  
`function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StartOfAWeek` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the indicated day of the week indicated by the `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values.

The default value for `ADayOfWeek` is 1.

See also: `StartOfTheWeek` (655), `EndOfTheWeek` (607), `EndOfAWeek` (605), `StartOfAMonth` (652), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example34`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'First day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

`Fmt2 = 'Second day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`Y,W : Word;`

**Begin**

`Y:=YearOf(Today);`

`W:=WeekOf(Today);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAWeek(Y,W)));`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt2, StartOfAWeek(Y,W,2)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.131 StartOfAYear

**Synopsis:** Return the first day of a given year.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `StartOfAYear` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the year `AYear` (January 1).

See also: `StartOfTheYear` (655), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAYear(YearOf(Today))));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.132 StartOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the start of the day as a TDateTime value, given a moment in the day.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StartOfDay` extracts the date part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of this day.

See also: `StartOfDay` (651), `StartOfTheWeek` (655), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfAMonth` (652), `StartOfTheMonth` (654), `EndOfTheWeek` (607), `EndOfAWeek` (605), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `EndOftheDay` (606), `EndOfADay` (604)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex36.pp`

**Program** `Example36;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Begin**

`WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfDay (Today)));`

**End.**

### 44.4.133 StartOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate the first day of the month, given a date in that month.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StartOfTheMonth` extracts the year and month parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the `StartOfAMonth` (652) function.

See also: `StartOfAMonth` (652), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604), `StartOfAWeek` (652), `StartOfTheWeek` (655)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex28.pp`

**Program** `Example28;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'First day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheMonth (Today)));`

**End.**

**44.4.134 StartOfTheWeek**

Synopsis: Return the first day of the week, given a date.

Declaration: `function StartOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that week as the `StartOfAWeek` (652) function.

See also: `StartOfAWeek` (652), `EndOfTheWeek` (607), `EndOfAWeek` (605), `StartOfAMonth` (652), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606), `EndOfTheMonth` (607), `EndOfAMonth` (604)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `Example32;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'First day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheWeek (Today)));`

**End.**

---

**44.4.135 StartOfTheYear**

Synopsis: Return the first day of the year, given a date in this year.

Declaration: `function StartOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfTheYear` extracts the year part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year (January 1), as the `StartOfAYear` (653) function.

See also: `StartOfAYear` (653), `EndOfTheYear` (608), `EndOfAYear` (606)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `Example24;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheYear (Today)));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.136 TimeInRange

Synopsis: Checks whether a time value is in a given range

Declaration: `function TimeInRange(ATime: TTime; AStartTime: TTime; AEndTime: TTime;  
AInclusive: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeInRange` checks whether the value `ATime` lies between `AStartTime` and `AEndTime`, and returns `True` if it is. When `AINclusive` is `True` (the default), then the limits are included. When `AINclusive` is `False`, the limits are excluded. Only the time part of the 3 parameters is considered.

Errors: The `AStartTime` value must be before `AEndTime`, but no check is performed.

See also: `DateInRange` (590), `DateTimeInRange` (591)

### 44.4.137 TimeOf

Synopsis: Extract the time part from a `TDateTime` indication.

Declaration: `function TimeOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeOf` extracts the time part from `AValue` and returns the result.

Since the `TDateTime` is actually a double with the time part encoded in the fractional part, this operation corresponds to a call to `Frac`.

See also: `DateOf` (590), `YearOf` (678), `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `HourOf` (608), `MinuteOf` (630), `SecondOf` (647), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2;`

`{ This program demonstrates the TimeOf function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Time is : ', TimeToStr(TimeOf(Now)));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.138 Today

Synopsis: Return the current date

Declaration: `function Today : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Today` is an alias for the `Date` (1656) function in the `sysutils` (1599) unit.

For an example, see `Yesterday` (681)

See also: `Date` (1656), `Yesterday` (681), `Tomorrow` (657)

### 44.4.139 Tomorrow

Synopsis: Return the next day

Declaration: `function Tomorrow : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `TTomorrow` returns tomorrow's date. Tomorrow is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today (656) + 1`.

See also: `Today (656)`, `Yesterday (681)`

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

*{ This program demonstrates the Tomorrow function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime( '"Today is" dd mmm yyyy ', Today ));`

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime( '"Tomorrow will be" dd mmm yyyy ', Tomorrow ));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.140 TryEncodeDateDay

Synopsis: Encode a year and day of year to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word;  
out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeDateDay` encodes the values `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` to a date value and returns this value in `AValue`.

If the encoding was successful, `True` is returned. `False` is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: `EncodeDateDay (601)`, `EncodeDateTime (602)`, `EncodeDateMonthWeek (602)`, `EncodeDateWeek (603)`, `TryEncodeDateTime (658)`, `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (658)`, `TryEncodeDateWeek (659)`

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex84.pp`

---

**Program** `Example84;`

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y, DoY : Word;`

`TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateDay(Now, Y, DoY);`

`If TryEncodeDateDay(Y, DoY, TS) then`

---

```

    WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))
  else
    WriteLn('Wrong year/day of year indication');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.141 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Encode a year, month, week of month and day of week to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const AWeekOfMonth: Word; const ADayOfWeek: Word; out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeDateTime encodes the values AYearAMonth, WeekOfMonth,ADayOfWeek, to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned, False if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: DecodeDateMonthWeek (599), EncodeDateTime (602), EncodeDateWeek (603), EncodeDateDay (601), EncodeDateMonthWeek (602), TryEncodeDateTime (658), TryEncodeDateWeek (659), TryEncodeDateDay (657), NthDayOfWeek (636)

Listing: ./datutex/ex86.pp

---

Program Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateMonthWeek function }*

Uses SysUtils , DateUtils ;

Var

Y,M,Wom,Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

Begin

DecodeDateMonthWeek(Now,Y,M,WoM,DoW);  
If TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(Y,M,WoM,Dow,TS) then  
  WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))  
else  
  WriteLn('Invalid year/month/week/dow indication');

End.

---

#### 44.4.142 TryEncodeDateTime

Synopsis: Encode a Year, Month, Day, Hour, minute, seconds, milliseconds tuple to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word; out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default



---

```

Var
  Y,W,Dow : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

Begin
  DecodeDateWeek(Now,Y,W,Dow);
  If TryEncodeDateWeek(Y,W,TS,Dow) then
    WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))
  else
    WriteLn('Invalid date/week indication');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.144 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

**Synopsis:** Encode a year, month, week, day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;`  
   `const AMonth: Word;`  
   `const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;`  
   `const ADayOfWeek: Word;`  
   `out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth encodes AYear, AMonth, ADayOfWeek and ANthDayOfWeek to a valid date stamp and returns the result in AValue.

ANthDayOfWeek is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was successful, `False` if any of the values is not in range.

See also: NthDayOfWeek ([636](#)), EncodeDateMonthWeek ([602](#)), #rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek ([1661](#)), DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth ([601](#)), EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth ([603](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex106.pp

---

**Program** Example105;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Var
  Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;
  D : TDateTime;
Begin
  DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Date,Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  If TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Y,M,NDoW,DoW,D) then
    begin
      Write(DateToStr(D),' is the ',NDoW,'-th ');
      WriteLn(formatDateTime('dddd',D),' of the month. ');
    end
  else
    WriteLn('Invalid year/month/NthDayOfWeek combination');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.145 TryEncodeTimeInterval

Synopsis: Try to encode an interval as a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeTimeInterval (Hour: Word; Min: Word; Sec: Word;  
MSec: Word; out Time: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeTimeInterval` encodes a time interval expressed in Hour, Min, Sec, MSec as a `TDateTime` value and returns the value in Time. It returns `True` if Min, Sec, MSec contain valid time values (i.e. less than 60, 60 resp. MSec). The number of hours may be larger than 24.

See also: `EncodeTimeInterval` ([603](#))

#### 44.4.146 TryISO8601ToDate

Synopsis: Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a `TDateTime` type

Declaration: `function TryISO8601ToDate (const DateString: string;  
out ADateTime: TDateTime; ReturnUTC: Boolean)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryISO8601ToDate` is a Boolean function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/-time value to a `TDateTime` type.

`DateString` contains the ISO 8601 date/time value converted in the function. `DateString` must contain one of the supported ISO 8601 date/time notations supported in the routine. It is separated into date, time, and time zone values, and is converted by calling both the `TryISOStrToDateTime` and `TryISOTZStrToTZOffset` functions. See `TryISOStrToDateTime` ([662](#)) for more information about supported ISO 8601 notations.

`ReturnUTC` indicates if the native date/time value needs to be adjusted to the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) time zone. The default value for the argument is `True`, and causes `GetLocalTimeOffset` to be called to get and apply the time zone offset for the local computer.

`ADateTime` contains the native `TDateTime` value for the converted timestamp adjusted to the UTC time zone when `ReturnUTC` contains `True`.

Use `DateToISO8601` to convert a native date/time value back to its representation in ISO 8601 notation.

See also: `DateToISO8601` ([592](#))

#### 44.4.147 TryISOStrToDate

Synopsis: Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date value to a `TDateTime` type

Declaration: `function TryISOStrToDate (const aString: string; out outDate: TDateTime)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryISOStrToDate` is a Boolean function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date value in `aString` to a `TDateTime` type. The return value is `True` if the string is successfully converted into a native date value.

`aString` contains the date value converted in the function, and can use one of the following ISO 8601 notations :

- YYYYMMDD
- YYYY-MM-DD

`outDate` is an output parameter where the converted `TDateTime` value is stored in the function. The return value is `False` (and `outDate` is set to an empty date value) if `aString` cannot be converted in the routine. The time portion of the `TDateTime` value is not used or updated in the function.

Use `TryISOStrToTime` to convert a time value to a native `TDateTime` type.

Use `TryISOStrToDateTime` to convert a string which contains both date and time values to a `TDateTime` type.

See also: `TryISOStrToTime` (662), `TryISOStrToDateTime` (662)

#### 44.4.148 TryISOStrToDateTime

Synopsis: Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a `TDateTime` type

Declaration: `function TryISOStrToDateTime(const aString: string;  
out outDateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryISOStrToDateTime` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a `TDateTime` type. `aString` contains the date/time value examined in the routine, and can use one of the supported ISO 8601 notations. Internally, `TryISOStrToDateTime` separates the value in `aString` into date and time parts and calls both `TryISOStrToDate` and `TryISOStrToTime`.

`outDateTime` is a `TDateTime` output parameter where the date/time value is stored in the function.

The return value is `True` if `aString` is successfully parsed and converted to a `TDateTime` type. The return value is `False` if `aString` contains a value that cannot be parsed in the function. When the return value is `False`, `outDateTime` is set to `0` (representing an empty date/time value).

Use `TryISOStrToDate` or `TryISOStrToTime` to convert a string using only a date or a time value (respectively).

Use `TryISO8601ToDate` to convert a string value which uses more intricate forms of the ISO 8601 time notation.

See also: `TryISOStrToDate` (661), `TryISOStrToTime` (662), `TryISO8601ToDate` (661)

#### 44.4.149 TryISOStrToTime

Synopsis: Converts an ISO 8601-formatted time value to a `TDateTime` type

Declaration: `function TryISOStrToTime(const aString: string; out outTime: TDateTime)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryISOStrToTime` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert the specified ISO 8601 time value to a `TDateTime` type. `aString` contains the ISO 8601 time value examined in the function, and can use one of the following notations:

- HHNN
- HHNNSS

- HHNNSS.ZZZ
- HH:NN
- HH:NN:SS
- HH:NN:SS.ZZZ

aString may contain an optional time zone designation at the end of the string value, like 'Z' for Zulu time zone or a time zone offset expressed using either positive or negative hours and minutes. For example:

- 16:00:00Z
- 12:00:00-04:00

The return value is `True` if the time value in aString is successfully converted in the function.

outTime is a `TDateTime` type used to store the time value converted in the function. When the return value is `False`, outTime contains `0` for an empty time value.

Use `TryISOStrToDate` to convert an ISO 8601 date value to a `TDateTime` type.

Use `TryISOStrToDateTime` to convert a string which contains both date and time values to a `TDateTime` type.

See also: `TryISOStrToDate` (661), `TryISOStrToDateTime` (662)

#### 44.4.150 TryISOTZStrToTZOffset

Synopsis: Attempts to convert an ISO 8601 time zone designation to an offset in minutes

Declaration: `function TryISOTZStrToTZOffset(const TZ: string; out TZOffset: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryISOTZStrToTZOffset` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert the ISO 8601 time zone designation to a time zone offset expressed as a positive or negative number of minutes. TZ contains the time zone designation examined in the function. It should not contain any other portion of a date/time value using ISO 8601 notation - just the time zone designation.

`TryISOTZStrToTZOffset` recognizes the following values in the TZ argument:

**Z** Represents time zone Zulu (short for "Zulu time") as used by the military and in navigation. Refers to UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time.

**±HHNN or ±HH:NN** time zone designation expressed as a positive or negative number of hours and minutes for a given time value.

`TZOffset` is an `Integer` updated to contains the number of minutes needed to adjust a time value for a given time zone back to UTC (Zulu time). The hour and minute component values in TZ are converted to minutes and complemented (multiplied by -1) to derive the offset value. The derived value in `TZOffset` is 0 when TZ contains Zulu time, an empty string (""), or cannot be converted successfully.

The return value is `True` if the time zone designation in TZ is successfully converted to a time zone offset.

Use `ISOTZStrToTZOffset` to convert the time zone designation and raise an exception for an invalid time zone designation.

See also: `ISOTZStrToTZOffset` (584)

#### 44.4.151 TryJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                out ADateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Try to convert a Julian date to a regular `TDateTime` date/time representation.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(591\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(624\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(592\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(664\)](#)

#### 44.4.152 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a modified Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                         out ADateTime: TDateTime)
                                         : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(591\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(624\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(664\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(592\)](#), [ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(633\)](#)

#### 44.4.153 TryRecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a `TDateTime` value with other values

Declaration: 

```
function TryRecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;
                          const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word;
                          const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;
                          const ASecond: Word;
                          const AMilliSecond: Word;
                          out AResult: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `TryRecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the predefined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs (586)`, then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

The resulting date/time is returned in `AValue`.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was successful. It returns `False` if one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range.

See also: [RecodeYear \(643\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(641\)](#), [RecodeDay \(639\)](#), [RecodeHour \(639\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(641\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(642\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(640\)](#), [RecodeDate \(637\)](#), [RecodeTime \(643\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(638\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex97.pp

**Program** Example97;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryRecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

If TryRecodeDateTime(Now, 2000, 2, RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs, 0, 0, 0, 0, D) then

begin

S := FormatDateTime(Fmt, D);

Writeln('This moment in februari 2000 : ', S);

end

else

Writeln('This moment did/does not exist in februari 2000');

**End.**

#### 44.4.154 UniversalTimeToLocal

**Synopsis:** Convert UTC time to local time

**Declaration:** function UniversalTimeToLocal(UT: TDateTime) : TDateTime  
function UniversalTimeToLocal(UT: TDateTime; TZOffset: Integer)  
: TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** UniversalTimeToLocal converts a universal time indication to a local time: it applies the TZOffset time zone offset to the UT Universal time (UTC). If no TZOffset is specified, the local time offset as returned by GetLocalTimeOffset (584) is used.

Note that for times in the past or in the future, or for time zones with DST, omitting the TZOffset may lead to wrong results depending on GetLocalTimeOffset being able to compute the correct offset for the LT on the target platform. Currently only Windows Vista and newer return correct offsets for a given date. Older Windows systems or Linux/Unix return always the offset for the current date.

See also: GetLocalTimeOffset (584), LocalTimeToUniversal (625)

#### 44.4.155 UnixTimeStampToMac

**Synopsis:** Convert Unix Timestamp to a Mac Timestamp

**Declaration:** function UnixTimeStampToMac(const AValue: Int64) : Int64

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** UnixTimeStampToMac converts the UNIX epoch time in AValue to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [DateTimeToMac \(592\)](#), [MacToDateTime \(625\)](#), [MacTimeStampToUnix \(625\)](#)

#### 44.4.156 UnixToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert Unix epoch time to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function UnixToDateTime(const AValue: Int64; aReturnUTC: Boolean)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnixToDateTime` converts epoch time (seconds elapsed since 1/1/1970) to a `TDateTime` value.

See also: [DateTimeToUnix \(592\)](#)

#### 44.4.157 WeekOf

**Synopsis:** Extract week (of the year) from a given date.

**Declaration:** `function WeekOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOf` returns the week-of-the-year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 53.

For an example, see [YearOf \(678\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(678\)](#), [DayOf \(593\)](#), [MonthOf \(634\)](#), [HourOf \(608\)](#), [MinuteOf \(630\)](#), [SecondOf \(647\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(625\)](#)

#### 44.4.158 WeekOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the month (and optionally month and year) from a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload  
function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
out AMonth: Word) : Word; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheMonth` extracts the week of the month from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year and month as well (in `AYear`, `AMonth` respectively).

**Remark** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year and month may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: [WeekOfTheYear \(667\)](#), [DayOfTheMonth \(593\)](#), [HourOfTheMonth \(609\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(631\)](#), [SecondOfTheMonth \(648\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(627\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41 ;`

`{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils , DateUtils ;`

---

```

Var
  N : TDateTime;

Begin
  N:=Now;
  Writeln('Week of the Month      : ',WeekOfTheMonth(N));
  Writeln('Day of the Month       : ',DayOfTheMonth(N));
  Writeln('Hour of the Month      : ',HourOfTheMonth(N));
  Writeln('Minute of the Month     : ',MinuteOfTheMonth(N));
  Writeln('Second of the Month      : ',SecondOfTheMonth(N));
  Writeln('MilliSecond of the Month : ',
        MilliSecondOfTheMonth(N));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.159 WeekOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the year (and optionally year) of a TDateTime indication.

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload`  
`function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word) : Word`  
`; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheYear` extracts the week of the year from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year as well. It returns the same value as `WeekOf` (666).

**Remark** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: `WeekOf` (666), `MonthOfTheYear` (634), `DayOfTheYear` (594), `HourOfTheYear` (610), `MinuteOfTheYear` (631), `SecondOfTheYear` (649), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (628)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**  
 N : TDateTime;

**Begin**  
 N:=Now;  
 Writeln('Month of the year : ',MonthOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('Week of the year : ',WeekOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('Day of the year : ',DayOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('Hour of the year : ',HourOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('Minute of the year : ',MinuteOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('Second of the year : ',SecondOfTheYear(N));  
 Writeln('MilliSecond of the year : ',  
 MilliSecondOfTheYear(N));  
**End.**

---

**44.4.160 WeeksBetween**

Synopsis: Calculate the number of whole weeks between two TDateTime values

Declaration: `function WeeksBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksBetween` returns the number of whole weeks between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a Week is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (679), `MonthsBetween` (634), `DaysBetween` (594), `HoursBetween` (610), `MinutesBetween` (632), `SecondsBetween` (649), `MillisecondsBetween` (628)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57;`

`{ This program demonstrates the WeeksBetween function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);`

**begin**

`Write('Number of weeks between ');`

`Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));`

`WriteLn(' : ', WeeksBetween(ANow, AThen));`

**end;**

**Var**

`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1 := Today;`

`D2 := Today - 7;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

`D2 := Today - 8;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

`D2 := Today - 14;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

`D2 := Today - 35;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

`D2 := Today - 36;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

`D2 := Today - 17;`

`Test(D1, D2);`

**End.**

---

**44.4.161 WeeksInAYear**

Synopsis: Return the number of weeks in a given year

Declaration: `function WeeksInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WeeksInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a Thursday.

See also: `WeeksInYear` (669), `DaysInYear` (597), `DaysInAYear` (596), `DaysInMonth` (596), `DaysInAMonth` (595)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInAYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Var**

`Y : Word`;

**Begin**

**For** `Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

**WriteLn**(`Y`, ' has ', `WeeksInAYear(Y)`, ' weeks. ' );

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.162 WeeksInYear

**Synopsis:** return the number of weeks in the year, given a date

**Declaration:** `function WeeksInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeeksInYear` returns the number of weeks in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a Thursday.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` (668), `DaysInYear` (597), `DaysInAYear` (596), `DaysInMonth` (596), `DaysInAMonth` (595)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Var**

`Y : Word`;

**Begin**

**For** `Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

**WriteLn**(`Y`, ' has ', `WeeksInYear(EncodeDate(Y,2,1))`, ' weeks. ' );

**End.**

---

**44.4.163 WeekSpan**

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of weeks between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function WeekSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekSpan` returns the number of weeks between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a week.

**See also:** `YearSpan` (680), `MonthSpan` (635), `DaySpan` (597), `HourSpan` (611), `MinuteSpan` (633), `SecondSpan` (650), `MilliSecondSpan` (629), `WeeksBetween` (668)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of weeks between ');

  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn(' : ', WeekSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Today;

  D2 := Today - 7;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 8;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 14;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 35;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 36;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 17;

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

**44.4.164 WithinPastDays**

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of days apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastDays(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ADays: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastDays` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ADays` days apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `DaysBetween` (594) function to calculate the difference in days, this means that fractional days do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half days apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (677), `WithinPastMonths` (674), `WithinPastWeeks` (676), `WithinPastHours` (671), `WithinPastMinutes` (673), `WithinPastSeconds` (675), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (672)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex50.pp`

**Program** `Example50`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastDays function }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ADays : Integer);`

**begin**

`Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));`

`Write(' are within ', ADays, ' days: ');`

`WriteLn(WithinPastDays(ANow, AThen, ADays));`

**end;**

**Var**

`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1:=Now;`

`D2:=Today-23/24;`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=Today-1;`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=Today-25/24;`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=Today-26/24;`

`Test(D1,D2,5);`

`D2:=Today-5.4;`

`Test(D1,D2,5);`

`D2:=Today-2.5;`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`Test(D1,D2,2);`

`Test(D1,D2,3);`

**End.**

#### 44.4.165 WithinPastHours

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TDateTimes` are only a number of hours apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastHours(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AHours: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `WithinPastHours` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AHours` hours apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `HoursBetween` (610) function to calculate the difference in Hours, this means that fractional hours do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half hours apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (677), `WithinPastMonths` (674), `WithinPastWeeks` (676), `WithinPastDays` (670), `WithinPastMinutes` (673), `WithinPastSeconds` (675), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (672)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** `Example51` ;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastHours function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Procedure** `Test`(`ANow`,`AThen` : `TDateTime`; `AHours` : `Integer`);

**begin**

`Write`(`DateTimeToStr`(`AThen`), ' and ', `DateTimeToStr`(`ANow`));

`Write`(' are within ',`AHours`, ' hours: ');

`WriteLn`(`WithinPastHours`(`ANow`,`AThen`,`AHours`));

**end**;

**Var**

`D1`,`D2` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`D1:=Now`;

`D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,1);

`D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,1);

`D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,1);

`D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,5);

`D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,5);

`D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour)`;

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,1);

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,2);

`Test`(`D1`,`D2`,3);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.166 WithinPastMilliseconds

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TDateTimes` are only a number of milliseconds apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMilliseconds`(`const ANow`: `TDateTime`;  
   `const AThen`: `TDateTime`;  
   `const AMilliseconds`: `Int64`) : `Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMilliseconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMilliseconds` milliseconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `MillisecondsBetween` (628) function to calculate the difference in milliseconds, this means that fractional milliseconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half milliseconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (677), `WithinPastMonths` (674), `WithinPastWeeks` (676), `WithinPastDays` (670), `WithinPastHours` (671), `WithinPastMinutes` (673), `WithinPastSeconds` (675)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMilliseconds function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test`(`ANow, AThen` : `TDateTime`; `AMilliseconds` : `Integer`);

**begin**

`Write`(`TimeToStr`(`AThen`), ' and ', `TimeToStr`(`ANow`));  
`Write`(' are within ', `AMilliseconds`, ' milliseconds: ');  
`WriteLn`(`WithinPastMilliseconds`(`ANow`, `AThen`, `AMilliseconds`));

**end**;

**Var**

`D1, D2` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`D1:=Now`;  
`D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond)`;  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 1);  
`D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond)`;  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 1);  
`D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond)`;  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 1);  
`D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond)`;  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 1);  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 2);  
`Test`(`D1`, `D2`, 3);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.167 WithinPastMinutes

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TDateTimes` are only a number of minutes apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMinutes`(`const ANow`: `TDateTime`;  
`const AThen`: `TDateTime`; `const AMinutes`: `Int64`)  
: `Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `WithinPastMinutes` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMinutes` minutes apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `MinutesBetween` (632) function to calculate the difference in Minutes, this means that fractional minutes do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half minutes apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: [WithinPastYears \(677\)](#), [WithinPastMonths \(674\)](#), [WithinPastWeeks \(676\)](#), [WithinPastDays \(670\)](#), [WithinPastHours \(671\)](#), [WithinPastSeconds \(675\)](#), [WithinPastMilliseconds \(672\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex52.pp

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMinutes function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMinutes : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AMinutes, ' Minutes: ');

**WriteLn**(WithinPastMinutes(ANow, AThen, AMinutes));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := **Now**;

  D2 := D1 - (59 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (61 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (122 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (306 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (5.4 \* OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (2.5 \* OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  Test(D1, D2, 2);

  Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.168 WithinPastMonths

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of months apart

**Declaration:** function WithinPastMonths(const ANow: TDateTime;  
  const AThen: TDateTime; const AMonths: Integer)  
  : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WithinPastMonths compares the timestamps ANow and AThen and returns True if the difference between them is at most AMonths months apart, or False if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the MonthsBetween (634) function to calculate the difference in Months, this means that fractional months do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half months apart, the result will also be True

See also: [WithinPastYears \(677\)](#), [WithinPastWeeks \(676\)](#), [WithinPastDays \(670\)](#), [WithinPastHours \(671\)](#), [WithinPastMinutes \(673\)](#), [WithinPastSeconds \(675\)](#), [WithinPastMilliseconds \(672\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMonths function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMonths : Integer);

**begin**  
    **Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));  
    **Write**(' are within ', AMonths, ' months: ');  
    **WriteLn**(**WithinPastMonths**(ANow, AThen, AMonths));  
**end**;

**Var**  
    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**  
    D1 := Today;  
    D2 := Today - 364;  
    Test(D1, D2, 12);  
    D2 := Today - 365;  
    Test(D1, D2, 12);  
    D2 := Today - 366;  
    Test(D1, D2, 12);  
    D2 := Today - 390;  
    Test(D1, D2, 12);  
    D2 := Today - 368;  
    Test(D1, D2, 11);  
    D2 := Today - 1000;  
    Test(D1, D2, 31);  
    Test(D1, D2, 32);  
    Test(D1, D2, 33);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.169 WithinPastSeconds

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of seconds apart

**Declaration:** function WithinPastSeconds(const ANow: TDateTime;  
  const AThen: TDateTime; const ASeconds: Int64)  
  : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WithinPastSeconds compares the timestamps ANow and AThen and returns True if the difference between them is at most ASeconds seconds apart, or False if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the SecondsBetween (649) function to calculate the difference in seconds, this means that fractional seconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half seconds apart, the result will also be True

See also: [WithinPastYears \(677\)](#), [WithinPastMonths \(674\)](#), [WithinPastWeeks \(676\)](#), [WithinPastDays \(670\)](#), [WithinPastHours \(671\)](#), [WithinPastMinutes \(673\)](#), [WithinPastMilliseconds \(672\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastSeconds function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ASeconds : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', ASeconds, ' seconds: ');

**WriteLn**(**WithinPastSeconds**(ANow, AThen, ASeconds));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := **Now**;

  D2 := D1 - (999 \* **OneMilliSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (1001 \* **OneMilliSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (2001 \* **OneMilliSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (5001 \* **OneMilliSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (5.4 \* **OneSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (2.5 \* **OneSecond**);

**Test**(D1, D2, 1);

**Test**(D1, D2, 2);

**Test**(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.170 WithinPastWeeks

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of weeks apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastWeeks(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
  const AWeeks: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastWeeks` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AWeeks` weeks apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `WeeksBetween` (668) function to calculate the difference in Weeks, this means that fractional Weeks do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half weeks apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: [WithinPastYears \(677\)](#), [WithinPastMonths \(674\)](#), [WithinPastDays \(670\)](#), [WithinPastHours \(671\)](#), [WithinPastMinutes \(673\)](#), [WithinPastSeconds \(675\)](#), [WithinPastMilliseconds \(672\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex49.pp

**Program** Example49;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastWeeks function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AWeeks : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AWeeks, ' weeks: ');

**WriteLn**(WithinPastWeeks(ANow, AThen, AWeeks));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 7;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 8;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 14;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 35;

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2 := Today - 36;

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2 := Today - 17;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    Test(D1, D2, 2);

    Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

#### 44.4.171 WithinPastYears

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of years apart

**Declaration:** function WithinPastYears(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
  const AYears: Integer) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WithinPastYears compares the timestamps ANow and AThen and returns True if the difference between them is at most AYears years apart, or False if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the YearsBetween (679) function to calculate the difference in years, this means that fractional years do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half years apart, the result will also be True

**See also:** WithinPastMonths (674), WithinPastWeeks (676), WithinPastDays (670), WithinPastHours (671), WithinPastMinutes (673), WithinPastSeconds (675), WithinPastMilliseconds (672)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastYears function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AYears : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AYears, ' years: ');

**WriteLn**(WithinPastYears(ANow, AThen, AYears));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 364;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 365;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 366;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 390;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 368;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 1000;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    Test(D1, D2, 2);

    Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.172 YearOf

Synopsis: Extract the year from a given date.

Declaration: `function YearOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `YearOf` returns the year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 9999.

See also: `MonthOf` (634), `DayOf` (593), `WeekOf` (666), `HourOf` (608), `MinuteOf` (630), `SecondOf` (647), `MilliSecondOf` (625)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex23.pp

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearOf function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

---

```

Var
  D : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Now;
  WriteLn ( 'Year      : ', YearOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Month     : ', MonthOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Day       : ', DayOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Week      : ', WeekOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Hour      : ', HourOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Minute    : ', MinuteOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'Second    : ', SecondOf(D));
  WriteLn ( 'MilliSecond : ', MilliSecondOf(D));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.173 YearsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole years between two TDateTime values

**Declaration:** `function YearsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime; AExact: Boolean) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `YearsBetween` returns the number of whole years between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a year is dropped.

See also: `MonthsBetween` (634), `WeeksBetween` (668), `DaysBetween` (594), `HoursBetween` (610), `MinutesBetween` (632), `SecondsBetween` (649), `MillisecondsBetween` (628), `YearSpan` (680)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

```

begin
  Write('Number of years between ');
  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', YearsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

```

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

```

Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=Today-366;

```

```

Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-390;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-368;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-1000;
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.174 YearSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of years between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function YearSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** YearSpan returns the number of years between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a year. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years).

See also: MonthSpan ([635](#)), WeekSpan ([670](#)), DaySpan ([597](#)), HourSpan ([611](#)), MinuteSpan ([633](#)), SecondSpan ([650](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([629](#)), YearsBetween ([679](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

Write('Number of years between ');
Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', YearSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Today;
D2:=Today-364;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-365;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-366;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-390;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-368;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-1000;

```

---

```
Test(D1,D2);  
End.
```

---

#### 44.4.175 Yesterday

Synopsis: Return the previous day.

Declaration: `function Yesterday : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Yesterday` returns yesterday's date. `Yesterday` is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today` (656) -1.

See also: `Today` (656), `Tomorrow` (657)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ This program demonstrates the Yesterday function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**( '"Today is " dd mmm yyyy ',Today));

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**( '"Yesterday was " dd mmm yyyy ',Yesterday));

**End.**

---

## Chapter 45

# Reference for unit 'Dos'

### 45.1 Used units

Table 45.1: Used units by unit 'Dos'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 45.2 Overview

The DOS unit gives access to some operating system calls related to files, the file system, date and time. Except for the PalmOS target, this unit is available to all supported platforms.

The unit was first written for Dos by Florian Klaempfl. It was ported to Linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt. The Amiga version was ported by Nils Sjöholm.

Under non-DOS systems, some of the functionality is lost, as it is either impossible or meaningless to implement it. Other than that, the functionality is the same for all operating systems.

Because the DOS unit is a Turbo Pascal compatibility unit, it is no longer actively developed: the interface is frozen and it is maintained only for the purpose of porting Turbo Pascal programs. For new development, it is recommended to use the sysutils ([1599](#)) unit instead.

### 45.3 System information

Functions for retrieving and setting general system information such as date and time.

Table 45.2:

| Name              | Description                                |
|-------------------|--|
| DosVersion (1)    | Get OS version                             |
| GetCBreak (696)   | Get setting of control-break handling flag |
| GetDate (697)     | Get system date                            |
| GetIntVec (699)   | Get interrupt vector status                |
| GetTime (701)     | Get system time                            |
| GetVerify (701)   | Get verify flag                            |
| Intr (702)        | Execute an interrupt                       |
| Keep (702)        | Keep process in memory and exit            |
| MSDos (702)       | Execute MS-Dos function call               |
| PackTime (703)    | Pack time for file time                    |
| SetCBreak (703)   | Set control-break handling flag            |
| SetDate (704)     | Set system date                            |
| SetIntVec (705)   | Set interrupt vectors                      |
| SetTime (705)     | Set system time                            |
| SetVerify (705)   | Set verify flag                            |
| SwapVectors (706) | Swap interrupt vectors                     |
| UnPackTime (706)  | Unpack file time                           |

## 45.4 Process handling

Functions to handle process information and starting new processes.

Table 45.3:

| Name            | Description                            |
|-----------------|--|
| DosExitCode (1) | Exit code of last executed program     |
| EnvCount (692)  | Return number of environment variables |
| EnvStr (692)    | Return environment string pair         |
| Exec (693)      | Execute program                        |
| GetEnv (697)    | Return specified environment string    |

## 45.5 Directory and disk handling

Routines to handle disk information.

Table 45.4:

| Name           | Description                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| AddDisk (688)  | Add disk to list of disks (UNIX only) |
| DiskFree (689) | Return size of free disk space        |
| DiskSize (690) | Return total disk size                |

## 45.6 File handling

Routines to handle files on disk.

Table 45.5:

| Name               | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| FExpand (693)      | Expand filename to full path                       |
| FindClose (693)    | Close finfirst/findnext session                    |
| FindFirst (694)    | Start find of file                                 |
| FindNext (695)     | Find next file                                     |
| FSearch (695)      | Search for file in a path                          |
| FSplit (696)       | Split filename in parts                            |
| GetFAttr (698)     | Return file attributes                             |
| GetFTime (699)     | Return file time                                   |
| GetLongName (700)  | Convert short filename to long filename (DOS only) |
| GetShortName (700) | Convert long filename to short filename (DOS only) |
| SetFAttr (704)     | Set file attributes                                |
| SetFTime (705)     | Set file time                                      |

## 45.7 File open mode constants.

These constants are used in the `Mode` field of the `TextRec` record. Gives information on the file-mode of the text I/O. For their definitions consult the following table:

Table 45.6: Possible mode constants

| Constant              | Description            | Value               |
|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <code>fmclosed</code> | File is closed         | <code>\$D7B0</code> |
| <code>fminput</code>  | File is read only      | <code>\$D7B1</code> |
| <code>fmoutput</code> | File is write only     | <code>\$D7B2</code> |
| <code>fminout</code>  | File is read and write | <code>\$D7B3</code> |

## 45.8 File attributes

The File Attribute constants are used in `FindFirst` (694), `FindNext` (695) to determine what type of special file to search for in addition to normal files. These flags are also used in the `SetFAttr` (704) and `GetFAttr` (698) routines to set and retrieve attributes of files. For their definitions consult `fileattributes` (684).

Table 45.7: Possible file attributes

| Constant  | Description              | Value |
|-----------|--------------------------|-------|
| readonly  | Read-Only file attribute | \$01  |
| hidden    | Hidden file attribute    | \$02  |
| sysfile   | System file attribute    | \$04  |
| volumeid  | Volume ID file attribute | \$08  |
| directory | Directory file attribute | \$10  |
| archive   | Archive file attribute   | \$20  |
| anyfile   | Match any file attribute | \$3F  |

## 45.9 Constants, types and variables

### 45.9.1 Constants

`anyfile` = \$3F

Match any file attribute

`archive` = \$20

Archive file attribute

`directory` = \$10

Directory file attribute

`fauxiliary` = \$0010

CPU auxiliary flag. Not used.

`fcarry` = \$0001

CPU carry flag. Not used.

`FileNameLen` = 255

Maximum length of a filename

`fmclosed` = \$D7B0

File is closed

`fminout` = \$D7B3

File is read and write

`fminput` = \$D7B1

File is read only

`fmoutput = $D7B2`

File is write only

`foverflow = $0800`

CPU overflow flag. Not used.

`fparity = $0004`

CPU parity flag. Not used.

`fsign = $0080`

CPU sign flag. Not used.

`fzero = $0040`

CPU zero flag. Not used.

`hidden = $02`

Hidden file attribute

`readonly = $01`

Read-Only file attribute

`sysfile = $04`

System file attribute

`volumeid = $08`

Volume ID file attribute

## 45.9.2 Types

`ComStr = string`

Command-line string type

`DirStr = string`

Full directory string type.

`ExtStr = string`

Filename extension string type.

```
NameStr = string
```

Fill filename string type.

```
PathStr = string
```

Full File path string type.

```
Registers = packed record
case i : Integer of
0: (
  ax : Word;
  f1 : Word;
  bx : Word;
  f2 : Word;
  cx : Word;
  f3 : Word;
  dx : Word;
  f4 : Word;
  bp : Word;
  f5 : Word;
  si : Word;
  f51 : Word;
  di : Word;
  f6 : Word;
  ds : Word;
  f7 : Word;
  es : Word;
  f8 : Word;
  flags : Word;
  fs : Word;
  gs : Word
  ;
);
1: (
  al : Byte;
  ah : Byte;
  f9 : Byte;
  f10 : Byte;
  bl
  : Byte;
  bh : Byte;
  f11 : Byte;
  f12 : Byte;
  cl : Byte;
  ch
  : Byte;
  f13 : Byte;
  f14 : Byte;
  dl : Byte;
  dh : Byte;
```

```
);
  2: (
    eax : LongInt;
    ebx : LongInt;
    ecx : LongInt;
    edx : LongInt
  ;
    ebp : LongInt;
    esi : LongInt;
    edi : LongInt;
  );
end
```

This structure is only defined on a i386 compatible 32-bit platform, and is not used anywhere: it is defined for Turbo Pascal backwards compatibility only.

### 45.9.3 Variables

```
DosError : Integer
```

The `DosError` variable is used by the procedures in the `Dos` unit to report errors. It can have the following values :

Table 45.8: Dos error codes

| Value | Meaning              |
|-------|----------------------|
| 2     | File not found.      |
| 3     | Path not found.      |
| 5     | Access denied.       |
| 6     | Invalid handle.      |
| 8     | Not enough memory.   |
| 10    | Invalid environment. |
| 11    | Invalid format.      |
| 18    | No more files.       |

Other values are possible, but are not documented.

## 45.10 Procedures and functions

### 45.10.1 AddDisk

**Synopsis:** Add disk definition to list if drives (Unix only)

**Declaration:** `function AddDisk(const path: string) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AddDisk` adds a filename `S` to the internal list of disks. It is implemented for systems which do not use DOS type drive letters. This list is used to determine which disks to use in the `DiskFree` (689) and `DiskSize` (690) calls. The `DiskFree` (689) and `DiskSize` (690) functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. The names are added sequentially. The `Dos` initialization code presets the first three disks to:

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

The first call to `AddDisk` will therefore add a name for the second harddisk, The second call for the third drive, and so on until 23 drives have been added (corresponding to drives 'D:' to 'Z:')

Errors: None

See also: `DiskFree` (689), `DiskSize` (690)

### 45.10.2 DiskFree

Synopsis: Get free size on Disk.

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskFree` returns the number of free bytes on a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the free space on the current drive.

**Remark** For Unices: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the `Dos` unit, and have been preset to :

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (688) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskSize` (690), `AddDisk` (688)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;  
**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DiskSize and DiskFree function. }*

**begin**  
  **WriteLn**('This partition size has ', **DiskSize**(0), ' bytes');  
  **WriteLn**('Currently ', **DiskFree**(0), ' bytes are free');  
**end.**

---

### 45.10.3 DiskSize

Synopsis: Get total size of disk.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the total size (in bytes) of a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the size of the current drive.

**Remark** For Unix only: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the Dos unit, and have been preset to :

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- `'/'` for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (688) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

For an example, see `DiskFree` (689).

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskFree` (689), `AddDisk` (688)

### 45.10.4 DosExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of last executed program.

Declaration: `function DosExitCode : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosExitCode` contains (in the low byte) the exit-code of a program executed with the `Exec` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` (693)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function. }

begin
  {$IFDEF Unix}
    WriteLn( 'Executing /bin/ls -la ');
    Exec( '/bin/ls ', '-la ');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn( 'Executing Dir ');
    Exec( GetEnv( 'COMSPEC' ), '/C dir ');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn( 'Program returned with ExitCode ', Lo(DosExitCode));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.5 DosVersion

Synopsis: Current OS version

Declaration: `function DosVersion : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosVersion` returns the operating system or kernel version. The low byte contains the major version number, while the high byte contains the minor version number.

**Remark** On systems where versions consists of more then two numbers, only the first two numbers will be returned. For example Linux version 2.1.76 will give you `DosVersion` 2.1. Some operating systems, such as FreeBSD, do not have system calls to return the kernel version, in that case a value of 0 will be returned.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DosVersion function. }

var
  OS      : string[32];
  Version : word;
begin
  {$IFDEF LINUX}
    OS:= 'Linux';
  {$ENDIF}
  {$ifdef FreeBSD}
    OS:= 'FreeBSD';
  {$endif}
  {$ifdef NetBSD}
    OS:= 'NetBSD';
  {$endif}
  {$ifdef Solaris}
    OS:= 'Solaris';
  {$endif}
  {$ifdef QNX}
    OS:= 'QNX';
  {$endif}

  {$IFDEF DOS}
    OS:= 'Dos';
  {$ENDIF}
  Version:=DosVersion;
  WriteLn('Current ',OS,' version is ',Lo(Version),'. ',Hi(Version));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.6 DTToUnixDate

Synopsis: Convert a `DateTime` to Unix timestamp

Declaration: `function DTToUnixDate(DT: DateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DTToUnixDate` converts the `DateTime` value in `DT` to a Unix timestamp. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `UnixDateToDT` (706), `PackTime` (703), `UnpackTime` (706), `GetTime` (701), `SetTime` (705)

### 45.10.7 EnvCount

**Synopsis:** Return the number of environment variables

**Declaration:** `function EnvCount : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnvCount` returns the number of environment variables.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `EnvStr` (692), `GetEnv` (697)

### 45.10.8 EnvStr

**Synopsis:** Return environment variable by index

**Declaration:** `function EnvStr(Index: LongInt) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnvStr` returns the `Index`-th `Name=Value` pair from the list of environment variables. The index of the first pair is zero.

**Errors:** The length is limited to 255 characters.

**See also:** `EnvCount` (692), `GetEnv` (697)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** Example13;

**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EnvCount and EnvStr function. }*

**var**

*i* : Longint;

**begin**

    WriteLn('Current Environment is:');

**for** *i*:=1 **to** EnvCount **do**

        WriteLn(EnvStr(*i*));

**end.**

---

### 45.10.9 Exec

Synopsis: Execute another program, and wait for it to finish.

Declaration: `procedure Exec(const path: PathStr; const comline: ComStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exec` executes the program in `Path`, with the options given by `ComLine`. The program name should *not* appear again in `ComLine`, it is specified in `Path`. `Comline` contains only the parameters that are passed to the program.

After the program has terminated, the procedure returns. The Exit value of the program can be consulted with the `DosExitCode` function.

For an example, see `DosExitCode` ([1](#))

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `DosExitCode` ([1](#))

### 45.10.10 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand a relative path to an absolute path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FExpand` takes its argument and expands it to a complete filename, i.e. a filename starting from the root directory of the current drive, prepended with the drive-letter or volume name (when supported).

**Remark** On case sensitive file systems (such as Unix and Linux), the resulting name is left as it is, otherwise it is converted to uppercase.

Errors: `FSplit` ([696](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;  
**uses** `Dos`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function. }*

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('Expanded Name of this program is ', `FExpand(ParamStr(0))`);  
**end**.

---

### 45.10.11 FindClose

Synopsis: Dispose resources allocated by a `FindFirst` ([694](#))/`FindNext` ([695](#)) sequence.

Declaration: `procedure FindClose(var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindClose` frees any resources associated with the search record `F`.

This call is needed to free any internal resources allocated by the `FindFirst` (694) or `FindNext` (695) calls.

The Unix implementation of the Dos unit therefore keeps a table of open directories, and when the table is full, closes one of the directories, and reopens another. This system is adequate but slow if you use a lot of `searchrecs`.

So, to speed up the `findfirst/findnext` system, the `FindClose` call was implemented. When you don't need a `searchrec` any more, you can tell this to the Dos unit by issuing a `FindClose` call. The directory which is kept open for this `searchrec` is then closed, and the table slot freed.

**Remark** It is recommended to use the Linux call `Glob` when looking for files on Linux.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindFirst` (694), `FindNext` (695)

### 45.10.12 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start search for one or more files.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindFirst(const path: PathStr; attr: Word; var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindFirst` searches the file specified in `Path`. Normal files, as well as all special files which have the attributes specified in `Attr` will be returned.

It returns a `SearchRec` record for further searching in `F`. `Path` can contain the wildcard characters `?` (matches any single character) and `*` (matches 0 ore more arbitrary characters). In this case `FindFirst` will return the first file which matches the specified criteria. If `DosError` is different from zero, no file(s) matching the criteria was(were) found.

**Remark** On the EMX target, you cannot issue two different `FindFirst` calls. That is, you must close any previous search operation with `FindClose` (693) before starting a new one. Failure to do so will end in a Run-Time Error 6 (Invalid file handle)

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindNext` (695), `FindClose` (693)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FindFirst and FindNext function. }

var
  Dir : SearchRec;
begin
  FindFirst(' *.* ', archive, Dir);
  WriteLn(' FileName '+Space(32), ' FileSize ':9);
  while (DosError=0) do
    begin
      WriteLn(Dir.Name+Space(40-Length(Dir.Name)), Dir.Size:9);
      FindNext(Dir);
    end;
  FindClose(Dir);
end.

```

---

### 45.10.13 FindNext

Synopsis: Find next matching file after FindFirst ([694](#))

Declaration: `procedure FindNext (var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNext` takes as an argument a `SearchRec` from a previous `FindNext` call, or a `FindFirst` call, and tries to find another file which matches the criteria, specified in the `FindFirst` call. If `DosError` is different from zero, no more files matching the criteria were found.

For an example, see `FindFirst` ([694](#)).

Errors: `DosError` is used to report errors.

See also: `FindFirst` ([694](#)), `FindClose` ([693](#))

### 45.10.14 FSearch

Synopsis: Search a file in searchpath

Declaration: `function FSearch (path: PathStr; dirlist: string) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches the file `Path` in all directories listed in `DirList`. The full name of the found file is returned. `DirList` must be a list of directories, separated by semi-colons. When no file is found, an empty string is returned.

**Remark** On Unix systems, `DirList` can also be separated by colons, as is customary on those environments.

Errors: None.

See also: `FExpand` ([693](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex10.pp`

---

```

program Example10;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

var s:pathstr;

begin
  s:=FSearch(ParamStr(1),GetEnv('PATH'));
  if s='' then
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' not Found in PATH')
  else
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' Found in PATH at ',s);
end.

```

---

### 45.10.15 FSplit

Synopsis: Split a full-path filename in parts.

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(path: PathStr; var dir: DirStr; var name: NameStr;  
var ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in `ext`.) The extension is taken to be all letters after the *last* dot (.). For Dos, however, an exception is made when `LFNSupport=False`, then the extension is defined as all characters after the *first* dot.

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` ([695](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex12.pp`

---

```

program Example12;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }

var dir: dirstr;
    name: namestr;
    ext: extstr;

begin
    FSplit(ParamStr(1), dir, name, ext);
    WriteLn('Splitted ', ParamStr(1), ' in: ');
    WriteLn('Path      : ', dir);
    WriteLn('Name       : ', name);
    WriteLn('Extension: ', ext);
end.

```

---

### 45.10.16 GetCBreak

Synopsis: Get control-Break flag

Declaration: `procedure GetCBreak(var breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCBreak` gets the status of CTRL-Break checking under Dos and Amiga. When `BreakValue` is false, then Dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos and non-Amiga operating systems, `BreakValue` always returns True.

Errors: None

See also: `SetCBreak` ([703](#))

**45.10.17 GetDate**

Synopsis: Get the current date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var year: Word; var month: Word; var mday: Word;  
var wday: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDate` returns the system's date. `Year` is a number in the range 1980..2099. `mday` is the day of the month, `wday` is the day of the week, starting with Sunday as day 0.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (701), `SetDate` (704)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }

const
  DayStr: array [0..6] of string [3] = ( 'Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat' );
  MonthStr: array [1..12] of string [3] = ( 'Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun',
                                             'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec' );

var
  Year, Month, Day, WDay : word;
begin
  GetDate (Year, Month, Day, WDay);
  WriteLn ( 'Current date' );
  WriteLn ( DayStr[WDay], ', ', ' ', Day, ' ', MonthStr[Month], ' ', Year, ' ' );
end.

```

---

**45.10.18 GetEnv**

Synopsis: Get environment variable by name.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(envvar: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getenv` returns the value of the environment variable `EnvVar`. When there is no environment variable `EnvVar` defined, an empty string is returned.

**Remark** Under some operating systems (such as Unix), case is important when looking for `EnvVar`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvCount` (692), `EnvStr` (692)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex14.pp`

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }

begin

```

---

```

  WriteLn('Current PATH is ',GetEnv('PATH'));
end.

```

---

#### 45.10.19 GetFAttr

Synopsis: Get file attributes

Declaration: `procedure GetFAttr(var f; var attr: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFAttr` returns the file attributes of the file-variable `f`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `f` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be examined with the following constants :

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

Under Linux, supported attributes are:

- `Directory`
- `ReadOnly` if the current process doesn't have access to the file.
- `Hidden` for files whose name starts with a dot (`'.'`).

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFAttr` ([704](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex8.pp`

---

```

Program Example8;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFAttr function. }

var
  Attr : Word;
  f    : File;
begin
  Assign(f,ParamStr(1));
  GetFAttr(f,Attr);
  WriteLn('File ',ParamStr(1),' has attribute ',Attr);
  if (Attr and archive)<>0 then WriteLn('– Archive');
  if (Attr and directory)<>0 then WriteLn('– Directory');
  if (Attr and readonly)<>0 then WriteLn('– Read-Only');
  if (Attr and sysfile)<>0 then WriteLn('– System');
  if (Attr and hidden)<>0 then WriteLn('– Hidden');
end.

```

---

**45.10.20 GetFTime**

Synopsis: Get file last modification time.

Declaration: `procedure GetFTime(var f; var time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFTime` returns the modification time of a file. This time is encoded and must be decoded with `UnPackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFTime` (705), `PackTime` (703), `UnPackTime` (706)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFTime function. }

Function L0(w:word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w,s);
  if w<10 then
    L0:= '0'+s
  else
    L0:=s;
end;

var
  f      : File;
  Time   : Longint;
  DT     : DateTime;
begin
  if Paramcount>0 then
    Assign(f,ParamStr(1))
  else
    Assign(f, 'ex9.pp' );
  Reset(f);
  GetFTime(f,Time);
  Close(f);
  UnPackTime(Time,DT);
  Write ('File ',ParamStr(1),' is last modified on ');
  Writeln (L0(DT.Month), '-',L0(DT.Day), '-',DT.Year,
           ' at ',L0(DT.Hour), ': ',L0(DT.Min));
end.

```

---

**45.10.21 GetIntVec**

Synopsis: Get interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure GetIntVec(intno: Byte; var vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetIntVec` returns the address of interrupt vector `IntNo`.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only. Modern systems do not allow low level access to the hardware.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetIntVec` (705)

### 45.10.22 GetLongName

**Synopsis:** Get the long filename of a DOS 8.3 filename.

**Declaration:** `function GetLongName (var p: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetLongName` changes the filename `p` to a long filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the long file name corresponding to the short filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetShortName` (700)

### 45.10.23 GetMsCount

**Synopsis:** Number of milliseconds since a starting point.

**Declaration:** `function GetMsCount : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMsCount` returns a number of milliseconds elapsed since a certain moment in time. This moment in time is implementation dependent. This function is used for timing purposes: Subtracting the results of 2 subsequent calls to this function returns the number of milliseconds elapsed between the two calls.

This call is not very reliable, it is recommended to use some system specific calls for timings.

See also: `GetTime` (701)

### 45.10.24 GetShortName

**Synopsis:** Get the short (8.3) filename of a long filename.

**Declaration:** `function GetShortName (var p: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetShortName` changes the filename `p` to a short filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the short file name corresponding to the long filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetLongName` (700)

### 45.10.25 GetTime

Synopsis: Return the current time

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word; var sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTime` returns the system's time. Hour is on a 24-hour time scale. `sec100` is in hundredth of a second.

**Remark** Certain operating systems (such as Amiga), always set the `sec100` field to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` (697), `SetTime` (705)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w, s);
  if w < 10 then
    L0 := '0' + s
  else
    L0 := s;
end;

var
  Hour, Min, Sec, HSec : word;
begin
  GetTime(Hour, Min, Sec, HSec);
  WriteLn('Current time ');
  WriteLn(L0(Hour), ': ', L0(Min), ': ', L0(Sec));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.26 GetVerify

Synopsis: Get verify flag

Declaration: `procedure GetVerify(var verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVerify` returns the status of the verify flag under Dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then Dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark** Under non-Dos systems (excluding EMX applications running under vanilla DOS), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([705](#))

### 45.10.27 Intr

Synopsis: Execute interrupt

**Declaration:** `procedure Intr(intno: Byte; var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Intr` executes a software interrupt number `IntNo` (must be between 0 and 255), with processor registers set to `Regs`. After the interrupt call returned, the processor registers are saved in `Regs`.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `MSDos` ([702](#))

### 45.10.28 Keep

Synopsis: Terminate and stay resident.

**Declaration:** `procedure Keep(exitcode: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Keep` terminates the program, but stays in memory. This is used for TSR (Terminate Stay Resident) programs which catch some interrupt. `ExitCode` is the same parameter as the `Halt` function takes.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

### 45.10.29 MSDos

Synopsis: Execute MS-DOS system call

**Declaration:** `procedure MSDos(var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MSDos` executes an operating system call. This is the same as doing a `Intr` call with the interrupt number for an OS call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems, this call does nothing. On DOS systems, this calls interrupt \$21.

Errors: None.

See also: `Intr` ([702](#))

**45.10.30 PackTime**

Synopsis: Pack DateTime value to a packed-time format.

Declaration: `procedure PackTime(var t: DateTime; var p: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPackTime` converts the date and time specified in `T` to a packed-time format which can be fed to `SetFTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFTime` (705), `FindFirst` (694), `FindNext` (695), `UnPackTime` (706)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the PackTime and UnPackTime functions. }

var
  DT   : DateTime;
  Time : longint;
begin
  with DT do
    begin
      Year:=2008;
      Month:=11;
      Day:=11;
      Hour:=11;
      Min:=11;
      Sec:=11;
    end;
  PackTime(DT, Time);
  WriteLn('Packed Time : ', Time);
  UnPackTime(Time, DT);
  WriteLn('Unpacked Again: ');
  with DT do
    begin
      WriteLn('Year   ', Year);
      WriteLn('Month  ', Month);
      WriteLn('Day    ', Day);
      WriteLn('Hour   ', Hour);
      WriteLn('Min    ', Min);
      WriteLn('Sec    ', Sec);
    end;
end.

```

---

**45.10.31 SetCBreak**

Synopsis: Set Control-Break flag status

Declaration: `procedure SetCBreak(breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetCBreak` sets the status of CTRL-Break checking. When `BreakValue` is `false`, then Dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to `True`, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos and non-Amiga operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetCBreak` ([696](#))

### 45.10.32 SetDate

**Synopsis:** Set system date

**Declaration:** `procedure SetDate(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetDate` sets the system's internal date. Year is a number between 1980 and 2099.

**Remark** On a Unix machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other Unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` ([697](#)), `SetTime` ([705](#))

### 45.10.33 SetFAttr

**Synopsis:** Set file attributes

**Declaration:** `procedure SetFAttr(var f; attr: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetFAttr` sets the file attributes of the file-variable `F`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `F` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be a sum of the following constants:

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

**Remark** Under Unix like systems (such as Linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `GetFAttr` ([698](#))

#### 45.10.34 SetFTime

Synopsis: Set file modification time.

Declaration: `procedure SetFTime(var f; time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFTime` sets the modification time of a file, this time is encoded and must be encoded with `PackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

**Remark** Under Unix like systems (such as Linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `GetFTime` (699), `PackTime` (703), `UnPackTime` (706)

#### 45.10.35 SetIntVec

Synopsis: Set interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure SetIntVec(intno: Byte; vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetIntVec` sets interrupt vector `IntNo` to `Vector`. `Vector` should point to an interrupt procedure.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetIntVec` (699)

#### 45.10.36 SetTime

Synopsis: Set system time

Declaration: `procedure SetTime(hour: Word; minute: Word; second: Word; sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTime` sets the system's internal clock. The `Hour` parameter is on a 24-hour time scale.

**Remark** On a Linux machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other Unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (701), `SetDate` (704)

#### 45.10.37 SetVerify

Synopsis: Set verify flag

Declaration: `procedure SetVerify(verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetVerify` sets the status of the verify flag under Dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then Dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems (excluding EMX applications running under vanilla Dos), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` (705)

### 45.10.38 SwapVectors

**Synopsis:** Swap interrupt vectors

**Declaration:** `procedure SwapVectors`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SwapVectors` swaps the contents of the internal table of interrupt vectors with the current contents of the interrupt vectors. This is called typically in before and after an `Exec` call.

**Remark** Under certain operating systems, this routine may be implemented as an empty stub.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` (693), `SetIntVec` (705)

### 45.10.39 UnixDateToDt

**Synopsis:** Convert a Unix timestamp to a `DateTime` record

**Declaration:** `procedure UnixDateToDt (SecsPast: LongInt; var Dt: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DTToUnixDate` converts the Unix timestamp value in `SecsPast` to a `DateTime` representation in `DT`. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `DTToUnixDate` (691), `PackTime` (703), `UnpackTime` (706), `GetTime` (701), `SetTime` (705)

### 45.10.40 UnpackTime

**Synopsis:** Unpack packed file time to a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `procedure UnpackTime (p: LongInt; var t: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `UnPackTime` converts the file-modification time in `p` to a `DateTime` record. The file-modification time can be returned by `GetFTime`, `FindFirst` or `FindNext` calls.

For an example, see `PackTime` (703).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetFTime` (699), `FindFirst` (694), `FindNext` (695), `PackTime` (703)

#### 45.10.41 weekday

Synopsis: Return the day of the week

Declaration: `function weekday(y: LongInt; m: LongInt; d: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeekDay` returns the day of the week on which the day Y/M/D falls. Sunday is represented by 0, Saturday is 6.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `PackTime` (703), `UnpackTime` (706), `GetTime` (701), `SetTime` (705)

### 45.11 DateTime

```

DateTime = packed record
  Year : Word;
  Month : Word;
  Day : Word
;
  Hour : Word;
  Min : Word;
  Sec : Word;
end

```

The `DateTime` type is used in `PackTime` (703) and `UnPackTime` (706) for setting/reading file times with `GetFTime` (699) and `SetFTime` (705).

### 45.12 SearchRec

```

SearchRec = packed record
  SearchPos : TOff;
  SearchNum : LongInt
;
  DirPtr : Pointer;
  SearchType : Byte;
  SearchAttr : Byte;
  Mode : Word;
  Fill : Array[1..1] of Byte;
  Attr : Byte;
  Time
  : LongInt;
  Size : LongInt;
  Reserved : Word;
  Name : string;
  SearchSpec : string;
  NamePos : Word;
end

```

`SearchRec` is filled by the `FindFirst` (694) call and can be used in subsequent `FindNext` (695) calls to search for files. The structure of this record depends on the platform. Only the following fields are present on all platforms:

**Attr** File attributes.

**Time** File modification time.

**Size** File size

**Name** File name (name part only, no path)

**Mode** File access mode (Linux only)

## Chapter 46

# Reference for unit 'dxeload'

### 46.1 Used units

Table 46.1: Used units by unit 'dxeload'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 46.2 Overview

The `dxeload` unit was implemented by Pierre Mueller for dos, it allows to load a DXE file (an object file with 1 entry point) into memory and return a pointer to the entry point.

It exists only for dos.

### 46.3 Procedures and functions

#### 46.3.1 `dxeload`

Synopsis: Load DXE file in memory

Declaration: `function dxeload(filename: string) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `dxeload` loads the contents of the file `filename` into memory. It performs the necessary relocations in the object code, and returns then a pointer to the entry point of the code.

For an example, see the `emu387` ([714](#)) unit in the RTL.

Errors: If an error occurs during the load or relocations, `Nil` is returned.

## Chapter 47

# Reference for unit 'dynlibs'

### 47.1 Used units

Table 47.1: Used units by unit 'dynlibs'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 47.2 Overview

The Dynlibs unit provides support for dynamically loading shared libraries. It is available only on those platforms that support shared libraries. The functionality available here may only be a part of the functionality available on each separate platform, in the interest of portability.

On UNIX platforms, using this unit will cause the program to be linked to the C library, as most shared libraries are implemented in C and the dynamical linker too.

### 47.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 47.3.1 Constants

`NilHandle = System.NilHandle`

Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by `LoadLibrary` ([712](#))

`SharedSuffix = System.SharedSuffix`

`SharedSuffix` contains the extension of a shared library (dynamically loadable library) on the current platform. It does not contain the . (dot) character. This can be used to determine the name of a shared library in a platform independent way.

#### 47.3.2 Types

`HModule = TLibHandle`

Alias for `TLibHandle` (711) type.

```
TLibHandle = System.TLibHandle
```

`TLibHandle` should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

## 47.4 Procedures and functions

### 47.4.1 FreeLibrary

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` (713), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` (713)

### 47.4.2 GetLoadErrorStr

Synopsis: Return a description of the last error during load/get procedure address operations.

Declaration: `function GetLoadErrorStr : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLoadErrorStr` returns a textual description of the last library loading or unloading error, or a call to `GetProcAddress` (712). No other system calls may be made between the load call and the call of `GetLoadErrorStr`.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (712), `GetProcAddress` (712)

### 47.4.3 GetProcAddress

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; const ProcName: AnsiString)  
: Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcAddress` (712), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `GetProcAddress` (712)

#### 47.4.4 GetProcedureAddress

**Synopsis:** Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle;
                           const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer
function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)
                           : Pointer
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetProcedureAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` or ordinal value `Ordinal` in the dynamically loaded library specified by its handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Only windows and OS/2 support getting the address of a function using an ordinal value.

**Errors:** If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** [LoadLibrary \(712\)](#), [UnLoadLibrary \(713\)](#)

#### 47.4.5 LoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:**

```
function LoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle
function LoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in file `Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle (710)` is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

**Errors:** On error, `NilHandle (710)` is returned.

**See also:** [UnloadLibrary \(713\)](#), [GetProcedureAddress \(712\)](#)

#### 47.4.6 SafeLoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Saves the control word and loads a library

**Declaration:**

```
function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle
function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeLoadLibrary` saves the FPU control word, and calls `LoadLibrary (712)` with library name `Name`. After that function has returned, the FPU control word is saved again. (only on Intel i386 CPUs).

**See also:** [LoadLibrary \(712\)](#)

### 47.4.7 UnloadLibrary

Synopsis: Unload a previously loaded library

Declaration: `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([712](#)), `GetProcAddress` ([712](#))

## Chapter 48

# Reference for unit 'emu387'

### 48.1 Used units

Table 48.1: Used units by unit 'emu387'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 48.2 Overview

The `emu387` unit was written by Pierre Mueller for dos. It sets up the coprocessor emulation for FPC under dos. It is not necessary to use this unit on other OS platforms because they either simply do not run on a machine without coprocessor, or they provide the coprocessor emulation themselves.

It shouldn't be necessary to use the function in this unit, it should be enough to place this unit in the `uses` clause of your program to enable the coprocessor emulation under dos. The unit initialization code will try and load the coprocessor emulation code and initialize it.

### 48.3 Procedures and functions

#### 48.3.1 `npxsetup`

**Synopsis:** Set up coprocessor emulation.

**Declaration:** `procedure npxsetup(prog_name: string)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `npxsetup` checks whether a coprocessor is found. If not, it loads the file `wmemu387.dxe` into memory and initializes the code in it.

If the environment variable `387` is set to `N`, then the emulation will be loaded, even if there is a coprocessor present. If the variable doesn't exist, or is set to any other value, the unit will try to detect the presence of a coprocessor unit.

The function searches the file `wmemu387.dxe` in the following way:

- 1.If the environment variable `EMU387` is set, then it is assumed to point at the `wmemu387.dxe` file.
- 2.if the environment variable `EMU387` does not exist, then the function will take the path part of `prog_name` and look in that directory for the file `wmemu387.dxe`.

It should never be necessary to call this function, because the initialization code of the unit contains a call to the function with as an argument `paramstr(0)`. This means that you should deliver the file `wmemu387.dxe` together with your program.

**Errors:** If there is an error, an error message is printed to standard error, and the program is halted, since any floating-point code is bound to fail anyhow.

## Chapter 49

# Reference for unit 'errors'

### 49.1 Used units

Table 49.1: Used units by unit 'errors'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 49.2 Overview

The errors unit contains routines to convert a UNIX system call error code to an error message: `StrError` ([718](#)). It is only available on UNIX platforms.

### 49.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 49.3.1 Constants

```
sys_errlist : Array[0..sys_errn-1] of pchar = ('Success', 'Operation not permitted',
, 'No such file or directory', 'No such process', 'Interrupted system call'
, 'I/O error', 'No such device or address', 'Arg list too long', 'Exec format error'
, 'Bad file number', 'No child processes', 'Try again', 'Out of memory'
, 'Permission denied', 'Bad address', 'Block device required', 'Device or resource busy'
, 'File exists', 'Cross-device link', 'No such device', 'Not a directory'
, 'Is a directory', 'Invalid argument', 'File table overflow', 'Too many open files'
, 'Not a typewriter', 'Text (code segment) file busy', 'File too large'
, 'No space left on device', 'Illegal seek', 'Read-only file system'
, 'Too many links', 'Broken pipe', 'Math argument out of domain of function'
, 'Math result not representable', 'Resource deadlock would occur'
, 'File name too long', 'No record locks available', 'Function not implemented'
, 'Directory not empty', 'Too many symbolic links encountered', 'Operation would block'
, 'No message of desired type', 'Identifier removed', 'Channel number out of range'
, 'Level 2 not synchronized', 'Level 3 halted', 'Level 3 reset', 'Link number out of range'
, 'Protocol driver not attached', 'No CSI structure available', 'Level 2 halted'
, 'Invalid exchange', 'Invalid request descriptor', 'Exchange full'
```

```
, 'No anode', 'Invalid request code', 'Invalid slot', 'File locking deadlock error'
, 'Bad font file format', 'Device not a stream', 'No data available'
, 'Timer expired', 'Out of streams resources', 'Machine is not on the network'
, 'Package not installed', 'Object is remote', 'Link has been severed'
, 'Advertise error', 'Srmount error', 'Communication error on send'
, 'Protocol error', 'Multihop attempted', 'RFS specific error', 'Not a data message'
, 'Value too large for defined data type', 'Name not unique on network'
, 'File descriptor in bad state', 'Remote address changed', 'Can not access a needed
, 'Accessing a corrupted shared library', '.lib section in a.out corrupted'
, 'Attempting to link in too many shared libraries', 'Cannot exec a shared library'
, 'Illegal byte sequence', 'Interrupted system call should be restarted'
, 'Streams pipe error', 'Too many users', 'Socket operation on non-socket'
, 'Destination address required', 'Message too long', 'Protocol wrong type for socket'
, 'Protocol not available', 'Protocol not supported', 'Socket type not supported'
, 'Operation not supported on transport endpoint', 'Protocol family not supported'
, 'Address family not supported by protocol', 'Address already in use'
, 'Cannot assign requested address', 'Network is down', 'Network is unreachable'
, 'Network dropped connection because of reset', 'Software caused connection abort'
, 'Connection reset by peer', 'No buffer space available', 'Transport endpoint is
, 'Transport endpoint is not connected', 'Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown'
, 'Too many references: cannot splice', 'Connection timed out', 'Connection refused'
, 'Host is down', 'No route to host', 'Operation already in progress'
, 'Operation now in progress', 'Stale NFS file handle', 'Structure needs cleaning'
, 'Not a XENIX named type file', 'No XENIX semaphores available',
'Is a named type file', 'Remote I/O error', 'Quota exceeded', 'No medium found'
, 'Wrong medium type')
```

`sys_errn` is an array with then error codes for the current operating system. It should not be used directly, instead use `StrError` (718).

```
sys_errn = 125
```

`sys_errn` is the number of error codes for the current operating system. It should not be used directly, instead use `StrError` (718).

## 49.4 Procedures and functions

### 49.4.1 PError

Synopsis: Print error on standard error output

Declaration: `procedure PError(const s: string; Errno: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PError` will print the error message `S` followed by the `errNo` and the result for `StrError` (`errNo`) for `ErrNo` on standard output.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrError` (718)

### 49.4.2 StrError

Synopsis: Convert an error code to a string

Declaration: `function StrError(err: cint) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrError` will convert the error code `err` to a string.

Errors: If the error code is unknown or out of bounds, an 'Unknown error (err)' string will be returned.

See also: `PError` ([717](#))

# Chapter 50

## Reference for unit 'exeinfo'

### 50.1 Used units

Table 50.1: Used units by unit 'exeinfo'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 50.2 Overview

The `exeinfo` unit implements some cross-platform routines to examine the contents of an executable: information about sections, mapping addresses to loaded modules etc.

It is mainly used by the `lineinfo` ([949](#)) and `Infodwrf` ([979](#)) unit to examine the binary for debug info.

### 50.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 50.3.1 Types

### 50.4 Procedures and functions

#### 50.4.1 CloseExeFile

**Synopsis:** Close a previously opened file.

**Declaration:** `function CloseExeFile(var e: TExeFile) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CloseExeFile` closes an executable file image previously opened with `OpenExeFile` ([720](#)), and represented by `e`.

The function returns `True` if the file was closed successfully, or `False` if something went wrong.

**Errors:** In case of an error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `OpenExeFile` ([720](#))

### 50.4.2 FindExeSection

Synopsis: Find a section in the binary image.

Declaration: `function FindExeSection(var e: TExeFile; const secname: string;  
var secofs: LongInt; var seclen: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindExeSection` examines the binary that was opened with `OpenExeFile` (720) (represented by `e`) and searches for the section named `secname`. If found, the section offset is returned in `secofs` and the section length (in bytes) is returned in `seclen`.

The function returns `True` if the section was found, `False` if not.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (720)

### 50.4.3 GetModuleByAddr

Synopsis: Return the module name by address

Declaration: `procedure GetModuleByAddr(addr: pointer; var baseaddr: pointer;  
var filename: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModuleByAddr` returns the name of the module that contains address `addr`. If successful, it returns `True` and returns the filename in `FileName` and the base address at which it is loaded in `BaseAddr`.

### 50.4.4 OpenExeFile

Synopsis: Open an executable file

Declaration: `function OpenExeFile(var e: TExeFile; const fn: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `OpenExeFile` opens the executable file `fn` and initializes the structure `e` for subsequent calls to routines in the `exeinfo` unit.

The function returns `True` if the file was opened successfully, false otherwise.

See also: `FindExeSection` (720), `CloseExeFile` (719), `ReadDebugLink` (720)

### 50.4.5 ReadDebugLink

Synopsis: Read the location of a debug info filename

Declaration: `function ReadDebugLink(var e: TExeFile; var dbgfn: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDebugLink` examines the `.gnu_debuglink` section to see if the debug information is stored in an external file. If so, then the name of the file with the debug information is returned in the `dbgfn` parameter.

The function returns `false` if there is no external debug information file, or if the file with debug information does not exist. It is searched next to the binary file or in the current directory.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (720), `CloseExeFile` (719)

## 50.5 TExeFile

```
TExeFile = record
  f : File;
  size : Int64;
  isopen : Boolean;
  nsects : LongInt;
  sechdrofs : PtrUInt;
  secstrofs : PtrUInt
;
  processaddress : PtrUInt;
  FunctionRelative : Boolean;
  ImgOffset
  : PtrUInt;
  filename : string;
  buf : Array[0..4095] of Byte;
  bufsize : LongInt;
  bufcnt : LongInt;
end
```

TExeFile is a record used in the various calls of this unit. It contains a file descriptor, and various fields that describe the executable.

The structure of TExeFile is opaque, that is, one shouldn't rely on the exactness of this structure, it may change any time in the future.

# Chapter 51

## Reference for unit 'fgl'

### 51.1 Used units

Table 51.1: Used units by unit 'fgl'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils | <a href="#">1599</a> |
| Types    | <a href="#">1902</a> |

### 51.2 Overview

The `fgl` unit contains some basic list-related generic classes.

### 51.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 51.3.1 Constants

```
MaxGListSize = MaxInt div 1024
```

deprecated

`MaxGListSize` is the maximum number of elements in the `TFPGList` ([727](#)) list.

```
MaxListSize = Maxint div 16
```

`MaxListSize` is the maximum number of elements a list can contain before the memory runs out.

#### 51.3.2 Types

```
TFPSListCompareFunc = function(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Integer  
  of object
```

`TFPSListCompareFunc` is used in the `TFPSList.Sort` ([759](#)) method to compare 2 elements. The list passes 2 pointers to the actual items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

## 51.4 EListError

### 51.4.1 Description

`EListError` is the exception used in the `TFPSList` (753) class to indicate errors such as a list index out of bounds, wrong capacity etc.

See also: `TFPSList.Capacity` (759), `TFPSList.Exchange` (756), `TFPSList.Items` (760)

## 51.5 TFPGInterfacedObjectList

### 51.5.1 Description

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any class type `T` that requires reference counting (all objects that implement `IInterface` or `IUnknown`). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` (753) or classes `TFPList` (722) or `TFPObjectList`

Classes that implement `IInterface` or `IUnknown` require special care to maintain the reference count. The `TFPGInterfacedObjectList` list provides the necessary functionality to deal with this.

See also: `TFPSList` (753), classes `TFPList` (722)

### 51.5.2 Method overview

| Page | Method        | Description   |
|------|---------------|---|
| 724  | Add           | Add new object of class <code>T</code> to the list. |
| 725  | AddList       | Adds the elements from another list                 |
| 725  | Assign        | Copy objects from Source list                       |
| 724  | Create        | Instantiate a new interfaced object list.           |
| 724  | Extract       | Extract an item from the list                       |
| 724  | GetEnumerator | Return a list enumerator for <code>T</code>         |
| 725  | IndexOf       | Index of object                                     |
| 725  | Insert        | Insert a new object in the list                     |
| 726  | Remove        | Remove an object from the list.                     |
| 726  | Sort          | Sort the objects in the list                        |

### 51.5.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties | Access | Description                            |
|------|------------|--------|--|
| 726  | First      | rw     | First non-nil object                   |
| 727  | Items      | rw     | Indexed access to objects in the list. |
| 727  | Last       | rw     | Last non- <code>Nil</code> object      |
| 727  | List       | r      | Internal list pointer                  |

### 51.5.4 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new interfaced object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size.

See also: `TFPSList.Destroy` ([754](#))

### 51.5.5 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add new object of class `T` to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of class type `T` to the list and returns the position at which the item was added. `Add` will increase the reference count of the object.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract` ([724](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` ([727](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf` ([725](#))

### 51.5.6 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or `Nil` if it was not found.  
The extracted object will not be destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` ([755](#))

### 51.5.7 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for `T`

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` ([732](#)).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` ([732](#))

### 51.5.8 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of object

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the object does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` ([727](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert` ([725](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` ([724](#))

### 51.5.9 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new object (`Item`) in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` ([760](#)).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` ([727](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` ([724](#))

### 51.5.10 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy objects from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGInterfacedObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` ([755](#)), `TFPGObjectList.Add` ([749](#))

### 51.5.11 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.AddList

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGInterfacedObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.AddList` ([730](#)), `TFPSList.AddList` ([758](#)), `TFPGObjectList.AddList` ([751](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` ([724](#))

**51.5.12 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first object is removed.

Removing an object from the list may cause the object to be freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf` ([725](#)), `TFPSList.Delete` ([755](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.FreeObjects` ([723](#))

**51.5.13 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the objects in the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the objects are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Sorted` ([753](#))

**51.5.14 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First**

Synopsis: First non-nil object

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-nil object. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` ([761](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last` ([727](#)), `TFPSList.Pack` ([759](#))

**51.5.15 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last**

Synopsis: Last non-`Nil` object

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Last` returns the last non-`Nil` object. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First` ([726](#)), `TFPSList.Last` ([761](#))

**51.5.16 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items**

Synopsis: Indexed access to objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the objects in the list. The objects can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` ([760](#)).

The previous object at position `Index` may be freed when setting the property, depending on its reference count.

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` ([760](#))

**51.5.17 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.List**

Synopsis: Internal list pointer

Declaration: `Property List : PTypeList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` is the internal list of objects. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` ([727](#))

**51.6 TFPGList****51.6.1 Description**

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` ([753](#)) or `classes.TFPList` ([722](#))

See also: `TFPSList` ([753](#)), `classes.TFPList` ([722](#))

### 51.6.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method        | Description                         |
|---------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">728</a> | Add           | Add new item of type T to the list. |
| <a href="#">730</a> | AddList       | Adds the elements from another list |
| <a href="#">730</a> | Assign        | Copy elements from Source list      |
| <a href="#">728</a> | Create        | Instantiate a new list              |
| <a href="#">729</a> | Extract       | Extract an item from the list       |
| <a href="#">729</a> | GetEnumerator | Return a list enumerator for T.     |
| <a href="#">729</a> | IndexOf       | Index of item                       |
| <a href="#">729</a> | Insert        | Insert a new item in the list       |
| <a href="#">728</a> | ItemsManaged  |                                     |
| <a href="#">730</a> | Remove        | Remove an item from the list.       |
| <a href="#">730</a> | Sort          | Sort the list                       |

### 51.6.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                         |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">731</a> | First      | rw     | First non-empty item                |
| <a href="#">731</a> | Items      | rw     | Indexed access to items in the list |
| <a href="#">731</a> | Last       | rw     | Last non-empty item                 |
| <a href="#">731</a> | List       | r      | Internal list object                |

### 51.6.4 TFPGList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new list

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size: `sizeof(T)`.

### 51.6.5 TFPGList.ItemsManaged

Declaration: `class function ItemIsManaged : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### 51.6.6 TFPGList.Add

Synopsis: Add new item of type T to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of generic type T to the list and returns the position at which the item was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Extract` ([729](#)), `TFPGList.Items` ([731](#)), `TFPGList.IndexOf` ([729](#))

### 51.6.7 TFPGList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or an expression equivalent to `T(0)` if it was not found.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` ([755](#))

### 51.6.8 TFPGList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for T.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` ([732](#)).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` ([732](#))

### 51.6.9 TFPGList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of item

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the item does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` ([731](#)), `TFPGList.Insert` ([729](#)), `TFPSList.Add` ([755](#))

### 51.6.10 TFPGList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new item in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` ([760](#)).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` ([731](#)), `TFPGList.Insert` ([729](#)), `TFPSList.Add` ([755](#))

### 51.6.11 TFPGList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy elements from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` ([755](#)), `TFPGList.Add` ([728](#))

### 51.6.12 TFPGList.AddList

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.Add` ([728](#)), `TFPSList.AddList` ([758](#)), `TFPGObjectList.AddList` ([751](#))

### 51.6.13 TFPGList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the item `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first item is removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGList.IndexOf` ([729](#))

### 51.6.14 TFPGList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first item (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second item (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first item (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second item (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

**51.6.15 TFPGList.First**

Synopsis: First non-empty item

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-empty item, which means the first item not equal to `T ()`. If no such element is present, `T ()` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` (761), `TFPGList.Last` (731)

**51.6.16 TFPGList.Last**

Synopsis: Last non-empty item

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Last` returns the last non-empty item, which means the last item not equal to `T ()`. If no such element is present, `T ()` is returned.

See also: `TFPGList.First` (731), `TFPSList.Last` (761)

**51.6.17 TFPGList.Items**

Synopsis: Indexed access to items in the list

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the list. The items can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (760).

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760)

**51.6.18 TFPGList.List**

Synopsis: Internal list object

Declaration: `Property List : PTypeList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is the internal list of items. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (731)

## 51.7 TFPGListEnumerator

### 51.7.1 Description

`TFPGListEnumerator` is a generic list enumerator. It is used in the `TFPGList` ([727](#)) class to implement the enumerator for the list.

Normally there should be no need to instantiate or use this class directly.

See also: `TFPGList` ([727](#))

### 51.7.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                | Description                      |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <a href="#">732</a> | <code>Create</code>   | Create a new list enumerator     |
| <a href="#">732</a> | <code>MoveNext</code> | Move to next element in the list |

### 51.7.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties           | Access         | Description                |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| <a href="#">732</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Current enumerated element |

### 51.7.4 TFPGListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new list enumerator

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TFPList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is called by the list `AList` to initialize a new enumerator. There should be no need to call this directly.

See also: `TFPGList` ([727](#))

### 51.7.5 TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next element in the list

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` moves to the next element in the list.

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator.Current` ([732](#))

### 51.7.6 TFPGListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current enumerated element

Declaration: `Property Current : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**Description:** `Current` returns the currently enumerated element. It is only valid after `TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext` (732) was called and returned `True`.

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext` (732)

## 51.8 TFPGMap

### 51.8.1 Description

`TFPGMap` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for any key type and data type that do not require manual reference counting: For reference counted interface objects, `TFPGMap-InterfacedObjectData` (738) must be used.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (738)

### 51.8.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                     | Description   |
|------|----------------------------|---|
| 734  | <code>Add</code>           | Add a key and value to the map                              |
| 734  | <code>AddOrSetData</code>  | Add data with given or set value if the key already exists. |
| 733  | <code>Create</code>        | Create a new instance of the map                            |
| 734  | <code>Find</code>          | Find item based on key                                      |
| 735  | <code>IndexOf</code>       | Find index of a key in the list.                            |
| 735  | <code>IndexOfData</code>   | Find index of data value in the list.                       |
| 735  | <code>InsertKey</code>     | Insert a new key in the list                                |
| 735  | <code>InsertKeyData</code> | Insert a new key with associated data in the list           |
| 736  | <code>Remove</code>        | Remove a key from the list                                  |
| 734  | <code>TryGetData</code>    | Find data or return default                                 |

### 51.8.3 Property overview

| Page | Properties                 | Access | Description                             |
|------|----------------------------|--------|---|
| 736  | <code>Data</code>          | rw     | Indexed access to the data in the list  |
| 737  | <code>KeyData</code>       | rw     | Access to data based on key             |
| 736  | <code>Keys</code>          | rw     | Indexed access to the keys in the list. |
| 737  | <code>OnCompare</code>     | rw     | Alias for <code>OnKeyCompare</code>     |
| 738  | <code>OnDataCompare</code> | rw     | Compare function for data values.       |
| 737  | <code>OnKeyCompare</code>  | rw     | Compare function for key values.        |

### 51.8.4 TFPGMap.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of the map

**Declaration:** `constructor Create`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` (761) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (762)

### 51.8.5 TFPGMap.Add

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new key AKey of generic type TKey with data value AData to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an EListError (723) exception is raised. If Duplicates (765) is set to dupError and a duplicate key is added, an EListError (723) exception is raised.

See also: TFPGMap.Keys (736), TFPGMap.IndexOf (735), TFPGMap.KeyData (737), TFPGMap.Data (736), TFPSMap.Duplicates (765)

### 51.8.6 TFPGMap.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Find will search the key equal to AKey and return its index in AIndex. The return value of the function is True if an exact match for AKey is found, False otherwise.

The behaviour of Find is undefined if the map is not sorted. For unsorted maps, use IndexOf (735) instead.

See also: TFPGMap.IndexOf (735), TFPGMap.IndexOfData (735)

### 51.8.7 TFPGMap.TryGetData

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: TryGetData will search the map for AKey and return True or False depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in AData, if it is not found a default value (using Default) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TFPGMap.Find (734)

### 51.8.8 TFPGMap.AddOrSetData

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: AddOrSetData will check if key AKey already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with AData. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value AData.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.TryGetData` (734), `TFPGMap.Add` (734), `TFPGMap.Find` (734)

### 51.8.9 `TFPGMap.IndexOf`

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.Find` (734), `TFPGMap.IndexOfData` (735)

### 51.8.10 `TFPGMap.IndexOfData`

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.Find` (734), `TFPGMap.IndexOf` (735)

### 51.8.11 `TFPGMap.InsertKey`

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (735), `TFPGMap.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761), `TFPSMap.Remove` (764)

### 51.8.12 `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData`

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (735), `TFPGMap.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761), `TFPGMap.Remove` (736)

### 51.8.13 TFPGMap.Remove

**Synopsis:** Remove a key from the list

**Declaration:** `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (735), `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (735), `TFPGMap.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761)

### 51.8.14 TFPGMap.Keys

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the keys in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMap.Data` (736), `TFPGMap.KeyData` (737)

### 51.8.15 TFPGMap.Data

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the data in the list

**Declaration:** `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMap.Keys` (736), `TFPGMap.KeyData` (737)

### 51.8.16 TFPGMap.KeyData

Synopsis: Access to data based on key

Declaration: `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (723) will be raised.

Errors: If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMap.Keys` (736), `TFPGMap.Data` (736)

### 51.8.17 TFPGMap.OnCompare

Synopsis: Alias for `OnKeyCompare`

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCompare` is a deprecated property, use `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` (737) instead.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` (737)

### 51.8.18 TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: `Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnKeyCompare` can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnDataCompare` (738)

### 51.8.19 TFPGMap.OnDataCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: `Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDataCompare` can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` ([737](#))

## 51.9 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData

### 51.9.1 Description

`TFPGInterfacedObjectMap` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for any key type, with associated data type that requires manual reference counting: any type which implements `IInterface`. For non-reference counted objects, `TFPGMap` ([733](#)) should be used.

This map class is entirely equivalent to `TFPGMap` ([733](#)), but operates on data items that require additional reference counting code on the data.

See also: `TFPGMap` ([733](#))

### 51.9.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                     | Description   |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">739</a> | <code>Add</code>           | Add a key and value to the map                              |
| <a href="#">740</a> | <code>AddOrSetData</code>  | Add data with given or set value if the key already exists. |
| <a href="#">739</a> | <code>Create</code>        | Create a new instance of the map                            |
| <a href="#">739</a> | <code>Find</code>          | Find item based on key                                      |
| <a href="#">740</a> | <code>IndexOf</code>       | Find index of a key in the list.                            |
| <a href="#">740</a> | <code>IndexOfData</code>   | Find index of data value in the list.                       |
| <a href="#">741</a> | <code>InsertKey</code>     | Insert a new key in the list                                |
| <a href="#">741</a> | <code>InsertKeyData</code> | Insert a new key with associated data in the list           |
| <a href="#">741</a> | <code>Remove</code>        | Remove a key from the list                                  |
| <a href="#">740</a> | <code>TryGetData</code>    | Find data or return default                                 |

### 51.9.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties    | Access | Description                             |
|---------------------|---------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">742</a> | Data          | rw     | Indexed access to the data in the list  |
| <a href="#">742</a> | KeyData       | rw     | Access to data based on key             |
| <a href="#">741</a> | Keys          | rw     | Indexed access to the keys in the list. |
| <a href="#">742</a> | OnCompare     | rw     | Alias for OnKeyCompare                  |
| <a href="#">743</a> | OnDataCompare | rw     | Compare function for data values.       |
| <a href="#">743</a> | OnKeyCompare  | rw     | Compare function for key values.        |

### 51.9.4 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the map

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` ([761](#)) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` ([762](#))

### 51.9.5 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new key `AKey` of generic type `TKey` with data value `AData` to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised. If `Duplicates` ([765](#)) is set to `dupError` and a duplicate key is added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` ([741](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([740](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` ([742](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` ([742](#)), `TFPS.Duplicates` ([722](#))

### 51.9.6 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Find` will search the first key smaller than or equal to `AKey` and return its index in `AIndex`. If the key was not found then -1 is returned. The return value of the function is `True` if an exact match for `AKey` is found, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([740](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData` ([740](#))

**51.9.7 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData**

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryGetData` will search the map for `AKey` and return `True` or `False` depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in `AData`, if it is not found a default value (using `Default`) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([739](#))

**51.9.8 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.AddOrSetData**

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddOrSetData` will check if key `AKey` already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with `AData`. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value `AData`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData` ([740](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` ([739](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([739](#))

**51.9.9 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([739](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData` ([740](#))

**51.9.10 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData**

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([739](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([740](#))

**51.9.11 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData` (741), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` (739), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (722), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove` (722)

**51.9.12 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey` (741), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` (739), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (722), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove` (741)

**51.9.13 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (735), `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (735), `TFPGMap.Add` (734), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (738)

**51.9.14 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the keys in the list.

Declaration: `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` (742), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` (742)

### 51.9.15 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the data in the list

**Declaration:** `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` (741), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` (742)

### 51.9.16 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData

**Synopsis:** Access to data based on key

**Declaration:** `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (723) will be raised.

**Errors:** If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` (741), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` (742)

### 51.9.17 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnCompare

**Synopsis:** Alias for `OnKeyCompare`

**Declaration:** `Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `OnCompare` is a deprecated property, use `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` (743) instead.

**See also:** `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` (743)

### 51.9.18 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: `Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnKeyCompare` can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare` ([743](#))

### 51.9.19 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: `Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDataCompare` can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` ([743](#))

## 51.10 TFPGMapObject

### 51.10.1 Description

`TFPGMapObject` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for object types, but not objects with automated reference counting: For reference counted interface objects, `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` ([738](#)) must be used.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` ([738](#))

**51.10.2 Method overview**

| Page                | Method        | Description   |
|---------------------|---------------|---|
| <a href="#">744</a> | Add           | Add a key and value to the map                              |
| <a href="#">745</a> | AddOrSetData  | Add data with given or set value if the key already exists. |
| <a href="#">744</a> | Create        | Create a new instance of the map                            |
| <a href="#">745</a> | Find          | Find item based on key                                      |
| <a href="#">745</a> | IndexOf       | Find index of a key in the list.                            |
| <a href="#">746</a> | IndexOfData   | Find index of data value in the list.                       |
| <a href="#">746</a> | InsertKey     | Insert a new key in the list                                |
| <a href="#">746</a> | InsertKeyData | Insert a new key with associated data in the list           |
| <a href="#">746</a> | Remove        | Remove a key from the list                                  |
| <a href="#">745</a> | TryGetData    | Find data or return default                                 |

**51.10.3 Property overview**

| Page                | Properties    | Access | Description                             |
|---------------------|---------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">747</a> | Data          | rw     | Indexed access to the data in the list  |
| <a href="#">747</a> | KeyData       | rw     | Access to data based on key             |
| <a href="#">747</a> | Keys          | rw     | Indexed access to the keys in the list. |
| <a href="#">748</a> | OnCompare     | rw     | Alias for OnKeyCompare                  |
| <a href="#">748</a> | OnDataCompare | rw     | Compare function for data values.       |
| <a href="#">748</a> | OnKeyCompare  | rw     | Compare function for key values.        |

**51.10.4 TFPGMapObject.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the map

Declaration: `constructor Create(AFreeObjects: Boolean)`  
`constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` ([761](#)) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` ([762](#))

**51.10.5 TFPGMapObject.Add**

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new key `AKey` of generic type `TKey` with data object `AData` to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised. If `Duplicates` ([765](#)) is set to `dupError` and a duplicate key is added, an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Keys` ([747](#)), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` ([745](#)), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` ([747](#)), `TFPGMapObject.Data` ([747](#)), `TFPSMap.Duplicates` ([765](#))

### 51.10.6 TFPGMapObject.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` will search the first key smaller than or equal to `AKey` and return its index in `AIndex`. If the key was not found then -1 is returned. The return value of the function is `True` if an exact match for `AKey` is found, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` (745), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData` (746)

### 51.10.7 TFPGMapObject.TryGetData

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryGetData` will search the map for `AKey` and return `True` or `False` depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in `AData`, if it is not found a default value (using `Default`) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (745)

### 51.10.8 TFPGMapObject.AddOrSetData

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddOrSetData` will check if key `AKey` already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with `AData`. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value `AData`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.TryGetData` (745), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (744), `TFPGMapObject.Find` (745)

### 51.10.9 TFPGMapObject.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (745), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData` (746)

**51.10.10 TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData**

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of object `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (745), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` (745)

**51.10.11 TFPGMapObject.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData` (746), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (744), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761), `TFPSMap.Remove` (764)

**51.10.12 TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.InsertKey` (746), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (744), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761), `TFPGMapObject.Remove` (746)

**51.10.13 TFPGMapObject.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFPGMapObject.InsertKey` (746), `TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData` (746), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (744), `TFPSMap.Delete` (761)

### 51.10.14 TFPGMapObject.Keys

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the keys in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapObject.Data` (747), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` (747)

### 51.10.15 TFPGMapObject.Data

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the data in the list

**Declaration:** `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapObject.Keys` (747), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` (747)

### 51.10.16 TFPGMapObject.KeyData

**Synopsis:** Access to data based on key

**Declaration:** `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (723) will be raised.

**Errors:** If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGMapObject.Keys` (747), `TFPGMapObject.Data` (747)

**51.10.17 TFPGMapObject.OnCompare**

Synopsis: Alias for `OnKeyCompare`

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnCompare` is a deprecated property, use `TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare` (748) instead.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare` (748)

**51.10.18 TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare**

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: `Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnKeyCompare` can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare` (748)

**51.10.19 TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare**

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: `Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDataCompare` can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare` (748)

## 51.11 TFPGObjectList

### 51.11.1 Description

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any class type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` (753) or `classes.TFPList` (722) or `TFPObjectList`

See also: `TFPSList` (753), `classes.TFPList` (722)

### 51.11.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method                     | Description   |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">749</a> | <code>Add</code>           | Add new object of class <code>T</code> to the list. |
| <a href="#">751</a> | <code>AddList</code>       | Adds the elements from another list                 |
| <a href="#">751</a> | <code>Assign</code>        | Copy objects from Source list                       |
| <a href="#">749</a> | <code>Create</code>        | Instantiate a new object list.                      |
| <a href="#">750</a> | <code>Extract</code>       | Extract an item from the list                       |
| <a href="#">750</a> | <code>GetEnumerator</code> | Return a list enumerator for <code>T</code> .       |
| <a href="#">750</a> | <code>IndexOf</code>       | Index of item                                       |
| <a href="#">751</a> | <code>Insert</code>        | Insert a new object in the list                     |
| <a href="#">751</a> | <code>Remove</code>        | Remove an object from the list.                     |
| <a href="#">752</a> | <code>Sort</code>          | Sort the objects in the list                        |

### 51.11.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties               | Access | Description                            |
|---------------------|--------------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">752</a> | <code>First</code>       | rw     | First non-nil item                     |
| <a href="#">753</a> | <code>FreeObjects</code> | rw     | Does the list own the objects or not?  |
| <a href="#">752</a> | <code>Items</code>       | rw     | Indexed access to objects in the list. |
| <a href="#">752</a> | <code>Last</code>        | rw     | Last non- <code>Nil</code> object      |
| <a href="#">753</a> | <code>List</code>        | r      | Internal list pointer                  |

### 51.11.4 TFPGObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size and will initialize `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753) with `FreeObjects`.

If `FreeObjects` is true, then the list owns the objects. Freeing or clearing the list will remove all objects from memory by calling the destructor. Deleting or removing an item from the list will also dispose of the element.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753)

### 51.11.5 TFPGObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add new object of class `T` to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of class type `T` to the list and returns the position at which the item was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Extract` (750), `TFPGObjectList.Items` (752), `TFPGObjectList.IndexOf` (750)

### 51.11.6 TFPGObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or `Nil` if it was not found.

The extracted object will not be destroyed even if the list owns the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (755)

### 51.11.7 TFPGObjectList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for `T`.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` (732).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` (732)

### 51.11.8 TFPGObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of item

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the item does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Items` (752), `TFPGObjectList.Insert` (751), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (749)

### 51.11.9 TFPGObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new object (`Item`) in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` (760).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (731), `TFPGList.Insert` (729), `TFPSList.Add` (755)

### 51.11.10 TFPGObjectList.AddList

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.AddList` (730), `TFPSList.AddList` (758), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (749)

### 51.11.11 TFPGObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy objects from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

Take care if both the list owns the objects (i.e. have `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753) set to `True`), this may result to access violations.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (755), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (749)

### 51.11.12 TFPGObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first object is removed.

If the list owns the objects, (`TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753) is set to `True`) then the object is freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.IndexOf` (750), `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753)

**51.11.13 TFPGObjectList.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the objects in the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the objects are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

Errors: None.

**51.11.14 TFPGObjectList.First**

Synopsis: First non-nil item

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-nil item. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` ([761](#)), `TFPGList.Last` ([731](#)), `TFPSList.Pack` ([759](#))

**51.11.15 TFPGObjectList.Last**

Synopsis: Last non-`Nil` object

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Last` returns the last non-`Nil` object. If no such element is present, `Nil`. is returned.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.First` ([752](#)), `TFPSList.Last` ([761](#))

**51.11.16 TFPGObjectList.Items**

Synopsis: Indexed access to objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Items` provides indexed access to the objects in the list. The objects can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (760).

If the list owns the objects, (`TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753) is set to `True`) then the previous object at position `Index` is freed when setting the property.

**Errors:** If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753)

### 51.11.17 TFPGObjectList.List

**Synopsis:** Internal list pointer

**Declaration:** `Property List : PTypeList`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `List` is the internal list of objects. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Items` (752)

### 51.11.18 TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects

**Synopsis:** Does the list own the objects or not?

**Declaration:** `Property FreeObjects : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `FreeObjects` indicates whether the list owns the objects or not. If set to `True`, freeing or clearing the list will remove all objects from memory by calling the destructor. Deleting or removing an item from the list will also dispose of the element.

The initial value for this property is set in the constructor and is `True` by default.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (753)

## 51.12 TFPSList

### 51.12.1 Description

`TFPSList` can be seen as the generalized equivalent of the classes unit `TFPList` (722) list. It is used as a base class for the `TFPGList` (727), `TFPGMap` (733), `TFPGObjectList` (749), `TFPGInterfaceObjectList` (723) and `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (738) generic classes.

This list is not meant to be used directly, it is an auxiliary class for the actual generic list classes.

See also: `classes.TFPList` (722), `TFPGMap` (733), `TFPGObjectList` (749), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList` (723), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (738)

### 51.12.2 Method overview

| Page                | Method        | Description   |
|---------------------|---------------|---|
| <a href="#">755</a> | Add           | Add a new item to the list                              |
| <a href="#">758</a> | AddList       | Adds the elements from another list                     |
| <a href="#">758</a> | Assign        | Copy one list to another                                |
| <a href="#">755</a> | Clear         | Clear the list  |
| <a href="#">754</a> | Create        | Create a new instance of <code>TFPSList</code>          |
| <a href="#">755</a> | Delete        | Delete an item from the list                            |
| <a href="#">756</a> | DeleteRange   | Delete a range of elements                              |
| <a href="#">754</a> | Destroy       | Destroy the list instance.                              |
| <a href="#">756</a> | Error         | Raise an <code>EListError</code> exception.             |
| <a href="#">756</a> | Exchange      | Exchange two items in the list                          |
| <a href="#">756</a> | Expand        | Expand the capacity of the list                         |
| <a href="#">757</a> | Extract       | delete an element from the list                         |
| <a href="#">757</a> | IndexOf       | Search an item in the list                              |
| <a href="#">757</a> | Insert        | Insert a new item in the list.                          |
| <a href="#">755</a> | ItemIsManaged |   |
| <a href="#">758</a> | Move          | Moves an item from one position in the list to another. |
| <a href="#">759</a> | Pack          | Remove empty items from the list                        |
| <a href="#">758</a> | Remove        | Remove the item from the list                           |
| <a href="#">759</a> | Sort          | Sort the list   |

### 51.12.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties | Access | Description                                 |
|---------------------|------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">759</a> | Capacity   | rw     | Current capacity of the list                |
| <a href="#">760</a> | Count      | rw     | Current element count                       |
| <a href="#">761</a> | First      | rw     | Pointer to first non-empty item in the list |
| <a href="#">760</a> | Items      | rw     | Items in the list                           |
| <a href="#">760</a> | ItemSize   | r      | Size of the items in the list               |
| <a href="#">761</a> | Last       | rw     | Pointer to last non-empty item in the list  |
| <a href="#">760</a> | List       | r      | Internal list pointer                       |

### 51.12.4 TFPSList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFPSList`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AItemSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPSList`, and initializes the item size to `ItemSize`, which defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSList.ItemSize` ([760](#)), `TFPSList.Destroy` ([754](#))

### 51.12.5 TFPSList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` clears and cleans up the list instance. Depending on the descendant, this may also remove the items in the list from memory.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (755)

### 51.12.6 TFPSList.ItemsIsManaged

**Declaration:** `class function ItemIsManaged : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

### 51.12.7 TFPSList.Add

**Synopsis:** Add a new item to the list

**Declaration:** `function Add(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Add` adds the item pointed to by `Item` to the list. It is not the pointer `Item` itself which is added to the list, but rather the `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760) bytes of memory to which `Item` is pointing.

The function returns the index of the newly added item.

**Errors:** If the maximum list size is reached, an `EListError` (723) is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPSList.Items` (760), `TFPSList.Clear` (755)

### 51.12.8 TFPSList.Clear

**Synopsis:** Clear the list

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Clear` removes all the items in the list. Depending on the descendent, the list items themselves may be cleared as well.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPSList.Items` (760), `TFPSList.Add` (755)

### 51.12.9 TFPSList.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete an item from the list

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Delete` deletes the item at position `Index` from the list. Depending on the descendent, the list items itself may be cleared as well.

**Errors:** If `Index` is out of bounds, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (755), `TFPSList.Items` (760), `TFPSList.Add` (755)

**51.12.10 TFPSList.DeleteRange**

Synopsis: Delete a range of elements

Declaration: `procedure DeleteRange(IndexFrom: Integer; IndexTo: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteRange` deletes elements from `IndexFrom` till `IndexTo`. Both indexes are zero based, and `IndexTo` must be bigger than `IndexFrom`. Using this method results in less moving of data in memory, and as such is more effective than deleting the elements one by one using `TFPSList.Delete` (755).

Errors: If invalid indexes are specified, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `EListError` (723), `TFPSList.Delete` (755)

**51.12.11 TFPSList.Error**

Synopsis: Raise an `EListError` exception.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` is an auxiliary routine which raises an `EListError` (723) exception formatted from `Msg` and `Data`.

See also: `EListError` (723)

**51.12.12 TFPSList.Exchange**

Synopsis: Exchange two items in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exchange` will exchange 2 items at positions `Index1` and `Index2` in the list.

Errors: If `Index1` or `Index2` are out of bounds, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

**51.12.13 TFPSList.Expand**

Synopsis: Expand the capacity of the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPSList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` will expand the capacity of the list, and returns itself.

Errors: If the size will become larger than `MaxListSize` (722) an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `MaxListSize` (722), `TFPSList.Capacity` (759)

**51.12.14 TFPSList.Extract**

Synopsis: delete an element from the list

Declaration: `procedure Extract (Item: Pointer; ResultPtr: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the item pointed to by `Item` from the list. It returns a pointer to the actually removed item from the list. The item is searched using `TFPSList.IndexOf` (757). If the item is not found, `nil` is returned.

Some descendents own the items in the list. `Extract` will not dispose of the item, as `TFPSList.Delete` (755) does.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPSList.Add` (755), `TFPSList.IndexOf` (757)

**51.12.15 TFPSList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Search an item in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOf (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches in the list for the item pointed to by `Item`, and returns the position (0-based index) of the item in the list, or -1 if it was not found. The items are compared using `sysutils.CompareMem` (722), so an exact memory layout match.

See also: `TFPSList.Extract` (757)

**51.12.16 TFPSList.Insert**

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`  
`function Insert (Index: Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` comes in 2 overloaded version. The version without `Item` creates a slot for a new item at position `Index` in the list, and returns a pointer to the new slot. The slot will be of size `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760).

The version with `Item` argument will allocate a slot in the list at position `Index` and will copy the item pointed to by `Item` to the slot in the list.

In both cases, `Index` must be 0-based.

Errors: If `Index` is invalid, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (755), `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPSList.Extract` (757)

### 51.12.17 TFPSList.Move

Synopsis: Moves an item from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the item at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`

Errors: If `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` (756)

### 51.12.18 TFPSList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy one list to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign (Obj: TFPSList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and will add all items from `Obj` to the list. The items are copied one by one.

Errors: If the `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760) differs for the two lists, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (755)

### 51.12.19 TFPSList.AddList

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (Obj: TFPSList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Obj` to the current list. A check is done that the 2 lists have the same element size.

Errors: If the lists have different element size, an `EListError` (723) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (755), `EListError` (723)

### 51.12.20 TFPSList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove the item from the list

Declaration: `function Remove (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and deletes it from the list. It returns the index of the item that was removed, or -1 if it was not found. Only the first match is removed.

If a descendent of `TFPSList` owns the object of the list, the item is removed from memory. If this is not desired, then `TFPSList.Extract` (757) must be used instead.

See also: `TFPSList.Extract` (757), `TFPSList.IndexOf` (757)

### 51.12.21 TFPSList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove empty items from the list

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` will remove all empty items from the list. An item is considered to be empty if the memory location where the item is stored contains only zero bytes.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (755), `TFPSList.Sort` (759)

### 51.12.22 TFPSList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TFPSListCompareFunc)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort`> sorts the items in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first item is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second item in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first item is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second item in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (722)

### 51.12.23 TFPSList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity of the list

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` is the current capacity (maximum amount of elements) of the list. The list capacity will expand automatically if an item is added and the capacity is reached (i.e. `TFPSList.Count` (760) equals `capacity`). Expanding the list is an expensive operation involving reallocation of memory and moving of list data in memory, so capacity can be set to a large amount to avoid frequent reallocations.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (760), `TFPSList.Expand` (756), `TFPSList.Items` (760)

**51.12.24 TFPSList.Count**

Synopsis: Current element count

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current amount of elements in the list. It is initially zero. A valid item index is always a value between zero and `Count-1`.

See also: `TFPSList.Items` (760), `TFPSList.Capacity` (759)

**51.12.25 TFPSList.Items**

Synopsis: Items in the list

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the list, the returned pointers are not the actual list items, but pointers to the elements in the list. The items can be get or set.

When assigning to the `Items` property, the memory area pointed to by the assigned pointer is copied to the list. Exactly `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760) bytes are copied.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (760).

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (723) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760), `TFPSList.Count` (760)

**51.12.26 TFPSList.ItemSize**

Synopsis: Size of the items in the list

Declaration: `Property ItemSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ItemSize` is the memory size of the items in the list. It is specified in the constructor and cannot be changed during the lifetime of the list.

See also: `TFPSList.Create` (754)

**51.12.27 TFPSList.List**

Synopsis: Internal list pointer

Declaration: `Property List : PByte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is a pointer to the memory area used for the items in the list. It should not be manipulated.

**51.12.28 TFPSList.First**

Synopsis: Pointer to first non-empty item in the list

Declaration: `Property First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-empty item in the list. An item is considered empty if consists of `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760) zero bytes.

If there are no non-empty items in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.Last` (761), `TFPSList.Pack` (759)

**51.12.29 TFPSList.Last**

Synopsis: Pointer to last non-empty item in the list

Declaration: `Property Last : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-empty item in the list. An item is considered empty if consists of `TFPSList.ItemSize` (760) zero bytes.

If there are no non-empty items in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.Last` (761), `TFPSList.Pack` (759)

**51.13 TFPSMap****51.13.1 Description**

`TFPSMap` can be used to create a map for any type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a map which is a generalized list with an arbitrary type as the list index (called the key).

This class should normally not be used directly, instead use one of the generic map objects such as `TFPGMap` (733).

See also: `TFPGMap` (733)

**51.13.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method        | Description  |
|------|---------------|--|
| 762  | Add           | Add a key, value pair to the map.                              |
| 762  | Create        | Create a new map with given key and data size.                 |
| 762  | Find          | Find data using the associated key                             |
| 763  | IndexOf       | Index of key pointed to by <code>AKey</code>                   |
| 763  | IndexOfData   | Index of data item <code>AData</code>                          |
| 763  | Insert        | Insert a new slot for key and associated data item in the list |
| 764  | InsertKey     | Insert a key in the list                                       |
| 764  | InsertKeyData | Insert a key and associated in the list                        |
| 764  | Remove        | Remove a key/value pair from the map.                          |
| 764  | Sort          | Sort the list according to key                                 |

### 51.13.3 Property overview

| Page                | Properties       | Access | Description                                       |
|---------------------|------------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">766</a> | Data             | rw     | Indexed access to the locations of all data items |
| <a href="#">765</a> | DataSize         | r      | Size (in bytes) for the data associated with keys |
| <a href="#">765</a> | Duplicates       | rw     | What to do with duplicate key values              |
| <a href="#">766</a> | KeyData          | rw     | Access to data locations using key                |
| <a href="#">766</a> | Keys             | rw     | Indexed access to the locations of all keys       |
| <a href="#">765</a> | KeySize          | r      | Size (in bytes) for the key                       |
| <a href="#">767</a> | OnDataPtrCompare | rw     | Callback to compare 2 data items                  |
| <a href="#">767</a> | OnKeyPtrCompare  | rw     | Callback to compare 2 keys                        |
| <a href="#">767</a> | OnPtrCompare     | rw     | Alias for OnKeyPtrCompare                         |
| <a href="#">766</a> | Sorted           | rw     | Is the map permanently sorted on key ?            |

### 51.13.4 TFPSMap.Create

Synopsis: Create a new map with given key and data size.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AKeySize: Integer; ADataSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TFPSMap` instance and initializes `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([765](#)) and `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([765](#)) with `AKeySize` and `ADataSize`, respectively. It also initializes the `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` ([767](#)) and `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` ([767](#)) properties to functions that compare memory blocks.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSMap.Destroy` ([761](#)), `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([765](#)), `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([765](#)), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` ([767](#)), `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` ([767](#))

### 51.13.5 TFPSMap.Add

Synopsis: Add a key, value pair to the map.

Declaration: `function Add(AKey: Pointer; AData: Pointer) : Integer`  
`function Add(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the memory pointed to by `AData` to the map using the memory pointed to by `AKey` as the key. If no data is specified, it allocates a slot for `AKey` and returns a pointer to that slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached, `Add` will raise an `EListError` ([723](#)) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Insert` ([763](#)), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` ([763](#))

### 51.13.6 TFPSMap.Find

Synopsis: Find data using the associated key

Declaration: `function Find(AKey: Pointer; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Find` searches for the first key less than or equal to `AKey` and returns its index in the list in `Index`. It returns `True` if an exact match for the key was found. It returns `False` if the key was not found, and `Index` is then set to `-1`.

This function performs a binary search using the key comparing function specified in `OnKeyPtrCompare` (767).

**Errors:** if `OnKeyPtrCompare` is not set, an access violation will occur.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767)

### 51.13.7 TFPSMap.IndexOf

**Synopsis:** Index of key pointed to by `AKey`

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of the element with a key pointed to by `AKey`. It returns `-1` if the key was not found.

If the list is sorted, then a binary search is performed, otherwise a linear search is used to find the key.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Find` (762), `TFPSMap.IndexOfData` (763), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766), `TFPSMap.Data` (766)

### 51.13.8 TFPSMap.IndexOfData

**Synopsis:** Index of data item `AData`

**Declaration:** `function IndexOfData(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `IndexOfData` returns the index of the element with data pointed to by `AData`. It returns `-1` if the data item was not found. The search is always performed using a linear search.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Find` (762), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (763), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766), `TFPSMap.Data` (766)

### 51.13.9 TFPSMap.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a new slot for key and associated data item in the list

**Declaration:** `function Insert(Index: Integer) : Pointer`  
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; out AKey: Pointer; out AData: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Insert` will allocate a new slot in the list. It returns a pointer to the new slot. If `Akey` and `AData` are given, then they will point to the positions in the slot for the key and data items.

**Errors:** If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `Insert` will raise an `EListError` (723) exception.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Add` (762), `TFPSMap.InsertKey` (764), `TFPSMap.InsertKeyData` (764)

**51.13.10 TFPSMap.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; AKey: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` will allocate a new slot in the list for a key value as pointed to by `AKey`, and copy the key pointed to by `AKey` to the slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `InsertKey` will raise an `EListError` (723) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Add` (762), `TFPSMap.Insert` (763), `TFPSMap.InsertKeyData` (764)

**51.13.11 TFPSMap.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a key and associated in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; AKey: Pointer; AData: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKeyData` will allocate a new slot in the list for a key value as pointed to by `AKey`, and copy the key pointed to by `AKey` as well as the data pointed to by `AData` to the newly allocated slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `InsertKeyData` will raise an `EListError` (723) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Add` (762), `TFPSMap.Insert` (763), `TFPSMap.InsertKey` (764)

**51.13.12 TFPSMap.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key/value pair from the map.

Declaration: `function Remove(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key/value pair pointing to by `AKey` from the map. It returns the index of `Akey` prior to removal from the list. If `AKey` was not found, -1 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (755), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (763)

**51.13.13 TFPSMap.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the list according to key

Declaration: `procedure Sort`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the list according to the key value, using the compare function provided in `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767)

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (767)

### 51.13.14 TFPSMap.Duplicates

Synopsis: What to do with duplicate key values

Declaration: `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Duplicates` can be set to determine what to do with duplicate key values in the map:

**dupIgnore** Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.

**dupAccept** Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.

**dupError** Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate.

The value is ignored if `Sorted` (766) is `False`.

See also: `TFPSMap.Sorted` (766), `types.TDuplicates` (722)

### 51.13.15 TFPSMap.KeySize

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) for the key

Declaration: `Property KeySize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `KeySize` is the size (in bytes) for the keys in the map. This size is initialized during list construction and defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (762), `TFPSMap.DataSize` (765), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (766)

### 51.13.16 TFPSMap.DataSize

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) for the data associated with keys

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DataSize` is the size (in bytes) for the data in the map. This size is initialized during list construction and defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (762), `TFPSMap.KeySize` (765), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (766), `TFPSMap.Data` (766)

**51.13.17 TFPSMap.Keys**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the locations of all keys

Declaration: `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Keys` provides indexed access to all keys. It does not return the key, but returns a pointer to the key value. When setting the `Keys` property, a pointer to the key value must be set, and the key value is copied from the pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.KeySize` (765), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (766), `TFPSMap.Data` (766)

**51.13.18 TFPSMap.Data**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the locations of all data items

Declaration: `Property Data[Index: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` provides indexed access to all data. It does not return the actual data, but returns a pointer to the data. When setting the `Data` property, a pointer to the data value must be set, and the data value is copied from the pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.DataSize` (765), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (766), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766)

**51.13.19 TFPSMap.KeyData**

Synopsis: Access to data locations using key

Declaration: `Property KeyData[Key: Pointer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyData` provides access to the data items, using their key value (as pointed to by `AKey`) as an index. When reading a non-existent key value, `Nil` is returned. If the key is found, a pointer to the associated data's location is returned. When writing, the key pointed to by `Key` is added if it was not present, and the data data is copied from the written pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.DataSize` (765), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (766), `TFPSMap.Data` (766), `TFPSMap.Keys` (766), `TFPSMap.KeySize` (765)

**51.13.20 TFPSMap.Sorted**

Synopsis: Is the map permanently sorted on key ?

Declaration: `Property Sorted : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Sorted` can be set to true to keep the map permanently sorted on key value. The sorting happens using `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767).

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767), `TFPSMap.Sort` (764), `TFPSMap.Duplicates` (765)

### 51.13.21 TFPSMap.OnPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Alias for `OnKeyPtrCompare`

**Declaration:** `Property OnPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `OnPtrCompare` is a deprecated alias for `OnKeyPtrCompare` (767).

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (767)

### 51.13.22 TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Callback to compare 2 keys

**Declaration:** `Property OnKeyPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `OnKeyPtrCompare` is used to compare the values of 2 keys. By default it simply compares the byte values of the key memory block. It can be set to any function that performs another comparison. (e.g. a function that treats the memory blocks as a string pointer and compare the actual strings).

This function is used to sort the list or find a key.

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (722), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (767), `TFPSMap.Sort` (764), `TFPSMap.Find` (762), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (763)

### 51.13.23 TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Callback to compare 2 data items

**Declaration:** `Property OnDataPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `OnKeyPtrCompare` is used to compare the values of 2 keys. By default it simply compares the byte values of the key memory block. It can be set to any function that performs another comparison. (e.g. a function that treats the memory blocks as a string pointer and compare the actual strings).

This function is used to find a data item (`IndexOf` (763)).

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (722), `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (767), `TFPSMap.IndexOfData` (763)

## Chapter 52

# Reference for unit 'fpwiderstring'

### 52.1 Used units

Table 52.1: Used units by unit 'fpwiderstring'

| Name        | Page                 |
|-------------|----------------------|
| System      | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unicodedata | <a href="#">2013</a> |

### 52.2 Overview

`fpwiderstring` implements Unicode string support for the Free Pascal RTL using native Object Pascal routines. It is meant to be used on operating systems where the operating system does not natively support Unicode transformations and operations.

In general, it is sufficient to include the unit in the uses clause of a program. The initialization code of the unit will set the Unicode string manager of the system unit to the object pascal implementation contained in this unit.

This unit needs Unicode collation and character set tables in order to be able to do its work correctly. These must be registered using the routines of the `unicodedata` ([768](#)) unit: the FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in `.bco` files which can be loaded using the `LoadCollation` ([2024](#)) routine.

In order for sorting and comparing of strings to work, a collation must be used. The collation in general depends on the internationalization of the application. Since the system unit does not know about collations, the collation must be set in the `fpWideString` unit using the `SetActiveCollation` ([769](#)) function. The collation can be set on a per-thread basis.

New threads get `DefaultCollationName` ([769](#)) as the active collation name.

The `fpwiderstring` unit performs conversions between Unicode and single-byte ansistring conversions (excluding UTF8). Support for various single-byte encodings are based on the `charset` ([768](#)) unit. This unit can be used to load single byte code pages. Various code page units such as `cp895`, `cp932`, `cp950` are provided by the "rtl-unicode" package.

The `fpwiderstring` requires at least the Default Unicode Collation Element Table to be registered (called `DUCET`). The `DUCET` encoding is provided by the `unicodeducet` unit. More information can be found in the `unicodedata` ([768](#)) unit.

## 52.3 Constants, types and variables

### 52.3.1 Variables

`DefaultCollationName` : `UnicodeString` = ''

`DefaultCollationName` is the collation name for new threads. It is empty by default.

## 52.4 Procedures and functions

### 52.4.1 `GetActiveCollation`

Synopsis: Return the currently active collation for the current thread

Declaration: `function GetActiveCollation : PUCA_DataBook`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetActiveCollation` returns the currently active collation, for the current thread, as set using the `SetActiveCollation` (769) function.

New threads get `DefaultCollationName` (769) as the active collation name. The collation can be changed per thread using the `SetActiveCollation` (769) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetActiveCollation` (769), `DefaultCollationName` (769)

### 52.4.2 `SetActiveCollation`

Synopsis: Set the active collation for the current thread.

Declaration: `function SetActiveCollation(const AName: UnicodeString) : Boolean`  
`function SetActiveCollation(const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetActiveCollation` sets the collation used in the current thread of the application. This can be done using the name of the collation (`AName`) as registered or in the `unicodedata` (768) unit or using the actual collation data (`ACollation`).

Errors: If the collation `AName` was not found, or `ACollation` is nil, then `False` is returned.

See also: `GetActiveCollation` (769), `DefaultCollationName` (769)

## Chapter 53

# Reference for unit 'getopts'

### 53.1 Used units

Table 53.1: Used units by unit 'getopts'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 53.2 Overview

This document describes the GETOPTS unit for Free Pascal. It was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It now also works for all supported platforms.

The getopts unit provides a mechanism to handle command-line options in a structured way, much like the GNU getopts mechanism. It allows you to define the valid options for your program, and the unit will then parse the command-line options for you, and inform you of any errors.

### 53.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 53.3.1 Constants

`EndOfOptions = #255`

Returned by `getopt` ([772](#)), `getlongopts` ([771](#)) to indicate that there are no more options.

`No_Argument = 0`

Specifies that a long option does not take an argument.

`Optional_Argument = 2`

Specifies that a long option optionally takes an argument.

`OptSpecifier : Set of Char = ['-']`

Character indicating an option on the command-line.

`Required_Argument = 1`

Specifies that a long option needs an argument.

### 53.3.2 Types

`Orderings = (require_order, permute, return_in_order)`

Table 53.2: Enumeration values for type `Orderings`

| Value                        | Explanation  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>permute</code>         | Change command-line options.                         |
| <code>require_order</code>   | Don't touch the ordering of the command-line options |
| <code>return_in_order</code> | Return options in the correct order.                 |

Command-line ordering options.

`POption = ^TOption`

Pointer to `TOption` (775) record.

### 53.3.3 Variables

`OptArg : string`

Set to the argument of an option, if the option needs one.

`OptErr : Boolean`

Indicates whether `getopt()` prints error messages.

`OptInd : LongInt`

when all options have been processed, `optind` is the index of the first non-option parameter. This is a read-only variable. Note that it can become equal to `paramcount+1`.

`OptOpt : Char`

In case of an error, contains the character causing the error.

## 53.4 Procedures and functions

### 53.4.1 GetLongOpts

Synopsis: Return next long option.

**Declaration:** `function GetLongOpts (ShortOpts: string; LongOpts: POption;  
var Longind: LongInt) : Char`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line, taking into account long options as well. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

if any of the option definitions in `LongOpts` array has the `Flag` pointer set, then the return value is the null character (`#0` or `char(0)`) and the actual option letter is written in the location pointed to by `Flag`.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. (see [Getopt \(772\)](#) for its description and use) `LongOpts` is a pointer to the first element of an array of `Option` records, the last of which needs a name of zero length.

The function tries to match the names even partially (i.e. `-app` will match e.g. the append option), but will report an error in case of ambiguity.

If the option needs an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Required_argument` (1), if the option optionally has an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Optional_argument` (2). If the option needs no argument, set `Has_arg` to zero.

Required arguments can be specified in two ways :

1. Pasted to the option : `-option=value`
2. As a separate argument : `-option value`

Optional arguments can only be specified through the first method.

**Errors:** see [Getopt \(772\)](#).

See also: [Getopt \(772\)](#)

### 53.4.2 GetOpt

**Synopsis:** Get next short option.

**Declaration:** `function GetOpt (ShortOpts: string) : Char`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. If a letter is followed by a colon (:), then that option needs an argument. If a letter is followed by 2 colons, the option has an optional argument. If the first character of `shortoptions` is a '+' then options following a non-option are regarded as non-options (standard Unix behavior). If it is a '-', then all non-options are treated as arguments of a option with character #0. This is useful for applications that require their options in the exact order as they appear on the command-line. If the first character of `shortoptions` is none of the above, options and non-options are permuted, so all non-options are behind all options. This allows options and non-options to be in random order on the command line.

**Errors:** Errors are reported through giving back a '?' character. `OptOpt` then gives the character which caused the error. If `OptErr` is `True` then `getopt` prints an error-message to `stdout`.

See also: [GetLongOpts \(771\)](#)

**Listing:** `./optex/optex.pp`

---

```

program testopt;

{ Program to depmonstrate the getopt function. }

{
  Valid calls to this program are
  optex —verbose —add me —delete you
  optex —append —create child
  optex -ab -c me -d you
  and so on
}
uses getopt;

var c : char;
    optionindex : Longint;
    theopts : array[1..7] of TOption;

begin
  with theopts[1] do
    begin
      name:= 'add';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[2] do
    begin
      name:= 'append';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[3] do
    begin
      name:= 'delete';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[4] do
    begin
      name:= 'verbose';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[5] do
    begin
      name:= 'create';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:= 'c'
    end;
  with theopts[6] do
    begin
      name:= 'file';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;

```

---

```

    value:=#0;
end;
with theopts[7] do
begin
    name:= '';
    has_arg:=0;
    flag:=nil;
end;
c:=#0;
repeat
    c:=getlongopts ('abc:d:012',@theo[1],optionindex);
    case c of
        '1','2','3','4','5','6','7','8','9' :
            begin
                writeln ('Got optind : ',c)
            end;
        #0 : begin
                write ('Long option : ',theo[optionindex].name);
                if theopts[optionindex].has_arg>0 then
                    writeln (' With value : ',optarg)
                else
                    writeln
                end;
                'a' : writeln ('Option a. ');
                'b' : writeln ('Option b. ');
                'c' : writeln ('Option c : ', optarg);
                'd' : writeln ('Option d : ', optarg);
                '?' : writeln ('Error with opt : ',optopt);
            end; { case }
    until c=endofoptions;
    if optind<=paramcount then
        begin
            write ('Non options : ');
            while optind<=paramcount do
                begin
                    write (paramstr(optind), ' ');
                    inc(optind)
                end;
            writeln
        end
    end.

```

---

## 53.5 TOption

```

TOption = record
public
    Name : string;
    Has_arg : Integer;
    Flag
    : PChar;
    Value : Char;
    procedure SetOption(const aName: string
    ; AHas_Arg: Integer;
    AFlag: PChar; AValue: Char
    );

```

end

The `TOption` type is used to communicate the long options to `GetLongOpts` (771). The `Name` field is the name of the option. `Has_arg` specifies if the option wants an argument, `Flag` is a pointer to a `char`, which is set to `Value`, if it is non-`nil`.

### 53.5.1 Method overview

| Page                | Method                 | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">775</a> | <code>SetOption</code> |             |

### 53.5.2 `TOption.SetOption`

**Declaration:** `procedure SetOption(const aName: string; AHas_Arg: Integer;  
                                  AFlag: PChar; AValue: Char)`

**Visibility:** `public`

## Chapter 54

# Reference for unit 'go32'

### 54.1 Used units

Table 54.1: Used units by unit 'go32'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 54.2 Overview

This document describes the GO32 unit for the Free Pascal compiler under dos. It was donated by Thomas Schatzl (tom\_at\_work@geocities.com), for which my thanks. This unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl.

Only the GO32V2 DPMI mode is discussed by me here due to the fact that new applications shouldn't be created with the older GO32V1 model. The go32v2 version is much more advanced and better. Additionally a lot of functions only work in DPMI mode anyway. I hope the following explanations and introductions aren't too confusing at all. If you notice an error or bug send it to the FPC mailing list or directly to me. So let's get started and happy and error free coding I wish you.... Thomas Schatzl, 25. August 1998

### 54.3 Real mode callbacks

The callback mechanism can be thought of as the converse of calling a real mode procedure (i.e. interrupt), which allows your program to pass information to a real mode program, or obtain services from it in a manner that's transparent to the real mode program. In order to make a real mode callback available, you must first get the real mode callback address of your procedure and the selector and offset of a register data structure. This real mode callback address (this is a segment:offset address) can be passed to a real mode program via a software interrupt, a dos memory block or any other convenient mechanism. When the real mode program calls the callback (via a far call), the DPMI host saves the registers contents in the supplied register data structure, switches into protected mode, and enters the callback routine with the following settings:

- interrupts disabled

- `%CS : %EIP` = 48 bit pointer specified in the original call to `get_rm_callback` (802)
- `%DS : %ESI` = 48 bit pointer to real mode `SS : SP`
- `%ES : %EDI` = 48 bit pointer of real mode register data structure.
- `%SS : %ESP` = locked protected mode stack
- All other registers undefined

The callback procedure can then extract its parameters from the real mode register data structure and/or copy parameters from the real mode stack to the protected mode stack. Recall that the segment register fields of the real mode register data structure contain segment or paragraph addresses that are not valid in protected mode. Far pointers passed in the real mode register data structure must be translated to virtual addresses before they can be used with a protected mode program. The callback procedure exits by executing an `IRET` with the address of the real mode register data structure in `%ES : %EDI`, passing information back to the real mode caller by modifying the contents of the real mode register data structure and/or manipulating the contents of the real mode stack. The callback procedure is responsible for setting the proper address for resumption of real mode execution into the real mode register data structure; typically, this is accomplished by extracting the return address from the real mode stack and placing it into the `%CS : %EIP` fields of the real mode register data structure. After the `IRET`, the DPMI host switches the CPU back into real mode, loads ALL registers with the contents of the real mode register data structure, and finally returns control to the real mode program. All variables and code touched by the callback procedure **MUST** be locked to prevent page faults.

See also: `get_rm_callback` (802), `free_rm_callback` (797), `lock_code` (813), `lock_data` (813)

## 54.4 Executing software interrupts

Simply execute a `realintr()` call with the desired interrupt number and the supplied register data structure. But some of these interrupts require you to supply them a pointer to a buffer where they can store data to or obtain data from in memory. These interrupts are real mode functions and so they only can access the first Mb of linear address space, not FPC's data segment. For this reason FPC supplies a pre-initialized dos memory location within the GO32 unit. This buffer is internally used for dos functions too and so it's contents may change when calling other procedures. It's size can be obtained with `tb_size` (823) and it's linear address via `transfer_buffer` (824). Another way is to allocate a completely new dos memory area via the `global_dos_alloc` (809) function for your use and supply its real mode address.

See also: `tb_size` (823), `transfer_buffer` (824), `global_dos_alloc` (809), `global_dos_free` (811), `realintr` (815)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/softint.pp`

---

```
{ Executes a real mode software interrupt

Exactly the interrupt call to get the DOS version.

get DOS version Int 21h / function 30h
Input:
    AH = $30
    AL = $1
Return:
    AL = major version number
    AH = minor version number
}
```

```

uses
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;

begin
    r.ah := $30;
    r.al := $01;
    realintr($21, r);
    WriteLn('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./go32ex/rmpmint.pp

---

*{ This example shows the difference between protected and real mode interrupts; it redirects the protected mode handler to an own handler which returns an impossible function result and calls it afterwards. Then the real mode handler is called directly, to show the difference between the two. }*

*Used Interrupt:*  
*get DOS version Int 21h / function 30h*  
*Input: AH = \$30*  
*AL = \$1*  
*Return: AL = major version number*  
*AH = minor version number*  
*}*

```

uses
    crt ,
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;
    { temporary variable used for the protected mode int call }
    axreg : Word;

    oldint21h : tseginfo;
    newint21h : tseginfo;

{ this is our int 21h protected mode interupt handler. It catches
the function call to get the DOS version, all other int 21h calls
are redirected to the old handler; it is written in assembly
because the old handler can't be called with pascal }
procedure int21h_handler; assembler;
asm
    cmpw $0x3001, %ax
    jne .LCallOld
    movw $0x3112, %ax
    iret

.LCallOld:
    ljmp %cs:oldint21h
end;

{ a small helper procedure, which waits for a keypress }
procedure resume;

```

```

begin
    Writeln;
    Write('— press any key to resume —'); readkey;
    gotoxy(1, wherey); clreol;
end;

begin
    { see the text messages for further detail }
    clrscr;
    Writeln('Executing real mode interrupt');
    resume;
    r.ah := $30; r.al := $01; realintr($21, r);
    Writeln('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
    resume;
    Writeln('Executing protected mode interrupt without our own',
            ' handler');
    Writeln;
    asm
        movb $0x30, %ah
        movb $0x01, %al
        int $0x21
        movw %ax, axreg
    end;
    Writeln('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
    resume;
    Writeln('As you can see the DPML hosts default protected mode',
            ' handler');
    Writeln('simply redirects it to the real mode handler');
    resume;
    Writeln('Now exchanging the protected mode interrupt with our ',
            ' own handler');
    resume;

    newint21h.offset := @int21h_handler;
    newint21h.segment := get_cs;
    get_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);
    set_pm_interrupt($21, newint21h);

    Writeln('Executing real mode interrupt again');
    resume;
    r.ah := $30; r.al := $01; realintr($21, r);
    Writeln('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
    Writeln;
    Writeln('See, it didn''t change in any way.');
    resume;
    Writeln('Now calling protected mode interrupt');
    resume;
    asm
        movb $0x30, %ah
        movb $0x01, %al
        int $0x21
        movw %ax, axreg
    end;
    Writeln('DOS v', lo(axreg), '.', hi(axreg), ' detected');
    Writeln;
    Writeln('Now you can see that there''s a distinction between ',
            ' the two ways of calling interrupts...');
    set_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);

```

---

end.

---

## 54.5 Software interrupts

Ordinarily, a handler installed with `set_pm_interrupt` (820) only services software interrupts that are executed in protected mode; real mode software interrupts can be redirected by `set_rm_interrupt` (822).

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (822), `get_rm_interrupt` (806), `set_pm_interrupt` (820), `get_pm_interrupt` (801), `lock_data` (813), `lock_code` (813), `enable` (796), `disable` (794), `outportb` (814)

## 54.6 Hardware interrupts

Hardware interrupts are generated by hardware devices when something unusual happens; this could be a keypress or a mouse move or any other action. This is done to minimize CPU time, else the CPU would have to check all installed hardware for data in a big loop (this method is called 'polling') and this would take much time. A standard IBM-PC has two interrupt controllers, that are responsible for these hardware interrupts: both allow up to 8 different interrupt sources (IRQs, interrupt requests). The second controller is connected to the first through IRQ 2 for compatibility reasons, e.g. if controller 1 gets an IRQ 2, he hands the IRQ over to controller 2. Because of this up to 15 different hardware interrupt sources can be handled. IRQ 0 through IRQ 7 are mapped to interrupts 8h to Fh and the second controller (IRQ 8 to 15) is mapped to interrupt 70h to 77h. All of the code and data touched by these handlers MUST be locked (via the various locking functions) to avoid page faults at interrupt time. Because hardware interrupts are called (as in real mode) with interrupts disabled, the handler has to enable them before it returns to normal program execution. Additionally a hardware interrupt must send an EOI (end of interrupt) command to the responsible controller; this is accomplished by sending the value 20h to port 20h (for the first controller) or A0h (for the second controller). The following example shows how to redirect the keyboard interrupt.

**Listing:** ./go32ex/keyclick.pp

---

*{ This example demonstrates how to chain to a hardware interrupt.*

*In more detail, it hooks the keyboard interrupt, calls a user procedure which in this case simply turns the PC speaker on and off. Then the old interrupt is called.*

```
{ $ASMMODE ATT }
{ $MODE FPC }
```

**uses**

```
crt ,
go32;
```

**const**

```
{ keyboard is IRQ 1 -> interrupt 9 }
kbdint = $9;
```

**var**

```
{ holds old PM interrupt handler address }
oldint9_handler : tseginfo;
{ new PM interrupt handler }
```

```

newint9_handler : tseinfo;

{ pointer to interrupt handler }
clickproc : pointer;
{ the data segment selector }
backupDS : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';

{ interrupt handler }
procedure int9_handler; assembler;
asm
    cli
    { save all registers, because we don't know which the compiler
      uses for the called procedure }
    pushl %ds
    pushl %es
    pushl %fs
    pushl %gs
    pushal
    { set up to call a FPC procedure }
    movw %cs:backupDS, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    movw %ax, %es
    movw dosmemselector, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    { call user procedure }
    call *clickproc
    { restore all registers }
    popal
    popl %gs
    popl %fs
    popl %es
    popl %ds
    { note: in go32v2 mode %cs=%ds=%es !!!}
    jmp %cs:oldint9_handler { call old handler }
    { we don't need to do anything more, because the old interrupt
      handler does this for us (send EOI command, iret, sti...) }
end;
{ dummy procedure to retrieve exact length of handler, for locking
  and unlocking functions }
procedure int9_dummy; begin end;

{ demo user procedure, simply clicks on every keypress }
procedure clicker;
begin
    sound(500); delay(10); nosound;
end;
{ dummy procedure to retrieve exact length of user procedure for
  locking and unlocking functions }
procedure clicker_dummy; begin end;

{ installs our new handler }
procedure install_click;
begin
    clickproc := @clicker;
    { lock used code and data }
    lock_data(clickproc, sizeof(clickproc));
    lock_data(dosmemselector, sizeof(dosmemselector));

```

---

```

    lock_code(@clicker ,
              longint(@clicker_dummy) - longint(@clicker));
    lock_code(@int9_handler ,
              longint(@int9_dummy)-longint(@int9_handler));
    { fill in new handler's 48 bit pointer }
    newint9_handler.offset := @int9_handler;
    newint9_handler.segment := get_cs;
    { get old PM interrupt handler }
    get_pm_interrupt(kbdint , oldint9_handler);
    { set the new interrupt handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(kbdint , newint9_handler);
end;

{ deinstalls our interrupt handler }
procedure remove_click;
begin
    { set old handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(kbdint , oldint9_handler);
    { unlock used code & data }
    unlock_data(dosmemselector , sizeof(dosmemselector));
    unlock_data(clickproc , sizeof(clickproc));

    unlock_code(@clicker ,
                longint(@clicker_dummy)-longint(@clicker));
    unlock_code(@int9_handler ,
                longint(@int9_dummy)-longint(@int9_handler));
end;

var
    ch : char;

begin
    install_click;
    WriteLn('Enter any message. Press return when finished');
    while (ch <> #13) do begin
        ch := readkey; write(ch);
    end;
    remove_click;
end.

```

---

## 54.7 Disabling interrupts

The GO32 unit provides the two procedures `disable()` and `enable()` to disable and enable all interrupts.

## 54.8 Creating your own interrupt handlers

Interrupt redirection with FPC pascal is done via the `set_pm_interrupt()` for protected mode interrupts or via the `set_rm_interrupt()` for real mode interrupts.

## 54.9 Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts

As mentioned before, there's a distinction between real mode interrupts and protected mode interrupts; the latter are protected mode programs, while the former must be real mode programs. To call a protected mode interrupt handler, an assembly 'int' call must be issued, while the other is called via the `realintr()` or `intr()` function. Consequently, a real mode interrupt then must either reside in dos memory (<1MB) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address via the `get_rm_callback()` function.

## 54.10 Handling interrupts with DPMI

The interrupt functions are real-mode procedures; they normally can't be called in protected mode without the risk of an protection fault. So the DPMI host creates an interrupt descriptor table for the application. Initially all software interrupts (except for int 31h, 2Fh and 21h function 4Ch) or external hardware interrupts are simply directed to a handler that reflects the interrupt in real-mode, i.e. the DPMI host's default handlers switch the CPU to real-mode, issue the interrupt and switch back to protected mode. The contents of general registers and flags are passed to the real mode handler and the modified registers and flags are returned to the protected mode handler. Segment registers and stack pointer are not passed between modes.

## 54.11 Interrupt redirection

Interrupts are program interruption requests, which in one or another way get to the processor; there's a distinction between software and hardware interrupts. The former are explicitly called by an 'int' instruction and are a bit comparable to normal functions. Hardware interrupts come from external devices like the keyboard or mouse. Functions that handle hardware interrupts are called handlers.

## 54.12 Processor access

These are some functions to access various segment registers (`%cs`, `%ds`, `%ss`) which makes your work a bit easier.

See also: `get_cs` (797), `get_ds` (798), `get_ss` (808)

## 54.13 I/O port access

The I/O port access is done via the various `inportb` (812), `outportb` (814) functions which are available. Additionally Free Pascal supports the Turbo Pascal `PORT[]`-arrays but it is by no means recommended to use them, because they're only for compatibility purposes.

See also: `outportb` (814), `inportb` (812)

## 54.14 dos memory access

Dos memory is accessed by the predefined `dosmemselector` selector; the GO32 unit additionally provides some functions to help you with standard tasks, like copying memory from heap to dos memory and the likes. Because of this it is strongly recommended to use them, but you are still free

to use the provided standard memory accessing functions which use 48 bit pointers. The third, but only thought for compatibility purposes, is using the `mem[]`-arrays. These arrays map the whole 1 Mb dos space. They shouldn't be used within new programs. To convert a segment:offset real mode address to a protected mode linear address you have to multiply the segment by 16 and add its offset. This linear address can be used in combination with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable.

See also: `dosmemget` (785), `dosmempnt` (786), `dosmemmove` (786), `dosmemfillchar` (785), `dosmemfillword` (785), `seg_move` (819), `seg_fillchar` (817), `seg_fillword` (818)

## 54.15 FPC specialities

The `%ds` and `%es` selector MUST always contain the same value or some system routines may crash when called. The `%fs` selector is preloaded with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable at startup, and it MUST be restored after use, because again FPC relies on this for some functions. Luckily we asm programmers can still use the `%gs` selector for our own purposes, but for how long ?

See also: `get_cs` (797), `get_ds` (798), `get_ss` (808), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `free_ldt_descriptor` (796), `segment_to_descriptor` (817), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (800), `get_segment_base_address` (808), `set_segment_base_address` (822), `set_segment_limit` (822), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (794)

## 54.16 Selectors and descriptors

Descriptors are a bit like real mode segments; they describe (as the name implies) a memory area in protected mode. A descriptor contains information about segment length, its base address and the attributes of it (i.e. type, access rights, ...). These descriptors are stored internally in a so-called descriptor table, which is basically an array of such descriptors. Selectors are roughly an index into this table. Because these 'segments' can be up to 4 GB in size, 32 bits aren't sufficient anymore to describe a single memory location like in real mode. 48 bits are now needed to do this, a 32 bit address and a 16 bit sized selector. The GO32 unit provides the `tseginfo` record to store such a pointer. But due to the fact that most of the time data is stored and accessed in the `%ds` selector, FPC assumes that all pointers point to a memory location of this selector. So a single pointer is still only 32 bits in size. This value represents the offset from the data segment base address to this memory location.

## 54.17 What is DPMI

The dos Protected Mode Interface helps you with various aspects of protected mode programming. These are roughly divided into descriptor handling, access to dos memory, management of interrupts and exceptions, calls to real mode functions and other stuff. Additionally it automatically provides swapping to disk for memory intensive applications. A DPMI host (either a Windows dos box or `CWSDPMI.EXE`) provides these functions for your programs.

## 54.18 Constants, types and variables

### 54.18.1 Constants

```
auxcarryflag = $010
```

Check for auxiliary carry flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
carryflag = $001
```

Check for carry flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
directionflag = $400
```

Check for direction flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
dosmemfillchar : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; c
    : Char) = @ dpmi_dosmemfillchar
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific byte value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemfillword : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; w
    : Word) = @ dpmi_dosmemfillword
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific word value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemget : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt
    ) = @ dpmi_dosmemget
```

Copies data from the dos memory onto the heap.

Parameters:

**seg** source real mode segment.

**ofs** source real mode offset.

**data** destination.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (809).

```
dosmemmove : procedure(sseg: Word; sofs: Word; dseg: Word; dofs: Word
;
count: LongInt) = @ dpmi_dosmemmove
```

Copies count bytes of data between two dos real mode memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg** source real mode segment.

**sofs** source real mode offset.

**dseg** destination real mode segment.

**dofs** destination real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range check is performed in any way.

```
dosmemput : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt
) = @ dpmi_dosmemput
```

Copies heap data to dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**seg** destination real mode segment.

**ofs** destination real mode offset.

**data** source.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (809).

```
interruptflag = $200
```

Check for interrupt flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
overflowflag = $800
```

Check for overflow flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
parityflag = $004
```

Check for parity flag in `trealregs` (789)

```
rm_dpml = 4
```

get\_run\_mode (807) return value: DPML (e.g. dos box or 386Max)

```
rm_raw = 1
```

get\_run\_mode (807) return value: raw (without HIMEM)

```
rm_unknown = 0
```

get\_run\_mode (807) return value: Unknown runmode

```
rm_vcpi = 3
```

get\_run\_mode (807) return value: VCPI (with HIMEM and EMM386)

```
rm_xms = 2
```

get\_run\_mode (807) return value: XMS (with HIMEM, without EMM386)

```
signflag = $080
```

Check for sign flag in trealregs (789)

```
trapflag = $100
```

Check for trap flag in trealregs (789)

```
zeroflag = $040
```

Check for zero flag in trealregs (789)

### 54.18.2 Types

```
registers = trealregs
```

Alias for trealregs (789)

```
treallregs = record
case Integer of
1: (
    EDI : LongInt;
    ESI : LongInt
    ;
    EBP : LongInt;
    Res : LongInt;
    EBX : LongInt;
    EDX : LongInt
    ;
    ECX : LongInt;
    EAX : LongInt;
```

```
Flags : Word;
ES : Word;
DS : Word;
FS : Word;
GS : Word;
IP : Word;
CS : Word;
SP : Word;
SS : Word;
);
2: (
  DI : Word;
  DI2 : Word;
  SI
  : Word;
  SI2 : Word;
  BP : Word;
  BP2 : Word;
  R1 : Word;
  R2
  : Word;
  BX : Word;
  BX2 : Word;
  DX : Word;
  DX2 : Word;
  CX
  : Word;
  CX2 : Word;
  AX : Word;
  AX2 : Word;
);
3: (
  stuff
  : Array[1..4] of LongInt;
  BL : Byte;
  BH : Byte;
  BL2 : Byte
  ;
  BH2 : Byte;
  DL : Byte;
  DH : Byte;
  DL2 : Byte;
  DH2 : Byte
  ;
  CL : Byte;
  CH : Byte;
  CL2 : Byte;
  CH2 : Byte;
  AL : Byte
  ;
  AH : Byte;
  AL2 : Byte;
  AH2 : Byte;
);
```

```

4: (
    RealEDI : LongInt
    ;
    RealESI : LongInt;
    RealEBP : LongInt;
    RealRES : LongInt;
    RealEBX : LongInt;
    RealEDX : LongInt;
    RealECX : LongInt;
    RealEAX
    : LongInt;
    RealFlags : Word;
    RealES : Word;
    RealDS : Word;
    RealFS : Word;
    RealGS : Word;
    RealIP : Word;
    RealCS : Word
    ;
    RealSP : Word;
    RealSS : Word;
);
end

```

The `trealregs` type contains the data structure to pass register values to a interrupt handler or real mode callback.

### 54.18.3 Variables

```
dosmemselector : Word
```

Selector to the dos memory. The whole dos memory is automatically mapped to this single descriptor at startup. This selector is the recommended way to access dos memory.

```
int31error : Word
```

This variable holds the result of a DPMI interrupt call. Any nonzero value must be treated as a critical failure.

## 54.19 Procedures and functions

### 54.19.1 `allocate_ldt_descriptors`

Synopsis: Allocate a number of descriptors

Declaration: `function allocate_ldt_descriptors(count: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a number of new descriptors.

Parameters:

**count:** \specifies the number of requested unique descriptors.

Return value: The base selector.

**Remark** Notes: The descriptors allocated must be initialized by the application with other function calls. This function returns descriptors with a limit and size value set to zero. If more than one descriptor was requested, the function returns a base selector referencing the first of a contiguous array of descriptors. The selector values for subsequent descriptors in the array can be calculated by adding the value returned by the `get_next_selector_increment_value` (800) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `free_ldt_descriptor` (796), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (800), `segment_to_descriptor` (817), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (794), `set_segment_limit` (822), `set_segment_base_address` (822)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/seldes.pp`

---

```
{
This example demonstrates the usage of descriptors and the effects of
changing its limit and base address.
```

```
In more detail, the program fills the region described by an
allocated descriptor in text screen memory with various characters.
Before doing this it saves the entire screen contents to the heap and
restores it afterwards.
```

*Some additional background:*

*The text screen of a VGA card has it's address space at \$B800:0;
screen memory is organized in a linear fashion, e.g. the second line
comes directly after the first, where each cell occupies 2 bytes of
memory (1 byte character data, 1 byte attributes). It is 32 kb in
size.*

*Hence the offset of a single memory cell from its origin is:*

$$Y * columns * 2 + X * 2$$

*where X and Y mark the point and columns is the number of character
cells per line*

```
}
{$mode delphi}
```

**uses**

```
crt ,
go32;
```

**const**

```
{ screen x and y dimensions }
maxx = 80;
maxy = 25;
{ bytes used for every character cell }
bytespercell = 2;
{ screen size in bytes }
screensize = maxx * maxy * bytespercell;
```

```
{ the linear address of $B800:0 }
linB8000 = $B800 * 16;
```

**type**

```
string80 = string[80];
```

```

var
    { holds the old screen contents }
    text_save : array[0..screensize-1] of byte;
    { old cursor x and y coordinates }
    text_oldx, text_oldy : Word;

    { selector to the text mode screen }
    text_sel : Word;

{ prints a status message on the first line of the screen and then
waits for a keypress }
procedure status(s : string80);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 1); clreol; write(s); readkey;
end;

{ writes some descriptor info on the last 2 lines }
procedure selinfo(sel : Word);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 24);
    clreol; writeln('Descriptor base address : $',
        hexstr(get_segment_base_address(sel), 8));
    clreol; write('Descriptor limit : ', get_segment_limit(sel));
end;

{ returns a 2 byte character cell, which includes character data
and its color attributes }
function makechar(ch : char; color : byte) : Word;
begin
    result := byte(ch) or (color shl 8);
end;

begin
    { save original screen contents to variable, this time by using
    seg_move() and the dosmemselector variable }
    seg_move(dosmemselector, linB8000, get_ds, longint(@text_save),
        screensize);
    { additionally we have to save the old screen cursor
    coordinates }
    text_oldx := wherex; text_oldy := wherey;
    { clear the whole screen }
    seg_fillword(dosmemselector, linB8000, screensize div 2,
        makechar(' ', Black or (Black shl 4)));
    { output message }
    status('Creating selector ''text_sel'' to a part of ' +
        'text screen memory');
    { allocate descriptor }
    text_sel := allocate_ldt_descriptors(1);
    { set its base address to the linear address of the text screen
    + the byte size of one line (=maxx * bytespercell * 1) }
    set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
        linB8000 + bytespercell * maxx * 1);
    { the limit is set to the screensize reduced by one (a must be)
    and the number of lines we don't want to have touched (first
    line + lower 2 lines) }
    set_segment_limit(text_sel, screensize - 1 - bytespercell *
        maxx * 3);

```

---

```

{ write descriptor info }
selinfo(text_sel);

status('and clearing entire memory selected by ''text_sel''' +
      ' descriptor');
{ fill the entire selected memory with single characters }
seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
             makechar(' ', LightBlue shl 4));

status('Notice that only the memory described by the ' +
      'descriptor changed, nothing else');

status('Now reducing it''s limit and base and setting it''s ' +
      'described memory');
{ set the base address of the descriptor (increase it by the
  byte size of one line) }
set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
                        get_segment_base_address(text_sel) + bytespercell * maxx);
{ decrease the limit by byte size of 2 lines (1 line because
  base address changed, one line on the lower end) }
set_segment_limit(text_sel,
                  get_segment_limit(text_sel) - bytespercell * maxx * 2);
{ write descriptor info }
selinfo(text_sel);
status('Notice that the base addr increased by one line but ' +
      'the limit decreased by 2 lines');
status('This should give you the hint that the limit is ' +
      'relative to the base');
{ fill the descriptor area }
seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
             makechar(#176, LightMagenta or Brown shl 4));

status('Now let''s get crazy and copy 10 lines of data from ' +
      'the previously saved screen');
{ copy memory from the data segment to screen }
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), text_sel,
         maxx * bytespercell * 2, maxx * bytespercell * 10);

status('At last freeing the descriptor and restoring the old ' +
      'screen contents..');
status('I hope this little program may give you some hints ' +
      'on working with descriptors');
{ free the descriptor so that it can be used for things }
free_ldt_descriptor(text_sel);
{ restore old state }
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), dosmemselector,
         linB8000, screensize);
gotoxy(text_oldx, text_oldy);
end.

```

---

### 54.19.2 allocate\_memory\_block

Synopsis: Allocate a block of linear memory

Declaration: function allocate\_memory\_block(size: LongInt) : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of linear memory.

Parameters:

**size:**Size of requested linear memory block in bytes.

Returned values: blockhandle - the memory handle to this memory block. Linear address of the requested memory.

**Remark** *warning* According to my DPMI docs this function is not implemented correctly. Normally you should also get a blockhandle to this block after successful operation. This handle can then be used to free the memory block afterwards or use this handle for other purposes. Since the function isn't implemented correctly, and doesn't return a blockhandle, the block can't be deallocated and is hence unusable ! This function doesn't allocate any descriptors for this block, it's the applications responsibility to allocate and initialize for accessing this memory.

Errors: Check the int31error (789) variable.

See also: free\_memory\_block (796)

### 54.19.3 copyfromdos

Synopsis: Copy data from DOS to heap

Declaration: `procedure copyfromdos(var addr; len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from the pre-allocated dos memory transfer buffer to the heap.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy to.

**len**number of bytes to copy to heap.

Notes: Can only be used in conjunction with the dos memory transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the int31error (789) variable.

See also: tb\_size (823), transfer\_buffer (824), copytodos (793)

### 54.19.4 copytodos

Synopsis: Copy data from heap to DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure copytodos(var addr; len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from heap to the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy from.

**len**number of bytes to copy to dos memory buffer.

Notes: This function fails if you try to copy more bytes than the transfer buffer is in size. It can only be used in conjunction with the transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the int31error (789) variable.

See also: tb\_size (823), transfer\_buffer (824), copyfromdos (793)

**54.19.5 create\_code\_segment\_alias\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Create new descriptor from existing descriptor

Declaration: `function create_code_segment_alias_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Creates a new descriptor that has the same base and limit as the specified descriptor.

Parameters:

**segDescriptor.**

Return values: The data selector (alias).

Notes: In effect, the function returns a copy of the descriptor. The descriptor alias returned by this function will not track changes to the original descriptor. In other words, if an alias is created with this function, and the base or limit of the original segment is then changed, the two descriptors will no longer map the same memory.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_limit` (822), `set_segment_base_address` (822)

**54.19.6 disable**

Synopsis: Disable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure disable`

Visibility: default

Description: Disables all hardware interrupts by execution a CLI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `enable` (796)

**54.19.7 dpmi\_dosmemfillchar**

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a character

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillchar(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` characters `c`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (795), `dpmi_dosmemget` (795), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (795), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (795)

**54.19.8 dpmi\_dosmemfillword**

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a word value

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillword(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillword` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` words `W`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (795), `dpmi_dosmemget` (795), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (794), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (795)

**54.19.9 dpmi\_dosmemget**

Synopsis: Move data from DOS memory to DPMI memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemget(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs` to DPMI memory indicated by `data`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (795), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (795), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (794), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (795)

**54.19.10 dpmi\_dosmemmove**

Synopsis: Move DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemmove(sseg: Word; sofs: Word; dseg: Word; dofs: Word; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemmove` moves `count` bytes from DOS memory `sseg,sofs` to `dseg,dofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (795), `dpmi_dosmemget` (795), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (794), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (795)

**54.19.11 dpmi\_dosmempout**

Synopsis: Move data from DPMI memory to DOS memory.

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmempout(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from `data` to the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemget` (795), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (795), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (794), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (795)

**54.19.12 enable**

Synopsis: Enable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure enable`

Visibility: default

Description: Enables all hardware interrupts by executing a STI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `disable` (794)

**54.19.13 free\_ldt\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Free a descriptor

Declaration: `function free_ldt_descriptor(d: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated descriptor.

Parameters:

**des**The descriptor to be freed.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. Notes: After this call this selector is invalid and must not be used for any memory operations anymore. Each descriptor allocated with `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789) must be freed individually with this function, even if it was previously allocated as a part of a contiguous array of descriptors.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (800)

**54.19.14 free\_linear\_addr\_mapping**

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function free_linear_addr_mapping(linear_addr: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**54.19.15 free\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Free allocated memory block

Declaration: `function free_memory_block(blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated memory block.

Parameters:

**blockhandle**the handle to the memory area to free.

Return value: `True` if successful, `false` otherwise. Notes: Frees memory that was previously allocated with `allocate_memory_block` (792) . This function doesn't free any descriptors mapped to this block, it's the application's responsibility.

Errors: Check `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_memory_block` (792)

### 54.19.16 `free_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Release real mode callback.

Declaration: `function free_rm_callback(var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Releases a real mode callback address that was previously allocated with the `get_rm_callback` (802) function.

Parameters:

**intaddr** real mode address buffer returned by `get_rm_callback` (802) .

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (822), `get_rm_callback` (802)

### 54.19.17 `get_cs`

Synopsis: Get CS selector

Declaration: `function get_cs : Word`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the cs selector.

Return value: The content of the cs segment register.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (820).

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (798), `get_ss` (808)

### 54.19.18 `get_descriptor_access_right`

Synopsis: Get descriptor's access rights

Declaration: `function get_descriptor_access_right(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Gets the access rights of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**d**selector to descriptor.

Return value: Access rights bit field.

Errors: Check the `int31error` ([789](#)) variable.

See also: `set_descriptor_access_right` ([819](#))

### 54.19.19 `get_dpmi_version`

Synopsis: Return DPMI information

Declaration: `function get_dpmi_version(var version: tdpmiversioninfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_dpmi_version` returns version information (Int \$31 Function \$0400) in `Version` and returns `True` if the information was retrieved successfully, `false` if the call failed.

Errors: The call returns `false` if the information could not be retrieved.

See also: `tdpmiversioninfo` ([825](#))

### 54.19.20 `get_ds`

Synopsis: Get DS Selector

Declaration: `function get_ds : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ds selector.

Return values: The content of the ds segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_cs` ([797](#)), `get_ss` ([808](#))

### 54.19.21 `get_exception_handler`

Synopsis: Return current exception handler

Declaration: `function get_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_exception_handler` returns the exception handler for exception `E` in `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` ([819](#)), `get_pm_exception_handler` ([801](#))

**54.19.22 get\_linear\_addr**

Synopsis: Convert physical to linear address

Declaration: `function get_linear_addr(phys_addr: DWord; size: LongInt) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a physical address into a linear address.

Parameters:

**phys\_addr** physical address of device.

**size** Size of region to map in bytes.

Return value: Linear address that can be used to access the physical memory. Notes: It's the applications responsibility to allocate and set up a descriptor for access to the memory. This function shouldn't be used to map real mode addresses.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_limit` (822), `set_segment_base_address` (822)

**54.19.23 get\_meminfo**

Synopsis: Return information on the available memory

Declaration: `function get_meminfo(var meminfo: tmeminfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns information about the amount of available physical memory, linear address space, and disk space for page swapping.

Parameters:

**meminfo** buffer to fill memory information into.

Return values: Due to an implementation bug this function always returns `False`, but it always succeeds.

**Remark** Notes: Only the first field of the returned structure is guaranteed to contain a valid value. Any fields that are not supported by the DPMI host will be set by the host to `-1` (`0FFFFFFFFH`) to indicate that the information is not available. The size of the pages used by the DPMI host can be obtained with the `get_page_size` (801) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `get_page_size` (801)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/meminfo.pp`

---

```
{ Shows how to obtain memory information via get_meminfo();

notice the checks if any of the returned information is invalid (-1)
}

uses
    go32;

var
```

```

        meminfo : tmeminfo;

begin
    get_meminfo(meminfo);
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error getting DPML memory information... Halting');
        Writeln('DPML error number : ', int31error);
    end else begin
        with meminfo do begin
            Writeln('Largest available free block : ',
                available_memory div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (available_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum available unlocked pages : ',
                    available_pages);
            if (available_lockable_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum lockable available pages : ',
                    available_lockable_pages);
            if (linear_space <> -1) then
                Writeln('Linear address space size : ',
                    linear_space*get_page_size div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (unlocked_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of unlocked pages : ',
                    unlocked_pages);
            if (available_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of free pages : ',
                    available_physical_pages);
            if (total_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of physical pages : ',
                    total_physical_pages);
            if (free_linear_space <> -1) then
                Writeln('Free linear address space : ',
                    free_linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
                    ' kbytes');
            if (max_pages_in_paging_file <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum size of paging file : ',
                    max_pages_in_paging_file*get_page_size div 1024,
                    ' kbytes');
        end;
    end;
end.

```

---

#### 54.19.24 get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value

Synopsis: Return selector increment value

Declaration: function get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value : Word

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the selector increment value when allocating multiple subsequent descriptors via `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Return value: Selector increment value.

**Remark** Notes: Because `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789) only returns the selector for the first descriptor and so the value returned by this function can be used to calculate the selectors for subsequent descriptors in the array.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: [allocate\\_ldt\\_descriptors \(789\)](#), [free\\_ldt\\_descriptor \(796\)](#)

### 54.19.25 `get_page_attributes`

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function get_page_attributes(handle: DWord; offset: DWord;  
pagecount: DWord; buf: pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 54.19.26 `get_page_size`

Synopsis: Return the page size

Declaration: `function get_page_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of a single memory page.

Return value: Size of a single page in bytes.

**Remark** The returned size is typically 4096 bytes.

For an example, see [get\\_meminfo \(799\)](#).

Errors: Check the [int31error \(789\)](#) variable.

See also: [get\\_meminfo \(799\)](#)

### 54.19.27 `get_pm_exception_handler`

Synopsis: Get protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_pm_exception_handler` returns the protected mode exception handler for exception `E` in `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: [get\\_exception\\_handler \(798\)](#), [set\\_pm\\_exception\\_handler \(820\)](#)

### 54.19.28 `get_pm_interrupt`

Synopsis: Return protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the address of a current protected mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt handler number you want the address to.

**intaddr** buffer to store address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark** The returned address is a protected mode selector:offset address.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (820).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `set_pm_interrupt` (820), `set_rm_interrupt` (822), `get_rm_interrupt` (806)

### 54.19.29 `get_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Return real mode callback

Declaration: `function get_rm_callback(pm_func: pointer; const reg: trealregs;  
var rmcb: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a unique real mode `segment:offset` address, known as a "real mode callback," that will transfer control from real mode to a protected mode procedure.

Parameters:

**pm\_func** pointer to the protected mode callback function.

**regs** supplied registers structure.

**rmcb** buffer to real mode address of callback function.

Return values: `True` if successful, otherwise `False`.

**Remark** Callback addresses obtained with this function can be passed by a protected mode program for example to an interrupt handler, device driver, or TSR, so that the real mode program can call procedures within the protected mode program or notify the protected mode program of an event. The contents of the supplied `regs` structure is not valid after function call, but only at the time of the actual callback.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `free_rm_callback` (797)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/callback.pp`

---

*{ This program tries to give an example how to install a callback  
procedure with the help of the GO32 unit.*

*It installs a callback which is supplied by any Microsoft compatible  
mouse driver; at a specified mouse action this routine is called.  
This callback must provide the services explained in the docs. The  
main callback has to be in assembly, because it isn't possible to do  
these services with pascal alone. But is written as general as  
possible to provide maximum re-usability for other applications and  
hence it simply calls a normal pascal user procedure in addition to  
some initialization and callback service code, so you don't need to  
hassle around with it too much.*

*Notes to this user procedure :*

*\*) it should not last too long to execute it*

*\*) ALL data and code touched in this proc MUST be locked BEFORE it is  
called the first time*

*Used software interrupt calls (rough descriptions, only what's used):*

*Int 33h 0000h – Microsoft Mouse driver : Reset mouse*

*Input : AX = 0000h*

*Return : AX = FFFFh if successful*

*BX = number of buttons (if FFFFh then mouse has 2 buttons)*

*Int 33h 0001h – Microsoft Mouse driver : Show mouse cursor*

*Input : AX = 0001h*

*Return : Mouse cursor shown on screen*

*Int 33h 0002h – Microsoft mouse driver : Hide mouse cursor*

*Input : AX = 0002h*

*Return : Hides mouse cursor again*

*Int 33h 000Ch – Microsoft mouse driver : Install user callback*

*Input : AX = 000Ch*

*CX = bit mask which tells the mouse driver at which actions the callback should be called, i.e. if button pressed, mouse moved etc.*

*(In this example it's set to 7Fh so that the callback is called on every action)*

*ES:EDX = pointer to callback procedure to call*

*Note : The registers structure supplied to the callback contains valid mouse data when the handler is called.*

*BX = button state information*

*CX = mouse X coordinates*

*DX = mouse Y coordinates*

*For more detailed information consult any mouse reference or interrupt list.*

```

}
{$CALLING REGISTER}
{$ASMMODE ATT}
{$MODE FPC}

```

**uses**

```

crt,
go32;

```

**const**

```

{ the mouse interrupt number }
mouseint = $33;

```

**var**

```

{ supplied register structure to the callback }
mouse_regs : trealregs; external name '___v2prt0_rmcb_regs';
{ real mode 48 bit pointer to the callback }
mouse_seginfo : tseginfo;

```

**var**

```

{ number of mouse buttons }
mouse_numbuttons : longint;

{ bit mask for the action which triggered the callback }
mouse_action : word;
{ current mouse x and y coordinates }
mouse_x, mouse_y : Word;

```

```

    { button state }
    mouse_b : Word;

    { is an additional user procedure installed }
    userproc_installed : Longbool;
    { length of additional user procedure }
    userproc_length : Longint;
    { pointer to user proc }
    userproc_proc : pointer;

{ callback control handler, calls a user procedure if installed }

{ callback control handler, calls a user procedure if installed }
procedure callback_handler; assembler;
asm
    pushw %ds
    pushl %eax
    movw %es, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds

    { give control to user procedure if installed }
    cmpl $0, USERPROC_INSTALLED
    je .LNoCallback
    pushal
    movw DOSmemSELECTOR, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs { set fs for FPC }
    call *USERPROC_PROC
    popal
.LNoCallback:

    popl %eax
    popw %ds

    pushl %eax
    movl (%esi), %eax
    movl %eax, %es: 42(%edi) { adjust stack }
    addw $4, %es:46(%edi)
    popl %eax
    iret
end;
{ This dummy is used to obtain the length of the callback control
function. It has to be right after the callback_handler() function.
}
procedure mouse_dummy; begin end;

{ This is the supplied user procedure. In this case we simply
transform the virtual 640x200 mouse coordinate system to a 80x25
text mode coordinate system }
procedure textuserproc;
begin
    { the mouse_regs record contains the real mode registers now }
    mouse_b := mouse_regs.bx;
    mouse_x := (mouse_regs.cx shr 3) + 1;
    mouse_y := (mouse_regs.dx shr 3) + 1;
end;

{ Description : Installs the mouse callback control handler and
handles all necessary mouse related initialization.
}

```

```

    Input : userproc – pointer to a user procedure, nil if none
           userproclen – length of user procedure
}
procedure install_mouse(userproc : pointer; userproclen : longint);
var r : trealregs;
begin
    { mouse driver reset }
    r.eax := $0; realintr(mouseint, r);
    if (r.eax <> $FFFF) then begin
        WriteLn('No Microsoft compatible mouse found');
        WriteLn('A Microsoft compatible mouse driver is necessary ',
            'to run this example');
        halt;
    end;
    { obtain number of mouse buttons }
    if (r.bx = $ffff) then mouse_numbuttons := 2
    else mouse_numbuttons := r.bx;
    WriteLn(mouse_numbuttons, ' button Microsoft compatible mouse ',
        ' found. ');
    { check for additional user procedure, and install it if
    available }
    if (userproc <> nil) then begin
        userproc_proc := userproc;
        userproc_installed := true;
        userproc_length := userproclen;
        { lock code for user procedure }
        lock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
    end else begin
        { clear variables }
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    { lock code & data which is touched in the callback handler }
    lock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    lock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    lock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    lock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    lock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));
    lock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));

    lock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    lock_data(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf));
    lock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) – longint(@callback_handler));
    { allocate callback (supply registers structure) }
    get_rm_callback(@callback_handler, mouse_regs, mouse_seginf);
    { install callback }
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := $7f;
    r.edx := longint(mouse_seginf.offset);
    r.es := mouse_seginf.segment;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    { show mouse cursor }
    r.eax := $01;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
end;

```

---

```

procedure remove_mouse;
var
    r : trealregs;
begin
    { hide mouse cursor }
    r.eax := $02; realintr(mouseint, r);
    { remove callback handler }
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := 0; r.edx := 0; r.es := 0;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    { free callback }
    free_rm_callback(mouse_seginf);
    { check if additional userproc is installed, and clean up if needed }
    if (userproc_installed) then begin
        unlock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    { unlock used code & data }
    unlock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    unlock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    unlock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    unlock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    unlock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));
    unlock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));

    unlock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    unlock_data(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf));
    unlock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    fillchar(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf), 0);
end;

begin
    install_mouse(@textuserproc, 400);
    Writeln('Press any key to exit...');
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        { write mouse state info }
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('MouseX : ', mouse_x:2, ' MouseY : ', mouse_y:2,
            ' Buttons : ', mouse_b:2);
    end;
    remove_mouse;
end.

```

---

### 54.19.30 **get\_rm\_interrupt**

Synopsis: Get real mode interrupt vector

Declaration: `function get_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginf) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the contents of the current machine's real mode interrupt vector for the specified interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt vector number.

**intaddr** buffer to store real mode segment : offset address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark** The returned address is a real mode segment address, which isn't valid in protected mode.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (822), `set_pm_interrupt` (820), `get_pm_interrupt` (801)

### 54.19.31 `get_run_mode`

Synopsis: Return current run mode

Declaration: `function get_run_mode : Word`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the current mode your application runs with.

Return values: One of the constants used by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_run_mode` (807)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/getrunmd.pp`

---

```
{ Simply write a message according to the current environment }

uses
    go32;

begin
    { depending on the detected environment we simply write
    another message Note: in go32v2 this will always be rm_dpml. }

    case (get_run_mode) of
        rm_unknown :
            WriteLn( 'Unknown environment found' );
        rm_raw :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently running in raw mode ',
                '(without HIMEM)' );
        rm_xms :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently using HIMEM.SYS only' );
        rm_vcpi :
            WriteLn( 'VCPI server detected. You''re using HIMEM and ',
                'EMM386' );
        rm_dpml :
            WriteLn( 'DPML detected. You''re using a DPML host like ',
                'a windows DOS box or CWSDPML' );
    end;
end.
```

---

### 54.19.32 `get_segment_base_address`

Synopsis: Return base address from descriptor table

Declaration: `function get_segment_base_address(d: Word) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the 32-bit linear base address from the descriptor table for the specified segment.

Parameters:

`d` selector of the descriptor you want the base address of.

Return values: Linear base address of specified descriptor.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_base_address` (822), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_limit` (822), `get_segment_limit` (808)

### 54.19.33 `get_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Return segment limits from descriptor

Declaration: `function get_segment_limit(d: Word) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a descriptors segment limit.

Parameters:

`d` selector.

Return value: Limit of the descriptor in bytes.

Errors: Returns zero if descriptor is invalid.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_limit` (822), `set_segment_base_address` (822), `get_segment_base_address` (808)

### 54.19.34 `get_ss`

Synopsis: Return SS selector

Declaration: `function get_ss : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ss selector.

Return values: The content of the ss segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (798), `get_cs` (797)

**54.19.35 global\_dos\_alloc**

Synopsis: Allocate DOS real mode memory

Declaration: `function global_dos_alloc(bytes: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**bytesize** of requested real mode memory.

Return values: The low word of the returned value contains the selector to the allocated dos memory block, the high word the corresponding real mode segment value. The offset value is always zero. This function allocates memory from dos memory pool, i.e. memory below the 1 MB boundary that is controlled by dos. Such memory blocks are typically used to exchange data with real mode programs, TSRs, or device drivers. The function returns both the real mode segment base address of the block and one descriptor that can be used by protected mode applications to access the block. This function should only be used for temporary buffers to get real mode information (e.g. interrupts that need a data structure in ES:(E)DI), because every single block needs a unique selector. The returned selector should only be freed by a `global_dos_free` (811) call.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `global_dos_free` (811)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/buffer.pp`


---

*{ This program demonstrates the usage of DOS real mode memory by executing a software interrupt which needs a buffer to store data into. Because these interrupts are real mode funcs, the buffer must be located in real mode memory space (first MB of memory). Such memory can only be allocated by the global\_dos\_alloc() and global\_dos\_free() functions of the GO32 unit.*

*In more detail this program tries to detect a VESA 2.0 BIOS extension of your graphics card and outputs its version.*

*Here's the necessary interrupt call description:*

*Int 10h 4f00h : VESA BIOS extension installation check  
Input : AX = 4F00h  
        ES:DI = pointer to 512 byte information buffer  
Output : AX = 004Fh if successful  
        ES:DI = pointer to filled buffer*

*Buffer structure : (relevant to this example)*

*must be 'VESA' in the first 4 chars of the buffer to be  
        valid VBE version in the next word*

*Note : to request VBE 2.0 information, the first 4 bytes of the  
        buffer must contain 'VBE2' prior to the interrupt call.*

*(this makes the problem a bit tougher; we first have to copy the  
        buffer with the 'VBE2' id to dos memory...)*

*}*

**uses**

go32;

*{The following 2 functions are wrappers to the GO32  
global\_dos\_alloc() and global\_dos\_free() functions to simplify their  
usage }*

*{ Function : dosalloc }*

*{ Input : size of a real mode location }*

*{ Output : selector and segment of a real mode location }*

**procedure** dosalloc(**var** selector : word;  
var segment : word; size : longint);

**var**

res : longint;

**begin**

*{ try to allocate real mode memory }*

res := global\_dos\_alloc(size);

*{ the lower 16 bits of the result contain the selector to the  
allocated memory block }*

selector := word(res);

*{ the upper 16 bits contain the real mode segment address of  
this block; the offset is always 0, so we don't need to return  
this }*

segment := word(res shr 16);

**end;**

*{ Function : dosfree }*

*{ Input : selector of a real mode block }*

*{ Output : none }*

*{ Description : de-allocates a previously allocated real mode  
memory }*

**procedure** dosfree(selector : word);

**begin**

*{ call the GO32 function with the selector }*

global\_dos\_free(selector);

**end;**

**type**

VBEInfoBuf = **packed record**

*{ contains 'VESA' if successful }*

Signature : **array**[0..3] **of** char;

Version : Word;

*{ pad to 512 bytes length }*

reserved : **array**[0..505] **of** byte;

**end;**

**var**

*{ selector to our real mode buffer }*

selector,

*{ real mode segment address of buffer }*

segment : Word;

*{ register structure to issue a software interrupt }*

r : treatregs;

infobuf : VBEInfoBuf;

**begin**

*{ first we reset the registers and infobuf variable }*

---

```

    fillchar(r, sizeof(r), 0);
    fillchar(infobuf, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf), 0);
    { allocate real mode memory }
    dosalloc(selector, segment, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf));
    { check if an error occurred during allocation }
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error while allocating real mode memory, halting');
        halt;
    end;
    { request VBE 2.0 information, fill out information buffer }
    infobuf.Signature := 'VBE2';
    { copy buffer to the allocated real mode memory }
    dosmemput(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    { issue the interrupt; remember : DI = 0 }
    r.ax := $4f00; r.es := segment;
    realintr($10, r);
    { copy buffer to our infobuf variable again }
    dosmemget(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    { free allocated real mode memory, because we don't need it anymore }
    dosfree(selector);
    { check if interrupt call was successful }
    if (r.ax <> $4f) then begin
        { write message and exit, because the infobuf doesn't contain any useful data we could tell the user }
        Writeln('VBE BIOS extension not available, function call ', 'failed');
        halt;
    end;
    { check if buffer is valid }
    if (infobuf.signature[0] = 'V') and
        (infobuf.signature[1] = 'E') and
        (infobuf.signature[2] = 'S') and
        (infobuf.signature[3] = 'A') then begin
        Writeln('VBE version ', hi(infobuf.version), '.', lo(infobuf.version), ' detected');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 54.19.36 global\_dos\_free

Synopsis: Free DOS memory block

Declaration: function global\_dos\_free(selector: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated dos memory block.

Parameters:

**selector** selector to the dos memory block.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

**Remark** The descriptor allocated for the memory block is automatically freed and hence invalid for further use. This function should only be used for memory allocated by global\_dos\_alloc (809).

For an example, see global\_dos\_alloc (809).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `global_dos_alloc` (809)

### 54.19.37 `inportb`

Synopsis: Read byte from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportb(port: Word) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 byte from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportb` (814), `inportw` (812), `inportl` (812)

### 54.19.38 `inportl`

Synopsis: Read longint from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportl(port: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 longint from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportb` (814), `inportb` (812), `inportw` (812)

### 54.19.39 `inportw`

Synopsis: Read word from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportw(port: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 word from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportw` (815), `inportb` (812), `inportl` (812)

**54.19.40 lock\_code**

Synopsis: Lock code memory range

Declaration: `function lock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which is in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of the function to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (813), `lock_data` (813), `unlock_linear_region` (825), `unlock_data` (824), `unlock_code` (824)

**54.19.41 lock\_data**

Synopsis: Lock data memory range

Declaration: `function lock_data(var data; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of data to be locked.

**size** length of data to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (813), `lock_code` (813), `unlock_linear_region` (825), `unlock_data` (824), `unlock_code` (824)

**54.19.42 lock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Lock linear memory region

Declaration: `function lock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory region to prevent swapping of it.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** the linear address of the memory are to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `lock_data` (813), `lock_code` (813), `unlock_linear_region` (825), `unlock_data` (824), `unlock_code` (824)

### 54.19.43 map\_device\_in\_memory\_block

Synopsis: Map a device into program's memory space

Declaration: `function map_device_in_memory_block(handle: DWord; offset: DWord; pagecount: DWord; device: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `map_device_in_memory_block` allows to map a device in memory. This function is a direct call of the extender. For more information about it's arguments, see the extender documentation.

### 54.19.44 outportb

Synopsis: Write byte to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportb(port: Word; data: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 byte of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportb` (812), `outportl` (815), `outportw` (815)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/outport.pp`

---

```
{ This example demonstrates the use of the outport functions.

It simply turns the PC's internal speaker on for 50 ms and off again
}
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

begin
    { turn on speaker }
    outportb($61, $ff);
    { wait a little bit }
    delay(50);
    { turn it off again }
    outportb($61, $0);

end.
```

---

**54.19.45 outportl**

Synopsis: Write longint to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportl(port: Word; data: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 longint of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see [outportb \(814\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [inportl \(812\)](#), [outportw \(815\)](#), [outportb \(814\)](#)

**54.19.46 outportw**

Synopsis: Write word to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportw(port: Word; data: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 word of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see [outportb \(814\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [inportw \(812\)](#), [outportl \(815\)](#), [outportb \(814\)](#)

**54.19.47 realintr**

Synopsis: Simulate interrupt

Declaration: `function realintr(intnr: Word; var regs: trealregs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Simulates an interrupt in real mode.

Parameters:

**intnr** interrupt number to issue in real mode.

**regs** registers data structure.

Return values: The supplied registers data structure contains the values that were returned by the real mode interrupt. `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark** The function transfers control to the address specified by the real mode interrupt vector of `intr`. The real mode handler must return by executing an `IRET`.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

**Listing:** `./go32ex/flags.pp`

---

```
{ This example demonstrates the use of the flag constants in
conjunction with an interrupt call

In detail it checks if APM (advanced power management) is
available.

Int 15h 5300h – APM specification : Installation check
Input : AX = 5300h
        BX = device id of system BIOS (= 0000h)
Return : Carry clear if successful
        AH = major version (BCD)
        AL = minor version (BCD)
}
```

```
uses
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;

begin
    { set register values and issue real mode interrupt call }
    r.ax := $5300;
    r.bx := 0;
    realintr($15, r);
    { check if carry clear and write a suited message }
    if ((r.flags and carryflag)=0) then begin
        Writeln('APM v', (r.ah and $f), '.',
                (r.al shr 4), (r.al and $f), ' detected');
    end else
        Writeln('APM not present');
end.
```

---

#### 54.19.48 request\_linear\_region

Synopsis: Request linear address region.

Declaration: `function request_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt; var blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `request_linear_region` requests a linear range of addresses of size `Size`, starting at `linearaddr`. If successful, `True` is returned, and a handle to the address region is returned in `blockhandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

**54.19.49 segment\_to\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Map segment address to descriptor

Declaration: `function segment_to_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Maps a real mode segment (paragraph) address onto an descriptor that can be used by a protected mode program to access the same memory.

Parameters:

**seg** the real mode segment you want the descriptor to.

Return values: Descriptor to real mode segment address.

**Remark** The returned descriptors limit will be set to 64 kB. Multiple calls to this function with the same segment address will return the same selector. Descriptors created by this function can never be modified or freed. Programs which need to examine various real mode addresses using the same selector should use the function `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789) and change the base address as necessary.

For an example, see `seg_fillchar` (817).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `free_ldt_descriptor` (796), `set_segment_base_address` (822)

**54.19.50 seg\_fillchar**

Synopsis: Fill segment with byte value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillchar(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** byte data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_move` (819), `seg_fillword` (818), `dosmemfillchar` (785), `dosmemfillword` (785), `dosmemget` (785), `dosmemput` (786), `dosmemmove` (786)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/vgasel.pp`

---

*{ This example demonstrates the use of the segment\_to\_descriptor() function .*

*It switches to VGA mode 13h (320x200x256 color), creates a selector to the memory (based at \$A000:0000), clears this memory with color 15 (white) and waits until the enter key is pressed }*

**uses** go32;

**var**

    vgasel : Word;  
    r : treatregs;

**begin**

*{ set VGA mode 13h }*  
    r.eax := \$13; realintr(\$10, r);  
    *{ allocate descriptor to VGA memory quickly; it could be done with allocate\_ldt\_descriptors() too, but we would have to initialize it by ourselves... unlike segment\_to\_descriptor() which automatically sets the limit and the base address correctly }*  
    vgasel := segment\_to\_descriptor(\$A000);  
    *{ simply fill the screen memory with color 15 }*  
    seg\_fillchar(vgasel, 0, 64000, #15);  
    *{ wait for a return press }*  
    **readln**;  
    *{ back to text mode }*  
    r.eax := \$3; realintr(\$10, r);  
    *{ don't deallocate vgasel, that can't be done }*

**end.**

---

### 54.19.51 seg\_fillword

Synopsis: Fill segment with word value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillword(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** word data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_move` (819), `seg_fillchar` (817), `dosmemfillchar` (785), `dosmemfillword` (785), `dosmemget` (785), `dosmemput` (786), `dosmemmove` (786)

**54.19.52 seg\_move**

Synopsis: Move data between 2 locations

Declaration: `procedure seg_move(sseg: Word; source: LongInt; dseg: Word;  
dest: LongInt; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data between two memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg**source selector.

**source**source offset.

**dseg**destination selector.

**dest**destination offset.

**count**size in bytes to copy.

Return values: None.

**Remark** Overlapping is only checked if the source selector is equal to the destination selector. No range check is done.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_fillchar` (817), `seg_fillword` (818), `dosmemfillchar` (785), `dosmemfillword` (785), `dosmemget` (785), `dosmemput` (786), `dosmemmove` (786)

**54.19.53 set\_descriptor\_access\_right**

Synopsis: Set access rights to memory descriptor

Declaration: `function set_descriptor_access_right(d: Word; w: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_descriptor_access_right` sets the access rights for descriptor `d` to `w`

**54.19.54 set\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Set exception handler

Declaration: `function set_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_exception_handler` sets the exception handler for exception `E` to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (798), `set_pm_exception_handler` (820)

**54.19.55 set\_page\_attributes**

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function set_page_attributes(handle: DWord; offset: DWord;  
pagecount: DWord; buf: pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**54.19.56 set\_pm\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Set protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_pm_exception_handler` sets the protected mode exception handler for exception E to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (819), `get_pm_exception_handler` (801)

**54.19.57 set\_pm\_interrupt**

Synopsis: Set protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the address of the protected mode handler for an interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** number of protected mode interrupt to set.

**intaddr** selector:offset address to the interrupt vector.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark** The address supplied must be a valid `selector:offset` protected mode address.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `get_pm_interrupt` (801), `set_rm_interrupt` (822), `get_rm_interrupt` (806)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/intpm.pp`

---

*{ This example shows how to redirect a software interrupt by changing the protected mode handler of the DPMI host.*

*In more detail it hooks interrupt 1Ch which is called every time the timer interrupt (int 08) is executed. This is the preferred way to hook the timer, because int 1Ch is a software interrupt which doesn't need so much initialization stuff compared to hooking a hardware interrupt.*

*}*

**uses**

---

```

    crt ,
    go32;

const
    { interrupt number we want to hook }
    int1c = $1c;

var
    { 48 bit pointer to old interrupt handler }
    oldint1c : tseinfo;
    { 48 bit pointer to new interrupt handler }
    newint1c : tseinfo;

    { increased every time the interrupt is called }
    int1c_counter : Longint;

    { the current data selector }
    int1c_ds : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';

{ the actual handler code }
procedure int1c_handler; assembler;
asm
    cli
    { save all registers }
    pushw %ds
    pushw %ax
    { prepare segment registers for FPC procedure }
    movw %cs:int1c_ds, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    { simply increase the counter by one }
    incl int1c_counter
    { restore registers }
    popw %ax
    popw %ds
    sti
    iret
end;

var i : Longint;

begin
    { insert right handler data into new handler variable }
    newint1c.offset := @int1c_handler;
    newint1c.segment := get_cs;
    { get the old handler }
    get_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
    Writeln('— Press any key to exit —');
    { set new handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, newint1c);
    { write the number of interrupts occurred }
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('Number of interrupts occurred : ', int1c_counter);
    end;
    { restore old handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
end.

```

---

**54.19.58 set\_rm\_interrupt**

Synopsis: Set real mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a real mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** the interrupt vector number to set.

**intaddr** address of new interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark** The address supplied MUST be a real mode segment address, not a `selector:offset` address. So the interrupt handler must either reside in dos memory (below 1 Mb boundary) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address with `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `get_rm_interrupt` (806), `set_pm_interrupt` (820), `get_pm_interrupt` (801), `get_rm_callback` (802)

**54.19.59 set\_segment\_base\_address**

Synopsis: Set descriptor's base address

Declaration: `function set_segment_base_address(d: Word; s: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the 32-bit linear base address of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**d** selector.

**s** new base address of the descriptor.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `get_segment_base_address` (808), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_limit` (822), `get_segment_base_address` (808), `get_segment_limit` (808)

**54.19.60 set\_segment\_limit**

Synopsis: Set descriptor limit

Declaration: `function set_segment_limit(d: Word; s: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the limit of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**d** selector.

**s** new limit of the descriptor.

Return values: Returns `True` if successful, else `False`.

**Remark** The new limit specified must be the byte length of the segment - 1. Segment limits bigger than or equal to 1MB must be page aligned, they must have the lower 12 bits set.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (789), `set_segment_base_address` (822), `get_segment_limit` (808), `set_segment_limit` (822)

### 54.19.61 `tb_offset`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer offset

Declaration: `function tb_offset : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_offset` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (824), `tb_segment` (823), `tb_size` (823)

### 54.19.62 `tb_segment`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer segment

Declaration: `function tb_segment : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_segment` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (824), `tb_offset` (823), `tb_size` (823)

### 54.19.63 `tb_size`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer memory buffer size

Declaration: `function tb_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Return values: The size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer. This block always seems to be 16k in size, but don't rely on this.

Errors: None.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (824), `copyfromdos` (793), `copytodos` (793)

**54.19.64 transfer\_buffer**

Synopsis: Return offset of DOS transfer buffer

Declaration: `function transfer_buffer : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `transfer_buffer` returns the offset of the transfer buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: `tb_size` (823)

**54.19.65 unlock\_code**

Synopsis: Unlock code segment

Declaration: `function unlock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of function to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (825), `unlock_data` (824), `lock_linear_region` (813), `lock_data` (813), `lock_code` (813)

**54.19.66 unlock\_data**

Synopsis: Unlock data segment

Declaration: `function unlock_data(var data; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (802).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (825), `unlock_code` (824), `lock_linear_region` (813), `lock_data` (813), `lock_code` (813)

### 54.19.67 unlock\_linear\_region

Synopsis: Unlock linear memory region

Declaration: `function unlock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a previously locked linear region range to allow it to be swapped out again if needed.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** linear address of the memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (789) variable.

See also: `unlock_data` (824), `unlock_code` (824), `lock_linear_region` (813), `lock_data` (813), `lock_code` (813)

## 54.20 tdpmiversioninfo

```
tdpmiversioninfo = record
  major : Byte;
  minor : Byte;
  flags
    : Word;
  cpu : Byte;
  master_pic : Byte;
  slave_pic : Byte;
end
```

`tdpmiversioninfo` describes the dpmi version information, as returned by `get_dpmi_version` (798). The CPU field can have the following values:

**\$02H** 80286

**\$03H** 80386

**\$04H** 80486

**\$05H-** Newer than 80486

The flags field is a bitmask with the following bits:

**0** 0 for 16 bit DPML, 1 for 32-bit

**1** 0 for virtual 86 mode for reflected interrupts, 1 for return to real mode.

**2** 0 for no virtual memory support, 1 for virtual memory support.

## 54.21 tmeminfo

```
tmeminfo = record
  available_memory : LongInt;
  available_pages
  : LongInt;
  available_lockable_pages : LongInt;
  linear_space
  : LongInt;
  unlocked_pages : LongInt;
  available_physical_pages
  : LongInt;
  total_physical_pages : LongInt;
  free_linear_space
  : LongInt;
  max_pages_in_paging_file : LongInt;
  reserved0 : LongInt
  ;
  reserved1 : LongInt;
  reserved2 : LongInt;
end
```

tmeminfo Holds information about the memory allocation, etc.

**NOTE:** The value of a field is -1 (0fffffffh) if the value is unknown, it's only guaranteed, that available\_memory contains a valid value. The size of the pages can be determined by the get\_page\_size() function.

## 54.22 tseginfo

```
tseginfo = record
  offset : pointer;
  segment : Word;
end
```

This record is used to store a full 48-bit pointer. This may be either a protected mode selector:offset address or in real mode a segment:offset address, depending on application.

See also: Selectors and descriptors, dos memory access, Interrupt redirection

## Chapter 55

# Reference for unit 'gpm'

### 55.1 Used units

Table 55.1: Used units by unit 'gpm'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 55.2 Overview

The GPM unit implements an interface to `libgpm`, the console program for mouse handling. This unit was created by Peter Vreman, and is only available on Linux.

When this unit is used, your program is linked to the C libraries, so you must take care of the C library version. Also, it will only work with version 1.17 or higher of the `libgpm` library.

### 55.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 55.3.1 Constants

`GPM_BOT` = 2

Bottom of area.

`GPM_B_LEFT` = 4

Left mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_MIDDLE` = 2

Middle mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_RIGHT` = 1

Right mouse button identifier.

GPM\_DOUBLE = 32

Mouse double click event.

GPM\_DOWN = 4

Mouse button down event.

GPM\_DRAG = 2

Mouse drag event.

GPM\_ENTER = 512

Enter area event.

GPM\_HARD = 256

?

GPM\_LEAVE = 1024

Leave area event.

GPM\_LEFT = 4

Left side of area.

GPM\_MAGIC = \$47706D4C

Constant identifying GPM in Gpm\_Open ([834](#)).

GPM\_MFLAG = 128

Motion flag.

GPM\_MOVE = 1

Mouse move event.

GPM\_NODE\_CTL = GPM\_NODE\_DEV

Control socket

GPM\_NODE\_DEV = '/dev/gpmctl'

Device socket filename

GPM\_NODE\_DIR = \_PATH\_VARRUN

Where to write socket.

```
GPM_NODE_DIR_MODE = 0775
```

Mode of socket.

```
GPM_NODE_FIFO = '/dev/gpmdata'
```

FIFO name

```
GPM_NODE_PID = '/var/run/gpm.pid'
```

Name of PID file.

```
GPM_RGT = 8
```

Right side of area.

```
GPM_SINGLE = 16
```

Mouse single click event.

```
GPM_TOP = 1
```

Top of area.

```
GPM_TRIPLE = 64
```

Mouse triple click event.

```
GPM_UP = 8
```

Mouse button up event.

```
_PATH_DEV = '/dev/'
```

Location of `/dev` directory.

```
_PATH_VARRUN = '/var/run/'
```

Location of run PID files directory.

### 55.3.2 Types

```
Pgpmconnect = Pgpm_connect
```

Pointer to `TGpmConnect` (830) record.

```
Pgpmevent = Pgpm_event
```

Pointer to TGpmEvent (830) record

`Pgpmroi = Pgpm_roi`

Pointer to TGpmRoi (830) record.

`Pgpm_connect = ^TGpm_connect`

Pointer to TGpm\_Connect (837) record.

`Pgpm_event = ^Tgpm_event`

Pointer to TGpm\_Event (837) record

`Pgpm_roi = ^Tgpm_roi`

Pointer to Tgpm\_roi (838) record.

`Tgpmconnect = Tgpm_connect`

Alias for TGpm\_Connect (837) record.

`TGpmEtype = LongInt`

Type for event type.

`Tgpmevent = Tgpm_event`

Alias for TGPM\_EVent (837) record

`TGpmHandler = function(var event: Tgpmevent; clientdata: pointer)  
: LongInt`

Mouse event handler callback.

`TGpmMargin = LongInt`

Type to hold area margin.

`Tgpmroi = Tgpm_roi`

Alias for TGpm\_roi (838)Record

### 55.3.3 Variables

`gpm_current_roi : Pgpm_roi`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_handler : TGpmHandler`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi : Pgpm_roi`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_data : pointer`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_handler : TGpmHandler`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

## 55.4 Procedures and functions

### 55.4.1 Gpm\_AnyDouble

Synopsis: Check whether event has double click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnyDouble` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_DOUBLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (836), `Gpm_AnySingle` (831), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (836), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (837), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (832)

### 55.4.2 Gpm\_AnySingle

Synopsis: Check whether event has a single click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnySingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_SINGLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (836), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (831), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (836), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (837), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (832)

### 55.4.3 Gpm\_AnyTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event has a triple click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_TRIPLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (836), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (831), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (836), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (837), `Gpm_AnySingle` (831)

### 55.4.4 gpm\_close

Synopsis: Close connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_close : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Close` closes the current connection, and pops the connection stack; this means that the previous connection becomes active again.

The function returns -1 if the current connection is not the last one, and it returns 0 if the current connection is the last one.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` (833).

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_Open` (834)

### 55.4.5 gpm\_fitvalues

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit physical screen.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvalues(var x: LongInt; var y: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_fitValues` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the visible screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValuesM` (832)

### 55.4.6 gpm\_fitvaluesM

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit margin.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvaluesM(var x: LongInt; var y: LongInt; margin: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Gpm_FitValuesM` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the margin indicated by `margin`. If `margin` is -1, then the values are fitted to the screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_FitValues` ([832](#))

### 55.4.7 `gpm_getevent`

**Synopsis:** Get event from event queue.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_getevent (var event : Tgpm_event) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_GetEvent` Reads an event from the file descriptor `gpm_fd`. This file is only for internal use and should never be called by a client application.

It returns 1 on success, and -1 on failure.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `Gpm_GetSnapshot` ([834](#))

**Listing:** `./gpmex/gpmex.pp`

---

```

program gpmex;

{
  Example program to demonstrate the use of the gpm unit.
}

uses gpm;

var
  connect : TGPMConnect;
  event : tgpmevent;

begin
  connect.EventMask:=GPM_MOVE or GPM_DRAG or GPM_DOWN or GPM_UP;
  connect.DefaultMask:=0;
  connect.MinMod:=0;
  connect.MaxMod:=0;
  if Gpm_Open(connect,0)=-1 then
    begin
      Writeln('No mouse handler present. ');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln('Click right button to end. ');
  Repeat
    gpm_getevent(Event);
    With Event do
      begin
        Write('Pos = (',X,',',Y,',') Buttons : ( ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_left)<>0 then
          write('left ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_right)<>0 then
          write('right ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_middle)<>0 then

```

---

```

        Write( 'middle ');
Write( ' ) Event : ');
Case EventType and $F of
    GPM_MOVE: write( 'Move');
    GPM_DRAG: write( 'Drag');
    GPM_DOWN: write( 'Down');
    GPM_UP: write( 'Up');
end;
WriteLn;
end;
Until (Event.Buttons and gpm_b_right)<>0;
gpm_close;
end.

```

---

### 55.4.8 gpm\_getsnapshot

Synopsis: Return servers' current image of mouse state.

Declaration: `function gpm_getsnapshot(eptr: Pgpmevent) : LongInt`  
`function gpm_getsnapshot(var eptr: Tgpmevent) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` returns the picture that the server has of the current situation in `Event`. This call will not read the current situation from the mouse file descriptor, but returns a buffered version. The function returns the number of mouse buttons, or -1 if this information is not available.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` ([833](#))

### 55.4.9 gpm\_lowerroi

Synopsis: Lower a region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_lowerroi(which: Pgpm_roi; after: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_LowerRoi` lowers the region of interest which after `after`. If `after` is `Nil`, the region of interest is moved to the bottom of the stack.

The return value is the new top of the region-of-interest stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` ([835](#)), `Gpm_PopRoi` ([835](#)), `Gpm_PushRoi` ([835](#))

### 55.4.10 gpm\_open

Synopsis: Open connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_open(var conn: Tgpm_connect; flag: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Gpm_Open` opens a new connection to the mouse server. The connection is described by the fields of the `conn` record of type `TGPMConnect` (830).

if `Flag` is 0, then the application only receives events that come from its own terminal device. If it is negative it will receive all events. If the value is positive then it is considered a console number to which to connect.

The return value is -1 on error, or the file descriptor used to communicate with the client. Under an X-Term the return value is -2.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` (833).

**Errors:** On Error, the return value is -1.

See also: `Gpm_Open` (834)

### 55.4.11 `gpm_poproi`

**Synopsis:** Pop region of interest from the stack.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_poproi(which: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_PopRoi` pops the topmost region of interest from the stack. It returns the next element on the stack, or `Nil` if the current element was the last one.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (835), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (834), `Gpm_PushRoi` (835)

### 55.4.12 `gpm_pushroi`

**Synopsis:** Push region of interest on the stack.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_pushroi(x1: LongInt; y1: LongInt; x2: LongInt;  
y2: LongInt; mask: LongInt; fun: TGpmHandler;  
xtradata: pointer) : Pgpm_roi`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_PushRoi` puts a new *region of interest* on the stack. The region of interest is defined by a rectangle described by the corners `(X1, Y1)` and `(X2, Y2)`.

The `mask` describes which events the handler {`fun`} will handle; `ExtraData` will be put in the `xtradata` field of the {`TGPM_Roi`} record passed to the `fun` handler.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (835), `Gpm_PopRoi` (835), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (834)

### 55.4.13 `gpm_raiseroi`

**Synopsis:** Raise region of interest in the stack.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_raiseroi(which: Pgpm_roi; before: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_RaiseRoi` raises the *region of interest* which till it is on top of region before. If before is nil then the region is put on top of the stack. The returned value is the top of the stack.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_PushRoi` (835), `Gpm_PopRoi` (835), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (834)

#### 55.4.14 `gpm_repeat`

**Synopsis:** Check for presence of mouse event.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_repeat (millisec: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_Repeat` returns 1 if no mouse event arrives in the next `millisec` milliseconds, it returns 0 otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_GetEvent` (833)

#### 55.4.15 `Gpm_StrictDouble`

**Synopsis:** Check whether event contains only a double-click event.

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_StrictDouble (EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns true if `EventType` contains only a doubleclick event, False otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_StrictSingle` (836), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (832), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (831), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (837), `Gpm_AnySingle` (831)

#### 55.4.16 `Gpm_StrictSingle`

**Synopsis:** Check whether event contains only a single-click event.

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_StrictSingle (EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns True if `EventType` contains only a singleclick event, False otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_AnyTriple` (832), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (836), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (831), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (837), `Gpm_AnySingle` (831)

### 55.4.17 Gpm\_StrictTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a triple-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictTriple` returns true if `EventType` contains only a triple click event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_AnyTriple` ([832](#)), `Gpm_StrictDouble` ([836](#)), `Gpm_AnyDouble` ([831](#)), `Gpm_StrictSingle` ([836](#)), `Gpm_AnySingle` ([831](#))

## 55.5 Tgpm\_connect

```
Tgpm_connect = record
  eventMask : Word;
  defaultMask : Word;
  minMod : Word;
  maxMod : Word;
  pid : LongInt;
  vc : LongInt;
end
```

GPM server connection information.

## 55.6 Tgpm\_event

```
Tgpm_event = record
  buttons : Byte;
  modifiers : Byte;
  vc : Word
;
  dx : Word;
  dy : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  EventType :
  TGpmEtype;
  clicks : LongInt;
  margin : TGpmMargin;
  wdx : Word
;
  wdy : Word;
end
```

`Tgpm_event` describes the events that are reported by GPM.

## 55.7 Tgpm\_roi

```
Tgpm_roi = record
  xmin : Integer;
  xmax : Integer;
  ymin : Integer
  ;
  ymax : Integer;
  minmod : Word;
  maxmod : Word;
  eventmask
  : Word;
  owned : Word;
  handler : TGpmHandler;
  clientdata : pointer
  ;
  prev : Pgpm_roi;
  next : Pgpm_roi;
end
```

Record used to define regions of interest.

## Chapter 56

# Reference for unit 'Graph'

### 56.1 Used units

Table 56.1: Used units by unit 'Graph'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 56.2 Overview

This document describes the `GRAPH` unit for Free Pascal, for all platforms. The unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl, but was later completely rewritten by Carl-Eric Codere to be completely portable. The unit is provided for compatibility only: It is recommended to use more modern graphical systems. The graph unit will allow to recompile old programs. They will work to some extent, but if the application has heavy graphical needs, it's recommended to use another set of graphical routines, suited to the platform the program should work on.

### 56.3 Categorized functions: Text and font handling

Functions to set texts on the screen.

Table 56.2:

| Name                  | Description                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| GetTextSettings (878) | Get current text settings             |
| InstallUserFont (881) | Install a new font                    |
| OutText (882)         | Write text at current cursor position |
| OutTextXY (870)       | Write text at coordinates X,Y         |
| RegisterBGIFont (884) | Register a new font                   |
| SetTextJustify (887)  | Set text justification                |
| SetTextStyle (887)    | Set text style                        |
| SetUserCharSize (888) | Set text size                         |
| TextHeight (889)      | Calculate height of text              |
| TextWidth (889)       | Calculate width of text               |

## 56.4 Categorized functions: Filled drawings

Functions for drawing filled regions.

Table 56.3:

| Name                  | Description                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Bar3D (871)           | Draw a filled 3D-style bar    |
| Bar (871)             | Draw a filled rectangle       |
| FloodFill (873)       | Fill starting from coordinate |
| FillEllipse (873)     | Draw a filled ellipse         |
| FillPoly (873)        | Draw a filled polygon         |
| GetFillPattern (875)  | Get current fill pattern      |
| GetFillSettings (875) | Get current fill settings     |
| SetFillPattern (885)  | Set current fill pattern      |
| SetFillStyle (885)    | Set current fill settings     |

## 56.5 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives

Functions for simple drawing.

Table 56.4:

| Name                  | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Arc (871)             | Draw an arc  |
| Circle (868)          | Draw a complete circle                               |
| DrawPoly (872)        | Draw a polygon with N points                         |
| Ellipse (873)         | Draw an ellipse                                      |
| GetArcCoords (874)    | Get arc coordinates                                  |
| GetLineSettings (876) | Get current line drawing settings                    |
| Line (870)            | Draw line between 2 points                           |
| LineRel (881)         | Draw line relative to current position               |
| LineTo (882)          | Draw line from current position to absolute position |
| MoveRel (882)         | Move cursor relative to current position             |
| MoveTo (882)          | Move cursor to absolute position                     |
| PieSlice (883)        | Draw a pie slice                                     |
| PutPixel (870)        | Draw 1 pixel   |
| Rectangle (883)       | Draw a non-filled rectangle                          |
| Sector (884)          | Draw a sector  |
| SetLineStyle (886)    | Set current line drawing style                       |

## 56.6 Categorized functions: Color management

All functions related to color management.

Table 56.5:

| Name                    | Description                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| GetBkColor (869)        | Get current background color         |
| GetColor (874)          | Get current foreground color         |
| GetDefaultPalette (874) | Get default palette entries          |
| GetMaxColor (876)       | Get maximum valid color              |
| GetPaletteSize (878)    | Get size of palette for current mode |
| GetPixel (869)          | Get color of selected pixel          |
| GetPalette (878)        | Get palette entry                    |
| SetAllPalette (870)     | Set all colors in palette            |
| SetBkColor (870)        | Set background color                 |
| SetColor (885)          | Set foreground color                 |
| SetPalette (887)        | Set palette entry                    |
| SetRGBPalette (871)     | Set palette entry with RGB values    |

## 56.7 Categorized functions: Screen management

General drawing screen management functions.

Table 56.6:

| Name                  | Description                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ClearViewPort (869)   | Clear the current viewport            |
| GetImage (869)        | Copy image from screen to memory      |
| GetMaxX (877)         | Get maximum X coordinate              |
| GetMaxY (877)         | Get maximum Y coordinate              |
| GetX (879)            | Get current X position                |
| GetY (879)            | Get current Y position                |
| ImageSize (869)       | Get size of selected image            |
| GetViewSettings (878) | Get current viewport settings         |
| PutImage (870)        | Copy image from memory to screen      |
| SetActivePage (870)   | Set active video page                 |
| SetAspectRatio (884)  | Set aspect ratio for drawing routines |
| SetViewPort (888)     | Set current viewport                  |
| SetVisualPage (871)   | Set visual page                       |
| SetWriteMode (889)    | Set write mode for screen operations  |

## 56.8 Categorized functions: Initialization

Initialization of the graphics screen.

Table 56.7:

| Name                    | Description                                 |
|-------------------------|---|
| ClearDevice (872)       | Empty the graphics screen                   |
| CloseGraph (872)        | Finish drawing session, return to text mode |
| DetectGraph (872)       | Detect graphical modes                      |
| GetAspectRatio (874)    | Get aspect ratio of screen                  |
| GetModeRange (877)      | Get range of valid modes for current driver |
| GraphDefaults (1)       | Set defaults                                |
| GetDriverName (875)     | Return name of graphical driver             |
| GetGraphMode (876)      | Return current or last used graphics mode   |
| GetMaxMode (876)        | Get maximum mode for current driver         |
| GetModeName (877)       | Get name of current mode                    |
| GraphErrorMsg (1)       | String representation of graphical error    |
| GraphResult (1)         | Result of last drawing operation            |
| InitGraph (880)         | Initialize graphics drivers                 |
| InstallUserDriver (881) | Install a new driver                        |
| RegisterBGIDriver (883) | Register a new driver                       |
| RestoreCRTMode (884)    | Go back to text mode                        |
| SetGraphMode (886)      | Set graphical mode                          |

## 56.9 Target specific issues: Linux

There are several issues on Linux that need to be taken care of:

The Linux version of the Graph unit uses the libvga library. This library works on the console, not under X.

If you get an error similar to

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find -lvga
```

This can mean one of two things: either libvga and its development package is not installed properly, or the directory where it is installed is not in the linker path.

To remedy the former, you should install both the libvga package and libvga-devel package (or compile and install from scratch).

To remedy the latter, you should add the path to the compiler command-line using the `-F1` option.

Programs using libvga need root privileges to run. You can make them setuid root with the following command:

```
chown root.root myprogram
chmod u+s myprogram
```

The libvga library will give up the root privileges after it is initialized.

there is an experimental version of the Graphics library available that uses GGI to do all the drawing, but it is not well tested. It's called `ggigraph` and is distributed in source form only.

Do not use the CRT unit together with the Graph unit: the console may end up in an unusable state. Instead, the `ncurses` unit may function fine.

## 56.10 Target specific issues: DOS

VESA modes (i.e., anything but 320x200x256 and 640x480x16) do not work under most installations of Windows NT, Windows 2000 and Windows XP. They also do not work for some people under Windows 98 and Windows ME, depending on their graphics drivers. However, the graph unit cannot detect this, because no errors are returned from the system. In such cases, the screen simply turns black, or will show garbage.

Nothing can be done about this, the reason is missing or buggy support in the graphics drivers of the operating system.

## 56.11 A word about mode selection

The graph unit was implemented for compatibility with the old Turbo Pascal graph unit. For this reason, the mode constants as they were defined in the Turbo Pascal graph unit are retained.

However, since

1. Video cards have evolved very much
2. Free Pascal runs on multiple platforms

it was decided to implement new mode and graphic driver constants, which are more independent of the specific platform the program runs on.

In this section we give a short explanation of the new mode system. the following drivers were defined:

```
D1bit = 11;
D2bit = 12;
```

```

D4bit = 13;
D6bit = 14; { 64 colors Half-brite mode - Amiga }
D8bit = 15;
D12bit = 16; { 4096 color modes HAM mode - Amiga }
D15bit = 17;
D16bit = 18;
D24bit = 19; { not yet supported }
D32bit = 20; { not yet supported }
D64bit = 21; { not yet supported }

lowNewDriver = 11;
highNewDriver = 21;

```

Each of these drivers specifies a desired color-depth.

The following modes have been defined:

```

detectMode = 30000;
m320x200 = 30001;
m320x256 = 30002; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m320x400 = 30003; { amiga/atari resolution }
m512x384 = 30004; { mac resolution }
m640x200 = 30005; { vga resolution }
m640x256 = 30006; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m640x350 = 30007; { vga resolution }
m640x400 = 30008;
m640x480 = 30009;
m800x600 = 30010;
m832x624 = 30011; { mac resolution }
m1024x768 = 30012;
m1280x1024 = 30013;
m1600x1200 = 30014;
m2048x1536 = 30015;

lowNewMode = 30001;
highNewMode = 30015;

```

These modes start at 30000 because Borland specified that the mode number should be ascending with increasing X resolution, and the new constants shouldn't interfere with the old ones.

The above constants can be used to set a certain color depth and resolution, as demonstrated in the below example.

If other modes than the ones above are supported by the graphics card, you will not be able to select them with this mechanism.

For this reason, there is also a 'dynamic' mode number, which is assigned at run-time. This number increases with increasing X resolution. It can be queried with the `getmoderange` call. This call will return the range of modes which are valid for a certain graphics driver. The numbers are guaranteed to be consecutive, and can be used to search for a certain resolution, as in the second example below.

Thus, the `getmoderange` function can be used to detect all available modes and drivers, as in the third example below:

**Listing:** `./graphex/inigraph1.pp`

---

**Program** `inigraph1 ;`

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate static graphics mode selection }
```

```
uses graph;
```

```
const
```

```
  TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors!' +  
            ' (press <Return> to continue)';
```

```
var
```

```
  gd, gm, lo, hi, error, tw, th: integer;  
  found: boolean;
```

```
begin
```

```
  { We want an 8 bit mode }  
  gd := D8bit;  
  gm := m640x480;  
  initgraph(gd, gm, '');  
  { Make sure you always check graphresult! }  
  error := graphResult;  
  if (error <> grOk) Then  
    begin  
      writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');  
      halt(1)  
    end;  
  { We are now in 640x480x256 }  
  setColor(cyan);  
  rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);  
  { Write a nice message in the center of the screen }  
  setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);  
  tw := TextWidth(TheLine);  
  th := TextHeight(TheLine);  
  outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,  
            (getMaxY - TH) div 2, TheLine);  
  { Wait for return }  
  readln;  
  { Back to text mode }  
  closegraph;
```

```
end.
```

---

**Listing:** ./graphex/inigraph2.pp

---

**Program** inigraph2;

```
{ Program to demonstrate dynamic graphics mode selection }
```

```
uses graph;
```

```
const
```

```
  TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors!' +  
            ' (press <Return> to continue)';
```

```
var
```

```
  th, tw, gd, gm, lo, hi, error: integer;  
  found: boolean;
```

```
begin
```

```
  { We want an 8 bit mode }
```

```

gd := D8bit;
{ Get all available resolutions for this bitdepth }
getmoderange(gd, lo, hi);
{ If the highest available mode number is -1,
  no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
if hi = -1 then
  begin
    writeln('no 8 bit modes supported!');
    halt
  end;
found := false;
{ Search all resolutions for 640x480 }
for gm := lo to hi do
  begin
    initgraph(gd, gm, '');
    { Make sure you always check graphresult! }
    error := graphResult;
    if (error = grOk) and
      (getmaxx = 639) and (getmaxy = 479) then
      begin
        found := true;
        break;
      end;
  end;
if not found then
  CloseGraph();
  begin
    writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');
    halt(1)
  end;
{ We are now in 640x480x256 }
setColor(cyan);
rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);
{ Write a nice message in the center of the screen }
setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);
TW:=TextWidth(TheLine);
TH:=TextHeight(TheLine);
outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
          (getMaxY - TH) div 2, TheLine);
{ Wait for return }
readln;
{ Back to text mode }
closegraph;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./graphex/modrange.pp

---

**Program** GetModeRange\_Example;

---

```

{ This program demonstrates how to find all available graph modes }

```

```

uses graph;

```

```

const

```

```

  { Currently, only 4, 8, 15 and 16 bit modes are supported
    but this may change in the future }
  gdnames: array[D4bit..D16bit] of string[6] =
    ('4 bit', '6 bit', '8 bit', '12 bit', '15 bit', '16 bit');

```

```

procedure WriteRes(const depth : integer);
var
    tw, th : integer;
    v, text : String;
begin
    text := 'Current resolution is '; str(getmaxx+1, v);
    text := text + v + 'x'; str(getmaxy+1, v);
    text := text + v + 'x' + gdnames[depth];
    setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);
    TW:=TextWidth(text);
    TH:=TextHeight(text);
    outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
              (getMaxY - TH) div 2, text);
end;

var
    t: text;
    line : string;
    gd, c, low, high, res: integer;
begin
    assign(t, 'modes.txt');
    rewrite(t);
    close(t);
    for gd := D4bit to D16bit do
        begin
            { Get the available mode numbers for this driver }
            getModeRange(gd, low, high);
            append(t);
            write(t, gdnames[gd]);
            writeln(t, ': low modenr = ', low, ', high modenr = ', high);
            close(t);
            { If high is -1,
              no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
            if high = -1 then
                begin
                    append(t);
                    writeln(t, ' No modes supported!');
                    writeln(t);
                    close(t);
                end
            else
                { Enter all supported resolutions for this bitdepth
                  and write their characteristics to the file }
                for c := low to high do
                    begin
                        append(t);
                        writeln(t, ' testing mode nr ', c);
                        close(t);
                        initgraph(gd, c, '');
                        res := graphresult;
                        append(t);
                        { An error occurred when entering the mode? }
                        if res <> grok then
                            writeln(t, grapherrormsg(res))
                        else
                            begin
                                write(t, 'maxx: ', getmaxx, ', maxy: ', getmaxy);

```

```

        Writeln(t, ', maxcolor: ', getmaxcolor);
        closegraph;
    end;
    writeln(t);
    WriteRes(gd);
    close(t);
    end;
    append(t);
    writeln(t);
    close(t);
    end;
    Writeln('All supported modes are listed in modes.txt files');
end.

```

## 56.12 Requirements

The unit Graph exports functions and procedures for graphical output. It requires at least a VGA-compatible Card or a VGA-Card with software-driver (min. **512Kb** video memory).

## 56.13 Constants, types and variables

### 56.13.1 Constants

AndPut = 3

Draw operation: use AND

```

AnsiToASCIITransTable : TCharsetTransTable = (#$00, #$01, #$02, #
    $03, #$04, #$05, #$06, #$07, #$08, #$09, #$0a, #$0b, #$0c, #$0d,
    #$0e, #$0f, #$10, #$11, #$12, #$13, #$14, #$15, #$16, #$17, #$18,
    #$19, #$1a, #$1b, #$1c, #$1d, #$1e, #$1f, #$20, #$21, #$22, #$23
    , #$24, #$25, #$26, #$27, #$28, #$29, #$2a, #$2b, #$2c, #$2d, #$2e
    , #$2f, #$30, #$31, #$32, #$33, #$34, #$35, #$36, #$37, #$38, #$39
    , #$3a, #$3b, #$3c, #$3d, #$3e, #$3f, #$40, #$41, #$42, #$43, #$44
    , #$45, #$46, #$47, #$48, #$49, #$4a, #$4b, #$4c, #$4d, #$4e, #$4f
    , #$50, #$51, #$52, #$53, #$54, #$55, #$56, #$57, #$58, #$59, #$5a
    , #$5b, #$5c, #$5d, #$5e, #$5f, #$60, #$61, #$62, #$63, #$64, #$65
    , #$66, #$67, #$68, #$69, #$6a, #$6b, #$6c, #$6d, #$6e, #$6f, #$70
    , #$71, #$72, #$73, #$74, #$75, #$76, #$77, #$78, #$79, #$7a, #$7b
    , #$7c, #$7d, #$7e, #$7f, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?',
    '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?',
    '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '$ff, $ad
    , $9b, $9c, '?', $9d, '?', '?', '?', '?', $a6, $ae, $aa, '?'
    , '?', '?', $f8, $f1, $fd, '?', '?', $e6, '?', $fa, '?', '?'
    , $a7, $af, $ac, $ab, '?', $a8, '?', '?', '?', '?', $8e, $8f
    , $92, $80, '?', $90, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', $a5,
    '?', '?', '?', '?', $99, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', $9a, '?', '?'
    , $e1, $85, $a0, $83, '?', $84, $86, $91, $87, $8a, $82
    , $88, $89, $8d, $a1, $8c, $8b, '?', $a4, $95, $a2, $93
    , '?', $94, $f6, '?', $97, $a3, $96, $81, '?', '?', $98)

```

Default ansi transliteration table.

BkSlashFill = 5

Fill style: Diagonal (backslash) lines

black = 0

Color code: black.

blue = 1

Color code: blue

BoldFont = 10

Font number: Bold font.

BottomText = 0

Vertical text alignment: Align text to bottom

brown = 6

Color code: brown

CenterLn = 2

Line style: centered line

CenterText = 1

Horizontal text alignment: Center text

CGA = 1

Graphic driver for CGA cards

CGAC0 = 0

CGA Graphic driver mode C0

CGAC1 = 1

CGA Graphic driver mode C1

CGAC2 = 2

CGA Graphic driver mode C2

CGAC3 = 3

CGA Graphic driver mode C3

CGAHi = 4

CGA Graphic driver Hi-res mode

ClipOff = False

Viewport clipping off

ClipOn = True

Viewport clipping on

CloseDotFill = 11

Fill style: Closely spaced dotted lines

CopyPut = 0

Draw operation: use Copy

CurrentDriver = - 128

Currently used driver

cyan = 3

Color code: Cyan

D12bit = 16

Mode: Depth 12 bit

D15bit = 17

Mode: Depth 15 bit

D16bit = 18

Mode: Depth 16 bit

D1bit = 11

Mode: Depth 1 bit

D24bit = 19

Mode: Depth 24 bit

D2bit = 12

Mode: Depth 2 bit

D32bit = 20

Mode: Depth 32 bit

D4bit = 13

Mode: Depth 4 bit

D64bit = 21

Mode: Depth 64 bit

D6bit = 14

Mode: Depth 6 bit

D8bit = 15

Mode: Depth 8 bit

darkgray = 8

Color code: Dark gray

DashedLn = 3

Line style: dashed line

Default = 0

Default mode

DefaultFont = 0

Font number: Normal font

Detect = 0

Mode: Detect mode.

detectMode = 30000

Mode: Autodetect optimal mode

DottedLn = 1

Line style: Dotted line

DrawTextBackground : Boolean = False

Should the background of texts be drawn or should it be left untouched ?

EGA = 3

Graphic driver for EGA cards

EGA64 = 4

Graphic driver for EGA 64 cards

EGA64Hi = 1

EGA64 graphic driver high resolution mode

EGA64Lo = 0

EGA64 graphic driver low resolution mode

EGABlack = 0

Color code: EGA Black

EGABlue = 1

Color code: EGA blue

EGABrown = 20

Color code: EGA brown

EGACyan = 3

Color code: EGA cyan

EGADarkgray = 56

Color code: EGA dark gray

EGAGreen = 2

Color code: EGA green

EGAHi = 1

EGA graphic driver high resolution mode

EGALightblue = 57

Color code: EGA Light blue

EGALightcyan = 59

Color code: EGA Light cyan

EGALightgray = 7

Color code: EGA Light gray

EGALightgreen = 58

Color code: EGA Light green

EGALightmagenta = 61

Color code: EGA light magenta

EGALightred = 60

Color code: EGA light red

EGALo = 0

EGA graphic driver low resolution mode

EGAMagenta = 5

Color code: EGA magenta

EGAMono = 5

Graphic driver for EGA monochrome cards

EGAMonoHi = 3

EGAMono graphic driver high resolution mode

EGARed = 4

Color code: EGA red

EGAWhite = 63

Color code: EGA white

EGAYellow = 62

Color code: EGA yellow

EmptyFill = 0

Fill style: Do not fill

EuroFont = 9

Font number: ?

```
fillpatternTable : Array[0..12] of FillPatternType = (($00, $00,
    $00, $00, $00, $00, $00, $00), ($ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff
    , $ff), ($ff, $ff, $00, $00, $ff, $ff, $00, $00), ($01, $02, $04,
    $08, $10, $20, $40, $80), ($07, $0e, $1c, $38, $70, $e0, $c1, $83
    ), ($07, $83, $c1, $e0, $70, $38, $1c, $0e), ($5a, $2d, $96, $4b,
    $a5, $d2, $69, $b4), ($ff, $88, $88, $88, $ff, $88, $88, $88), (
    $18, $24, $42, $81, $81, $42, $24, $18), ($cc, $33, $cc, $33, $cc
    , $33, $cc, $33), ($80, $00, $08, $00, $80, $00, $08, $00), ($88,
    $00, $22, $00, $88, $00, $22, $00), (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))
```

Table with standard fill patterns

G1024x768x16 = 30

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16 colors

G1024x768x16M = 25

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16M colors

G1024x768x16M32 = 36

Mode: Resolution 1024x758, 16M 32-bit colors

G1024x768x256 = 12

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 256 colors

G1024x768x32K = 23

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 32K colors

G1024x768x64K = 24

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 64K colors

G1152x864x16 = 38

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16 colors

G1152x864x16M = 42

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M colors

G1152x864x16M32 = 43

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M 32-bitcolors

G1152x864x256 = 39

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 256 colors

G1152x864x32K = 40

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 32K colors

G1152x864x64K = 41

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 64K colors

G1280x1024x16 = 31

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16 colors

G1280x1024x16M = 28

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M colors

G1280x1024x16M32 = 37

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M 32-bit colors

G1280x1024x256 = 13

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 256 colors

G1280x1024x32K = 26

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 32K colors

G1280x1024x64K = 27

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 64K colors

G1600x1200x16 = 44

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16 colors

G1600x1200x16M = 48

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M colors

G1600x1200x16M32 = 49

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M 32-bit colors

G1600x1200x256 = 45

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 256 colors

G1600x1200x32K = 46

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 32K colors

G1600x1200x64K = 47

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 64K colors

G320x200x16 = 1

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16 colors

G320x200x16M = 16

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M colors

G320x200x16M32 = 33

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M 32-bit colors

G320x200x256 = 5

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 256 colors

G320x200x32K = 14

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 32K colors

G320x200x64K = 15

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 64K colors

G320x240x256 = 6

Mode: Resolution 320x240, 256 colors

G320x400x256 = 7

Mode: Resolution 320x400, 256 colors

G360x480x256 = 8

Mode: Resolution 360x480, 256 colors

G640x200x16 = 2

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x350x16 = 3

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16 = 4

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16M = 19

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M colors

G640x480x16M32 = 34

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M 32-bit colors

G640x480x2 = 9

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 2 colors

G640x480x256 = 10

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 256 colors

G640x480x32K = 17

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 32K colors

G640x480x64K = 18

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 64K colors

G720x348x2 = 32

Mode: Resolution 720x348, 2 colors

G800x600x16 = 29

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16 colors

G800x600x16M = 22

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M colors

G800x600x16M32 = 35

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M 32-bit colors

G800x600x256 = 11

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 256 colors

G800x600x32K = 20

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 32K colors

G800x600x64K = 21

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 64K colors

GothicFont = 4

Font number: Gothic font

GraphStringTransTable : PCharsetTransTable = Nil

Table used when transliterating strings.

green = 2

Color code: green

grError = - 11

Error: Unknown error.

grFileNotFound = - 3

Error: File for driver not found.

grFontNotFound = - 8

Error: font description file not found.

grInvalidDriver = - 4

Error: Invalid driver specified

grInvalidFont = - 13

Error: Invalid font description

grInvalidFontNum = - 14

Error: Invalid font number

grInvalidMode = - 10

Error: Invalid mode specified.

grInvalidVersion = - 18

Error: Invalid version.

grIOerror = - 12

Error: Unspecified Input/Output error.

grNoFloodMem = - 7

Error: Could not allocate memory for flood operation.

`grNoFontMem = - 9`

Error: Not enough memory to load font.

`grNoInitGraph = - 1`

Error: Graphical system not initialized

`grNoLoadMem = - 5`

Error: Memory error.

`grNoScanMem = - 6`

Error: Could not allocate memory for scan

`grNotDetected = - 2`

Error: Graphics device not detected.

`grOk = 0`

Graphical operation went OK.

`HatchFill = 7`

Fill style: Hatch lines

`HercMono = 7`

Mode: Hercules, mono color

`HercMonoHi = 0`

Mode: Hercules card, monochrome, high resolution

`highNewDriver = 21`

Mode: highest number for new driver

`highNewMode = m2048x1536`

Mode: Highest possible value of the new modes.

`HorizDir = 0`

Text write direction: Horizontal

`InterleaveFill = 9`

Fill style: Interleaving lines

LCOMFont = 8

Font number: ?

LeftText = 0

Horizontal text alignment: Align text left

lightblue = 9

Color code: Light blue

lightcyan = 11

Color code: Light cyan

lightgray = 7

Color code: Light gray

lightgreen = 10

Color code: Light green

lightmagenta = 13

Color code: Light magenta

lightred = 12

Color code: Light red

LineFill = 2

Fill style: Fill using horizontal lines

lowNewDriver = 11

Mode: lowest number for new driver

lowNewMode = m320x200

Mode: Lowest possible value of the new modes.

LowRes = 6

Mode: Low resolution.

LtBkSlashFill = 6

Fill style: Light diagonal (backslash) lines

LtSlashFill = 3

Fill style: Light diagonal (slash) lines

m1024x768 = detectMode + 12

Mode: Resolution 1024x768

m1280x1024 = detectMode + 13

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024

m1600x1200 = detectMode + 14

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200

m2048x1536 = detectMode + 15

Mode: Resolution 2048x1536

m320x200 = detectMode + 1

Mode: Resolution 320x200

m320x256 = detectMode + 2

Mode: Resolution 320x256

m320x400 = detectMode + 3

Mode: Resolution 320x400

m512x384 = detectMode + 4

Mode: Resolution 512x384

m640x200 = detectMode + 5

Mode: Resolution 640x200

m640x256 = detectMode + 6

Mode: Resolution 640x256

m640x350 = detectMode + 7

Mode: Resolution 640x350

m640x400 = detectMode + 8

Mode: Resolution 640x400

`m640x480 = detectMode + 9`

**Mode: Resolution 640x480**

`m800x600 = detectMode + 10`

**Mode: Resolution 800x600**

`m832x624 = detectMode + 11`

**Mode: Resolution 832x624**

`magenta = 5`

**Color code: Magenta**

`MaxColors = 255`

**Max amount of colors in a palette**

`maxsmallint = high(smallint)`

**Maximum value for smallint type**

`MCGA = 2`

**Graphic driver for MCGA cards**

`MCGAC0 = 0`

**MCGA Graphic driver mode C0**

`MCGAC1 = 1`

**MCGA Graphic driver mode C1**

`MCGAC2 = 2`

**MCGA Graphic driver mode C2**

`MCGAC3 = 3`

**MCGA Graphic driver mode C3**

`MCGAHi = 5`

**MCGA Graphic driver high resolution mode**

`MCGAMed = 4`

**MCGA Graphic driver medium resolution mode**

NormalPut = 0

Draw operation: Use Normal (copy) operation

NormWidth = 1

Line width: Normal width

NotPut = 4

Draw operation: use NOT

OrPut = 2

Draw operation: use OR

red = 4

Color code: Red

```
resolutions : Array[lowNewMode..highNewMode] of TResolutionRec =
  ((x: 320; y: 200), (x: 320; y: 256), (x: 320; y: 400), (x: 512; y
   : 384), (x: 640; y: 200), (x: 640; y: 256), (x: 640; y: 350), (x:
   640; y: 400), (x: 640; y: 480), (x: 800; y: 600), (x: 832; y: 624
   ), (x: 1024; y: 768), (x: 1280; y: 1024), (x: 1600; y: 1200), (x:
   2048; y: 1536))
```

Array with actual resolutions of the new modes

RightText = 2

Horizontal text alignment: Align text right

SansSerifFont = 3

Font number: Sans Serif font

ScriptFont = 5

Font number: Script font

SimpleFont = 6

Font number: Simple font

SlashFill = 4

Fill style: Diagonal (slash) lines

SmallFont = 2

Font number: Small font

`SolidFill = 1`

Fill style: Solid fill.

`SolidLn = 0`

Line style: Solid line

`ThickWidth = 3`

Line width: double width

`TopOff = False`

Top off

`TopOn = True`

Top on

`TopText = 2`

Vertical text alignment: Align text to top

`TriplexFont = 1`

Font number: Triplex font

`TSCRFonT = 7`

Font number: Terminal font

`UserBitLn = 4`

Line style: User defined

`UserCharSize = 0`

User character size

`UserFill = 12`

Fill style: User-defined fill.

`VertDir = 1`

Text write direction: Vertical

`VESA = 10`

Mode: VESA graphics adaptor.

VGA = 9

Mode: VGA graphics adaptor.

VGAHi = 2

Mode: VGA high resolution (640x480)

VGALo = 0

Mode: VGA low resolution (640x200)

VGAMed = 1

Mode: VGA medium resolution (640x350)

white = 15

Color code: White

WideDotFill = 10

Fill style: Widely spaced dotted lines

XHatchFill = 8

Fill style: Heavy hatch lines

XORPut = 1

Draw operation: use XOR

yellow = 14

Color code: Yellow

### 56.13.2 Types

CircleProc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; Radius: Word)

Standard circle drawing routine prototype.

clrviewproc = procedure

Standard clearviewport routine prototype

ColorType = Word

Color type alias

```
defpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)
```

This is the standard putpixel routine used by all function drawing routines, it will use the viewport settings, as well as clip, and use the current foreground color to plot the desired pixel.

```
ellipseproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word;
    YRadius: Word; stAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word
    ;
    fp: patternlineproc)
```

Standard ellipse drawing routine prototype.

```
FillPatternType = Array[1..8] of Byte
```

Bit pattern used when drawing lines. Set bits are drawn.

```
GetBkColorProc = function : ColorType
```

GetBkColorProc is the procedure prototype for the GetBkColor (869) method handler in TMod-  
eInfo (892). The function should return the color code of the background color.

```
getimageproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt
    ;
    Y2: SmallInt; var Bitmap)
```

Standard GetImage (869) procedure prototype.

```
getpixelproc = function(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt) : ColorType
```

Standard pixel fetching routine prototype

```
getrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;
    var RedValue: SmallInt;
    var GreenValue: SmallInt;
    var
    BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for GetRGBPalette (869)

```
getscanlineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt
    ;
    var data)
```

This routine is used for FloodFill (873) It returns an entire screen scan line with a word for each pixel in the scanline. Also handy for GetImage.

```
graphfreememprc = procedure(var P: Pointer; size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is freed by the graph routines.

```
graphgetmemproc = procedure(var P: pointer; size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is needed by the graph routines.

```
graph_float = single
```

The platform's preferred floating point size for fast graph operations

```
hlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single horizontal line

```
imagesizeproc = function(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt
;
                        Y2: SmallInt) : LongInt
```

Standard ImageSize (869) calculation procedure prototype.

```
initmodeproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to initialize a mode.

```
lineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt;
Y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard line drawing routine prototype.

```
OutTextXYProc = procedure(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt;
const TextString: string)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for OutTextXY (870)

```
patternlineproc = procedure(x1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y: SmallInt
)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a patterned line

```
PCharsetTransTable = ^TCharsetTransTable
```

Pointer to TCharsetTransTable (868) array.

```
PModeInfo = ^TModeInfo
```

Pointer to TModeInfo (892) record

```
putimageproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; var Bitmap;
BitBlt: Word)
```

Standard PutImage (870) procedure prototype.

```
putpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; Color: ColorType
)
```

Standard pixel drawing routine prototype

```
restorestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to restore the graphical state at a closegraph call.

```
savestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to save the graphical state before a mode is set.

```
setactivepageproc = procedure (page: Word)
```

Standard SetActivePage (870) procedure prototype.

```
SetAllPaletteProc = procedure (const Palette: PaletteType)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetAllPalette (870)

```
SetBkColorProc = procedure (ColorNum: ColorType)
```

SetBkColorProc is the procedure prototype for the SetBkColor (870) method handler in TMod-Info (892). The procedure gets passed the color code for the color to set as background color.

```
setrgbpaletteproc = procedure (ColorNum: SmallInt; RedValue: SmallInt
;
                                GreenValue: SmallInt; BlueValue:
                                SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetRGBPalette (871)

```
setvisualpageproc = procedure (page: Word)
```

Standard SetVisualPage (871) procedure prototype.

```
TCharsetTransTable = Array[Char] of Char
```

Character transliteration table, with entries for 256 characters

```
vlineproc = procedure (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single vertical line

### 56.13.3 Variables

```
Circle : CircleProc
```

Circle draws a complete circle with center at (X, Y), radius radius.

```
ClearViewPort : clrviewproc
```

Clears the current viewport. The current background color is used as filling color. The pointer is set at (0, 0).

DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc

Hook to directly draw a pixel on the screen.

GetBkColor : GetBkColorProc

GetBkColor returns the current background color (the palette entry).

GetImage : getimageproc

GetImage Places a copy of the screen area (X1, Y1) to X2, Y2 in BitMap

GetPixel : getpixelproc

GetPixel returns the color of the point at (X, Y)

GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc

Hook to set a RGB palette entries.

GetScanLine : getscanlineproc

Hook to get a scan line from the screen.

GraphFreeMemPtr : graphfreememprc

Hook to free heap memory.

GraphGetMemPtr : graphgetmemprc

Hook to get heap memory

HLine : hlineproc

Hook to draw a solid horizontal line

ImageSize : imagesizeproc

ImageSize returns the number of bytes needed to store the image in the rectangle defined by (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2).

InternalEllipse : ellipseproc

Hook to draw an ellipse

Line : lineproc

`Line` draws a line starting from `(X1, Y1)` to `(X2, Y2)`, in the current line style and color. The current position is put to `(X2, Y2)`

`OutTextXY` : `OutTextXYProc`

`OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at position `(X, Y)`, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

`PatternLine` : `patternlineproc`

Hook to draw a patterned line

`PutImage` : `putimageproc`

`PutImage` Places the bitmap in `Bitmap` on the screen at `(X1, Y1)`. `How` determines how the bitmap will be placed on the screen. Possible values are:

- `CopyPut`
- `XORPut`
- `ORPut`
- `AndPut`
- `NotPut`

`PutPixel` : `putpixelproc`

Puts a point at `(X, Y)` using color `Color`

`RestoreVideoState` : `restorestateproc`

Hook to restore a saved video mode

`SaveVideoState` : `savestateproc`

Hook to save the current video state

`SetActivePage` : `setactivepageproc`

Sets `Page` as the active page for all graphical output.

`SetAllPalette` : `SetAllPaletteProc`

Sets the current palette to `Palette`. `Palette` is an untyped variable, usually pointing to a record of type `PaletteType`

`SetBkColor` : `SetBkColorProc`

Sets the background color to `Color`.

`SetRGBPalette` : `setrgbpaletteproc`

SetRGBPalette sets the ColorNr-th entry in the palette to the color with RGB-values Red, Green Blue.

SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc

SetVisualPage sets the video page to page number Page.

VLine : vlineproc

Hook to draw a solid vertical line

## 56.14 Procedures and functions

### 56.14.1 Arc

Synopsis: Draw part of a circle

Declaration: `procedure Arc(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word;  
                                Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Arc draws part of a circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius, starting from angle start, stopping at angle stop. These angles are measured counterclockwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Circle (868), Ellipse (873), GetArcCoords (874), PieSlice (883), Sector (884)

### 56.14.2 Bar

Synopsis: Draw filled rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar3D (871), Rectangle (883)

### 56.14.3 Bar3D

Synopsis: Draw filled 3-dimensional rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar3D(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt;  
                                depth: Word; top: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Bar3d draws a 3-dimensional Bar with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style. Depth specifies the number of pixels used to show the depth of the bar.

If Top is true; then a 3-dimensional top is drawn.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar (871), Rectangle (883)

#### 56.14.4 ClearDevice

Synopsis: Clear the complete screen

Declaration: `procedure ClearDevice`

Visibility: default

Description: Clears the graphical screen (with the current background color), and sets the pointer at (0, 0).

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearViewPort` (869), `SetBkColor` (870)

#### 56.14.5 Closegraph

Synopsis: Close graphical system.

Declaration: `procedure Closegraph`

Visibility: default

Description: Closes the graphical system, and restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was activated.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (880)

#### 56.14.6 DetectGraph

Synopsis: Detect correct graphical driver to use

Declaration: `procedure DetectGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt;  
var GraphMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectGraph` checks the hardware in the PC and determines the driver and screen-modus to be used. These are returned in `Driver` and `Modus`, and can be fed to `InitGraph`. See the `InitGraph` for a list of drivers and modi.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (880)

#### 56.14.7 DrawPoly

Synopsis: Draw a polygon

Declaration: `procedure DrawPoly(NumPoints: Word; var polypoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DrawPoly` draws a polygon with `NumberOfPoints` corner points, using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType` (891).

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` (871), `Bar3D` (871), `Rectangle` (883)

### 56.14.8 Ellipse

Synopsis: Draw an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Ellipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stAngle: Word;  
EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws part of an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. `Start` and `Stop` are the starting and stopping angles of the part of the ellipse. They are measured counterclockwise from the X-axis (3 o'clock is equal to 0 degrees). Only positive angles can be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([871](#)), `Circle` ([868](#)), `FillEllipse` ([873](#))

### 56.14.9 FillEllipse

Synopsis: Draw and fill an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure FillEllipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word;  
YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. The ellipse is filled with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([871](#)), `Circle` ([868](#)), `GetArcCoords` ([874](#)), `PieSlice` ([883](#)), `Sector` ([884](#))

### 56.14.10 FillPoly

Synopsis: Draw, close and fill a polygon

Declaration: `procedure FillPoly(NumPoints: Word; var PolyPoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillPoly` draws a polygon with `NumberOfPoints` corner points and fills it using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` ([871](#)), `Bar3D` ([871](#)), `Rectangle` ([883](#))

### 56.14.11 FloodFill

Synopsis: Fill an area with a given color

Declaration: `procedure FloodFill(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; Border: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Fills the area containing the point  $(X, Y)$ , bounded by the color `BorderColor`.

Errors: None

See also: `SetColor` ([885](#)), `SetBkColor` ([870](#))

#### 56.14.12 GetArcCoords

Synopsis: Return coordinates of last drawn arc or ellipse.

Declaration: `procedure GetArcCoords (var ArcCoords: ArcCoordsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetArcCoords` returns the coordinates of the latest `Arc` or `Ellipse` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([871](#)), `Ellipse` ([873](#))

#### 56.14.13 GetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Return screen resolution

Declaration: `procedure GetAspectRatio (var Xasp: Word; var Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAspectRatio` determines the effective resolution of the screen. The aspect ration can then be calculated as `Xasp/Yasp`.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#)), `SetAspectRatio` ([884](#))

#### 56.14.14 GetColor

Synopsis: Return current drawing color

Declaration: `function GetColor : ColorType`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetColor` returns the current drawing color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([874](#)), `SetBkColor` ([870](#))

#### 56.14.15 GetDefaultPalette

Synopsis: Return default palette

Declaration: `procedure GetDefaultPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDefaultPalette` returns the current palette in `Palette`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([874](#)), `GetBkColor` ([869](#))

#### 56.14.16 GetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Declaration: `function GetDirectVideo : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

#### 56.14.17 GetDriverName

Synopsis: Return current driver name

Declaration: `function GetDriverName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDriverName` returns a string containing the name of the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetModeName` ([877](#)), `InitGraph` ([880](#))

#### 56.14.18 GetFillPattern

Synopsis: Return current fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure GetFillPattern(var FillPattern: FillPatternType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillPattern` returns an array with the current fill-pattern in `FillPattern`

Errors: None

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([885](#))

#### 56.14.19 GetFillSettings

Synopsis: Return current fill settings

Declaration: `procedure GetFillSettings(var Fillinfo: FillSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillSettings` returns the current fill-settings in `FillInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([885](#))

### 56.14.20 GetGraphMode

Synopsis: Get current graphical modus

Declaration: `function GetGraphMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetGraphMode` returns the current graphical modus

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#))

### 56.14.21 GetLineSettings

Synopsis: Get current line drawing settings

Declaration: `procedure GetLineSettings (var ActiveLineInfo: LineSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineSettings` returns the current Line settings in `LineInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLineStyle` ([886](#))

### 56.14.22 GetMaxColor

Synopsis: return maximum number of colors

Declaration: `function GetMaxColor : ColorType`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxColor` returns the maximum color-number which can be set with `SetColor`. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, this color isn't always guaranteed to be white (for instance in 256+ color modes).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([885](#)), `GetPaletteSize` ([878](#))

### 56.14.23 GetMaxMode

Synopsis: Return biggest mode for the current driver

Declaration: `function GetMaxMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxMode` returns the highest modus for the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#))

#### 56.14.24 GetMaxX

Synopsis: Return maximal X coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxX` returns the maximum horizontal screen length

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxY` ([877](#))

#### 56.14.25 GetMaxY

Synopsis: Return maximal Y coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxY` returns the maximum number of screen lines

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxX` ([877](#))

#### 56.14.26 GetModeName

Synopsis: Return description a modus

Declaration: `function GetModeName (ModeNumber: SmallInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeName` Returns a string with the name of modus Modus

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDriverName` ([875](#)), `InitGraph` ([880](#))

#### 56.14.27 GetModeRange

Synopsis: Return lowest and highest modus of current driver

Declaration: `procedure GetModeRange (GraphDriver: SmallInt; var LoMode: SmallInt;  
var HiMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeRange` returns the Lowest and Highest modus of the currently installed driver. If no modes are supported for this driver, `HiModus` will be -1.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#))

#### 56.14.28 GetPalette

Synopsis: Return current palette

Declaration: `procedure GetPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPalette` returns in `Palette` the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPaletteSize` ([878](#)), `SetPalette` ([887](#))

#### 56.14.29 GetPaletteSize

Synopsis: Return maximal number of entries in current palette

Declaration: `function GetPaletteSize : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPaletteSize` returns the maximum number of entries in the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` ([878](#)), `SetPalette` ([887](#))

#### 56.14.30 GetTextSettings

Synopsis: Return current text style

Declaration: `procedure GetTextSettings (var TextInfo: TextSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextSettings` returns the current text style settings : The font, direction, size and placement as set with `SetTextStyle` and `SetTextJustify`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([887](#)), `SetTextJustify` ([887](#))

#### 56.14.31 GetViewSettings

Synopsis: Return current viewport

Declaration: `procedure GetViewSettings (var viewport: ViewPortType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetViewSettings` returns the current viewport and clipping settings in `ViewPort`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([888](#))

### 56.14.32 GetX

Synopsis: Return current cursor X position

Declaration: `function GetX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetX` returns the X-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetY` ([879](#))

### 56.14.33 GetY

Synopsis: Return current cursor Y position

Declaration: `function GetY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetY` returns the Y-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetX` ([879](#))

### 56.14.34 GraphDefaults

Synopsis: Reset graphical mode to defaults

Declaration: `procedure GraphDefaults`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphDefaults` resets all settings for viewport, palette, foreground and background pattern, line-style and pattern, filling style, filling color and pattern, font, text-placement and text size.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([888](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([885](#)), `SetColor` ([885](#)), `SetBkColor` ([870](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([886](#))

### 56.14.35 GraphErrorMsg

Synopsis: Return a description of an error

Declaration: `function GraphErrorMsg(ErrorCode: SmallInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphErrorMsg` returns a string describing the error `Errorcode`. This string can be used to let the user know what went wrong.

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphResult` ([1](#))

**56.14.36 GraphResult**

Synopsis: Result of last graphical operation

Declaration: `function GraphResult : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphResult` returns an error-code for the last graphical operation. If the returned value is zero, all went well. A value different from zero means an error has occurred. besides all operations which draw something on the screen, the following procedures also can produce a `GraphResult` different from zero:

- `InstallUserFont` ([881](#))
- `SetLineStyle` ([886](#))
- `SetWriteMode` ([889](#))
- `SetFillStyle` ([885](#))
- `SetTextJustify` ([887](#))
- `SetGraphMode` ([886](#))
- `SetTextStyle` ([887](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphErrorMsg` ([1](#))

**56.14.37 InitGraph**

Synopsis: Initialize graphical system

Declaration: `procedure InitGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt; const PathToDriver: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitGraph` initializes the graph package. `GraphDriver` has two valid values: `GraphDriver=0` which performs an auto detect and initializes the highest possible mode with the most colors. 1024x768x64K is the highest possible resolution supported by the driver, if you need a higher resolution, you must edit `MODES.PPI`. If you need another mode, then set `GraphDriver` to a value different from zero and `graphmode` to the mode you wish (VESA modes where 640x480x256 is 101h etc.). `PathToDriver` is only needed, if you use the BGI fonts from Borland. Free Pascal does not offer BGI fonts like Borland, these must be obtained separately.

Example code:

```
var
  gd,gm : integer;
  PathToDriver : string;
begin
  gd:=detect; { highest possible resolution }
  gm:=0; { not needed, auto detection }
  PathToDriver:='C:\PP\BGI'; { path to BGI fonts,
                              drivers aren't needed }
  InitGraph(gd,gm,PathToDriver);
  if GraphResult<>grok then
    halt; ..... { whatever you need }
  CloseGraph; { restores the old graphics mode }
end.
```

Errors: None.

See also: Modes ([843](#)), DetectGraph ([872](#)), CloseGraph ([872](#)), GraphResult ([1](#))

### 56.14.38 InstallUserDriver

Synopsis: Install a user driver

Declaration: `function InstallUserDriver (Name: string; AutoDetectPtr: Pointer)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserDriver` adds the device-driver `DriverPath` to the list of .BGI drivers. `AutoDetectPtr` is a pointer to a possible auto-detect function.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#)), `InstallUserFont` ([881](#))

### 56.14.39 InstallUserFont

Synopsis: Install a user-defined font

Declaration: `function InstallUserFont (const FontFileName: string) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserFont` adds the font in `FontPath` to the list of fonts of the .BGI system.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([880](#)), `InstallUserDriver` ([881](#))

### 56.14.40 LineRel

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position in given direction

Declaration: `procedure LineRel (Dx: SmallInt; Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineRel` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point (DX, DY) , **relative** to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current Position is set to the endpoint of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `Line` ([870](#)), `LineTo` ([882](#))

#### 56.14.41 LineTo

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position to a given point

Declaration: `procedure LineTo(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineTo` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point (DX, DY), **relative** to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current position is set to the end of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` ([881](#)), `Line` ([870](#))

#### 56.14.42 MoveRel

Synopsis: Move cursor relative to current position

Declaration: `procedure MoveRel(Dx: SmallInt; Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveRel` moves the pointer to the point (DX, DY), relative to the current pointer position

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveTo` ([882](#))

#### 56.14.43 MoveTo

Synopsis: Move cursor to absolute position.

Declaration: `procedure MoveTo(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveTo` moves the pointer to the point (X, Y).

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveRel` ([882](#))

#### 56.14.44 OutText

Synopsis: Write text on the screen at the current location.

Declaration: `procedure OutText(const TextString: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at the current pointer position, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutTextXY` ([870](#))

#### 56.14.45 PieSlice

Synopsis: Draw a pie-slice

Declaration: `procedure PieSlice(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stangle: SmallInt;  
endAngle: SmallInt; Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PieSlice` draws and fills a sector of a circle with center (X, Y) and radius Radius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: Arc ([871](#)), Circle ([868](#)), Sector ([884](#))

#### 56.14.46 queryadapterinfo

Synopsis: Function called to retrieve the current video adapter settings.

Declaration: `function queryadapterinfo : PModeInfo`

Visibility: default

#### 56.14.47 Rectangle

Synopsis: Draw a rectangle on the screen.

Declaration: `procedure Rectangle(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt;  
y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2), using the current color and style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([871](#)), Bar3D ([871](#))

#### 56.14.48 RegisterBGIDriver

Synopsis: Register a new BGI driver.

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIDriver(driver: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: InstallUserDriver ([881](#)), RegisterBGIFont ([884](#))

#### 56.14.49 RegisterBGIfont

Synopsis: Register a new BGI font

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIfont (font: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: [InstallUserFont \(881\)](#), [RegisterBGIDriver \(883\)](#)

#### 56.14.50 RestoreCrtMode

Synopsis: Restore text screen

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCrtMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was started.

To get back to the graph mode you were last in, you can use `SetGraphMode (GetGraphMode)`

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(880\)](#)

#### 56.14.51 Sector

Synopsis: Draw and fill a sector of an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Sector (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word;  
EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sector` draws and fills a sector of an ellipse with center (X, Y) and radii XRadius and YRadius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: [Arc \(871\)](#), [Circle \(868\)](#), [PieSlice \(883\)](#)

#### 56.14.52 SetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Set aspect ration of the screen

Declaration: `procedure SetAspectRatio (Xasp: Word; Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the aspect ratio of the current screen to Xasp/Yasp.

Errors: None

See also: [InitGraph \(880\)](#), [GetAspectRatio \(874\)](#)

**56.14.53 SetColor**

Synopsis: Set foreground drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetColor (Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the foreground color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetColor \(874\)](#), [SetBkColor \(870\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(889\)](#)

**56.14.54 SetDirectVideo**

Synopsis: Attempt to enter direct video mode.

Declaration: `procedure SetDirectVideo (DirectAccess: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirectVideo` attempts to enter direct video mode. In that mode, everything is drawn straight in the video buffer.

**56.14.55 SetFillPattern**

Synopsis: Set drawing fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure SetFillPattern (Pattern: FillPatternType; Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillPattern` sets the current fill-pattern to `FillPattern`, and the filling color to `Color`. The pattern is an 8x8 raster, corresponding to the 64 bits in `FillPattern`.

Errors: None

See also: [GetFillPattern \(875\)](#), [SetFillStyle \(885\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(889\)](#)

**56.14.56 SetFillStyle**

Synopsis: Set drawing fill style

Declaration: `procedure SetFillStyle (Pattern: Word; Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillStyle` sets the filling pattern and color to one of the predefined filling patterns. `Pattern` can be one of the following predefined constants :

**EmptyFill** Uses backgroundcolor.

**SolidFill** Uses filling color

**LineFill** Fills with horizontal lines.

**ltSlashFill** Fills with lines from left-under to top-right.

**SlashFill** Idem as previous, thick lines.

**BkSlashFill** Fills with thick lines from left-Top to bottom-right.

**LtBkSlashFill** Idem as previous, normal lines.

**HatchFill** Fills with a hatch-like pattern.

**XHatchFill** Fills with a hatch pattern, rotated 45 degrees.

**InterLeaveFill**

**WideDotFill** Fills with dots, wide spacing.

**CloseDotFill** Fills with dots, narrow spacing.

**UserFill** Fills with a user-defined pattern.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetFillPattern \(885\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(889\)](#)

### 56.14.57 SetGraphMode

Synopsis: Set graphical mode

Declaration: `procedure SetGraphMode (Mode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetGraphMode` sets the graphical mode and clears the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(880\)](#)

### 56.14.58 SetLineStyle

Synopsis: Set line drawing style

Declaration: `procedure SetLineStyle (LineStyle: Word; Pattern: Word; Thickness: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLineStyle` sets the drawing style for lines. You can specify a `LineStyle` which is one of the following predefined constants:

**SolidLn** Draws a solid line.

**DottedLn** Draws a dotted line.

**CenterLn** Draws a non-broken centered line.

**DashedLn** Draws a dashed line.

**UserBitLn** Draws a User-defined bit pattern.

If `UserBitLn` is specified then `Pattern` contains the bit pattern. In all another cases, `Pattern` is ignored. The parameter `Width` indicates how thick the line should be. You can specify one of the following predefined constants:

**NormWidth** Normal line width

**ThickWidth** Double line width

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineSettings \(876\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(889\)](#)

### 56.14.59 SetPalette

Synopsis: Set palette entry using color constant

Declaration: `procedure SetPalette (ColorNum: Word; Color: ShortInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetPalette` changes the `ColorNr`-th entry in the palette to `NewColor`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetAllPalette` ([870](#)), `SetRGBPalette` ([871](#))

### 56.14.60 SetTextJustify

Synopsis: Set text placement style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextJustify (horiz: Word; vert: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextJustify` controls the placement of new text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. `Horizontal` controls horizontal placement, and can be one of the following predefined constants:

**LeftText**Text is set left of the pointer.

**CenterText**Text is set centered horizontally on the pointer.

**RightText**Text is set to the right of the pointer.

`Vertical` controls the vertical placement of the text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Its value can be one of the following predefined constants :

**BottomText**Text is placed under the pointer.

**CenterText**Text is placed centered vertically on the pointer.

**TopText**Text is placed above the pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutText` ([882](#)), `OutTextXY` ([870](#))

### 56.14.61 SetTextStyle

Synopsis: Set text style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextStyle (font: Word; direction: Word; charsize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextStyle` controls the style of text to be put on the screen. predefined constants for `Font` are:

**DefaultFont**The default font

**TriplexFont**A special font

**SmallFont**A smaller font

**SansSerifFont**A sans-serif font (like Arial)

**GothicFont**A gothic font

**ScriptFont**A script font

**SimpleFont**A simple font

**TSCRFon**Terminal screen font

**LCOMFont**?

**EuroFont**?

**BoldFont**A bold typeface font

predefined constants for `Direction` are :

**HorizDir**Write horizontal

**VertDir**Write vertical

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTextSettings` ([878](#))

### 56.14.62 SetUserCharSize

Synopsis: Set user character size for vector font

Declaration: `procedure SetUserCharSize (Multx: Word; Divx: Word; Multy: Word; Divy: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the width and height of vector-fonts. The horizontal size is given by `Xasp1/Xasp2`, and the vertical size by `Yasp1/Yasp2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([887](#))

### 56.14.63 SetViewPort

Synopsis: Set the graphical drawing window

Declaration: `procedure SetViewPort (X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt; Y2: SmallInt; Clip: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the current graphical viewport (window) to the rectangle defined by the top-left corner `(X1, Y1)` and the bottom-right corner `(X2, Y2)`. If `Clip` is true, anything drawn outside the viewport (window) will be clipped (i.e. not drawn). Coordinates specified after this call are relative to the top-left corner of the viewport.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetViewSettings` ([878](#))

**56.14.64 SetWriteMode**

Synopsis: Specify binary operation to perform when drawing on screen

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteMode (WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteMode` controls the drawing of lines on the screen. It controls the binary operation used when drawing lines on the screen. `Mode` can be one of the following predefined constants:

**CopyPutDraw** as specified using current bitmask and color

**XORPutDraw** XOR-ing current bitmask and color

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` (885), `SetBkColor` (870), `SetLineStyle` (886), `SetFillStyle` (885)

**56.14.65 SetWriteModeEx**

Synopsis: Set write mode (extended version)

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteModeEx (WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteModeEx` sets the graph write mode similar to `SetWriteMode` (889) but only if the `WriteMode` is in the range `CopyPut..NotPut`. If the provided value is outside this range, it is not set.

See also: `SetWriteMode` (889)

**56.14.66 TextHeight**

Synopsis: Return height (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextHeight (const TextString: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextHeight` returns the height (in pixels) of the string `S` in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextWidth` (889)

**56.14.67 TextWidth**

Synopsis: Return width (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextWidth (const TextString: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextWidth` returns the width (in pixels) of the string `S` in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextHeight` (889)

### 56.15 ArcCoordsType

```

ArcCoordsType = record
  x : SmallInt;
  y : SmallInt;
  xstart :
    SmallInt;
  ystart : SmallInt;
  xend : SmallInt;
  yend : SmallInt
;
end

```

Describe the last arc which was drawn on screen

### 56.16 FillSettingsType

```

FillSettingsType = record
  pattern : Word;
  color : ColorType;
end

```

Record describing fill mode

### 56.17 LineSettingsType

```

LineSettingsType = record
  linestyle : Word;
  pattern : Word;
  thickness : Word;
end

```

Record describing current line drawing mode

### 56.18 PaletteType

```

PaletteType = record
  Size : LongInt;
  Colors : Array[0..MaxColors
] of RGBRec;
end

```

Record describing palette.

### 56.19 PointType

```

PointType = record

```

```

    x : SmallInt;
    y : SmallInt;
end

```

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane

## 56.20 RGBRec

```

RGBRec = packed record
    Red : SmallInt;
    Green : SmallInt;
    Blue
    : SmallInt;
end

```

Record describing palette RGB color

## 56.21 TextSettingsType

```

TextSettingsType = record
    font : Word;
    direction : Word;
    charsize
    : Word;
    horiz : Word;
    vert : Word;
end

```

Record describing how texts are drawn.

## 56.22 TModeInfo

```

TModeInfo = record
    DriverNumber : SmallInt;
    ModeNumber : SmallInt
    ;
    internModeNumber : SmallInt;
    MaxColor : LongInt;
    PaletteSize
    : LongInt;
    XAspect : Word;
    YAspect : Word;
    MaxX : Word;
    MaxY
    : Word;
    DirectColor : Boolean;
    Hardwarepages : Byte;
    ModeName

```

```

: string;
DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc;
GetPixel : getpixelproc
;
PutPixel : putpixelproc;
SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc;
GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc;
SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc
;
SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc;
SetActivePage : setactivepageproc
;
ClearViewPort : clrviewproc;
PutImage : putimageproc;
GetImage
: getimageproc;
ImageSize : imagesizeproc;
GetScanLine : getscanlineproc
;
Line : lineproc;
InternalEllipse : ellipseproc;
PatternLine
: patternlineproc;
HLine : hlineproc;
VLine : vlineproc;
Circle
: CircleProc;
InitMode : initmodeproc;
OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc
;
SetBKColor : SetBkColorProc;
GetBKColor : GetBkColorProc;
next : PModeInfo;
end

```

Record describing a graphical mode.

### 56.23 TResolutionRec

```

TResolutionRec = record
  x : LongInt;
  y : LongInt;
end

```

Record describing resolution

### 56.24 ViewPortType

```

ViewPortType = record
  x1 : SmallInt;

```

```
y1 : SmallInt;  
x2 : SmallInt  
;  
y2 : SmallInt;  
Clip : Boolean;  
end
```

Record describing a viewport

## Chapter 57

# Reference for unit 'heaptrc'

### 57.1 Used units

Table 57.1: Used units by unit 'heaptrc'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 57.2 Overview

This document describes the HEAPTRC unit for Free Pascal. It was written by Pierre Muller. It is system independent, and works on all supported systems.

The HEAPTRC unit can be used to debug your memory allocation/deallocation. It keeps track of the calls to `getmem/freemem`, and, implicitly, of `New/Dispose` statements.

When the program exits, or when you request it explicitly. It displays the total memory used, and then dumps a list of blocks that were allocated but not freed. It also displays where the memory was allocated.

If there are any inconsistencies, such as memory blocks being allocated or freed twice, or a memory block that is released but with wrong size, this will be displayed also.

The information that is stored/displayed can be customized using some constants.

Do not use this unit directly, instead use the `-gh` switch, to let the compiler insert the unit in the `uses` clause.

### 57.3 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables

The `HeapTrc` unit can be controlled with the `HEAPTRC` environment variable. The contents of this variable controls the initial setting of some constants in the unit. `HEAPTRC` consists of one or more of the following strings, separated by spaces:

**keepreleased** If this string occurs, then the `KeepReleased` ([896](#)) variable is set to `True`

**disabled** If this string occurs, then the `UseHeapTrace` ([897](#)) variable is set to `False` and the heap trace is disabled. It does not make sense to combine this value with other values.

**nohalt** If this string occurs, then the `HaltOnError` (896) variable is set to `False`, so the program continues executing even in case of a heap error.

**log=filename** If this string occurs, then the output of `heaptrc` is sent to the specified `Filename`. (see also `SetHeapTraceOutput` (900))

The following are valid values for the `HEAPTRC` variable:

```
HEAPTRC=disabled
HEAPTRC="keepreleased log=heap.log"
HEAPTRC="log=myheap.log nohalt"
```

Note that these strings are case sensitive, and the name of the variable too.

## 57.4 HeapTrc Usage

You must use the `-gh` switch, to let the compiler insert the unit by itself, so you don't have to include it in your `uses` clause. In fact, as of version 3.0.0 you may no longer do so.

The below example shows how to use the `heaptrc` unit.

This is the memory dump shown when running this program in a standard way:

```
Marked memory at 0040FA50 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x00408708
  0x0040CB49
  0x0040C481
Call trace for block 0x0040FA50 size 128
  0x0040CB3D
  0x0040C481
```

If you use the `lineinfo` unit (or use the `-gl` switch) as well, then `heaptrc` will also give you the filenames and line-numbers of the procedures in the backtrace:

```
Marked memory at 00410DA0 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x004094B8
  0x0040D8F9  main,   line 25 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
Call trace for block 0x00410DA0 size 128
  0x0040D8ED  main,   line 23 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
```

If lines without filename/line-number occur, this means there is a unit which has no debug info included.

**Listing:** `./heapex/heapex.pp`

---

**Program** `heapex`;

```
{
  Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit
  Compile this program with the -gh command-line option
}
```

---

```

Var P1 : ^Longint;
      P2 : Pointer;
      I : longint;

begin
  {$IF NOT DECLARED(heaptrc)}
  {$ERROR You must compile this program with -gh}
  {$ENDIF}
  New(P1);
  // causes previous allocation not to be de-allocated
  New(P1);
  Dispose(P1);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      GetMem (P2,128);
      // When I is even, deallocate block. We loose 5 times 128
      // bytes this way.
      If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
    end;
    GetMem(P2,128);
    // This will provoke an error and a memory dump
    FreeMem (P2,64);
  end.

```

---

## 57.5 Constants, types and variables

### 57.5.1 Constants

```
add_tail : Boolean = True
```

If `add\_tail` is `True` (the default) then a check is also performed on the memory location just behind the allocated memory.

```
GlobalSkipIfNoLeaks : Boolean = False
```

`GlobalSkipIfNoLeaks` will, when set to `true`, disable the output of the `heaptrc` unit if no memory leaks will be detected, i.e. there will only be output if there were actual memory leaks.

```
HaltOnError : Boolean = True
```

If `HaltOnError` is set to `True` then an illegal call to `FreeMem` will cause the memory manager to execute a `halt (1)` instruction, causing a memory dump. By Default it is set to `True`.

```
HaltOnNotReleased : Boolean = False
```

`HaltOnNotReleased` can be set to `True` to make the `DumpHeap` (898) procedure halt (exit code 203) the program if any memory was not released when the dump is made. If it is `False` (the default) then `DumpHeap` just returns.

```
keepreleased : Boolean = False
```

If `keepreleased` is set to `true`, then a list of freed memory blocks is kept. This is useful if you suspect that the same memory block is released twice. However, this option is very memory intensive, so use it sparingly, and only when it's really necessary.

```
maxprintedblocklength : Integer = 128
```

`maxprintedblocklength` determines the maximum number of bytes written by a memory block dump, as produced when `printleakedblock` (897) or `printfaultyblock` (897) are true. If the size of the memory block is larger than this size, then only the first `maxprintedblocklength` will be included in the dump.

```
printfaultyblock : Boolean = False
```

`printleakedblock` can be set to `True` to print a memory dump of faulty memory blocks (in case a memory override occurs) The block is printed as a series of hexadecimal numbers, representing the bytes in the memory block. At most `maxprintedblocklength` (897) bytes of the memory block will be printed.

```
printleakedblock : Boolean = False
```

`printleakedblock` can be set to `True` to print a memory dump of unreleased blocks when the `heaptrc` unit produces a summary of memory leaks. The block is printed as a series of hexadecimal numbers, representing the bytes in the memory block. At most `maxprintedblocklength` (897) bytes of the memory block will be printed.

```
quicktrace : Boolean = True
```

`Quicktrace` determines whether the memory manager checks whether a block that is about to be released is allocated correctly. This is a rather time consuming search, and slows program execution significantly, so by default it is set to `True`.

```
tail_size : LongInt = sizeof(ptruint)
```

This is the size of the tail block added to every memory block when `add_tail` (896) is `True`.

```
tracesize = 16
```

`Tracesize` specifies how many levels of calls are displayed of the call stack during the memory dump. If you specify `keepreleased:=True` then half the `TraceSize` is reserved for the `GetMem` call stack, and the other half is reserved for the `FreeMem` call stack. For example, the default value of 8 will cause eight levels of call frames to be dumped for the `getmem` call if `keepreleased` is `False`. If `KeepReleased` is `true`, then 4 levels of call frames will be dumped for the `GetMem` call and 4 frames will be dumped for the `FreeMem` call. If you want to change this value, you must recode the `heaptrc` unit.

```
usecrc : Boolean = True
```

If `usecrc` is `True` (the default) then a crc check is performed on locations before and after the allocated memory. This is useful to detect memory overwrites.

```
useheaptrace : Boolean = True
```

This variable must be set at program startup, through the help of an environment variable.

### 57.5.2 Types

```
tdisplayextrainfoProc = procedure(var ptext: text; p: pointer)
```

The `TDisplayExtraInfoType` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (898) call to display a memory location which was previously filled with `TFillExtraInfoProc` (898)

```
tFillExtraInfoProc = procedure(p: pointer)
```

The `TFillExtraInfoProc` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (898) call to fill a memory location with extra data for displaying.

## 57.6 Procedures and functions

### 57.6.1 CheckPointer

**Synopsis:** Check if a pointer is in the address range of the application

**Declaration:** `procedure CheckPointer(p: pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CheckPointer` checks if the pointer is in the address range of the application, more specifically, if it is in the heap. if not, it prints an error and stops the program with aruntime error 204.

### 57.6.2 DumpHeap

**Synopsis:** Dump memory usage report to stderr.

**Declaration:** `procedure DumpHeap`  
`procedure DumpHeap(SkipIfNoLeaks: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DumpHeap` dumps to standard output a summary of memory usage. It is called automatically by the heaptrc unit when your program exits (by installing an exit procedure), but it can be called at any time.

**Errors:** None.

### 57.6.3 SetHeapExtraInfo

**Synopsis:** Store extra information in blocks.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetHeapExtraInfo(size: PtrUInt; fillproc: tFillExtraInfoProc;`  
`displayproc: tdisplayextrainfoProc)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** You can use `SetHeapExtraInfo` to store extra info in the blocks that the heaptrc unit reserves when tracing getmem calls. `Size` indicates the size (in bytes) that the trace mechanism should reserve for your extra information. For each call to `getmem`, `FillProc` will be called, and passed a pointer to the memory reserved.

When dumping the memory summary, the extra info is shown by calling `displayproc` and passing it the memory location which was filled by `fillproc`. It should write the information in readable form to the text file provided in the call to `displayproc`

**Errors:** You can only call `SetHeapExtraInfo` if no memory has been allocated yet. If memory was already allocated prior to the call to `SetHeapExtraInfo`, then an error will be displayed on standard error output, and a `DumpHeap` (898) is executed.

See also: `DumpHeap` (898), `SetHeapTraceOutput` (900)

**Listing:** `./heapex/setinfo.pp`

**Program** `heapex`;

*{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }*

**Uses** `heaptrc`;

**Var** `P1` : `^Longint`;  
       `P2` : `Pointer`;  
       `I` : `longint`;  
       `Marker` : `Longint`;

**Procedure** `SetMarker` (`P` : `pointer`);

**Type** `PLongint` = `^Longint`;

**begin**  
     `PLongint(P)^ := Marker`;  
**end**;

**Procedure** `Part1`;

**begin**  
     *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FFAAFFAA = -5570646*  
     `Marker := $FFAAFFAA`;  
     `New(P1)`;  
     `New(P1)`;  
     `Dispose(P1)`;  
     **For** `I:=1` **to** `10` **do**  
         **begin**  
             `GetMem` (`P2`,`128`);  
             **If** (`I mod 2`) = `0` **Then** `FreeMem`(`P2`,`128`);  
             **end**;  
         `GetMem`(`P2`,`128`);  
**end**;

**Procedure** `Part2`;

**begin**  
     *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FAFAFAFA = -84215046*  
     `Marker := $FAFAFAFA`;  
     `New(P1)`;  
     `New(P1)`;  
     `Dispose(P1)`;  
     **For** `I:=1` **to** `10` **do**  
         **begin**  
             `GetMem` (`P2`,`128`);  
             **If** (`I mod 2`) = `0` **Then** `FreeMem`(`P2`,`128`);  
             **end**;  
         `GetMem`(`P2`,`128`);  
**end**;

```
begin
  SetExtraInfo ( SizeOf (Marker) , @SetMarker );
  Writeln ( 'Part 1' );
  part1;
  Writeln ( 'Part 2' );
  part2;
end.
```

---

#### 57.6.4 SetHeapTraceOutput

Synopsis: Specify filename for heap trace output.

Declaration: `procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(const name: string); Overload`  
`procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(var ATextOutput: Text); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetHeapTraceOutput` sets the filename into which heap trace info will be written. By default information is written to standard output, this function allows you to redirect the information to a file with full filename name.

Errors: If the file cannot be written to, errors will occur when writing the trace.

See also: `SetHeapExtraInfo` ([898](#))

# Chapter 58

## Reference for unit 'ipc'

### 58.1 Used units

Table 58.1: Used units by unit 'ipc'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 58.2 Overview

This document describes the IPC unit for Free Pascal. It was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It gives all the functionality of System V Inter-Process Communication: shared memory, semaphores and messages. It works only on the Linux operating system.

Many constants here are provided for completeness only, and should under normal circumstances not be used by the programmer.

### 58.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 58.3.1 Constants

`IPC_CREAT = 1 shl 9`

Create if key is nonexistent

`IPC_EXCL = 2 shl 9`

fail if key exists

`IPC_INFO = 3`

For ipcs call

IPC\_NOWAIT = 4 shl 9

return error on wait

IPC\_PRIVATE = Tkey(0)

IPC\_RMID = 0

Remove resource

IPC\_SET = 1

set ipc\_perm options

IPC\_STAT = 2

get ipc\_perm options

MSGMAX = 4056

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNB = 16384

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNI = 128

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_EXCEPT = 2 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_NOERROR = 1 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

SEM\_GETALL = 13

Semaphore operation: Get all semaphore values

SEM\_GETNCNT = 14

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for resource.

SEM\_GETPID = 11

Semaphore operation: Get process ID of last operation.

SEM\_GETVAL = 12

Semaphore operation: Get current value of semaphore

SEM\_GETZCNT = 15

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for semaphores to reach zero

SEM\_SEMMNI = 128

Semaphore operation: ?

SEM\_SEMNS = SEM\_SEMMNI \* SEM\_SEMMSL

Semaphore operation: ?

SEM\_SEMMSL = 32

Semaphore operation: ?

SEM\_SEMOPM = 32

Semaphore operation: ?

SEM\_SEVMX = 32767

Semaphore operation: ?

SEM\_SETALL = 17

Semaphore operation: Set all semaphore values

SEM\_SETVAL = 16

Semaphore operation: Set semaphore value

SEM\_UNDO = 1000

Constant for use in semop (915)

SHM\_LOCK = 11

This constant is used in the shmctl (917) call.

SHM\_R = 4 shl 6

This constant is used in the shmctl (917) call.

SHM\_RDONLY = 1 shl 12

This constant is used in the shmctl (917) call.

`SHM_REMAP = 4 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (917) call.

`SHM_RND = 2 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (917) call.

`SHM_UNLOCK = 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (917) call.

`SHM_W = 2 shl 6`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (917) call.

### 58.3.2 Types

`key_t = TKey`

Alias for `TKey` (905) type

`msglen_t = culong`

Message length type

`msgqnum_t = culong`

Message queue number type

`PIPC_Perm = ^TIPC_Perm`

Pointer to `TIPC_Perm` (920) record.

`PMSG = ^TMSG`

Pointer to `TMSG` (920) record

`PMSGbuf = ^TMSGbuf`

Pointer to `TMsgBuf` (920) record

`PMSQid_ds = ^TMSQid_ds`

Pointer to `TMSQid_ds` (921)

`PSEMbuf = ^TSEMbuf`

Pointer to `TSembuf` (921) record.

```
PSEMid_ds = ^TSEMid_ds
```

Pointer to TSEMid\_ds (922) record.

```
PSEMinfo = ^TSEMinfo
```

Pointer to TSEMinfo (922) record.

```
PSEMun = ^TSEMun
```

Pointer to TSEMun (905) record

```
PShmid_DS = ^TShmid_ds
```

Pointer to TSHMid\_ds (922) record.

```
PSHM_info = ^TSHM_info
```

```
TKey = cint
```

Type returned by the ftok (905) key generating function.

```
TSEMun = record
case cint of
0: (
    val : cint;
);
1: (
    buf : PSEMid_ds
    ;
);
2: (
    arr : PWord;
);
3: (
    padbuf : PSEMinfo;
);
4: (
    padpad
    : pointer;
);
end
```

Record used in semctl (910) call.

## 58.4 Procedures and functions

### 58.4.1 ftok

Synopsis: Create token from filename

**Declaration:** `function ftok(Path: PChar; ID: cint) : TKey`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ftok` returns a key that can be used in a `semget` (915), `shmget` (919) or `msgget` (908) call to access a new or existing IPC resource.

`Path` is the name of a file in the file system, `ID` is a character of your choice. The `ftok` call does the same as it's C counterpart, so a pascal program and a C program will access the same resource if they use the same `Path` and `ID`.

For an example, see `msgctl` (906), `semctl` (910) or `shmctl` (917).

**Errors:** `ftok` returns -1 if the file in `Path` doesn't exist.

See also: `semget` (915), `shmget` (919), `msgget` (908)

### 58.4.2 msgctl

**Synopsis:** Perform various operations on a message queue

**Declaration:** `function msgctl(msqid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PMSQid_ds) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `msgctl` performs various operations on the message queue with id `ID`. Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT** In this case, the `msgctl` call fills the `TMSQid_ds` structure with information about the message queue.

**IPC\_SET** In this case, the `msgctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record inside `buf`.

**IPC\_RMID** If this is specified, the message queue will be removed from the system.

`buf` contains the data that are needed by the call. It can be `Nil` in case the message queue should be removed.

The function returns `True` if success full, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `msgget` (908), `msgsnd` (909), `msgrcv` (909)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/msgtool.pp`

---

**program** `msgtool`;

**Uses** `ipc`, `baseunix`;

**Type**

```
PMyMsgBuf = ^TMyMsgBuf;
TMyMsgBuf = record
  mtype : Longint;
  mtext : string[255];
end;
```

**Procedure** `DoError (Const Msg : string);`

**begin**

```
  WriteLn (msg, ' returned an error : ', fpgeterrno);
```

```

    halt(1);
end;

Procedure SendMessage (Id : Longint;
                        Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                        MType : Longint;
                        Const MText : String);

begin
    Writeln ('Sending message. ');
    Buf.mtype:=mtype;
    Buf.Mtext:=mtext;
    If msgsnd(Id , PMsgBuf(@Buf),256,0)=-1 then
        DoError('msgsnd');
end;

Procedure ReadMessage (ID : Longint;
                       Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                       MType : longint);

begin
    Writeln ('Reading message. ');
    Buf.MType:=MType;
    If msgrcv(ID , PMSGBuf(@Buf),256,mtype,0)<>-1 then
        Writeln ('Type : ',buf.mtype,' Text : ',buf.mtext)
    else
        DoError ('msgrcv');
end;

Procedure RemoveQueue ( ID : Longint);

begin
    If msgctl (id ,IPC_RMID,Nil)<>-1 then
        Writeln ('Removed Queue with id ',Id);
end;

Procedure ChangeQueueMode (ID,mode : longint);

Var QueueDS : TMSQid_ds;

begin
    If msgctl (Id ,IPC_STAT,@QueueDS)=-1 then
        DoError ('msgctl : stat');
    Writeln ('Old permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode);
    QueueDS.msg_perm.mode:=Mode;
    if msgctl (ID ,IPC_SET,@QueueDS)=0 then
        Writeln ('New permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode)
    else
        DoError ('msgctl : IPC_SET');
end;

procedure usage;

begin
    Writeln ('Usage : msgtool s(end) <type> <text> (max 255 characters)');
    Writeln ('                      r(eceive) <type>');
    Writeln ('                      d(elte)');
    Writeln ('                      m(ode) <decimal mode>');

```

---

```

    halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt (S : String): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val (S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ('StrToInt : '+S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var
    Key : TKey;
    ID : longint;
    Buf : TMyMsgBuf;

const ipckey = '.'#0;

begin
    If Paramcount<1 then Usage;
    key := Ftok (@ipckey[1], ord('M'));
    ID:=msgget(key,IPC_CREAT or 438);
    If ID<0 then DoError ('MsgGet');
    Case upCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'S' : If ParamCount<>3 then
            Usage
            else
                SendMessage (id, Buf, StrToInt(Paramstr(2)), paramstr(3));
        'R' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
            else
                ReadMessage (id, buf, strtoint(Paramstr(2)));
        'D' : If ParamCount<>1 then
            Usage
            else
                RemoveQueue (ID);
        'M' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
            else
                ChangeQueueMode (id, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
    else
        Usage
    end;
end.

```

---

### 58.4.3 msgget

Synopsis: Return message queue ID, possibly creating the queue

Declaration: `function msgget(key: TKey; msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgget` returns the ID of the message queue described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `msgflg`, a new queue is created.

`msgflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

For an example, see `msgctl` (906).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` (905), `msgsnd` (909), `msgrcv` (909), `msgctl` (906)

### 58.4.4 `msgrcv`

Synopsis: Retrieve a message from the queue

Declaration: `function msgrcv(msqid: cint; msgp: PMSGbuf; msgsz: size_t; msgtyp: clong; msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgrcv` retrieves a message of type `msgtyp` from the message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgtyp` corresponds to the `mtype` field of the `TMSGbuf` record. The message is stored in the `MSGbuf` structure pointed to by `msgp`.

The `msgflg` parameter can be used to control the behaviour of the `msgrcv` call. It consists of an ORed combination of the following flags:

**0** No special meaning.

**IPC\_NOWAIT** If no messages are available, then the call returns immediately, with the `ENOMSG` error.

**MSG\_NOERROR** If the message size is wrong (too large), no error is generated, instead the message is truncated. Normally, in such cases, the call returns an error (`E2BIG`)

The function returns `True` if the message was received correctly, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (906).

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (908), `msgsnd` (909), `msgctl` (906)

### 58.4.5 `msgsnd`

Synopsis: Send a message to the message queue

Declaration: `function msgsnd(msqid: cint; msgp: PMSGbuf; msgsz: size_t; msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgsnd` sends a message to a message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgp` is a pointer to a message buffer, that should be based on the `TMsgBuf` type. `msgsz` is the size of the message (NOT of the message buffer record !)

The `msgflg` can have a combination of the following values (ORed together):

**0**No special meaning. The message will be written to the queue. If the queue is full, then the process is blocked.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If the queue is full, then no message is written, and the call returns immediately.

The function returns `True` if the message was sent successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (906).

**Errors:** In case of error, the call returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (908), `msgrcv` (909), `msgctl` (906)

### 58.4.6 `semctl`

**Synopsis:** Perform various control operations on a semaphore set

**Declaration:** `function semctl(semid: cint; semnum: cint; cmd: cint; var arg: TSEMun) : cint`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `semctl` performs various operations on the semaphore `semnum` with semaphore set id `ID`.

The `arg` parameter supplies the data needed for each call. This is a variant record that should be filled differently, according to the command:

```
Type
TSEMun = record
  case longint of
    0 : ( val : longint );
    1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
    2 : ( arr : PWord );
    3 : ( padbuf : PSeminfo );
    4 : ( padpad : pointer );
  end;
```

Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call fills this `TSEMid_ds` structure with information about the semaphore set.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the semaphore set is removed from the system.

**GETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be stored. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then fill the memory array with all the values of the semaphores.

**GETNCNT**This will fill the `val` field of the `arg` union with the number of processes waiting for resources.

**GETPID**`semctl` returns the process ID of the process that performed the last `semop` (915) call.

**GETVAL**`semctl` returns the value of the semaphore with number `semnum`.

**GETZCNT** `semctl` returns the number of processes waiting for semaphores that reach value zero.

**SETALL** In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be retrieved from. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then set the values of the semaphores from the memory array.

**SETVAL** This will set the value of semaphore `semnum` to the value in the `val` field of the `arg` parameter.

The function returns -1 on error.

Errors: The function returns -1 on error, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `semget` (915), `semop` (915)

**Listing:** `./ipcex/semtool.pp`

---

**Program** `semtool`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the use of semaphores }*

**Uses** `ipc`, `baseunix`;

**Const** `MaxSemValue = 5`;

**Procedure** `DoError (Const Msg : String)`;

**var**

`error: cint`;

**begin**

`error:=fpgeterrno`;

**WriteLn** ('Error : ',msg,' Code : ',error);

**Halt**(1);

**end**;

**Function** `getsemval (ID,Member : longint) : longint`;

**Var** `S : TSEMun`;

**begin**

`GetSemVal:=SemCtl(id,member,SEM_GETVAL,S)`;

**end**;

**Procedure** `DispVal (ID,member : longint)`;

**begin**

**writeln** ('Value for member ',member,' is ',GetSemVal(ID,Member));

**end**;

**Function** `GetMemberCount (ID : Longint) : longint`;

**Var** `opts : TSEMun`;

`semds : TSEMids`;

**begin**

`opts.buf:=@semds`;

**If** `semctl(Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1` **then**

`GetMemberCount:=semds.sem_nsems`

**else**

`GetMemberCount:=-1`;

```

end;

Function OpenSem (Key : TKey) : Longint;

begin
    OpenSem:=semget(Key,0,438);
    If OpenSem=-1 then
        DoError ('OpenSem');
end;

Function CreateSem (Key : TKey; Members : Longint) : Longint;

Var Count : Longint;
    Semopts : TSemun;

begin
    // the semmsl constant seems kernel specific
    { If members>semmsl then
        DoError ('Sorry, maximum number of semaphores in set exceeded');
    }
    WriteLn ('Trying to create a new semaphore set with ',members,' members. ');
    CreateSem:=semget(key,members,IPC_CREAT or IPC_Excl or 438);
    If CreateSem=-1 then
        DoError ('Semaphore set already exists. ');
    Semopts.val:=MaxSemValue; { Initial value of semaphores }
    For Count:=0 to Members-1 do
        semctl(CreateSem,count,SEM_SETVAL,semopts);
end;

Procedure lockSem (ID,Member: Longint);

Var lock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With lock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=-1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
            DoError ('semaphore member out of range');
        if getsemval(ID,member)=0 then
            DoError ('Semaphore resources exhausted (no lock)');
        lock.sem_num:=member;
        WriteLn ('Attempting to lock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
        if semop(Id,@lock,1)=-1 then
            DoError ('Lock failed')
        else
            WriteLn ('Semaphore resources decremented by one');
            dispval(ID,Member);
end;

Procedure UnlockSem (ID,Member: Longint);

Var Unlock : TSEMbuf;

begin

```

```

With Unlock do
  begin
    sem_num:=0;
    sem_op:=1;
    sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
  end;
  if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
    DoError ('semaphore member out of range');
  if getsemval(ID,member)=MaxSemValue then
    DoError ('Semaphore not locked');
  Unlock.sem_num:=member;
  Writeln ('Attempting to unlock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
  if semop(Id,@unlock,1)=-1 then
    DoError ('Unlock failed')
  else
    Writeln ('Semaphore resources incremented by one');
    dispval(ID,Member);
end;

Procedure RemoveSem (ID : longint);

var S : TSemun;

begin
  if semctl(Id,0,IPC_RMID,s)<>-1 then
    Writeln ('Semaphore removed')
  else
    DoError ('Couldn't remove semaphore');
end;

Procedure ChangeMode (ID,Mode : longint);

Var rc : longint;
    opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
  opts.buf:=@semds;
  if not semctl (Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then
    DoError ('Couldn't stat semaphore');
  Writeln ('Old permissions were : ',semds.sem_perm.mode);
  semds.sem_perm.mode:=mode;
  if semctl(id,0,IPC_SET,opts)<>-1 then
    Writeln ('Set permissions to ',mode)
  else
    DoError ('Couldn't set permissions');
end;

Procedure PrintSem (ID : longint);

Var l,cnt : longint;

begin
  cnt:=getmembercount(ID);
  Writeln ('Semaphore ',ID,' has ',cnt,' Members');
  For l:=0 to cnt-1 Do
    DispVal(id,l);

```

end;

**Procedure** USage;

```
begin
  Writeln ('Usage : semtool c(reate) <count>');
  Writeln ('          l(ock) <member>');
  Writeln ('          u(nlock) <member>');
  Writeln ('          d(etele)');
  Writeln ('          m(ode) <mode>');
  Writeln ('          p(rint)');
  halt(1);
end;
```

**Function** StrToInt (S : **String**): longint;

```
Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;
```

```
begin
  val (S,M,C);
  If C<>0 Then DoError ('StrToInt : '+S);
  StrToInt:=M;
end;
```

```
Var Key : TKey;
    ID : Longint;
```

**const** ipckey='.#0;

```
begin
  If ParamCount<1 then USage;
  key:=ftok (@ipckey[1],ORD('s'));
  Case UpCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
    'C' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      CreateSem (key, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'L' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      LockSem (ID, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'U' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      UnLockSem (ID, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'M' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      ChangeMode (ID, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'D' : Begin
      ID:=OpenSem(Key);
      RemoveSem(Id);
      end;
```

---

```

    'P' : begin
        ID:=OpenSem(Key);
        PrintSem(Id);
    end;
else
    Usage
end;
end.

```

---

### 58.4.7 semget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a semaphore set, possibly creating the set

Declaration: `function semget(key: TKey; nsems: cint; semflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgget` returns the ID of the semaphore set described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `semflg`, a new queue is created.

`semflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the set already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new set of semaphores is created, then there will be `nsems` semaphores in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` (905), `semop` (915), `semctl` (910)

### 58.4.8 semop

Synopsis: Perform semaphore operation.

Declaration: `function semop(semid: cint; sops: PSEMbuf; nsops: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue. `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements.

The fields of the `TSEMbuf` (921) structure

```

TSEMbuf = record
    sem_num : word;
    sem_op  : integer;
    sem_flg : integer;

```

should be filled as follows:

**sem\_num** The number of the semaphore in the set on which the operation must be performed.

**sem\_op** The operation to be performed. The operation depends on the sign of `sem_op`: A positive number is simply added to the current value of the semaphore. If 0 (zero) is specified, then the process is suspended until the specified semaphore reaches zero. If a negative number is specified, it is subtracted from the current value of the semaphore. If the value would become negative then the process is suspended until the value becomes big enough, unless `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified in the `sem_flg`.

**sem\_flg** Optional flags: if `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified, then the calling process will never be suspended.

The function returns `True` if the operations were successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `semget` (915), `semctl` (910)

### 58.4.9 semtimedop

Synopsis: Perform semaphore operation using timeout.

Declaration: `function semtimedop(semid: cint; sops: PSEMbuf; nsops: cuint; timeout: timespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue, just as `semop` (915). `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements. The `timeout` argument points to a time specification: if the operations cannot be performed within the specified time, the function will return with an error.

For more information on the actual operations, see `semop` (915).

See also: `semop` (915)

### 58.4.10 shmat

Synopsis: Attach a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmat(shmid: cint; shmaddr: pointer; shmflg: cint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmat` attaches a shared memory block with identified `shmid` to the current process. The function returns a pointer to the shared memory block.

If `shmaddr` is `Nil`, then the system chooses a free unmapped memory region, as high up in memory space as possible.

If `shmaddr` is non-`nil`, and `SHM_RND` is in `shmflg`, then the returned address is `shmaddr`, rounded down to `SHMLBA`. If `SHM_RND` is not specified, then `shmaddr` must be a page-aligned address.

The parameter `shmflg` can be used to control the behaviour of the `shmat` call. It consists of a ORed combination of the following constants:

**SHM\_RND** The suggested address in `shmaddr` is rounded down to `SHMLBA`.

**SHM\_RDONLY** the shared memory is attached for read access only. Otherwise the memory is attached for read-write. The process then needs read-write permissions to access the shared memory.

For an example, see `shmctl` (917).

Errors: If an error occurs, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (919), `shmdt` (919), `shmctl` (917)

### 58.4.11 shmctl

Synopsis: Perform control operations on a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmctl(shmid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PShmid_DS) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmctl` performs various operations on the shared memory block identified by identifier `shmid`.

The `buf` parameter points to a `TSHMid_ds` record. The `cmd` parameter is used to pass which operation is to be performed. It can have one of the following values :

**IPC\_STAT** `shmctl` fills the `TSHMid_ds` record that `buf` points to with the available information about the shared memory block.

**IPC\_SET** applies the values in the `ipc_perm` record that `buf` points to, to the shared memory block.

**IPC\_RMID** the shared memory block is destroyed (after all processes to which the block is attached, have detached from it).

If successful, the function returns `True`, `False` otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, the function returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (919), `shmat` (916), `shmdt` (919)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/shmtool.pp`

---

```

Program shmtool;

uses ipc , strings , Baseunix;

Const SegSize = 100;

var key : Tkey;
    shmid, cntr : longint;
    segptr : pchar;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ('Usage : shmtool w(rite) text');
  writeln ('          r(ead)');
  writeln ('          d(elete)');
  writeln ('          m(ode change) mode');
  halt(1);
end;

Procedure Writeshm (ID : Longint; ptr : pchar; S : string);

begin
  strcpy (ptr, S);

```

```

end;

Procedure Readshm(ID : longint; ptr : pchar);

begin
  Writeln ('Read : ',ptr);
end;

Procedure removeshm (ID : Longint);

begin
  shmctl (ID,IPC_RMID,Nil);
  writeln ('Shared memory marked for deletion');
end;

Procedure CHangeMode (ID : longint; mode : String);

Var m : word;
    code : integer;
    data : TSHMid_ds;

begin
  val (mode,m,code);
  if code<>0 then
    usage;
  If shmctl (shmctl,IPC_STAT,@data)=-1 then
    begin
      writeln ('Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
      halt(1);
    end;
  writeln ('Old permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
  data.shm_perm.mode:=m;
  If shmctl (shmctl,IPC_SET,@data)=-1 then
    begin
      writeln ('Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
      halt(1);
    end;
  writeln ('New permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
end;

const ftokpath = '.'#0;

begin
  if paramcount<1 then usage;
  key := ftok (pchar(@ftokpath[1]),ord('S'));
  shmctl := shmget(key,segsz,IPC_CREAT or IPC_EXCL or 438);
  If shmctl=-1 then
    begin
      writeln ('Shared memory exists. Opening as client');
      shmctl := shmget(key,segsz,0);
      If shmctl = -1 then
        begin
          writeln ('shmget : Error !',fpgeterrno);
          halt(1);
        end
      end
    else
      writeln ('Creating new shared memory segment. ');
    end
  end

```

---

```

segptr:=shmat(shmid,nil,0);
if longint(segptr)=-1 then
begin
  Writeln ('Shmat : error !',fpgeterrno);
  halt(1);
end;
case upcase(paramstr(1)[1]) of
  'W' : writeshm (shmid,segptr,paramstr(2));
  'R' : readshm (shmid,segptr);
  'D' : removeshm(shmid);
  'M' : changemode (shmid,paramstr(2));
else
begin
  writeln (paramstr(1));
  usage;
end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 58.4.12 shmdt

Synopsis: Detach shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmdt(shmaddr: pointer) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmdt` detaches the shared memory at address `shmaddr`. This shared memory block is unavailable to the current process, until it is attached again by a call to `shmat` (916).

The function returns `True` if the memory block was detached successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (919), `shmat` (916), `shmctl` (917)

### 58.4.13 shmget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a shared memory block, possibly creating it

Declaration: `function shmget(key: TKey; size: size_t; flag: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmget` returns the ID of a shared memory block, described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `flag`, a new memory block is created.

`flag` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new memory block is created, then it will have size `Size` bytes in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

## 58.5 TIPC\_Perm

```
TIPC_Perm = record
  key : TKey;
  uid : kernel_uid_t;
  gid : kernel_gid_t
  ;
  cuid : kernel_uid_t;
  cgid : kernel_gid_t;
  mode : kernel_mode_t
  ;
  __pad1 : Array[1..4-sizeof(mode_t)] of Byte;
  seq : cushort;
  __pad2 : cushort;
  __unused1 : culong;
  __unused2 : culong;
end
```

TIPC\_Perm is used in all IPC systems to specify the permissions. It should never be used directly.

## 58.6 TMSG

```
TMSG = record
  msg_next : PMSG;
  msg_type : LongInt;
  msg_spot
  : PChar;
  msg_stime : LongInt;
  msg_ts : Integer;
end
```

Record used in the handling of message queues. Do not use directly.

## 58.7 TMSGbuf

```
TMSGbuf = record
  mtype : clong;
  mtext : Array[0..0] of Char;
end
```

The TMSGbuf record is a record containing the data of a record. you should never use this record directly, instead you should make your own record that follows the structure of the TMSGbuf record, but that has a size that is big enough to accommodate your messages. The mtype field should always be present, and should always be filled.

## 58.8 TMSGinfo

```
TMSGinfo = record
```

```

msgpool : cint;
msgmap : cint;
msgmax : cint
;
msgmnb : cint;
msgmni : cint;
msgssz : cint;
msgtql : cint
;
msgseg : cushort;
end

```

Internal message system record. Do not use directly.

## 58.9 TMSQid\_ds

```

TMSQid_ds = record
  msg_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  msg_stime : time_t;
  msg_rtime : time_t;
  msg_ctime : time_t;
  msg_cbytes : QWord;
  msg_qnum : QWord;
  msg_qbytes : QWord;
  msg_lspid : ipc_pid_t
;
  msg_lrpid : ipc_pid_t;
  pad1 : QWord;
  pad2 : QWord;
end

```

This record should never be used directly, it is an internal kernel record. It's fields may change at any time.

## 58.10 TSEMbuf

```

TSEMbuf = record
  sem_num : cushort;
  sem_op : cshort;
  sem_flg
  : cshort;
end

```

The TSEMbuf record is used in the semop ([915](#)) call, and is used to specify which operations you want to do.

## 58.11 TSEMid\_ds

```

TSEMid_ds = record

```

```

sem_perm : TIPC_Perm;
sem_otime : time_t;
unused1 : culong;
sem_ctime : time_t;
unused2 : culong;
sem_nsems
: culong;
unused3 : culong;
unused4 : culong;
end

```

Structure returned by the `semctl` (910) call, contains all data of a semaphore

## 58.12 TSEMinfo

```

TSEMinfo = record
  semmap : cint;
  semmni : cint;
  semmns : cint
;
  semmnu : cint;
  semmsl : cint;
  semopm : cint;
  semume : cint
;
  semusz : cint;
  semvmx : cint;
  semaem : cint;
end

```

Internal semaphore system record. Do not use.

## 58.13 TShmid\_ds

```

TShmid_ds = record
  shm_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  shm_segsz : size_t;
  shm_atime : time_t;
  shm_dtime : time_t;
  shm_ctime : time_t;
  shm_cpid : pid_t;
  shm_lpid : pid_t;
  shm_nattch : culong;
  __unused4 : culong;
  __unused5 : culong;
end

```

Record used in the `shmctl` (917) call to set or retrieve settings for shared memory.

### 58.14 TSHMinfo

```
TSHMinfo = record
  shmmax : cint;
  shmmmin : cint;
  shmmni : cint
  ;
  shmseg : cint;
  shmall : cint;
end
```

Record used by the shared memory system, Do not use directly.

### 58.15 TSHM\_info

```
TSHM_info = record
  used_ids : cint;
  shm_tot : culong;
  shm_rss
  : culong;
  shm_swp : culong;
  swap_attempts : culong;
  swap_successes
  : culong;
end
```

## Chapter 59

# Reference for unit 'keyboard'

### 59.1 Used units

Table 59.1: Used units by unit 'keyboard'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 59.2 Overview

The **Keyboard** unit implements a keyboard access layer which is system independent. It can be used to poll the keyboard state and wait for certain events. Waiting for a keyboard event can be done with the `GetKeyEvent` ([938](#)) function, which will return a driver-dependent key event. This key event can be translated to a interpretable event by the `TranslateKeyEvent` ([946](#)) function. The result of this function can be used in the other event examining functions.

A custom keyboard driver can be installed using the `SetKeyboardDriver` ([945](#)) function. The current keyboard driver can be retrieved using the `GetKeyboardDriver` ([937](#)) function. The last section of this chapter demonstrates how to make a keyboard driver.

### 59.3 Unix specific notes

On Unix, applications run on a "terminal", and the application writes to the screen and reads from the keyboard by communicating with the terminal. Unix keyboard handling is mostly backward compatible with the DEC VT100 and VT220 terminals from tens of years ago. The VT100 and VT220 had very different keyboards than today's PC's and this is where the problems start. To make it worse the protocol of both terminals has not been very well designed.

Because of this, the keyboard unit on Unix operating systems does a best effort to provide keyboard functionality. An implementation with full keyboard facilities like on other operating systems is not possible.

The exception is the Linux kernel. The terminal emulation of the Linux kernel is from a PC keyboard viewpoint hopeless as well, but unlike other terminal emulators it is configurable. On the Linux console, the Free Pascal keyboard unit tries to implement full functionality.

Users of applications using the keyboard unit should expect the following:

- Full functionality on the Linux console. It must be the bare console, SSH into another machine will kill the full functionality.
- Limited functionality otherwise.

Notes about Linux full functionality:

- The keyboard is reprogrammed. If the keyboard is for whatever reason not restored in its original state, please load your keymap to reinitialize it.
- Alt+function keys generate keycodes for those keys. To switch virtual consoles, use ctrl+alt+function key.
- Unlike what you're used to with other Unix software, escape works as you intuitively expect, it generates the keycode for an escape key **without a delay**.

The limited functionality does include these quirks:

- Escape must be pressed two times before it has effect.
- On the Linux console, when the users runs the program by logging into another machine:
  - Shift+F1 and Shift+F12 will generate keycodes for F11 and F12.
  - Shift+arrow keys, shift+ins, shift+del, shift+home, shift+end do not work. The same is true about the control and alt combinations.
  - Alt+function keys will switch virtual consoles instead of generating the right key sequences.
  - Ctrl+function keys will generate the keycodes for the function keys without ctrl
- In Xterm:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
- In Konsole:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
  - Shift+arrow keys doesn't work, nor does ctrl+arrow keys

If you have a non-standard terminal, some keys may not work at all. When in limited functionality mode, the user can work around using an escape prefix:

- Esc+1 = F1, Esc+2 = F2.
- Esc before another key is equal to alt+key.

In such cases, if the terminal does output an escape sequence for those keys, please submit a bug report so we can add them.

## 59.4 Writing a keyboard driver

Writing a keyboard driver means that hooks must be created for most of the keyboard unit functions. The `TKeyboardDriver` record contains a field for each of the possible hooks:

```
TKeyboardDriver = Record
  InitDriver : Procedure;
  DoneDriver : Procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : Function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUniCode: Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
end;
```

The meaning of these hooks is explained below:

**InitDriver** Called to initialize and enable the driver. Guaranteed to be called only once. This should initialize all needed things for the driver.

**DoneDriver** Called to disable and clean up the driver. Guaranteed to be called after a call to `initDriver`. This should clean up all things initialized by `InitDriver`.

**GetKeyEvent** Called by `GetKeyEvent` (938). Must wait for and return the next key event. It should NOT store keys.

**PollKeyEvent** Called by `PollKeyEvent` (943). It must return the next key event if there is one. Should not store keys.

**GetShiftState** Called by `PollShiftStateEvent` (943). Must return the current shift state.

**TranslateKeyEvent** Should translate a raw key event to a correct key event, i.e. should fill in the shiftstate and convert function key scancodes to function key keycodes. If the `TranslateKeyEvent` is not filled in, a default translation function will be called which converts the known scancodes from the tables in the previous section to a correct keyevent.

**TranslateKeyEventUniCode** Should translate a key event to a UNICODE key representation.

Strictly speaking, only the `GetKeyEvent` and `PollKeyEvent` hooks must be implemented for the driver to function correctly.

The example unit demonstrates how a keyboard driver can be installed. It takes the installed driver, and hooks into the `GetKeyEvent` function to register and log the key events in a file. This driver can work on top of any other driver, as long as it is inserted in the `uses` clause *after* the real driver unit, and the real driver unit should set the driver record in its initialization section.

Note that with a simple extension of this unit could be used to make a driver that is capable of recording and storing a set of keyboard strokes, and replaying them at a later time, so a 'keyboard macro' capable driver. This driver could sit on top of any other driver.

**Listing:** `./kbdex/logkeys.pp`

---

```
unit logkeys;
```

```
interface
```

```
Procedure StartKeyLogging;
```

```
Procedure StopKeyLogging;
```

```

Function IsKeyLogging : Boolean;
Procedure SetKeyLogFileName (FileName : String);

implementation

uses sysutils , keyboard;

var
    NewKeyBoardDriver ,
    OldKeyBoardDriver : TKeyboardDriver;
    Active , Logging : Boolean;
    LogFileName : String;
    KeyLog : Text;

Function TimeStamp : String;

begin
    TimeStamp:=FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss ' , Time ( ) );
end;

Procedure StartKeyLogging;

begin
    Logging:=True;
    WriteLn(KeyLog, 'Start logging keystrokes at: ', TimeStamp);
end;

Procedure StopKeyLogging;

begin
    WriteLn(KeyLog, 'Stop logging keystrokes at: ', TimeStamp);
    Logging:=False;
end;

Function IsKeyLogging : Boolean;

begin
    IsKeyLogging:=Logging;
end;

Function LogGetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent;

Var
    K : TKeyEvent;

begin
    K:=OldkeyboardDriver . GetKeyEvent ( );
    If Logging then
        begin
            Write (KeyLog, TimeStamp, ' : Key event: ');
            WriteLn (KeyLog, KeyEventToString ( TranslateKeyEvent (K) ));
        end;
    LogGetKeyEvent:=K;
end;

Procedure LogInitKeyBoard;

```

```

begin
  OldKeyBoardDriver.InitDriver();
  Assign(KeyLog, logFileName);
  Rewrite(KeyLog);
  Active := True;
  StartKeyLogging;
end;

Procedure LogDoneKeyBoard;

begin
  StopKeyLogging;
  Close(KeyLog);
  Active := False;
  OldKeyBoardDriver.DoneDriver();
end;

Procedure SetKeyLogFileName(FileName : String);

begin
  If Not Active then
    LogFileName := FileName;
  end;

Initialization
  GetKeyBoardDriver(OldKeyBoardDriver);
  NewKeyBoardDriver := OldKeyBoardDriver;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.GetKeyEvent := @LogGetKeyEvent;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.InitDriver := @LogInitKeyboard;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.DoneDriver := @LogDoneKeyboard;
  LogFileName := 'keyboard.log';
  Logging := False;
  SetKeyboardDriver(NewKeyBoardDriver);
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex9.pp

---

```

program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the logkeys unit }

uses keyboard, logkeys;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end, "s" toggles logging. ');
  Repeat
    K := GetKeyEvent;
    K := TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Writeln('Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
    if GetKeyEventChar(K) = 's' then
      if IsKeyLogging then
        StopKeyLogging
      else
        StartKeyLogging;
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K) = 'q');

```

```
    DoneKeyBoard ;  
end .
```

---

## 59.5 Keyboard scan codes

Special physical keys are encoded with the DOS scan codes for these keys in the second byte of the TKeyEvent (936) type. A complete list of scan codes can be found in the below table. This is the list of keys that is used by the default key event translation mechanism. When writing a keyboard driver, either these constants should be returned by the various key event functions, or the TranslateKeyEvent hook should be implemented by the driver.

Table 59.2: Key Scancodes

| Code | Key            | Code | Key          | Code | Key           |
|------|----------------|------|--------------|------|---------------|
| 00   | NoKey          | 3D   | F3           | 70   | ALT-F9        |
| 01   | ALT-Esc        | 3E   | F4           | 71   | ALT-F10       |
| 02   | ALT-Space      | 3F   | F5           | 72   | CTRL-PrtSc    |
| 04   | CTRL-Ins       | 40   | F6           | 73   | CTRL-Left     |
| 05   | SHIFT-Ins      | 41   | F7           | 74   | CTRL-Right    |
| 06   | CTRL-Del       | 42   | F8           | 75   | CTRL-end      |
| 07   | SHIFT-Del      | 43   | F9           | 76   | CTRL-PgDn     |
| 08   | ALT-Back       | 44   | F10          | 77   | CTRL-Home     |
| 09   | ALT-SHIFT-Back | 47   | Home         | 78   | ALT-1         |
| 0F   | SHIFT-Tab      | 48   | Up           | 79   | ALT-2         |
| 10   | ALT-Q          | 49   | PgUp         | 7A   | ALT-3         |
| 11   | ALT-W          | 4B   | Left         | 7B   | ALT-4         |
| 12   | ALT-E          | 4C   | Center       | 7C   | ALT-5         |
| 13   | ALT-R          | 4D   | Right        | 7D   | ALT-6         |
| 14   | ALT-T          | 4E   | ALT-GrayPlus | 7E   | ALT-7         |
| 15   | ALT-Y          | 4F   | end          | 7F   | ALT-8         |
| 16   | ALT-U          | 50   | Down         | 80   | ALT-9         |
| 17   | ALT-I          | 51   | PgDn         | 81   | ALT-0         |
| 18   | ALT-O          | 52   | Ins          | 82   | ALT-Minus     |
| 19   | ALT-P          | 53   | Del          | 83   | ALT-Equal     |
| 1A   | ALT-LftBrack   | 54   | SHIFT-F1     | 84   | CTRL-PgUp     |
| 1B   | ALT-RgtBrack   | 55   | SHIFT-F2     | 85   | F11           |
| 1E   | ALT-A          | 56   | SHIFT-F3     | 86   | F12           |
| 1F   | ALT-S          | 57   | SHIFT-F4     | 87   | SHIFT-F11     |
| 20   | ALT-D          | 58   | SHIFT-F5     | 88   | SHIFT-F12     |
| 21   | ALT-F          | 59   | SHIFT-F6     | 89   | CTRL-F11      |
| 22   | ALT-G          | 5A   | SHIFT-F7     | 8A   | CTRL-F12      |
| 23   | ALT-H          | 5B   | SHIFT-F8     | 8B   | ALT-F11       |
| 24   | ALT-J          | 5C   | SHIFT-F9     | 8C   | ALT-F12       |
| 25   | ALT-K          | 5D   | SHIFT-F10    | 8D   | CTRL-Up       |
| 26   | ALT-L          | 5E   | CTRL-F1      | 8E   | CTRL-Minus    |
| 27   | ALT-SemiCol    | 5F   | CTRL-F2      | 8F   | CTRL-Center   |
| 28   | ALT-Quote      | 60   | CTRL-F3      | 90   | CTRL-GreyPlus |
| 29   | ALT-OpQuote    | 61   | CTRL-F4      | 91   | CTRL-Down     |
| 2B   | ALT-BkSlash    | 62   | CTRL-F5      | 94   | CTRL-Tab      |
| 2C   | ALT-Z          | 63   | CTRL-F6      | 97   | ALT-Home      |
| 2D   | ALT-X          | 64   | CTRL-F7      | 98   | ALT-Up        |
| 2E   | ALT-C          | 65   | CTRL-F8      | 99   | ALT-PgUp      |
| 2F   | ALT-V          | 66   | CTRL-F9      | 9B   | ALT-Left      |
| 30   | ALT-B          | 67   | CTRL-F10     | 9D   | ALT-Right     |
| 31   | ALT-N          | 68   | ALT-F1       | 9F   | ALT-end       |
| 32   | ALT-M          | 69   | ALT-F2       | A0   | ALT-Down      |
| 33   | ALT-Comma      | 6A   | ALT-F3       | A1   | ALT-PgDn      |
| 34   | ALT-Period     | 6B   | ALT-F4       | A2   | ALT-Ins       |
| 35   | ALT-Slash      | 6C   | ALT-F5       | A3   | ALT-Del       |
| 37   | ALT-GreyAst    | 6D   | ALT-F6       | A5   | ALT-Tab       |
| 3B   | F1             | 6E   | ALT-F7       |      |               |
| 3C   | F2             | 6F   | ALT-F8       |      |               |

A list of scan codes for special keys and combinations with the SHIFT, ALT and CTRL keys can be found in the following table: They are for quick reference only.

Table 59.3: Special keys scan codes

| Key      | Code | SHIFT-Key | CTRL-Key | Alt-Key |
|----------|------|-----------|----------|---------|
| NoKey    | 00   |           |          |         |
| F1       | 3B   | 54        | 5E       | 68      |
| F2       | 3C   | 55        | 5F       | 69      |
| F3       | 3D   | 56        | 60       | 6A      |
| F4       | 3E   | 57        | 61       | 6B      |
| F5       | 3F   | 58        | 62       | 6C      |
| F6       | 40   | 59        | 63       | 6D      |
| F7       | 41   | 5A        | 64       | 6E      |
| F8       | 42   | 5B        | 65       | 6F      |
| F9       | 43   | 5C        | 66       | 70      |
| F10      | 44   | 5D        | 67       | 71      |
| F11      | 85   | 87        | 89       | 8B      |
| F12      | 86   | 88        | 8A       | 8C      |
| Home     | 47   |           | 77       | 97      |
| Up       | 48   |           | 8D       | 98      |
| PgUp     | 49   |           | 84       | 99      |
| Left     | 4B   |           | 73       | 9B      |
| Center   | 4C   |           | 8F       |         |
| Right    | 4D   |           | 74       | 9D      |
| end      | 4F   |           | 75       | 9F      |
| Down     | 50   |           | 91       | A0      |
| PgDn     | 51   |           | 76       | A1      |
| Ins      | 52   | 05        | 04       | A2      |
| Del      | 53   | 07        | 06       | A3      |
| Tab      | 8    | 0F        | 94       | A5      |
| GreyPlus |      |           | 90       | 4E      |

## 59.6 Constants, types and variables

### 59.6.1 Constants

`AltPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Alt key. Unix Only

`CtrlPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Ctrl key. Unix only

`errKbdBase = 1010`

Base of keyboard routine error reporting constants.

`errKbdInitError = errKbdBase + 0`

Failed to initialize keyboard driver

```
errKbdNotImplemented = errKbdBase + 1
```

Keyboard driver not implemented.

```
kbAlt = 8
```

Alt key modifier

```
kbASCII = $00
```

ASCII code key event

```
kbCtrl = 4
```

Control key modifier

```
kbdApps = $FF17
```

Application key (popup-menu) pressed.

```
kbdDelete = $FF2A
```

Delete key pressed

```
kbdDown = $FF27
```

Arrow down key pressed

```
kbdEnd = $FF26
```

End key pressed

```
kbdF1 = $FF01
```

F1 function key pressed.

```
kbdF10 = $FF0A
```

F10 function key pressed.

```
kbdF11 = $FF0B
```

F12 function key pressed.

```
kbdF12 = $FF0C
```

F12 function key pressed.

```
kbdF13 = $FF0D
```

F13 function key pressed.

kbdF14 = \$FF0E

F14 function key pressed.

kbdF15 = \$FF0F

F15 function key pressed.

kbdF16 = \$FF10

F16 function key pressed.

kbdF17 = \$FF11

F17 function key pressed.

kbdF18 = \$FF12

F18 function key pressed.

kbdF19 = \$FF13

F19 function key pressed.

kbdF2 = \$FF02

F2 function key pressed.

kbdF20 = \$FF14

F20 function key pressed.

kbdF3 = \$FF03

F3 function key pressed.

kbdF4 = \$FF04

F4 function key pressed.

kbdF5 = \$FF05

F5 function key pressed.

kbdF6 = \$FF06

F6 function key pressed.

kbdF7 = \$FF07

F7 function key pressed.

kbdF8 = \$FF08

F8 function key pressed.

kbdF9 = \$FF09

F9 function key pressed.

kbdHome = \$FF20

Home key pressed

kbdInsert = \$FF29

Insert key pressed

kbdLeft = \$FF23

Arrow left key pressed

kbdLWin = \$FF15

Left windows key pressed.

kbdMiddle = \$FF24

Middle key pad key pressed (numerical 5)

kbdPgDn = \$FF28

Page down key pressed

kbdPgUp = \$FF22

Page Up key pressed

kbdRight = \$FF25

Arrow right key pressed

kbdRWin = \$FF16

Right windows key pressed.

kbdUp = \$FF21

Arrow up key pressed

kbFnKey = \$02

function key pressed.

```
kbLeftShift = 1
```

Left shift key modifier

```
kbPhys = $03
```

Physical key code event

```
kbReleased = $04
```

Key release event (not implemented in FPC)

```
kbRightShift = 2
```

Right shift key modifier

```
kbShift = kbLeftShift or kbRightShift
```

Shift key modifier

```
kbUnicode = $01
```

Unicode code key event

```
SAnd : string = 'AND'
```

This constant is used as the 'And' word in key descriptions. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
ShiftPrefix : Byte = 0
```

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Shift key. Unix Only

```
SKeyPad : Array[0..($FF2F-kbdHome)] of string = ('Home', 'Up', 'PgUp',
  , 'Left', 'Middle', 'Right', 'End', 'Down', 'PgDn', 'Insert', 'Delete'
  , '', '', '', '', '')
```

This constant describes all keypad keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SLeftRight : Array[1..2] of string = ('LEFT', 'RIGHT')
```

This constant contains strings to describe left and right keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SScanCode : string = 'Key with scancode '
```

This constant contains a string to denote a scancode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SShift : Array[1..3] of string = ('SHIFT', 'CTRL', 'ALT')`

This constant describes the various modifier keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SUnicodeChar : string = 'Unicode character '`

This constant contains a string to denote a Unicode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SUnknownFunctionKey : string = 'Unknown function key : '`

This constant contains a string to denote that an unknown function key was found. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

## 59.6.2 Types

`PTreeElement = ^TTreeElement`

Pointer to `TTreeElement` (948) record

`TKeyEvent = Cardinal`

The `TKeyEvent` type is the base type for all keyboard events.

The key stroke is encoded in the 4 bytes of the `TKeyEvent` type. The various fields of the key stroke encoding can be obtained by typecasting the `TKeyEvent` type to the `TKeyRecord` (947) type.

`Tprocedure = procedure`

Procedure prototype

## 59.7 Procedures and functions

### 59.7.1 DoneKeyboard

Synopsis: Deactivate keyboard driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneKeyboard`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneKeyboard` de-initializes the keyboard interface if the keyboard driver is active. If the keyboard driver is not active, the function does nothing.

This will cause the keyboard driver to clear up any allocated memory, or restores the console or terminal the program was running in to its initial state before the call to `InitKeyBoard` (941). This function should be called on program exit. Failing to do so may leave the terminal or console window in an unusable state. Its exact action depends on the platform on which the program is running.

On Unix the default keyboard driver restores the line ending of `system.output` to #10.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitKeyBoard` (941)

### 59.7.2 FunctionKeyName

**Synopsis:** Return string representation of a function key code.

**Declaration:** `function FunctionKeyName(KeyCode: Word) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FunctionKeyName` returns a string representation of the function key with code `KeyCode`. This can be an actual function key, or one of the cursor movement keys.

**Errors:** In case `KeyCode` does not contain a function code, the `SUnknownFunctionKey` string is returned, appended with the `KeyCode`.

See also: `ShiftStateToString` (945), `KeyEventToString` (942)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FunctionKeyName function. }*

**Uses** keyboard;

**Var**

    K : TKeyEvent;

**begin**

    InitKeyboard;

    WriteLn('Press function keys, press "q" to end.');

    Repeat

        K:=GetKeyEvent;

        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);

        If IsFunctionKey(k) then

            begin

                Write('Got function key : ');

                WriteLn(FunctionKeyName(TkeyRecord(K).KeyCode));

            end;

    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');

    DoneKeyboard;

**end.**

---

### 59.7.3 GetKeyboardDriver

**Synopsis:** Return the current keyboard driver record.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetKeyboardDriver(var Driver: TKeyboardDriver)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyboardDriver` returns in `Driver` the currently active keyboard driver. This function can be used to enhance an existing keyboarddriver.

For more information on getting and setting the keyboard driver `kbddriver` (926).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetKeyboardDriver` (945)

### 59.7.4 GetKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get the next raw key event, wait if needed.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEvent` returns the last keyevent if it is available, or waits for one if none is available. A non-blocking version is available in `PollKeyEvent` (943).

The returned key is encoded as a `TKeyEvent` type variable, and is normally the physical key scan code, (the scan code is driver dependent) which can be translated with one of the translation functions `TranslateKeyEvent` (946) or `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (946). See the types section for a description of how the key is described.

Errors: If no key became available (e.g. when the driver does not support it), 0 is returned.

See also: `PutKeyEvent` (944), `PollKeyEvent` (943), `TranslateKeyEvent` (946), `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (946)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex1.pp`

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Write('Got key event with ');
    Case GetKeyEventFlags(K) of
      kbASCII      : Writeln('ASCII key');
      kbUnicode    : Writeln('Unicode key');
      kbFnKey      : Writeln('Function key');
      kbPhys       : Writeln('Physical key');
      kbReleased   : Writeln('Released key event');
    end;
    Writeln('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 59.7.5 GetKeyEventChar

Synopsis: Get the character key part of a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventChar(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Char`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventChar` returns the charcode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated character key keycode. The charcode is simply the ascii code of the character key that was pressed.

It returns the null character if the key was not a character key, but e.g. a function key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (938)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` (941), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (940), `GetKeyEventFlags` (940), `GetKeyEventCode` (939), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

### 59.7.6 `GetKeyEventCode`

**Synopsis:** Translate function key part of a key event code.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEventCode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventCode` returns the translated function keycode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated function key.

If the key pressed was not a function key, the null character is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` (941), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (940), `GetKeyEventFlags` (940), `GetKeyEventChar` (938), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example2;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventCode function. }*

**Uses** keyboard;

**Var**

    K : TKeyEvent;

**begin**

    InitKeyboard;

**WriteIn** ('Press function keys, or press "q" to end.');

**Repeat**

        K:=GetKeyEvent;

        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);

**If** (GetKeyEventFlags(K)<>KbfnKey) **then**

**WriteIn** ('Not a function key')

**else**

**begin**

**Write** ('Got key (',GetKeyEventCode(K));

**WriteIn** (') : ',KeyEventToString(K));

**end**;

**Until** (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q');

    DoneKeyboard;

**end.**

---

### 59.7.7 GetKeyEventFlags

Synopsis: Extract the flags from a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventFlags (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventFlags` returns the flags part of the given `KeyEvent`.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (938)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (941), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (940), `GetKeyEventCode` (939), `GetKeyEventChar` (938), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

### 59.7.8 GetKeyEventShiftState

Synopsis: Return the current state of the shift keys.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventShiftState (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventShiftState` returns the shift-state values of the given `KeyEvent`. This can be used to detect which of the modifier keys `Shift`, `Alt` or `Ctrl` were pressed. If none were pressed, zero is returned.

Note that this function does not always return expected results; In a UNIX X-Term, the modifier keys do not always work.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (941), `GetKeyEventFlags` (940), `GetKeyEventCode` (939), `GetKeyEventChar` (938), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventShiftState function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard`;

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent;`  
`S : Byte;`

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard;`  
**Write** (`'Press keys combined with CTRL/SHIFT/ALT'`);  
**WriteLn** (`', or press "q" to end.'`);  
**Repeat**  
  `K:=GetKeyEvent;`  
  `K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);`  
  `S:=GetKeyEventShiftState(K);`  
  **If** (`S=0`) **then**  
    **WriteLn** (`'No special keys pressed'`)  
  **else**  
    **begin**

---

```

    Writeln('Detected special keys : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
    Writeln('Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
    end;
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K) = 'q');
    DoneKeyboard;
end.

```

---

### 59.7.9 GetKeyEventUnicode

Synopsis: Return the Unicode key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventUnicode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventUnicode` returns the Unicode part of the given `KeyEvent` if it contains a translated Unicode character.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventShiftState` (940), `GetKeyEventFlags` (940), `GetKeyEventCode` (939), `GetKeyEventChar` (938), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

### 59.7.10 InitKeyboard

Synopsis: Initialize the keyboard driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitKeyboard`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitKeyboard` initializes the keyboard driver. If the driver is already active, it does nothing. When the driver is initialized, it will do everything necessary to ensure the functioning of the keyboard, including allocating memory, initializing the terminal etc.

This function should be called once, before using any of the keyboard functions. When it is called, the `DoneKeyboard` (936) function should also be called before exiting the program or changing the keyboard driver with `SetKeyboardDriver` (945).

On Unix, the default keyboard driver sets terminal in raw mode. In raw mode the line feed behaves as an actual linefeed, i.e. the cursor is moved down one line. while the x coordinate does not change. To compensate, the default keyboard sets driver line ending of `system.output` to #13#10.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DoneKeyboard` (936), `SetKeyboardDriver` (945)

### 59.7.11 IsFunctionKey

Synopsis: Check whether a given event is a function key event.

Declaration: `function IsFunctionKey(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsFunctionKey` returns `True` if the given key event in `KeyEvent` was a function key or not.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetKeyEvent \(938\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex7.pp

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    If IsFunctionKey(K) then
      WriteLn('Got function key : ',KeyEventToString(K))
    else
      WriteLn('not a function key. ');
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 59.7.12 KeyEventToString

Synopsis: Return a string describing the key event.

Declaration: `function KeyEventToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyEventToString` translates the key event in `KeyEvent` to a human-readable description of the pressed key. It will use the constants described in the constants section to do so.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: If an unknown key is passed, the scancode is returned, prefixed with the `SScanCode` string.

See also: [FunctionKeyName \(937\)](#), [ShiftStateToString \(945\)](#)

### 59.7.13 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check event queue for key press

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyPressed` checks the keyboard event queue to see whether a key event is present, and returns `True` if a key event is available. This function simply calls [PollKeyEvent \(943\)](#) and checks for a valid result.

Errors: None.

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(943\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(938\)](#)

### 59.7.14 PollKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get next key event, but does not wait.

Declaration: `function PollKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollKeyEvent` checks whether a key event is available, and returns it if one is found. If no event is pending, it returns 0.

Note that this does not remove the key from the pending keys. The key should still be retrieved from the pending key events list with the `GetKeyEvent` (938) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `PutKeyEvent` (944), `GetKeyEvent` (938)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex4.pp`

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the PollKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        writeln;
        Writeln('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
      end
    else
      write(' ');
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 59.7.15 PollShiftStateEvent

Synopsis: Check current shift state.

Declaration: `function PollShiftStateEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollShiftStateEvent` returns the current shiftstate in a keyevent. This will return 0 if there is no key event pending.

Errors: None.

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(943\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(938\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the PollShiftStateEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=PollShiftStateEvent;
        WriteLn('Got shift state : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
        // Consume the key.
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
      end
    { else
      write ( '. ' );
    }
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q' );
    DoneKeyBoard;
  end.

```

---

### 59.7.16 PutKeyEvent

**Synopsis:** Put a key event in the event queue.

**Declaration:** `procedure PutKeyEvent (KeyEvent : TKeyEvent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PutKeyEvent` adds the given `KeyEvent` to the input queue. Please note that depending on the implementation this can hold only one value, i.e. when calling `PutKeyEvent` multiple times, only the last pushed key will be remembered.

**Errors:** None

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(943\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(938\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex5.pp

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the PutKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K, k2 : TKeyEvent;

```

---

---

```

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  K2:=0;
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        if (k2 mod 2)=0 then
          K2:=K+1
        else
          K2:=0;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        WriteLn('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
        if (K2<>0) then
          begin
            PutKeyEvent(k2);
            K2:=TranslateKeyEvent(K2);
            WriteLn('Put key : ',KeyEventToString(K2))
          end
        end
      until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
    DoneKeyBoard;
  end.

```

---

### 59.7.17 SetKeyboardDriver

Synopsis: Set a new keyboard driver.

Declaration: `function SetKeyboardDriver(const Driver: TKeyboardDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetKeyBoardDriver` sets the keyboard driver to `Driver`, if the current keyboard driver is not yet initialized. If the current keyboard driver is initialized, then `SetKeyboardDriver` does nothing. Before setting the driver, the currently active driver should be disabled with a call to `DoneKeyboard` (936).

The function returns `True` if the driver was set, `False` if not.

For more information on setting the keyboard driver, see `kbddriver` (926).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyboardDriver` (937), `DoneKeyboard` (936)

### 59.7.18 ShiftStateToString

Synopsis: Return description of key event shift state

Declaration: `function ShiftStateToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent; UseLeftRight: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ShiftStateToString` returns a string description of the shift state of the key event `KeyEvent`. This can be an empty string.

The shift state is described using the strings in the `SShift` constant.

For an example, see `PollShiftStateEvent` (943).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FunctionKeyName` (937), `KeyEventToString` (942)

### 59.7.19 TranslateKeyEvent

**Synopsis:** Translate raw event to ascii key event

**Declaration:** `function TranslateKeyEvent (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TranslateKeyEvent` performs ASCII translation of the `KeyEvent`. It translates a physical key to a function key if the key is a function key, and translates the physical key to the ordinal of the ascii character if there is an equivalent character key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (938)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (946)

### 59.7.20 TranslateKeyEventUnicode

**Synopsis:** Translate raw event to UNICODE key event

**Declaration:** `function TranslateKeyEventUnicode (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` performs Unicode translation of the `KeyEvent`. It is not yet implemented for all platforms.

**Errors:** If the function is not yet implemented, then the `ErrorCode` of the `system` unit will be set to `errKbdNotImplemented`

**See also:** `TranslateKeyEvent` (946)

## 59.8 TKeyboardDriver

```
TKeyboardDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver :
  procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent
  : function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent
  : function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
```

```

    TranslateKeyEventUnicode
    : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
end

```

The `TKeyboardDriver` record can be used to install a custom keyboard driver with the `SetKeyboardDriver` (945) function.

The various fields correspond to the different functions of the keyboard unit interface. For more information about this record see `kbddriver` (926)

## 59.9 TKeyRecord

```

TKeyRecord = packed record
    Flags : Byte;
    ShiftState : Byte;
    KeyCode : Word;
end

```

The structure of a `TKeyRecord` structure is explained in the following table:

Table 59.4: Structure of `TKeyRecord`

| Field                   | Meaning   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>KeyCode</code>    | Depending on <code>flags</code> either the physical representation of a key (under DOS scancode, ASCII code pair), or the |
| <code>ShiftState</code> | Shift-state when this key was pressed (or shortly after)  |
| <code>Flags</code>      | Determine how to interpret <code>KeyCode</code>   |

The shift-state can be checked using the various shift-state constants, and the flags in the last byte can be checked using one of the `kbASCII`, `kbUnicode`, `kbFnKey`, `kbPhys`, `kbReleased` constants.

If there are two keys returning the same char-code, there's no way to find out which one was pressed (Gray+ and Simple+). If it needs to be known which was pressed, the untranslated keycodes must be used, but these are system dependent. System dependent constants may be defined to cover those, with possibly having the same name (but different value).

## 59.10 TTreeElement

```

TTreeElement = record
    Next : PTreeElement;
    Parent : PTreeElement
    ;
    Child : PTreeElement;
    CanBeTerminal : Boolean;
    char : Byte
    ;
    ScanValue : Byte;
    CharValue : Byte;
    SpecialHandler : Tprocedure
    ;
end

```

`TTreeElement` is used to describe key scancode sequences, and is used to handle special key combinations in `AddSpecialSequence` (??) on UNIX platforms. There should be no need to handle records of this type.

## Chapter 60

# Reference for unit 'lineinfo'

### 60.1 Used units

Table 60.1: Used units by unit 'lineinfo'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 60.2 Overview

The `lineinfo` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with `Stabs` debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For DWARF debug information, the `Infodwrf` ([979](#)) unit must be used.

### 60.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 60.3.1 Types

`CodePointer = Pointer`

`CodePointer` is added for 16-bit dos compatibility.

#### 60.3.2 Variables

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData : Boolean = True`

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` can be set to `True` to keep the last opened file open. When regularly creating backtraces (e.g. in a program log), this will significantly speed up operations.

## 60.4 Procedures and functions

### 60.4.1 CloseStabs

Synopsis: Close stabs info file descriptor

Declaration: `procedure CloseStabs`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseStabs` will close the file descriptor that was used to read STABS debug information. This is useful if `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` (949) is used to cache STABS information.

Errors: None.

See also: `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` (949)

### 60.4.2 GetLineInfo

Synopsis: Return source line information about an address.

Declaration: `function GetLineInfo(addr: PtrUInt; var func: string;  
var source: string; var line: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the stabs debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon successful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

Errors: If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

### 60.4.3 StabBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Get a backtrace from an address

Declaration: `function StabBackTraceStr(addr: CodePointer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `StabBackTraceStr` returns a backtrace from a memory address `Addr`.

This is the actual callback for the backtrace handler `System.BackTraceStrFunc` (949).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetLineInfo` (950)

# Chapter 61

## Reference for unit 'Linux'

### 61.1 Used units

Table 61.1: Used units by unit 'Linux'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 61.2 Overview

The linux unit contains Linux specific operating system calls.

The platform independent functionality of the FPC 1.0.X version of the linux unit has been split out over the UNIX ([2050](#)), baseunix ([140](#)) and unixutil ([2104](#)) units.

The X86-specific parts have been moved to the X86 ([2187](#)) unit.

### 61.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 61.3.1 Constants

`CAP_AUDIT_CONTROL = 30`

Allow manipulation of kernel auditing features

`CAP_AUDIT_WRITE = 29`

Allow writing to kernel audit log

`CAP_CHOWN = 0`

Perform chown operation

`CAP_DAC_OVERRIDE = 1`

**Bypass file operation (rwx) checks**

`CAP_DAC_READ_SEARCH = 2`

**Bypass file read-only operation checks**

`CAP_FOWNER = 3`

**Bypass owner ID checks**

`CAP_FSETID = 4`

**Do not clear SUID/GUID bits on modified files**

`CAP_FS_MASK = 0xf`

?

`CAP_IPC_LOCK = 14`

**Allow memory locking calls**

`CAP_IPC_OWNER = 15`

**Bypass permission checks on IPC operations**

`CAP_KILL = 5`

**Bypass permission checks for sending signals**

`CAP_LEASE = 28`

**Allow file leases**

`CAP_LINUX_IMMUTABLE = 9`

**Allow setting ext2 file attributes**

`CAP_MKNOD = 27`

**Allow creation of special files through mknod calls**

`CAP_NET_ADMIN = 12`

**Allow network operations (e.g. setting socket options)**

`CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE = 10`

**Allow binding to ports less than 1024**

CAP\_NET\_BROADCAST = 11

Allow socket broadcast operations

CAP\_NET\_RAW = 13

Allow use of RAW and PACKET sockets

CAP\_SETGID = 6

Allow GID manipulations

CAP\_SETPCAP = 8

Allow to set other process' capabilities

CAP\_SETUID = 7

Allow process ID manipulations

CAP\_SYS\_ADMIN = 21

Allow various system administration calls

CAP\_SYS\_BOOT = 22

Allow reboot calls

CAP\_SYS\_CHROOT = 18

Allow chroot calls.

CAP\_SYS\_MODULE = 16

Allow loading/unloading of kernel modules

CAP\_SYS\_NICE = 23

Allowing raising process and thread priorities

CAP\_SYS\_PACCT = 20

Allow acct calls

CAP\_SYS\_PTRACE = 19

Allow ptrace calls

CAP\_SYS\_RAWIO = 17

Allow raw I/O port operations

`CAP_SYS_RESOURCE = 24`

Allow use of special resources or raising of resource limits

`CAP_SYS_TIME = 25`

Allow system or real-time clock modification

`CAP_SYS_TTY_CONFIG = 26`

Allow vhangup calls

`CLOCKS_MASK = CLOCK_REALTIME or CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

Mask for supported clocks

`CLOCKS_MONO = CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

Monotonic clocks mask

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC = 1`

Monotonic system time since some undetermined start point. Can change if time is set.

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC_COARSE = 6`

Less precise (but faster) version of `CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC_RAW = 4`

Like `CLOCK_MONOTONIC`, not subject to NTP adjustments

`CLOCK_PROCESS_CPUTIME_ID = 2`

Process-specific high-resolution timer from the CPU.

`CLOCK_REALTIME = 0`

System wide real-time clock. Can only be set by root.

`CLOCK_REALTIME_COARSE = 5`

Less precise (but faster) version of `CLOCK_REALTIME`

`CLOCK_SGI_CYCLE = 10`

High resolution timer

`CLOCK_THREAD_CPUTIME_ID = 3`

Thread-specific high-resolution timer from the CPU.

CLONE\_CHILD\_CLEAR\_TID = \$00200000

Clone option: Erase child thread ID in child memory space when child exits.

CLONE\_CHILD\_SETTID = \$01000000

Clone option: Store child thread ID in child memory.

CLONE\_DETACHED = \$00400000

Clone option: Start clone detached.

CLONE\_FILES = \$00000400

Clone (969) option: open files shared between processes

CLONE\_FS = \$00000200

Clone (969) option: fs info shared between processes

CLONE\_NEWNS = \$00020000

Clone options: Start child in new (file system) namespace.

CLONE\_PARENT = \$00008000

Clone options: Set child parent to parent of calling process.

CLONE\_PARENT\_SETTID = \$00100000

Clone option: Store child thread ID in memory in both parent and child.

CLONE\_PID = \$00001000

Clone (969) option: PID shared between processes

CLONE\_PTRACE = \$00002000

Clone options: if parent is traced, trace child also

CLONE\_SETTLS = \$00080000

Clone option: The newtls parameter is the TLS descriptor of the child

CLONE\_SIGHAND = \$00000800

Clone (969) option: signal handlers shared between processes

CLONE\_STOPPED = \$02000000

Clone option: Start child in stopped state.

CLONE\_SYSVSEM = \$00040000

Clone option: Caller and child share the same semaphore undo values

CLONE\_THREAD = \$00010000

Clone options: Set child in thread group of calling process.

CLONE\_UNTRACED = \$00800000

Clone option: Do not allow a ptrace call on this clone.

CLONE\_VFORK = \$00004000

Clone options: suspend parent till child execs

CLONE\_VM = \$00000100

Clone (969) option: VM shared between processes

CSIGNAL = \$000000ff

Clone (969) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

EPOLLERR = \$08

event\_wait error condition on file descriptor

EPOLLET = \$80000000

Set event\_wait edge trigger behaviour on file descriptor

EPOLLHUP = \$10

event\_wait hang up event

EPOLLIN = \$01

event\_wait input file descriptor ready event

EPOLLONESHOT = \$40000000

Set single-shot behaviour on epoll\_wait.

EPOLLOUT = \$04

event\_wait output file descriptor ready event

EPOLLPRI = \$02

event\_wait high priority data available on input file descriptor

`EPOLL_CTL_ADD = 1`

Add filedescriptor to list of events

`EPOLL_CTL_DEL = 2`

Delete event for filedescriptor

`EPOLL_CTL_MOD = 3`

Modify event for filedescriptor

`FUTEX_CMP_REQUEUE = 4`

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex, but check it's value first

`FUTEX_FD = 2`

Futex option: Associate file descriptor with futex.

`FUTEX_LOCK_PI = 6`

Futex option: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ADD = 1`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ANDN = 3`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_EQ = 0`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GE = 5`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GT = 4`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_LE = 3`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_LT = 2`

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_CMP\_NE = 1

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OPARG\_SHIFT = 8

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OR = 2

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_SET = 0

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_XOR = 4

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_REQUEUE = 3

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex.

FUTEX\_TRYLOCK\_PI = 8

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_UNLOCK\_PI = 7

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_WAIT = 0

Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

FUTEX\_WAKE = 1

Futex option: wakes any waiting processes on this futex

FUTEX\_WAKE\_OP = 5

Futex option: Undocumented

GIO\_CMAP = \$4B70

IOCTL: Get color palette on VGA+

GIO\_FONT = \$4B60

IOCTL: Get font in expanded form.

GIO\_FONTX = \$4B6B

**IOCTL:** Get font in consolefontdesc record.

GIO\_SCRNMAP = \$4B40

**IOCTL:** get screen mapping from kernel

GIO\_UNIMAP = \$4B66

**IOCTL:** get unicode-to-font mapping from kernel

GIO\_UNISCRNMAP = \$4B69

**IOCTL:** get full Unicode screen mapping

IN\_ACCESS = \$00000001

Data was read from file.

IN\_ALL\_EVENTS = IN\_ACCESS or IN\_MODIFY or IN\_ATTRIB or IN\_CLOSE or  
IN\_OPEN or IN\_MOVE or IN\_CREATE or IN\_DELETE or IN\_DELETE\_SELF or  
IN\_MOVE\_SELF

All possible events OR-ed together.

IN\_ATTRIB = \$00000004

File attributes changed.

IN\_CLOEXEC = &02000000

IN\_CLOEXEC can be set to indicate that the inotify file handle must be closed on exec.

IN\_CLOSE = IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE or IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE

File was closed (read or write)

IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE = \$00000010

File opened for read was closed

IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE = \$00000008

File opened for write was closed

IN\_CREATE = \$00000100

A file was created in the directory.

IN\_DELETE = \$00000200

A file was deleted from the directory.

`IN_DELETE_SELF = $00000400`

Directory or file under observation was deleted.

`IN_DONT_FOLLOW = $02000000`

Do not follow symlinks

`IN_IGNORED = $00008000`

Watch was ignored (removed). Only reported.

`IN_ISDIR = $40000000`

Event subject is a directory (reported only)

`IN_MASK_ADD = $20000000`

Add events to existing watch (OR-ing the sets) if one exists.

`IN_MODIFY = $00000002`

Data was written to file.

`IN_MOVE = IN_MOVED_FROM or IN_MOVED_TO`

File was moved (in or out of directory)

`IN_MOVED_FROM = $00000040`

File was moved away from watched directory

`IN_MOVED_TO = $00000080`

File was moved into watched directory

`IN_MOVE_SELF = $00000800`

Directory or file under observation was moved.

`IN_NONBLOCK = &00004000`

`IN_NONBLOCK` can be set to indicate that the inotify file handle should not block read operations.

`IN_ONESHOT = $80000000`

Only report one event, then remove the watch.

`IN_ONLYDIR = $01000000`

Only watch filename if it is a directory.

IN\_OPEN = \$00000020

File was opened

IN\_Q\_OVERFLOW = \$00004000

Queue overflowed. Only reported.

IN\_UNMOUNT = \$00002000

File system on which file resides was unmounted. Only reported.

KB\_101 = 2

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 101 keys

KB\_84 = 1

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 84 keys

KB\_OTHER = 3

IOCTL: Keyboard types: other type

KDADDIO = \$4B34

IOCTL: add i/o port as valid

KDDELIO = \$4B35

IOCTL: delete i/o port as valid

KDDISABIO = \$4B37

IOCTL: disable i/o to video board

KDENABIO = \$4B36

IOCTL: enable i/o to video board

KDFONTOP = \$4B72

IOCTL: font operations

KDGETKEYCODE = \$4B4C

IOCTL: read kernel keycode table entry

KDGETLED = \$4B31

**IOCTL:** return current led state

KDGETMODE = \$4B3B

**IOCTL:** get current mode

KDGKBDIACR = \$4B4A

**IOCTL:** read kernel accent table

KDGKBTYPE = \$4B33

**IOCTL:** get keyboard type

KDMAPDISP = \$4B3C

**IOCTL:** map display into address space

KDMKTONE = \$4B30

**IOCTL:** generate tone

KDSETKEYCODE = \$4B4D

**IOCTL:** write kernel keycode table entry

KDSETLED = \$4B32

**IOCTL:** set led state

KDSETMODE = \$4B3A

**IOCTL:** set text/graphics mode

KDSIGACCEPT = \$4B4E

**IOCTL:** accept kbd generated signals

KDSKBDIACR = \$4B4B

**IOCTL:** write kernel accent table

KDUNMAPDISP = \$4B3D

**IOCTL:** unmap display from address space

KD\_GRAPHICS = 1

**IOCTL:** Tty modes: graphics mode

KD\_TEXT = 0

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode**

KD\_TEXT0 = 2

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)**

KD\_TEXT1 = 3

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)**

KIOCSOUND = \$4B2F

**IOCTL: start/stop sound generation (0 for off)**

LED\_CAP = 4

**IOCTL: LED\_CAP : caps lock led**

LED\_NUM = 2

**IOCTL: LED\_SCR : Num lock led**

LED\_SCR = 1

**IOCTL: LED\_SCR : scroll lock led**

LINUX\_CAPABILITY\_VERSION = \$19980330

**Current capability version in use by kernel**

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

**Read-only**

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

**Memory area is marked as executable**

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

**Memory map grows down, like stack**

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

**Memory pages are locked**

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

**Do not check for reservations**

MAX\_CLOCKS = 16

Maximum number of clocks in the system

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_CODE = 2

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_DATA = 0

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_STACK = 1

Modify\_ldt option: Undocumented

O\_CLOEXEC = \$80000

Close on exec flag: close file handle on exec call

PIO\_CMAP = \$4B71

IOCTL: Set color palette on VGA+

PIO\_FONT = \$4B61

IOCTL: Use font in expanded form.

PIO\_FONTRESET = \$4B6D

IOCTL: Reset to default font

PIO\_FONTX = \$4B6C

IOCTL: Set font in consolefontdesc record.

PIO\_SCRNMAP = \$4B41

IOCTL: put screen mapping table in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAP = \$4B67

IOCTL: put unicode-to-font mapping in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAPCLR = \$4B68

IOCTL: clear table, possibly advise hash algorithm

PIO\_UNISCRNMAP = \$4B6A

IOCTL: set full Unicode screen mapping

POLLMSG = \$0400

**Unused in Linux**

POLLRDHUP = \$2000

**Peer Shutdown/closed writing half of connection**

POLLREMOVE = \$1000

**Undocumented Linux extension of Poll**

SPLICE\_F\_GIFT = 8

**Pages spliced in are a gift**

SPLICE\_F\_MORE = 4

**Expect more data**

SPLICE\_F\_MOVE = 1

**Move pages instead of copying**

SPLICE\_F\_NONBLOCK = 2

**Don't block on pipe splicing operations**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_AFTER = 4

**Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_BEFORE = 1

**Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.**

SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WRITE = 2

**Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.**

UD\_CONTENTS\_CODE = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_CODE shl 1

**TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented**

UD\_CONTENTS\_DATA = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_DATA shl 1

**TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented**

UD\_CONTENTS\_STACK = MODIFY\_LDT\_CONTENTS\_STACK shl 1

**TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented**

UD\_LIMIT\_IN\_PAGES = \$10

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_LM = \$80

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_READ\_EXEC\_ONLY = \$08

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_SEG\_32BIT = \$01

TLS segment descriptor : Undocumented

UD\_SEG\_NOT\_PRESENT = \$20

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

UD\_USEABLE = \$40

TLS segment descriptor: Undocumented

### 61.3.2 Types

clockid\_t = cint

Clock id type

```
EPoll_Data = record
case Integer of
0: (
    ptr : pointer;
);
1: (
    fd : cint;
);
2: (
    u32 : cuint;
);
3: (
    u64 : cuint64;
);
end
```

Data structure used in EPOLL IOCTL call.

PEPoll\_Data = ^EPoll\_Data

Pointer to EPoll\_Data ([966](#)) record

`PEpoll_Event = ^EPoll_Event`

Pointer to `EPoll_Event` (976) type

`Pinotify_event = ^inotify_event`

Pointer to `inotify_event` (976) structure.

`PSysInfo = ^TSysInfo`

Pointer to `TSysInfo` (977) record.

`Puser_cap_data = ^user_cap_data`

Pointer to `user_cap_data` (977) record

`Puser_cap_header = ^user_cap_header`

Pointer to `user_cap_header` (977) record

`PUser_Desc = ^user_desc`

`PUser_Desc` is a pointer to the `user_desc` (978) type.

`TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt`

Clone function prototype.

`TEPoll_Data = EPoll_Data`

Alias for `EPoll_Data` (966) type

`TEPoll_Event = EPoll_Event`

Alias for `EPoll_Event` (976) type

`TUser_Desc = user_desc`

`TUser_Desc` is an alias for the `user_desc` (978) type.

## 61.4 Procedures and functions

### 61.4.1 capget

**Synopsis:** Return the capabilities for the indicated thread

**Declaration:** `function capget(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `capget` returns the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the Linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

**Errors:** On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperrno` is set to the error.

**See also:** `capset` (968)

### 61.4.2 capset

Synopsis: Set the capabilities for the indicated thread

Declaration: `function capset(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `capset` sets the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the Linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

Errors: On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperrno` is set to the error.

See also: `capget` ([967](#))

### 61.4.3 clock\_getres

Synopsis: Get clock resolution

Declaration: `function clock_getres(clk_id: clockid_t; res: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_getres` returns the resolution of the clock specified in `clk_id` in the `res` structure. It can be `Nil`. If the clock exists and the resolution can be retrieved, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_gettime` ([968](#)), `clock_settime` ([968](#))

### 61.4.4 clock\_gettime

Synopsis: Get the time of a clock

Declaration: `function clock_gettime(clk_id: clockid_t; tp: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_gettime` returns the current time of the clock specified in `clk_id` in the `tp` structure. If the clock exists and the time can be retrieved, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_getres` ([968](#)), `clock_settime` ([968](#))

### 61.4.5 clock\_settime

Synopsis: Set the time of a clock

Declaration: `function clock_settime(clk_id: clockid_t; tp: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_settime` sets the current time of the clock specified in `clk_id`. The time is specified in the `tp` structure. If the clock exists and the time can be retrieved, 0 is returned. The resolution is truncated to the resolution supported by the specified clock. Note that not all clocks can be set.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_getres` ([968](#)), `clock_gettime` ([968](#))

### 61.4.6 clone

Synopsis: Clone current process (create new thread)

Declaration: `function clone(func: TCloneFunc; sp: pointer; flags: LongInt; args: pointer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clone` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like `FpFork` (189) does. In difference with `Fork`, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function `Func`, and passes it `Args`. The return value of `Func` is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The `sp` pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The `Flags` determine the behaviour of the `Clone` call. The low byte of the `Flags` contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM**Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent `mmap` calls.

**CLONE\_FS**Parent and child have the same view of the file system; the `chroot`, `chdir` and `umask` calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.

**CLONE\_PID**Parent and child have the same process ID.

`Clone` returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (189)

### 61.4.7 epoll\_create

Synopsis: Create new epoll file descriptor

Declaration: `function epoll_create(size: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_create` creates a new epoll file descriptor. The `size` argument indicates to the kernel approximately how many structures should be allocated, but is by no means an upper limit.

On success, a file descriptor is returned that can be used in subsequent `epoll_ctl` (970) or `epoll_wait` (970) calls, and should be closed using the `fpClose` (182) call.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `errno` (192) is set.

See also: `epoll_ctl` (970), `epoll_wait` (970), `fpClose` (182)

### 61.4.8 `epoll_ctl`

Synopsis: Modify an epoll file descriptor

Declaration: `function epoll_ctl(epfd: cint; op: cint; fd: cint; event: PEpoll_Event)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_ctl` performs the `op` operation on epoll file descriptor `epfd`. The operation will be monitored on file descriptor `fd`, and is optionally controlled by `event`.

`op` can be one of the following values:

**EPOLL\_CTL\_ADD**Add filedescriptor to list of events

**EPOLL\_CTL\_MOD**Modify event for filedescriptor

**EPOLL\_CTL\_DEL**Delete event for filedescriptor

The `events` field in `event_data` is a bitmask of one or more of the following values:

**EPOLLIN**The file is ready for read operations

**EPOLLOUT**The file is ready for write operations.

**EPOLLPRI**Urgent data is available for read operations.

**EPOLLERR**An error condition is signaled on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLHUP**A Hang up happened on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLET**Set the Edge Triggered behaviour for the file descriptor.

**EPOLLONESHOT**Set One-Shot behaviour for the file descriptor. The event will be triggered only once.

Errors: On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([969](#)), `epoll_wait` ([970](#)), `fpClose` ([182](#))

### 61.4.9 `epoll_wait`

Synopsis: Wait for an event on an epoll file descriptor.

Declaration: `function epoll_wait(epfd: cint; events: PEpoll_Event; maxevents: cint;  
timeout: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_wait` waits for `timeout` milliseconds for an event to occur on epoll file descriptor `epfd`. If `timeout` is -1, it waits indefinitely, if `timeout` is zero, it does not wait, but returns immediately, even if no events were detected.

On return, data for at most `maxevents` will be returned in the memory pointed to by `events`. The function returns the number of file descriptors for which events were reported. This can be zero if the timeout was reached.

Errors: On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([969](#)), `epoll_ctl` ([970](#)), `fpClose` ([182](#))

### 61.4.10 fdatasync

**Synopsis:** Synchronize the data in memory with the data on storage device

**Declaration:** `function fdatasync(fd: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fdatasync` does the same as `ffsync` but does not flush the metadata, unless it is vital to the correct reading/writing of the file. In practice, this means that unless the file size changed, the file metadata will not be synced.

**See also:** `#rtl.unix.fsync` ([2050](#))

### 61.4.11 futex

**Synopsis:** Perform a futex operation

**Declaration:** `function futex(uaddr: pcint; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec;  
addr2: pcint; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec;  
var addr2; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; var timeout: TTimeSpec;  
var addr2; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(uaddr: pcint; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec)  
: cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec)  
: cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; var timeout: TTimeSpec)  
: cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `futex` performs an operation on a memory futex as described in the kernel manual page for `futex`. The mutex is located at `uaddr`, the operation `op` is one of the following constants:

**FUTEX\_WAIT**Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

**FUTEX\_WAKE**Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

**FUTEX\_FD**Futex option: Associate file descriptor with futex.

**FUTEX\_REQUEUE**Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex.

**FUTEX\_CMP\_REQUEUE**Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex, but check it's value first

The value to check for is indicated in `val`, and a timeout can be specified in `timeout`. The optional arguments `addr2` and `val3` are used only with the `FUTEX_REQUEUE` and `FUTEX_CMP_REQUEUE` operations.

In case of an error, -1 is return. All other return values must be interpreted according to the operation performed.

This call directly interfaces with the Linux kernel, more information can be found in the kernel manual pages.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned. Use `#rtl.baseunix.fpgeterrno` ([192](#)) to get the error code.

### 61.4.12 futex\_op

Synopsis: Futex operation:

Declaration: `function futex_op(op: cint; oparg: cint; cmp: cint; cmparg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FUTEX_OP` Performs an operation on a futex:

```

FUTEX_OP := ((op and $F) shl 28) or
             ((cmp and $F) shl 24) or
             ((oparg and $FFF) shl 12)
             or (cmparg and $FFF);

```

### 61.4.13 inotify\_add\_watch

Synopsis: Add a watch to a notify file descriptor

Declaration: `function inotify_add_watch(fd: cint; name: PChar; mask: cuint32) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_add_watch` can be used to add a watch to an initialized inotify file descriptor (`fd`).

The file or directory to watch can be specified in the `name` parameter, and the events that must be reported can be specified in `mask`. The following flags can be specified:

**IN\_ACCESS** Data was read from file.

**IN\_MODIFY** Data was written to file.

**IN\_ATTRIB** File attributes changed.

**IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE** File opened for write was closed

**IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE** File opened for read was closed

**IN\_CLOSE** File was closed (read or write)

**IN\_OPEN** File was opened

**IN\_MOVED\_FROM** File was moved away from watched directory

**IN\_MOVED\_TO** File was moved into watched directory

**IN\_MOVE** File was moved (in or out of directory)

**IN\_CREATE** A file was created in the directory.

**IN\_DELETE** A file was deleted from the directory.

**IN\_DELETE\_SELF** Directory or file under observation was deleted.

**IN\_MOVE\_SELF** Directory or file under observation was moved.

**IN\_ALL\_EVENTS** All possible events OR-ed together.

These events can be OR-ed with some flags, controlling the behaviour of the watch:

**IN\_ONLYDIR** Only watch filename if it is a directory.

**IN\_ISDIR** Event occurred against directory.

**IN\_DONT\_FOLLOW** Do not follow symlinks

**IN\_MASK\_ADD** Add events to existing watch (OR-ing the sets) if one exists.

**IN\_ONESHOT** Only report one event, then remove the watch.

On return, the function returns a watch descriptor, which will be reported in the `inotify_event` (976) structure's `wd`.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (973), `inotify_init1` (973), `inotify_rm_watch` (973), `inotify_event` (976)

#### 61.4.14 `inotify_init`

Synopsis: Initialize a new `inotify` file descriptor

Declaration: `function inotify_init : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_init` initializes a new `INotify` file descriptor. No options can be specified. On return, the file descriptor is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information

See also: `inotify_init1` (973), `inotify_add_watch` (972), `inotify_rm_watch` (973)

#### 61.4.15 `inotify_init1`

Synopsis: Initialize a new `inotify` file descriptor with extra options.

Declaration: `function inotify_init1(flags: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_init1` initializes a new `INotify` file descriptor. The following options can be OR-ed and passed in `flags`:

**IN\_NONBLOCK** Do not block on read

**IN\_CLOEXEC** `inotify` close on exec flag.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (973), `inotify_add_watch` (972), `inotify_rm_watch` (973)

#### 61.4.16 `inotify_rm_watch`

Synopsis: Remove watch from `Inotify` file descriptor.

Declaration: `function inotify_rm_watch(fd: cint; wd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_rm_watch` removes watch descriptor `wd` from `inotify` descriptor `fd`. On success, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (973), `inotify_init1` (973), `inotify_add_watch` (972), `inotify_event` (976)

### 61.4.17 `modify_ldt`

Declaration: `function modify_ldt(func: cint; p: pointer; bytecount: culong) : cint`

Visibility: default

### 61.4.18 `sched_yield`

Synopsis: Yield the processor to another thread.

Declaration: `procedure sched_yield`

Visibility: default

Description: `sched_yield` yields the processor to another thread. The current thread is put at the back of its queue. If there is only 1 thread in the application, the thread continues to run. The call always returns zero.

### 61.4.19 `setregid`

Synopsis: Set Real and Effective Group ID

Declaration: `function setregid(rgid: uid_t; egid: uid_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `setregid` sets the real group ID to `rgid` and the effective group ID to `egid`. Passing a value of -1 tells the system not to change that value.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `setreuid` ([974](#))

### 61.4.20 `setreuid`

Declaration: `function setreuid(ruid: uid_t; euid: uid_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `setreuid` sets the real user ID to `ruid` and the effective user ID to `euid`. Passing a value of -1 tells the system not to change that value.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `setregid` ([974](#))

### 61.4.21 `sync_file_range`

Synopsis: Force committing of data to disk

Declaration: `function sync_file_range(fd: cint; offset: off64_t; nbytes: off64_t; flags: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `sync_file_range` forces the Linux kernel to write any data pages of a specified file (file descriptor `fd`) to disk. The range of the file is specified by the offset `offset` and the number of bytes `nbytes`. `Options` is an OR-ed combination of

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_BEFORE** Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WRITE** Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_AFTER** Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.

If none is specified, the operation does nothing.

**Errors:** On return -1 is returned and `fperrno` is set to the actual error code. See the Linux man page for more on the error codes.

See also: `fdatasync` ([971](#))

## 61.4.22 Sysinfo

**Synopsis:** Return kernel system information

**Declaration:** `function Sysinfo(Info: PSysInfo) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysInfo` returns system information in `Info`. Returned information in `Info` includes:

**uptime** Number of seconds since boot.

**loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.

**totalram** total amount of main memory.

**freeram** amount of free memory.

**sharedram** amount of shared memory.

**bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.

**totalswap** total amount of swap space.

**freeswap** amount of free swap space.

**procs** number of current processes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpUname` ([227](#))

**Listing:** `./linuxex/ex64.pp`

---

**program** Example64;

*{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function.  
Sysinfo is Linux-only. }*

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

**Uses** Linux;

**Function** Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

**begin**

    Mb := L **div** (1024\*1024);

**end**;

**Var** Info : TSysInfo;

---

```

    D,M,Secs,H : longint;
{$endif}

begin
  {$ifdef Linux}
    If Not (SysInfo(@Info)=0) then
      Halt(1);
    With Info do
      begin
        D:=Uptime div (3600*24);
        UpTime:=UpTime mod (3600*24);
        h:=uptime div 3600;
        uptime:=uptime mod 3600;
        m:=uptime div 60;
        secs:=uptime mod 60;
        Writeln('Uptime : ',d,'days, ',h,' hours, ',m,' min, ',secs,' s. ');
        Writeln('Loads : ',Loads[1], '/',Loads[2], '/',Loads[3]);
        Writeln('Total Ram : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb. ');
        Writeln('Free Ram : ',Mb(freeram), 'Mb. ');
        Writeln('Shared Ram : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb. ');
        Writeln('Buffer Ram : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb. ');
        Writeln('Total Swap : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb. ');
        Writeln('Free Swap : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb. ');
      end;
    {$endif}
  end.

```

---

## 61.5 EPoll\_Event

```

EPoll_Event = packed record
  Events : cuint32;
  Data : TEPoll_Data
;
end

```

Structure used in `epoll_ctl` (970) call.

## 61.6 inotify\_event

```

inotify_event = record
  wd : cint;
  mask : cuint32;
  cookie : cuint32
;
  len : cuint32;
  name : Char;
end

```

`inotify_event` is the structure used to report changes in a directory. When reading a `inotify` file descriptor, one or more `inotify_event` records can be read from the file descriptor.

## 61.7 TSysInfo

```
TSysInfo = record
  uptime : clong;
  loads : Array[0..2] of culong
  ;
  totalram : culong;
  freeram : culong;
  sharedram : culong;
  bufferram : culong;
  totalswap : culong;
  freeswap : culong;
  procs : cushort;
  pad : cushort;
  totalhigh : culong;
  freehigh
  : culong;
  mem_unit : cuint;
end
```

Record with system information, used by the SysInfo (975) call.

## 61.8 user\_cap\_data

```
user_cap_data = record
  effective : cuint32;
  permitted : cuint32
  ;
  inheritable : cuint32;
end
```

user\_cap\_data describes the set of capabilities for the indicated thread.

## 61.9 user\_cap\_header

```
user_cap_header = record
  version : cuint32;
  pid : cint;
end
```

user\_cap\_header describes the root user capabilities for the current thread, as set by capget (967) and capset (968)

## 61.10 user\_desc

```
user_desc = record
  entry_number : cuint;
  base_addr : cuint;
```

```
    limit : cuint;  
    flags : cuint;  
end
```

`user_desc` is the TLS (Thread Local Storage) segment descriptor used in the `Clone` call. It should not be used, as it contains highly kernel-specific data.

## Chapter 62

# Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'

### 62.1 Used units

Table 62.1: Used units by unit 'Infodwrf'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 62.2 Overview

The `Infodwrf` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with DWARF debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For stabs debug information, the `lineinfo` ([949](#)) unit must be used.

### 62.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 62.3.1 Types

`CodePointer = Pointer`

`CodePointer` is added for 16-bit dos compatibility.

#### 62.3.2 Variables

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData : Boolean = True`

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` can be set to `True` to keep the last opened file open. When regularly creating backtraces (e.g. in a program log), this will significantly speed up operations.

## 62.4 Procedures and functions

### 62.4.1 CloseDwarf

Synopsis: Close DWARF info file descriptor

Declaration: `procedure CloseDwarf`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseDwarf` will close the file descriptor that was used to read DWARF debug information. This is useful if `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` (979) is used to cache DWARF information.

Errors: None.

See also: `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` (979)

### 62.4.2 DwarfBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Get a backtrace from an address

Declaration: `function DwarfBackTraceStr(addr: CodePointer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DwarfBackTraceStr` returns a backtrace from a memory address `Addr`.

This is the actual callback for the backtrace handler `System.BackTraceStrFunc` (979).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetLineInfo` (980)

### 62.4.3 GetLineInfo

Synopsis: Return source line information about an address.

Declaration: `function GetLineInfo(addr: CodePtrUInt; var func: string;  
var source: string; var line: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the DWARF debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon successful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

Errors: If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

## Chapter 63

# Reference for unit 'Math'

### 63.1 Used units

Table 63.1: Used units by unit 'Math'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils | <a href="#">1599</a> |

### 63.2 Overview

This document describes the `math` unit. The `math` unit was initially written by Florian Klaempfl. It provides mathematical functions which aren't covered by the system unit.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, after which an overview is presented of the available functions, grouped by category, and the last part contains a complete explanation of each function.

The following things must be taken into account when using this unit:

1. This unit is compiled in Object Pascal mode so all `integers` are 32 bit.
2. Some overloaded functions exist for data arrays of integers and floats. When using the address operator (`@`) to pass an array of data to such a function, make sure the address is typecasted to the right type, or turn on the 'typed address operator' feature. failing to do so, will cause the compiler not be able to decide which function you want to call.

### 63.3 Cash flow functions

The cash flow functions in the `math` unit resolve the following equation:

$$FV + PV * q^n + PMT (q^n - 1) / (q - 1) = 0$$

In this formula, the following variables are present:

**FV** Future value

**PV** Present value

**PMT** Payment per period

**n** Number of payments (number of periods)

**q>** Interest Rate (return rate)

The financial functions FutureValue (998), NumberOfPeriods (1014), Payment (1015), PresentValue (1018) and InterestRate (1001) solve this equation for one of the variables, when the other variables are known.

See also: FutureValue (998), NumberOfPeriods (1014), Payment (1015), PresentValue (1018), TPayment-Time (986)

## 63.4 Geometrical functions

Table 63.2:

| Name         | Description            |
|--------------|------------------------|
| hypot (1000) | Hypotenuse of triangle |
| norm (1014)  | Euclidean norm         |

## 63.5 Statistical functions

Table 63.3:

| Name                      | Description                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| mean (1008)               | Mean of values                        |
| meanandstddev (1009)      | Mean and standard deviation of values |
| momentskewkurtosis (1012) | Moments, skew and kurtosis            |
| popnstddev (1015)         | Population standard deviation         |
| popnvariance (1016)       | Population variance                   |
| randg (1019)              | Gaussian distributed random value     |
| stddev (1024)             | Standard deviation                    |
| sum (1025)                | Sum of values                         |
| sumofsquares (1026)       | Sum of squared values                 |
| sumsandsquares (1027)     | Sum of values and squared values      |
| totalvariance (1029)      | Total variance of values              |
| variance (1030)           | variance of values                    |

## 63.6 Number converting

Table 63.4:

| Name                     | Description                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>ceil</code> (991)  | Round to infinity            |
| <code>floor</code> (996) | Round to minus infinity      |
| <code>frexp</code> (998) | Return mantissa and exponent |

## 63.7 Exponential and logarithmic functions

Table 63.5:

| Name                         | Description                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>intpower</code> (1002) | Raise float to integer power        |
| <code>ldexp</code> (1003)    | Calculate $2^x \times \text{float}$ |
| <code>lnxp1</code> (1004)    | calculate $\log(x+1)$               |
| <code>log10</code> (1004)    | calculate 10-base log               |
| <code>log2</code> (1005)     | calculate 2-base log                |
| <code>logn</code> (1005)     | calculate N-base log                |
| <code>power</code> (1017)    | raise float to arbitrary power      |

## 63.8 Hyperbolic functions

Table 63.6:

| Name                      | Description                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>arcosh</code> (988) | calculate reverse hyperbolic cosine  |
| <code>arsinh</code> (990) | calculate reverse hyperbolic sine    |
| <code>artanh</code> (990) | calculate reverse hyperbolic tangent |
| <code>cosh</code> (993)   | calculate hyperbolic cosine          |
| <code>sinh</code> (1024)  | calculate hyperbolic sine            |
| <code>tanh</code> (1029)  | calculate hyperbolic tangent         |

## 63.9 Trigonometric functions

Table 63.7:

| Name                       | Description               |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>arccos</code> (987)  | calculate reverse cosine  |
| <code>arcsin</code> (988)  | calculate reverse sine    |
| <code>arctan2</code> (989) | calculate reverse tangent |
| <code>cotan</code> (993)   | calculate cotangent       |
| <code>sincos</code> (1023) | calculate sine and cosine |
| <code>tan</code> (1028)    | calculate tangent         |

## 63.10 Angle unit conversion

Routines to convert angles between different angle units.

Table 63.8:

| Name                            | Description                |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>cycletorad</code> (994)   | convert cycles to radians  |
| <code>degtograd</code> (995)    | convert degrees to grads   |
| <code>degtorad</code> (995)     | convert degrees to radians |
| <code>gradtodeg</code> (999)    | convert grads to degrees   |
| <code>gradtorad</code> (1000)   | convert grads to radians   |
| <code>radto cycle</code> (1018) | convert radians to cycles  |
| <code>radtodeg</code> (1018)    | convert radians to degrees |
| <code>radto grad</code> (1019)  | convert radians to grads   |

## 63.11 Min/max determination

Functions to determine the minimum or maximum of numbers:

Table 63.9:

| Name                            | Description                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>max</code> (1006)         | Maximum of 2 values                   |
| <code>maxIntValue</code> (1006) | Maximum of an array of integer values |
| <code>maxvalue</code> (1007)    | Maximum of an array of values         |
| <code>min</code> (1010)         | Minimum of 2 values                   |
| <code>minIntValue</code> (1010) | Minimum of an array of integer values |
| <code>minvalue</code> (1011)    | Minimum of an array of values         |

## 63.12 Constants, types and variables

### 63.12.1 Constants

`EqualsValue = 0`

Values are the same

`GreaterThanValue = High(TValueRelationship)`

First values is greater than second value

`Infinity = 1.0 / 0.0`

Value is infinity

`LessThanValue = Low(TValueRelationship)`

First value is less than second value

`MaxFloat = 0`

Maximum value of float type

`MinFloat = 0`

Minimum value (closest to zero) of float type

`NaN = 0.0 / 0.0`

Value is Not a Number

`NegativeValue = Low(TValueSign)`

Value is negative

`NegInfinity = (- 1.0) / (0.0)`

Value is negative (minus) infinity

`PositiveValue = High(TValueSign)`

Value is positive

`ZeroValue = 0`

Value is zero

### 63.12.2 Types

`Float = MaxFloatType`

All calculations are done with the `Float` type which is the largest float type available for the current CPU. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type `PFloat` (986) is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

`PFloat = ^Float`

Pointer to `Float` (986) type.

`PInteger = ObjPas.PInteger`

Pointer to integer type

`TFPUException = system.TFPUException`

Type describing Floating Point processor exceptions.

`TFPUExceptionMask = system.TFPUExceptionMask`

Type to set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

`TFPUPrecisionMode = system.TFPUPrecisionMode`

Type describing the default precision for the Floating Point processor.

`TFPURoundingMode = system.TFPURoundingMode`

Type describing the rounding mode for the Floating Point processor.

`TPaymentTime = (ptEndOfPeriod, ptStartOfPeriod)`

Table 63.10: Enumeration values for type `TPaymentTime`

| Value                        | Explanation      |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| <code>ptEndOfPeriod</code>   | End of period.   |
| <code>ptStartOfPeriod</code> | Start of period. |

Type used in financial (interest) calculations.

`TRoundToRange = - 37..37`

`TRoundToRange` is the range of valid digits to be used in the `RoundTo` (1021) function.

`TValueRelationship = - 1..1`

Type to describe relational order between values

`TValueSign = - 1..1`

Type indicating sign of a value

## 63.13 Procedures and functions

### 63.13.1 ArcCos

Synopsis: Return inverse cosine

Declaration: `function ArcCos(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arccos` returns the inverse cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1 (borders included).

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcsin` (988), `arcosh` (988), `arsinh` (990), `artanh` (990)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arccos function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Procedure** `WriteRadDeg(X : float)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')`  
**end**;

**begin**

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (3)/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (2)/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (0));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (-1));`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.2 ArcCosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function ArcCosH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arccosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arcosh` (988), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arcosh` (988)

### 63.13.3 ArCosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function ArCosh(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should be larger than 1. The `arccosh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `cosh` (993), `sinh` (1024), `arcsin` (988), `arsinh` (990), `artanh` (990), `tanh` (1029)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcosh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arcosh(1)`);

**WriteLn**(`arcosh(2)`);

**end.**

---

### 63.13.4 ArcSin

Synopsis: Return inverse sine

Declaration: `function ArcSin(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcsin` returns the inverse sine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arccos` (987), `arcosh` (988), `arsinh` (990), `artanh` (990)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcsin function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', `radtodeg(x):8:5`, ' degrees. ')

**end;**

**begin**

    WriteRadDeg (`arcsin(1)`);

    WriteRadDeg (`arcsin(sqrt(3)/2)`);

---

```

WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (sqrt (2)/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (1/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (0));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.5 ArcSinH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function ArcSinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arsinh` (990), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arsinh` (990)

### 63.13.6 ArcTan2

Synopsis: Return arctangent of (y/x)

Declaration: `function ArcTan2(y: Float; x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arctan2` calculates `arctan(y/x)`, and returns an angle in the correct quadrant. The returned angle will be in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  radians. The values of `x` and `y` must be between  $-2^{64}$  and  $2^{64}$ , moreover `x` should be different from zero. On Intel systems this function is implemented with the native intel `fpatan` instruction.

See also: `arccos` (987), `arcosh` (988), `arsinh` (990), `artanh` (990)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arctan2 function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end**;

**begin**

**WriteRadDeg** ( arctan2(2,1));

**end**.

---

### 63.13.7 ArcTanH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function ArcTanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `artanh` (990), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `artanh` (990)

### 63.13.8 ArSinH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function ArSinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`. The `arscsinh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (988), `arccos` (987), `arcsin` (988), `artanh` (990)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arsinh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(1)`);

**end.**

---

### 63.13.9 ArTanH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function ArTanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `artanh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`, where `x` should lie in the interval `[-1,1]`, borders included. The `arctanh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: In case `x` is not in the interval `[-1,1]`, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcosh` (988), `arccos` (987), `arcsin` (988), `artanh` (990)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

{ Program to demonstrate the artanh function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(artanh(0));
  WriteLn(artanh(0.5));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.10 Ceil

Synopsis: Return the lowest integer number greater than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function Ceil(x: Float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil` returns the lowest integer number greater than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If the absolute value of `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `floor` ([996](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;

{ Program to demonstrate the Ceil function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(Ceil(-3.7)); // should be -3
  WriteLn(Ceil(3.7)); // should be 4
  WriteLn(Ceil(-4.0)); // should be -4
end.

```

---

### 63.13.11 Ceil64

Synopsis: Round to the nearest bigger int64 value

Declaration: `function Ceil64(x: Float) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil64` rounds the value `X` to the nearest bigger int64 value. The result is always bigger than `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ceil` ([991](#)), `floor64` ([997](#))

**63.13.12 ClearExceptions**

Synopsis: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

Declaration: `procedure ClearExceptions (RaisePending: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

**63.13.13 CompareValue**

Synopsis: Compare 2 values

Declaration: `function CompareValue(const A: Integer; const B: Integer)  
: TValueRelationship  
function CompareValue(const A: Int64; const B: Int64)  
: TValueRelationship  
function CompareValue(const A: QWord; const B: QWord)  
: TValueRelationship  
function CompareValue(const A: Single; const B: Single; delta: Single)  
: TValueRelationship  
function CompareValue(const A: Double; const B: Double; delta: Double)  
: TValueRelationship  
function CompareValue(const A: Extended; const B: Extended;  
delta: Extended) : TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareValue compares 2 integer or floating point values A and B and returns one of the following values:

**-1** if  $A < B$

**0** if  $A = B$

**1** if  $A > B$

See also: TValueRelationship ([986](#))

**63.13.14 Cosecant**

Synopsis: Calculate cosecant

Declaration: `function Cosecant(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: cosecant calculates the cosecant ( $1/\sin(x)$ ) of its argument x.

Errors: If 0 or 180 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: secant ([1022](#))

**63.13.15 Cosh**

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function Cosh(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cosh` returns the hyperbolic cosine of it's argument {x}.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` ([988](#)), `sinh` ([1024](#)), `arsinh` ([990](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the cosh function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`Cosh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`Cosh(1)`);

**end.**

---

**63.13.16 Cot**

Synopsis: Alias for `Cotan`

Declaration: `function Cot(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `cot` is an alias for the `cotan` ([993](#)) function.

See also: `cotan` ([993](#))

**63.13.17 Cotan**

Synopsis: Return cotangent

Declaration: `function Cotan(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cotan` returns the cotangent of it's argument x. The argument x must be in radians. x should be different from zero.

Errors: If x is zero then a overflow error will occur.

See also: `tanh` ([1029](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;

{ Program to demonstrate the cotan function. }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln(cotan(pi/2));
  Writeln(cotan(pi/3));
  Writeln(cotan(pi/4));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.18 Csc

Synopsis: Alias for cosecant

Declaration: `function Csc(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `csc` is an alias for the cosecant (992) function.

See also: cosecant (992)

### 63.13.19 CycleToRad

Synopsis: Convert cycle angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function CycleToRad(cycle: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cycletorad` transforms it's argument `cycle` (an angle expressed in cycles) to radians. (1 cycle is  $2\pi$  radians).

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (995), `degtorad` (995), `radtodeg` (1018), `radtograd` (1019), `radtocycle` (1018)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;

{ Program to demonstrate the cycletorad function. }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/6))); // Should print 1/2
  writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/8))); // should be sqrt(2)/2
end.

```

---

**63.13.20 DegNormalize**

Synopsis: Normalize an angle measured in degrees

Declaration: `function DegNormalize(deg: single) : single`  
`function DegNormalize(deg: Double) : Double`  
`function DegNormalize(deg: extended) : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `DegNormalize` returns the angle `deg` as a positive angle between 0 and 360 degrees.

**63.13.21 DegToGrad**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to grads angle

Declaration: `function DegToGrad(deg: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Degtograd` transforms it's argument `deg` (an angle in degrees) to grads. (90 degrees is 100 grad.)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([994](#)), `degtorad` ([995](#)), `radtodeg` ([1018](#)), `radtograd` ([1019](#)), `radtocycle` ([1018](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degto grad function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**  
`writeln(degto grad(90));`  
`writeln(degto grad(180));`  
`writeln(degto grad(270))`  
**end.**

---

**63.13.22 DegToRad**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to radians angle.

Declaration: `function DegToRad(deg: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Degtorad` converts it's argument `deg` (an angle in degrees) to radians. (pi radians is 180 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([994](#)), `degto grad` ([995](#)), `radtodeg` ([1018](#)), `radto grad` ([1019](#)), `radtocycle` ([1018](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln**(degtorad(45));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(90));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(180));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(270));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(360));  
**end.**

---

### 63.13.23 DivMod

Synopsis: Return DIV and MOD of arguments

**Declaration:** procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: Word; var Result: Word;  
                                 var Remainder: Word)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: Word;  
                         var Result: SmallInt; var Remainder: SmallInt)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: DWord; Divisor: DWord; var Result: DWord;  
                         var Remainder: DWord)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: LongInt;  
                         var Result: LongInt; var Remainder: LongInt)

Visibility: default

**Description:** DivMod returns Dividend DIV Divisor in Result, and Dividend MOD Divisor in Remainder

### 63.13.24 EnsureRange

Synopsis: Change value so it fits in a specified range.

**Declaration:** function EnsureRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer;  
                                     const AMax: Integer) : Integer; Overload  
     function EnsureRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64;  
                             const AMax: Int64) : Int64; Overload  
     function EnsureRange(const AValue: Double; const AMin: Double;  
                             const AMax: Double) : Double; Overload

Visibility: default

**Description:** EnsureRange returns Value if AValue is in the range AMin..AMax. It returns AMin if the value is less than AMin, or AMax if the value is larger than AMax.

See also: InRange ([1001](#))

### 63.13.25 Floor

Synopsis: Return the largest integer smaller than or equal to argument

**Declaration:** function Floor(x: Float) : Integer

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Floor` returns the largest integer smaller than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

**Errors:** If `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow will occur.

See also: [ceil \(991\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex13.pp

### Program Example13;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the floor function. }
```

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

```
WriteIn(Floor(-3.7)); // should be -4
```

```
WriteIn(Floor(3.7)); // should be 3
```

```
WriteIn(Floor(-4.0)); // should be -4
```

**end .**

## 63.13.26 Floor64

Synopsis: Round to the nearest smaller int64 value

**Declaration:** `function Floor64(x: Float) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Floor64` rounds the value `X` to the nearest smaller `int64` value. The result is always smaller than `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: floor (996), ceil64 (991)

### 63.13.27 FMod

## Synopsis: Floatin point modulo

```
Declaration: function FMod(const a: Single; const b: Single) : Single; Overload
            function FMod(const a: Double; const b: Double) : Double; Overload
            function FMod(const a: Extended; const b: Extended) : Extended
                ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FMod is the floating-point equivalent of the modulo operation  $a \bmod b$ . It returns the result of  $a - b * \text{Int}(a/b)$

**Errors:** b may not be zero, but no check is performed.

**63.13.28 Frexp**

Synopsis: Return mantissa and exponent.

Declaration: `procedure Frexp(X: Float; var Mantissa: Float; var Exponent: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frexp` returns the mantissa and exponent of its argument `x` in mantissa and exponent.

Errors: None

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the frexp function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** dofexp(**Const** X : extended);

**var** man : extended;  
    **exp**: longint;

**begin**

    man:=0;  
    **exp**:=0;  
    frexp(x,man,**exp**);  
    **write**(x,' has ');  
    **WriteLn**('mantissa ',man,' and exponent ',**exp**);

**end**;

**begin**

    //   dofexp(1.00);  
    dofexp(1.02e-1);  
    dofexp(1.03e-2);  
    dofexp(1.02e1);  
    dofexp(1.03e2);

**end**.

---

**63.13.29 FutureValue**

Synopsis: Calculate the future value of an investment.

Declaration: `function FutureValue(ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;  
                                  APresentValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime)  
                                  : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `FutureValue` calculates the future value of an investment (FV) in the cash flow formula (see Cash-FlowFunctions (981)) The function result is the future value of an investment of `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` (n) at the rate of `ARate` (q) per period.

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: [InterestRate \(1001\)](#), [NumberOfPeriods \(1014\)](#), [Payment \(1015\)](#), [PresentValue \(1018\)](#), [TPayment-Time \(986\)](#), [CashFlowFunctions \(981\)](#)

### 63.13.30 GetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function GetExceptionMask : TFPUExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 63.13.31 GetPrecisionMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function GetPrecisionMode : TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 63.13.32 GetRoundMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function GetRoundMode : TFPURoundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

### 63.13.33 GradToDeg

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function GradToDeg(grad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtodeg` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to degrees. (100 grad is 90 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: [cycletorad \(994\)](#), [degtograd \(995\)](#), [radtodeg \(1018\)](#), [radtoegrad \(1019\)](#), [radtoecycle \(1018\)](#), [gradtorad \(1000\)](#)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the gradtodeg function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

---

```

writeln (gradtodeg (100));
writeln (gradtodeg (200));
writeln (gradtodeg (300));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.34 GradToRad

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function GradToRad(grad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtorad` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to radians. (200 grad is pi degrees).

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([994](#)), `degtograd` ([995](#)), `radtodeg` ([1018](#)), `radtograd` ([1019](#)), `radtocycle` ([1018](#)), `gradtodeg` ([999](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the gradtorad function. }

```

**Uses** `math;`

```

begin
  writeln (gradtorad (100));
  writeln (gradtorad (200));
  writeln (gradtorad (300));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.35 Hypot

Synopsis: Return hypotenuse of triangle

Declaration: `function Hypot(x: Float; y: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hypot` returns the hypotenuse of the triangle where the sides adjacent to the square angle have lengths `x` and `y`. The function uses Pythagoras' rule for this.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the hypot function. }

```

**Uses** `math;`

```

begin
  WriteLn (hypot (3,4)); // should be 5
end.

```

---

**63.13.36 IfThen**

Synopsis: Return one of two values, depending on a boolean condition

Declaration: 

```
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Integer;
               const iffalse: Integer) : Integer; Overload
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Int64; const iffalse: Int64)
               : Int64; Overload
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Double;
               const iffalse: Double) : Double; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ifthen` returns `iftrue` if `val` is `True`, and `iffalse` if `val` is `False`.

This function can be used in expressions.

**63.13.37 InRange**

Synopsis: Check whether value is in range.

Declaration: 

```
function InRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer;
                 const AMax: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
function InRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64;
                 const AMax: Int64) : Boolean; Overload
function InRange(const AValue: Double; const AMin: Double;
                 const AMax: Double) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `InRange` returns `True` if `AValue` is in the range `AMin..AMax`. It returns `False` if `Value` lies outside the specified range.

See also: `EnsureRange` ([996](#))

**63.13.38 InterestRate**

Synopsis: Calculate the interest rate value of an investment

Declaration: 

```
function InterestRate(NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;
                     APresentValue: Float; AFutureValue: Float;
                     APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float
```

Visibility: default

Description: `InterestRate` calculates the future value of an investment ( $q$ ) in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` ([981](#))). The function result is the interest rate value in case of a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` ( $n$ ).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` ([998](#)), `NumberOfPeriods` ([1014](#)), `Payment` ([1015](#)), `PresentValue` ([1018](#)), `TPaymentTime` ([986](#)), `CashFlowFunctions` ([981](#))

**63.13.39 IntPower**

Synopsis: Return integer power.

Declaration: `function IntPower(base: Float; const exponent: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intpower` returns `base` to the power `exponent`, where `exponent` is an integer value.

Errors: If `base` is zero and the exponent is negative, then an overflow error will occur.

See also: `power` ([1017](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the intpower function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `DoIntpower (X : extended; Pow : Integer);`

**begin**

`writeln(X:8:4, '^', Pow:2, ' = ', intpower(X,pow):8:4);`

**end;**

**begin**

`dointpower(0.0,0);`  
`dointpower(1.0,0);`  
`dointpower(2.0,5);`  
`dointpower(4.0,3);`  
`dointpower(2.0,-1);`  
`dointpower(2.0,-2);`  
`dointpower(-2.0,4);`  
`dointpower(-4.0,3);`

**end.**

---

**63.13.40 IsInfinite**

Synopsis: Check whether value is infinite

Declaration: `function IsInfinite(const d: Single) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinite(const d: Double) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinite(const d: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsInfinite` returns `True` if the double `d` contains the infinite value.

See also: `IsZero` ([1003](#)), `IsInfinite` ([1002](#))

**63.13.41 IsNan**

Synopsis: Check whether value is Not a Number

Visibility: default

Description: `IsNaN` returns `True` if the double `d` contains Not A Number (a value which cannot be represented correctly in double format).

See also: `IsZero` ([1003](#)), `IsInfinite` ([1002](#))

Synopsis: Check whether value is zero

Declaration:

```
function IsZero(const A: Single; Epsilon: Single) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Single) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Double; Epsilon: Double) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Double) : Boolean; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Extended; Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean
; Overload
function IsZero(const A: Extended) : Boolean; Overload
```

### 63.13.43 Ldexp

Synopsis: Return (2 to the power p) times x

Declaration: `function Ldexp(x: Float; const p: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ldexp` returns (2 to the power p) times x.

Errors: None.

See also: `lnxp1` ([1004](#)), `log10` ([1004](#)), `log2` ([1005](#)), `logn` ([1005](#))

```
Program Example19;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the Idexp function. }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
    writeln(Idexp(2,4):8:4);  
    writeln(Idexp(0.5,3):8:4);  
end.
```

**63.13.44 LnXP1**

Synopsis: Return natural logarithm of 1+X

Declaration: `function LnXP1(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lnxp1` returns the natural logarithm of 1+X. The result is more precise for small values of x. x should be larger than -1.

Errors: If  $x \leq -1$  then an `EInvalidArgument` exception will be raised.

See also: `ldexp` ([1003](#)), `log10` ([1004](#)), `log2` ([1005](#)), `logn` ([1005](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex20.pp`

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the lnxp1 function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln(lnxp1(0));`  
`writeln(lnxp1(0.5));`  
`writeln(lnxp1(1));`

**end.**

**63.13.45 Log10**

Synopsis: Return 10-Based logarithm.

Declaration: `function Log10(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Log10` returns the 10-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` ([1003](#)), `lnxp1` ([1004](#)), `log2` ([1005](#)), `logn` ([1005](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex21.pp`

**Program** `Example21;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the log10 function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`Writeln(Log10(10):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(100):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(1000):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(1):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.1):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.01):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.001):8:4);`

**end.**

**63.13.46 Log2**

Synopsis: Return 2-based logarithm

Declaration: `function Log2(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Log2` returns the 2-base logarithm of `X`.

Errors: If `x` is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (1003), `lnxp1` (1004), `log10` (1004), `logn` (1005)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the log2 function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Log2(2):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(8):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(1):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.5):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.25):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.125):8:4);

```

**end.**

---

**63.13.47 LogN**

Synopsis: Return N-based logarithm.

Declaration: `function LogN(n: Float; x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Logn` returns the n-base logarithm of `X`.

Errors: If `x` is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (1003), `lnxp1` (1004), `log10` (1004), `log2` (1005)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the logn function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Logn(3,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(2,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(6,9):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(exp(1),exp(1)):8:4);

```

```

Writeln (Logn(0.5,1):8:4);
Writeln (Logn(0.25,3):8:4);
Writeln (Logn(0.125,5):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.48 Max

Synopsis: Return largest of 2 values

Declaration: `function Max(a: Integer; b: Integer) : Integer; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Int64; b: Int64) : Int64; Overload`  
`function Max(a: QWord; b: QWord) : QWord; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Single; b: Single) : Single; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Double; b: Double) : Double; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Extended; b: Extended) : Extended; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Max` returns the maximum of `Int1` and `Int2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `min` ([1010](#)), `maxIntValue` ([1006](#)), `maxvalue` ([1007](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the max function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

A,B : Cardinal;

**begin**

A:=1;b:=2;

**writeln** (max(a,b));

**end.**

---

### 63.13.49 MaxIntValue

Synopsis: Return largest element in integer array

Declaration: `function MaxIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MaxIntValue` returns the largest integer out of the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use the `maxvalue` ([1007](#)) function instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxvalue` ([1007](#)), `minvalue` ([1011](#)), `minIntValue` ([1010](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex25.pp`

---

```

Program Example25;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxIntValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(exarray) to high(exarray) do
    ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
  WriteLn(MaxIntValue(ExArray));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.50 MaxValue

Synopsis: Return largest value in array

**Declaration:**

```

function MaxValue(const data: Array of Single) : Single
function MaxValue(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Single
function MaxValue(const data: Array of Double) : Double
function MaxValue(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Double
function MaxValue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended
function MaxValue(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Extended
function MaxValue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer
function MaxValue(const data: PInteger; const N: Integer) : Integer

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Maxvalue returns the largest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: [maxIntValue \(1006\)](#), [minvalue \(1011\)](#), [minIntValue \(1010\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex26.pp

---

```

program Example26;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

uses math;

```

---

```

var i:1..100;
    f_array:array[1..100] of Float;
    i_array:array[1..100] of Integer;
    Pf_array:Pfloat;
    Pi_array:Pinteger;

begin
    randomize;

    Pf_array:=@f_array[1];
    Pi_array:=@i_array[1];

    for i:=low(f_array) to high(f_array) do
        f_array[i]:=(random-random)*100;
    for i:=low(i_array) to high(i_array) do
        i_array[i]:=random(1)-random(100);

    Writeln('Max Float      : ',MaxValue(f_array):8:4);
    Writeln('Max Float   (b) : ',MaxValue(Pf_array,100):8:4);
    Writeln('Max Integer   : ',MaxValue(i_array):8);
    Writeln('Max Integer (b) : ',MaxValue(Pi_array,100):8);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.51 Mean

Synopsis: Return mean value of array

Declaration: function Mean(const data: Array of Single) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Double) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Extended) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PInt64; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Int64) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PInteger; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Integer) : Float

Visibility: default

Description: Mean returns the average value of data. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: meanandstddev ([1009](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([1012](#)), sum ([1025](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Mean function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

---

```

TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max      : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Min      : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Mean     : ',Mean(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Mean (b) : ',Mean(PExtended(@ExArray[1]),100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.52 MeanAndStdDev

Synopsis: Return mean and standard deviation of array

Declaration: `procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Single; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Double; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Extended; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `meanandstddev` calculates the mean and standard deviation of data and returns the result in `mean` and `stddev`, respectively. `Stddev` is zero if there is only one value. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([1008](#)), `sum` ([1025](#)), `sumofsquares` ([1026](#)), `momentskewkurtosis` ([1012](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28`;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Meanandstddev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

```

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Extended;`

**Var**

```

I : Integer;
ExArray : TExArray;
Mean,stddev : Extended;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  MeanAndStdDev(ExArray,Mean,StdDev);
  Writeln('Mean      : ',Mean:8:4);
  Writeln('StdDev     : ',StdDev:8:4);
  MeanAndStdDev(@ExArray[1],100,Mean,StdDev);
  Writeln('Mean      (b) : ',Mean:8:4);
  Writeln('StdDev     (b) : ',StdDev:8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.53 Min

Synopsis: Return smallest of two values.

Declaration: function Min(a: Integer; b: Integer) : Integer; Overload  
 function Min(a: Int64; b: Int64) : Int64; Overload  
 function Min(a: QWord; b: QWord) : QWord; Overload  
 function Min(a: Single; b: Single) : Single; Overload  
 function Min(a: Double; b: Double) : Double; Overload  
 function Min(a: Extended; b: Extended) : Extended; Overload

Visibility: default

Description: min returns the smallest value of Int1 and Int2;

Errors: None.

See also: max ([1006](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex29.pp

---

**Program** Example29;

*{ Program to demonstrate the min function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

A,B : Cardinal;

**begin**

A:=1;b:=2;

  writeln(min(a,b));

**end.**

---

### 63.13.54 MinIntValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in integer array

Declaration: function MinIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer

Visibility: default

Description: `MinIntValue` returns the smallest value in the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use `minvalue` instead.

Errors: None

See also: `minvalue` (1011), `maxIntValue` (1006), `maxvalue` (1007)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `Example30`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MinIntValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do`  
`ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);`

`WriteLn(MinIntValue(ExArray));`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.55 MinValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in array

**Declaration:**

```
function MinValue(const data: Array of Single) : Single
function MinValue(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Single
function MinValue(const data: Array of Double) : Double
function MinValue(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Double
function MinValue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended
function MinValue(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Extended
function MinValue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer
function MinValue(const Data: PInteger; const N: Integer) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Minvalue` returns the smallest value in the `data` array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of `N` integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (1006), `maxvalue` (1007), `minIntValue` (1010)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex31.pp

---

```

program Example31;

  { Program to demonstrate the MinValue function. }

  { Make sure integer is 32 bit }
  {$mode objfpc}

  uses math;

  var i:1..100;
      f_array:array[1..100] of Float;
      i_array:array[1..100] of Integer;
      Pf_array:Pfloat;
      Pi_array:Pinteger;

  begin
    randomize;

    Pf_array:=@f_array[1];
    Pi_array:=@i_array[1];

    for i:=low(f_array) to high(f_array) do
      f_array[i]:=(random-random)*100;
    for i:=low(i_array) to high(i_array) do
      i_array[i]:=random(1)-random(100);

    WriteLn( 'Min Float      : ',MinValue(f_array):8:4);
    WriteLn( 'Min Float   (b) : ',MinValue(Pf_array,100):8:4);
    WriteLn( 'Min Integer   : ',MinValue(i_array):8);
    WriteLn( 'Min Integer (b) : ',MinValue(Pi_array,100):8);
  end.

```

---

### 63.13.56 modulus(Float,Float):Float

Synopsis: Floating point modulo

Declaration: `operator mod(const a: Float; const b: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Modulus is the floating-point equivalent of the modulo operation `a mod b`. It returns the result of

`a-b * Int(a/b)`

Errors: `b` may not be zero, but no check is performed.

See also: [FMod \(997\)](#)

### 63.13.57 MomentSkewKurtosis

Synopsis: Return 4 first moments of distribution

Declaration: `procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Single;`  
   `out m1: Float; out m2: Float;`  
   `out m3: Float; out m4: Float;`

```

                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Double;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Extended;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)

```

Visibility: default

Description: `momentskewkurtosis` calculates the 4 first moments of the distribution of value in data and returns them in `m1,m2,m3` and `m4`, as well as the skew and kurtosis.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([1008](#)), `meanandstddev` ([1009](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex32.pp`

---

```

program Example32;

{ Program to demonstrate the momentskewkurtosis function. }

uses math;

var distarray: array[1..1000] of float;
    l: longint;
    m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis: float;

begin
    randomize;
    for l:=low(distarray) to high(distarray) do
        distarray[l]:=random;
    momentskewkurtosis(DistArray,m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis);

    Writeln ('1st moment : ',m1:8:6);
    Writeln ('2nd moment : ',m2:8:6);
    Writeln ('3rd moment : ',m3:8:6);
    Writeln ('4th moment : ',m4:8:6);
    Writeln ('Skew      : ',skew:8:6);
    Writeln ('kurtosis   : ',kurtosis:8:6);
end.

```

---

**63.13.58 Norm**

Synopsis: Return Euclidean norm

Declaration: `function Norm(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Norm` calculates the Euclidean norm of the array of data. This equals `sqrt (sumofsquares (data) )`.  
 The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sumofsquares` ([1026](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex33.pp`

---

```
program Example33;

{ Program to demonstrate the norm function. }

uses math;

var v:array[1..10] of Float;
    l:1..10;

begin
  for l:=low(v) to high(v) do
    v[l]:=random;
  writeln(norm(v));
end.
```

---

**63.13.59 NumberOfPeriods**

Synopsis: Calculate the number of periods for an investment

Declaration: `function NumberOfPeriods(ARate: Float; APayment: Float;`  
`APresentValue: Float; AFutureValue: Float;`  
`APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `NumberOfPeriods` calculates the number of periods (n) needed to obtain future value of an investment in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` ([981](#))). The function result is the number of periods a payment `APayment` (PMT) must be paid in order to obtain a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested at a rate `ARate` (q).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` `NumberOfPeriods` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` ([998](#)), `InterestRate` ([1001](#)), `Payment` ([1015](#)), `PresentValue` ([1018](#)), `TPaymentTime` ([986](#)), `CashFlowFunctions` ([981](#))

**63.13.60 Payment**

**Synopsis:** Calculate the payment for an investment

**Declaration:** `function Payment (ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APresentValue: Float;  
AFutureValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Payment` calculates the amount that must be paid (PMT) during number of periods (n) needed to obtain future value of an investment in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` (981)). The function result is the amount (PMT) that must be paid in order to obtain a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where the amount must be paid `NPeriods` (PMT) and the interest rate is `ARate` (q).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` `NumberOfPeriods` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` (998), `InterestRate` (1001), `NumberOfPeriods` (1014), `PresentValue` (1018), `TPaymentTime` (986), `CashFlowFunctions` (981)

**63.13.61 PopnStdDev**

**Synopsis:** Return Population standard deviation

**Declaration:** `function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Single) : Float  
function PopnStdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float  
function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Double) : Float  
function PopnStdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float  
function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Extended) : Float  
function PopnStdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Popnstddev` returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the `Data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `popnvariance` (1016), `mean` (1008), `meanandstddev` (1009), `stddev` (1024), `momentskewkurtosis` (1012)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex35.pp`

**Program** `Example35;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the PopnStdDev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** `Math;`

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

---

```

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Pop. stddev.   : ',PopnStdDev(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Pop. stddev. (b) : ',PopnStdDev(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.62 PopnVariance

Synopsis: Return population variance

Declaration: `function PopnVariance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function PopnVariance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function PopnVariance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Popnvariance` the population variance of the values in the `Data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `popnstddev` ([1015](#)), `mean` ([1008](#)), `meanandstddev` ([1009](#)), `stddev` ([1024](#)), `momentskewkurtosis` ([1012](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** Example36;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the PopnVariance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

```

**Uses** math;

```

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;

```

```

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Pop. var.      : ',PopnVariance(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Pop. var. (b) : ',PopnVariance(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

**63.13.63 Power**

Synopsis: Return real power.

Declaration: `function Power(base: Float; exponent: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `power` raises `base` to the power `power`. This is equivalent to `exp (power*ln (base) )`. Therefore `base` should be non-negative.

Errors: Any number of floating point math exceptions may be raised, if they are not masked by `SetExceptionMask` (1022).

See also: `intpower` (1002)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the power function. }*

**Uses** `Math`;

**procedure** `dopower(x,y : float)`;

**begin**

`writeln(x:8:6, '^', y:8:6, ' = ', power(x,y):8:6)`

**end**;

**begin**

`dopower(2,2);`

`dopower(2,-2);`

`dopower(2,0.0);`

**end**.

---

**63.13.64 power(Float,Float):Float**

Synopsis: Raise base to the power exponent

Declaration: `operator *(bas: Float; expo: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Power` raises `base` to the power `exponent`, i.e., it calculates  $\text{base}^{\text{exponent}}$ .

**63.13.65 power(Int64,Int64):Int64**

Synopsis: Raise base to the power exponent

Declaration: `operator *(bas: Int64; expo: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Power` raises `base` to the power `exponent`, i.e., it calculates  $\text{base}^{\text{exponent}}$ .

**63.13.66 PresentValue**

Synopsis: Calculate the present value given the future value of an investment.

Declaration: `function PresentValue (ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;  
AFutureValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime)  
: Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `PresentValue` calculates the present (start) value of an investment (PV) in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` (981)) The function result is the start value of an investment, when the future value is `AFutureValue` (FV) and `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` (n) at the rate of `ARate` (q) per period.

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` (998), `InterestRate` (1001), `NumberOfPeriods` (1014), `Payment` (1015), `TPaymentTime` (986), `CashFlowFunctions` (981)

**63.13.67 RadToCycle**

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to cycle angle

Declaration: `function RadToCycle (rad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `RadtoCycle` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in cycles.  
(1 cycle equals 2 pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (995), `degtorad` (995), `radtodeg` (1018), `radtograd` (1019), `cycletorad` (994)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex37.pp`

**Program** `Example37;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtoCycle function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln ( radtoCycle (2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln ( radtoCycle (pi):8:6);`

`writeln ( radtoCycle (pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

**63.13.68 RadToDeg**

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function RadToDeg (rad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in degrees. (180 degrees equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `degtograd` ([995](#)), `degtorad` ([995](#)), `radtocycle` ([1018](#)), `radtoegrad` ([1019](#)), `cycletorad` ([994](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtodeg function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtodeg (2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg (pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg (pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.69 RadToGrad

**Synopsis:** Convert radians angle to grads angle

**Declaration:** `function RadToGrad(rad: Float) : Float`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in grads. (200 grads equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `degtograd` ([995](#)), `degtorad` ([995](#)), `radtocycle` ([1018](#)), `radtodeg` ([1018](#)), `cycletorad` ([994](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtoegrad function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtoegrad (2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad (pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad (pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.70 RandG

**Synopsis:** Return gaussian distributed random number.

**Declaration:** `function RandG(mean: Float; stddev: Float) : Float`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `randg` returns a random number which - when produced in large quantities - has a Gaussian distribution with mean `mean` and standarddeviation `stddev`.

Errors: None.

See also: [mean \(1008\)](#), [stddev \(1024\)](#), [meanandstddev \(1009\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex40.pp

**Program** Example40 ;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the randg function. }
```

**Uses Math :**

### Var

```

I : Integer;
ExArray : Array[1..10000] of Float;
Mean, stddev : Float;

```

**begin**

```
Randomize;
for i:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
  ExArray[i]:=Randg(1,0.2);
MeanAndStdDev(ExArray,Mean,StdDev);
Writeln('Mean      : ',Mean:8:4);
Writeln('StdDev    : ',StdDev:8:4);
```

end.

### 63.13.71 RandomFrom

**Synopsis:** Return a random element of an array of numbers

```
Declaration: function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Double) : Double; Overload
            function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Integer) : Integer
                    ; Overload
            function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Int64) : Int64; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** RandomFrom returns a random element from the array AValues. The return value has the same type as the type of the array elements.

See also: `#rtl.system.Random` (1513), `RandomRange` (1020)

### 63.13.72 RandomRange

**Synopsis:** Return a random number in a range

```
Declaration: function RandomRange(const aFrom: Integer; const aTo: Integer) : Integer
            function RandomRange(const aFrom: Int64; const aTo: Int64) : Int64
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** RandomRange returns a random value in the range AFrom to ATo. AFrom and ATo do not need to be in increasing order. The upper border is not included in the generated value, but the lower border is.

See also: `#rtl.system.Random` (1513), `RandomFrom` (1020)

### 63.13.73 RoundTo

Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits

Declaration: `function RoundTo(const AValue: Double; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Double`  
`function RoundTo(const AValue: Extended; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Extended`  
`function RoundTo(const AValue: Single; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Single`

Visibility: default

Description: `RoundTo` rounds the specified float `AValue` to the specified number of digits and returns the result. This result is accurate to "10 to the power `Digits`". It uses the standard `Round` function for this.

Errors: An exception may occur if the value `AValue` is not inside a valid integer (or `Int64`) range.

See also: `TRoundToRange` ([986](#)), `SimpleRoundTo` ([1023](#)), `SetRoundMode` ([1022](#)), `TFPURoundingMode` ([986](#))

### 63.13.74 SameValue

Synopsis: Check whether 2 float values are the same

Declaration: `function SameValue(const A: Extended; const B: Extended) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Double; const B: Double) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single; const B: Single) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Extended; const B: Extended; Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Double; const B: Double; Epsilon: Double) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single; const B: Single; Epsilon: Single) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameValue` returns `True` if the floating-point values `A` and `B` are the same, i.e. whether the absolute value of their difference is smaller than `Epsilon`. If their difference is larger, then `False` is returned.

If unspecified, the default value for `Epsilon` is 0.0.

See also: `MinFloat` ([985](#)), `IsZero` ([1003](#))

### 63.13.75 Sec

Synopsis: Alias for `secant`

Declaration: `function Sec(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `sec` is an alias for the `secant` ([1022](#)) function.

See also: `secant` ([1022](#))

### 63.13.76 Secant

Synopsis: Calculate secant

Declaration: `function Secant (x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Secant` calculates the secant ( $1/\cos(x)$ ) of its argument `x`.

Errors: If 90 or 270 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: cosecant ([992](#))

### 63.13.77 SetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function SetExceptionMask(const Mask: TFPUExceptionMask)  
: TFPUExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 63.13.78 SetPrecisionMode

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function SetPrecisionMode(const Precision: TFPUPrecisionMode)  
: TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 63.13.79 SetRoundMode

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function SetRoundMode(const RoundMode: TFPURoundingMode)  
: TFPURoundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetRoundMode` sets the floating point unit rounding mode. It also returns the previous rounding mode.

**rmNearestRound** to nearest integer

**rmDownRound** to biggest integer smaller than value.

**rmUpRound** to smallest integer larger than value

**rmTruncate** Cut off fractional part

See also: `GetRoundMode` ([999](#)), `TFPURoundingMode` ([986](#))

### 63.13.80 Sign

Synopsis: Return sign of argument

Declaration: `function Sign(const AValue: Integer) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Int64) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Single) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Double) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Extended) : TValueSign; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sign` returns the sign of it's argument, which can be an Integer, 64 bit integer, or a double. The returned value is an integer which is -1, 0 or 1, and can be used to do further calculations with.

### 63.13.81 SimpleRoundTo

Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits (rounding up if needed)

Declaration: `function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Single;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Single`  
`function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Double;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Double`  
`function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Extended;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `SimpleRoundTo` rounds the specified float `AValue` to the specified number of digits using symmetric arithmetic rounding (rounding up for positive or down for negative) and returns the result. This result is accurate to "10 to the power Digits". It uses the standard `Round` function for this.

Errors: An exception may occur if the value `AValue` is not inside a valid integer (or `Int64`) range.

See also: `TRoundToRange` ([986](#)), `RoundTo` ([1021](#))

### 63.13.82 SinCos

Synopsis: Return sine and cosine of argument

Declaration: `procedure SinCos(theta: single; out sinus: single; out cosinus: single)`  
`procedure SinCos(theta: Double; out sinus: Double; out cosinus: Double)`  
`procedure SinCos(theta: extended; out sinus: extended;`  
`out cosinus: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SinCos` calculates the sine and cosine of the angle `theta`, and returns the result in `sinus` and `cosinus`.

On Intel hardware, This calculation will be faster than making 2 calls to calculate the sine and cosine separately.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcsin` ([988](#)), `arccos` ([987](#))

Listing: `./mathex/ex41.pp`

---

```

Program Example41;

{ Program to demonstrate the sincos function. }

Uses math;

Procedure dosincos(Angle : Float);

Var
    Sine, Cosine : Float;

begin
    sincos(angle, sine, cosine);
    Write( 'Angle : ', Angle:8:6);
    Write( ' Sine : ', sine:8:6);
    Write( ' Cosine : ', cosine:8:6);
end;

begin
    dosincos(pi);
    dosincos(pi/2);
    dosincos(pi/3);
    dosincos(pi/4);
    dosincos(pi/6);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.83 SinH

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function SinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sinh` returns the hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

See also: `cosh` ([993](#)), `arsinh` ([990](#)), `tanh` ([1029](#)), `artanh` ([990](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex42.pp`

---

```

Program Example42;

{ Program to demonstrate the sinh function. }

Uses math;

begin
    writeln(sinh(0));
    writeln(sinh(1));
    writeln(sinh(-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.84 StdDev

Synopsis: Return standard deviation of data

**Declaration:** `function StdDev(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Stddev returns the standard deviation of the values in Data. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: mean ([1008](#)), meanandstddev ([1009](#)), variance ([1030](#)), totalvariance ([1029](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the stddev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** Math;

**Var**

```
l : Integer;
ExArray : Array[1..10000] of Float;
```

**begin**

```
  Randomize;
```

```
  for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
    ExArray[l]:=Randg(1,0.2);
```

```
  WriteIn('StdDev      : ',StdDev(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn('StdDev (b) : ',StdDev(@ExArray[1],10000):8:4);
```

```
end.
```

---

### 63.13.85 Sum

**Synopsis:** Return sum of values

**Declaration:** `function Sum(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Sum returns the sum of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `sumofsquares` ([1026](#)), `sumsandsquares` ([1027](#)), `totalvariance` ([1029](#)), `variance` ([1030](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex44.pp`

**Program** `Example44`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sum function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** `math`;

**Var**

```
l : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
```

**begin**

**Randomize**;

```
for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
  ExArray[l]:= (Random-Random)*100;
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Max      : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Min      : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum      : ',Sum(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum (b) : ',Sum(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
```

**end.**

### 63.13.86 SumInt

**Synopsis:** Return the sum of an array of integers

**Declaration:** `function SumInt(const data: PInt64; const N: LongInt) : Int64`  
`function SumInt(const data: Array of Int64) : Int64`  
`function SumInt(const data: PInteger; const N: LongInt) : Int64`  
`function SumInt(const data: Array of Integer) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SumInt` returns the sum of the N integers in the Data array, where this can be an open array or a pointer to an array.

**Errors:** An overflow may occur.

### 63.13.87 SumOfSquares

**Synopsis:** Return sum of squares of values

**Declaration:** `function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function SumOfSquares(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function SumOfSquares(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function SumOfSquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `sumofsquares` returns the sum of the squares of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [sum \(1025\)](#), [sumsandsquares \(1027\)](#), [totalvariance \(1029\)](#), [variance \(1030\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex45.pp

**Program** Example45;

---

```

{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

Uses math;

Var
  I : 1..100;
  ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln( 'Sum squares   : ',SumOfSquares(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln( 'Sum squares (b) : ',SumOfSquares(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.88 SumsAndSquares

Synopsis: Return sum and sum of squares of values.

**Declaration:**

```

procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Single; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Double; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Extended; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** sumsandsquares calculates the sum of the values and the sum of the squares of the values in the data array and returns the results in sum and sumofsquares.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [sum \(1025\)](#), [sumofsquares \(1026\)](#), [totalvariance \(1029\)](#), [variance \(1030\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex46.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```
l : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
s,ss : float;
```

**begin**

**Randomize**;

```
for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
  ExArray[l]:= (Random-Random)*100;
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  SumsAndSquares(ExArray,S,SS);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum           : ',S:8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum squares   : ',SS:8:4);
```

```
  SumsAndSquares(@ExArray[1],100,S,SS);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum (b)       : ',S:8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Sum squares (b) : ',SS:8:4);
```

**end.**

---

### 63.13.89 Tan

Synopsis: Return tangent

Declaration: `function Tan(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tan returns the tangent of x. The argument x must be in radians.

Errors: If x (normalized) is pi/2 or 3pi/2 then an overflow will occur.

See also: tanh ([1029](#)), arcsin ([988](#)), sincos ([1023](#)), arccos ([987](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Tan function. }
```

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** DoTan(Angle : Float);

**begin**

```
  Write ( 'Angle : ',RadToDeg(Angle):8:6);
```

```
  WriteIn ( 'Tangent : ',Tan(Angle):8:6);
```

**end**;

**begin**

```

DoTan(0);
DoTan(Pi);
DoTan(Pi/3);
DoTan(Pi/4);
DoTan(Pi/6);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.90 TanH

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function TanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tanh returns the hyperbolic tangent of x.

Errors: None.

See also: [arcsin \(988\)](#), [sincos \(1023\)](#), [arccos \(987\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tanh function. }*

**Uses** math;

```

begin
  writeln(tanh(0));
  writeln(tanh(1));
  writeln(tanh(-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.91 TotalVariance

Synopsis: Return total variance of values

Declaration: `function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: TotalVariance returns the total variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [variance \(1030\)](#), [stddev \(1024\)](#), [mean \(1008\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex49.pp

**Program** Example49;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the TotalVariance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] of Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;  
TV : float;

**begin**

```
Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
TV:=TotalVariance(ExArray);
WriteLn('Total variance      : ',TV:8:4);
TV:=TotalVariance(@ExArray[1],100);
WriteLn('Total Variance (b) : ',TV:8:4);
```

**end.**

### 63.13.92 Variance

Synopsis: Return variance of values

**Declaration:**

```
function Variance(const data: Array of Single) : Float
function Variance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float
function Variance(const data: Array of Double) : Float
function Variance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float
function Variance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float
function Variance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Variance returns the variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: totalvariance ([1029](#)), stddev ([1024](#)), mean ([1008](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex50.pp

**Program** Example50;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Variance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```

I : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
V : float;

```

**begin**

```

  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
  V:=Variance(ExArray);
  WriteLn( 'Variance      : ',V:8:4);
  V:=Variance(@ExArray[1],100);
  WriteLn( 'Variance (b) : ',V:8:4);

```

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex51.pp

---

**Program** Example51;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the Variance function.
  It demonstrates the absence of large errors in the calculation.
}

```

**Uses** math;

**const**

```

  Size = 1000000;
```

**var**

```

  dataS: array of Single;
  dataD: array of Double;
  dataE: array of Extended;
  i,n: longint;

```

**begin**

```

  WriteLn( 'Each run should return a value near unity. ');
  WriteLn( 'Single: ');
  SetLength( dataS, Size );
  for n := 1 to 4 do
    begin
      for i := 0 to Size - 1 do
        begin
          dataS[i] := 10000000 + RandG(0,1);
        end;
      WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataS ):5:3 );
    end;

```

```

  WriteLn( 'Double: ');
  SetLength( dataD, Size );
  for n := 1 to 4 do
    begin
      for i := 0 to Size - 1 do
        begin
          dataD[i] := 10000000000000000 + RandG(0,1);
        end;
      WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataD ):5:3 );
    end;

```

```
end;  
  
WriteLn( 'Extended: ' );  
SetLength( dataE, Size );  
for n := 1 to 4 do  
begin  
  for i := 0 to Size - 1 do  
  begin  
    dataE[i] := 1000000000000000000 + RandG(0,1);  
  end;  
  WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataE ):5:3 );  
end;  
end.
```

---

## 63.14 EInvalidArgument

### 63.14.1 Description

Exception raised when invalid arguments are passed to a function.

## Chapter 64

# Reference for unit 'matrix'

### 64.1 Used units

Table 64.1: Used units by unit 'matrix'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 64.2 Overview

The unit `matrix` is a unit that provides objects for the common two, three and four dimensional vectors matrices. These vectors and matrices are very common in computer graphics and are often implemented from scratch by programmers while every implementation provides exactly the same functionality.

It makes therefore sense to provide this functionality in the runtime library. This eliminates the need for programmers to reinvent the wheel and also allows libraries that use matrix operations to become more compatible.

The matrix unit does not provide n-dimensional matrices. The functionality needs of a general matrix unit varies from application to application; one can think of reduced memory usage tricks for matrices that only have data around the diagonal etc., desire for parallelization etc. etc. It is believed that programmers that do use n-dimensional matrices would not necessarily benefit from such a unit in the runtime library.

Design goals:

- Provide common dimensions, two three and four.
- Provide multiple floating point precisions, single, double, extended.
- Simple trivial binary representation; it is possible to typecast vectors into other implementations that use the same trivial representation.
- No dynamic memory management in the background. It must be possible to write expressions like `matrix A * B * C` without worrying about memory management.

Design decisions:

- Class object model is ruled out. The objects object model, without virtual methods, is suitable.
- Operator overloading is a good way to allow programmers to write matrix expressions.
- 3 dimensions \* 3 precision means 9 vector and 9 matrix objects. Macro's have been used in the source to take care of this.

## 64.3 Constants, types and variables

### 64.3.1 Types

```
Tmatrix2_double_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of Double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix2_extended_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix2_single_data = Array[0..1,0..1] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_double_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of Double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_extended_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix3_single_data = Array[0..2,0..2] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_double_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of Double
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_extended_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tmatrix4_single_data = Array[0..3,0..3] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_double_data = Array[0..1] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_extended_data = Array[0..1] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector2_single_data = Array[0..1] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_double_data = Array[0..2] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_extended_data = Array[0..2] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector3_single_data = Array[0..2] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_double_data = Array[0..3] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_extended_data = Array[0..3] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Tvector4_single_data = Array[0..3] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

## 64.4 Procedures and functions

### 64.4.1 add(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 64.4.2 add(Tmatrix2\_double,Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.3 add(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.4 add(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.5 add(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.6 add(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.7 add(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.8 add(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.9 add(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.10 add(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.11 add(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.12 add(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.13 add(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.14 add(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.15 add(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.16 add(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.17 add(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.18 add(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.4.19 add(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.20 add(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.21 add(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.22 add(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.23 add(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.24 add(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.25 add(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.26 add(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.27 add(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.28 add(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.29 add(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.30 add(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.31 add(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.32 add(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.33 add(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.34 add(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.35 add(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.36 add(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.37 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.38 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.39 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.40 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.41 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.42 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

#### 64.4.43 **assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

#### 64.4.44 **assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.45 **assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional two with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.46 **assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.47 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.48 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.49 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.50 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.51 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.52 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.53 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.4.54 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.55 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.56 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.57 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.58 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.59 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.60 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.4.61 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.62 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.63 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.64 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.65 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.66 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

#### 64.4.67 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_extended**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

#### 64.4.68 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_single**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.69 **assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.70 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.71 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.72 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.73 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.74 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.75 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.76 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.77 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.78 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.79 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.80 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

#### 64.4.81 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

#### 64.4.82 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.4.83 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.84 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected.

**64.4.85 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.86 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.87 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

**64.4.88 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.89 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.90 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.91 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.92 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.93 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

#### 64.4.94 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.95 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_single**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

#### 64.4.96 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.97 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.98 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.99 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.4.100 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.101 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.102 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.103 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.104 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

#### 64.4.105 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.106 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.4.107 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.4.108 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.109 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**64.4.110 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

**64.4.111 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.112 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.113 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.114 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.115 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

#### 64.4.116 `assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

#### 64.4.117 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

#### 64.4.118 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

#### 64.4.119 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.120 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.121 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.122 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.123 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.124 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.125 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected.

**64.4.126 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**64.4.127 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.128 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.129 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.4.130 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.131 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.132 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.4.133 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.134 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.135 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.136 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.137 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.138 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

#### 64.4.139 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

#### 64.4.140 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_single**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.141 **assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.142 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.143 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.144 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.145 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.146 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.147 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.4.148 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.149 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.150 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

#### 64.4.151 **assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

#### 64.4.152 **assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

#### 64.4.153 **assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

#### 64.4.154 **assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.4.155 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.4.156 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.4.157 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.158 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.159 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.160 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

#### 64.4.161 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

#### 64.4.162 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.4.163 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.164 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.165 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.166 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.167 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.168 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.169 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.170 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.171 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.172 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.4.173 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.174 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.175 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.4.176 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.177 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.178 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.4.179 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

**64.4.180 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.4.181 divide(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.182 divide(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.183 divide(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.184 divide(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.185 divide(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.186 divide(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.187 divide(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.188 divide(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.189 divide(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.190 divide(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.191 divide(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.192 divide(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.193 divide(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.194 divide(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.195 divide(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.196 divide(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.197 divide(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.198 divide(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.199 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.200 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.201 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const v: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrices with a two dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.202 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.203 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.204 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const v: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrices with a two dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.205 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.206 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.207 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const v: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrices with a two dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.208 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.209 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.210 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const v: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrices with a three dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.211 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.212 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.213 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const v: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrices with a three dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.214 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.215 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.216 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const v: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrices with a three dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.217 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.218 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.219 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const v: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrices with a four dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.220 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.221 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.222 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const v: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrices with a four dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.223 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.224 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.225 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const v: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrices with a four dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.4.226 multiply(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.227 multiply(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.228 multiply(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.229 multiply(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.230 multiply(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.231 multiply(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.232 multiply(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.233 multiply(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.234 multiply(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.235 multiply(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.236 multiply(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.237 multiply(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.238 multiply(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.239 multiply(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.240 multiply(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.241 multiply(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.242 multiply(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.243 multiply(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.4.244 negative(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.245 negative(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.246 negative(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.247 negative(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.248 negative(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.249 negative(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.250 negative(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.251 negative(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.252 negative(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.4.253 negative(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.254 negative(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.255 negative(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.256 negative(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.257 negative(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.258 negative(Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.259 negative(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.260 negative(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.261 negative(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.4.262 power(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.263 power(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.264 power(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.265 power(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.266 power(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.267 power(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.268 power(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.269 power(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.270 power(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.4.271 subtract(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator - (const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.272 subtract(Tmatrix2\_double,Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator - (const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.273 subtract(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator - (const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.274 subtract(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.275 subtract(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.276 subtract(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.277 subtract(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.278 subtract(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.279 subtract(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.280 subtract(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.281 subtract(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.282 subtract(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.283 subtract(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.284 subtract(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.285 subtract(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.286 subtract(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.287 subtract(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.4.288 subtract(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.4.289 subtract(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.290 subtract(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.291 subtract(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.292 subtract(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.293 subtract(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.294 subtract(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.295 subtract(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.296 subtract(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.297 subtract(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.298 subtract(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.299 subtract(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.300 subtract(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.301 subtract(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.302 subtract(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.303 subtract(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.304 subtract(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.305 subtract(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.4.306 subtract(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.4.307 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.4.308 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_exten**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.4.309 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.5 Tmatrix2\_double****64.5.1 Description**

The `Tmatrix2_double` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 double precision scalars.

**64.5.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1104</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1104</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1103</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1104</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1104</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

**64.5.3 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.5.4 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.5.5 Tmatrix2\_double.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ba: Double; bb: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.5.6 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.5.7 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.5.8 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.5.9 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.5.10 Tmatrix2\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.5.11 Tmatrix2\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.5.12 Tmatrix2\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.6 Tmatrix2\_extended

### 64.6.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_extended` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 extended precision scalars.

### 64.6.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1105</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1105</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1105</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1105</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1106</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.6.3 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: `default`

### 64.6.4 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.6.5 Tmatrix2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ba: extended; bb: extended)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.6.6 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.7 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.8 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.9 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.10 Tmatrix2\_extended.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

**64.6.11 Tmatrix2\_extended.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: determinant: extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

**64.6.12 Tmatrix2\_extended.transpose**

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the *x* and *y* coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.7 Tmatrix2\_single

### 64.7.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_single` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 single precision scalars.

### 64.7.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1107</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1107</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1107</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1108</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1109</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.7.3 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.7.4 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.7.5 Tmatrix2\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ba: single; bb: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.7.6 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.7.7 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.7.8 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.7.9 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.7.10 Tmatrix2\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.7.11 Tmatrix2\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.7.12 Tmatrix2\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.8 Tmatrix3\_double

### 64.8.1 Description

The `Tmatrix3_double` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 double precision scalars.

### 64.8.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1111</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1110</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1110</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1110</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1109</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1109</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1111</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1110</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1110</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1111</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.8.3 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.8.4 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.8.5 Tmatrix3\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ac: Double; ba: Double;  
bb: Double; bc: Double; ca: Double; cb: Double;  
cc: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.8.6 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.7 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.8 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.9 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.10 Tmatrix3\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.8.11 Tmatrix3\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse (Adeterminant: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.8.12 Tmatrix3\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.9 Tmatrix3\_extended

### 64.9.1 Description

The `Tmatrix3_extended` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 extended precision scalars.

### 64.9.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1113</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1112</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1112</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1112</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1112</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1112</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1113</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1113</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets r-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1113</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1113</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.9.3 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.9.4 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.9.5 Tmatrix3\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ac: extended;  
ba: extended; bb: extended; bc: extended; ca: extended;  
cb: extended; cc: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.9.6 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.7 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.8 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets r-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.9 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.10 Tmatrix3\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.9.11 Tmatrix3\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Tmatrix3\_extended.inverse returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.9.12 Tmatrix3\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Tmatrix2\_extended.transpose returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.10 Tmatrix3\_single

### 64.10.1 Description

The Tmatrix3\_single object provides a matrix of 3\*3 single precision scalars.

**64.10.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1114</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1114</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1114</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1114</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1115</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

**64.10.3 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.10.4 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.10.5 Tmatrix3\_single.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ac: single; ba: single;  
bb: single; bc: single; ca: single; cb: single;  
cc: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.10.6 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.7 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.8 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.9 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.10 Tmatrix3\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.10.11 Tmatrix3\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: determinant: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.10.12 Tmatrix3\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the *x* and *y* coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.11 Tmatrix4\_double

### 64.11.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_double` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 double precision scalars.

### 64.11.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1117</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1117</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1117</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1116</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1116</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1116</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1118</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1117</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1117</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1118</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.11.3 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.11.4 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.11.5 Tmatrix4\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ac: Double; ad: Double;  
ba: Double; bb: Double; bc: Double; bd: Double;  
ca: Double; cb: Double; cc: Double; cd: Double;  
da: Double; db: Double; dc: Double; dd: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.11.6 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.7 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.8 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.9 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.10 Tmatrix4\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.11.11 Tmatrix4\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.11.12 Tmatrix4\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.12 Tmatrix4\_extended

### 64.12.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_extended` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 extended precision scalars.

### 64.12.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1120</a> | <code>determinant</code>    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1119</a> | <code>get\_column</code>    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1119</a> | <code>get\_row</code>       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1119</a> | <code>init</code>           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1119</a> | <code>init\_identity</code> | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1118</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1120</a> | <code>inverse</code>        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1119</a> | <code>set\_column</code>    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1120</a> | <code>set\_row</code>       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1120</a> | <code>transpose</code>      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

### 64.12.3 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.12.4 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.12.5 Tmatrix4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ac: extended;  
ad: extended; ba: extended; bb: extended; bc: extended;  
bd: extended; ca: extended; cb: extended; cc: extended;  
cd: extended; da: extended; db: extended; dc: extended;  
dd: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.12.6 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.12.7 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.12.8 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.12.9 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.12.10 Tmatrix4\_extended.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

**64.12.11 Tmatrix4\_extended.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

**64.12.12 Tmatrix4\_extended.transpose**

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

**64.13 Tmatrix4\_single****64.13.1 Description**

The `Tmatrix4_single` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 single precision scalars.

**64.13.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method         | Description   |
|----------------------|----------------|---|
| <a href="#">1122</a> | determinant    | Calculates the determinant of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1121</a> | get\_column    | Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.                                      |
| <a href="#">1122</a> | get\_row       | Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.   |
| <a href="#">1121</a> | init           | Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1121</a> | init\_identity | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.                  |
| <a href="#">1121</a> | init\_zero     | Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1122</a> | inverse        | Calculates the inverse of the matrix.   |
| <a href="#">1122</a> | set\_column    | Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.   |
| <a href="#">1122</a> | set\_row       | Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.  |
| <a href="#">1123</a> | transpose      | Returns the transposition of the matrix.  |

**64.13.3 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.13.4 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.13.5 Tmatrix4\_single.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ac: single; ad: single;  
ba: single; bb: single; bc: single; bd: single;  
ca: single; cb: single; cc: single; cd: single;  
da: single; db: single; dc: single; dd: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.13.6 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.13.7 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.13.8 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.13.9 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.13.10 Tmatrix4\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.13.11 Tmatrix4\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A:determinant: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.13.12 Tmatrix4\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.14 Tvector2\_double

### 64.14.1 Description

The `Tvector2_double` object provides a vector of two double precision scalars.

### 64.14.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1123</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1123</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1123</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1124</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1124</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.14.3 Tvector2\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.4 Tvector2\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.5 Tvector2\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double)`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.6 Tvector2\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (1124) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.14.7 Tvector2\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.15 Tvector2\_extended

### 64.15.1 Description

The `Tvector2_extended` object provides a vector of two extended precision scalars.

### 64.15.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1125</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1124</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1124</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1125</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1125</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.15.3 Tvector2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.4 Tvector2\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.5 Tvector2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.6 Tvector2\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (1125) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.15.7 Tvector2\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.16 Tvector2\_single

### 64.16.1 Description

The `Tvector2_single` object provides a vector of two single precision scalars.

### 64.16.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1126</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1126</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1125</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1126</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1126</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.16.3 Tvector2\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.4 Tvector2\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.5 Tvector2\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single)`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.6 Tvector2\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1126](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.16.7 Tvector2\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.17 Tvector3\_double

### 64.17.1 Description

The `Tvector3_double` object provides a vector of three double precision scalars.

### 64.17.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1127</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1127</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1127</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1127</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1127</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

**64.17.3 Tvector3\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.17.4 Tvector3\_double.init\_one**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

**64.17.5 Tvector3\_double.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double; c: Double)`

Visibility: default

**64.17.6 Tvector3\_double.length**

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1127](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

**64.17.7 Tvector3\_double.squared\_length**

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

**64.18 Tvector3\_extended****64.18.1 Description**

The `Tvector3_extended` object provides a vector of three extended precision scalars.

**64.18.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1128</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1128</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1128</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1128</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1128</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

**64.18.3 Tvector3\_extended.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.18.4 Tvector3\_extended.init\_one**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

**64.18.5 Tvector3\_extended.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended; c: extended)`

Visibility: default

**64.18.6 Tvector3\_extended.length**

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1128](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

**64.18.7 Tvector3\_extended.squared\_length**

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 64.19 Tvector3\_single

### 64.19.1 Description

The `Tvector3_single` object provides a vector of three single precision scalars.

### 64.19.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1129</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1129</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1129</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1129</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1130</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.19.3 Tvector3\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.4 Tvector3\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.5 Tvector3\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single; c: single)`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.6 Tvector3\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1130](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.19.7 Tvector3\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 64.20 Tvector4\_double

### 64.20.1 Description

The `Tvector4_double` object provides a vector of four double precision scalars.

### 64.20.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1130</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1130</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1130</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1131</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1131</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.20.3 Tvector4\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.4 Tvector4\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.5 Tvector4\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double; c: Double; d: Double)`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.6 Tvector4\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (1131) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.20.7 Tvector4\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## 64.21 Tvector4\_extended

### 64.21.1 Description

The `Tvector4_extended` object provides a vector of four extended precision scalars.

### 64.21.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1132</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1131</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1131</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1132</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1132</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.21.3 Tvector4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.21.4 Tvector4\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.21.5 Tvector4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended; c: extended; d: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 64.21.6 Tvector4\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector:  $\text{length} = \sqrt{\text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2 + \text{data}[3]**2}$ . Try to use `squared_length` (1132) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.21.7 Tvector4\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector:  $\text{squared\_length} = \text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2 + \text{data}[3]**2$ .

## 64.22 Tvector4\_single

### 64.22.1 Description

The `Tvector4_single` object provides a vector of four single precision scalars.

### 64.22.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1133</a> | <code>init</code>            | Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. |
| <a href="#">1133</a> | <code>init\_one</code>       | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one                                   |
| <a href="#">1132</a> | <code>init\_zero</code>      | Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero                                  |
| <a href="#">1133</a> | <code>length</code>          | Calculates the length of the vector.  |
| <a href="#">1133</a> | <code>squared\_length</code> | Calculates the squared length of the vector.  |

### 64.22.3 Tvector4\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.22.4 Tvector4\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.22.5 Tvector4\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single; c: single; d: single)`

Visibility: default

### 64.22.6 Tvector4\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function &length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector:  $\text{length} = \sqrt{\text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2 + \text{data}[3]**2}$ . Try to use `squared_length` ([1133](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.22.7 Tvector4\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector:  $\text{squared\_length} = \text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2 + \text{data}[3]**2$ .

# Chapter 65

## Reference for unit 'mmx'

### 65.1 Used units

Table 65.1: Used units by unit 'mmx'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 65.2 Overview

This document describes the MMX unit. This unit allows you to use the MMX capabilities of the Free Pascal compiler. It was written by Florian Klaempfl for the I386 processor. It should work on all platforms that use the Intel processor.

### 65.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 65.3.1 Constants

```
is_amd_3d_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D DSP extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_mmx_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse2_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_sse2_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE2 extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_sse_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

### 65.3.2 Types

```
pmmxbyte = ^tmmxbyte
```

Pointer to `tmmxbyte` (1135) array type

```
pmmxcardinal = ^tmmxcardinal
```

Pointer to `tmmxcardinal` (1135) array type

```
pmmxinteger = ^tmmxinteger
```

Pointer to `tmmxinteger` (1136) array type

```
pmmxlongint = ^tmmxlongint
```

Pointer to `tmmxlongint` (1136) array type

```
pmmxshortint = ^tmmxshortint
```

Pointer to `tmmxshortint` (1136) array type

```
pmmxsingle = ^tmmxsingle
```

Pointer to `tmmxsingle` (1136) array type

```
pmmxword = ^tmmxword
```

Pointer to `tmmxword` (1136) array type

```
tmmxbyte = Array[0..7] of Byte
```

Array of bytes, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxcardinal = Array[0..1] of Cardinal
```

Array of cardinals, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxinteger = Array[0..3] of Integer
```

Array of integers, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxlongint = Array[0..1] of LongInt
```

Array of longint, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxshortint = Array[0..7] of ShortInt
```

Array of shortints, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxsingle = Array[0..1] of single
```

Array of singles, 64 bits in size

```
tmmxword = Array[0..3] of Word
```

Array of words, 64 bits in size

## 65.4 Procedures and functions

### 65.4.1 emms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers

Declaration: `procedure emms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Emms` sets all floating point registers to empty. This procedure must be called after you have used any MMX instructions, if you want to use floating point arithmetic. If you just want to move floating point data around, it isn't necessary to call this function, the compiler doesn't use the FPU registers when moving data. Only when doing calculations, you should use this function. The following code demonstrates this:

```
Program MMXDemo;
uses mmx;
var
  d : double;
  a : array[0..10000] of double;
  i : longint;
begin
  d:=1.0;
{$mmx+}
  { floating point data is used, but we do _no_ arithmetic }
  for i:=0 to 10000 do
    a[i]:=d; { this is done with 64 bit moves }
{$mmx-}
  emms;    { clear fpu }
  { now we can do floating point arithmetic again }
end.
```

See also: `femms` ([1137](#))

### 65.4.2 femms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers - AMD version

Declaration: `procedure femms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `femms` executes the `femms` assembler instruction for AMD processors. it is not supported by all assemblers, hence it is coded as byte codes.

See also: `emms` ([1136](#))

## Chapter 66

# Reference for unit 'Mouse'

### 66.1 Used units

Table 66.1: Used units by unit 'Mouse'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 66.2 Overview

The `Mouse` unit implements a platform independent mouse handling interface. It is implemented identically on all platforms supported by Free Pascal and can be enhanced with custom drivers, should this be needed. It is intended to be used only in text-based screens, for instance in conjunction with the keyboard and video unit. No support for graphical screens is implemented, and there are (currently) no plans to implement this.

### 66.3 Writing a custom mouse driver

The `mouse` unit has support for adding a custom mouse driver. This can be used to add support for mice not supported by the standard Free Pascal driver, but also to enhance an existing driver for instance to log mouse events or to implement a record and playback function.

The following unit shows how a mouse driver can be enhanced by adding some logging capabilities to the driver.

**Listing:** `./mouseex/logmouse.pp`

---

```
unit logmouse ;
```

```
interface
```

```
Procedure StartMouseLogging ;
```

```
Procedure StopMouseLogging ;
```

```
Function IsMouseLogging : Boolean ;
```

```
Procedure SetMouseLogFileName ( FileName : String ) ;
```

**implementation**

```
uses sysutils,Mouse;
```

**var**

```
  NewMouseDriver,
  OldMouseDriver : TMouseDriver;
  Active,Logging : Boolean;
  LogFileName : String;
  MouseLog : Text;
```

```
Function TimeStamp : String;
```

**begin**

```
  TimeStamp:=FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss ',Time());
end;
```

```
Procedure StartMouseLogging;
```

**begin**

```
  Logging:=True;
  WriteLn(MouseLog,'Start logging mouse events at: ',TimeStamp);
end;
```

```
Procedure StopMouseLogging;
```

**begin**

```
  WriteLn(MouseLog,'Stop logging mouse events at: ',TimeStamp);
  Logging:=False;
end;
```

```
Function IsMouseLogging : Boolean;
```

**begin**

```
  IsMouseLogging:=Logging;
end;
```

```
Procedure LogGetMouseEvent(Var Event : TMouseEvent);
```

**Var**

```
  M : TMouseEvent;
```

**begin**

```
  OldMouseDriver.GetMouseEvent(M);
  If Logging then
  begin
    Write(MouseLog,TimeStamp,' : Mouse ');
    With M do
    begin
      Case Action of
        MouseActionDown : Write(MouseLog,'down');
        MouseActionUp : Write(MouseLog,'up');
        MouseActionMove : Write(MouseLog,'move');
      end;
    Write(MouseLog,' event at ',X,', ',Y);
    If (Buttons<>0) then
    begin
```

---

```

    Write(MouseLog, ' for buttons: ');
    If (Buttons and MouseLeftbutton)<>0 then
        Write(MouseLog, 'Left ');
    If (Buttons and MouseRightbutton)<>0 then
        Write(MouseLog, 'Right ');
    If (Buttons and MouseMiddlebutton)<>0 then
        Write(MouseLog, 'Middle ');
    end;
    WriteLn(MouseLog);
end;
end;
end;

Procedure LogInitMouse;

begin
    OldMouseDriver.InitDriver();
    Assign(MouseLog, logFileName);
    Rewrite(MouseLog);
    Active := True;
    StartMouseLogging;
end;

Procedure LogDoneMouse;

begin
    StopMouseLogging;
    Close(MouseLog);
    Active := False;
    OldMouseDriver.DoneDriver();
end;

Procedure SetMouseLogFileName(FileName : String);

begin
    If Not Active then
        LogFileName := FileName;
end;

Initialization
    GetMouseDriver(OldMouseDriver);
    NewMouseDriver := OldMouseDriver;
    NewMouseDriver.GetMouseEvent := @LogGetMouseEvent;
    NewMouseDriver.InitDriver := @LogInitMouse;
    NewMouseDriver.DoneDriver := @LogDoneMouse;
    LogFileName := 'Mouse.log';
    Logging := False;
    SetMouseDriver(NewMouseDriver);
end.

```

---

## 66.4 Constants, types and variables

### 66.4.1 Constants

```
errMouseBase = 1030
```

Base for mouse error codes.

```
errMouseInitError = errMouseBase + 0
```

Mouse initialization error

```
errMouseNotImplemented = errMouseBase + 1
```

Mouse driver not implemented.

```
MouseActionDown = $0001
```

Mouse button down event signal.

```
MouseActionMove = $0004
```

Mouse cursor move event signal.

```
MouseActionUp = $0002
```

Mouse button up event signal.

```
MouseButton4 = $08
```

4th mouse button event

```
MouseButton5 = $10
```

5th mouse button event

```
MouseEventBufSize = 16
```

The mouse unit has a mechanism to buffer mouse events. This constant defines the size of the event buffer.

```
MouseLeftButton = $01
```

Left mouse button event.

```
MouseMiddleButton = $04
```

Middle mouse button event.

```
MouseRightButton = $02
```

Right mouse button event.

## 66.4.2 Types

```
PMouseEvent = ^TMouseEvent
```

Pointer to TMouseEvent ([1149](#)) record.

### 66.4.3 Variables

MouseButtons : Byte

This variable keeps track of the last known mouse button state. Do not use.

MouseIntFlag : Byte

This variable keeps track of the last known internal mouse state. Do not use.

MouseWhereX : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

MouseWhereY : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

## 66.5 Procedures and functions

### 66.5.1 DetectMouse

Synopsis: Detect the presence of a mouse.

Declaration: `function DetectMouse : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectMouse` detects whether a mouse is attached to the system or not. If there is no mouse, then zero is returned. If a mouse is attached, then the number of mouse buttons is returned.

This function should be called after the mouse driver was initialized.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitMouse` ([1146](#)), `DoneMouse` ([1143](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DetectMouse function. }*

**Uses** `mouse`;

**Var**

Buttons : Byte;

**begin**

InitMouse;

Buttons:=DetectMouse;

**If** Buttons=0 **then**

    WriteLn('No mouse present.')

**else**

    WriteLn('Found mouse with ',Buttons,' buttons.');

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 66.5.2 DoneMouse

Synopsis: Deinitialize mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneMouse`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `DoneMouse` De-initializes the mouse driver. It cleans up any memory allocated when the mouse was initialized, or removes possible mouse hooks from memory. The mouse functions will not work after `DoneMouse` was called. If `DoneMouse` is called a second time, it will exit at once. `InitMouse` should be called before `DoneMouse` can be called again.

For an example, see most other mouse functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DetectMouse` ([1142](#)), `InitMouse` ([1146](#))

### 66.5.3 GetMouseButtons

Synopsis: Get the state of the mouse buttons

Declaration: `function GetMouseButtons : Word`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `GetMouseButtons` returns the current button state of the mouse, i.e. it returns a or-ed combination of the following constants:

**MouseLeftButton** When the left mouse button is held down.

**MouseRightButton** When the right mouse button is held down.

**MouseMiddleButton** When the middle mouse button is held down.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` ([1144](#)), `GetMouseX` ([1144](#)), `GetMouseY` ([1145](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseButtons function. }*

**Uses** `mouse`;

**begin**

`InitMouse`;

`WriteLn`('Press right mouse button to exit program');

**While** (`GetMouseButtons`<>`MouseRightButton`) **do** ;

`DoneMouse`;

**end.**

---

### 66.5.4 GetMouseDriver

Synopsis: Get a copy of the currently active mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure GetMouseDriver (var Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseDriver` returns the currently set mouse driver. It can be used to retrieve the current mouse driver, and override certain callbacks.

A more detailed explanation about getting and setting mouse drivers can be found in `mousedrv` (1138).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom mouse driver, `mousedrv` (1138)

Errors: None.

See also: `SetMouseDriver` (1147)

### 66.5.5 GetMouseEvent

Synopsis: Get next mouse event from the queue.

Declaration: `procedure GetMouseEvent (var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseEvent` returns the next mouse event (a movement, button press or button release), and waits for one if none is available in the queue.

Some mouse drivers can implement a mouse event queue which can hold multiple events till they are fetched. Others don't, and in that case, a one-event queue is implemented for use with `PollMouseEvent` (1146).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (1143), `GetMouseX` (1144), `GetMouseY` (1145)

### 66.5.6 GetMouseX

Synopsis: Query the current horizontal position of the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `function GetMouseX : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseX` returns the current X position of the mouse. X is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the left side of the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (1143), `GetMouseEvent` (1144), `GetMouseY` (1145)

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseX, GetMouseY functions. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

---

```

Var
  X,Y : Word;

begin
  InitMouse;
  WriteLn( 'Move mouse cursor to square 10,10 to end');
  Repeat
    X:=GetMouseX;
    Y:=GetMouseY;
    WriteLn( 'X,Y= ( ',X, ', ',Y, ' ) ');
  Until (X=9) and (Y=9);
  DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 66.5.7 GetMouseY

Synopsis: Query the current vertical position of the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `function GetMouseY : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseY` returns the current Y position of the mouse. Y is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the top of the screen.

For an example, see `GetMouseX` ([1144](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` ([1143](#)), `GetMouseEvent` ([1144](#)), `GetMouseX` ([1144](#))

### 66.5.8 HideMouse

Synopsis: Hide the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure HideMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `HideMouse` hides the mouse cursor. This may or may not be implemented on all systems, and depends on the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShowMouse` ([1148](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the HideMouse function. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

**Var**

  Event : `TMouseEvent;`  
  Visible : `Boolean;`

---

```

begin
  InitMouse;
  ShowMouse;
  Visible:=True;
  WriteLn('Press left mouse button to hide/show, right button quits');
  Repeat
    GetMouseEvent(Event);
    With Event do
      If (Buttons=MouseLeftbutton) and
        (Action=MouseDown) then
        begin
          If Visible then
            HideMouse
          else
            ShowMouse;
            Visible:=Not Visible;
          end;
        Until (Event.Buttons=MouseRightButton) and
          (Event.Action=MouseDown);
      DoneMouse;
    end.

```

---

### 66.5.9 InitMouse

Synopsis: Initialize the FPC mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitMouse` initializes the mouse driver. This will allocate any data structures needed for the mouse to function. All mouse functions can be used after a call to `InitMouse`.

A call to `InitMouse` must always be followed by a call to `DoneMouse` (1143) at program exit. Failing to do so may leave the mouse in an unusable state, or may result in memory leaks.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DoneMouse` (1143), `DetectMouse` (1142)

### 66.5.10 PollMouseEvent

Synopsis: Query next mouse event. Do not wait if none available.

Declaration: `function PollMouseEvent (var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollMouseEvent` checks whether a mouse event is available, and returns it in `MouseEvent` if one is found. The function result is `True` in that case. If no mouse event is pending, the function result is `False`, and the contents of `MouseEvent` is undefined.

Note that after a call to `PollMouseEvent`, the event should still be removed from the mouse event queue with a call to `GetMouseEvent`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (1144), `PutMouseEvent` (1147)

### 66.5.11 PutMouseEvent

Synopsis: Put a mouse event in the event queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutMouseEvent (const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutMouseEvent` adds `MouseEvent` to the input queue. The next call to `GetMouseEvent` (1144) or `PollMouseEvent` will then return `MouseEvent`.

Please note that depending on the implementation the mouse event queue can hold only one value.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (1144), `PollMouseEvent` (1146)

### 66.5.12 SetMouseDriver

Synopsis: Set a new mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseDriver (const Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseDriver` sets the mouse driver to `Driver`. This function should be called before `InitMouse` (1146) is called, or after `DoneMouse` is called. If it is called after the mouse has been initialized, it does nothing.

For more information on setting the mouse driver, `mousedrv` (1138).

For an example, see `mousedrv` (1138)

See also: `InitMouse` (1146), `DoneMouse` (1143), `GetMouseDriver` (1144)

### 66.5.13 SetMouseXY

Synopsis: Set the mouse cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseXY (x: Word; y: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseXY` places the mouse cursor on `X`, `Y`. `X` and `Y` are zero based character coordinates: 0, 0 is the top-left corner of the screen, and the position is in character cells (i.e. not in pixels).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseX` (1144), `GetMouseY` (1145)

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetMouseXY function. }*

**Uses** `mouse`;

**begin**

`InitMouse`;

`WriteLn`('Click right mouse button to quit.');

---

```

SetMouseXY(40,12);
Repeat
  WriteLn(GetMouseX, ', ', GetMouseY);
  If (GetMouseX>70) then
    SetMouseXY(10,GetMouseY);
  If (GetMouseY>20) then
    SetMouseXY(GetMouseX,5);
  Until (GetMouseButtons=MouseRightButton);
DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 66.5.14 ShowMouse

Synopsis: Show the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure ShowMouse`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ShowMouse` shows the mouse cursor if it was previously hidden. The capability to hide or show the mouse cursor depends on the driver.

For an example, see `HideMouse` ([1145](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `HideMouse` ([1145](#))

## 66.6 TMouseDriver

```

TMouseDriver = record
  UseDefaultQueue : Boolean;
  InitDriver :
  procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  DetectMouse : function : Byte
  ;
  ShowMouse : procedure;
  HideMouse : procedure;
  GetMouseX :
  function : Word;
  GetMouseY : function : Word;
  GetMouseButtons
  : function : Word;
  SetMouseXY : procedure(x: Word; y: Word);
  GetMouseEvent : procedure(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
  PollMouseEvent
  : function(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean;
  PutMouseEvent
  : procedure(const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
end

```

The `TMouseDriver` record is used to implement a mouse driver in the `SetMouseDriver` ([1147](#)) function. Its fields must be filled in before calling the `SetMouseDriver` ([1147](#)) function.

## 66.7 TMouseEvent

```
TMouseEvent = packed record
  buttons : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word
;
  Action : Word;
end
```

The `TMouseEvent` is the central type of the mouse unit, it is used to describe all mouse events.

The `Buttons` field describes which buttons were down when the event occurred. The `x`, `y` fields describe where the event occurred on the screen. The `Action` describes what action was going on when the event occurred. The `Buttons` and `Action` field can be examined using the constants defined in the unit interface.

# Chapter 67

## Reference for unit 'Objects'

### 67.1 Used units

Table 67.1: Used units by unit 'Objects'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 67.2 Overview

This document documents the `objects` unit. The unit was implemented by many people, and was mainly taken from the FreeVision sources. It has been ported to all supported platforms.

The methods and fields that are in a `Private` part of an object declaration have been left out of this documentation.

### 67.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 67.3.1 Constants

`coIndexError = - 1`

Collection list error: Index out of range

`coOverflow = - 2`

Collection list error: Overflow

`DefaultTPCompatible : Boolean = False`

`DefaultTPCompatible` is used to initialize `tstream.tpcompatible` (??).

`MaxBytes = 128 * 1024 * 128`

Maximum data size (in bytes)

```
MaxCollectionSize = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Pointer)
```

Maximum collection size (in items)

```
MaxPtrs = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Pointer)
```

Maximum data size (in pointers)

```
MaxReadBytes = $7fffffff
```

Maximum data that can be read from a stream (not used)

```
MaxTPCompatibleCollectionSize = 65520 div 4
```

Maximum collection size (in items, same value as in TP)

```
MaxWords = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Word)
```

Maximum data size (in words)

```
RCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 50; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TCollection
)); Load: @ TCollection.Load; Store: @ TCollection.Store; Next: Nil
)
```

Default stream record for the TCollection ([1167](#)) object.

```
RStrCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 69; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf
(TStrCollection)); Load: @ TStrCollection.Load; Store: @ TStrCollection
.Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStrCollection ([1207](#)) object.

```
RStringCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 51; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf
(TStringCollection)); Load: @ TStringCollection.Load; Store: @ TStringCollection
.Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStringCollection ([1217](#)) object.

```
RStringList : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 52; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TStringList
)); Load: @ TStringList.Load; Store: Nil; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStringList ([1219](#)) object.

```
RStrListMaker : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 52; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TStrListMaker
)); Load: Nil; Store: @ TStrListMaker.Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStrListMaker ([1221](#)) object.

```
stCreate = $3C00
```

Stream initialization mode: Create new file

`stError = - 1`

Stream error codes: Access error

`stGetError = - 5`

Stream error codes: Get object error

`stInitError = - 2`

Stream error codes: Initialize error

`stOk = 0`

Stream error codes: No error

`stOpen = $3D02`

Stream initialization mode: Read/write access

`stOpenError = - 8`

Stream error codes: Error opening stream

`stOpenRead = $3D00`

Stream initialization mode: Read access only

`stOpenWrite = $3D01`

Stream initialization mode: Write access only

`stPutError = - 6`

Stream error codes: Put object error

`stReadError = - 3`

Stream error codes: Stream read error

`StreamError : CodePointer = Nil`

Pointer to default stream error handler.

`stSeekError = - 7`

Stream error codes: Seek error in stream

`stWriteError = - 4`

Stream error codes: Stream write error

`vmtHeaderSize = 8`

Size of the VMT header in an object (not used).

### 67.3.2 Types

`AsciiZ = Array[0..255] of Char`

Filename - null terminated array of characters.

`FNameStr = String`

Filename - shortstring version.

`PBufStream = ^TBufStream`

Pointer to `TBufStream` (1163) object.

`PByteArray = ^TByteArray`

Pointer to `TByteArray` (1155)

`PCharSet = ^TCharSet`

Pointer to `TCharSet` (1155).

`PCollection = ^TCollection`

Pointer to `TCollection` (1167) object.

`PDosStream = ^TDosStream`

Pointer to `TDosStream` (1182) object.

`PItemList = ^TItemList`

Pointer to `TItemList` (1155) object.

`PMemoryStream = ^TMemoryStream`

Pointer to `TMemoryStream` (1187) object.

`PObject = ^TObject`

Pointer to `TObject` (1189) object.

`PPoint = ^TPoint`

Pointer to `TPoint` (1191) record.

`PPointerArray = ^TPointerArray`

Pointer to `TPointerArray` (1155)

`PRect = ^TRect`

Pointer to TRect (1191) object.

PResourceCollection = ^TResourceCollection

Pointer to TResourceCollection (1197) object.

PResourceFile = ^TResourceFile

Pointer to TResourceFile (1198) object.

PSortedCollection = ^TSortedCollection

Pointer to TSortedCollection (1201) object.

PStrCollection = ^TStrCollection

Pointer to TStrCollection (1207) object.

PStream = ^TStream

Pointer type to TStream (1209)

PStreamRec = ^TStreamRec

Pointer to TStreamRec (1163)

PStrIndex = ^TStrIndex

Pointer to TStrIndex (1155) array.

PString = PShortString

Pointer to a shortstring.

PStringCollection = ^TStringCollection

Pointer to TStringCollection (1217) object.

PStringList = ^TStringList

Pointer to TStringList (1219) object.

PStrListMaker = ^TStrListMaker

Pointer to TStrListMaker (1221) object.

PUnSortedStrCollection = ^TUnSortedStrCollection

Pointer to TUnSortedStrCollection (1222) object.

PWordArray = ^TWordArray

Pointer to TWordArray ([1155](#))

`Sw_Integer = LongInt`

Alias for longint

`Sw_Word = Cardinal`

Alias for Cardinal

`TByteArray = Array[0..MaxBytes-1] of Byte`

Array with maximum allowed number of bytes.

`TCharSet = Set of Char`

Generic set of characters type.

`TItemList = Array[0..MaxCollectionSize-1] of Pointer`

Pointer array type used in a TCollection ([1167](#))

`TPointerArray = Array[0..MaxPtrs-1] of Pointer`

Array with maximum allowed number of pointers

`TStrIndex = Array[0..9999] of TStrIndexRec`

Pointer array type used in a TStringList ([1219](#))

`TWordArray = Array[0..MaxWords-1] of Word`

Array with maximum allowed number of words.

### 67.3.3 Variables

`invalidhandle : THandle`

Value for invalid handle. Initial value for file stream handles or when the stream is closed.

## 67.4 Procedures and functions

### 67.4.1 Abstract

Synopsis: Abstract error handler.

Declaration: `procedure Abstract`

Visibility: default

Description: When implementing abstract methods, do not declare them as `abstract`. Instead, define them simply as `virtual`. In the implementation of such abstract methods, call the `Abstract` procedure. This allows explicit control of what happens when an abstract method is called.

The current implementation of `Abstract` terminates the program with a run-time error 211.

Errors: None.

### 67.4.2 CallPointerConstructor

**Synopsis:** Call a constructor with a pointer argument.

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerConstructor(Ctor: CodePointer; Obj: pointer;  
VMT: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. `Param1` is passed to the constructor. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require a pointer as the sole argument. It can also be used to call a constructor with a single argument by reference.

**Errors:** If the constructor expects other arguments than a pointer, the stack may be corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidConstructor` (1157), `CallPointerMethod` (1156), `CallVoidLocal` (1157), `CallPointerLocal` (1156), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1157)

### 67.4.3 CallPointerLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local nested function with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerLocal(Func: CodePointer; Frame: Pointer;  
Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

**Errors:** If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerMethod` (1156), `CallVoidMethod` (1158), `CallVoidLocal` (1157), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1157), `CallVoidConstructor` (1157), `CallPointerConstructor` (1156)

### 67.4.4 CallPointerMethod

**Synopsis:** Call a method with a single pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethod(Method: CodePointer; Obj: pointer;  
Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It passes `Param1` to the method as the single argument. It returns a pointer to the instance.

**Errors:** If the method expects other parameters than a single pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidMethod` (1158), `CallVoidLocal` (1157), `CallPointerLocal` (1156), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1157), `CallVoidConstructor` (1157), `CallPointerConstructor` (1156)

### 67.4.5 CallPointerMethodLocal

Synopsis: Call a local procedure of a method with a pointer argument

Declaration: `function CallPointerMethodLocal(Func: CodePointer; Frame: Pointer;  
Obj: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallPointerMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

Errors: If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (1156), `CallVoidMethod` (1158), `CallPointerLocal` (1156), `CallVoidLocal` (1157), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallVoidConstructor` (1157), `CallPointerConstructor` (1156)

### 67.4.6 CallVoidConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with no arguments

Declaration: `function CallVoidConstructor(Ctor: CodePointer; Obj: pointer;  
VMT: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require no arguments.

Errors: If the constructor expects arguments, the stack may be corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerConstructor` (1156), `CallPointerMethod` (1156), `CallVoidLocal` (1157), `CallPointerLocal` (1156), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1157)

### 67.4.7 CallVoidLocal

Synopsis: Call a local nested procedure.

Declaration: `function CallVoidLocal(Func: CodePointer; Frame: Pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (1156), `CallVoidMethod` (1158), `CallPointerLocal` (1156), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1158), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1157), `CallVoidConstructor` (1157), `CallPointerConstructor` (1156)

### 67.4.8 CallVoidMethod

Synopsis: Call an object method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethod(Method: CodePointer; Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It returns a pointer to the instance.

Errors: If the method expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` ([1156](#)), `CallVoidLocal` ([1157](#)), `CallPointerLocal` ([1156](#)), `CallVoidMethodLocal` ([1158](#)), `CallPointerMethodLocal` ([1157](#)), `CallVoidConstructor` ([1157](#)), `CallPointerConstructor` ([1156](#))

### 67.4.9 CallVoidMethodLocal

Synopsis: Call a local procedure of a method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethodLocal(Func: CodePointer; Frame: Pointer; Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` ([1156](#)), `CallVoidMethod` ([1158](#)), `CallPointerLocal` ([1156](#)), `CallVoidLocal` ([1157](#)), `CallPointerMethodLocal` ([1157](#)), `CallVoidConstructor` ([1157](#)), `CallPointerConstructor` ([1156](#))

### 67.4.10 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose of a shortstring which was allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes a dynamically allocated string from the heap.

For an example, see `NewStr` ([1159](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` ([1159](#)), `SetStr` ([1162](#))

### 67.4.11 LongDiv

Synopsis: Overflow safe divide

Declaration: `function LongDiv(X: LongInt; Y: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongDiv` divides `X` by `Y`. The result is of type `Integer` instead of type `Longint`, as you would get normally.

Errors: If Y is zero, a run-time error will be generated.

See also: LongMul ([1159](#))

### 67.4.12 LongMul

Synopsis: Overflow safe multiply.

Declaration: `function LongMul(X: Integer; Y: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: LongMul multiplies X with Y. The result is of type LongInt. This avoids possible overflow errors you would normally get when multiplying X and Y that are too big.

Errors: None.

See also: LongDiv ([1158](#))

### 67.4.13 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: string) : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: NewStr makes a copy of the string S on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy. If the string is empty then Nil is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to NewStr, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: DisposeStr ([1158](#)), SetStr ([1162](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex40.pp

---

```

Program ex40;

{ Program to demonstrate the NewStr function }

Uses Objects;

Var S : String;
    P : PString;

begin
  S := 'Some really cute string';
  P := NewStr(S);
  If P^ <> S then
    Writeln ('Oh-oh... Something is wrong !!');
  DisposeStr(P);
end.

```

---

### 67.4.14 RegisterObjects

Synopsis: Register standard objects.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterObjects`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `RegisterObjects` registers the following objects for streaming:

1. `TCollection`, see `TCollection` (1167).
2. `TStringCollection`, see `TStringCollection` (1217).
3. `TStrCollection`, see `TStrCollection` (1207).

Errors: None.

See also: `RegisterType` (1160)

### 67.4.15 RegisterType

Synopsis: Register new object for streaming.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterType (var S: TStreamRec)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `RegisterType` registers a new type for streaming. An object cannot be streamed unless it has been registered first. The stream record `S` needs to have the following fields set:

**ObjType:** `Sw_Word` This should be a unique identifier. Each possible type should have it's own identifier.

**VmtLink:** `pointer` This should contain a pointer to the VMT (Virtual Method Table) of the object you try to register.

**Load :** `Pointer` is a pointer to a method that initializes an instance of that object, and reads the initial values from a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

**Store:** `Pointer` is a pointer to a method that stores an instance of the object to a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

The VMT of the object can be retrieved with the following expression:

```
VmtLink: ofs (TypeOf (MyType) ^) ;
```

Errors: In case of error (if a object with the same `ObjType`) is already registered), run-time error 212 occurs.

**Listing:** `./objectex/myobject.pp`

---

```
Unit MyObject ;
```

```
Interface
```

```
Uses Objects ;
```

```
Type
```

```

PMyObject = ^TMyObject;
TMyObject = Object(TObject)
  Field : Longint;
  Constructor Init;
  Constructor Load (Var Stream : TStream);
  Destructor Done;
  Procedure Store (Var Stream : TStream);
  Function GetField : Longint;
  Procedure SetField (Value : Longint);
end;

```

### Implementation

```

Constructor TMyobject.Init;

begin
  Inherited Init;
  Field := -1;
end;

Constructor TMyobject.Load (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
  Stream.Read(Field, Sizeof(Field));
end;

Destructor TMyObject.Done;

begin
end;

Function TMyObject.GetField : Longint;

begin
  GetField := Field;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.SetField (Value : Longint);

begin
  Field := Value;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.Store (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
  Stream.Write(Field, SizeOf(Field));
end;

Const MyObjectRec : TStreamRec = (
  Objtype : 666;
  vmtlink : Ofs(TypeOf(TMyObject)^);
  Load : @TMyObject.Load;
  Store : @TMyObject.Store;
);

begin
  RegisterObjects;

```

```
RegisterType (MyObjectRec);
end.
```

---

### 67.4.16 SetStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure SetStr(var p: PString; const s: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap and returns the pointer to this copy in `P`. If `P` pointed to another string (i.e. was not `Nil`, the memory is released first. Contrary to `NewStr` ([1159](#)), if the string is empty then a pointer to an empty string is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` ([1158](#)), `NewStr` ([1159](#))

## 67.5 LongRec

```
LongRec = packed record
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
end
```

Record describing a longint (in Words)

## 67.6 PtrRec

```
PtrRec = packed record
  Ofs : Word;
  Seg : Word;
end
```

Record describing a pointer to a memory location.

## 67.7 TStreamRec

```
TStreamRec = packed record
  ObjType : Sw_Word;
  VmtLink : pointer
;
  Load : CodePointer;
  Store : CodePointer;
```

```

    Next : PStreamRec
;
end

```

TStreamRec is used by the `Objects` unit streaming mechanism: when an object is registered, a TStreamRec record is added to a list of records. This list is used when objects need to be streamed from/streamed to a stream. It contains all the information needed to stream the object.

## 67.8 TStrIndexRec

```

TStrIndexRec = packed record
    Key : Sw_Word;
    Count : Word;
    Offset
    : Word;
end

```

Record type used in a TStringList ([1219](#)) to store the strings

## 67.9 WordRec

```

WordRec = packed record
    Hi : Byte;
    Lo : Byte;
end

```

Record describing a Word (in bytes)

## 67.10 TBufStream

### 67.10.1 Description

Bufstream implements a buffered file stream. That is, all data written to the stream is written to memory first. Only when the buffer is full, or on explicit request, the data is written to disk.

Also, when reading from the stream, first the buffer is checked if there is any unread data in it. If so, this is read first. If not the buffer is filled again, and then the data is read from the buffer.

The size of the buffer is fixed and is set when constructing the file.

This is useful if you need heavy throughput for your stream, because it speeds up operations.

### 67.10.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method   | Description  |
|----------------------|----------|--|
| <a href="#">1165</a> | Close    | Flush data and Close the file.                                       |
| <a href="#">1164</a> | Done     | Close the file and cleans up the instance.                           |
| <a href="#">1165</a> | Flush    | FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.                      |
| <a href="#">1164</a> | Init     | Initialize an instance of <code>TBufStream</code> and open the file. |
| <a href="#">1166</a> | Open     | Open the file if it is closed.                                       |
| <a href="#">1167</a> | Read     | Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.                       |
| <a href="#">1166</a> | Seek     | Set current position in file.  |
| <a href="#">1166</a> | Truncate | Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.             |
| <a href="#">1167</a> | Write    | Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.                      |

### 67.10.3 TBufStream.Init

Synopsis: Initialize an instance of `TBufStream` and open the file.

Declaration: `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word; Size: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates an instance of `TBufStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate**Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead**Read access only.

**stOpenWrite**Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

The `Size` parameter determines the size of the buffer that will be created. It should be different from zero.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1165](#)).

Errors: On error, `Status` is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([1183](#)), `TBufStream.Done` ([1164](#))

### 67.10.4 TBufStream.Done

Synopsis: Close the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` flushes and closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TBufStream`.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1165](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` ([1183](#)), `TBufStream.Init` ([1164](#)), `TBufStream.Close` ([1165](#))

### 67.10.5 TBufStream.Close

Synopsis: Flush data and Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` flushes and closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (1164) it does not clean up the instance of `TBufStream`

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (1165).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (1213), `TBufStream.Init` (1164), `TBufStream.Done` (1164)

### 67.10.6 TBufStream.Flush

Synopsis: FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: When the stream is in write mode, the contents of the buffer are written to disk, and the buffer position is set to zero. When the stream is in read mode, the buffer position is set to zero.

Errors: Write errors may occur if the file was in write mode. see `Write` (1167) for more info on the errors.

See also: `TStream.Close` (1213), `TBufStream.Init` (1164), `TBufStream.Done` (1164)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `ex15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Flush method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PBufStream; { Only one with Flush implemented. }`

**begin**

```

  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PBufStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate, 100));
  WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { At this moment, there is no data on disk yet. }
  S^.Flush;
  { Now there is. }
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { Close calls flush first }
  S^.Close;
  WriteLn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
  S^.Open (stOpenRead);
  P:=S^.ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
```

---

```

DisposeStr(P);
WriteLn ('Read "',L,'" from stream with handle ',S^.Handle);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.7 TBufStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to flush the buffer, and then truncates the stream size to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `Flush` ([1165](#)) or `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)).

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1214](#)), `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1211](#))

### 67.10.8 TBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in file.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

For an example, see `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#));

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1211](#))

### 67.10.9 TBufStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the file if it is closed.

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` ([1165](#)) call.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1185](#)).

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1213](#)), `TBufStream.Close` ([1165](#))

### 67.10.10 TBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

`Read` will first try to read the data from the stream's internal buffer. If insufficient data is available, the buffer will be filled before continuing to read. This process is repeated until all needed data has been read.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)), `TBufStream.Write` ([1167](#))

### 67.10.11 TBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Write` will write `Count` bytes from `Buf` and place them in the stream.

`Write` will first try to write the data to the stream's internal buffer. When the internal buffer is full, then the contents will be written to disk. This process is repeated until all data has been written.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1216](#)), `TBufStream.Read` ([1167](#))

## 67.11 TCollection

### 67.11.1 Description

The `TCollection` object manages a collection of pointers or objects. It also provides a series of methods to manipulate these pointers or objects.

Whether or not objects are used depends on the kind of calls you use. All kinds come in 2 flavors, one for objects, one for pointers.

**67.11.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                 | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1169</a> | <code>At</code>        | Return the item at a certain index.                                 |
| <a href="#">1178</a> | <code>AtDelete</code>  | Delete item at certain position.                                    |
| <a href="#">1177</a> | <code>AtFree</code>    | Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.    |
| <a href="#">1181</a> | <code>AtInsert</code>  | Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.          |
| <a href="#">1180</a> | <code>AtPut</code>     | Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.                 |
| <a href="#">1176</a> | <code>Delete</code>    | Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.        |
| <a href="#">1175</a> | <code>DeleteAll</code> | Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed. |
| <a href="#">1169</a> | <code>Done</code>      | Clean up collection, release all memory.                            |
| <a href="#">1180</a> | <code>Error</code>     | Set error code.   |
| <a href="#">1172</a> | <code>FirstThat</code> | Return first item which matches a test.                             |
| <a href="#">1179</a> | <code>ForEach</code>   | Execute procedure for each item in the list.                        |
| <a href="#">1175</a> | <code>Free</code>      | Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.                 |
| <a href="#">1174</a> | <code>FreeAll</code>   | Release all objects from the collection.                            |
| <a href="#">1178</a> | <code>FreeItem</code>  | Destroy a non-nil item.   |
| <a href="#">1171</a> | <code>GetItem</code>   | Read one item off the stream.                                       |
| <a href="#">1170</a> | <code>IndexOf</code>   | Find the position of a certain item.                                |
| <a href="#">1168</a> | <code>Init</code>      | Instantiate a new collection.                                       |
| <a href="#">1176</a> | <code>Insert</code>    | Insert a new item in the collection at the end.                     |
| <a href="#">1171</a> | <code>LastThat</code>  | Return last item which matches a test.                              |
| <a href="#">1168</a> | <code>Load</code>      | Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.      |
| <a href="#">1173</a> | <code>Pack</code>      | Remove all <code>&gt;Nil</code> pointers from the collection.       |
| <a href="#">1182</a> | <code>PutItem</code>   | Put one item on the stream  |
| <a href="#">1180</a> | <code>SetLimit</code>  | Set maximum number of elements in the collection.                   |
| <a href="#">1182</a> | <code>Store</code>     | Write collection to a stream.                                       |

**67.11.3 TCollection.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new collection.

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` initializes a new instance of a collection. It sets the (initial) maximum number of items in the collection to `ALimit`. `ADelta` is the increase size : The number of memory places that will be allocated in case `ALimit` is reached, and another element is added to the collection.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([1179](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1169](#))

**67.11.4 TCollection.Load**

Synopsis: Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load (var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` initializes a new instance of a collection. It reads from stream `S` the item count, the item limit count, and the increase size. After that, it reads the specified number of items from the stream.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `GetItem` ([1171](#)).

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1168](#)), `TCollection.GetItem` ([1171](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1169](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex22.pp

---

```

Program ex22;

  { Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Load method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;
      S : PMemoryStream;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(100-I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,10));
  C^.Store(S^);
  C^.FreeAll;
  // Dispose(C, Done);
  S^.Seek(0);
  C^.Load(S^);
  WriteLn ('Read ', C^.Count, ' objects from stream. ');
  Dispose(S, Done);
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.11.5 TCollection.Done

Synopsis: Clean up collection, release all memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done` frees all objects in the collection, and then releases all memory occupied by the instance.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([1179](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1168](#)), `TCollection.FreeAll` ([1174](#))

### 67.11.6 TCollection.At

Synopsis: Return the item at a certain index.

Declaration: `function At(Index: Sw_Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `At` returns the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than the number of items in the collection, see `TCollection.Error` is called with `coIndexError` and `Index` as arguments, resulting in a run-time error.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` ([1176](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `ex23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.At method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**

`C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));`

**For** `I:=1 to 100 do`

**begin**

`M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`

`M^.SetField(100-I);`

`C^.Insert(M);`

**end**;

**For** `I:=0 to C^.Count-1 do`

**begin**

`M:=C^.At(I);`

`Writeln('Object ',i,' has field : ',M^.GetField);`

**end**;

`C^.FreeAll;`

`Dispose(C, Done);`

**end.**

---

### 67.11.7 TCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find the position of a certain item.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. If `Item` isn't present in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors: If the item is not present, -1 is returned.

See also: `TCollection.At` ([1169](#)), `TCollection.GetItem` ([1171](#)), `TCollection.Insert` ([1176](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `ex24`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.IndexOf method }*

---

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M, Keep : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(100,10));
  Keep:=Nil;
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      If Random<0.1 then
        Keep:=M;
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  If Keep=Nil then
    begin
      Writeln ('Please run again. No object selected');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln ('Selected object has field : ', Keep^.GetField);
  Write ('Selected object has index : ', C^.IndexOf(Keep));
  Writeln (' should match it's field. ');
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.8 TCollection.GetItem

**Synopsis:** Read one item off the stream.

**Declaration:** function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetItem reads a single item off the stream S, and returns a pointer to this item. This method is used internally by the Load method, and should not be used directly.

**Errors:** Possible errors are the ones from TStream.Get ([1209](#)).

**See also:** TStream.Get ([1209](#)), TCollection.Store ([1182](#))

### 67.11.9 TCollection.LastThat

**Synopsis:** Return last item which matches a test.

**Declaration:** function LastThat(Test: CodePointer) : Pointer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function returns the last item in the collection for which Test returns a non-nil result. Test is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([1172](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex25.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Foreach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
    If P^.GetField < 56 then
        Checkfield := 1
    else
        CheckField := 0;
end;

begin
    C := New(PCollection, Init(100, 10));
    For I := 1 to 100 do
        begin
            M := New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');
    Writeln ('Last one for which Field < 56 has index (should be 54) : ',
        C^.IndexOf(C^.LastThat(@CheckField)));
    C^.FreeAll;
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.10 TCollection.FirstThat

Synopsis: Return first item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function FirstThat(Test: CodePointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: This function returns the first item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.LastThat` ([1171](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

```

---

```

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField>56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection,Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject,Init);
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ('Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects');
  Writeln ('first one for which Field>56 has index (should be 56) : ',
    C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.11 TCollection.Pack

Synopsis: Remove all >Nil pointers from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: default

Description: Pack removes all Nil pointers from the collection, and adjusts Count to reflect this change. No memory is freed as a result of this call. In order to free any memory, you can call SetLimit with an argument of Count after a call to Pack.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.SetLimit ([1180](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

```

---

```

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField>56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection , Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ( 'Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects ');
    WriteLn ( 'first one for which Field>56 has index (should be 56) : ',
      C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.12 TCollection.FreeAll

Synopsis: Release all objects from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAll` calls the destructor of each object in the collection. It doesn't release any memory occupied by the collection itself, but it does set `Count` to zero.

See also: `TCollection.DeleteAll` ([1175](#)), `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1178](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `ex28`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FreeAll method }*

**Uses** `Objects,MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C : PCollection`;  
       `M : PMyObject`;  
       `I : Longint`;

**begin**  
   **Randomize**;  
   C:=**New**(PCollection , Init(120,10));  
   **For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**  
     **begin**  
       M:=**New**(PMyObject, Init );  
       M^.SetField(I-1);  
       C^.Insert(M);  
     **end**

---

```

    end;
    Writeln ('Added 100 Items. ');
    C^.FreeAll;
    Writeln ('Freed all objects. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.13 TCollection.DeleteAll

Synopsis: Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteAll`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `DeleteAll` deletes all elements from the collection. It just sets the `Count` variable to zero. Contrary to `FreeAll` (1174), `DeleteAll` doesn't call the destructor of the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeAll` (1174), `TCollection.Delete` (1176)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `ex29`;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the TCollection.DeleteAll method
  Compare with example 28, where FreeAll is used.
}

```

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; { For *TMyObject* definition and registration }

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    Writeln ('Added 100 Items. ');
    C^.DeleteAll;
    Writeln ('Deleted all objects. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.14 TCollection.Free

Synopsis: Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.

**Declaration:** `procedure Free(Item: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Free` Deletes `Item` from the collection, and calls the destructor `Done` of the object.

**Errors:** If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

**See also:** `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1178](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `ex30`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Free method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     `C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));`  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
         `M^.SetField(I-1);`  
         `C^.Insert(M);`  
       **end**;  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Added 100 Items. ' );  
     **With** `C^ do`  
       **While** `Count>0 do Free(At(Count-1));`  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Freed all objects. ' );  
     **Dispose**(`C, Done`);  
**end.**

---

### 67.11.15 TCollection.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a new item in the collection at the end.

**Declaration:** `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Insert` inserts `Item` in the collection. `TCollection` inserts this item at the end, but descendent objects may insert it at another place.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.AtInsert` ([1181](#)), `TCollection.AtPut` ([1180](#))

### 67.11.16 TCollection.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` deletes `Item` from the collection. It doesn't call the item's destructor, though. For this the `Free` (1175) call is provided.

Errors: If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.AtDelete` (1178), `TCollection.Free` (1175)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex31.pp

---

```

Program ex31;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New( PCollection, Init(120,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I-1);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Added 100 Items. ');
    With C^ do
        While Count>0 do Delete(At(Count-1));
    Writeln ('Freed all objects ');
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.11.17 TCollection.AtFree

Synopsis: Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.

Declaration: `procedure AtFree(Index: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtFree` deletes the item at position `Index` in the collection, and calls the item's destructor if it is not `Nil`.

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1180) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Free` (1175), `TCollection.AtDelete` (1178)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex32.pp

---

```

Program ex32;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtFree method }
```

---

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ('Added 100 Items');
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do AtFree(Count-1);
  WriteLn ('Freed all objects. ');
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.18 TCollection.FreeItem

**Synopsis:** Destroy a non-nil item.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeItem` calls the destructor of `Item` if it is not nil.

**Remark** This function is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.Free` ([1175](#)), `TCollection.AtFree` ([1177](#))

### 67.11.19 TCollection.AtDelete

**Synopsis:** Delete item at certain position.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtDelete(Index: Sw_Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AtDelete` deletes the pointer at position `Index` in the collection. It doesn't call the object's destructor.

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` ([1180](#)) is called with `CoIndexError`.

**See also:** `TCollection.Delete` ([1176](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex33.pp`

---

```

Program ex33;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I-1);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Added 100 Items. ');
    With C^ do
        While Count>0 do Delete(Count-1);
    Writeln ('Freed all objects. ');
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.20 TCollection.ForEach

Synopsis: Execute procedure for each item in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEach(Action: CodePointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ForEach` calls `Action` for each element in the collection, and passes the element as an argument to `Action`.

`Action` is a procedural type variable that accepts a pointer as an argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([1172](#)), `TCollection.LastThat` ([1171](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex21.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.ForEach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin

```

---

```

    WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(100-I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ( 'Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
  C^.ForEach( @PrintField );
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.21 TCollection.SetLimit

Synopsis: Set maximum number of elements in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure SetLimit(ALimit: Sw_Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLimit` sets the maximum number of elements in the collection. `ALimit` must not be less than `Count`, and should not be larger than `MaxCollectionSize`

For an example, see Pack ([1173](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1168](#))

### 67.11.22 TCollection.Error

Synopsis: Set error code.

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` is called by the various `TCollection` methods in case of an error condition. The default behaviour is to make a call to `RunError` with an error of `212-Code`.

This method can be overridden by descendent objects to implement a different error-handling.

See also: `Abstract` ([1155](#))

### 67.11.23 TCollection.AtPut

Synopsis: Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.

Declaration: `procedure AtPut(Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AtPut` sets the element at position `Index` in the collection to `Item`. Any previous value is overwritten.

For an example, see `Pack` (1173).

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1180) is called with `CoIndexError`.

### 67.11.24 `TCollection.AtInsert`

**Synopsis:** Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtInsert(Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AtInsert` inserts `Item` in the collection at position `Index`, shifting all elements by one position. In case the current limit is reached, the collection will try to expand with a call to `SetLimit`

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1180) is called with `CoIndexError`. If the collection fails to expand, then `coOverflow` is passed to `Error`.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (1176)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `ex34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtInsert method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**Procedure** `PrintField` (`Dummy`: `Pointer`; `P` : `PMyObject`);

**begin**  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Field : ', `P`^.`GetField` );  
**end**;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;  
     `C`:=`New`(`PCollection`, `Init`(120,10));  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );  
     **For** `I`:=1 **to** 100 **do**  
         **begin**  
             `M`:=`New`(`PMyObject`, `Init` );  
             `M`^.`SetField`(`I`-1);  
             **If** `I`=1 **then**  
                 `C`^.`Insert`(`M`)  
             **else**  
                 **With** `C`^ **do**  
                     `AtInsert`(`Random`(`Count`), `M`);  
             **end**;  
             `WriteLn` ( 'Values : ' );  
             `C`^.`Foreach`(`@PrintField`);  
             `Dispose`(`C`, `Done`);  
         **end**.  
**end**.

---

### 67.11.25 TCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write collection to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the current `Count`, `Limit` and `Delta` to the stream, and then writing each item to the stream.

The contents of the stream are then suitable for instantiating another collection with `Load` ([1168](#)).

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#)).

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Put` ([1214](#)).

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#)), `TCollection.PutItem` ([1182](#))

### 67.11.26 TCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Put one item on the stream

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to stream `S`. This method is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

Errors: Errors are those returned by `TStream.Put` ([1214](#)).

See also: `Store` ([1182](#)), `GetItem` ([1171](#))

## 67.12 TDosStream

### 67.12.1 Description

`TDosStream` is a stream that stores its contents in a file. it overrides a couple of methods of `TStream` ([1209](#)) for this.

In addition to the fields inherited from `TStream` (see `TStream` ([1209](#))), there are some extra fields, that describe the file. (mainly the name and the OS file handle)

No buffering in memory is done when using `TDosStream`. All data are written directly to the file. For a stream that buffers in memory, see `TBufStream` ([1163](#)).

### 67.12.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1183</a> | <code>Close</code>    | Close the file.   |
| <a href="#">1183</a> | <code>Done</code>     | Closes the file and cleans up the instance.             |
| <a href="#">1183</a> | <code>Init</code>     | Instantiate a new instance of <code>TDosStream</code> . |
| <a href="#">1185</a> | <code>Open</code>     | Open the file stream                                    |
| <a href="#">1186</a> | <code>Read</code>     | Read data from the stream to a buffer.                  |
| <a href="#">1184</a> | <code>Seek</code>     | Set file position.                                      |
| <a href="#">1184</a> | <code>Truncate</code> | Truncate the file on the current position.              |
| <a href="#">1186</a> | <code>Write</code>    | Write data from a buffer to the stream.                 |

### 67.12.3 TDosStream.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.

Declaration: `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates an instance of `TDosStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)).

Errors: On error, `Status` (??) is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` ([1183](#))

### 67.12.4 TDosStream.Done

Synopsis: Closes the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TDosStream`.  
for an example, see e.g. `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([1183](#)), `TDosStream.Close` ([1183](#))

### 67.12.5 TDosStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` ([1183](#)) it does not clean up the instance of `TDosStream`

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1185](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` ([1213](#)), `TDosStream.Init` ([1183](#)), `TDosStream.Done` ([1183](#))

### 67.12.6 TDosStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file on the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to truncate the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: If an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stError` and `ErrorInfo` is set to the OS error code.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1214](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1211](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `ex16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PDosStream; { Only one with Truncate implemented. }`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
Writeln ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ Close calls flush first }
S^.Close;
S^.Open (stOpen);
Writeln ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
Writeln ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Truncate;
Writeln ('Truncated stream. Size is : ', S^.GetSize);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 67.12.7 TDosStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set file position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

**Errors:** In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1211](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `ex17`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Seek method }*

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Var** `L : String`;  
       `Marker : Word`;  
       `P : PString`;  
       `S : PDosStream`;

**begin**  
   `L := 'Some constant string';`  
   *{ Buffer size of 100 }*  
   `S := New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));`  
   `WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream.');`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `Marker := S^.GetPos;`  
   `WriteLn ('Set marker at ', Marker);`  
   `L := 'Some other constant String';`  
   `WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream.');`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `S^.Open (stOpenRead);`  
   `WriteLn ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);`  
   `WriteLn ('Seeking to marker');`  
   `S^.Seek(Marker);`  
   `P := S^.ReadStr;`  
   `L := P^;`  
   `DisposeStr(P);`  
   `WriteLn ('Read "', L, '" from stream.');`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `Dispose (S, Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 67.12.8 TDosStream.Open

**Synopsis:** Open the file stream

**Declaration:** `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` ([1183](#)) call.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1213](#)), `TDosStream.Close` ([1183](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program ex14;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Close method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    P : PString;
    S : PDosStream; { Only one with Close implemented. }

begin
    L:= 'Some constant string';
    S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
    WriteIn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.WriteStr(@L);
    S^.Close;
    WriteIn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Open (stOpenRead);
    P:=S^.ReadStr;
    L:=P^;
    DisposeStr(P);
    WriteIn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Close;
    Dispose (S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.12.9 TDosStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Read data from the stream to a buffer.

**Declaration:** `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Read will read Count bytes from the stream and place them in Buf.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([1216](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, Status is set to StReadError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: TStream.Read ([1216](#)), TDosStream.Write ([1186](#))

### 67.12.10 TDosStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Write data from a buffer to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Write will write Count bytes from Buf and place them in the stream.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([1216](#)).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1216](#)), `TDosStream.Read` ([1186](#))

## 67.13 TMemoryStream

### 67.13.1 Description

The `TMemoryStream` object implements a stream that stores it's data in memory. The data is stored on the heap, with the possibility to specify the maximum amount of data, and the size of the memory blocks being used.

See also: `TStream` ([1209](#))

### 67.13.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                | Description  |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1187</a> | <code>Done</code>     | Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.           |
| <a href="#">1187</a> | <code>Init</code>     | Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data. |
| <a href="#">1188</a> | <code>Read</code>     | Read data from the stream to a location in memory.         |
| <a href="#">1188</a> | <code>Truncate</code> | Set the stream size to the current position.               |
| <a href="#">1189</a> | <code>Write</code>    | Write data to the stream.                                  |

### 67.13.3 TMemoryStream.Init

Synopsis: Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.

Declaration: constructor `Init(ALimit: LongInt; ABlockSize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new `TMemoryStream` object. The `memorystreamobject` will initially allocate at least `ALimit` bytes memory, divided into memory blocks of size `ABlockSize`. The number of blocks needed to get to `ALimit` bytes is rounded up.

By default, the number of blocks is 1, and the size of a block is 8192. This is selected if you specify 0 as the blocksize.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` ([1217](#)).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate the initial memory needed for the memory blocks, then the stream's status is set to `stInitError`.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Done` ([1187](#))

### 67.13.4 TMemoryStream.Done

Synopsis: Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` releases the memory blocks used by the stream, and then cleans up the memory used by the stream object itself.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` ([1217](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Init` ([1187](#))

### 67.13.5 TMemoryStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Set the stream size to the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` sets the size of the memory stream equal to the current position. It de-allocates any memory-blocks that are no longer needed, so that the new size of the stream is the current position in the stream, rounded up to the first multiple of the stream blocksize.

Errors: If an error occurs during memory de-allocation, the stream's status is set to `stError`

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1214](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `ex20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TMemoryStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PMemoryStream;`  
       `I : Longint;`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,100));
Writeln ('Writing 100 times "',L,'" to stream. ');
For I:=1 to 100 do
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
Writeln ('Finished. ');
S^.Seek(100);
S^.Truncate;
Writeln ('Truncated at byte 100. ');
Dispose (S,Done);
Writeln ('Finished. ');

```

**end.**

---

### 67.13.6 TMemoryStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a location in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the stream to `Buf`. It updates the position of the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)).

Errors: If there is not enough data available, no data is read, and the stream's status is set to `stReadError`.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)), `TMemoryStream.Write` ([1189](#))

### 67.13.7 TMemoryStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write copies `Count` bytes from `Buf` to the stream. It updates the position of the stream.

If not enough memory is available to hold the extra `Count` bytes, then the stream will try to expand, by allocating as much blocks with size `BlkSize` (as specified in the constructor call `Init` ([1187](#))) as needed.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate more memory, then the status is set to `stWriteError`

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1216](#)), `TMemoryStream.Read` ([1188](#))

## 67.14 TObject

### 67.14.1 Description

This type serves as the basic object for all other objects in the `Objects` unit.

### 67.14.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                  | Description                                  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1190</a> | <code>Done</code>       | Destroy an object.                           |
| <a href="#">1190</a> | <code>Free</code>       | Destroy an object and release all memory.    |
| <a href="#">1189</a> | <code>Init</code>       | Construct (initialize) a new object          |
| <a href="#">1190</a> | <code>Is\_Object</code> | Check whether a pointer points to an object. |

### 67.14.3 TObject.Init

Synopsis: Construct (initialize) a new object

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: default

Description: Instantiates a new object of type `TObject`. It fills the instance up with `Zero` bytes.

For an example, see `Free` ([1190](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Free` ([1190](#)), `TObject.Done` ([1190](#))

### 67.14.4 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Destroy an object and release all memory.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Free` calls the destructor of the object, and releases the memory occupied by the instance of the object.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `self` is `nil` and whether the object is indeed allocated on the heap.

See also: `TObject.Init` ([1189](#)), `TObject.Done` ([1190](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program ex7;

  { Program to demonstrate the TObject.Free call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init);
  // Free memory of object.
  O^.free;
end.

```

---

### 67.14.5 TObject.Is\_Object

Synopsis: Check whether a pointer points to an object.

Declaration: `function Is_Object(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Is_Object` returns `True` if the pointer `P` points to an instance of a `TObject` descendent, it returns `false` otherwise.

### 67.14.6 TObject.Done

Synopsis: Destroy an object.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done`, the destructor of `TObject` does nothing. It is mainly intended to be used in the `TObject.Free` ([1190](#)) method.

The destructor `Done` does not free the memory occupied by the object.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Free ([1190](#)), TObject.Init ([1189](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex8.pp

---

```

program ex8;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Done call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
    // Allocate memory for object.
    O:=New( PObject, Init );
    O^.Done;
end.
```

---

## 67.15 TPoint

### 67.15.1 Description

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane.

## 67.16 TRect

### 67.16.1 Description

Describes a rectangular region in a plane.

### 67.16.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method    | Description   |
|----------------------|-----------|---|
| <a href="#">1196</a> | Assign    | Set rectangle corners.                                  |
| <a href="#">1193</a> | Contains  | Determine if a point is inside the rectangle            |
| <a href="#">1193</a> | Copy      | Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.               |
| <a href="#">1191</a> | Empty     | Is the surface of the rectangle zero                    |
| <a href="#">1192</a> | Equals    | Do the corners of the rectangles match                  |
| <a href="#">1196</a> | Grow      | Expand rectangle with certain size.                     |
| <a href="#">1194</a> | Intersect | Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle |
| <a href="#">1195</a> | Move      | Move rectangle along a vector.                          |
| <a href="#">1194</a> | Union     | Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.      |

### 67.16.3 TRect.Empty

**Synopsis:** Is the surface of the rectangle zero

**Declaration:** function Empty : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Empty returns True if the rectangle defined by the corner points A, B has zero or negative surface.

Errors: None.

See also: TRect.Equals ([1192](#)), TRect.Contains ([1193](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** ex1;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Empty }*

**Uses** objects;

**Var** ARect,BRect : TRect;  
P : TPoint;

**begin**

With ARect.A do

begin

X:=10;

Y:=10;

end;

With ARect.B do

begin

X:=20;

Y:=20;

end;

*{ Offset B by (5,5) }*

With BRect.A do

begin

X:=15;

Y:=15;

end;

With BRect.B do

begin

X:=25;

Y:=25;

end;

*{ Point }*

With P do

begin

X:=15;

Y:=15;

end;

**Writeln** ('A empty : ',ARect.Empty);

**Writeln** ('B empty : ',BRect.Empty);

**Writeln** ('A Equals B : ',ARect.Equals(BRect));

**Writeln** ('A Contains (15,15) : ',ARect.Contains(P));

**end.**

---

#### 67.16.4 TRect.Equals

Synopsis: Do the corners of the rectangles match

Declaration: `function Equals(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Equals` returns `True` if the rectangle has the same corner points A, B as the rectangle R, and `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TRect.Empty` (1191)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Empty` (1191), `TRect.Contains` (1193)

### 67.16.5 TRect.Contains

**Synopsis:** Determine if a point is inside the rectangle

**Declaration:** `function Contains(P: TPoint) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Contains` returns `True` if the point P is contained in the rectangle (including borders), `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` (1194), `TRect.Equals` (1192)

### 67.16.6 TRect.Copy

**Synopsis:** Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.

**Declaration:** `procedure Copy(R: TRect)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Assigns the rectangle R to the object. After the call to `Copy`, the rectangle R has been copied to the object that invoked `Copy`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Assign` (1196)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `ex2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Copy }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect`;

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

`CRect.Copy(ARect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

`Writeln ('ARect equals CRect')`

**Else**

`Writeln ('ARect does not equal CRect !');`

**end.**

---

### 67.16.7 TRect.Union

Synopsis: Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Union(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Union` enlarges the current rectangle so that it becomes the union of the current rectangle with the rectangle `R`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` ([1194](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `ex3;`

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Union }*

**Uses** `objects;`

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;`

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

*{ CRect is union of ARect and BRect }*

`CRect.Assign(10,10,25,25);`

*{ Calculate it explicitly }*

`ARect.Union(BRect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

`Writeln ('ARect equals CRect')`

**Else**

`Writeln ('ARect does not equal CRect !');`

**end.**

---

### 67.16.8 TRect.Intersect

Synopsis: Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intersect` makes the intersection of the current rectangle with `R`. If the intersection is empty, then the rectangle is set to the empty rectangle at coordinate (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Union` ([1194](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program ex4;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Intersect }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect,CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is intersection of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(15,15,20,20);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    Writeln ('ARect equals CRect')
  Else
    Writeln ('ARect does not equal CRect !');
  BRect.Assign(25,25,30,30);
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Empty Then
    Writeln ('ARect is empty');
end.

```

---

### 67.16.9 TRect.Move

Synopsis: Move rectangle along a vector.

Declaration: `procedure Move(ADX: Sw_Integer; ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Move` moves the current rectangle along a vector with components (ADX, ADY). It adds ADX to the X-coordinate of both corner points, and ADY to both end points.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Grow` ([1196](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program ex5;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Move }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Move(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);

```

---

```

If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
  Writeln ('ARect equals BRect')
Else
  Writeln ('ARect does not equal BRect !');
end.

```

---

### 67.16.10 TRect.Grow

Synopsis: Expand rectangle with certain size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow(ADX: Sw_Integer; ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Grow` expands the rectangle with an amount `ADX` in the X direction (both on the left and right side of the rectangle, thus adding a length  $2*ADX$  to the width of the rectangle), and an amount `ADY` in the Y direction (both on the top and the bottom side of the rectangle, adding a length  $2*ADY$  to the height of the rectangle).

`ADX` and `ADY` can be negative. If the resulting rectangle is empty, it is set to the empty rectangle at `(0,0)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Move` ([1195](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program ex6;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Grow }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Grow(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(5,5,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    Writeln ('ARect equals BRect')
  Else
    Writeln ('ARect does not equal BRect !');
end.

```

---

### 67.16.11 TRect.Assign

Synopsis: Set rectangle corners.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(XA: Sw_Integer; YA: Sw_Integer; XB: Sw_Integer; YB: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Assign sets the corner points of the rectangle to (XA, YA) and (Xb, Yb).

For an example, see TRect.Copy ([1193](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TRect.Copy ([1193](#))

## 67.17 TResourceCollection

### 67.17.1 Description

A TResourceCollection manages a collection of resource names. It stores the position and the size of a resource, as well as the name of the resource. It stores these items in records that look like this:

```
TYPE
  TResourceItem = packed RECORD
    Posn: LongInt;
    Size: LongInt;
    Key : String;
  End;
  PResourceItem = ^TResourceItem;
```

It overrides some methods of TStringCollection in order to accomplish this.

**Remark** Remark that the TResourceCollection manages the names of the resources and their associated positions and sizes, it doesn't manage the resources themselves.

### 67.17.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method   | Description                                  |
|----------------------|----------|--|
| <a href="#">1198</a> | FreeItem | Release memory occupied by item.             |
| <a href="#">1198</a> | GetItem  | Read an item from the stream.                |
| <a href="#">1197</a> | KeyOf    | Return the key of an item in the collection. |
| <a href="#">1198</a> | PutItem  | Write an item to the stream.                 |

### 67.17.3 TResourceCollection.KeyOf

**Synopsis:** Return the key of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** function KeyOf(Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** KeyOf returns the key of an item in the collection. For resources, the key is a pointer to the string with the resource name.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TStringCollection.Compare ([1218](#))

### 67.17.4 TResourceCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read an item from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a resource item from the stream `S`. It reads the position, size and name from the stream, in that order. It DOES NOT read the resource itself from the stream.

The resulting item is not inserted in the collection. This call is mainly for internal use by the `TCollection.Load (1168)` method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Read (1216)`

See also: `TCollection.Load (1168)`, `TStream.Read (1216)`

### 67.17.5 TResourceCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Release memory occupied by item.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeItem` releases the memory occupied by `Item`. It de-allocates the name, and then the resource item record.

It does NOT remove the item from the collection.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem (1178)`

### 67.17.6 TResourceCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write an item to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the position and size and name of the resource item to the stream.

This method is used primarily by the `Store (1182)` method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Write (1216)`.

See also: `TCollection.Store (1182)`

## 67.18 TResourceFile

### 67.18.1 Description

`TResourceFile (1198)` represents the resources in a binary file image.

**67.18.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method   | Description                                       |
|----------------------|----------|---|
| <a href="#">1199</a> | Count    | Number of resources in the file                   |
| <a href="#">1201</a> | Delete   | Delete a resource from the file                   |
| <a href="#">1199</a> | Done     | Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.   |
| <a href="#">1200</a> | Flush    | Writes the resources to the stream.               |
| <a href="#">1200</a> | Get      | Return a resource by key name.                    |
| <a href="#">1199</a> | Init     | Instantiate a new instance.                       |
| <a href="#">1200</a> | KeyAt    | Return the key of the item at a certain position. |
| <a href="#">1201</a> | Put      | Set a resource by key name.                       |
| <a href="#">1200</a> | SwitchTo | Write resources to a new stream.                  |

**67.18.3 TResourceFile.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Init (AStream: PStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new instance of a `TResourceFile` object. If `AStream` is not nil then it is considered as a stream describing an executable image on disk.

`Init` will try to position the stream on the start of the resources section, and read all resources from the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Done` ([1199](#))

**67.18.4 TResourceFile.Done**

Synopsis: Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` cleans up the instance of the `TResourceFile` Object. If `Stream` was specified at initialization, then `Stream` is disposed of too.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([1199](#))

**67.18.5 TResourceFile.Count**

Synopsis: Number of resources in the file

Declaration: `function Count : Sw_Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Count` returns the number of resources. If no resources were read, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([1199](#))

**67.18.6 TResourceFile.KeyAt**

Synopsis: Return the key of the item at a certain position.

Declaration: `function KeyAt (I: Sw_Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyAt` returns the key (the name) of the `I`-th resource.

Errors: In case `I` is invalid, `TCollection.Error` will be executed.

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` ([1200](#))

**67.18.7 TResourceFile.Get**

Synopsis: Return a resource by key name.

Declaration: `function Get (Key: string) : PObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns a pointer to a instance of a resource identified by `Key`. If `Key` cannot be found in the list of resources, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Get`

**67.18.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo**

Synopsis: Write resources to a new stream.

Declaration: `function SwitchTo (AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean) : PStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `SwitchTo` switches to a new stream to hold the resources in. `AStream` will be the new stream after the call to `SwitchTo`.

If `Pack` is true, then all the known resources will be copied from the current stream to the new stream (`AStream`). If `Pack` is False, then only the current resource is copied.

The return value is the value of the original stream: `Stream`.

The `Modified` flag is set as a consequence of this call.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `TStream.Read` ([1216](#)) and `TStream.Write` ([1216](#)).

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` ([1200](#))

**67.18.9 TResourceFile.Flush**

Synopsis: Writes the resources to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: default

Description: If the `Modified` flag is set to `True`, then `Flush` writes the resources to the stream `Stream`. It sets the `Modified` flag to true after that.

Errors: Errors can be those by `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#)) and `TStream.Write` ([1216](#)).

See also: `TResourceFile.SwitchTo` ([1200](#))

### 67.18.10 TResourceFile.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a resource from the file

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Key: string)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Delete` deletes the resource identified by `Key` from the collection. It sets the `Modified` flag to `true`.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` ([1200](#))

### 67.18.11 TResourceFile.Put

Synopsis: Set a resource by key name.

Declaration: `procedure Put(Item: PObject; Key: string)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Put` sets the resource identified by `Key` to `Item`. If no such resource exists, a new one is created. The item is written to the stream.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Put` ([1214](#)) and `TStream.Seek`

See also: `Get` ([1200](#))

## 67.19 TSortedCollection

### 67.19.1 Description

`TSortedCollection` is an abstract class, implementing a sorted collection. You should never use an instance of `TSortedCollection` directly, instead you should declare a descendent type, and override the `Compare` ([1203](#)) method.

Because the collection is ordered, `TSortedCollection` overrides some `TCollection` methods, to provide faster routines for lookup.

The `Compare` ([1203](#)) method decides how elements in the collection should be ordered. Since `TCollection` has no way of knowing how to order pointers, you must override the compare method.

Additionally, `TCollection` provides a means to filter out duplicates. if you set `Duplicates` to `False` (the default) then duplicates will not be allowed.

The example below defines a descendent of `TSortedCollection` which is used in the examples.

**67.19.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method  | Description   |
|----------------------|---------|---|
| <a href="#">1203</a> | Compare | Compare two items in the collection.  |
| <a href="#">1203</a> | IndexOf | Return index of an item in the collection.  |
| <a href="#">1202</a> | Init    | Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code>                           |
| <a href="#">1205</a> | Insert  | Insert new item in collection.  |
| <a href="#">1202</a> | KeyOf   | Return the key of an item   |
| <a href="#">1202</a> | Load    | Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code> and loads it from stream. |
| <a href="#">1204</a> | Search  | Search for item with given key.   |
| <a href="#">1206</a> | Store   | Write the collection to the stream.   |

**67.19.3 TSortedCollection.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection`

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Init` ([1168](#))) and sets the `Duplicates` flag to false.

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([1202](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1169](#))

**67.19.4 TSortedCollection.Load**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection` and loads it from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load (var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#))) and reads the `Duplicates` flag from the stream..

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Init` ([1202](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1169](#))

**67.19.5 TSortedCollection.KeyOf**

Synopsis: Return the key of an item

Declaration: `function KeyOf (Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KeyOf` returns the key associated with `Item`. `TSortedCollection` returns the item itself as the key, descendent objects can override this method to calculate a (unique) key based on the item passed (such as hash values).

`Keys` are used to sort the objects, they are used to search and sort the items in the collection. If descendent types override this method then it allows possibly for faster search/sort methods based on keys rather than on the objects themselves.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` ([1203](#)), `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1203](#))

### 67.19.6 `TSortedCollection.IndexOf`

**Synopsis:** Return index of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. It searches for the object based on it's key. If duplicates are allowed, then it returns the index of last object that matches `Item`.

In case `Item` is not found in the collection, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `TCollection.IndexOf` ([1170](#))

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.Search` ([1204](#)), `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1203](#))

### 67.19.7 `TSortedCollection.Compare`

**Synopsis:** Compare two items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Compare` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects in order to compare two items in the collection. This method is used in the `Search` ([1204](#)) method and in the `Insert` ([1205](#)) method to determine the ordering of the objects.

The function should compare the two keys of items and return the following function results:

**Result < 0** If `Key1` is logically before `Key2` (`Key1 < Key2`)

**Result = 0** If `Key1` and `Key2` are equal. (`Key1 = Key2`)

**Result > 0** If `Key1` is logically after `Key2` (`Key1 > Key2`)

**Errors:** An 'abstract run-time error' will be generated if you call `TSortedCollection.Compare` directly.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` ([1203](#)), `TSortedCollection.Search` ([1204](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/mysortc.pp`

---

**Unit** MySortC;

**Interface**

**Uses** Objects;

**Type**

```

PMySortedCollection = ^TMySortedCollection;
TMySortedCollection = Object(TSortedCollection)
    Function Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer): Sw_integer; virtual;
    end;

```

**Implementation**

**Uses** MyObject;

**Function** TMySortedCollection.Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer) :sw\_integer;

**begin**

```

    Compare:=PMyobject(Key1)^.GetField - PMyObject(Key2)^.GetField;

```

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 67.19.8 TSortedCollection.Search

Synopsis: Search for item with given key.

Declaration: `function Search(Key: Pointer; var Index: Sw_Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Search looks for the item with key Key and returns the position of the item (if present) in the collection in Index.

Instead of a linear search as TCollection does, TSortedCollection uses a binary search based on the keys of the objects. It uses the Compare (1203) function to implement this search.

If the item is found, Search returns True, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.IndexOf (1170)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** ex36;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }

```

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

```

{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }

```

**Var** C : PSortedCollection;

```

    M : PMyObject;
```

```

    I : Longint;
```

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Field : ',P^.GetField);
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection , Init(120,10));
  C^.Duplicates:=True;
  Writeln ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
  M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
  Repeat;
    Write ( 'Value to search for (-1 stops) : ');
    read (I);
    If I<>-1 then
      begin
        M^.SetField(i);
        If Not C^.Search (M,I) then
          Writeln ( 'No such value found')
        else
          begin
            Write ( 'Value ',PMyObject(C^.At(I))^ .GetField);
            Writeln ( ' present at position ',I);
          end;
        end;
      Until I=-1;
      Dispose (M, Done);
      Dispose (C, Done);
    end.

```

---

### 67.19.9 TSortedCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert new item in collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts an item in the collection at the correct position, such that the collection is ordered at all times. You should never use `Atinsert` ([1181](#)), since then the collection ordering is not guaranteed.

If `Item` is already present in the collection, and `Duplicates` is `False`, the item will not be inserted.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.AtInsert` ([1181](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex35.pp`

---

```

Program ex35;

{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }

Uses Objects, MyObject, MySortC;
{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }

Var C : PSortedCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin
    WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
    WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
            M^.SetField( Random(100));
            C^.Insert( M )
        end;
    WriteLn ( 'Values : ' );
    C^.Foreach( @PrintField );
    Dispose( C, Done );
end.

```

---

### 67.19.10 TSortedCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write the collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by calling the inherited `TCollection.Store` ([1182](#)), and then writing the `Duplicates` flag to the stream.

After a `Store`, the collection can be loaded from the stream with the constructor `Load` ([1202](#))

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1168](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `TStream.Put` ([1214](#)).

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([1202](#))

## 67.20 TStrCollection

### 67.20.1 Description

The `TStrCollection` object manages a sorted collection of null-terminated strings (pchar strings). To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (1203) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 67.20.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                | Description                                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1207</a> | <code>Compare</code>  | Compare two strings in the collection.           |
| <a href="#">1208</a> | <code>FreeItem</code> | Free null-terminated string from the collection. |
| <a href="#">1208</a> | <code>GetItem</code>  | Read a null-terminated string from the stream.   |
| <a href="#">1208</a> | <code>PutItem</code>  | Write a null-terminated string to the stream.    |

### 67.20.3 TStrCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` (1203)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex38.pp`

**Program** `ex38;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStrCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects, Strings;`

**Var** `C : PStrCollection;`

`S : String;`

`I : longint;`

`P : Pchar;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`C:=New(PStrCollection, Init(120,10));`

`C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }`

`WriteLn('Inserting 100 records at random places.');`

**For** `I:=1 to 100 do`

`begin`

`Str(Random(100),S);`

---

```

    S:= 'String with value '+S;
    P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
    C^.Insert(StrPCopy(P,S));
    end;
  For I:=0 to 98 do
    With C^ do
      If Compare (At(I),At(I+1))=0 then
        Writeln ('Duplicate string found at position ',I);
      Dispose(C,Done);
    end.

```

---

#### 67.20.4 TStrCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a null-terminated string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.StrRead` ([1210](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.PutItem` ([1208](#))

#### 67.20.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Free null-terminated string from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1178](#))

#### 67.20.6 TStrCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.StrWrite` ([1215](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.GetItem` ([1208](#))

## 67.21 TStream

### 67.21.1 Description

The `TStream` object is the ancestor for all streaming objects, i.e. objects that have the capability to store and retrieve data.

It defines a number of methods that are common to all objects that implement streaming, many of them are virtual, and are only implemented in the descendent types.

Programs should not instantiate objects of type `TStream` directly, but instead instantiate a descendant type, such as `TDosStream`, `TMemoryStream`.

See also: `PStream` ([1154](#)), `TDosStream` ([1182](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([1187](#))

### 67.21.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                | Description                                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1213</a> | <code>Close</code>    | Close the stream                               |
| <a href="#">1217</a> | <code>CopyFrom</code> | Copy data from another stream.                 |
| <a href="#">1215</a> | <code>Error</code>    | Set stream status                              |
| <a href="#">1214</a> | <code>Flush</code>    | Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any. |
| <a href="#">1209</a> | <code>Get</code>      | Read an object definition from the stream.     |
| <a href="#">1211</a> | <code>GetPos</code>   | Return current position in the stream          |
| <a href="#">1211</a> | <code>GetSize</code>  | Return the size of the stream.                 |
| <a href="#">1209</a> | <code>Init</code>     | Constructor for <code>TStream</code> instance  |
| <a href="#">1213</a> | <code>Open</code>     | Open the stream                                |
| <a href="#">1214</a> | <code>Put</code>      | Write an object to the stream.                 |
| <a href="#">1216</a> | <code>Read</code>     | Read data from stream to buffer.               |
| <a href="#">1212</a> | <code>ReadStr</code>  | Read a shortstring from the stream.            |
| <a href="#">1213</a> | <code>Reset</code>    | Reset the stream                               |
| <a href="#">1215</a> | <code>Seek</code>     | Set stream position.                           |
| <a href="#">1210</a> | <code>StrRead</code>  | Read a null-terminated string from the stream. |
| <a href="#">1215</a> | <code>StrWrite</code> | Write a null-terminated string to the stream.  |
| <a href="#">1214</a> | <code>Truncate</code> | Truncate the stream size on current position.  |
| <a href="#">1216</a> | <code>Write</code>    | Write a number of bytes to the stream.         |
| <a href="#">1215</a> | <code>WriteStr</code> | Write a pascal string to the stream.           |

### 67.21.3 TStream.Init

Synopsis: Constructor for `TStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Init` initializes a `TStream` instance. Descendent streams should always call the inherited `Init`.

### 67.21.4 TStream.Get

Synopsis: Read an object definition from the stream.

Declaration: `function Get : PObject`

Visibility: `default`

**Description:** `Get` reads an object definition from a stream, and returns a pointer to an instance of this object.

**Errors:** On error, `TStream.Status` (??) is set, and `NIL` is returned.

See also: `TStream.Put` ([1214](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `ex9`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TStream.Get and TStream.Put }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ Definition and registration of TMyObject }*

**Var** `Obj : PMyObject`;  
       `S : PStream`;

**begin**

```

Obj:=New(PMyObject, Init);
Obj^.SetField($1111);
WriteLn ('Field value : ', Obj^.GetField);
{ Since Stream is an abstract type, we instantiate a TMemoryStream }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.Put(Obj);
WriteLn ('Disposing object');
S^.Seek(0);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
WriteLn ('Reading object');
Obj:=PMyObject(S^.Get);
WriteLn ('Field Value : ', Obj^.GetField);
Dispose(Obj, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 67.21.5 TStream.StrRead

**Synopsis:** Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function StrRead : PChar`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `StrRead` reads a string from the stream, allocates memory for it, and returns a pointer to a null-terminated copy of the string on the heap.

**Errors:** On error, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` ([1215](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1212](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** `ex10`;

*{  
 Program to demonstrate the TStream.StrRead TStream.StrWrite functions  
 }*

**Uses** `objects`;

---

```

Var P : PChar;
      S : PStream;

begin
  P:= 'Constant Pchar string';
  Writeln ('Writing to stream : "',P,'"');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  S^.StrWrite(P);
  S^.Seek(0);
  P:= Nil;
  P:=S^.StrRead;
  Dispose (S,Done);
  Writeln ('Read from stream : "',P,'"');
  Freemem(P, Strlen(P)+1);
end.

```

---

### 67.21.6 TStream.GetPos

Synopsis: Return current position in the stream

Declaration: `function GetPos : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk`, `GetPos` returns the current position in the stream. Otherwise it returns `-1`

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1211](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program ex11;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetPos function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
      S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  Writeln ('Stream position before write : ',S^.GetPos);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ('Stream position after write : ',S^.GetPos);
  Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.21.7 TStream.GetSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the stream.

Declaration: `function GetSize : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk` then `GetSize` returns the size of the stream, otherwise it returns `-1`.

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1211](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex12.pp`

---

```
Program ex12;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetSize function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L := 'Some kind of string';
  S := New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  WriteLn ('Stream size before write: ', S^.GetSize);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  WriteLn ('Stream size after write: ', S^.GetSize);
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.21.8 TStream.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string from the stream, copies it to the heap and returns a pointer to this copy. The string is saved as a pascal string, and hence is NOT null terminated.

Errors: On error (e.g. not enough memory), `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrRead` ([1210](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex13.pp`

---

```
Program ex13;

{
  Program to demonstrate the TStream.ReadStr TStream.WriteStr functions
}

Uses objects;

Var P : PString;
    L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
```

---

---

```

L:= 'Constant string line';
WriteIn ('Writing to stream : "',L,'"');
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.Seek(0);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
DisPose (S,Done);
WriteIn ('Read from stream : "',L,'"');
end.

```

---

### 67.21.9 TStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the stream

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Open` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since opening a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1185](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` ([1213](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([1213](#))

### 67.21.10 TStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the stream

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since Closing a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

for an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1185](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1213](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([1213](#))

### 67.21.11 TStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` sets the stream's status to 0, as well as the `ErrorInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1213](#)), `TStream.Close` ([1213](#))

**67.21.12 TStream.Flush**

Synopsis: Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to tell streams that implement a buffer to clear the buffer.

for an example, see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1165](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1214](#))

**67.21.13 TStream.Truncate**

Synopsis: Truncate the stream size on current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` is an abstract procedure that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to truncate the size of the stream to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1184](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1215](#))

**67.21.14 TStream.Put**

Synopsis: Write an object to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Put (P: PObject)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the object pointed to by `P`. `P` should be non-nil. The object type must have been registered with `RegisterType` ([1160](#)).

After the object has been written, it can be read again with `Get` ([1209](#)).

For an example, see `TStream.Get` ([1209](#));

Errors: No check is done whether `P` is `Nil` or not. Passing `Nil` will cause a run-time error 216 to be generated. If the object has not been registered, the status of the stream will be set to `stPutError`.

See also: `TStream.Get` ([1209](#))

**67.21.15 TStream.StrWrite**

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure StrWrite(P: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the null-terminated string `P` to the stream. `P` can only be 65355 bytes long.

For an example, see `TStream.StrRead` ([1210](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.WriteString` ([1215](#)), `TStream.StrRead` ([1210](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1212](#))

**67.21.16 TStream.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a pascal string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the pascal string pointed to by `P` to the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.ReadStr` ([1212](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` ([1215](#)), `TStream.StrRead` ([1210](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1212](#))

**67.21.17 TStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Pos`. This position is counted from the beginning, and is zero based. (i.e. `seek(0)` sets the position pointer on the first byte of the stream)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Seek` ([1184](#)).

Errors: If `Pos` is larger than the stream size, `Status` is set to `StSeekError`.

See also: `TStream.GetPos` ([1211](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1211](#))

**67.21.18 TStream.Error**

Synopsis: Set stream status

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` sets the stream's status to `Code` and `ErrorInfo` to `Info`. If the `StreamError` procedural variable is set, `Error` executes it, passing `Self` as an argument.

This method should not be called directly from a program. It is intended to be used in descendent objects.

Errors: None.

**67.21.19 TStream.Read**

Synopsis: Read data from stream to buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Read is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Read reads Count bytes from the stream into Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count. Buf must be large enough to contain Count bytes.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf is large enough to contain Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Write (1216), TStream.ReadStr (1212), TStream.StrRead (1210)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex18.pp

---

```

program ex18;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Read method }

Uses Objects;

Var Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..1000] of Byte;
    I : longint;
    S : PMemoryStream;

begin
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=Random(1000);
    Buf2:=Buf1;
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
    S^.Write(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    S^.Seek(0);
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=0;
    S^.Read(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        If Buf1[I]<>buf2[i] then
            WriteLn('Buffer differs at position ',I);
    Dispose(S, Done);
end.

```

---

**67.21.20 TStream.Write**

Synopsis: Write a number of bytes to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Write writes Count bytes to the stream from Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count.

For an example, see TStream.Read (1216).

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf actually contains Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Read (1216), TStream.WriteString (1215), TStream.StrWrite (1215)

**67.21.21 TStream.CopyFrom**

Synopsis: Copy data from another stream.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFrom(var S: TStream; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from stream `S` and stores them in the current stream. It uses the `Read` (1216) method to read the data, and the `Write` (1216) method to write in the current stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Read` (1216), `Write` (1216)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `ex19;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.CopyFrom function }*

**Uses** `objects;`

**Var** `P : PString;`  
       `L : String;`  
       `S1,S2 : PStream;`

**begin**  
   `L:= 'Constant string line';`  
   `Writeln ('Writing to stream 1 : "',L,'"');`  
   `S1:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S2:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S1^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S1^.Seek(0);`  
   `Writeln ('Copying contents of stream 1 to stream 2');`  
   `S2^.Copyfrom(S1^,S1^.GetSize);`  
   `S2^.Seek(0);`  
   `P:=S2^.ReadStr;`  
   `L:=P^;`  
   `DisposeStr(P);`  
   `Dispose (S1,Done);`  
   `Dispose (S2,Done);`  
   `Writeln ('Read from stream 2 : "',L,'"');`  
**end.**

---

**67.22 TStringCollection****67.22.1 Description**

The `TStringCollection` object manages a sorted collection of pascal strings. To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (1203) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

**67.22.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method   | Description                                     |
|----------------------|----------|---|
| <a href="#">1218</a> | Compare  | Compare two strings in the collection.          |
| <a href="#">1219</a> | FreeItem | Dispose a string in the collection from memory. |
| <a href="#">1218</a> | GetItem  | Get string from the stream.                     |
| <a href="#">1219</a> | PutItem  | Write a string to the stream.                   |

**67.22.3 TStringCollection.GetItem**

Synopsis: Get string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.ReadStr` ([1212](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.PutItem` ([1219](#))

**67.22.4 TStringCollection.Compare**

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns the following results:

- 1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.
- 0 if the two strings are equal.
- 1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1203](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex37.pp`

---

```

Program ex37;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStringCollection.Compare method }

Uses Objects;

Var C : PStringCollection;
    S : String;
    I : longint;

begin
    Randomize;

```

---

```

C:=New(PStringCollection, Init(120,10));
C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }
WriteLn ('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
For I:=1 to 100 do
  begin
    Str(Random(100),S);
    S:='String with value '+S;
    C^.Insert(NewStr(S));
  end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(i),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',i);
Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.22.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Dispose a string in the collection from memory.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1178](#))

### 67.22.6 TStringCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.WriteString` ([1215](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.GetItem` ([1218](#))

## 67.23 TStringList

### 67.23.1 Description

A `TStringList` object can be used to read a collection of strings stored in a stream. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` ([1160](#)) function, you cannot register the `TStrListMaker` object.

**67.23.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method | Description                  |
|----------------------|--------|------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1220</a> | Done   | Clean up the instance        |
| <a href="#">1220</a> | Get    | Return a string by key name  |
| <a href="#">1220</a> | Load   | Load stringlist from stream. |

**67.23.3 TStringList.Load**

Synopsis: Load stringlist from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Load` constructor reads the `TStringList` object from the stream `S`. It also reads the descriptions of the strings from the stream. The string descriptions are stored as an array of `TStrIndexrec` records, where each record describes a string on the stream. These records are kept in memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, a stream error is triggered.

See also: `TStringList.Done` ([1220](#))

**67.23.4 TStringList.Done**

Synopsis: Clean up the instance

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor frees the memory occupied by the string descriptions, and destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `Load` ([1220](#)), `TObject.Done` ([1190](#))

**67.23.5 TStringList.Get**

Synopsis: Return a string by key name

Declaration: `function Get(Key: Sw_Word) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` reads the string with key `Key` from the list of strings on the stream, and returns this string. If there is no string with such a key, an empty string is returned.

Errors: If no string with key `Key` is found, an empty string is returned. A stream error may result if the stream doesn't contain the needed strings.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Put` ([1221](#))

## 67.24 TStrListMaker

### 67.24.1 Description

The `TStrListMaker` object can be used to generate a stream with strings, which can be read with the `TStringList` object. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` (1160) function, you cannot register the `TStringList` object.

### 67.24.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method             | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1221</a> | <code>Done</code>  | Clean up the instance and free all related memory.       |
| <a href="#">1221</a> | <code>Init</code>  | Instantiate a new instance of <code>TStrListMaker</code> |
| <a href="#">1221</a> | <code>Put</code>   | Add a new string to the list with associated key.        |
| <a href="#">1222</a> | <code>Store</code> | Write the strings to the stream.                         |

### 67.24.3 TStrListMaker.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of `TStrListMaker`

Declaration: constructor `Init (AStrSize: Sw_Word; AIndexSize: Sw_Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Init` constructor creates a new instance of the `TstrListMaker` object. It allocates `AStrSize` bytes on the heap to hold all the strings you wish to store. It also allocates enough room for `AIndexSize` key description entries (of the type `TStrIndexrec`).

`AStrSize` must be large enough to contain all the strings you wish to store. If not enough memory is allocated, other memory will be overwritten. The same is true for `AIndexSize` : maximally `AIndexSize` strings can be written to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Init` (1189), `TStrListMaker.Done` (1221)

### 67.24.4 TStrListMaker.Done

Synopsis: Clean up the instance and free all related memory.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor de-allocates the memory for the index description records and the string data, and then destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Done` (1190), `TStrListMaker.Init` (1221)

### 67.24.5 TStrListMaker.Put

Synopsis: Add a new string to the list with associated key.

Declaration: procedure `Put (Key: Sw_Word; S: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` adds the string `S` with key `Key` to the collection of strings. This action doesn't write the string to a stream. To write the strings to the stream, see the `Store` ([1222](#)) method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Store` ([1222](#))

### 67.24.6 TStrListMaker.Store

Synopsis: Write the strings to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection of strings to the stream `S`. The collection can then be read with the `TStringList` object.

Errors: A stream error may occur when writing the strings to the stream.

See also: `TStringList.Load` ([1220](#)), `TStrListMaker.Put` ([1221](#))

## 67.25 TUnSortedStrCollection

### 67.25.1 Description

The `TUnSortedStrCollection` object manages an unsorted list of strings. To this end, it overrides the `TSortedCollection.Insert` ([1205](#)) method to add strings at the end of the collection, rather than in the alphabetically correct position.

Take care, the `Search` ([1204](#)) and `IndexOf` ([1170](#)) methods will not work on an unsorted string collection.

### 67.25.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method              | Description                            |
|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1222</a> | <code>Insert</code> | Insert a new string in the collection. |

### 67.25.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new string in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts a string at the end of the collection, instead of on its alphabetical place, resulting in an unsorted collection of strings.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` ([1176](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** ex39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TUnsortedStrCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, Strings;

**Var** C : PUnsortedStrCollection;  
      S : **String**;  
      I : longint;  
      P : Pchar;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

  C:=**New**(PUnsortedStrCollection, Init(120,10));

**Writeln** ('Inserting 100 records at random places.');

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

**Str**(Random(100),S);

      S:= 'String with value ' + S;

      C^.**Insert**(**NewStr**(S));

**end**;

**For** I:=0 **to** 99 **do**

**Writeln** (I:2, ': ', PString(C^.**At**(i))^ );

**Dispose**(C,Done);

**end**.

---

## Chapter 68

# Reference for unit 'objpas'

### 68.1 Used units

Table 68.1: Used units by unit 'objpas'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 68.2 Overview

The `objpas` unit is meant for compatibility with Object Pascal as implemented by Delphi. The unit is loaded automatically by the Free Pascal compiler whenever the `Delphi` or `objfpc` mode is entered, either through the command line switches `-Sd` or `-Sh` or with the `{ $MODE DELPHI }` or `{ $MODE OBJFPC }` directives.

It redefines some basic pascal types, introduces some functions for compatibility with Delphi's system unit, and introduces some methods for the management of the resource string tables.

### 68.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 68.3.1 Constants

`MaxInt = MaxLongint`

Maximum value for Integer ([1225](#)) type.

#### 68.3.2 Types

`FixedInt = Int32`

`FixedInt` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`FixedUInt = UInt32`

FixedUInt is provided for Delphi compatibility.

Integer = LongInt

In OBJPAS mode and in DELPHI mode, an Integer has a size of 32 bit. In TP or regular FPC mode, an integer is 16 bit.

IntegerArray = Array[0..\$effffff] of Integer

Generic array of integer (1225)

PInteger = ^Integer

Pointer to Integer (1225) type.

PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray

Pointer to TIntegerArray (1225) type.

PointerArray = Array[0..512\*1024\*1024-2] of Pointer

Generic Array of pointers.

PPointerArray = ^PointerArray

Pointer to PointerArray (1225)

PString = PAnsiString

Pointer to ansistring type.

TEndian = (Little,Big)

Table 68.2: Enumeration values for type TEndian

| Value  | Explanation              |
|--------|--------------------------|
| Big    | Big endian byte order    |
| Little | Little endian byte order |

TEndian describes the endianness of a computer architecture.

TIntegerArray = IntegerArray

Alias for IntegerArray (1225)

TPointerArray = PointerArray

Alias for PointerArray (1225)

## Chapter 69

# Reference for unit 'ports'

### 69.1 Used units

Table 69.1: Used units by unit 'ports'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 69.2 Overview

The ports unit implements the `port` constructs found in Turbo Pascal. It uses classes and default array properties to do this.

The unit exists on Linux, OS/2 and Dos. It is implemented only for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. Its usage is discouraged, because using ports is not portable programming, and the operating system may not even allow it (for instance Windows).

Under Linux, your program must be run as root, or the `IOPerm` call must be set in order to set appropriate permissions on the port access.

### 69.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 69.3.1 Variables

```
port : tport
```

Default instance of type `TPort` ([1227](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
port[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the integer 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

```
portb : tport
```

Default instance of type TPort ([1227](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portb[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the byte 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

```
portl : tportl
```

Default instance of type TPortL ([1228](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portl[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the longint 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

```
portw : tportw
```

Default instance of type TPortW ([1228](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portw[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the word 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

## 69.4 tport

### 69.4.1 Description

The TPort type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: port ([1226](#)), TPortW ([1228](#)), TPortL ([1228](#))

### 69.4.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                              |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1227</a> | pp         | rw     | Access integer-sized port by port number |

### 69.4.3 tport.pp

Synopsis: Access integer-sized port by port number

Declaration: Property pp[w: Word]: Byte; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access integer-sized port by port number

## 69.5 tportl

### 69.5.1 Description

The `TPortL` type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: `portw` ([1227](#)), `TPort` ([1227](#)), `TPortL` ([1228](#))

### 69.5.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                              |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1228</a> | pp         | rw     | Access Longint-sized port by port number |

### 69.5.3 tportl.pp

Synopsis: Access Longint-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: Word]: LongInt; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Access Longint-sized port by port number

## 69.6 tportw

### 69.6.1 Description

The `TPortW` type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: `portw` ([1227](#)), `TPort` ([1227](#)), `TPortL` ([1228](#))

### 69.6.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                           |
|----------------------|------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1228</a> | pp         | rw     | Access word-sized port by port number |

### 69.6.3 tportw.pp

Synopsis: Access word-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: Word]: Word; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Access word-sized port by port number

## Chapter 70

# Reference for unit 'printer'

### 70.1 Used units

Table 70.1: Used units by unit 'printer'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 70.2 Overview

This chapter describes the `printer` unit for Free Pascal. It was written for DOS by Florian Klaempfl, and it was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and has been ported to Windows and OS/2 as well. Its basic functionality is the same for all supported systems, although there are minor differences on Linux and UNIX.

### 70.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 70.3.1 Variables

`Lst` : `text`

`Lst` is the standard printing device.

On Linux, `Lst` is set up using `AssignLst('/tmp/PID.lst')`.

### 70.4 Procedures and functions

#### 70.4.1 AssignLst

Synopsis: Assign text file to printing device

Declaration: `procedure AssignLst (var F: text; ToFile: string)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** AssignLst assigns to F a printing device - *UNIX only*. ToFile is a string with the following form:

- '|filename options': This sets up a pipe with the program filename, with the given options, such as in the popen() call.
- 'filename': Prints to file filename. Filename can contain the string 'PID' (No Quotes), which will be replaced by the PID of your program. When closing lst, the file will be sent to lpr and deleted. (lpr should be in PATH)
- {'filename|'}: Same as previous, only the file is *not* sent to lpr, nor is it deleted. (useful for opening /dev/printer or for later printing)

See also: lst ([1229](#))

**Listing:** ./printex/printex.pp

---

```

program testprn;

uses printer;

var i : integer;
    f : text;

begin
  writeln ('Test of printer unit');
  writeln ('Writing to lst...');
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (lst, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (lst);
  writeln ('Done. ');
  {$ifdef Unix}
  writeln ('Writing to pipe...');
  assignlst (f, '|usr/bin/lpr -m');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (f, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (f);
  writeln ('Done. ')
  {$endif}
end.

```

---

### 70.4.2 InitPrinter

**Synopsis:** Initialize the printer

**Declaration:** procedure InitPrinter(const PrinterName: string)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Initialize the printer

### 70.4.3 IsLstAvailable

**Synopsis:** Determine whether printer is available.

**Declaration:** function IsLstAvailable : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Determine whether printer is available.

# Chapter 71

## Reference for unit 'sharemem'

### 71.1 Used units

Table 71.1: Used units by unit 'sharemem'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 71.2 Overview

`sharemem` implements a shared memory manager. Including this unit will replace the standard memory manager with a memory manager which uses shared memory. This means the memory allocated by this unit can be managed by a program and a DLL if they both use the shared memory manager: it allows, amongst other things, to pass ansistrings or Unicode strings from a program to a DLL and vice versa.

This unit does not implement any routines: all actions to replace the memory manager are performed in the initialization section of the unit. The unit should be placed as the first unit in a program or DLL's uses section, memory corruption may occur if the unit is not placed first.

This unit requires the `fpcmemdll.dll` library to be distributed with both program and dll that use this unit. This DLL is distributed with the windows Free Pascal distribution.

## Chapter 72

# Reference for unit 'Sockets'

### 72.1 Used units

Table 72.1: Used units by unit 'Sockets'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 72.2 Overview

This document describes the SOCKETS unit for Free Pascal. it was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and ported to Windows by Florian Klaempfl.

### 72.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 72.3.1 Constants

`AF_ALG` = 38

`AF_APPLETALK` = 5

Address family Appletalk DDP

`AF_ASH` = 18

Address family: Ash

`AF_ATMPVC` = 8

Address family: ATM PVCs

AF\_ATMSVC = 20

Address family: ATM SVCs

AF\_AX25 = 3

Address family Amateur Radio AX.25

AF\_BLUETOOTH = 31

Address family: Bluetooth sockets

AF\_BRIDGE = 7

Address family Multiprotocol bridge

AF\_CAIF = 37

AF\_CAN = 29

AF\_DECnet = 12

Address family: Reserved for DECnet project.

AF\_ECONET = 19

Address family: Acorn Econet

AF\_IB = 27

AF\_IEEE802154 = 36

AF\_INET = 2

Address family Internet IP Protocol

AF\_INET6 = 10

Address family IP version 6

AF\_IPX = 4

Address family Novell IPX

AF\_IRDA = 23

Address family: IRDA sockets

AF\_ISDN = 34

Address family: ?

AF\_IUCV = 32

AF\_KCM = 41

AF\_KEY = 15

Address family: PF\_KEY key management API

AF\_LLC = 26

Address family: Linux LLC

AF\_LOCAL = 1

Address family: Unix socket

AF\_MAX = 45

Address family Maximum value

AF\_MPLS = 28

AF\_NETBEUI = 13

Address family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project

AF\_NETLINK = 16

Address family: ?

AF\_NETROM = 6

Address family Amateur radio NetROM

AF\_NFC = 39

AF\_PACKET = 17

Address family: Packet family

AF\_PHONET = 35

AF\_PPPOX = 24

Address family: PPPoX sockets

AF\_QIPCRTR = 42

AF\_RDS = 21

AF\_ROSE = 11

Address family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

AF\_ROUTE = AF\_NETLINK

Address family: Alias to emulate 4.4BSD.

AF\_RXRPC = 33

AF\_SECURITY = 14

Address family: Security callback pseudo AF

AF\_SMC = 43

AF\_SNA = 22

Address family: Linux SNA project

AF\_TIPC = 30

Address family: TIPC sockets

AF\_UNIX = 1

Address family Unix domain sockets

AF\_UNSPEC = 0

Address family Not specified

AF\_VSOCK = 40

AF\_WANPIPE = 25

Address family: Wanpipe API Sockets

AF\_X25 = 9

Address family Reserved for X.25 project

`AF_XDP = 44`

`EsockADDRINUSE = ESysEADDRINUSE`

`EsockADDRINUSE` is the error reported by `fpBind` ([1266](#)) when the socket is already in use.

`EsockEACCESS = ESysEAcces`

**Access forbidden error**

`EsockEBADF = ESysEBADF`

**Alias: bad file descriptor**

`EsockEFAULT = ESysEFAULT`

**Alias: an error occurred**

`EsockEINTR = ESysEINTR`

**Alias : operation interrupted**

`EsockEINVAL = ESysEINVAL`

**Alias: Invalid value specified**

`EsockEMFILE = ESysEmfile`

**Error code ?**

`EsockEMSGSIZE = ESysEMsgSize`

**Wrong message size error**

`EsockENOBUFFS = ESysENoBufs`

**No buffer space available error**

`EsockENOTCONN = ESysENotConn`

**Not connected error**

`EsockENOTSOCK = ESysENotSock`

**File descriptor is not a socket error**

`EsockEPROTONOSUPPORT = ESysEProtoNoSupport`

**Protocol not supported error**

`EsockEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEWouldBlock`

Operation would block error

`INADDR_ANY = CARDINAL(0)`

A bitmask matching any IP address on the local machine.

`INADDR_NONE = CARDINAL($FFFFFFFF)`

A bitmask matching no valid IP address

`IPPROTO_AH = 51`

authentication header.

`IPPROTO_COMP = 108`

Compression Header Protocol.

`IPPROTO_DSTOPTS = 60`

IPv6 destination options.

`IPPROTO_EGP = 8`

Exterior Gateway Protocol.

`IPPROTO_ENCAP = 98`

Encapsulation Header.

`IPPROTO_ESP = 50`

encapsulating security payload.

`IPPROTO_FRAGMENT = 44`

IPv6 fragmentation header.

`IPPROTO_GRE = 47`

General Routing Encapsulation.

`IPPROTO_HOPOPTS = 0`

IPv6 Hop-by-Hop options.

`IPPROTO_ICMP = 1`

Internet Control Message Protocol.

IPPROTO\_ICMPV6 = 58

ICMPv6.

IPPROTO\_IDP = 22

XNS IDP protocol.

IPPROTO\_IGMP = 2

Internet Group Management Protocol.

IPPROTO\_IP = 0

Dummy protocol for TCP.

IPPROTO\_IPIP = 4

IPIP tunnels (older KA9Q tunnels use 94).

IPPROTO\_IPV6 = 41

IPv6 header.

IPPROTO\_MAX = 255

Maximum value for IPPROTO options

IPPROTO\_MTP = 92

Multicast Transport Protocol.

IPPROTO\_NONE = 59

IPv6 no next header.

IPPROTO\_PIM = 103

Protocol Independent Multicast.

IPPROTO\_PUP = 12

PUP protocol.

IPPROTO\_RAW = 255

Raw IP packets.

IPPROTO\_ROUTING = 43

IPv6 routing header.

IPPROTO\_RSVP = 46

Reservation Protocol.

IPPROTO\_SCTP = 132

Stream Control Transmission Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TCP = 6

Transmission Control Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TP = 29

SO Transport Protocol Class 4.

IPPROTO\_UDP = 17

User Datagram Protocol.

IPV6\_ADDRFORM = 1

Change the IPV6 address into a different address family. Deprecated

IPV6\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_AUTHHDR = 10

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Deliver authentication header messages

IPV6\_CHECKSUM = 7

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DSTOPTS = 4

Deliver destination option control messages

IPV6\_HOPLIMIT = 8

Deliver an integer containing the HOP count

IPV6\_HOPOPTS = 3

Deliver hop option control messages

IPV6\_IPSEC\_POLICY = 34

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_ANYCAST = 27

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP = 20

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (join group) in multicast groups

IPV6\_LEAVE\_ANYCAST = 28

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 21

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (leave group)in multicast groups

IPV6\_MTU = 24

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the MTU for the socket

IPV6\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 23

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Control path MTU Discovery on the socket

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_HOPS = 18

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the multicast hop limit.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_IF = 17

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set device for multicast packages on the socket.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 19

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control whether socket sees multicast packages that it has sent itself

IPV6\_NEXTHOP = 9

sendmsg: set next hop for IPV6 datagram

IPV6\_PKTINFO = 2

Change delivery options for incoming IPV6 datagrams

IPV6\_PKTOPTIONS = 6

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IPV6\_RECVERR = 25

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control receiving of asynchronous error options

IPV6\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 22

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Pass all forwarded packets containing router alert option

IPV6\_RTHDR = 5

Deliver routing header control messages

IPV6\_RTHDR\_LOOSE = 0

Hop doesn't need to be neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_STRICT = 1

Hop must be a neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_TYPE\_0 = 0

IPv6 Routing header type 0.

IPV6\_RXDSTOPTS = IPV6\_DSTOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXHOPOPTS = IPV6\_HOPOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXSRCRT = IPV6\_RTHDR

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_UNICAST\_HOPS = 16

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set unicast hop limit

IPV6\_V6ONLY = 26

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Handle IPV6 connections only

IPV6\_XFRM\_POLICY = 35

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPX\_TYPE = 1

IP\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = 35

add an IP group membership

IP\_ADD\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 39

join source group

IP\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 38

block data from source

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 1

Undocumented ?

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 1

Undocumented ?

IP\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = 36

drop an IP group membership

IP\_DROP\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 40

leave source group

IP\_HDRINCL = 3

Header is included with data.

IP\_MAX\_MEMBERSHIPS = 20

Maximum group memberships for multicast messages

IP\_MSFILTER = 41

Undocumented ?

IP\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 10

Undocumented ?

IP\_MULTICAST\_IF = 32

set/get IP multicast i/f

IP\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 34

set/get IP multicast loopback

IP\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 33

set/get IP multicast ttl

IP\_OPTIONS = 4

IP per-packet options.

IP\_PKTINFO = 8

Undocumented ?

IP\_PKTOPTIONS = 9

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC = 10

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IP\_RECVERR = 11

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVOPTS = 6

Receive all IP options w/datagram.

IP\_RECVRETOPTS = IP\_RETOPTS

Receive IP options for response.

IP\_RECVTOS = 13

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVTTL = 12

Undocumented ?

IP\_RETOPTS = 7

Set/get IP per-packet options.

IP\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 5

Undocumented ?

IP\_TOS = 1

IP type of service and precedence.

IP\_TTL = 2

IP time to live.

IP\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 37

unblock data from source

MCAST\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 43

block from given group

MCAST\_EXCLUDE = 0

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_INCLUDE = 1

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_JOIN\_GROUP = 42

join any-source group

MCAST\_JOIN\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 46

join source-spec gruoup

MCAST\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 45

leave any-source group

MCAST\_LEAVE\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 47

leave source-spec group

MCAST\_MSFILTER = 48

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 44

unblock from given group

MSG\_BATCH = \$00040000

MSG\_CMSG\_CLOEXEC = \$40000000

MSG\_CMSG\_COMPAT = \$0

MSG\_CONFIRM = \$00000800

Send flags: Conform connection

MSG\_CTRUNC = \$00000008

Receive flags: Control Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_DONTROUTE = \$00000004

Send flags: don't use gateway

MSG\_DONTWAIT = \$00000040

Receive flags: Non-blocking operation request.

MSG\_EOF = MSG\_FIN

Alias for MSG\_FIN

MSG\_EOR = \$00000080

Receive flags: End of record

MSG\_ERRQUEUE = \$00002000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_FASTOPEN = \$20000000

MSG\_FIN = \$00000200

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_MORE = \$00008000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_NOSIGNAL = \$00004000

Receive flags: Suppress SIG\_PIPE signal.

MSG\_NO\_SHARED\_FRAGS = \$00080000

MSG\_OOB = \$00000001

Receive flags: receive out-of-band data.

MSG\_PEEK = \$00000002

Receive flags: peek at data, don't remove from buffer.

MSG\_PROBE = MSG\_PROXY

MSG\_PROXY = \$00000010

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_RST = \$00001000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_SENDPAGE\_DECRYPTED = \$00100000

MSG\_SENDPAGE\_NOPOLICY = \$00010000

MSG\_SENDPAGE\_NOTLAST = \$00020000

MSG\_SYN = \$00000400

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_TRUNC = \$00000020

Receive flags: packet Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_TRYHARD = MSG\_DONTROUTE

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_WAITALL = \$00000100

Receive flags: Wait till operation completed.

MSG\_WAITFORONE = \$00010000

MSG\_ZEROCOPY = \$04000000

NoAddress : in\_addr = (s\_addr: 0)

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoAddress6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

NoNet : in\_addr = (s\_addr: 0)

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoNet6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

PF\_ALG = AF\_ALG

PF\_APPLETALK = AF\_APPLETALK

Protocol family: Appletalk DDP

PF\_ASH = AF\_ASH

Protocol family: Ash

PF\_ATMPVC = AF\_ATMPVC

Protocol family: ATM PVCs

PF\_ATMSVC = AF\_ATMSVC

Protocol family: ATM SVCs

PF\_AX25 = AF\_AX25

Protocol family: Amateur Radio AX.25

PF\_BLUETOOTH = AF\_BLUETOOTH

Protocol family: Bluetooth sockets

PF\_BRIDGE = AF\_BRIDGE

Protocol family: Multiprotocol bridge

PF\_CAIF = AF\_CAIF

PF\_CAN = AF\_CAN

PF\_DECnet = AF\_DECnet

Protocol Family: DECNET project

PF\_ECONET = AF\_ECONET

Protocol family: Acorn Econet

PF\_IB = AF\_IB

PF\_IEEE802154 = AF\_IEEE802154

PF\_INET = AF\_INET

Protocol family: Internet IP Protocol

PF\_INET6 = AF\_INET6

Protocol family: IP version 6

PF\_IPX = AF\_IPX

Protocol family: Novell IPX

PF\_IRDA = AF\_IRDA

Protocol family: IRDA sockets

PF\_ISDN = AF\_ISDN

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_IUCV = AF\_IUCV

PF\_KCM = AF\_KCM

PF\_KEY = AF\_KEY

**Protocol family: Key management API**

PF\_LLC = AF\_LLC

**Protocol family: Linux LLC**

PF\_LOCAL = AF\_LOCAL

**Protocol family: Unix socket**

PF\_MAX = AF\_MAX

**Protocol family: Maximum value**

PF\_MPLS = AF\_MPLS

PF\_NETBEUI = AF\_NETBEUI

**Protocol family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project**

PF\_NETLINK = AF\_NETLINK

**Protocol family: ?**

PF\_NETROM = AF\_NETROM

**Protocol family: Amateur radio NetROM**

PF\_NFC = AF\_NFC

PF\_PACKET = AF\_PACKET

**Protocol family: Packet family**

PF\_PHONET = AF\_PHONET

PF\_PPPOX = AF\_PPPOX

**Protocol family: PPPoX sockets**

PF\_QIPCRTR = AF\_QIPCRTR

PF\_RDS = AF\_RDS

PF\_ROSE = AF\_ROSE

Protocol family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

PF\_ROUTE = AF\_ROUTE

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_RXRPC = AF\_RXRPC

PF\_SECURITY = AF\_SECURITY

Protocol family: Security callback pseudo PF

PF\_SMC = AF\_SMC

PF\_SNA = AF\_SNA

Protocol Family: Linux SNA project

PF\_TIPC = AF\_TIPC

Protocol family: TIPC sockets

PF\_UNIX = AF\_UNIX

Protocol family: Unix domain sockets

PF\_UNSPEC = AF\_UNSPEC

Protocol family: Unspecified

PF\_VSOCK = AF\_VSOCK

PF\_WANPIPE = AF\_WANPIPE

Protocol family: Wanpipe API Sockets

PF\_X25 = AF\_X25

Protocol family: Reserved for X.25 project

PF\_XDP = AF\_XDP

SCM\_CREDENTIALS = \$02

SCM\_RIGHTS = \$01

SCM\_SECURITY = 03

SCM\_SRCRT = IPV6\_RXSRCRT

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

SCM\_TIMESTAMP = SO\_TIMESTAMP

Socket option: ?

SHUT\_RD = 0

Shutdown read part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_RDWR = 2

Shutdown read and write part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_WR = 1

Shutdown write part of full duplex socket

SOCK\_DGRAM = 2

Type of socket: datagram (conn.less) socket (UDP)

SOCK\_MAXADDRLLEN = 255

Maximum socket address length for Bind ([1262](#)) call.

SOCK\_RAW = 3

Type of socket: raw socket

SOCK\_RDM = 4

Type of socket: reliably-delivered message

SOCK\_SEQPACKET = 5

Type of socket: sequential packet socket

SOCK\_STREAM = 1

Type of socket: stream (connection) type socket (TCP)

SOL\_AAL = 265

SOL\_ALG = 279

SOL\_ATALK = 258

SOL\_ATM = 264

SOL\_AX25 = 257

SOL\_BLUETOOTH = 274

SOL\_CAIF = 278

SOL\_DCCP = 269

SOL\_DECNET = 261

SOL\_ICMPV6 = 58

**Socket level values for IPv6: ICMPV6**

SOL\_IP = 0

**Undocumented ?**

SOL\_IPV6 = 41

**Socket level values for IPv6: IPV6**

SOL\_IPX = 256

SOL\_IRDA = 266

SOL\_IUCV = 277

SOL\_KCM = 281

SOL\_LLC = 268

SOL\_NETBEUI = 267

SOL\_NETLINK = 270

SOL\_NETROM = 259

SOL\_NFC = 280

SOL\_PACKET = 263

SOL\_PNPIPE = 275

SOL\_PPPOL2TP = 273

SOL\_RAW = 255

SOL\_RDS = 276

SOL\_ROSE = 260

SOL\_RXRPC = 272

SOL\_SCTP = 132

SOL\_SOCKET = 1

Socket option level: Socket level

SOL\_TCP = 6

SOL\_TIPC = 271

SOL\_TLS = 282

SOL\_UDP = 17

SOL\_UDPLITE = 136

SOL\_X25 = 262

SOL\_XDP = 283

SOMAXCONN = 4096

Maximum queue length specifiable by listen.

SO\_ACCEPTCONN = 30

Socket option: ?

SO\_ATTACH\_FILTER = 26

Socket option: ?

SO\_BINDTODEVICE = 25

Socket option: ?

SO\_BROADCAST = 6

Socket option: Broadcast

SO\_BSDCOMPAT = 14

Socket option: ?

SO\_DEBUG = 1

Socket option level: debug

SO\_DETACH\_FILTER = 27

Socket option: ?

SO\_DONTROUTE = 5

Socket option: Don't route

SO\_ERROR = 4

Socket option: Error

SO\_KEEPAIVE = 9

Socket option: keep alive

SO\_LINGER = 13

Socket option: ?

SO\_NO\_CHECK = 11

Socket option: ?

SO\_OOBINLINE = 10

Socket option: ?

SO\_PASSCRED = 16

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERCREC = 17

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERNAME = 28

Socket option: ?

SO\_PRIORITY = 12

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVBUF = 8

Socket option: receive buffer

SO\_RCVLOWAT = 18

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVTIMEO = 20

Socket option: ?

SO\_REUSEADDR = 2

Socket option: Reuse address

SO\_REUSEPORT = 15

SO\_SECURITY\_AUTHENTICATION = 22

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_NETWORK = 24

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_TRANSPORT = 23

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDBUF = 7

Socket option: Send buffer

SO\_SNDLOWAT = 19

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDTIMEO = 21

Socket option: ?

SO\_TIMESTAMP = 29

Socket option: ?

SO\_TYPE = 3

Socket option: Type

S\_IN = 0

Input socket in socket pair.

S\_OUT = 1

Output socket in socket pair

TCP\_CONGESTION = 13

Get/set the congestion-control algorithm for this socket

TCP\_CORK = 3

Get/Set CORK algorithm: Send only complete packets

TCP\_DEFER\_ACCEPT = 9

Get/Set deferred accept on server socket

TCP\_INFO = 11

Get TCP connection information (Linux only)

TCP\_KEEPCNT = 6

Get/Set retry count for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPIDL = 4

Get/Set inactivity interval between KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPINTVL = 5

Get/Set retry interval for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_LINGER2 = 8

Get/Set Linger2 flag

TCP\_MAXSEG = 2

Get/Set Maximum segment size

TCP\_MD5SIG = 14

Get/Set TCP MD5 signature option

TCP\_NODELAY = 1

Get/Set No delay flag: disable Nagle algorithm

TCP\_QUICKACK = 12

Get/Set quick ACK packet option.

TCP\_SYNCNT = 7

Get/Set number of SYN packets to send before giving up on connection establishment

TCP\_WINDOW\_CLAMP = 10

Get/Set maximum packet size

UDP\_CORK = 1

Get/Set UDP CORK algorithm on datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP = 100

Get/Set UDP encapsulation flag for IPSec datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP = 2

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP\_NON\_IKE = 1

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_L2TPINUDP = 3

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

### 72.3.2 Types

```

in6_addr = packed record
case Byte of
0: (
  u6_addr8 : Array[0..15]
    of Byte;
);
1: (
  u6_addr16 : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
2: (
  u6_addr32
    : Array[0..3] of Cardinal;
);
3: (
  s6_addr8 : Array[0..15] of ShortInt
    ;
);
4: (
  s6_addr : Array[0..15] of ShortInt;
);
5: (
  s6_addr16
    : Array[0..7] of SmallInt;
);
6: (
  s6_addr32 : Array[0..3] of LongInt
    ;
);
end

```

Record used to describe a general IPV6 address.

```

in_addr = packed record
case Boolean of
True: (
  s_addr : cuint32
    ;
);
False: (
  s_bytes : packed Array[1..4] of Byte;
);
end

```

General inet socket address.

PIn6Addr = pin6\_addr

Pointer to in6\_addr ([1258](#)) type.

pin6\_addr = ^in6\_addr

Pointer to Tin6\_addr ([1260](#))

`PInAddr = pin_addr`

Alias for `pin_addr` (1259)

`PInetSockAddr = psockaddr_in`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in` (1279)

`PInetSockAddr6 = psockaddr_in6`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in6` (1280) type

`pin_addr = ^in_addr`

Pointer to `in_addr` (1258) record.

`plinger = ^linger`

Pointer to `linger` (1279) type.

`psockaddr = ^sockaddr`

Pointer to `TSockAddr` (1260)

`PSockAddr6 = ^TSockAddr6`

`PSockAddr6` is a pointer to a record of type `TSockAddr6` (1261).

`psockaddr_in = ^sockaddr_in`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in` (1279)

`psockaddr_in6 = ^sockaddr_in6`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in6` (1280)

`psockaddr_un = ^sockaddr_un`

Pointer to `sockaddr_un` (1280) type.

`Pucred = ^ucred`

`sa_family_t = cushort`

Address family type

```

sockaddr = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
  sa_family : sa_family_t
  ;
  sa_data : packed Array[0..13] of cuint8;
);
1: (
  sin_family
  : sa_family_t;
  sin_port : cushort;
  sin_addr : in_addr;
  sin_zero
  : packed Array[0..7] of cuint8;
);
end

```

sockaddr is used to store a general socket address for the FPBind (1266), FPrece (1270) and FPSend (1271) calls.

TIn6Addr = in6\_addr

Alias for in6\_addr (1258) type.

Tin6\_addr = in6\_addr

Alias for sockaddr\_in6 (1280)

TInAddr = in\_addr

Alias for in\_addr (1258) record type.

TInetSockAddr = sockaddr\_in

Alias for sockaddr\_in (1279)

TInetSockAddr6 = sockaddr\_in6

Alias for sockaddr\_in6 (1280)

TIn\_addr = in\_addr

Alias for in\_addr (1258) record type.

TLinger = linger

Alias for linger (1279)

TSockAddr = sockaddr

TSockAddr6 = sockaddr\_in6

`TSockAddr6` is an alias for `sockaddr6_in` (1232)

`TSockArray` = `Array[1..2]` of `LongInt`

Type returned by the `FPSocketPair` (1274) call.

`Tsocket` = `LongInt`

Alias for easy kylix porting

`TSockLen` = `BaseUnix.TSocklen`

The actual type of `TSockLen` depends on the platform.

`TSockPairArray` = `Array[0..1]` of `LongInt`

Array of sockets, used in `FPSocketPair` (1274) call.

## 72.4 Procedures and functions

### 72.4.1 Accept

Synopsis: Accept a connection from a socket (deprecated).

**Declaration:**

```
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr;
               var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr;
               var SockIn: text; var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: string; var SockIn: text;
               var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: string; var SockIn: File;
               var SockOut: File) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `Sock`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned. On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addr`, and sets its length in `AddrLen`. `Addr` should be pointing to enough space, and `AddrLen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

The alternate forms of the `Accept` (1261) command, with the `Text` or `File` parameters are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (1261) function and the `Sock2Text` (1277) or `Sock2File` (1277) functions. These functions return `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF** (1236) The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK** (1236) The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**ESockEFAULT** (1236) `Addr` points outside your address space.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1237)** The requested operation would block the process.

See also: **FPListen (1270)**, **Connect (1263)**, **FPConnect (1267)**, **FPBind (1266)**

**Listing:** ./sockex/socksvr.pp

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
{$mode fpc}
uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer    : string[255];
  S         : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr     : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    Perror ('Server : Socket : ');
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Bind : ');
  if fpListen (S, 1)=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if Accept(S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  ReWrite(Sout);
  Writeln(Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
end.

```

---

## 72.4.2 Bind

Synopsis: Alias for **fpBind**.

**Declaration:** `function Bind(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Bind` is an alias for `fpBind` (1266) which binds to either a socket struct (`Addr`) or a string indicating a UNIX socket file (UNIX socket).

This function is deprecated, use `fpBind` instead.

See also: `FPBind` (1266)

### 72.4.3 CloseSocket

**Synopsis:** Closes a socket handle.

**Declaration:** `function CloseSocket(Sock: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CloseSocket` closes a socket handle. It returns 0 if the socket was closed successfully, -1 if it failed.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FPSocket` (1273)

### 72.4.4 Connect

**Synopsis:** Open a connection to a server socket (deprecated).

**Declaration:**

```
function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;
                 var SockIn: text; var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;
                 var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File) : Boolean
function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string; var SockIn: text;
                 var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string; var SockIn: File;
                 var SockOut: File) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Connect` opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Addr`. `AddrLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Addr` depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The forms of the `Connect` (1263) command with the `Text` or `File` arguments are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Connect` function and the `Sock2Text` (1277) or `Sock2File` (1277) functions. These functions return `True` if success full, `False` otherwise.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was success full, -1 in case of error.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `FPListen` (1270), `FPBind` (1266), `Accept` (1261), `FPAccept` (1265)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** Client;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** Sockets;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
SAddr   : TInetSockAddr;
Buffer  : string [255];
S        : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i        : integer;
```

**begin**

```
S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
if s=-1 then
  PError('Client : Socket : ');
SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
{ port 50000 in network order }
SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
{ localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=HostToNet((127 shl 24) or 1);
if not Connect (S, SAddr, Sin, Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
Flush(Sout);
Readln(Sin, Buffer);
WriteLn(Buffer);
Close(sout);
```

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

**program** pfinger;

**uses** sockets, errors;

**Var**

```
Addr : TInetSockAddr;
S : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
Line : string;
```

---

```

begin
  Addr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.sin_port:=79 shl 8;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.sin_addr.s_addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);
  S:=fpSocket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
  If Not Connect (S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then
    begin
      Writeln ('Couldn't connect to localhost');
      Writeln ('Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));
      halt(1);
    end;
  rewrite (sout);
  reset(sin);
  writeln (sout,paramstr(1));
  flush(sout);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      readln (Sin,line);
      writeln (line);
    end;
  fpShutdown(s,2);
  close (sin);
  close (sout);
end.

```

---

### 72.4.5 fpaccept

Synopsis: Accept a connection from a socket.

Declaration: `function fpaccept(s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: pSockLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `S`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned (positive number). On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addrx`, and sets its length in `Addrlen`. `Addrx` should be pointing to enough space, and `Addrlen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1237)**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: `fpListen` (1270), `fpConnect` (1267), `fpBind` (1266)

Listing: `./sockex/socksvr.pp`

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
{$mode fpc}
uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer   : string[255];
  S        : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    Perror ('Server : Socket : ');
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Bind : ');
  if fpListen (S, 1)=-1 then
    PError ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln ('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if Accept(S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  ReWrite(Sout);
  Writeln (Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln ('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 72.4.6 fpbind

Synopsis: Bind a socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fpbind(s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: TSockLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `fpBind` binds the socket `s` to address `Addrx`. `Addrx` has length `AddrLen`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, -1 if not.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `SocketError` and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockEINVAL (1236)** The socket is already bound to an address,

**ESockEACCESS (1236)** Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

See also: `FPSocket` (1273)

### 72.4.7 fpconnect

**Synopsis:** Open a connection to a server socket.

**Declaration:** `function fpconnect(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: TSockLen) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpConnect` uses the socket `s` to open a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Name`. `NameLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Name` depends on the kind of connection you are trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The `fpConnect` function returns zero if the call was success full, -1 in case of error.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `fpListen` (1270), `fpBind` (1266), `fpAccept` (1265)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** Client;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** Sockets;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;
Buffer   : string [255];
S        : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i        : integer;
```

**begin**

```

S:=fpSocket (AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
if s=-1 then
  Perror('Client : Socket : ');
SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
{ port 50000 in network order }
SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
{ localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=HostToNet((127 shl 24) or 1);
if not Connect (S,SAddr,Sin,Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
Flush(Sout);
Readln(Sin, Buffer);
WriteLn( Buffer);
Close(sout);
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

```

program pfinger;

uses sockets , errors ;

Var
  Addr : TInetSockAddr;
  S : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  Line : string;

begin
  Addr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.sin_port:=79 shl 8;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.sin_addr.s_addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);
  S:=fpSocket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
  If Not Connect (S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then
    begin
      Writeln ('Couldn't connect to localhost');
      Writeln ('Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));
      halt(1);
    end;
  rewrite (sout);
  reset(sin);
  writeln (sout, paramstr(1));
  flush(sout);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      readln (Sin, line);
      writeln (line);
    end;
  fpShutdown(s,2);
  close (sin);
  close (sout);
end.

```

### 72.4.8 fpgetpeername

Synopsis: Return the name (address) of the connected peer.

Declaration: `function fpgetpeername(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: pSockLen)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetPeerName` returns the name of the entity connected to the specified socket `S`. The Socket must be connected for this call to work.

Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and Name will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOBUFS (1236)**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)**Addr points outside your address space.

**ESockENOTCONN (1236)**The socket isn't connected.

See also: `fpConnect` (1267), `fpSocket` (1273)

### 72.4.9 fpgetsockname

Synopsis: Return name of socket.

Declaration: `function fpgetsockname(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: pSockLen)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockName` returns the current name of the specified socket `S`. Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and `Namelen` will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOBUFS (1236)**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)**Addr points outside your address space.

See also: `fpBind` (1266)

### 72.4.10 fpgetsockopt

Synopsis: Get current socket options

Declaration: `function fpgetsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint;  
optval: pointer; optlen: pSockLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockOpt` gets the connection option `optname`, for socket `S`. The socket may be obtained from different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET** From the socket itself.

**XXX** set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The options are stored in the memory location pointed to by `optval`. `optlen` should point to the initial length of `optval`, and on return will contain the actual length of the stored data.

On success, 0 is returned. On Error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)** The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)** `OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpSetSockOpt` (1272)

### 72.4.11 fplisten

Synopsis: Listen for connections on a socket.

Declaration: `function fplisten(s: cint; backlog: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpListen` listens for up to `backlog` connections from socket `S`. The socket `S` must be of type `SOCK_STREAM` or `Sock_SEQPACKET`.

The function returns 0 if a connection was accepted, -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)** The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

See also: `fpSocket` (1273), `fpBind` (1266), `fpConnect` (1267)

### 72.4.12 fprecv

Synopsis: Receive data on socket

Declaration: `function fprecv(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint)  
: ssize_t`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `fpRecv` reads at most `len` bytes from socket `S` into address `buf`. The socket must be in a connected state. `Flags` can be one of the following:

- 1**Process out-of band data.
- 4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.
- ??**Wait for full request or report an error.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read from the socket, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- ESockENOTCONN (1236)**The socket isn't connected.
- ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.
- ESockEFAULT (1236)**The address is outside your address space.
- ESockEMSGSIZE (1236)**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1237)**The requested operation would block the process.
- ESockENOBUFS (1236)**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `FPSend` (1271)

### 72.4.13 `fprecvfrom`

**Synopsis:** Receive data from an unconnected socket

**Declaration:** `function fprecvfrom(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint; from: psockaddr; fromlen: pSockLen) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpRecvFrom` receives data in buffer `Buf` with maximum length `Len` from socket `S`. Receipt is controlled by options in `Flags`. The location pointed to by `from` will be filled with the address from the sender, and its length will be stored in `fromlen`. The function returns the number of bytes received, or -1 on error. `AddrLen`.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` (1273), `fprecv` (1270)

### 72.4.14 `fpsend`

**Synopsis:** Send data through socket

**Declaration:** `function fpsend(s: cint; msg: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpSend` sends `Len` bytes starting from address `Msg` to socket `S`. `S` must be in a connected state. Options can be passed in `Flags`.

The function returns the number of bytes sent, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

`Flags` can be one of the following:

**1**Process out-of band data.

**4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)**The address is outside your address space.

**ESockEMSGSIZE (1236)**The message cannot be sent atomically.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1237)**The requested operation would block the process.

**ESockENOBUFS (1236)**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `fpRecv` (1270)

### 72.4.15 `fpsendto`

Synopsis: Send data through an unconnected socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fp sendto(s: cint; msg: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint;  
                                  tox: psockaddr; tolen: TSocketLen) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSendTo` sends data from buffer `Msg` with length `len` through socket `S` with options `Flags`.  
The data is sent to address `tox`, which has length `toLen`

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` (1273), `fpSend` (1271), `fpRecvFrom` (1271)

### 72.4.16 `fpsetsockopt`

Synopsis: Set socket options.

Declaration: `function fp setsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint;  
                                  optval: pointer; optlen: TSocketLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetSocketOpt` sets the connection options for socket `S`. The socket may be manipulated at different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**To manipulate the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The actual option is stored in a buffer pointed to by `optval`, with length `optlen`.

For more information on this call, refer to the UNIX manual page `setsockopt`

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1236)**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpGetSocketOpt` (1270)

### 72.4.17 `fpshutdown`

Synopsis: Close one end of full duplex connection.

Declaration: `function fpshutdown(s: cint; how: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpShutDown` closes one end of a full duplex socket connection, described by `S`. The parameter `How` determines how the connection will be shut down, and can be one of the following:

**0**Further receives are disallowed.

**1**Further sends are disallowed.

**2**Sending nor receiving are allowed.

On success, the function returns 0, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: `SocketError` is used to report errors, and includes the following:

**ESockEBADF (1236)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTCONN (1236)**The socket isn't connected.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1236)**The descriptor is not a socket.

See also: `fpSocket` (1273), `fpConnect` (1267)

### 72.4.18 `fpsocket`

Synopsis: Create new socket

Declaration: `function fpsocket(domain: cint; xtype: cint; protocol: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocket` creates a new socket in domain `Domain`, from type `xType` using protocol `Protocol`. The `Domain`, `Socket` type and `Protocol` can be specified using predefined constants (see the section on constants for available constants) If successful, the function returns a socket descriptor, which can be passed to a subsequent `fpBind` (1266) call. If unsuccessfully, the function returns -1.  
for an example, see `Accept` (1261).

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEPROTONOSUPPORT (1236)**The protocol type or the specified protocol is not supported within this domain.

**ESockEMFILE (1236)**The per-process descriptor table is full.

**SYS\_ENFILE**The system file table is full.

**ESockEACCESS (1236)**Permission to create a socket of the specified type and/or protocol is denied.

**ESockENOBUFS (1236)**Insufficient buffer space is available. The socket cannot be created until sufficient resources are freed.

See also: `FPSocketPair` (1274)

### 72.4.19 fpsocketpair

Synopsis: Create socket pair.

Declaration: `function fpsocketpair(d: cint; xtype: cint; protocol: cint; sv: pcint)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocketPair` creates 2 sockets in domain `D`, from type `xType` and using protocol `Protocol`. The pair is returned in `sv`, and they are indistinguishable. The function returns -1 upon error and 0 upon success.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and are the same as in `FPSocket` ([1273](#))

See also: `Str2UnixSockAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.20 HostAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a string.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr` converts the host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.21 HostAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 host address to a string representation.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([1275](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.22 HostToNet

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a network address

Declaration: `function HostToNet(Host: in_addr) : in_addr  
function HostToNet(Host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostToNet` converts a host address to a network address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

Errors: None.

See also: `NetToHost` ([1276](#)), `NToHS` ([1276](#)), `HToNS` ([1275](#)), `ShortHostToNet` ([1276](#)), `ShortNetToHost` ([1277](#))

### 72.4.23 htonl

Synopsis: Convert long integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htonl(host: Cardinal) : Cardinal; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `htonl` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htons` ([1275](#)), `ntohl` ([1276](#)), `ntohs` ([1276](#))

### 72.4.24 htons

Synopsis: Convert short integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htons(host: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `htons` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([1275](#)), `ntohl` ([1276](#)), `ntohs` ([1276](#))

### 72.4.25 NetAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr` converts the network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

See also: `HostAddrToStr` ([1274](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.26 NetAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([1275](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1278](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.27 NetToHost

**Synopsis:** Convert a network address to a host address.

**Declaration:** `function NetToHost (Net: in_addr) : in_addr`  
`function NetToHost (Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NetToHost` converts a network address to a host address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `HostToNet` ([1274](#)), `NToHS` ([1276](#)), `HToNS` ([1275](#)), `ShortHostToNet` ([1276](#)), `ShortNetToHost` ([1277](#))

### 72.4.28 NToHI

**Synopsis:** Convert long integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHI (Net: Cardinal) : Cardinal; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

**See also:** `htonl` ([1275](#)), `htons` ([1275](#)), `ntohs` ([1276](#))

### 72.4.29 NToHs

**Synopsis:** Convert short integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHs (Net: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

**See also:** `htonl` ([1275](#)), `htons` ([1275](#)), `ntohl` ([1276](#))

### 72.4.30 ShortHostToNet

**Synopsis:** Convert a host port number to a network port number

**Declaration:** `function ShortHostToNet (Host: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ShortHostToNet` converts a host port number to a network port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ShortNetToHost` ([1277](#)), `HostToNet` ([1274](#)), `NToHS` ([1276](#)), `HToNS` ([1275](#))

### 72.4.31 ShortNetToHost

Synopsis: Convert a network port number to a host port number

Declaration: `function ShortNetToHost (Net: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortNetToHost` converts a network port number to a host port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` ([1277](#)), `HostToNet` ([1274](#)), `NToHS` ([1276](#)), `HToNS` ([1275](#))

### 72.4.32 Sock2File

Synopsis: Convert socket to untyped file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2File (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2File` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `File`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1273](#)), `Sock2Text` ([1277](#))

### 72.4.33 Sock2Text

Synopsis: Convert socket to text file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2Text (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: Text; var SockOut: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2Text` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `Text`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1273](#)), `Sock2File` ([1277](#))

### 72.4.34 socketerror

Synopsis: Contains the error code for the last socket operation.

Declaration: `function socketerror : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SocketError` contains the error code for the last socket operation. It can be examined to return the last socket error.

### 72.4.35 Str2UnixSockAddr

Synopsis: Convert path to TUnixSockAddr ([1280](#))

Declaration: `procedure Str2UnixSockAddr(const addr: string; var t: TUnixSockAddr;  
var len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Str2UnixSockAddr` transforms a Unix socket address in a string to a `TUnixSockAddr` structure which can be passed to the `Bind` ([1262](#)) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1273](#)), `FPBind` ([1266](#))

### 72.4.36 StrToHostAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the host address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([1274](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.37 StrToHostAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr6(IP: AnsiString) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([1275](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([1274](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.38 StrToNetAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a network address.

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the network address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1275](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([1274](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.39 StrToNetAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 network address

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr6(IP: AnsiString) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([1275](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([1274](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1278](#))

### 72.4.40 TryStrToHostAddr

Declaration: `function TryStrToHostAddr(IP: AnsiString; out ip4: in_addr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 72.4.41 TryStrToHostAddr6

Declaration: `function TryStrToHostAddr6(IP: AnsiString; out ip6: in6_addr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

## 72.5 linger

```

linger = packed record
  l_onoff : cint;
  l_linger : cint;
end

```

This record is used in the `fpsetsockopt` ([1272](#)) call to specify linger options.

## 72.6 sockaddr\_in

```

sockaddr_in = packed record
  sin_family : sa_family_t;
  sin_port
    : cushort;
  sin_addr : in_addr;
  xpad : Array[0..7] of Char;
end

```

`sockaddr_in` is used to store a INET socket address for the `FPBind` ([1266](#)), `FPRecv` ([1270](#)) and `FPSend` ([1271](#)) calls.

## 72.7 sockaddr\_in6

```
sockaddr_in6 = packed record
  sin6_family : sa_family_t;
  sin6_port   : cuint16;
  sin6_flowinfo : cuint32;
  sin6_addr   : in6_addr;
  sin6_scope_id : cuint32;
end
```

Alias for `sockaddr_in6` ([1280](#))

## 72.8 sockaddr\_un

```
sockaddr_un = packed record
  sun_family : sa_family_t;
  sun_path   : Array[0..107] of Char;
end
```

`sockaddr_un` is used to store a UNIX socket address for the `FPBind` ([1266](#)), `FPRecv` ([1270](#)) and `FPSend` ([1271](#)) calls.

## 72.9 TUnixSockAddr

```
TUnixSockAddr = packed record
  family : sa_family_t;
  path   : Array
    [0..107] of Char;
end
```

Alias for `sockaddr_un` ([1280](#))

## 72.10 ucred

```
ucred = record
  pid : cuint32;
  uid : cuint32;
  gid : cuint32;
end
```

## Chapter 73

# Reference for unit 'Strings'

### 73.1 Used units

Table 73.1: Used units by unit 'Strings'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 73.2 Overview

This chapter describes the `STRINGS` unit for Free Pascal. This unit is system independent, and therefore works on all supported platforms.

### 73.3 Procedures and functions

#### 73.3.1 `stralloc`

Synopsis: Allocate memory for a new null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `function stralloc(L: SizeInt) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Errors: If there is not enough memory, a run-time error occurs.

See also: `StrNew` ([1290](#)), `StrPCopy` ([1291](#))

#### 73.3.2 `strcat`

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: PChar; source: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches Source to Dest and returns Dest.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrLCat ([1286](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)\*2+1);

StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }

StrCat (P2,P1); { Append P2 once more }

WriteLn ('P2 : ',P2);

StrDispose(P2);

**end.**

---

### 73.3.3 strcmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: function strcmp(str1: PChar; str2: PChar) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative SizeInt when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive SizeInt when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrLComp ([1287](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1287](#)), StrIComp ([1285](#)), StrLComp ([1288](#))

### 73.3.4 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: function strcpy(dest: PChar; source: PChar) : PChar; Overload

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain Source, i.e. StrLen(Source)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPCopy ([1291](#)), StrLCopy ([1287](#)), StrECopy ([1284](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);
  STrcopy (PP,P);
  If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
    Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems... ' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 73.3.5 strdispose

Synopsis: disposes of a null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `procedure strdispose(p: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Removes the string in P from the heap and releases the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1290](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrDispose function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  Writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 73.3.6 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strecopy(dest: PChar; source: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` ([1287](#)), `StrCopy` ([1282](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';`

**Var** `PP : PChar;`

**begin**

`PP:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);`

`If Longint(StrECopy(PP,P))-Longint(PP)<>StrLen(P) then`

`Writeln('Something is wrong here !')`

`else`

`Writeln ('PP= ',PP);`

`StrDispose(PP);`

**end.**

---

### 73.3.7 strend

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strend(p: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of `P`. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLen` ([1288](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';`

---

```

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln('All is well..');
end.

```

---

### 73.3.8 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: PChar; str2: PChar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1287](#)), `StrComp` ([1282](#)), `StrLComp` ([1288](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

```

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

```

**Var** L : Longint;

```

begin
  Write('P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp(P1,P2) <> 0 then write('NOT ');
  write('equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc(L);
  dec(L);
  Writeln(L,' characters are the same.');
```

---

**end.**

### 73.3.9 stripos

Synopsis: Return the position of a substring in a string, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stripos(str1: PChar; str2: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `strpos` returns the position of `str2` in `str1`. It searches in a case-insensitive manner, and if it finds a match, it returns a pointer to the location of the match. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** No checks are done on the validity of the pointers, and the pointers are assumed to point to a properly null-terminated string. If either of these conditions are not met, a run-time error may follow.

See also: `strscan` ([1286](#)), `strpos` ([1292](#))

### 73.3.10 `strscan`

**Synopsis:** Scan a string for a character, case-insensitive

**Declaration:** `function strscan(p: PChar; c: Char) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `strscan` does the same as `strscan` ([1293](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or `Nil` if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strscan` ([1293](#)), `strrscan` ([1292](#))

### 73.3.11 `strlcat`

**Synopsis:** Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

**Declaration:** `function strlcat(dest: PChar; source: PChar; l: SizeInt) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Adds `L` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns `Dest`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrCat` ([1281](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = '1234567890';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)*2+1);`

`P2^:=#0; { Zero length }`

`StrCat (P2,P1);`

`StrLCat (P2,P1,5);`

`WriteLn ('P2 = ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2)`

**end.**

---

### 73.3.12 strlcomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function strlcomp(str1: PChar; str2: PChar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `SizeInt` when `S1>S2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrComp` ([1282](#)), `StrIComp` ([1285](#)), `StrLComp` ([1288](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

**Program** `Example8;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';`

**Var** `L : Longint;`

**begin**

`Write ('P1 and P2 are ');`  
`If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ('NOT ');`  
`write ('equal. The first ');`  
`L:=1;`  
`While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);`  
`dec(L);`  
`WriteLn (L,' characters are the same.');`

**end.**

### 73.3.13 strlcopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

Declaration: `function strlcopy(dest: PChar; source: PChar; maxlen: SizeInt) : PChar`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and makes `Dest` a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrCopy` ([1282](#)), `StrECopy` ([1284](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc(11);
  WriteLn ('First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 73.3.14 strlen

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: PChar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P. If P equals Nil, then zero (0) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1290](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

begin
  WriteLn ('P          : ',p);
  WriteLn ('length(P) : ',StrLen(P));
end.

```

---

### 73.3.15 strlicomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: PChar; str2: PChar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

For an example, see `StrIComp` ([1285](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1287](#)), `StrComp` ([1282](#)), `StrIComp` ([1285](#))

### 73.3.16 `strlower`

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts `P` to an all-lowercase string. Returns `P`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrUpper` ([1293](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

`P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';`

**begin**

`P1:=StrNew(P1);`  
`P2:=strNew(P2);`  
`WriteLn ('Uppercase : ',StrUpper(P2));`  
`StrLower(P1);`  
`WriteLn ('Lowercase : ',P1);`  
`StrDispose(P1);`  
`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

### 73.3.17 `strmove`

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: PChar; source: PChar; l: SizeInt) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns `Dest`

Errors: None.

See also: StrLCopy ([1287](#)), StrCopy ([1282](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

**Var** P2 : Pchar;

**begin**

  P2:=StrAlloc(StrLen(P1)+1);

**StrMove** (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); *{ P2:=P1 }*

**Writeln** ('P2 = ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---

### 73.3.18 strnew

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: function strnew(p: PChar) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: StrCopy ([1282](#)), StrDispose ([1283](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

**var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:=**StrNew** (P1);

**If** P1=P2 **then**

**writeln** ('This can''t be happening...')

**else**

**writeln** ('P2 : ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---

**73.3.19 strpas**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function strpas(p: PChar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in P to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

See also: StrPCopy ([1291](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPas function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string';

**var** S : **string**;

**begin**

    S:=StrPas (P);

    WriteLn ('S : ',S);

**end.**

---

**73.3.20 strcpy**

Synopsis: Copy a pascal string to a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(d: PChar; const s: string) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the Pascal string in S to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to D. D needs enough room to contain the string Source, i.e. Length(S)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPas ([1291](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example2;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPCopy function. }*

**Const** S = 'This is a normal string.';

**Var** P : Pchar;

---

```

begin
  p:= StrAlloc (length(S)+1);
  if StrPCopy (P,S)<>P then
    Writeln ('This is impossible !!')
  else
    writeln (P);
    StrDispose(P);
end.

```

---

### 73.3.21 strpos

Synopsis: Search for a null-terminated substring in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: PChar; str2: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of S2 in S1. If S2 does not occur in S1, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1293](#)), StrRScan ([1293](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';  
           S : PChar = 'is';

**begin**  
     Writeln ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',sizeint(StrPos(P,S))-sizeint(P));  
**end.**

---

### 73.3.22 strscan

Synopsis: Scan a string reversely for a character, case-insensitive

Declaration: `function strscan(p: PChar; c: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `strscan` does the same as `strrscan` ([1293](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or Nil if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strrscan` ([1293](#)), `strscan` ([1286](#))

**73.3.23 strscan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: PChar; c: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan ([1293](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1293](#)), StrPos ([1292](#))

**73.3.24 strscan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: PChar; c: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan ([1293](#)), StrPos ([1292](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
           S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first 's' : ',StrScan(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last 's' : ',StrRScan(P,s));

**end.**

---

**73.3.25 strupper**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower ([1289](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLower ([1289](#))

# Chapter 74

## Reference for unit 'StrUtils'

### 74.1 Used units

Table 74.1: Used units by unit 'StrUtils'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils | <a href="#">1599</a> |
| Types    | <a href="#">1902</a> |

### 74.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 74.2.1 Resource strings

```
SErrAmountStrings =  
    'Amount of search and replace strings don''t match'
```

Error message used in stringsreplace function

```
SInvalidRomanNumeral = '%s is not a valid Roman numeral'
```

Error string shown in exception raised when invalid roman numeral is encountered

#### 74.2.2 Constants

```
AnsiResemblesProc : TCompareTextProc = @ SoundexProc
```

This procedural variable is standard set to SoundexProc ([1325](#)) but can be overridden with a user-defined algorithm. This algorithm should return `True` if `AText` resembles `AOtherText`, or `False` otherwise. The standard routine compares the soundexes of the two strings and returns `True` if they are equal.

```
Brackets = ['(', ')', '[', ']', '{', '}']
```

Set of characters that contain all possible bracket characters

```
DigitChars = ['0'..'9']
```

Set of digit characters

```
ResemblesProc : TCompareTextProc = @ SoundexProc
```

`ResemblesProc` is a procedure variable which can be set to compare 2 string. It is similar to `AnsiResemblesProc` (1294), and by default is set to the `SoundExProc` (1325) function.

```
StdSwitchChars = ['-','/']
```

Standard characters for the `SwitchChars` argument of `GetCmdLineArg` (1310).

```
StdWordDelims = [#0..' ', ',', '.', ';', '/', '\', ':', '''', '"',
  , '`'] + Brackets
```

Standard word delimiter values.

```
WordDelimiters : Set of Char = [#0..#255] - ['a'..'z', 'A'..'Z', '1'
  ..'9', '0']
```

Standard word delimiters, used in the `SearchBuf` (1323) call.

### 74.2.3 Types

```
SizeIntArray = Array of SizeInt
```

`SizeIntArray` is an auxiliary type used in `StringReplace` (1327)

```
TCompareTextProc = function(const AText: string; const AOther: string
  )
  : Boolean
```

Function prototype for comparing two string in `AnsiResemblesText` (1301)

```
TRawByteStringArray = Array of RawByteString
```

```
TRomanConversionStrictness = (rcsStrict, rcsRelaxed, rcsDontCare)
```

Table 74.2: Enumeration values for type `TRomanConversionStrictness`

| Value                    | Explanation  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>rcsDontCare</code> | Do not check correctness   |
| <code>rcsRelaxed</code>  | Like <code>rcsStrict</code> but allow more than 3 consecutive identical letters. |
| <code>rcsStrict</code>   | Only accept correct roman numerals.  |

`TRomanConversionStrictness` is an enumerated type that can be used to decide how to react to invalid roman numerals.

**rcsStrict** Strict adherence to roman numerals. Up to 3 consecutive identical letters. No negative numbers. Ordering must be correct.

**rcsRelaxed** Same as `rcsStrict` but allow more than 3 consecutive identical letters.

**rcsDontCare** Do not check validity at all

`TSoundexIntLength = 1..8`

Range of allowed integer soundex lengths.

`TSoundexLength = 1..MaxInt`

Range of allowed soundex lengths.

`TStringReplaceAlgorithm = (sraDefault, sraManySmall, sraBoyerMoore)`

Table 74.3: Enumeration values for type `TStringReplaceAlgorithm`

| Value                      | Explanation   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>sraBoyerMoore</code> | Use a Boyer-Moore search algorithm  |
| <code>sraDefault</code>    | Use the sysutils algorithm, which does a straightforward linear search and replace          |
| <code>sraManySmall</code>  | Use an approach which is suitable for a string with many occurrences of the same small text |

`TStringReplaceAlgorithm` enumerates the available algorithms to `StringReplace` ([1327](#))

**sraDefault** Use the sysutils algorithm, which does a straightforward linear search and replace

**sraManySmall** Use an approach which is suitable for a string with many occurrences of the same small text

**sraBoyerMoore** Use a Boyer-Moore search algorithm

Depending on the kind of data that is being treated, one or the other of these algorithms may produce faster results.

`TStringSeachOption = TStringSearchOption`

There is a typo error in the original Borland `StrUtils` unit. This type just refers to the correct `TStringSearchOption` ([1296](#)) and is provided for compatibility only.

`TStringSearchOption = (soDown, soMatchCase, soWholeWord)`

Table 74.4: Enumeration values for type `TStringSearchOption`

| Value                    | Explanation               |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>soDown</code>      | Search in down direction. |
| <code>soMatchCase</code> | Match case                |
| <code>soWholeWord</code> | Search whole words only.  |

Possible options for `SearchBuf` ([1323](#)) call.

TStringSearchOptions = Set of TStringSearchOption

Set of options for SearchBuf ([1323](#)) call.

TUnicodeStringArray = Array of UnicodeString

## 74.3 Procedures and functions

### 74.3.1 AddChar

Synopsis: Add characters to the left of a string till a certain length

Declaration: `function AddChar(C: Char; const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddChar` adds characters (C) to the left of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a right-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddCharR` ([1297](#)), `PadLeft` ([1318](#)), `PadRight` ([1318](#)), `PadCenter` ([1317](#))

### 74.3.2 AddCharR

Synopsis: Add chars at the end of a string till it reaches a certain length

Declaration: `function AddCharR(C: Char; const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddCharR` adds characters (C) to the right of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a left-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddChar` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.3 AnsiContainsStr

Synopsis: Checks whether a string contains a given substring

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsStr(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether AText contains ASubText, and returns True if this is the case, or returns False otherwise. The search is performed case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([1298](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([1298](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([1298](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([1302](#))

### 74.3.4 AnsiContainsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string contains a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsText(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether `AText` contains `ASubText`, and returns `True` if this is the case, or returns `False` otherwise. The search is performed case-insensitive.

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` ([1297](#)), `AnsiEndsText` ([1298](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([1299](#)), `AnsiStartsText` ([1302](#))

### 74.3.5 AnsiEndsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` ([1298](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([1302](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([1298](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.6 AnsiEndsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiStartsText` ([1302](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([1298](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([1299](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([1298](#))

### 74.3.7 AnsiIndexStr

Synopsis: Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function AnsiIndexStr(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiIndexText` (1299), `AnsiMatchStr` (1299), `AnsiMatchText` (1300)

### 74.3.8 `AnsiIndexText`

**Synopsis:** Searches, case insensitive, for a string in an array of strings.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiIndexText(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiIndexText` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `AnsiIndexStr` (1298), `AnsiMatchStr` (1299), `IndexStr` (1312), `MatchStr` (1315), `AnsiMatchText` (1300)

### 74.3.9 `AnsiLeftStr`

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at the left of a string

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` leftmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes. This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `LeftStr` function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiMidStr` (1300), `AnsiRightStr` (1302), `LeftStr` (1314), `RightStr` (1322), `MidStr` (1316), `LeftBStr` (1314), `RightBStr` (1321), `MidBStr` (1315)

### 74.3.10 `AnsiMatchStr`

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiMatchStr(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiMatchStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexStr` (1298) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.11 AnsiMatchText

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, disregarding case.

Declaration: `function AnsiMatchText(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexText` (1299) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.12 AnsiMidStr

Synopsis: Returns a number of characters copied from a given location in a string

Declaration: `function AnsiMidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: SizeInt;  
const ACount: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiMidStr` returns `ACount` characters from `AText`, starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` (starting from `AStart`) will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `MidStr` function.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (1299), `AnsiRightStr` (1302), `LeftStr` (1314), `RightStr` (1322), `MidStr` (1316), `LeftBStr` (1314), `RightBStr` (1321), `MidBStr` (1315)

### 74.3.13 AnsiProperCase

Synopsis: Pretty-Print a string: make lowercase and capitalize first letters of words

Declaration: `function AnsiProperCase(const S: string; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiProperCase` converts `S` to an all lowercase string, but capitalizes the first letter of every word in the string, and returns the resulting string. When searching for words, the characters in `WordDelimiters` are used to determine the boundaries of words. The constant `StdWordDelims` (1295) can be used for this.

### 74.3.14 AnsiReplaceStr

Synopsis: Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiReplaceStr(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceText` ([1301](#)), `SearchBuf` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.15 `AnsiReplaceText`

**Synopsis:** Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReplaceText(const AText: string; const AFromText: string; const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed ignoring case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceStr` ([1300](#)), `SearchBuf` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.16 `AnsiResemblesText`

**Synopsis:** Check whether 2 strings resemble each other.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiResemblesText(const AText: string; const AOther: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiResemblesText` will check whether `AnsiResemblesProc` ([1294](#)) is set. If it is not set, `False` is returned. If it is set, `AText` and `AOtherText` are passed to it and its result is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiResemblesProc` ([1294](#)), `SoundexProc` ([1325](#))

### 74.3.17 `AnsiReverseString`

**Synopsis:** Reverse the letters in a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReverseString(const AText: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReverseString` returns a string with all characters of `AText` in reverse order. if the result of this function equals `AText`, `AText` is called an anagram.

Errors: None.

### 74.3.18 AnsiRightStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the right of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiRightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` rightmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `RightStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (1299), `AnsiMidStr` (1300), `LeftStr` (1314), `RightStr` (1322), `MidStr` (1316), `LeftBStr` (1314), `RightBStr` (1321), `MidBStr` (1315)

### 74.3.19 AnsiStartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, observing case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` (1298), `AnsiStartsStr` (1302), `AnsiIndexStr` (1298), `AnsiContainsStr` (1297)

### 74.3.20 AnsiStartsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, ignoring case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsText` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` (1298), `AnsiStartsStr` (1302), `AnsiIndexText` (1299), `AnsiContainsText` (1298)

### 74.3.21 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration:

```

procedure BinToHex(const BinBuffer: TBytes; BinBufOffset: Integer;
    var HexBuffer: TBytes; HexBufOffset: Integer;
    Count: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(BinValue: Pointer; HexValue: PWideChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(const BinValue; HexValue: PWideChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PAnsiChar; HexValue: PAnsiChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PAnsiChar; HexValue: PWideChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(const BinValue; HexValue: PAnsiChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload
procedure BinToHex(BinValue: Pointer; HexValue: PAnsiChar;
    BinBufSize: Integer); Overload

```

Visibility: default

Description: `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` ([1311](#))

### 74.3.22 ContainsStr

Synopsis: Check whether one text contains another (case sensitive)

Declaration:

```

function ContainsStr(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)
    : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

Description: `ContainsStr` is an alias for `AnsiContainsStr` ([1297](#))

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.23 ContainsText

Synopsis: Check whether one text contains another (case insensitive)

Declaration:

```

function ContainsText(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)
    : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

Description: `ContainsText` is an alias for `AnsiContainsText` ([1298](#))

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([1298](#))

### 74.3.24 Copy2Space

**Synopsis:** Returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2Space(const S: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2Space` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned.

This function simply calls `Copy2Symb` (1304) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2Symb` (1304), `Copy2SpaceDel` (1304)

### 74.3.25 Copy2SpaceDel

**Synopsis:** Deletes and returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2SpaceDel(var S: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2SpaceDel` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters, including the space, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

This function simply calls `Copy2SymbDel` (1305) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2SymbDel` (1305), `Copy2Space` (1304)

### 74.3.26 Copy2Symb

**Synopsis:** Returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2Symb(const S: string; Symb: Char) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2Symb` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2Space` (1304), `Copy2SymbDel` (1305)

### 74.3.27 Copy2SymbDel

Synopsis: Deletes and returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2SymbDel (var S: string; Symb: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SymbDel` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters and the `Symb` character, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2SpaceDel` ([1304](#)), `Copy2Symb` ([1304](#))

### 74.3.28 Dec2Numb

Synopsis: Convert a decimal number to a string representation, using given a base.

Declaration: `function Dec2Numb (N: LongInt; Len: Byte; Base: Byte) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec2Numb` converts `N` to its representation using base `Base`. `N` must be a positive integer. The resulting string is left-padded with zeroes till it has length `Len`. `Base` must be in the range 2-36 to be meaningful, but no checking on this is performed.

Errors: If `Base` is out of range, the resulting string will contain unreadable (non-alphanumeric) characters.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1311](#)), `IntToBin` ([1313](#)), `intToRoman` ([1313](#)), `RomanToInt` ([1322](#))

### 74.3.29 DecodeSoundexInt

Synopsis: Decodes the integer representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexInt (AValue: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexInt` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexInt` ([1325](#)) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexInt` ([1325](#)), `DecodeSoundexWord` ([1305](#)), `Soundex` ([1324](#))

### 74.3.30 DecodeSoundexWord

Synopsis: Decodes the word-sized representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexWord (AValue: Word) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexWord` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexWord` ([1326](#)) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SoundexInt \(1325\)](#), [DecodeSoundexInt \(1305\)](#), [Soundex \(1324\)](#)

### 74.3.31 DelChars

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a given character from a string.

Declaration: `function DelChars(const S: string; Chr: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelChars` returns a copy of `S` with all `Chr` characters removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelSpace \(1306\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(1306\)](#)

### 74.3.32 DelSpace

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a space from a string.

Declaration: `function DelSpace(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace` returns a copy of `S` with all spaces (ASCII code 32) removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelChars \(1306\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(1306\)](#)

### 74.3.33 DelSpace1

Synopsis: Reduces sequences of space characters to 1 space character.

Declaration: `function DelSpace1(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace1` returns a copy of `S` with all sequences of spaces reduced to 1 space.

Errors: None.

See also: [DelChars \(1306\)](#), [DelSpace \(1306\)](#)

### 74.3.34 DupeString

Synopsis: Creates and concatenates N copies of a string

Declaration: `function DupeString(const AText: string; ACount: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DupeString` returns a string consisting of `ACount` concatenations of `AText`. Thus

```
DupeString('1234567890', 3);
```

will produce a string

```
'123456789012345678901234567890'
```

Errors: None.

### 74.3.35 EndsStr

Synopsis: Check whether one string ends with another

Declaration: `function EndsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` ends with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns `true` if the last characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-sensitive. If you wish to compare case-insensitively, use `EndsText` ([1307](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` ([1298](#)), `EndsText` ([1307](#)), `StartsText` ([1327](#))

### 74.3.36 EndsText

Synopsis: Check whether one text ends with another

Declaration: `function EndsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` ends with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns `true` if the last characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-insensitive. If you wish to compare case-sensitively, use `EndsStr` ([1307](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` ([1298](#)), `EndsStr` ([1307](#)), `StartsText` ([1327](#))

### 74.3.37 ExtractDelimited

Synopsis: Extract the N-th delimited part from a string.

Declaration: `function ExtractDelimited(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractDelimited` extracts the N-th part from the string `S`. The set of characters in `Delims` are used to mark part boundaries. When a delimiter is encountered, a new part is started and the old part is ended. Another way of stating this is that any (possibly empty) series of characters not in `Delims`, situated between 2 characters in `Delims`, it is considered as piece of a part. This means that if 2 delimiter characters appear next to each other, there is an empty part between it. If an N-th part cannot be found, an empty string is returned. However, unlike `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), an empty string is a valid return value, i.e. a part can be empty.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)) can be used for the `Delims` argument. The predefined constant `Brackets` ([1294](#)) would be better suited the `Delims` argument e.g. in case factors in a mathematical expression are searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractSubStr` ([1308](#)), `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), `ExtractWordPos` ([1308](#))

### 74.3.38 ExtractSubstr

**Synopsis:** Extract a word from a string, starting at a given position in the string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractSubstr(const S: string; var Pos: Integer;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractSubStr` returns all characters from `S` starting at position `Pos` till the first character in `Delims`, or till the end of `S` is reached. The delimiter character is not included in the result. `Pos` is then updated to point to the next first non-delimiter character in `S`. If `Pos` is larger than the `Length` of `S`, an empty string is returned.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)) can be used for the `Delims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractDelimited` ([1307](#)), `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), `ExtractWordPos` ([1308](#))

### 74.3.39 ExtractWord

**Synopsis:** Extract the N-th word out of a string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractWord(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractWord` extracts the N-th word from the string `S`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` ([1307](#)), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractWordPos` ([1308](#)), `ExtractSubStr` ([1308](#)), `ExtractDelimited` ([1307](#)), `IsWordPresent` ([1314](#)), `WordCount` ([1330](#)), `WordPosition` ([1330](#))

### 74.3.40 ExtractWordPos

**Synopsis:** Extract a word from a string, and return the position where it was located in the string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractWordPos(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet; out Pos: Integer)  
: string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractWordPos` extracts the N-th word from the string `S` and returns the position of this word in `Pos`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned and `Pos` is zero.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (1307), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` (1295) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWord` (1308), `ExtractSubStr` (1308), `IsWordPresent` (1314), `WordCount` (1330), `WordPosition` (1330)

### 74.3.41 FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive

Synopsis: Find case-insensitive matches of a string using a Boyer-Moore algorithm

Declaration: 

```
function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive(const S: PChar;
                                             const OldPattern: PChar;
                                             const SSize: SizeInt;
                                             const OldPatternSize: SizeInt;
                                             out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                             const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                             : Boolean

function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive(const S: string;
                                             const OldPattern: string;
                                             out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                             const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                             : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive` finds occurrences of `OldPattern` (with length `OldPatternSize`) in `S` (with length `SSize`). The search is performed case-insensitively, and all (zero based) positions are reported in `aMatches`. If `aMatchAll` is `True`, all positions will be reported. If `aMatchAll` is `False`, only the first position is reported.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive` (1309), `StringReplace` (1327)

### 74.3.42 FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive

Synopsis: Find case-sensitive matches of a string using a Boyer-Moore algorithm

Declaration: 

```
function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive(const S: PChar;
                                             const OldPattern: PChar;
                                             const SSize: SizeInt;
                                             const OldPatternSize: SizeInt;
                                             out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                             const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                             : Boolean

function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive(const S: string;
                                             const OldPattern: string;
                                             out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                             const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                             : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive` finds occurrences of `OldPattern` (with length `OldPatternSize`) in `S` (with length `SSize`). The search is performed case-sensitively, and all (zero based) positions are reported in `aMatches`. If `aMatchAll` is `True`, all positions will be reported. If `aMatchAll` is `False`, only the first position is reported.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive` ([1309](#)), `StringReplace` ([1327](#))

### 74.3.43 FindPart

**Synopsis:** Search for a substring in a string, using wildcards.

**Declaration:** `function FindPart(const HelpWilds: string; const InputStr: string)  
: SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindPart` searches the string `InputStr` and returns the first string that matches the wildcards specification in `HelpWilds`. If no match is found, an empty string is returned. Currently, the only valid wildcards is the "?" character.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SearchBuf` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.44 GetCmdLineArg

**Synopsis:** Returns the command-line argument following the given switch.

**Declaration:** `function GetCmdLineArg(const Switch: string; SwitchChars: TSysCharSet)  
: string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetCmdLineArg` returns the value for the `Switch` option on the command-line, if any is given. Command-line arguments are considered switches if they start with one of the characters in the `SwitchChars` set. The value is the command-line argument following the switch command-line argument.

Gnu-style (long) Options of the form `switch=value` are not supported.

The `StdSwitchChars` ([1295](#)) constant can be used as value for the `SwitchChars` parameter.

**Errors:** The `GetCmdLineArg` does not check whether the value of the option does not start with a switch character. i.e.

```
myprogram -option1 -option2
```

will result in "-option2" as the result of the `GetCmdLineArg` call for `option1`.

See also: `StdSwitchChars` ([1295](#))

### 74.3.45 Hex2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a hexadecimal string to a decimal value

Declaration: `function Hex2Dec(const S: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hex2Dec` converts the hexadecimal value in the string `S` to its decimal value. Unlike the standard `Val` or `StrToInt` functions, there need not be a `$` sign in front of the hexadecimal value to indicate that it is indeed a hexadecimal value.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid hexadecimal value, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `Dec2Numb` ([1305](#)), `IntToBin` ([1313](#)), `intToRoman` ([1313](#)), `RomanToInt` ([1322](#))

### 74.3.46 Hex2Dec64

Synopsis: Convert hexadecimal value to 64-bit integer

Declaration: `function Hex2Dec64(const S: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hex2Dec64` converts the hexadecimal number in `S` to a 64-bit value and returns the result. It is equivalent to `StrToInt('$'+S)`.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1311](#))

### 74.3.47 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` ([1303](#))

### 74.3.48 IfThen

Synopsis: Returns one of two strings, depending on a boolean expression

Declaration: `function IfThen(AValue: Boolean; const ATrue: string; const AFalse: string) : string; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IfThen` returns `ATrue` if `AValue` is `True`, and returns `AFalse` if `AValue` is `false`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([1299](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([1300](#))

**74.3.49 in(string,):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check presence of string in an array of strings

Declaration: `operator in(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This is the (string) operator equivalent of IndexStr ([1312](#))

See also: IndexStr ([1312](#))

**74.3.50 in(UnicodeString,):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check presence of string in an array of strings

Declaration: `operator in(const AText: UnicodeString;  
const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This is the (unicode string) operator equivalent of IndexStr ([1312](#))

See also: IndexStr ([1312](#))

**74.3.51 IndexStr**

Synopsis: Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function IndexStr(const AText: UnicodeString;  
const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Integer  
function IndexStr(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: IndexStr matches AText against each Unicode string in AValues. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the AValues array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiIndexText ([1299](#)), MatchStr ([1315](#)), AnsiIndexStr ([1298](#))

**74.3.52 IndexText**

Synopsis: Index of text in a list of values

Declaration: `function IndexText(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)  
: Integer  
function IndexText(const AText: UnicodeString;  
const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: IndexText returns the index of the string in the array aValues that matches aText, and -1 otherwise. The comparison is done case insensitively. If you wish to compare case sensitively, use IndexStr ([1312](#)) instead.

See also: IndexStr ([1312](#)), MatchText ([1315](#)), AnsiIndexText ([1299](#))

### 74.3.53 IntToBin

Synopsis: Converts an integer to a binary string representation, inserting spaces at fixed locations.

Declaration: `function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer; Spaces: Integer) : string`  
`function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer) : string`  
`function intToBin(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToBin` converts `Value` to a string with its binary (base 2) representation. The resulting string contains `Digits` digits, with spaces inserted every `Spaces` digits. `Spaces` equal to zero yields a result without spacing. If `Digits` is larger than 32, it is truncated to 32.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1311](#)), `IntToRoman` ([1313](#))

### 74.3.54 IntToRoman

Synopsis: Represent an integer with roman numerals

Declaration: `function IntToRoman(Value: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToRoman` converts `Value` to a string with the Roman representation of `Value`. Number up to 1 million can be represented this way.

Errors: None.

See also: `RomanToInt` ([1322](#)), `Hex2Dec` ([1311](#)), `IntToBin` ([1313](#))

### 74.3.55 IsEmptyStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string is empty, disregarding whitespace characters

Declaration: `function IsEmptyStr(const S: string; const EmptyChars: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEmptyStr` returns `True` if the string `S` only contains characters whitespace characters, all characters in `EmptyChars` are considered whitespace characters. If a character not present in `EmptyChars` is found in `S`, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `IsWild` ([1313](#)), `FindPart` ([1310](#)), `IsWordPresent` ([1314](#))

### 74.3.56 IsWild

Synopsis: Check whether a string matches a wildcard search expression.

Declaration: `function IsWild(InputStr: string; Wilds: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsWild` checks `InputStr` for the presence of the `Wilds` string. `Wilds` may contain "?" and "\*" wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning: "\*" matches any series of characters, possibly empty. "?" matches any single character. The function returns `True` if a string is found that matches `Wilds`, `False` otherwise.

If `IgnoreCase` is `True`, the non-wildcard characters are matched case insensitively. If it is `False`, case is observed when searching.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` (1323), `FindPart` (1310)

### 74.3.57 IsWordPresent

**Synopsis:** Check for the presence of a word in a string.

**Declaration:** `function IsWordPresent(const W: string; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsWordPresent` checks for the presence of the word `W` in the string `S`. Words are delimited by the characters found in `WordDelims`. The function returns `True` if a match is found, `False` otherwise. The search is performed case sensitive.

This function is equivalent to the `SearchBuf` (1323) function with the `soWholeWords` option specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` (1323)

### 74.3.58 LeftBStr

**Synopsis:** Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LeftBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LeftBStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` (1314), `AnsiLeftStr` (1299), `RightBStr` (1321), `MidBStr` (1315)

### 74.3.59 LeftStr

**Synopsis:** Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString  
function LeftStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LeftStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText` . If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText` , only as many characters as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftBStr` ([1314](#)), `AnsiLeftStr` ([1299](#)), `RightStr` ([1322](#)), `MidStr` ([1316](#))

### 74.3.60 MatchStr

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

**Declaration:**

```
function MatchStr(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean
function MatchStr(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MatchStr` matches `AText` against each Unicode string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `IndexStr` ([1312](#)) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.61 MatchText

**Synopsis:** Check if a string is in a list of values

**Declaration:**

```
function MatchText(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Boolean
function MatchText(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MatchText` returns `True` if `aText` equals one of the strings in `aValues`. The comparison is done case insensitively. If you wish to compare case sensitively, use `MatchStr` ([1315](#)) instead.

See also: `MatchStr` ([1315](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([1300](#)), `IndexText` ([1312](#))

### 74.3.62 MidBStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function MidBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteStart: SizeInt;
                 const AByteCount: SizeInt) : AnsiString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidBStr` returns a string containing the first `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AByteStart`. If `AByteStart+AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned. If `AByteStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftBStr` ([1314](#)), `AnsiMidStr` ([1300](#)), `RightBStr` ([1321](#)), `MidStr` ([1316](#))

### 74.3.63 MidStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function MidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: SizeInt;
               const ACount: SizeInt) : AnsiString
function MidStr(const AText: WideString; const AStart: SizeInt;
               const ACount: SizeInt) : WideString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidStr` returns a string containing the first `ACount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned. If `AStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

This function is equivalent to the standard `Copy` function, and is provided for completeness only.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1314](#)), `AnsiMidStr` ([1300](#)), `RightStr` ([1322](#)), `MidBStr` ([1315](#))

### 74.3.64 NaturalCompareText

**Synopsis:** Compare using natural sort

**Declaration:**

```
function NaturalCompareText(const S1: string; const S2: string)
                           : Integer
function NaturalCompareText(const Str1: string; const Str2: string;
                           const ADecSeparator: Char;
                           const AThousandSeparator: Char) : Integer
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NaturalCompareText` will compare 2 strings and return one of the following values:

- 1 If `S1` comes before `S2`
- 0 If `S1` equals `S2`
- 1 If `S1` comes after `S2`

When `S1` and `S2` are integer or floating point values, the actual values are compared. Thus '12' will come after '2'. If either of the values is not a valid integer or floating point values, the strings are compared case insensitively as texts using `CompareText` ([1653](#))

A decimal separator and thousands separator can optionally be specified in `ADecSeparator`, `AThousandSeparator`. If none are specified, the defaults from the system unit will be used.

See also: `CompareText` ([1294](#))

### 74.3.65 NPos

**Synopsis:** Returns the position of the N-th occurrence of a substring in a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function NPos(const C: string; S: string; N: Integer) : SizeInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NPos` checks `S` for the position of the N-th occurrence of `C`. If `C` occurs less than `N` times in `S`, or does not occur in `S` at all, 0 is returned. If `N` is less than 1, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [WordPosition \(1330\)](#), [FindPart \(1310\)](#)

### 74.3.66 Numb2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a string representation of a number to its numerical value, given a certain base.

Declaration: `function Numb2Dec(S: string; Base: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2Dec` converts the number in string `S` to a decimal value. It assumes the number is represented using `Base` as the base. No checking is performed to see whether `S` contains a valid number using base `Base`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Hex2Dec \(1311\)](#), [Numb2USA \(1317\)](#)

### 74.3.67 Numb2USA

Synopsis: Insert thousand separators.

Declaration: `function Numb2USA(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2USA` inserts thousand separators in the string `S` at the places where they are supposed to be, i.e. every 3 digits. The string `S` should contain a valid integer number, i.e. no digital number. No checking on this is done.

Errors: None.

### 74.3.68 PadCenter

Synopsis: Pad the string to a certain length, so the string is centered.

Declaration: `function PadCenter(const S: string; Len: SizeInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadCenter` add spaces to the left and right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the number of spaces to add is odd, then the extra space will be added at the end. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is.

Errors: None.

See also: [PadLeft \(1318\)](#), [PadRight \(1318\)](#), [AddChar \(1297\)](#), [AddCharR \(1297\)](#)

### 74.3.69 PadLeft

Synopsis: Add spaces to the left of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadLeft(const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadLeft` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, right-justified on length `Len`.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([1318](#)), `PadCenter` ([1317](#)), `AddChar` ([1297](#)), `AddCharR` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.70 PadRight

Synopsis: Add spaces to the right of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadRight(const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadRight` add spaces to the right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, left-justified on length `Len`.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([1318](#)), `PadCenter` ([1317](#)), `AddChar` ([1297](#)), `AddCharR` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.71 PosEx

Synopsis: Search for the occurrence of a character in a string, starting at a certain position.

Declaration: `function PosEx(const SubStr: string; const S: string; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: string; const S: string) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(c: Char; const S: string; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: UnicodeString; const S: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(c: WideChar; const S: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: UnicodeString; const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosEx` returns the position of the first occurrence of the character `C` or the substring `SubStr` in the string `S`, starting the search at position `Offset` (default 1). If `C` or `SubStr` does not occur in `S` after the given `Offset`, zero is returned. The position `Offset` is also searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `NPos` ([1316](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([1298](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([1297](#))

### 74.3.72 PosSet

**Synopsis:** Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters

**Declaration:** `function PosSet(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring) : SizeInt`  
`function PosSet(const c: string; const s: ansistring) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PosSet` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `PosEx` ([1318](#)), `PosSetEx` ([1319](#)), `#rtl.system.pos` ([1510](#)), `RPosEx` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.73 PosSetEx

**Synopsis:** Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters, starting at a certain position

**Declaration:** `function PosSetEx(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring;`  
`count: Integer) : SizeInt`  
`function PosSetEx(const c: string; const s: ansistring; count: Integer)`  
`: SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PosSetEx` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`, and starts searching at character position `Count`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `PosEx` ([1318](#)), `PosSet` ([1319](#)), `#rtl.system.pos` ([1510](#)), `RPosEx` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.74 RandomFrom

**Synopsis:** Choose a random string from an array of strings.

**Declaration:** `function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of string) : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RandomFrom` picks at random a valid index in the array `AValues` and returns the string at that position in the array.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([1299](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([1300](#))

### 74.3.75 Removeleadingchars

**Synopsis:** Remove any leading characters in a set from a string

**Declaration:** `procedure Removeleadingchars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Removeleadingchars` removes any starting characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to `TrimLeft` ([1761](#)) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors: None.

See also: [TrimLeft \(1761\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(1320\)](#), [RemovePadChars \(1320\)](#), [TrimLeftSet \(1329\)](#)

### 74.3.76 RemovePadChars

Synopsis: Remove any trailing or leading characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure RemovePadChars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemovePadChars` removes any leading trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string, and it stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. Then the same procedure is repeated starting from the beginning of the string. This is similar in behaviour to [Trim \(1760\)](#) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors: None.

See also: [Trim \(1760\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(1319\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(1320\)](#), [TrimSet \(1329\)](#), [TrimLeftSet \(1329\)](#), [TrimRightSet \(1329\)](#)

### 74.3.77 RemoveTrailingChars

Synopsis: Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure RemoveTrailingChars(var S: AnsiString;  
const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveTrailingChars` removes any trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to [TrimRight \(1762\)](#) which used whitespace as the set.

See also: [TrimRight \(1761\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(1319\)](#), [TrimRightSet \(1329\)](#)

### 74.3.78 ReplaceStr

Synopsis: Replace strings case-sensitively

Declaration: `function ReplaceStr(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReplaceStr` is a utility function that scans `AText` and replaces all occurrences of `AFromText` with `AToText` and returns the resulting string. It simply calls [StringReplace \(1737\)](#) with the appropriate options.

See also: [StringReplace \(1737\)](#), [ReplaceText \(1321\)](#)

### 74.3.79 ReplaceText

Synopsis: Replace strings case-insensitively

Declaration: `function ReplaceText(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReplaceText` is a utility function that scans `AText` and replaces all occurrences of `AFromText` (case insensitive) with `AToText` and returns the resulting string. It simply calls `StringReplace` (1737) with the appropriate options.

See also: `StringReplace` (1737), `ReplaceText` (1321)

### 74.3.80 ResemblesText

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings resemble each other

Declaration: `function ResemblesText(const AText: string; const AOther: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResemblesText` is an alias for `AnsiResemblesText` (1301)

See also: `AnsiResemblesText` (1301)

### 74.3.81 ReverseString

Synopsis: Reverse characters in a string

Declaration: `function ReverseString(const AText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReverseString` returns a string, made up of the characters in string `AText`, in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `RandomFrom` (1319)

### 74.3.82 RightBStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters (bytes), counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: `function RightBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightBStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (1314), `AnsiRightStr` (1302), `RightStr` (1322), `MidBStr` (1315)

### 74.3.83 RightStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters, counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: 

```
function RightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)
                : AnsiString
function RightStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: SizeInt)
                : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RightStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [LeftStr \(1314\)](#), [AnsiRightStr \(1302\)](#), [RightBStr \(1321\)](#), [MidStr \(1316\)](#)

### 74.3.84 RomanToInt

Synopsis: Convert a string with a Roman number to its decimal value.

Declaration: 

```
function RomanToInt(const S: string;
                    Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RomanToInt` returns the decimal equivalent of the Roman numerals in the string `S`. Invalid characters are dropped from `S`. A negative numeral is supported as well. The level of error checking is determined by the `strictness` parameter, the values are described in the type `TRomanConversionStrictness` ([1295](#)).

Errors: On error, a `EConvertError` ([1294](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TRomanConversionStrictness` ([1295](#)), [IntToRoman \(1313\)](#), [Hex2Dec \(1311\)](#), [Numb2Dec \(1317\)](#)

### 74.3.85 RomanToIntDef

Synopsis: Convert a roman numeral to an integer value

Declaration: 

```
function RomanToIntDef(const S: string; const ADefault: LongInt;
                       Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RomanToInt` converts the roman numeral in `S` to an integer and returns the integer value. The strictness of the conversion algorithm is determined by `Strictness`. If the conversion fails, `ADefault` is returned.

See also: `TRomanConversionStrictness` ([1295](#)), [TryRomanToInt \(1329\)](#), [RomanToInt \(1322\)](#), [IntToRoman \(1313\)](#)

### 74.3.86 RPos

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of substring or character in a string

Declaration: `function RPos(c: Char; const S: AnsiString) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function RPos(c: UnicodeChar; const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt`  
`; Overload`  
`function RPos(const Substr: AnsiString; const Source: AnsiString)`  
`: SizeInt; Overload`  
`function RPos(const Substr: UnicodeString; const Source: UnicodeString)`  
`: SizeInt; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at the end of the string, and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

See also: `RPosEx` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.87 RPosEx

Synopsis: Find last occurrence substring or character in a string, starting at a certain position

Declaration: `function RPosEx(C: Char; const S: AnsiString; offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt`  
`; Overload`  
`function RPosEx(C: UnicodeChar; const S: UnicodeString; offs: Cardinal)`  
`: SizeInt; Overload`  
`function RPosEx(const Substr: AnsiString; const Source: AnsiString;`  
`offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function RPosEx(const Substr: UnicodeString;`  
`const Source: UnicodeString; offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at position `Offs` (counted from the start of the string), and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

See also: `RPos` ([1323](#))

### 74.3.88 SearchBuf

Synopsis: Search a buffer for a certain string.

Declaration: `function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: SizeInt; SelStart: SizeInt;`  
`SelLength: SizeInt; SearchString: string;`  
`Options: TStringSearchOptions) : PChar`  
`function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: SizeInt; SelStart: SizeInt;`  
`SelLength: SizeInt; SearchString: string) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `SearchBuf` searches the buffer `Buf` for the occurrence of `SearchString`. At most `BufLen` characters are searched, and the search is started at `SelStart+SelLength`. If a match is found,

a pointer to the position of the match is returned. The parameter Options (1296) specifies how the search is conducted. It is a set of the following options:

Table 74.5:

| Option      | Effect  |
|-------------|---|
| soDown      | Searches forward, starting at the end of the selection. Default is searching up |
| soMatchCase | Observe case when searching. Default is to ignore case.                         |
| soWholeWord | Match only whole words. Default also returns parts of words                     |

The standard constant WordDelimiters (1295) is used to mark the boundaries of words.

The SelStart parameter is zero based.

Errors: Buflen must be the real length of the string, no checking on this is performed.

See also: FindPart (1310), ExtractWord (1308), ExtractWordPos (1308), ExtractSubStr (1308), IsWordPresent (1314)

### 74.3.89 Soundex

Synopsis: Compute the soundex of a string

Declaration: `function Soundex(const AText: string; ALength: TSoundexLength) : string`  
`function Soundex(const AText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Soundex computes a soundex code for AText. The resulting code will at most have ALength characters. The soundex code is computed according to the US system of soundex computing, which may result in inaccurate results in other languages.

Note that AText may not contain null characters.

Errors: None.

See also: SoundexCompare (1324), SoundexInt (1325), SoundexProc (1325), SoundexWord (1326), SoundexSimilar (1325)

### 74.3.90 SoundexCompare

Synopsis: Compare soundex values of 2 strings.

Declaration: `function SoundexCompare(const AText: string; const AOther: string;`  
`ALength: TSoundexLength) : Integer`  
`function SoundexCompare(const AText: string; const AOther: string)`  
`: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: SoundexCompare computes the soundex codes of AText and AOther and feeds these to CompareText. It will return -1 if the soundex code of AText is less than the soundex code of AOther, 0 if they are equal, and 1 if the code of AOther is larger than the code of AText.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (1324), SoundexInt (1325), SoundexProc (1325), SoundexWord (1326), SoundexSimilar (1325)

### 74.3.91 SoundexInt

Synopsis: Soundex value as an integer.

Declaration: 

```
function SoundexInt(const AText: string; ALength: TSoundexIntLength)
                    : Integer
function SoundexInt(const AText: string) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the Soundex (1324) code (with length `ALength`, default 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to an integer value.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (1324), SoundexCompare (1324), SoundexProc (1325), SoundexWord (1326), SoundexSimilar (1325)

### 74.3.92 SoundexProc

Synopsis: Default `AnsiResemblesText` implementation.

Declaration: 

```
function SoundexProc(const AText: string; const AOther: string)
                    : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexProc` is the standard implementation for the `AnsiResemblesText` (1301) procedure: By default, `AnsiResemblesProc` is set to this function. It compares the soundex codes of `AOther` and `AText` and returns `True` if they are equal, or `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (1324), SoundexCompare (1324), SoundexInt (1325), SoundexWord (1326), SoundexSimilar (1325)

### 74.3.93 SoundexSimilar

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings have equal soundex values

Declaration: 

```
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: string; const AOther: string;
                        ALength: TSoundexLength) : Boolean
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: string; const AOther: string)
                        : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexSimilar` returns `True` if the soundex codes (with length `ALength`) of `AText` and `AOther` are equal, and `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (1324), SoundexCompare (1324), SoundexInt (1325), SoundexProc (1325), SoundexWord (1326), Soundex (1324)

### 74.3.94 SoundexWord

Synopsis: Calculate a word-sized soundex value

Declaration: `function SoundexWord(const AText: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the Soundex ([1324](#)) code (with length 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to a word-sized value.

`AText` may not contain null characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` ([1324](#)), `SoundexCompare` ([1324](#)), `SoundexInt` ([1325](#)), `SoundexProc` ([1325](#)), `SoundexSimilar` ([1325](#))

### 74.3.95 SplitCommandLine

Declaration: `function SplitCommandLine(S: RawByteString) : TRawByteStringArray`  
`function SplitCommandLine(S: UnicodeString) : TUnicodeStringArray`

Visibility: default

### 74.3.96 SplitString

Synopsis: Split a string in words

Declaration: `function SplitString(const S: string; const Delimiters: string)`  
`: TStringDynArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `SplitString` will split the string (`S`) using the characters in `Delimiters` as separator characters. The result contains all words separated by one of the characters in `Delimiters`.

This function is a simplified wrapper around `TStringHelper.Split` ([1294](#)).

See also: `TStringHelper.Split` ([1294](#))

### 74.3.97 StartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether one string starts with another

Declaration: `function StartsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` starts with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns `true` if the first characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-sensitive. If you wish to compare case-insensitively, use `StartsText` ([1327](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiStartsStr` ([1302](#)), `EndsStr` ([1307](#)), `StartsText` ([1327](#))

### 74.3.98 StartsText

Synopsis: Check whether one text starts with another

Declaration: `function StartsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` starts with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns `true` if the first characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-insensitive. If you wish to compare case-sensitively, use `StartsStr` ([1326](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiStartsText` ([1302](#)), `EndsText` ([1307](#)), `StartsStr` ([1326](#))

### 74.3.99 StringReplace

Synopsis: Optimized search-and-replace algorithm

Declaration: `function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;  
const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags;  
out aCount: Integer;  
Algorithm: TStringReplaceAlgorithm) : string  
; Overload  
function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;  
const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags;  
Algorithm: TStringReplaceAlgorithm) : string  
; Overload  
function StringReplace(const S: UnicodeString;  
const OldPattern: UnicodeString;  
const NewPattern: UnicodeString;  
Flags: TReplaceFlags) : UnicodeString; Overload  
function StringReplace(const S: WideString;  
const OldPattern: WideString;  
const NewPattern: WideString;  
Flags: TReplaceFlags) : WideString; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringReplace` replaces one or all occurrences of `OldPattern` with `NewPattern` in the string `S`. The behaviour is controlled by `Flags` and the search mechanism may be optimized using `Algorithm`. A list of possible algorithms is specified in `TStringReplaceAlgorithm` ([1296](#)).

For ansistrings, this is an optimized version of the `SysUtils.StringReplace` ([1737](#)) algorithm. For widestrings or unicodestrings, the algorithm parameter is ignored and the default mechanism in `sysutils` is always used.

Errors: None.

See also: `SysUtils.StringReplace` ([1737](#)), `TStringReplaceAlgorithm` ([1296](#))

### 74.3.100 StringsReplace

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of a set of strings to another set of strings

**Declaration:** `function StringsReplace(const S: string; OldPattern: Array of string;  
NewPattern: Array of string;  
Flags: TReplaceFlags) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringsReplace` scans `S` for the occurrence of one of the strings in `OldPattern` and replaces it with the corresponding string in `NewPattern`. It takes into account `Flags`, which has the same meaning as in `StringReplace` ([1737](#)).

Corresponding strings are matched by location: the `N`-th string in `OldPattern` is replaced by the `N`-th string in `NewPattern`. Note that this means that the number of strings in both arrays must be the same.

**Errors:** If the number of strings in both arrays is different, then an exception is raised.

See also: `StringReplace` ([1737](#)), `TReplaceFlags` ([1623](#))

### 74.3.101 StuffString

**Synopsis:** Replace part of a string with another string.

**Declaration:** `function StuffString(const AText: string; AStart: Cardinal;  
ALength: Cardinal; const ASubText: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StuffString` returns a copy of `AText` with the segment starting at `AStart` with length `ALength`, replaced with the string `ASubText`. Basically it deletes the segment of `Atext` and inserts the new text in it's place.

**Errors:** No checking on the validity of the `AStart` and `ALength` parameters is done. Providing invalid values may result in access violation errors.

See also: `FindPart` ([1310](#)), `DelChars` ([1306](#)), `DelSpace` ([1306](#)), `ExtractSubStr` ([1308](#)), `DupeString` ([1306](#))

### 74.3.102 Tab2Space

**Synopsis:** Convert tab characters to a number of spaces

**Declaration:** `function Tab2Space(const S: string; Numb: Byte) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Tab2Space` returns a copy of `S` with all tab characters (ASCII character 9) converted to `Numb` spaces.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StuffString` ([1328](#)), `FindPart` ([1310](#)), `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), `DelChars` ([1306](#)), `DelSpace` ([1306](#)), `DelSpace1` ([1306](#)), `DupeString` ([1306](#))

### 74.3.103 TrimLeftSet

Synopsis: Remove any leading characters in a set from a string and returns the result

Declaration: `function TrimLeftSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimLeftSet` performs the same action as `RemoveLeadingChars` (1319), but returns the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TrimLeft` (1761), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1319), `RemoveTrailingChars` (1320), `RemovePadChars` (1320), `TrimSet` (1329), `TrimRightSet` (1329)

### 74.3.104 TrimRightSet

Synopsis: Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

Declaration: `function TrimRightSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimRightSet` performs the same action as `RemoveTrailingChars` (1320), but returns the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TrimRight` (1762), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1319), `RemoveTrailingChars` (1320), `RemovePadChars` (1320), `TrimSet` (1329), `TrimLeftSet` (1329)

### 74.3.105 TrimSet

Synopsis: Remove any leading or trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

Declaration: `function TrimSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimSet` performs the same action as `RemovePadChars` (1320), but returns the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` (1760), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1319), `RemoveTrailingChars` (1320), `RemovePadChars` (1320), `TrimRightSet` (1329), `TrimLeftSet` (1329)

### 74.3.106 TryRomanToInt

Synopsis: Try to convert a roman numeral to an integer value.

Declaration: `function TryRomanToInt(S: string; out N: LongInt;  
Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryRomanToInt` will try to convert the roman numeral in `S` to an integer and returns the integer value in `N`. The strictness of the conversion algorithm is determined by `Strictness`. If the conversion succeeds, then `True` is returned, or else `False`.

See also: `TRomanConversionStrictness` (1295), `RomanToIntDef` (1322), `RomanToInt` (1322), `IntToRoman` (1313)

### 74.3.107 WordCount

Synopsis: Count the number of words in a string.

Declaration: `function WordCount(const S: string; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WordCount` returns the number of words in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`.

The predefined `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `WordPosition` ([1330](#)), `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)), `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), `ExtractWordPos` ([1308](#))

### 74.3.108 WordPosition

Synopsis: Search position of Nth word in a string.

Declaration: `function WordPosition(const N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WordPosition` returns the position (in characters) of the N-th word in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`. If `N` is out of range, zero is returned.

The predefined `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None

See also: `WordCount` ([1330](#)), `StdWordDelims` ([1295](#)), `ExtractWord` ([1308](#)), `ExtractWordPos` ([1308](#))

### 74.3.109 XorDecode

Synopsis: Decode a string encoded with `XorEncode` ([1331](#))

Declaration: `function XorDecode(const Key: string; const Source: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `XorDecode` decodes `Source` and returns the original string that was encrypted using `XorEncode` ([1331](#)) with key `Key`. If a different key is used than the key used to encode the string, the result will be unreadable.

Errors: If the string `Source` is not a valid `XorEncode` result (e.g. contains non-numerical characters), then a `EConversionError` exception will be raised.

See also: `XorEncode` ([1331](#)), `XorString` ([1331](#))

### 74.3.110 XorEncode

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key, representing the result as hex values.

**Declaration:** `function XorEncode(const Key: string; const Source: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorEncode` encodes the string `Source` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key` (repeating `Key` as often as necessary) and representing the resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2). The result is therefore twice as long as the original string, and every 2 bytes represent an ASCII code.

Feeding the resulting string with the same key `Key` to the `XorDecode` (1330) function will result in the original `Source` string.

This function can be used e.g. to trivially encode a password in a configuration file.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `XorDecode` (1330), `XorString` (1331), `Hex2Dec` (1311)

### 74.3.111 XorString

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key.

**Declaration:** `function XorString(const Key: ShortString; const Src: ShortString)  
: ShortString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorString` encodes the string `Src` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key`, repeating `Key` as often as necessary. The resulting string may contain unreadable characters and may even contain null characters. For this reason it may be a better idea to use the `XorEncode` (1331) function instead, which will representing each resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2).

Feeding the result again to `XorString` with the same `Key`, will result in the original string `Src`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `XorEncode` (1331), `XorDecode` (1330)

## Chapter 75

# Reference for unit 'System'

### 75.1 Overview

The system unit contains the standard supported functions of Free Pascal. It is the same for all platforms. Basically it is the same as the system unit provided with Borland or Turbo Pascal.

Functions are listed in alphabetical order. Arguments of functions or procedures that are optional are put between square brackets.

The predefined constants and variables are listed in the first section. The second section contains an overview of all functions, grouped by functionality, and the last section contains the supported functions and procedures.

### 75.2 Unicode and codepage support

The system unit works with Short-, Ansi-, and UnicodeString routines for all string related operations.

Ansistrings are code-page aware, which means that code page information is associated with them. For most routines, the support for converting these code pages is natural. For some routines, care must be taken when converting from codepage-aware strings to widestring.

The codepage conversion support is influenced by the following variables:

Table 75.1:

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| DefaultSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1411</a> )        | Actual code page to use when CP_ACP ( <a href="#">1338</a> ) is encountered      |
| DefaultUnicodeCodePage ( <a href="#">1411</a> )       | Code page for new Unicode strings  |
| DefaultFileSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1410</a> )    | Codepage to use when sending strings to single-byte OS file system routines.     |
| DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1410</a> ) | Codepage to use when receiving strings from single-byte OS file system routines. |

The windows code page identifiers are used. There are 3 special codepage identifiers:

Table 75.2:

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| CP_ACP ( <a href="#">1338</a> )                       | Currently set default system codepage                   |
| CP_OEMCP ( <a href="#">1339</a> )                     | OEM (console) code page (only on windows)               |
| CP_NONE ( <a href="#">1339</a> )                      | Indicates absence of code page information for a string |
| DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1410</a> ) |   |

The following routines may perform code page conversions:

Table 75.3:

| Name                               | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| LowerCase ( <a href="#">1501</a> ) | Return lowercase version of a string.                               |
| UpCase ( <a href="#">1559</a> )    | Convert a string to all uppercase.                                  |
| GetDir ( <a href="#">1469</a> )    | Return the current directory  |
| MkDir ( <a href="#">1502</a> )     | Create a new directory.   |
| ChDir ( <a href="#">1432</a> )     | Change current working directory.                                   |
| RmDir ( <a href="#">1521</a> )     | Remove directory when empty.  |
| Assign ( <a href="#">1419</a> )    | Assign a name to a file   |
| Erase ( <a href="#">1454</a> )     | Delete a file from disk   |
| Rename ( <a href="#">1518</a> )    | Rename file on disk   |
| Read ( <a href="#">1514</a> )      | Read from a text file into variable                                 |
| ReadLn ( <a href="#">1515</a> )    | Read from a text file into variable and goto next line              |
| Write ( <a href="#">1566</a> )     | Write variable to a text file or standard output                    |
| WriteLn ( <a href="#">1567</a> )   | Write variable to a text file or standard output and append newline |
| ReadStr ( <a href="#">1516</a> )   | Read variables from a string  |
| WriteStr ( <a href="#">1568</a> )  | Write variables to a string   |
| Insert ( <a href="#">1488</a> )    | Insert one string or dynamic array in another.                      |
| Copy ( <a href="#">1441</a> )      | Copy part of a string.  |
| Delete ( <a href="#">1445</a> )    | Delete elements (characters) from a string or dynamic array.        |
| SetString ( <a href="#">1535</a> ) | Set length of a string and copy buffer.                             |

All these routines exist also in Unicode versions.

Note that for conversion of codepages and Unicode strings, a Unicode manager must be present. On windows, the system is used for this. On Unix, one of the fpwdestring or cwstring units must be used.

### 75.3 Miscellaneous functions

Functions that do not belong in one of the other categories.

Table 75.4:

| Name            | Description                             |
|-----------------|---|
| Assert (1419)   | Conditionally abort program with error  |
| Break (1428)    | Abort current loop                      |
| Continue (1439) | Next cycle in current loop              |
| Exclude (1455)  | Exclude an element from a set           |
| Exit (1456)     | Exit current function or procedure      |
| Include (1481)  | Include an element into a set           |
| LongJump (1500) | Jump to execution point                 |
| Ord (1507)      | Return ordinal value of enumerated type |
| Pred (1511)     | Return previous value of ordinal type   |
| SetJump (1531)  | Mark execution point for jump           |
| SizeOf (1539)   | Return size of variable or type         |
| Succ (1548)     | Return next value of ordinal type       |

## 75.4 Operating System functions

Functions that are connected to the operating system.

Table 75.5:

| Name              | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Chdir (1432)      | Change working directory                           |
| Getdir (1469)     | Return current working directory                   |
| Halt (1476)       | Halt program execution                             |
| Paramcount (1508) | Number of parameters with which program was called |
| Paramstr (1509)   | Retrieve parameters with which program was called  |
| Mkdir (1502)      | Make a directory                                   |
| Rmdir (1521)      | Remove a directory                                 |
| Runerror (1526)   | Abort program execution with error condition       |

## 75.5 String handling

All things connected to string handling.

Table 75.6:

| Name                | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| BinStr (1426)       | Construct binary representation of integer           |
| Chr (1433)          | Convert ASCII code to character                      |
| Concat (1439)       | Concatenate two strings                              |
| Copy (1441)         | Copy part of a string                                |
| Delete (1445)       | Delete part of a string                              |
| HexStr (1477)       | Construct hexadecimal representation of integer      |
| Insert (1488)       | Insert one string in another                         |
| Length (1495)       | Return length of string                              |
| Lowercase (1501)    | Convert string to all-lowercase                      |
| OctStr (1505)       | Construct octal representation of integer            |
| Pos (1510)          | Calculate position of one string in another          |
| SetLength (1532)    | Set length of a string                               |
| SetString (1535)    | Set contents and length of a string or dynamic array |
| Str (1543)          | Convert number to string representation              |
| StringOfChar (1545) | Create string consisting of a number of characters   |
| Uppcase (1559)      | Convert string to all-uppercase                      |
| Val (1562)          | Convert string to number                             |

## 75.6 Mathematical routines

Functions connected to calculating and converting numbers.

Table 75.7:

| Name             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Abs (1414)       | Calculate absolute value                             |
| Arctan (1418)    | Calculate inverse tangent                            |
| Cos (1442)       | Calculate cosine of angle                            |
| Dec (1443)       | Decrease value of variable                           |
| Exp (1458)       | Exponentiate   |
| Frac (1466)      | Return fractional part of floating point value       |
| Hi (1477)        | Return high byte/word of value                       |
| Inc (1480)       | Increase value of variable                           |
| Int (1488)       | Calculate integer part of floating point value       |
| Ln (1497)        | Calculate logarithm                                  |
| Lo (1497)        | Return low byte/word of value                        |
| Odd (1506)       | Is a value odd or even ?                             |
| Pi (1509)        | Return the value of pi                               |
| Random (1513)    | Generate random number                               |
| Randomize (1514) | Initialize random number generator                   |
| Round (1524)     | Round floating point value to nearest integer number |
| Sin (1539)       | Calculate sine of angle                              |
| Sqr (1541)       | Calculate the square of a value                      |
| Sqrt (1542)      | Calculate the square root of a value                 |
| Swap (1548)      | Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable          |
| Trunc (1554)     | Truncate a floating point value                      |

## 75.7 Memory management functions

Functions concerning memory issues.

Table 75.8:

| Name                      | Description                                       |
|---------------------------|---|
| Addr (1416)               | Return address of variable                        |
| Assigned (1423)           | Check if a pointer is valid                       |
| CompareByte (1434)        | Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte            |
| CompareChar (1435)        | Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte            |
| CompareDWord (1437)       | Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte            |
| CompareWord (1438)        | Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte            |
| CSeg (1442)               | Return code segment                               |
| Dispose (1446)            | Free dynamically allocated memory                 |
| DSeg (1447)               | Return data segment                               |
| FillByte (1460)           | Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern             |
| FillChar (1461)           | Fill memory region with certain character         |
| FillDWord (1462)          | Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern            |
| FillQWord (??)            | Fill memory region with 64-bit pattern            |
| FillWord (1462)           | Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern            |
| Freemem (1467)            | Release allocated memory                          |
| Getmem (1470)             | Allocate new memory                               |
| GetMemoryManager (1471)   | Return current memory manager                     |
| High (1478)               | Return highest index of open array or enumerated  |
| IndexByte (1481)          | Find byte-sized value in a memory range           |
| IndexChar (1482)          | Find char-sized value in a memory range           |
| IndexDWord (1483)         | Find DWord-sized (32-bit) value in a memory range |
| IndexQWord (1484)         | Find QWord-sized value in a memory range          |
| IndexWord (1484)          | Find word-sized value in a memory range           |
| IsMemoryManagerSet (1494) | Is the memory manager set                         |
| MemSize (1502)            | Get size of allocation                            |
| Low (1500)                | Return lowest index of open array or enumerated   |
| Move (1502)               | Move data from one location in memory to another  |
| MoveChar0 (1503)          | Move data till first zero character               |
| New (1504)                | Dynamically allocate memory for variable          |
| Ofs (1506)                | Return offset of variable                         |
| Ptr (1512)                | Combine segment and offset to pointer             |
| ReAllocMem (1517)         | Resize a memory block on the heap                 |
| Seg (1530)                | Return segment                                    |
| SetMemoryManager (1533)   | Set a memory manager                              |
| Sptr (1541)               | Return current stack pointer                      |
| SSeg (1542)               | Return stack segment register value               |

## 75.8 File handling functions

Functions concerning input and output from and to file.

Table 75.9:

| Name              | Description                                     |
|-------------------|---|
| Append (1417)     | Open a file in append mode                      |
| Assign (1419)     | Assign a name to a file                         |
| Blockread (1427)  | Read data from a file into memory               |
| Blockwrite (1428) | Write data from memory to a file                |
| Close (1433)      | Close a file                                    |
| Eof (1452)        | Check for end of file                           |
| Eoln (1453)       | Check for end of line                           |
| Erase (1454)      | Delete file from disk                           |
| Filepos (1459)    | Position in file                                |
| Filesize (1460)   | Size of file                                    |
| Flush (1465)      | Write file buffers to disk                      |
| IOresult (1492)   | Return result of last file IO operation         |
| Read (1514)       | Read from file into variable                    |
| Readln (1515)     | Read from file into variable and goto next line |
| Rename (1518)     | Rename file on disk                             |
| Reset (1519)      | Open file for reading                           |
| Rewrite (1520)    | Open file for writing                           |
| Seek (1528)       | Set file position                               |
| SeekEof (1528)    | Set file position to end of file                |
| SeekEoln (1529)   | Set file position to end of line                |
| SetTextBuf (1535) | Set size of file buffer                         |
| Truncate (1555)   | Truncate the file at position                   |
| Write (1566)      | Write variable to file                          |
| WriteLn (1567)    | Write variable to file and append newline       |

## 75.9 Run-Time Error behaviour

The system unit handles errors by default by generating a run-time error, and halting the program with an exit code equal to the run-time error number.

This behaviour changes when the SysUtils (1599) unit is used. In that case, all run-time errors are converted to exceptions: most run-time errors have their own exception class.

If these exceptions are caught, the program code decides what to do with it. If the exception is not caught, the program will exit through the default exception handler.

When the system unit documentation refers to run-time errors, the above should be kept in mind.

## 75.10 Constants, types and variables

### 75.10.1 Constants

```
AbstractErrorProc : TAbstractErrorProc = Nil
```

If set, the `AbstractErrorProc` constant is used when an abstract error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 211.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
AllFilesMask = '*'
```

AllFilesMask is the wildcard that can be used to return all files in a directory. Do not assume that this is '\*' or '\*.\*' based on the platform only. The actual value on DOS/Windows based systems can be influenced by e.g. LFNSupport ([1354](#)).

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : Set of Char = ['\','/']
```

AllowDirectorySeparators is the set of characters which are considered directory separators by the RTL units. By default, this is set to the most common directory separators: forward slash and backslash, so routines will work in a cross-platform manner, no matter which character was used:

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : set of char = ['\','/'];
```

If a more strict behaviour is desired, then AllowDirectorySeparators can be set to the only character allowed on the current operating system, and all RTL routines that handle filenames (splitting filenames, extracting parts of the filename and so on) will use that character only.

```
AllowDriveSeparators : Set of Char = []
```

AllowDriveSeparators are the characters which are considered to separate the drive part from the directory part in a filename. This will be an empty set on systems that do not support drive letters. Other systems (Dos, Windows and OS/2) will have the colon (:) character as the only member of this set.

```
AssertErrorProc : TAssertErrorProc = @ SysAssert
```

If set, the AbstractErrorProc constant is used when an assert error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: The assertion error message is printed, together with the location of the assertion, and A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 227.

The SysUtils unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
BacktraceStrFunc : TBacktraceStrFunc = @ SysBacktraceStr
```

This handler is called to get a standard format for the backtrace routine.

```
CatchAllExceptions = PtrInt(- 1)
```

Mask indicating all exception kinds

```
cExceptionFrame = 1
```

cExceptionFrame indicates an except frame.

```
cFinalizeFrame = 2
```

cFinalizeFrame indicates a finally frame.

```
CP_ACP = 0
```

CP\_ACP is the default Windows codepage identifier.

`CP_ASCII = 20127`

`CP_ASCII` is the Windows ASCII encoding codepage identifier.

`CP_NONE = $FFFF`

`CP_NONE` is used when no code page information is available.

`CP_OEMCP = 1`

`CP_ACP` is the default Windows OEM (MS-DOS) codepage identifier.

`CP_UTF16 = 1200`

`CP_UTF16` is the default Windows Unicode codepage identifier (little endian).

`CP_UTF16BE = 1201`

`CP_UTF16BE` is the Windows Unicode codepage identifier (big endian).

`CP_UTF7 = 65000`

`CP_UTF7` is the Windows Unicode 7-Bit encoding codepage identifier.

`CP_UTF8 = 65001`

`CP_UTF8` is the Windows Unicode 8-Bit encoding codepage identifier.

`CtrlZMarksEOF : Boolean = False`

`CtrlZMarksEOF` indicates whether on this system, an CTRL-Z character (ordinal 26) in a file marks the end of the file. This is `False` on most systems apart from DOS and Windows.

To get DOS/Windows-compatible behaviour, this constant can be set to `True`

`Default8087CW : Word = $1332`

`DefaultMXCSR : DWord = $1900`

`DefaultStackSize = 4 * 1024 * 1024`

Default size for a new thread's stack (4MiB by default).

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle = tlbsLF`

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` contains the default OS setting for the `TTextLineBreakStyle` (1395) type. It is initialized by the system unit, and is used to determine the default line ending when writing to text files.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DirectorySeparator = '/'
```

`DirectorySeparator` is the character used by the current operating system to separate directory parts in a pathname. This constant is system dependent, and should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DriveSeparator = ''
```

On systems that support drive letters, the `DriveSeparator` constant denotes the character that separates the drive indicator from the directory part in a filename path.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
ErrorAddr : CodePointer = Nil
```

Address where the last error occurred.

```
ErrorCode : Word = 0
```

Last error code.

```
ErrorProc : TErrorProc = Nil
```

If set, the `ErrorProc` constant is used when a run-time error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: a stack dump is performed, and the program exits with the indicated error code.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
ExceptClsProc : Pointer = Nil
```

`ExceptClsProc` is used in SEH (Structured Exception Support) to convert OS exception information to FPC exception classes when filtering exceptions. It is set e.g. by the `sysutils` unit. If it is not set, the exception is not handled.

```
ExceptObjProc : Pointer = Nil
```

`ExceptObjProc` is used in SEH (Structured Exception Support) to convert OS exception information to FPC exceptions. It is set e.g. by the `sysutils` unit. If it is not set, a run-time error results when OS exceptions are intercepted.

```
ExceptProc : TExceptProc = Nil
```

This constant points to the current exception handling procedure. This routine is called when an unhandled exception occurs, i.e. an exception that is not stopped by a `except` block.

If the handler is not set, the RTL will emit a run-time error 217 when an unhandled exception occurs.

It is set by the `sysutils` ([1599](#)) unit.

```
ExitProc : CodePointer = Nil
```

Exit procedure pointer.

```
ExtensionSeparator = '.'
```

`ExtensionSeparator` is the character which separates the filename from the file extension. On all current platforms, this is the . (dot) character. All RTL filename handling routines use this constant.

```
E_NOINTERFACE = HRESULT($80004002)
```

Interface call result: Error: not an interface

```
E_NOTIMPL = HRESULT($80004001)
```

Interface call result: Interface not implemented

```
E_UNEXPECTED = HRESULT($8000FFFF)
```

Interface call result: Unexpected error

```
FileMode : Byte = 2
```

`FileMode` determines how untyped files are opened for reading with `Reset` ([1519](#)). It can have the following values:

**0** open file readonly

**1** open file write only

**2** open file read/write

```
FileNameCasePreserving : Boolean = True
```

`FileNameCasePreserving` is `True` if case of letters in file and directory entries is preserved and may be later retrieved exactly as supplied when creating or renaming these entries. Note that this may depend on the file system: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to true, but when writing to the DOS partition, all letters may be automatically converted to uppercase.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
FileNameCaseSensitive : Boolean = True
```

`FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` if case is important when using filenames on the current OS. In this case, the OS will treat files with different cased names as different files. Note that this may depend on the file system: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to true, but when writing to the DOS partition, the casing is ignored.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
filerecnamelength = 255
```

`filerecnamelength` is the maximum filename size for untyped files.

`float_flag_denormal` = `exDenormalized`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

`float_flag_divbyzero` = `exZeroDivide`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Division by zero error

`float_flag_inexact` = `exPrecision`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

`float_flag_invalid` = `exInvalidOp`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Invalid operation error

`float_flag_overflow` = `exOverflow`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Overflow error

`float_flag_underflow` = `exUnderflow`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Underflow error

`float_round_down` = `rmDown`

Round down

`float_round_nearest_even` = `rmNearest`

Round to nearest even number

`float_round_to_zero` = `rmTruncate`

Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

`float_round_up` = `rmUp`

Round up

`fmAppend` = `$D7B4`

File mode: File is open for writing, appending to the end.

`fmClosed` = `$D7B0`

File mode: File is closed.

`fmInOut` = `$D7B3`

File mode: File is open for reading and writing.

`fmInput = $D7B1`

File mode: File is open for reading.

`fmOutput = $D7B2`

File mode: File is open for writing.

`FPC_EXCEPTION = 1`

FPC\_EXCEPTION is a constant describing a type of exception.

`fpc_in_abs_long = 64`

Internal ABS function

`fpc_in_abs_real = 127`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs (real)

`fpc_in_addr_x = 42`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: addr

`fpc_in_aligned_x = 80`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: aligned

`fpc_in_and_assign_x_y = 86`

`fpc_in_arctan_real = 130`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: arctan (real)

`fpc_in_assert_x_y = 41`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assert

`fpc_in_assigned_x = 19`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assigned

`fpc_in_bitsizeof_x = 61`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bitsizeof

`fpc_in_box_x = 77`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: box

`fpc_in_break` = 39

FPC compiler internal procedure index: break

`fpc_in_bsf_x` = 74

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bsf\_x

`fpc_in_bsr_x` = 75

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bsr\_x

`fpc_in_chr_byte` = 7

FPC compiler internal procedure index: chr

`fpc_in_concat_x` = 18

FPC compiler internal procedure index: concat

`fpc_in_const_abs` = 101

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs

`fpc_in_const_odd` = 102

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_ptr` = 103

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_sqr` = 100

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

`fpc_in_const_swap_long` = 105

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (long)

`fpc_in_const_swap_qword` = 108

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (qword)

`fpc_in_const_swap_word` = 104

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (word)

`fpc_in_continue` = 40

FPC compiler internal procedure index: continue

`fpc_in_copy_x` = 49

FPC compiler internal procedure index: copy

`fpc_in_cos_real` = 125

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cos (real)

`fpc_in_cpu_first` = 10000

`fpc_in_cycle` = 52

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cycle

`fpc_in_dec_x` = 36

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dec

`fpc_in_default_x` = 76

FPC compiler internal procedure index: default

`fpc_in_delete_x_y_z` = 83

`fpc_in_dispose_x` = 47

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dispose

`fpc_in_exclude_x_y` = 38

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exclude

`fpc_in_exit` = 48

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exit

`fpc_in_exp_real` = 124

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_exp_real`

`fpc_in_faraddr_x` = 97

`fpc_in_fillchar_x` = 55

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_fillchar_x`

`fpc_in_finalize_x` = 45

FPC compiler internal procedure index: finalize

`fpc_in_fma_double = 134`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (double)

`fpc_in_fma_extended = 135`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (extended)

`fpc_in_fma_float128 = 136`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (float 128)

`fpc_in_fma_single = 133`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (single)

`fpc_in_frac_real = 122`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_frac_real`

`fpc_in_get_caller_addr = 57`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_caller_addr`

`fpc_in_get_caller_frame = 58`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_caller_frame`

`fpc_in_get_frame = 56`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_frame`

`fpc_in_high_x = 28`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: high

`fpc_in_hi_long = 4`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (long)

`fpc_in_hi_qword = 107`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (qword)

`fpc_in_hi_word = 2`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (word)

`fpc_in_include_x_y = 37`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: include

`fpc_in_inc_x` = 35

FPC compiler internal procedure index: inc

`fpc_in_initialize_x` = 50

FPC compiler internal procedure index: initialize

`fpc_in_insert_x_y_z` = 82

`fpc_in_int_real` = 123

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_int_real`

`fpc_in_leave` = 51

FPC compiler internal procedure index: leave

`fpc_in_length_string` = 6

FPC compiler internal procedure index: length

`fpc_in_ln_real` = 131

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `ln (real)`

`fpc_in_low_x` = 27

FPC compiler internal procedure index: low

`fpc_in_lo_long` = 3

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `lo (long)`

`fpc_in_lo_qword` = 106

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `lo (qword)`

`fpc_in_lo_word` = 1

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `lo (word)`

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqb` = 200

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqd` = 202

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqw` = 201

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtb` = 203

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtd` = 205

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtw` = 204

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_move_x` = 54

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_move_x`

`fpc_in_neg_assign_x` = 94

`fpc_in_new_x` = 46

FPC compiler internal procedure index: new

`fpc_in_not_assign_x` = 95

`fpc_in_ofs_x` = 21

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ofs

`fpc_in_ord_x` = 5

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ord

`fpc_in_or_assign_x_y` = 87

`fpc_in_pack_x_y_z` = 59

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pack

`fpc_in_pi_real` = 126

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_pi_real`

`fpc_in_popcnt_x` = 79

FPC compiler internal procedure index: popcnt

fpc\_in\_pred\_x = 30

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pred

fpc\_in\_prefetch\_var = 109

FPC compiler internal procedure index: prefetch

fpc\_in\_readln\_x = 17

FPC compiler internal procedure index: readln

fpc\_in\_readstr\_x = 63

Internal read string procedure

fpc\_in\_read\_x = 16

FPC compiler internal procedure index: read

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile = 32

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile\_name = 84

fpc\_in\_reset\_x = 25

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile = 33

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile\_name = 85

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_x = 26

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rol\_assign\_x\_y = 92

fpc\_in\_rol\_x = 67

fpc\_in\_rol\_x\_x = 68

fpc\_in\_ror\_assign\_x\_y = 93

fpc\_in\_ror\_x = 65

fpc\_in\_ror\_x\_x = 66

fpc\_in\_round\_real = 121

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_round\_real

fpc\_in\_sar\_assign\_x\_y = 89

fpc\_in\_sar\_x = 73

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sar\_x

fpc\_in\_sar\_x\_y = 72

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sar\_x\_y

fpc\_in\_seg\_x = 29

FPC compiler internal procedure index: seg

fpc\_in\_setlength\_x = 44

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setlength

fpc\_in\_setstring\_x\_y\_z = 81

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setstring

fpc\_in\_settextbuf\_file\_x = 34

FPC compiler internal procedure index: settextbuf

fpc\_in\_shl\_assign\_x\_y = 90

fpc\_in\_shr\_assign\_x\_y = 91

fpc\_in\_sin\_real = 132

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sin (real)

fpc\_in\_sizeof\_x = 22

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sizeof

`fpc_in_slice = 53`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_slice`

`fpc_in_sqrt_real = 129`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `sqrt (real)`

`fpc_in_sqr_real = 128`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `sqr (real)`

`fpc_in_str_x_string = 20`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `str`

`fpc_in_succ_x = 31`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `succ`

`fpc_in_trunc_real = 120`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_trunc_real`

`fpc_in_typeinfo_x = 43`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `typeinfo`

`fpc_in_typeof_x = 23`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `typeof`

`fpc_in_unbox_x_y = 78`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `unbox`

`fpc_in_unpack_x_y_z = 60`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `unpack`

`fpc_in_val_x = 24`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `val`

`fpc_in_writeln_x = 15`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: `writeln`

`fpc_in_writestr_x = 62`

Internal write string procedure

```
fpc_in_write_x = 14
```

FPC compiler internal procedure index: write

```
fpc_in_x86_cli = fpc_in_cpu_first + 6
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_cs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 8
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_ds = fpc_in_cpu_first + 10
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_es = fpc_in_cpu_first + 11
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_fs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 12
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_gs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 13
```

```
fpc_in_x86_get_ss = fpc_in_cpu_first + 9
```

```
fpc_in_x86_inportb = fpc_in_cpu_first
```

```
fpc_in_x86_inportl = fpc_in_cpu_first + 2
```

```
fpc_in_x86_inportw = fpc_in_cpu_first + 1
```

```
fpc_in_x86_outportb = fpc_in_cpu_first + 3
```

```
fpc_in_x86_outportl = fpc_in_cpu_first + 5
```

```
fpc_in_x86_outportw = fpc_in_cpu_first + 4
```

```
fpc_in_x86_sti = fpc_in_cpu_first + 7
```

```
fpc_in_xor_assign_x_y = 88
```

```
fpc_objc_encode_x = 71
```

```
fpc_objc_protocol_x = 70
```

`fpc_objc_selector_x = 69`

`growheapsize1 : PtrUInt = 256 * 1024`

Grow rate for block less than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize2 : PtrUInt = 1024 * 1024`

Grow rate for block larger than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize_small : PtrUInt = 32 * 1024`

Fixed size small blocks grow rate

`has_mmx_support : Boolean = False`

CPU has mmx support

`has_sse2_support : Boolean = False`

CPU has sse2 support?

`has_sse3_support : Boolean = False`

CPU has sse3 support?

`has_sse_support : Boolean = False`

CPU has SSE support ?

`InitProc : CodePointer = Nil`

`InitProc` is a routine that can be called after all units were initialized. It can be set by units to execute code that can be initialized after all units were initialized.

**Remark** When setting the value of `InitProc`, the previous value should always be saved, and called when the installed initialization routine has finished executing.

`IObjectInstance : TGuid =  
'{D91C9AF4-3C93-420F-A303-BF5BA82BFD23}'`

`IObjectInstance` is an internal GUID, which should not be used in end-user code. It is used in the `as` operator.

`IsMultiThread : longbool = False`

Indicates whether more than one thread is running in the application.

`LFNSupport = True`

`LFNSupport` determines whether the current OS supports long file names, i.e. filenames that are not of the form 8.3 as on ancient DOS systems. If the value of this constant is `True` then long filenames are supported. If it is false, then not.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
LineEnding = #10
```

`LineEnding` is a constant which contains the current line-ending character. This character is system dependent, and is initialized by the system. It should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
maxExitCode = 255
```

`maxExitCode` is the maximum value for the `Halt` (1476) call.

```
MaxInt = maxsmallint
```

Maximum integer value.

```
MaxKeptOSChunks : DWord = 4
```

`MaxKeptOSChunks` tells the heap manager how many free chunks of OS-allocated memory it should keep in memory. When freeing memory, it can happen that a memory block obtained from the OS is completely free. If more than `MaxKeptOSChunks` such blocks are free, then the heap manager will return them to the OS, to reduce memory requirements.

```
MaxLongint = $7fffffff
```

Maximum longint value.

```
MaxPathLen = 4096
```

This constant is system dependent.

```
MaxSIntValue = High(ValSInt)
```

Maximum String-size value.

```
MaxSmallint = 32767
```

Maximum smallint value.

```
MaxUIntValue = High(ValUInt)
```

Maximum unsigned integer value.

```
Max_Frame_Dump : Word = 8
```

Maximum number of frames to show in error frame dump.

`ModuleIsCpp : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsCpp` is always false for FPC programs, it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

`ModuleIsLib : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a library (or package) (`True`) or program (`False`).

`ModuleIsPackage : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a package (`True`) or a library or program (`False`).

`NilHandle = TLibHandle(0)`

Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by `LoadLibrary` ([1498](#))

`PathSeparator = ':'`

`PathSeparator` is the character used commonly on the current operating system to separate paths in a list of paths, such as the `PATH` environment variable.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`RaiseMaxFrameCount : LongInt = 16`

Maximum number of frames to include in `TExceptObject` ([1384](#))

`RaiseProc : TExceptProc = Nil`

Procedure to raise an exception.

`RT_ACCELERATOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(9)`

Constant identifying an accelerator resource

`RT_ANICURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(21)`

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated cursor".

`RT_ANIICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE(22)`

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated icon".

`RT_BITMAP = MAKEINTRESOURCE(2)`

Constant identifying a bitmap resource

`RT_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(1)`

Constant identifying a cursor resource

RT\_DIALOG = MAKEINTRESOURCE (5)

Constant identifying a dialog resource

RT\_FONT = MAKEINTRESOURCE (8)

Constant identifying a font resource

RT\_FONTDIR = MAKEINTRESOURCE (7)

Constant identifying a font directory resource

RT\_GROUP\_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE (12)

Constant identifying a group cursor resource

RT\_GROUP\_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE (14)

Constant identifying a group icon resource

RT\_HTML = MAKEINTRESOURCE (23)

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "HTML data".

RT\_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE (3)

Constant identifying an icon resource

RT\_MANIFEST = MAKEINTRESOURCE (24)

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "Manifest".

RT\_MENU = MAKEINTRESOURCE (4)

Constant identifying a menu resource

RT\_MESSAGE\_TABLE = MAKEINTRESOURCE (11)

Constant identifying a message data resource

RT\_RCDATA = MAKEINTRESOURCE (10)

Constant identifying a binary data resource

RT\_STRING = MAKEINTRESOURCE (6)

Constant identifying a string table resource

RT\_VERSION = MAKEINTRESOURCE (16)

Constant identifying a version info resource

```
RuntimeErrorExitCodes : Array[TRuntimeError] of Byte = (0, 203, 204
, 200, 201, 215, 207, 200, 205, 206, 219, 216, 218, 217, 202, 220
, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227, 212, 228, 229, 233, 234, 235, 236
)
```

This array is used by the `Error` (1455) routine to convert a `TRuntimeError` (1393) enumeration type to a process exit code.

```
SafeCallErrorProc : TSafeCallErrorProc = Nil
```

`SafeCallErrorProc` is a Handler called in case of a safecall calling convention error. `Error` is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and `Addr` is the address where the error occurred.

```
SharedSuffix = 'so'
```

Shared library suffix for the current platform

```
sLineBreak = LineEnding
```

`sLineBreak` is an alias for `LineEnding` (1354) and is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
StackError : Boolean = False
```

Indicate whether there was a stack error.

```
StdErrorHandle = 2
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard error-output file.

```
StdInputHandle = 0
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard input file.

```
StdOutputHandle = 1
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard output file.

```
S_FALSE = 1
```

Interface call result: Not OK

```
S_OK = 0
```

Interface call result: OK

```
Test8086 : Byte = 2
```

This constant will only exist on Intel CPU platforms.

```
Test8087 : Byte = 3
```

This constant will only exist on Intel CPU platforms.

```
TextRecBufSize = 256
```

TextRecBufSize is the default buffer size for text files. The actual buffer can be set to another size using `SetTextBuf` ([1535](#)).

```
TextRecNameLength = 256
```

TextRecNameLength is the maximum filename size for text files.

```
ThreadingAlreadyUsed : Boolean = False
```

Internal constant for the threading system. Don't use.

```
tkAnsiChar = tkChar
```

tkAnsiChar is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkChar` ([1397](#))

```
tkAnsiString = tkAString
```

tkAnsiString is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkAString` ([1397](#))

```
tkShortString = tkSSString
```

tkShortString is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkSSString` ([1397](#))

```
tkUnicodeString = tkUString
```

tkUnicodeString is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkUString` ([1397](#))

```
tkWideChar = tkWChar
```

tkWideChar is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkUChar` ([1397](#))

```
tkWideString = tkWString
```

tkWideString is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkWString` ([1397](#))

```
UnixGetModuleByAddrHook : procedure(addr: pointer; var baseaddr: pointer
    ; var filename: string) = Nil
```

UnixGetModuleByAddrHook is used on Unix systems to retrieve a module name based on an address. It is used in the `exeinfo` ([719](#)) unit to map addresses to module (programs or library) names.

```
UnusedHandle = - 1
```

Value indicating an unused file handle (as reported by the OS).

`VarAddRefProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to increase reference count of a variant.

`varAny = $101`

Variant type: Any

`varArray = $2000`

Variant type: variant Array

`varBoolean = 11`

Variant type: Boolean type

`varByRef = $4000`

Variant type: By reference

`varByte = 17`

Variant type: Byte (8 bit)

`VarClearProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to clear a variant.

`VarCopyProc : procedure(var d: tvardata; const s: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to copy a variant

`varCurrency = 6`

Variant type: Currency

`varDate = 7`

Variant type: Date

`varDecimal = 14`

Variant type: Decimal (BCD)

`varDispatch = 9`

Variant type: dispatch interface

`varDouble = 5`

Variant type: Double float

`varEmpty = 0`

Variant type: Empty variant

`varError = 10`

Variant type: Error type

`varInt64 = 20`

Variant type: Integer (64-Bit)

`varInteger = 3`

Variant type: Integer (32-bit)

`varLongWord = 19`

Variant type: Word (32 bit)

`varNull = 1`

Variant type: Null ([1505](#)) variant

`varOleStr = 8`

Variant type: OLE string (widestring)

`varQWord = 21`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`varRecord = 36`

Record variant type

`varShortInt = 16`

Variant type: Shortint (16 bit)

`varSingle = 4`

Variant type: Single float

`varSmallInt = 2`

Variant type: smallint (8 bit)

`varStrArg = $48`

Variant type: String

`varString = $100`

Variant type: String

`VarToLStrProc : procedure (var d: AnsiString; const s: tvardata) =  
Nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a ansistring.

`VarToWStrProc : procedure (var d: WideString; const s: tvardata) =  
Nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a widestring.

`varTypeMask = $fff`

Variant type: Mask to extract type

`varUInt64 = varQWord`

`varuint64` denotes an unsigned 64-bit value in a variant. It is one of the values found in the `VType` field of the variant record `tvdata` ([1403](#)).

`varUnknown = 13`

Variant type: Unknown

`varUStrArg = $49`

`varustrarg` denotes a Unicode string argument in `DispInvoke` call. It will be converted to `varustring` in a variant.

`varUString = $102`

`varustring` denotes a Unicode string value in a variant. It is one of the values found in the `VType` field of the variant record `tvdata` ([1403](#)).

`varVariant = 12`

Variant type: Variant (arrays only)

`varWord = 18`

Variant type: Word (16 bit)

`varWord64 = varQWord`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`vmtAfterConstruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 5`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtAutoTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 7`

VMt layout: ?

`vmtBeforeDestruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 6`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtClassName = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer)`

VMt Layout: location of class name.

`vmtDefaultHandler = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 4`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtDefaultHandlerStr = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 7`

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtDestroy = vmtMethodStart`

VMt Layout: Location of destructor pointer.

`vmtDispatch = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 8`

`vmtDispatch` is the offset from the VMT start, in bytes to the dispatch table for a class. The dispatch table is used when dispatching messages in `TObject.Dispatch` ([1594](#))

`vmtDispatchStr = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 9`

`vmtDispatchStr` is the offset from the VMT start, in bytes to the dispatch table for a class. The dispatch table is used when dispatching messages in `TObject.DispatchStr` ([1595](#))

`vmtDynamicTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 2`

VMt Layout: location of dynamic methods table.

`vmtEquals = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 10`

`vmtEquals` contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the `TObject.Equals` ([1597](#)) method pointer.

`vmtFieldTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 4`

VMt Layout: Location of fields table.

`vmtFreeInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 2`

**VMt Layout:** location of FreeInstance method.

`vmtGetHashCode = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 11`

`vmtGetHashCode` contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the `TObject.GetHashCode` (1597) method pointer.

`vmtInitTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 6`

**VMt Layout:** ?

`vmtInstanceSize = 0`

**VMt Layout:** Location of class instance size in VMT

`vmtIntfTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 8`

**VMt layout:** Interface table

`vmtMethodStart = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 10`

**VMt layout:** start of method table.

`vmtMethodTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 3`

**VMt Layout:** Method table start.

`vmtMsgStrPtr = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 9`

**VMt layout:** message strings table.

`vmtNewInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer)`

**VMt Layout:** location of NewInstance method.

`vmtParent = sizeof(SizeInt) * 2`

**VMt Layout:** location of pointer to parent VMT.

`vmtSafeCallException = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 3`

**VMt Layout:** ?

`vmtToString = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 12`

`vmtToString` contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the `TObject.ToString` (1598) method pointer.

`vmtTypeInfo = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 5`

VMT Layout: Location of class type information.

`vtAnsiString = 11`

TVarRec type: Ansistring

`vtBoolean = 1`

TVarRec type: Boolean

`vtChar = 2`

TVarRec type: Char

`vtClass = 8`

TVarRec type: Class type

`vtCurrency = 12`

TVarRec type: Currency

`vtExtended = 3`

TVarRec type: Extended

`vtInt64 = 16`

TVarRec type: Int64 (signed 64-bit integer)

`vtInteger = 0`

TVarRec type: Integer

`vtInterface = 14`

TVarRec type: Interface

`vtObject = 7`

TVarRec type: Object instance

`vtPChar = 6`

TVarRec type: PChar

`vtPointer = 5`

TVarRec type: pointer

`vtPWideChar = 10`

TVarRec type: PWideChar

vtQWord = 17

TVarRec type: QWord (unsigned 64-bit integer)

vtString = 4

TVarRec type: String

vtUnicodeString = 18

vtUnicodeString denotes a Unicode string argument in the array of const. The TVarRec.VUnicodeString field will contain the actual value.

vtVariant = 13

TVarRec type: Variant

vtWideChar = 9

TVarRec type: Widechar

vtWideString = 15

TVarRec type: WideString

## 75.10.2 Types

AnsiChar = Char

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

Byte = 0..255

An unsigned 8-bits integer

Cardinal = LongWord

An unsigned 32-bits integer.

Char = #0..#255

Char is the basic ANSI character type, with a range of [#0..#255].

CodePointer = Pointer

CodePointer is used in 8/16-bit targets to indicate pointers to code segments. On all other platforms this equals Pointer.

CodePointer = Pointer

`CodePointer` is used in 8/16-bit targets to indicate pointers to code segments. On all other platforms this equals `Pointer`.

```
CodePtrInt = PtrInt
```

`CodePtrInt` is a signed integer with the same size as `CodePointer` (1366)

```
CodePtrInt = PtrInt
```

`CodePtrInt` is a signed integer with the same size as `CodePointer` (1366)

```
CodePtrUInt = PtrUInt
```

`CodePtrUInt` is an unsigned integer with the same size as `CodePointer` (1366)

```
CodePtrUInt = PtrUInt
```

`CodePtrUInt` is an unsigned integer with the same size as `CodePointer` (1366)

```
Comp = Int64
```

```
DWord = LongWord
```

**An unsigned 32-bits integer**

```
EnumResLangProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
    IDLanguage: Word; lParam: PtrInt) :
    LongBool
```

`EnumResNameProcs` used in the `EnumResourceLanguages` (1451) call. It is called for all languages for a resource of the specified type and name, and is passed the `ModuleHandle`, `ResourceName`, `ResourceName` and `IDLanguage` values for each language encountered for the specified resource. Additionally, the `lParam` parameter from the `EnumResourceLanguages` is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResNameProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
    lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
```

`EnumResNameProcs` used in the `EnumResourceNames` (1452) call. It is called for all resources of the specified type, and is passed the `ModuleHandle`, `ResourceType`, `ResourceName` values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the `lParam` parameter from the `EnumResourceNames` is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResTypeProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; lParam: PtrInt)
    : LongBool
```

`EnumResTypeProc` is used in the `EnumResourceTypes` (1452) call. It is called for all resources, and is passed the `ModuleHandle`, `ResourceType` values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the `lParam` parameter from the `EnumResourceTypes` is passed unaltered.

FarPointer = Pointer

FarPointer is used in 8/16-bit targets to indicate far pointers (over segments). On all other platforms this equals Pointer.

```
FileRec = record
public
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  RecSize
  : SizeInt;
  _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer
  )] of Byte;
  UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..filerecnamelength
  ] of TFileTextRecChar;
end
```

FileRec is the underlying type used in untyped files. It should be treated as opaque and never manipulated directly.

HGLOBAL = PtrUInt

This is an opaque type.

HMODULE = PtrUInt

This is an opaque type.

HRESULT = LongInt

32-Bit signed integer.

IInterface = IUnknown

IInterface is the basic interface from which all COM style interfaces descend.

Int16 = SmallInt

A signed 16-bits integer

Int32 = LongInt

A signed 32-bits integer

Int64 = - 9223372036854775808..9223372036854775807

Int64 is a 64-bit, signed integer type, with range [-9223372036854775808..9223372036854775807].

Int8 = ShortInt

A signed 8-bits integer

```
Integer = SmallInt
```

The system unit defines `Integer` as a signed 16-bit integer. But when DELPHI or OBJFPC mode are active, then the `objpas` unit redefines `Integer` as a 32-bit integer.

**Remark** Note that due to the way the language modes are implemented, if you refer to `integer` with the fully qualified name `System.Integer`, you will still get a 16-bit integer.

```
IntegerArray = Array[0..$ffffff] of Integer
```

Generic array of integer.

```
IntPtr = PtrInt
```

A signed integer with the same size in bytes as pointer

```
jmp_buf = packed record
public
    ebx : LongInt;
    esi : LongInt;
    edi : LongInt;
    bp  : Pointer;
    sp  : Pointer;
    pc  : Pointer;
end
```

Record type to store processor information.

```
Longint = - 2147483648..2147483647
```

A signed 32-bits integer

```
Longword = 0..4294967295
```

The base 32-bit unsigned type. See the reference manual for more details

```
MAKEINTRESOURCE = PChar
```

Alias for the `PChar` ([1370](#)) type.

```
MarshaledAString = PAnsiChar
```

Alias for `PAnsiChar`

```
MarshaledString = PWideChar
```

Alias for `PWideChar`

```
NativeInt = PtrInt
```

`NativeInt` is defined for Delphi compatibility. It is a signed integer with the size of a pointer, so 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, 64-bit on 64-bit platforms. It is advisable to use unsigned variants of this type. See `PtrUInt` ([1376](#)) for details.

`NativeUInt` = `PtrUInt`

`NativeUInt` is defined for Delphi compatibility. It is an unsigned integer with the size of a pointer, so 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, 64-bit on 64-bit platforms.

`OpaquePointer` = `POpaqueData`

Type alias for `POpaqueData`

`PAnsiChar` = `PChar`

Alias for `PChar` ([1370](#)) type.

`PAnsiString` = `^AnsiString`

Pointer to an `ansistring` type.

`PBoolean` = `^Boolean`

Pointer to a `Boolean` type.

`PBoolean16` = `^Boolean16`

`PBoolean32` = `^Boolean32`

`PBoolean64` = `^Boolean64`

`PBoolean8` = `^Boolean8`

`PByte` = `^Byte`

Pointer to `byte` ([1365](#)) type

`PByteBool` = `^ByteBool`

`pcallldesc` = `^tcallldesc`

Pointer to `TCallDesc` ([1381](#)) record.

`PCardinal` = `^Cardinal`

Pointer to `Cardinal` ([1365](#)) type

`PChar = ^Char`

Or the same as a pointer to an array of char. See the reference manual for more information about this type.

`PClass = ^TClass`

**Pointer to TClass ([1381](#))**

`PCodePointer = ^CodePointer`

`PCodePointer` is a typed pointer to `CodePointer` ([1366](#)).

`PCurrency = ^Currency`

**Pointer to currency type.**

`PDate = ^TDateTime`

**Pointer to a TDateTime ([1382](#)) type.**

`PDateTime = ^TDateTime`

**Pointer to Tdatetime**

`PDispatch = ^IDispatch`

**Pointer to IDispatch ([1580](#)) interface type**

`pdispdesc = ^tdispdesc`

**Pointer to tdispdesc ([1382](#)) record**

`PDouble = ^Double`

**Pointer to double-sized float value.**

`PDWord = ^DWord`

**Pointer to DWord ([1366](#)) type**

`pdynarrayindex = ^tdynarrayindex`

**Pointer to tdynarrayindex ([1382](#)) type.**

`pdynarraytypeinfo = ^tdynarraytypeinfo`

**Pointer to TDynArrayTypeInfo ([1382](#)) type.**

`PError = ^TError`

Pointer to an Error (1455) type.

`PEventState = pointer`

Pointer to EventState, which is an opaque type.

`PExceptAddr = ^TExceptAddr`

PExceptAddr is a pointer to PExceptAddr (1371)

`PExceptObject = ^TExceptObject`

Pointer to Exception handler procedural type TExceptProc (1384)

`PExtended = ^Extended`

Pointer to extended-sized float value.

`PFileTextRecChar = ^TFileTextRecChar`

PFileTextRecChar is a typed pointer to TFileTextRecChar (1385).

`PGuid = ^TGuid`

Pointer to TGUID (1388) type.

`PInt16 = PSmallInt`

Pointer to Int16 (1367) type

`PInt32 = PLongint`

Pointer to Int32 (1367) type

`PInt64 = ^Int64`

Pointer to Int64 type

`PInt8 = PShortInt`

Pointer to Int8 (1368) type

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to integer (1368) type

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to IntegerArray (1368) type

`PInterface = PUnknown`

Pointer to IInterface (1367) interface

```
pinterfaceentry = ^tinterfaceentry
```

Pointer to tinterfaceentry (1575) record.

```
pinterfacetable = ^tinterfacetable
```

Pointer to tinterfacetable (1389) record.

```
PIntPtr = PPtrInt
```

Pointer to IntPtr (1368) type

```
PJump_buf = ^jump_buf
```

Pointer to jmp\_buf (1368) record

```
PLongBool = ^LongBool
```

Pointer to a LongBool type.

```
PLongint = ^LongInt
```

Pointer to Longint (1368) type

```
PLongWord = ^LongWord
```

Pointer to LongWord type

```
PMarshaledAString = ^PAnsiChar
```

Pointer to PWideChar

```
PMarshaledString = ^PWideChar
```

Pointer to PWideChar

```
PMemoryManager = ^TMemoryManager
```

Pointer to TMemoryManager (1390) record

```
PMethod = ^TMethod
```

Pointer to method

```
PMsgStrTable = ^TMsgStrTable
```

Pointer to array of TMsgStrTable (1390) records.

```
PNativeInt = ^NativeInt
```

Pointer to NativeInt (1369) type

```
PNativeUInt = ^NativeUInt
```

Pointer to NativeInt (1369) type

```
PointerArray = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer
```

Generic pointer array.

```
POleVariant = ^OleVariant
```

Pointer to OleVariant type.

```
POpaqueData = ^TOpaqueData
```

POpaqueData represents a pointer to data for which the internal structure must not be known. You can make type aliases from this pointer.

```
PPAnsiChar = PPChar
```

Alias for PPChar (1373) type.

```
PPByte = ^PByte
```

PPByte is a pointer to a PByte (1369) type.

```
PPChar = ^PChar
```

Pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings.

```
PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray
```

Pointer to TPCharArray (1391) type.

```
PPCodePointer = ^PCodePointer
```

PPCodePointer is a typed pointer to PCodePointer (1370).

```
PPDispatch = ^PDispatch
```

Pointer to PDispatch (1370) pointer type

```
PPDouble = ^PDouble
```

PPDouble is a pointer to a PDouble (1370) type.

```
ppdynarraytypeinfo = ^pdynarraytypeinfo
```

Pointer to pdynarraytypeinfo

`PPLongint = ^PLongint`

`PPLongint` is a pointer to a `PLongint` (1372) type.

`PPointer = ^Pointer`

Pointer to a pointer type.

`PPointerArray = ^PointerArray`

Pointer to `PointerArray` (1373) type

`PPPAansiChar = PPPChar`

`PPPAansiChar` is a typed pointer to `PPAnsichar` (1373).

`PPPChar = ^PPChar`

`PPPChar` is a pointer to a `PPChar` (1373)

`PPPointer = ^PPPointer`

Pointer to a `PPPointer` (1374) type.

`PPPWideChar = ^PPWideChar`

`PPPWideChar` is a pointer to a `PPWideChar` (1374) type.

`PPPtrInt = ^PtrInt`

Pointer to `PtrInt` (1376) type.

`PPPtrUInt = ^PtrUInt`

Pointer to unsigned integer of pointer size

`PPUnknown = ^PUnknown`

Pointer to untyped pointer

`PPVmt = ^PVmt`

Pointer to `PVMT` pointer.

`PPWideChar = ^PWideChar`

Pointer to link id="PWideChar"> type.

`PQWord = ^QWord`

Pointer to `QWord` type

`PQWordBool = ^QWordBool`

`PRawByteString = ^RawByteString`

**Pointer to RawByteString**

`PRTLCriticalSection = ^RTLCriticalSection`

**Pointer to #rtl.system.RTLCriticalSection (1392) type.**

`PRTLEvent = pointer`

**Pointer to RTLEvent, which is an opaque type.**

`PShortInt = ^ShortInt`

**Pointer to shortint (1379) type**

`PShortString = ^ShortString`

**Pointer to a shortstring type.**

`PSingle = ^Single`

**Pointer to single-sized float value.**

`PSizeInt = ^SizeInt`

**Pointer to a SizeInt (1379) type**

`PSizeUInt = ^SizeUInt`

`PSizeUInt64` is a pointer to a `SizeUInt` (1379), an unsigned integer of architecture-dependent size.

`PSmallInt = ^SmallInt`

**Pointer to smallint (1379) type**

`pstringmessagetable = ^TStringMessageTable`

**Pointer to TStringMessageTable (1394) record.**

`PText = ^Text`

**Pointer to text file.**

`PtInt = LongInt`

`PtInt` is a signed integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. `PtInt` is considered harmful and should almost never be used in actual code, because pointers are normally unsigned. For example, consider the following code:

```
getmem(p, 2048);           {Assume the address of p becomes $7ffffff0.}
q:=pointer(ptrint(p)+1024); {Overflow error.}
writeln(q>p);             {Incorrect answer.}
```

Ptrint might have a valid use when two pointers are subtracted from each other if it is unknown which pointer has the largest address. However, even in this case ptrint causes trouble in case the distance is larger than high(ptrint) and must be used with great care.

The introduction of the ptrint type was a mistake. Please use ptruint (1376) instead.

```
PtrInt = Int64
```

Ptrint is a signed integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. Ptrint is considered harmful and should almost never be used in actual code, because pointers are normally unsigned. For example, consider the following code:

```
getmem(p, 2048);           {Assume the address of p becomes $7ffffff0.}
q:=pointer(ptrint(p)+1024); {Overflow error.}
writeln(q>p);             {Incorrect answer.}
```

Ptrint might have a valid use when two pointers are subtracted from each other if it is unknown which pointer has the largest address. However, even in this case ptrint causes trouble in case the distance is larger than high(ptrint) and must be used with great care.

The introduction of the ptrint type was a mistake. Please use ptruint (1376) instead.

```
PtrUInt = QWord
```

PtrUInt is an unsigned integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular Cardinal type.

```
PtrUInt = DWord
```

PtrUInt is an unsigned integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular Cardinal type.

```
PUCS2Char = PWideChar
```

Pointer to UCS2Char (1408) character.

```
PUCS4Char = ^UCS4Char
```

Pointer to UCS4Char (1408)

```
PUCS4CharArray = ^TUCS4CharArray
```

Pointer to array of UCS4Char (1408) characters.

```
PUInt16 = PWord
```

Pointer to UInt16 (1408) type

```
PUInt32 = PDWord
```

Pointer to UInt32 (1408) type

```
PUInt64 = ^UInt64
```

PUInt64 is a pointer to a UInt64 (1408), an unsigned 64-bit integer.

```
PUInt8 = PByte
```

Pointer to UInt8 (1408) type

```
PUIntPtr = PPtrUInt
```

Pointer to UIntPtr (1408) type

```
PUnicodeChar = ^UnicodeChar
```

PUnicodeChar is a pointer to a Unicode character, just like PChar is a pointer to a Char ansi-string character.

```
PUnicodeString = ^UnicodeString
```

PUnicodeString is a pointer to a UnicodeString string.

```
PUnknown = ^IUnknown
```

Untyped pointer

```
PUTF8Char = PAnsiChar
```

Pointer to UTF8Char

```
PUTF8String = ^UTF8String
```

Pointer to UTF8String (1409)

```
pvararray = ^tvararray
```

Pointer to TVarArray (1400) type.

```
pvararraybound = ^tvararraybound
```

Pointer to tvararraybound (1400) type.

```
pvararrayboundarray = ^tvararrayboundarray
```

Pointer to tvararrayboundarray (1400) type.

```
pvararraycoorarray = ^tvararraycoorarray
```

Pointer to tvararraycoorarray (1400) type.

`pvardata = ^tvardata`

Pointer to TVarData (1403) record.

`PVariant = ^Variant`

Pointer to Variant type.

`pvariantmanager = ^tvariantmanager`

Pointer to TVariantManager (1405) record.

`PVarRec = ^TVarRec`

Pointer to TVarRec (1407) type.

`PVmt = ^TVmt`

Pointer to TVMT (1579) record

`PWideChar = ^WideChar`

Pointer to WChar (1409).

`PWideString = ^WideString`

Pointer to widestring type

`PWord = ^Word`

Pointer to word (1409) type

`PWordBool = ^WordBool`

Pointer to a WordBool type.

`QWord = 0..18446744073709551615`

QWord is a 64-bit, unsigned integer type, with range [0..18446744073709551615].

`RawByteString = ansistring`

RawByteString is a single-byte character string which does not have any codepage associated with it.

This means that assigning a single-byte character string to this kind of string will not change the codepage of the string.

Inversely, when assigning a RawByteString to a single-byte string, the codepage of the destination is simply set to the codepage of the rawbytestring: no codepage conversion happens, the reference count is simply increased.

`Real = Double`

Alias for real type

`Real48 = Array[0..5] of Byte`

TP compatible real type (6 bytes) definition

`Shortint = - 128..127`

A signed 8-bits integer

`SizeInt = LongInt`

`SizeInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using a signed integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`SizeInt = Int64`

`SizeInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using a signed integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`SizeUInt = QWord`

`SizeUInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using an unsigned integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`SizeUInt = DWord`

`SizeUInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using an unsigned integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`Smallint = - 32768..32767`

A signed 16-bits integer

`TAbstractErrorProc = procedure`

Abstract error handler procedural type.

`TAllocateThreadVarsHandler = procedure`

Threadvar allocation callback type for `TThreadManager` ([1396](#)).

TAnsiChar = Char

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

```
TAssertErrorProc = procedure(const msg: ShortString;
    const fname: ShortString; lineno: LongInt;
    erroraddr: pointer)
```

Assert error handler procedural type.

```
TBacktraceStrFunc = function(Addr: CodePointer) : ShortString
```

Type for formatting of backtrace dump.

```
TBasicEventCreateHandler = function(EventAttributes: Pointer;
    AManualReset: Boolean;
    InitialState: Boolean;
    const Name: ansistring)
    : PEventState
```

callback type for creating eventstate in TThreadManager (1396).

```
TBasicEventHandler = procedure(state: PEventState)
```

Generic callback type for handling eventstate in TThreadManager (1396).

```
TBasicEventWaitForHandler = function(timeout: Cardinal;
    state: PEventState) : LongInt
```

Wait for basic event callback type for TThreadManager (1396).

```
TBeginThreadHandler = function(sa: Pointer; stacksize: PtrUInt;
    ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer
    ;
                                creationFlags: DWord;
    var ThreadId: TThreadID) : TThreadID
```

Callback for thread start in TThreadManager (1396).

```
TBoundArray = Array of SizeInt
```

Dynamic array of integer.

```
tcalldesc = packed record
public
    calltype : Byte;
    argcount : Byte
    ;
    namedargcount : Byte;
    argtypes : Array[0..255] of Byte;
end
```

`tcalldesc` is used to encode the arguments to a dispatch call to an OLE dual interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the arguments to a call.

`TClass = Class of TObject`

Class of `TObject` (1587).

`TCompareOption = (coIgnoreCase)`

Table 75.10: Enumeration values for type `TCompareOption`

| Value                     | Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>coIgnoreCase</code> | Ignore case (usually identical to <code>coLingIgnoreCase</code> ) |

`TCompareOption` indicates how 2 strings should be compared. This option is used in the `WideStringManager` (1408) implementation when comparing 2 strings. The following options exist:

Ignore case linguistically (usually identical to `coIgnoreCase`)

Ignore diacritic characters

Ignore case (usually identical to `coLingIgnoreCase`)

Corresponding hiragana and katakana characters compare as equal.

Corresponding hiragana and katakana characters compare as equal.

Ignore nonspace characters (usually identical to `coLingIgnoreDiacritic`)

Ignore symbols and punctuation characters

Ignore half-width and full width characters (used in Chinese and Japanese)

Use linguistic rules for casing, instead of file system rules

Treat digits as numbers (20 before 120)

Handle punctuation as symbols

Not all platforms will support all possibilities.

`TCompareOptions = Set of TCompareOption`

`TCompareOptions` is simply a set of `TCompareOption` (1381) enumeration values.

`TCriticalSectionHandler = procedure(var cs)`

Generic callback type for critical section handling in `TThreadManager` (1396).

`TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter = function(var cs) : LongInt`

`TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter` is the function prototype for the `TryEnterCriticalSection` (1555) function, in the `TThreadManager` (1396) record's `TryEnterCriticalSection` field.

```
TCtrlBreakHandler = function(CtrlBreak: Boolean) : Boolean
```

TCtrlBreakHandler is the prototype for the CTRL-C handler. If CtrlBreak is True then Ctrl-Break was hit, otherwise CTRL-C was hit. The handlers should return True to signal that the key-combination was handled. If False is returned, then default handling will be used, which by default means an exception will be raised if the sysutils unit is used.

```
TDate = TDateTime
```

TDate is defined for Delphi compatibility. This type is deprecated, use TDateTime ([1382](#)) instead.

```
TDateTime = Double
```

Encoded Date-Time type.

```
tdispdesc = packed record
public
    dispid : LongInt;
    restype : Byte
    ;
    calldesc : tcalldesc;
end
```

tcalldesc is used to encode a dispatch call to an OLE dispatch interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the dispatch call call.

```
tdynarrayindex = SizeInt
```

A variable of type tdynarrayindex will always have the correct size, suitable for serving as an index in a dynamic array.

```
tdynarraytypeinfo = packed record
public
    kind : TTypeKind;
    namelen
    : Byte;
    elesize : SizeInt;
    eletype : ppdynarraytypeinfo;
    vartype
    : LongInt;
end
```

tdynarraytypeinfo describes the structure of a multi-dimensional dynamic array. It is used in the DynArraySetLength ([1449](#)) call.

```
TDynLibsManager = record
public
    LoadLibraryU : TLoadLibraryUHandler
    ;
    LoadLibraryA : TLoadLibraryAHandler;
    GetProcAddress : TGetProcAddressHandler
    ;
```

```

    GetProcAddressOrdinal : TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler;
    UnloadLibrary
    : TUnloadLibraryHandler;
    GetLoadErrorStr : TGetLoadErrorStrHandler
;
end

```

TDynLibsManager contains all the callbacks needed to load and manage dynamic libraries. The system unit does not contain dynamic loading library support on all supported platforms. Like the unicode string support, heap support and thread support, support for loading dynamic libraries is pluggable. This record contains the necessary callbacks that the system unit needs to implement loading of dynamic libraries (needed for example for run-time package support).

Including the dynlibs (710) unit will enable support for dynamically loadable libraries on all platforms that support this.

```
TEndThreadHandler = procedure(ExitCode: DWord)
```

Callback for thread end in TThreadManager (1396).

```

TEntryInformation = record
public
    InitFinalTable : Pointer;
    ThreadvarTablesTable
    : Pointer;
    ResourceStringTables : Pointer;
    ResStrInitTables
    : Pointer;
    ResLocation : Pointer;
    PascalMain : procedure;
    valgrind_used
    : Boolean;
    OS : TEntryInformationOS;
end

```

TEntryInformation is used to initialize a Free Pascal program or library. Under normal circumstances, there should be no need to use this structure directly: it is used by the system unit and special linking units.

```

TEntryInformationOS = record
public
    argc : LongInt;
    argv : PPChar
;
    envp : PPChar;
    stkptr : pointer;
    stklen : SizeUInt;
    haltproc
    : procedure(e: LongInt);
end

```

TEntryInformationOS represents executable entry information for the current OS. This structure is OS dependent.

TError = LongInt

Error type, used in variants.

```
TErrorProc = procedure (ErrNo: LongInt; Address: CodePointer;
    Frame: Pointer)
```

Standard error handler procedural type.

```
TExceptAddr = record
public
    buf : PJump_buf;
    next : PExceptAddr
;
    frametype : LongInt;
end
```

TExceptAddr describes an exception frame on the exception address frame stack. It is used in structured stack exception handling.

```
TExceptObject = record
public
    FObject : TObject;
    Addr : CodePointer
;
    Next : PExceptObject;
    refcount : LongInt;
    Framecount : LongInt
;
    Frames : PCodePointer;
end
```

TExceptObject is the exception description record which is found on the exception stack.

```
TExceptProc = procedure (Obj: TObject; Addr: CodePointer;
    FrameCount: LongInt; Frame: PCodePointer)
```

Exception handler procedural type

```
TextBuf = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of AnsiChar
```

TextBuf is a type for the default buffer used in TextRec ([1385](#)).

```
TextFile = Text
```

Alias for Text file type.

```
TextRec = record
public
    Handle : THandle;
    Mode : LongInt;
    bufsize
```

```

: SizeInt;
_private : SizeInt;
bufpos : SizeInt;
bufend : SizeInt
;
bufptr : ^TextBuf;
openfunc : CodePointer;
inoutfunc : CodePointer
;
flushfunc : CodePointer;
closefunc : CodePointer;
UserData
: Array[1..32] of Byte;
name : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of
TFileTextRecChar;
LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
buffer : TextBuf;
end

```

`TextRec` is the underlying type used in text files. It should be treated as opaque and never manipulated directly.

`TFileTextRecChar` = `UnicodeChar`

`TFileTextRecChar` is the type of character used in `TextRec` (1385) or `FileRec` (1367) file types. It is an alias type, depending on platform and RTL compilation flags. No assumptions should be made on the actual character type.

```

TFloatSpecial = (fsZero, fsNZero, fsDenormal, fsNDenormal, fsPositive
,
                fsNegative, fsInf, fsNInf, fsNaN, fsInvalidOp)

```

Table 75.11: Enumeration values for type `TFloatSpecial`

| Value                    | Explanation            |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <code>fsDenormal</code>  | Denormal value         |
| <code>fsInf</code>       | Infinity               |
| <code>fsInvalidOp</code> | Invalid operation      |
| <code>fsNaN</code>       | Not a number           |
| <code>fsNDenormal</code> | Negative enormal value |
| <code>fsNegative</code>  | Negative value         |
| <code>fsNInf</code>      | Negative infinity      |
| <code>fsNZero</code>     | Negative zero          |
| <code>fsPositive</code>  | Positive value         |
| <code>fsZero</code>      | Zero                   |

`TFloatSpecial` enumerates a series of floating point value properties.

```

TFPCHepStatus = record
public

```

```

MaxHeapSize : PtrUInt;
MaxHeapUsed
: PtrUInt;
CurrHeapSize : PtrUInt;
CurrHeapUsed : PtrUInt;
CurrHeapFree : PtrUInt;
end

```

TFPCHeapStatus describes the state of the FPC heap manager. This is not equivalent to the THeapStatus (1388) record defined by Delphi, which contains information not meaningful for the FPC heap manager. The heap status can be retrieved by the GetFPCHeapStatus (1470) call.

```
TFPResourceHandle = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHandle represents a handle to a binary resource and is used in the various resource calls. Its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```
TFPResourceHGLOBAL = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHGLOBAL represents a handle to the global module containing a resource. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```
TFPResourceHMODULE = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHMODULE represents a module (library, executable, other) in which a resource is located. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```

TFPUException = (exInvalidOp, exDenormalized, exZeroDivide, exOverflow
,
                exUnderflow, exPrecision)

```

Table 75.12: Enumeration values for type TFPUException

| Value          | Explanation             |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| exDenormalized |                         |
| exInvalidOp    | Invalid operation error |
| exOverflow     | Float overflow error    |
| exPrecision    | Precision error         |
| exUnderflow    | Float underflow error   |
| exZeroDivide   | Division by zero error. |

TFPUException describes what floating point errors raise exceptions. It has been moved here from the Math unit.

```
TFPUExceptionMask = Set of TFPUException
```

TFPUExceptionMask is a set of TFPUException constants

```
TFPUPrecisionMode = (pmSingle, pmReserved, pmDouble, pmExtended)
```

Table 75.13: Enumeration values for type TFPUPrecisionMode

| Value      | Explanation             |
|------------|-------------------------|
| pmDouble   | Double-type precision   |
| pmExtended | Extended-type precision |
| pmReserved | ?                       |
| pmSingle   | Single-type precision   |

TFPUPrecisionMode describes the possible default precisions for the software Floating Point math routines. It has been moved here from the math unit.

```
TFPURoundingMode = (rmNearest, rmDown, rmUp, rmTruncate)
```

Table 75.14: Enumeration values for type TFPURoundingMode

| Value      | Explanation                                  |
|------------|--|
| rmDown     | Round to biggest integer smaller than value. |
| rmNearest  | Round to nearest integer                     |
| rmTruncate | Cut off fractional part                      |
| rmUp       | Round to smallest integer larger than value  |

TFPURoundingMode enumerates the possible values for software floating point math rounding. It has been moved here from the math unit.

```
TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler = function : TThreadID
```

Callback type for retrieving thread ID in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
TGetLoadErrorStrHandler = function : string
```

TGetLoadErrorStrHandler is the type for the GetLoadErrorStr call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager ([1383](#)) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TGetProcAddressHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle;
  const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer
```

TGetProcAddressHandler is the type for the GetProcAddress call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager ([1383](#)) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle;
  Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)
  : Pointer
```

TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler is the type for the GetProcAddressOrdinal call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager ([1383](#)) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TGuid = packed record
case Integer of
```

```

1: (
public
  Data1 : DWord
  ;
  Data2 : Word;
  Data3 : Word;
  Data4 : Array[0..7] of Byte;
);
2: (
public
  D1 : DWord;
  D2 : Word;
  D3 : Word;
  D4 : Array
    [0..7] of Byte;
);
3: (
public
  time_low : DWord;
  time_mid : Word
  ;
  time_hi_and_version : Word;
  clock_seq_hi_and_reserved : Byte
  ;
  clock_seq_low : Byte;
  node : Array[0..5] of Byte;
);
end

```

Standard GUID representation type.

THandle = LongInt

This type should be considered opaque. It is used to describe file and other handles.

```

THeapStatus = record
public
  TotalAddrSpace : Cardinal;
  TotalUncommitted
  : Cardinal;
  TotalCommitted : Cardinal;
  TotalAllocated : Cardinal
  ;
  TotalFree : Cardinal;
  FreeSmall : Cardinal;
  FreeBig : Cardinal
  ;
  Unused : Cardinal;
  Overhead : Cardinal;
  HeapErrorCode : Cardinal
  ;
end

```

THeapStatus is the record describing the current heap status. It is returned by the GetHeapStatus (1470) call.

```
TInitThreadVarHandler = procedure (var offset: DWord; size: DWord)
```

Threadvar initialization callback type for TThreadManager (1396).

```
TInterfacedClass = Class of TInterfacedObject
```

TInterfacedClass is a descendent of

```
tinterfaceentrytype = (etStandard, etVirtualMethodResult,
  etStaticMethodResult, etFieldValue,
  etVirtualMethodClass, etStaticMethodClass,
  etFieldValueClass)
```

Table 75.15: Enumeration values for type tinterfaceentrytype

| Value                 | Explanation                                  |
|-----------------------|--|
| etFieldValue          | Field value                                  |
| etFieldValueClass     | Interface provided by a class field          |
| etStandard            | Standard entry                               |
| etStaticMethodClass   | Interface provided by a static class method  |
| etStaticMethodResult  | Static method                                |
| etVirtualMethodClass  | Interface provided by a virtual class method |
| etVirtualMethodResult | Virtual method                               |

This is an internal type for the compiler to encode calls to dispatch interfaces.

```
tinterfacetable = record
public
  EntryCount : SizeUInt;
  Entries
    : Array[0..0] of tinterfaceentry;
end
```

Record to store list of interfaces of a class.

```
TLibHandle = PtrInt
```

TLibHandle should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

```
TLineEndStr = string
```

TLineEndStr is an alias for the actual line ending string type, used in TextRec (1385). It should be treated as opaque.

```
TLoadLibraryAHandler = function (const Name: RawByteString) :
  TLibHandle
```

TLoadLibraryAHandler is the type for the loadlibrary call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1383) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TLoadLibraryUHandler = function(const Name: UnicodeString) :
    TLibHandle
```

TLoadLibraryUHandler is the type for the loadlibrary call using unicode names in the TDynLibsManager (1383) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TMemoryManager = record
public
    NeedLock : Boolean;
    Getmem : function
        (Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
    Freemem : function(p: pointer) : PtrUInt
    ;
    FreememSize : function(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt;
    AllocMem : function(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
    ReAllocMem : function
        (var p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
    MemSize : function(p
        : pointer) : PtrUInt;
    InitThread : procedure;
    DoneThread : procedure
    ;
    RelocateHeap : procedure;
    GetHeapStatus : function : THeapStatus
    ;
    GetFPCHeapStatus : function : TFPCHeapStatus;
end
```

TMemoryManager describes the memory manager. For more information about the memory manager, see the programmer's reference.

```
TMethod = record
public
    Code : CodePointer;
    Data : Pointer;
end
```

TMethod describes a general method pointer, and is used in Run-Time Type Information handling.

```
TMsgStrTable = record
public
    name : PShortString;
    method : CodePointer
    ;
end
```

Record used in string message handler table.

```
TOpaqueData = record
end
```

TOpaqueData represents data for which the internal structure must not be known. It is mostly useful for the pointer definition POpaqueData ([1373](#)).

TOrdinalEntry = SizeUInt

Ordinal of entry point (windows only)

packed TPCharArray = Array[0..(MaxLongintdivSizeOf(PChar))-1] of  
PChar

Array of PChar

TProcedure = procedure

Simple procedural type.

TReleaseThreadVarsHandler = procedure

Threadvar release callback type for TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

TRelocateThreadVarHandler = function(offset: DWord) : pointer

Threadvar relocation callback type for TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

TResourceHandle = PtrUInt

This is an opaque type.

```
TResourceManager = record
public
  HINSTANCEFunc : function : TFPResourceHMODULE
  ;
  EnumResourceTypesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; EnumFunc: EnumResTypeProc;
    lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
  ;
  EnumResourceNamesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceType: PChar;
    EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc; lParam
  : PtrInt) : LongBool;
  EnumResourceLanguagesFunc : function(ModuleHandle
  : TFPResourceHMODULE; ResourceType: PChar;
    ResourceName
  : PChar; EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc; lParam: PtrInt)
  :
  LongBool;
  FindResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceName: PChar;
    ResourceType: PChar) : TFPResourceHandle
  ;
  FindResourceExFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceType: PChar;
```

```

        ResourceName: PChar; Language:
Word) : TFPResourceHandle;
LoadResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle
: TFPResourceHMODULE; ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle)
:
TFPResourceHGLOBAL;
SizeofResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle
: TFPResourceHMODULE; ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle)
:
LongWord;
LockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
) : Pointer;
UnlockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
) : LongBool;
FreeResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
) : LongBool;
end

```

TResourceManager is the record describing the resource manager. Depending on the kind of resources (internal, external), another resource managing handler is installed by the system. The resource manager record is used by all resource handling functions to do the actual work: for each function in the API, a handler function is available. People wishing to implement their own resource manager, must implement all handler functions in their implementation.

As soon as resources are used, the compiler will install a resource manager, depending on the platform, this may be an internal or an external resource manager.

```
TRTLCreateEventHandler = function : PRTLEvent
```

Callback type for creating a TRTLEvent type in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
TRTLCRITICALSECTION = Opaque type
```

TRTLCriticalSection represents a critical section (a mutex). This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system. No assumptions should be made about its structure or contents.

```
TRTLEventHandler = procedure(AEvent: PRTLEvent)
```

Generic TRTLEvent handling type for TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
TRTLEventHandlerTimeout = procedure(AEvent: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt
)
```

TRTLEvent timeout handling type for TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
trtlmethod = procedure of object
```

Callback type for synchronization event.

```
TRuntimeError = (reNone, reOutOfMemory, reInvalidPtr, reDivByZero,
reRangeError, reIntOverflow, reInvalidOp, reZeroDivide
,

```

```

        reOverflow, reUnderflow, reInvalidCast, reAccessViolation
    ,
        rePrivInstruction, reControlBreak, reStackOverflow
    ,
        reVarTypeCast, reVarInvalidOp, reVarDispatch,
reVarArrayCreate, reVarNotArray, reVarArrayBounds,
reAssertionFailed, reExternalException, reIntfCastError
    ,
        reSafeCallError, reQuit, reCodesetConversion,
reNoDynLibsSupport, reThreadError)

```

Table 75.16: Enumeration values for type TRuntimeError

| Value               | Explanation  |
|---------------------|--|
| reAccessViolation   | Access Violation   |
| reAssertionFailed   | Assertion failed error                                   |
| reCodesetConversion | Code set conversion error                                |
| reControlBreak      | User pressed CTRL-C                                      |
| reDivByZero         | Division by zero error                                   |
| reExternalException | An external exception occurred                           |
| reIntfCastError     | Interface typecast error                                 |
| reIntOverflow       | Integer overflow error                                   |
| reInvalidCast       | Invalid (class) typecast error                           |
| reInvalidOp         | Invalid operation error                                  |
| reInvalidPtr        | Invalid pointer error                                    |
| reNoDynLibsSupport  | Runtime error if no dynamic library support is available |
| reNone              | No error   |
| reOutOfMemory       | Out of memory error                                      |
| reOverflow          | Overflow error   |
| rePrivInstruction   | Privileged instruction error                             |
| reQuit              | Quit signal error  |
| reRangeError        | Range check error  |
| reSafeCallError     | Safecall (IDispInterface) error                          |
| reStackOverflow     | Stack overflow error                                     |
| reThreadError       | Runtime error if no thread support is available          |
| reUnderflow         | Underflow error  |
| reVarArrayBounds    | Variant array bounds error                               |
| reVarArrayCreate    | Variant array creation error                             |
| reVarDispatch       | Variant Dispatch error.                                  |
| reVarInvalidOp      | Invalid variant operation error                          |
| reVarNotArray       | Variant is not an array error.                           |
| reVarTypeCast       | Invalid typecase from variant                            |
| reZeroDivide        | Division by zero error                                   |

TRuntimeError is used in the Error ([1455](#)) procedure to indicate what kind of error should be reported.

```
TSafeCallErrorProc = procedure(error: HRESULT; addr: pointer)
```

Prototype of a safecall error handler routine. Error is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and Addr is the address where the error occurred.

```
TSemaphoreDestroyHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphoreDestroyHandler is the function prototype to destroy an existing semaphore, as returned by (ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit). It is used by the thread manager (ThreadManager.SemaphoreDest

```
TSemaphorePostHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphorePostHandler is the function prototype to post an event to the semaphore. It should handle a pointer as returned by the ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit procedure. it's used by the thread manager ThreadManager.SemaphorePost.

```
TSemaphoreWaitHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphoreWaitHandler is the function prototype to wait on an event on the semaphore (which should be posted to the semaphore with ThreadManager.SemaphorePost). It should handle a pointer as returned by the ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit procedure. it's used by the thread manager ThreadManager.SemaphoreWait.

```
TSemaphoreInitHandler = function : Pointer
```

TSemaphoreInitHandler is the function prototype for initializing a semaphore. It is used by the thread manager (ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit) to create semaphores. The function should return a pointer, usable by the other semaphore functions of the thread manager.

```
TStandardCodePageEnum = (scpAnsi, scpConsoleInput, scpConsoleOutput
    ,
    scpFileSystemSingleByte)
```

Table 75.17: Enumeration values for type TStandardCodePageEnum

| Value                   | Explanation                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| scpAnsi                 | Ansi codepage (CP_ACP)            |
| scpConsoleInput         | Console input codepage            |
| scpConsoleOutput        | Console output codepage           |
| scpFileSystemSingleByte | File system single byte codepage. |

TStandardCodePageEnum describes several types of standard used codepages, which can be queried by the unicode string manager TUnicodeStringManager ([1399](#)).

```
TStringMessageTable = record
public
    count : LongInt;
    msgstrtable
        : Array[0..0] of TMsgStrTable;
end
```

Record used to describe the string messages handled by a class. It consists of a count, followed by an array of TMsgStrTable ([1390](#)) records.

```
TSystemCodePage = Word
```

TSystemCodePage is a type used to indicate code pages. It should be treated as an opaque type.

TTextBuf = TextBuf

TTextBuf is an alias for TextBuf

TTextLineBreakStyle = (tlbsLF,tlbsCRLF,tlbsCR)

Table 75.18: Enumeration values for type TTextLineBreakStyle

| Value    | Explanation  |
|----------|--|
| tlbsCR   | Carriage-return (#13, Mac-OS style)                |
| tlbsCRLF | Carriage-return, line-feed (#13#30, Windows style) |
| tlbsLF   | Line-feed only (#10, Unix style)                   |

Text line break style. (end of line character)

TThreadFunc = function(parameter: pointer) : PtrInt

Thread function prototype

TThreadGetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) :  
LongInt

Callback type for thread priority getting in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

TThreadHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord

Generic thread handler callback for TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

TThreadID = PtrUInt

This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system.

```
TThreadManager = record
public
    InitManager : function : Boolean
    ;
    DoneManager : function : Boolean;
    BeginThread : TBeginThreadHandler
    ;
    EndThread : TEndThreadHandler;
    SuspendThread : TThreadHandler
    ;
    ResumeThread : TThreadHandler;
    KillThread : TThreadHandler;
    CloseThread : TThreadHandler;
    ThreadSwitch : TThreadSwitchHandler
    ;
    WaitForThreadTerminate : TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler;
```

```

ThreadSetPriority
: TThreadSetPriorityHandler;
ThreadGetPriority : TThreadGetPriorityHandler
;
GetCurrentThreadId : TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler;
SetThreadDebugNameA
: TThreadSetThreadDebugNameHandlerA;
SetThreadDebugNameU : TThreadSetThreadDebugNameHandlerU
;
InitCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
DoneCriticalSection
: TCriticalSectionHandler;
EnterCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler
;
TryEnterCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter;
LeaveCriticalSection
: TCriticalSectionHandler;
InitThreadVar : TInitThreadVarHandler
;
RelocateThreadVar : TRelocateThreadVarHandler;
AllocateThreadVars
: TAllocateThreadVarsHandler;
ReleaseThreadVars : TReleaseThreadVarsHandler
;
BasicEventCreate : TBasicEventCreateHandler;
BasicEventDestroy
: TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventResetEvent : TBasicEventHandler
;
BasicEventSetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventWaitFor
: TBasicEventWaitForHandler;
RTLEventCreate : TRTLCreateEventHandler
;
RTLEventDestroy : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventSetEvent : TRTLEventHandler
;
RTLEventResetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventWaitFor : TRTLEventHandler
;
RTLEventWaitForTimeout : TRTLEventHandlerTimeout;
end

```

`TThreadManager` is a record that contains all callbacks needed for the thread handling routines of the Free Pascal Run-Time Library. The thread manager can be set by the `SetThreadManager` ([1537](#)) procedure, and the current thread manager can be retrieved with the `GetThreadManager` ([1473](#)) procedure.

The Windows RTL will set the thread manager automatically to a system thread manager, based on the Windows threading routines. Unix operating systems provide a unit `cthreads` which implements threads based on the C library POSIX thread routines. It is not included by default, because it would make the system unit dependent on the C library.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

```
TThreadSetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
  Prio: LongInt) : Boolean
```

Callback type for thread priority setting in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
TThreadSetThreadDebugNameHandlerA = procedure(threadHandle: TThreadID
  ;
                                     const ThreadName
  : AnsiString)
```

```
TThreadSetThreadDebugNameHandlerU = procedure(threadHandle: TThreadID
  ;
                                     const ThreadName
  : UnicodeString)
```

```
TThreadSwitchHandler = procedure
```

Callback type for thread switch in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

```
TTime = TDateTime
```

TTime is defined for Delphi compatibility. This type is deprecated, use TDateTime ([1382](#)) instead.

```
TTypeKind = (tkUnknown,tkInteger,tkChar,tkEnumeration,tkFloat,tkSet
  ,
               tkMethod,tkSString,tkLString,tkAString,tkWString,tkVariant
  ,
               tkArray,tkRecord,tkInterface,tkClass,tkObject,tkWChar
  ,
               tkBool,tkInt64,tkQWord,tkDynArray,tkInterfaceRaw,tkProcVar
  ,
               tkUString,tkUChar,tkHelper,tkFile,tkClassRef,tkPointer
  )
```

Table 75.19: Enumeration values for type TTypeKind

| Value          | Explanation                |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| tkArray        | Array property.            |
| tkAString      | Ansistring property.       |
| tkBool         | Boolean property.          |
| tkChar         | Char property.             |
| tkClass        | Class property.            |
| tkClassRef     | Class reference type       |
| tkDynArray     | Dynamic array property.    |
| tkEnumeration  | Enumeration type property. |
| tkFile         | File type                  |
| tkFloat        | Float property.            |
| tkHelper       | Helper type                |
| tkInt64        | Int64 property.            |
| tkInteger      | Integer property.          |
| tkInterface    | Interface property.        |
| tkInterfaceRaw | Raw interface property.    |
| tkLString      | Longstring property.       |
| tkMethod       | Method property.           |
| tkObject       | Object property.           |
| tkPointer      | Generic pointer type       |
| tkProcVar      | Procedural variable        |
| tkQWord        | QWord property.            |
| tkRecord       | Record property.           |
| tkSet          | Set property.              |
| tkSString      | Shortstring property.      |
| tkUChar        | Unicode character          |
| tkUnknown      | Unknown property type.     |
| tkUString      | Unicode string             |
| tkVariant      | Variant property.          |
| tkWChar        | Widechar property.         |
| tkWString      | Widestring property.       |

Type of a property or value.

```
TUCS4CharArray = Array[0..$efffffff] of UCS4Char
```

Array of UCS4Char (1408) characters.

```
TUnicodeStringManager = record
public
  Wide2AnsiMoveProc : procedure
    (source: PWideChar; var dest: RawByteString;
     cp: TSystemCodePage
    ; len: SizeInt);
  Ansi2WideMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar; cp
    : TSystemCodePage; var dest: widestring;
     len: SizeInt
  );
  UpperWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString
  ;
```

```

LowerWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString
;
CompareWideStringProc : function(const s1: WideString; const s2
: WideString;
    Options: TCompareOptions) : PtrInt;
CharLengthPCharProc
: function(const Str: PChar) : PtrInt;
CodePointLengthProc : function
(const Str: PChar; MaxLookAead: PtrInt) : PtrInt;
UpperAnsiStringProc
: function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
LowerAnsiStringProc
: function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
CompareStrAnsiStringProc
: function(const S1: ansistring; const S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
CompareTextAnsiStringProc : function(const S1: ansistring; const
S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
StrCompAnsiStringProc : function(S1:
PChar; S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
StrICompAnsiStringProc : function(S1
: PChar; S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
StrLCompAnsiStringProc : function
(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
StrLICompAnsiStringProc
: function(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
StrLowerAnsiStringProc
: function(Str: PChar) : PChar;
StrUpperAnsiStringProc : function
(Str: PChar) : PChar;
ThreadInitProc : procedure;
ThreadFiniProc
: procedure;
Unicode2AnsiMoveProc : procedure(source: PUnicodeChar
; var dest: RawByteString;
    cp: TSystemCodePage; len:
SizeInt);
Ansi2UnicodeMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage
; var dest: unicodestring;
    len: SizeInt);
UpperUnicodeStringProc
: function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
LowerUnicodeStringProc
: function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
CompareUnicodeStringProc
: function(const s1: UnicodeString; const s2: UnicodeString;
Options: TCompareOptions) : PtrInt;
GetStandardCodePageProc
: function(const stdcp: TStandardCodePageEnum) : TSystemCodePage
;
end

```

TUnicodeStringManager is currently the same as the TUnicodeStringManager (1399) manager record. It performs the same functions: converting Unicode strings to ansistrings and vice-versa, performing uppercase to lowercase transformations and comparing strings.

```
TUnloadLibraryHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean
```

TUnloadLibraryHandler is the type for the UnloadLibrary call using anistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1383) dynamic library loading manager.

```
tvararray = record
public
  dimcount : Word;
  flags : Word;
  elementsize
  : LongInt;
  lockcount : LongInt;
  data : pointer;
  bounds : tvararrayboundarray
;
end
```

tvararray is a record describing a variant array. It contains some general data, followed by a number of TVarArrayBound (1400) records equal to the number of dimensions in the array (dimcount).

```
tvararraybound = record
public
  elementcount : LongInt;
  lowbound
  : LongInt;
end
```

tvararraybound is used to describe one dimension in a variant array.

```
tvararrayboundarray = Array[0..0] of tvararraybound
```

array of tvararraybound (1400) records.

```
tvararraycoorarray = Array[0..0] of LongInt
```

Array of variant array coordinates

```
tvardata = packed record
public
  vtype : tvartype;
case Integer of
  0: (
public
  res1 : Word;
case Integer of
  0: (
public
  res2 : Word
;
  res3 : Word;
case Word of
varsmallint: (
```

```
public
    vsmallint :
        SmallInt;
);
varinteger: (
public
    vinteger : LongInt;
);
varsingle
    : (
public
    vsingle : single;
);
vardouble: (
public
    vdouble :
        Double;
);
vardate: (
public
    vdate : TDateTime;
);
varcurrency
    : (
public
    vcurrency : currency;
);
varolestr: (
public
    volestr
        : PWideChar;
);
vardispatch: (
public
    vdispatch : pointer;
);
varerror
    : (
public
    verror : HRESULT;
);
varboolean: (
public
    vboolean
        : wordbool;
);
varunknown: (
public
    vunknown : pointer;
);
varustring
    : (
public
    vustring : pointer;
```

```
);
varshortint: (
public
    vshortint
    : ShortInt;
);
varbyte: (
public
    vbyte : Byte;
);
varword: (
public
    vword : Word;
);
varlongword: (
public
    vlongword : DWord;
);
varint64: (
public
    vint64 : Int64;
);
varqword: (
public
    vqword
    : QWord;
);
varword64: (
public
    vword64 : QWord;
);
varstring:
(
public
    vstring : pointer;
);
varany: (
public
    vany : pointer
    ;
);
vararray: (
public
    varray : pvararray;
);
varbyref: (
public
    vpointer : pointer;
);
varrecord: (
public
    vrecord : pointer
    ;
    precinfo : pointer;
```

```

);
);
1: (
public
    vlongs : Array[0..2] of
        LongInt;
);
);
1: (
public
    vwords : Array[0..6] of Word;
);
2:
(
public
    vbytes : Array[0..13] of Byte;
);
end

```

TVarData is a record representation of a variant. It contains the internal structure of a variant and is handled by the various variant handling routines.

```

tvariantmanager = record
public
    vartoint : function(const v: variant
    ) : LongInt;
    vartoint64 : function(const v: variant) : Int64;
    vartoword64 : function(const v: variant) : QWord;
    vartobool : function
    (const v: variant) : Boolean;
    vartoreal : function(const v: variant
    ) : extended;
    vartotdatetime : function(const v: variant) : TDateTime
    ;
    vartocurr : function(const v: variant) : currency;
    vartopstr
    : procedure(var s; const v: variant);
    vartolstr : procedure(var
    s: ansistring; const v: variant);
    vartowstr : procedure(var s:
    wideststring; const v: variant);
    vartointf : procedure(var intf:
    IInterface; const v: variant);
    vartodisp : procedure(var disp:
    IDispatch; const v: variant);
    vartodynarray : procedure(var dynarr
    : pointer; const v: variant; typeinfo: pointer);
    varfrombool : procedure
    (var dest: variant; const source: Boolean);
    varfromint : procedure
    (var dest: variant; const source: LongInt;
        const Range
    : LongInt);
    varfromint64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source

```

```

: Int64);
varfromword64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source
: QWord);
varfromreal : procedure(var dest: variant; const source
: extended);
varfromdatetime : procedure(var dest: Variant; const
source: TDateTime);
varfromcurr : procedure(var dest: Variant;
const source: Currency);
varfrompstr : procedure(var dest: variant
; const source: ShortString);
varfromlstr : procedure(var dest:
variant; const source: ansistring);
varfromwstr : procedure(var
dest: variant; const source: WideString);
varfromintf : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: IInterface);
varfromdisp : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: IDispatch);
varfromdynarray :
procedure(var dest: variant; const source: pointer; typeinfo: pointer
);
olevarfrompstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source
: shortstring);
olevarfromlstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant
; const source: ansistring);
olevarfromvar : procedure(var dest
: olevariant; const source: variant);
olevarfromint : procedure
(var dest: olevariant; const source: Int64;
const range
: ShortInt);
varop : procedure(var left: variant; const right: variant
; opcode: tvarop);
cmpop : function(const left: variant; const right
: variant;
const opcode: tvarop) : Boolean;
varneg
: procedure(var v: variant);
varnot : procedure(var v: variant)
;
varinit : procedure(var v: variant);
varclear : procedure(var
v: variant);
varaddref : procedure(var v: variant);
varcopy
: procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant);
varcast
: procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant; vartype: LongInt
);
varcastole : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant
; vartype: LongInt);
dispinvoke : procedure(dest: pvardata; var
source: tvardata; calldesc: pcalldesc);

```

```

        params: pointer
    );
    vararrayredim : procedure(var a: variant; highbound: SizeInt
    );
    vararrayget : function(const a: variant; indexcount: SizeInt
    ; indices: PLongint)
        : variant;
    vararrayput : procedure
    (var a: variant; const value: variant; indexcount: SizeInt;
    indices: PLongint);
    writevariant : function(var t: text
    ; const v: variant; width: LongInt) : Pointer;
    write0Variant : function
    (var t: text; const v: Variant) : Pointer;
end

```

TVariantManager describes the variant manager as expected by the SetVariantManager (1538) call.

```

tvarop = (opadd,opsubtract,opmultiply,opdivide,opintdivide,opmodulus
,
        opshiftleft,opshiftright,opand,opor,opxor,opcompare,opnegate
,
        opnot,opcmpeq,opcmpne,opcmplt,opcmple,opcmpgt,opcmpge
,oppower)

```

Table 75.20: Enumeration values for type tvarop

| Value        | Explanation                                      |
|--------------|--|
| opadd        | Variant operation: Addition.                     |
| opand        | Variant operation: Binary AND operation          |
| opcmpeq      | Variant operation: Compare equal.                |
| opcmpge      | Variant operation: Compare larger than or equal  |
| opcmpgt      | Variant operation: Compare larger than           |
| opcmple      | Variant operation: Compare less than or equal to |
| opcmplt      | Variant operation: Compare less than.            |
| opcmpne      | Variant operation: Compare not equal             |
| opcompare    | Variant operation: Compare                       |
| opdivide     | Variant operation: division                      |
| opintdivide  | Variant operation: integer divide                |
| opmodulus    | Variant operation: Modulus                       |
| opmultiply   | Variant operation: multiplication                |
| opnegate     | Variant operation: negation.                     |
| opnot        | Variant operation: Binary NOT operation.         |
| opor         | Variant operation: Binary OR operation           |
| oppower      | Variant operation: Power                         |
| opshiftleft  | Variant operation: Shift left                    |
| opshiftright | Variant operation: Shift right                   |
| opsubtract   | Variant operation: Subtraction                   |
| opxor        | Variant operation: binary XOR operation.         |

tvarop describes a variant operation. It is mainly used for the variant manager to implement the various conversions and mathematical operations on a variant.

```

TVarRec = record
case VType : SizeInt of
vtInteger: (
public
  VInteger
    : LongInt;
);
vtBoolean: (
public
  VBoolean : Boolean;
);
vtChar
  : (
public
  VChar : Char;
);
vtWideChar: (
public
  VWideChar : WideChar
  ;
);
vtExtended: (
public
  VExtended : PExtended;
);
vtString: (
  public
  VString : PShortString;
);
vtPointer: (
public
  VPointer
    : Pointer;
);
vtPChar: (
public
  VPChar : PAnsiChar;
);
vtObject
  : (
public
  VObject : TObject;
);
vtClass: (
public
  VClass : TClass
  ;
);
vtPWideChar: (
public
  VPWideChar : PWideChar;

```

```

);
vtAnsiString
  : (
public
  VAnsiString : Pointer;
);
vtCurrency: (
public
  VCurrency
  : PCurrency;
);
vtVariant: (
public
  VVariant : PVariant;
);
vtInterface
  : (
public
  VInterface : Pointer;
);
vtWideString: (
public
  VWideString
  : Pointer;
);
vtInt64: (
public
  VInt64 : PInt64;
);
vtUnicodeString
  : (
public
  VUnicodeString : Pointer;
);
vtQWord: (
public
  VQWord
  : PQWord;
);
end

```

TVarRec is a record generated by the compiler for each element in a array of const call. The procedure that receives the constant array receives an array of TVarRec elements, with lower bound zero and high bound equal to the number of elements in the array minus one (as returned by High(Args))

tvartype = Word

Type with size of variant type.

```

TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID
;
                                     TimeoutMs: LongInt)
: DWord

```

Callback type for thread termination in TThreadManager ([1396](#)).

TWideStringManager = TUnicodeStringManager

TWideStringManager contains the definition of the widestring manager.

UCS2Char = WideChar

UCS2 Unicode character.

UCS4Char =

UCS Unicode character (unsigned 32 bit word)

UCS4String = Array of UCS4Char

String of UCS4Char ([1408](#)) characters.

UInt16 = Word

An unsigned 16-bits integer

UInt32 = Cardinal

An unsigned 32-bits integer

UInt64 = QWord

Unsigned 64-bit integer

UInt8 = Byte

An unsigned 8-bits integer

UIntPtr = PtrUInt

Alias for PtrUInt ([1376](#)) type for compatibility with later Delphi versions.

UnicodeChar = WideChar

UnicodeChar is a single character from a UnicodeString. It equals WideChar in all respects.

UnicodeString = UnicodeString

UnicodeString is a string of WideChars. The main difference with WideString is that unicode-string is reference counted, and WideString is not reference counted on Windows.

UTF8Char = AnsiChar

UTF8Char is provided for completeness, a type alias for AnsiChar.

`UTF8String = ansistring`

UTF-8 Unicode (Ansi) string.

`ValReal = Extended`

`ValReal` is an alias for the largest available floating point type on the architecture the program runs on. On most processors, it should be one of `Double` or `Extended`.

`ValSInt = Int64`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1562) function.

`ValSInt = LongInt`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1562) function.

`ValUInt = QWord`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1562) function.

`ValUInt = Cardinal`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1562) function.

`WChar = WideChar`

Wide char (16-bit sized char)

`WideChar = #$0000..#$FFFF`

This type is the base unit for all two byte character types, like `UnicodeString` (1408) and `WideString` (1409)

`WideString = WideString`

`WideString` is an alias for `UnicodeString` on UNIX. On windows, it is a different type which has no reference counting.

`Word = 0..65535`

An unsigned 16-bits integer

### 75.10.3 Variables

`argc : LongInt; external 'operatingsystem_parameter_argc'`

`argc` contains the number of command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`argv : PPChar; external 'operatingsystem_parameter_argv'`

`argv` contains a pointer to a `nil`-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`DefaultFileSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultFileSystemCodePage` determines the code page to which file/path names are translated before they are passed to OS API calls, if the RTL uses a single byte OS API for this purpose on the current platform.

This code page is also used for intermediate operations on file paths inside the RTL before making OS API calls.

This variable does not exist in Delphi, and has been introduced in FPC to make it possible to change the value of `DefaultSystemCodePage` without breaking RTL interfaces with the OS file system API calls.

The initial value of this variable depends on the platform:

- Windows: UTF-8, because the RTL uses UTF-16 OS API calls (so no data is lost in intermediate operations).
- OS X and iOS: UTF-8 (as defined by Apple)
- Unix (excluding OS X and iOS): equals `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411). This is because the encoding of file names is undefined on Unix platforms: it is an untyped array of bytes that can be interpreted in any way; Specifically, it is not guaranteed to be valid UTF-8.
- Other platforms: same as `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411).

The value of this variable may be changed using the `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` (1533) procedure.

**Remark** The Unix/OS X/iOS settings only apply in case the `cstring` widestring manager is installed, otherwise `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` will have the same value as `DefaultSystemCodePage` after program startup.

`DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` determines the code page to which file/path names are translated before they are returned from `RawByteString` (1378) file/path RTL routines.

Examples include the file/path names returned by the `RawByteString` versions of `SysUtils.FindFirst` (1332) and `GetDir` (1469).

The main reason for its existence is to enable the RTL to provide backward compatibility with earlier versions of FPC, as these always returned strings encoded in whatever the OS' single byte API used (normally `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411)).

The initial value of this variable depends on the platform:

- Windows: `DefaultSystemCodePage`, for backward compatibility.
- OS X and iOS: UTF-8, for backward compatibility. It was already always UTF-8 in the past, since that's what the OS file APIs returned, and the data was never converted.
- Other Unixes: `DefaultSystemCodePage`, for the same reason as `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` (1410). Setting this to a different value than `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` is a bad idea on these platforms, since any code page conversion can corrupt these strings as their initial encoding is unknown.

- Other platforms: same as `DefaultSystemCodePage`.

The value of this variable can be set using the `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` (1534) call.

`DefaultSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultSystemCodePage` is used to determine how `CP_ACP` is interpreted; it is what the program considers to be the current system codepage.

It is initialized to the default system codepage.

- On windows, this is the result of the `GetACP` operating call, which returns the Windows ANSI code page.
- On iOS, this is UTF-8
- on other Unixes this will be based on the currently set `LANG` or `LC_CTYPE` environment variables. Normally this is UTF-8, but that is not guaranteed to be the case.
- For all other platforms it is set to `CP_ACP`, as these platforms currently do not support multiple code pages, and are hardcoded to use their OS-specific code page in all cases.

The `DefaultSystemCodePage` value may be set using `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` (1533). That means that it is not a good idea to use its value to determine the real OS "default system code page".

Note that if you change `DefaultSystemCodePage`, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` to free the encodings that were created. They will be recreated with the correct (new) `DefaultSystemCodePage`.

`DefaultUnicodeCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultUnicodeCodePage` is the unicode code page for a new unicode string. On most platforms, this is `CP_UTF16` (1339).

`DispCallByIDProc` : `CodePointer`

`VarDispProc` is called by the compiler if it needs to perform an interface call from a variant which contains a dispatch interface. For instance, the following call:

```
Var
  V : OleVariant;
begin
  (V as IWord).OpenDocument('c:\temp\mydoc.doc');
end;
```

where `IWord` is a dispatch interface is encoded by the compiler and passed to `DispCallByIDProc`. This pointer must be set by a routine that calls the OS COM handling routines.

`envp` : `PPChar`; external 'operatingsystem\_parameter\_envp'

`envp` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the environment variables passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`ErrOutput` : `Text`

ErrOutput is provided for Delphi compatibility.

```
ExitCode : LongInt; public 'operatingsystem_result'
```

Exit code for the program, will be communicated to the OS on exit.

```
FirstDotAtFileNameStartIsExtension : Boolean = False
```

FirstDotAtFileNameStartIsExtension determines what happens if a filename starts with a dot (.) character. If True, then the whole file name will be treated as extension. If False, then the extension is empty.

```
InOutRes : Word
```

InOutRes contains the result of the last I/O operation using one of the file I/O routines. When I/O checks are enabled, this variable is checked and if it is nonzero, a runtime error is raised.

Although it is a variable for historical reasons, it is not meant to be written to by user code, outside of routines that implement some form of file I/O.

```
Input : Text
```

Standard input text file.

```
IsConsole : Boolean; public 'operatingsystem_isconsole' = False
```

True for console applications, False for GUI applications.

```
IsLibrary : Boolean; public 'operatingsystem_islibrary' = False
```

True if the current module is a library. Otherwise module is an executable

```
mem : Array[0..$7fffffff-1] of Byte
```

mem is an array of bytes, representing the computer's memory. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. It's use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.

```
meml : Array[0..($7fffffffdivsizeof(longint))-1] of LongInt
```

memw is an array of longints, representing the computer's memory as 32-bit signed integers. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. It's use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.

```
memw : Array[0..($7fffffffdivsizeof(word))-1] of Word
```

memw is an array of words, representing the computer's memory as 2-byte words. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. It's use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.

```
NoErrMsg : Boolean = Falseplatform
```

Unused, for Delphi compatibility

Output : Text

Standard output text file.

RandSeed : Cardinal

Seed for Random ([1513](#)) function.

ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails : Boolean

ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails describes what happens if there is no more memory available from the operating system. if set to True the memory manager will return Nil. If set to False then a run-time error will occur.

softfloat\_exception\_flags : TFPUEExceptionMask

Current soft float exception flags

softfloat\_exception\_mask : TFPUEExceptionMask

Current soft float exception mask

softfloat\_rounding\_mode : TFPURoundingMode

softfloat\_rounding\_mode determines how the software floating-point emulation routines do the rounding. The value can be one of the following:

**float\_round\_nearest\_even** Round to nearest even number

**float\_round\_down** Round down

**float\_round\_up** Round up

**float\_round\_to\_zero** Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

StackBottom : Pointer

Current stack bottom.

StackLength : SizeUInt

Maximum stack length.

StdErr : Text

Standard diagnostic output text file.

StdOut : Text

Alias for Output ([1413](#)).

ThreadID : TThreadID

Current Thread ID.

UTF8CompareLocale : TSystemCodePage

UTF8CompareLocale is currently present for Delphi compatibility only, it is not used in FPC code.

widestringmanager : TUnicodeStringManager

Contains the current widestring manager. Do not use directly.

WriteErrorsToStdErr : Boolean = True

WriteErrorsToStdErr can be set to True to write error messages (run-time errors, exceptions) to StdErr instead of to standard output. This is the default behaviour. When set to False, error message will be written to standard output.

## 75.11 Procedures and functions

### 75.11.1 Abs

Synopsis: Calculate absolute value

Declaration: function Abs(l: LongInt) : LongInt  
 function Abs(l: Int64) : Int64  
 function Abs(d: ValReal) : ValReal

Visibility: default

Description: Abs returns the absolute value of a variable. The result of the function has the same type as its argument, which can be any numerical type.

Errors: None.

See also: Round ([1524](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Abs function. }*

**Var**

  r : real;  
  i : integer;

**begin**

  r:=abs(-1.0);    { r:=1.0 }  
  i:=abs(-21);     { i:=21 }

**end.**

---

### 75.11.2 AbstractError

Synopsis: Generate an abstract error.

Declaration: `procedure AbstractError`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbstractError` generates an abstract error (run-time error 211). If the `AbstractErrorProc` ([1337](#)) constant is set, it will be called instead.

Errors: This routine causes a run-time error 211.

See also: `AbstractErrorProc` ([1337](#))

### 75.11.3 AcquireExceptionObject

Synopsis: Obtain a reference to the current exception object

Declaration: `function AcquireExceptionObject : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AcquireExceptionObject` returns the current exception object. It raises the reference count of the exception object, so it will not be freed. Calling this method is only valid within an except block.

The effect of this function is countered by re-raising an exception via `raise`;

To make sure that the exception object is released when it is no longer needed, `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1518](#)) must be called when the reference is no longer needed.

Errors: If there is no current exception, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1518](#))

### 75.11.4 add(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement addition (+) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator +(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the addition + operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opadd`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `-(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

### 75.11.5 AddExitProc

Synopsis: Add an exit procedure to the exit procedure chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddExitProc(Proc: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AddExitProc` adds `Proc` to the exit procedure chain. At program exit, all procedures added in this way will be called in reverse order.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExitProc` ([1341](#))

### 75.11.6 Addr

**Synopsis:** Return address of a variable

**Declaration:** `function Addr(X: TAnytype) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Addr` returns a pointer to its argument, which can be any type, or a function or procedure name. The returned pointer isn't typed. The same result can be obtained by the `@` operator, which can return a typed pointer (see the programmer's guide).

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Addr function. }*

**Const** `Zero : integer = 0;`

**Var** `p : pointer;`  
`i : Integer;`

**begin**  
`p:=Addr(p);        { P points to itself }`  
`p:=Addr(i);        { P points to i }`  
`p:=Addr(Zero);    { P points to 'Zero' }`  
**end.**

---

### 75.11.7 Align

**Synopsis:** Return aligned version of an address

**Declaration:** `function Align(Addr: PtrUInt; Alignment: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`  
`function Align(Addr: Pointer; Alignment: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Align` returns `Address`, aligned to `Alignment` bytes.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.8 AllocMem

Synopsis: Allocate and clear memory.

Declaration: `function AllocMem(Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AllocMem` calls `getmem GetMem` ([1470](#)), and clears the allocated memory, i.e. the allocated memory is filled with `Size` zero bytes.

See also: `GetMem` ([1470](#))

### 75.11.9 AnsiToUtf8

Synopsis: Convert ansi string to UTF-8 string

Declaration: `function AnsiToUtf8(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiToUtf8` converts the ansistring `S` to a UTF-8 format, that is, it converts the string from whatever codepage is currently in use, to UTF-8.

The current codepage is fetched from the system, if internationalization support is enabled. It can be UTF-8, in which case the function simply returns `S`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Utf8toAnsi` ([1561](#))

### 75.11.10 Append

Synopsis: Open a file in append mode

Declaration: `procedure Append(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Append` opens an existing file in append mode. Any data written to `F` will be appended to the file. Only text files can be opened in append mode. After a call to `Append`, the file `F` becomes write-only. File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Append`.

Errors: If the file doesn't exist when appending, a run-time error will be generated. This behaviour has changed on Windows and Linux platforms, where in versions prior to 1.0.6, the file would be created in append mode.

See also: `Rewrite` ([1520](#)), `Close` ([1433](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex3.pp`

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Append function. }*

**Var** `f` : text;

**begin**

  Assign (`f`, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (`f`); *{ file is opened for write , and emptied }*

```

WriteIn (F, 'This is the first line of text.txt');
close (f);
Append(f);           { file is opened for write , but NOT emptied.
                       any text written to it is appended.}
WriteIn (f, 'This is the second line of text.txt');
close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.11 ArcTan

Synopsis: Calculate inverse tangent

Declaration: `function ArcTan(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArcTan` returns the Arctangent of X, which can be any Real type. The resulting angle is in radial units.

Errors: None

See also: `Sin` ([1539](#)), `Cos` ([1442](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;

{ Program to demonstrate the ArcTan function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=ArcTan(0);      { R:=0 }
  R:=ArcTan(1)/pi;   { R:=0.25 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.12 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of AnsiString;
 reserveentries: LongInt) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array S. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1546](#))

**75.11.13 Assert**

Synopsis: Check validity of a given condition.

Declaration: `procedure Assert (Expr: Boolean)`  
`procedure Assert (Expr: Boolean; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: With assertions on, `Assert` tests if `expr` is false, and if so, aborts the application with a Runtime error 227 and an optional error message in `msg`. If `expr` is true, program execution continues normally. If assertions are not enabled at compile time, this routine does nothing, and no code is generated for the `Assert` call. Enabling and disabling assertions at compile time is done via the `\$C` or `\$ASSERTIONS` compiler switches. These are local switches. The default behavior of the `assert` call can be changed by setting a new handler in the `AssertErrorProc` variable. `Sysutils` overrides the default handler to raise a `EAssertionFailed` exception.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1476](#)), `Runerror` ([1526](#))

**75.11.14 Assign**

Synopsis: Assign a name to a file

Declaration: `procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: ShortString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: shortstring)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: shortstring)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assign` assigns a name to `F`, which can be any file type. This call doesn't open the file, it just assigns a name to a file variable, and marks the file as closed.

Note that the filename (including path) can be only 255 characters long.

Errors: None.

See also: `Reset` ([1519](#)), `Rewrite` ([1520](#)), `Append` ([1417](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Assign function. }*

**Var** `F : text;`

```

begin
  Assign (F, '');
  Rewrite (f);
  { The following can be put in any file by redirecting it
    from the command line.}
  Writeln (f, 'This goes to standard output !');
  Close (f);
  Assign (F, 'Test.txt');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, 'This doesn't go to standard output !');
  close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.15 assign(Comp):olevariant

Synopsis: Assign a comp-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: Comp) : olevariant

Visibility: default

### 75.11.16 assign(Comp):variant

Synopsis: Assign a comp-precision float to a variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: Comp) : variant

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value.

### 75.11.17 assign(extended):olevariant

Synopsis: Assign an extended-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: extended) : olevariant

Visibility: default

### 75.11.18 assign(extended):variant

Synopsis: Assign an extended-precision float to a variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: extended) : variant

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value

### 75.11.19 assign(olevariant):Comp

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a comp-precision float

Declaration: operator :=(const source: olevariant) : Comp

Visibility: default

### 75.11.20 **assign(olevariant):extended**

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to an extended-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: olevariant) : extended`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.21 **assign(olevariant):Real**

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a real-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: olevariant) : Real`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.22 **assign(olevariant):single**

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a single-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: olevariant) : single`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.23 **assign(olevariant):UnicodeString**

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a unicode string

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: olevariant) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.24 **assign(Real):olevariant**

Synopsis: Assign a real-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: Real) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.25 **assign(Real):variant**

Synopsis: Assign a real-precision float to a variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: Real) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value.

### 75.11.26 **assign(Real48):extended**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `operator :=(b: Real48) : extended`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.27 **assign(single):olevariant**

Synopsis: Assign a single-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: single) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.28 **assign(single):variant**

Synopsis: Assign a single-precision float to a variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: single) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value

### 75.11.29 **assign(UCS4String):variant**

Synopsis: Assign UCS4String to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UCS4String) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

### 75.11.30 **assign(UnicodeString):olevariant**

Synopsis: Assign a unicodestring to an ole-variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UnicodeString) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.31 **assign(UnicodeString):variant**

Synopsis: Assign UnicodeString to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UnicodeString) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

### 75.11.32 **assign(UTF8String):variant**

Synopsis: Assign an UTF-8 string to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UTF8String) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

### **75.11.33 assign(variant):Comp**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a comp-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : Comp`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.34 assign(variant):extended**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a extended-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : extended`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.35 assign(variant):Real**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a real-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : Real`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.36 assign(variant):single**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a single-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : single`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.37 assign(variant):unicodestring**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a unicodestring

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.38 assign(variant):UTF8String**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to an UTF8String

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : UTF8String`

Visibility: default

### **75.11.39 Assigned**

Synopsis: Check if a pointer is valid

Declaration: `function Assigned(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default



#### 75.11.42 BasicEventResetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure BasicEventResetEvent (state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventResetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1525](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1525](#))

#### 75.11.43 BasicEventSetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure BasicEventSetEvent (state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventSetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1525](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1525](#))

#### 75.11.44 BasicEventWaitFor

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function BasicEventWaitFor (Timeout: Cardinal; state: PEventState)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventwaitfor` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1526](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1526](#))

#### 75.11.45 BeginThread

Synopsis: Start a new thread.

Declaration: `function BeginThread (sa: Pointer; stacksize: SizeUInt;  
ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
creationFlags: DWord; var ThreadId: TThreadID)  
: TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc) : TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer)  
: TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadID) : TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread (ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadID; const stacksize: SizeUInt)  
: TThreadID`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BeginThread` starts a new thread and executes `ThreadFunction` in the new thread. If `P` is specified, then it is passed to `ThreadFunction`. If `ThreadId` is specified, it is filled with the thread ID of the newly started thread. If `StackSize` is specified, it is set as the stack size for the new thread. If none is specified, a default stack size of 4MiB is used.

The function returns the thread handle (or ID, on some other operating systems like Linux or OS/2) on success, or 0 if an error occurred. Note that the thread ID and handle are the same on Unix processes, and that the thread ID and thread handle are different on windows systems.

**Errors:** On error, the value "0" is returned.

See also: `EndThread` ([1450](#))

### 75.11.46 BEtoN

**Synopsis:** Convert Big Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

**Declaration:**

```
function BEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt
function BEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word
function BEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt
function BEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord
function BEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64
function BEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BEtoN` will rearrange the bytes in a Big-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a little-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: `LEtoN` ([1496](#)), `NtoBE` ([1505](#)), `NtoLE` ([1505](#))

### 75.11.47 BinStr

**Synopsis:** Convert integer to string with binary representation.

**Declaration:**

```
function BinStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function BinStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function BinStr(Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BinStr` returns a string with the binary representation of `Value`. The string has at most `cnt` characters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost bits are taken into account) To have a complete representation of any longint-type value, 32 bits are needed, i.e. `cnt=32`

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Str` ([1543](#)), `Val` ([1562](#)), `HexStr` ([1477](#)), `OctStr` ([1505](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex82.pp`

---

**Program** `example82;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the BinStr function }*

**Const** `Value = 45678;`

---

```

Var I : longint;

begin
  For I:=8 to 20 do
    WriteLn ( BinStr(Value,I):20);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.48 BlockRead

Synopsis: Read data from an untyped file into memory

**Declaration:**

```

procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Int64;
                    var Result: Int64)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: LongInt;
                    var Result: LongInt)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Cardinal;
                    var Result: Cardinal)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Word; var Result: Word)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Word;
                    var Result: Integer)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Int64)

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Blockread reads *count* or less records from file *F*. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the Rewrite (1520) or Reset (1519) statement. The result is placed in *Buffer*, which must contain enough room for *Count* records. The function cannot read partial records. If *Result* is specified, it contains the number of records actually read. If *Result* isn't specified, and less than *Count* records were read, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the {\$I} switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the {\$I} switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the {\$I-} state, use *IOResult* to check for errors.

See also: Blockwrite (1428), Close (1433), Reset (1519), Assign (1419)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BlockRead and BlockWrite functions. }*

```

Var Fin, fout : File;
    NumRead, NumWritten : Word;
    Buf : Array[1..2048] of byte;
    Total : Longint;

begin
  Assign (Fin, Paramstr(1));
  Assign (Fout, Paramstr(2));
  Reset (Fin, 1);
  Rewrite (Fout, 1);
  Total:=0;
  Repeat
    BlockRead (Fin, buf, Sizeof(buf), NumRead);
    BlockWrite (Fout, Buf, NumRead, NumWritten);
    inc (Total, NumWritten);
  Until (NumRead=0) or (NumWritten<>NumRead);

```

---

```

Write ('Copied ',Total,' bytes from file ',paramstr(1));
WriteLn (' to file ',paramstr(2));
close(fin);
close(fout);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.49 BlockWrite

Synopsis: Write data from memory to an untyped file

Declaration:

```

procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Int64;
                    var Result: Int64)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: LongInt;
                    var Result: LongInt)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Cardinal;
                    var Result: Cardinal)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Word;
                    var Result: Word)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Word;
                    var Result: Integer)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: LongInt)

```

Visibility: default

Description: `BlockWrite` writes `count` records from buffer to the file `F`. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the `Rewrite` (1520) or `Reset` (1519) statement. If the records couldn't be written to disk, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `{SI}` switch.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Blockread` (1427), `Close` (1433), `Rewrite` (1520), `Assign` (1419)

### 75.11.50 Break

Synopsis: Exit current loop construct.

Declaration: `procedure Break`

Visibility: default

Description: `Break` jumps to the statement following the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Break` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is NOT evaluated.

This can be used with `For`, `var{repeat}` and `While` statements.

Note that although `Break` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as a procedure in the system unit, and hence can be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Continue` (1439), `Exit` (1456)

Listing: `./refex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** Example87;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Break function. }*

**Var** I : longint;

**begin**  
 I:=0;  
**While** I<10 **Do**  
   **begin**  
     **Inc**(I);  
     **If** I>5 **Then**  
       **Break**;  
     **Writeln** (i);  
   **end**;  
 I:=0;  
**Repeat**  
   **Inc**(I);  
   **If** I>5 **Then**  
     **Break**;  
   **Writeln** (i);  
**Until** I>=10;  
**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**  
   **begin**  
     **If** I>5 **Then**  
       **Break**;  
     **Writeln** (i);  
   **end**;  
**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex121.pp

---

*{*  
*Example 121:*  
*Continue, break and exit are system procedures.*  
*They can be redefined*  
*}*

**procedure** continue;

**begin**  
   **Writeln** ( 'Continue ' );  
**end**;

**Procedure** Exit;

**begin**  
   **Writeln** ( 'exit ' );  
**end**;

**Procedure** Break;

**begin**  
   **Writeln** ( 'Break ' );  
**end**;

**begin**  
   **Repeat**

---

```

    Continue ;
    Break ;
    exit ;
    Until True ;
end .

```

---

### 75.11.51 BsfByte

Synopsis: Return the position of the rightmost set bit in an 8-bit value

Declaration: `function BsfByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsfByte` scans the byte `AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsrByte` ([1431](#)), `BsfWord` ([1431](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1430](#)), `BsfQWord` ([1430](#))

### 75.11.52 BsfDWord

Synopsis: Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 32-bit value

Declaration: `function BsfDWord(const AValue: DWord) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsfDWord` scans the `DWord` `AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1430](#)), `BsfWord` ([1431](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1431](#)), `BsfQWord` ([1430](#))

### 75.11.53 BsfQWord

Synopsis: Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 64-bit value

Declaration: `function BsfQWord(const AValue: QWord) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsfQWord` scans the `QWord` `AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1430](#)), `BsfWord` ([1431](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1430](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1431](#))

**75.11.54 BsfWord**

Synopsis: Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 16-bit value

Declaration: `function BsfWord(const AValue: Word) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsfWord` scans the word `AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1430](#)), `BsrWord` ([1432](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1430](#)), `BsfQWord` ([1430](#))

**75.11.55 BsrByte**

Synopsis: Return the position of the leftmost set bit in an 8-bit value

Declaration: `function BsrByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsrByte` scans the byte `AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1430](#)), `BsrWord` ([1432](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1431](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1431](#))

**75.11.56 BsrDWord**

Synopsis: Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 32-bit value

Declaration: `function BsrDWord(const AValue: DWord) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsrDWord` scans the `DWord` `AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsrByte` ([1431](#)), `BsrWord` ([1432](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1430](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1431](#))

**75.11.57 BsrQWord**

Synopsis: Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 64-bit value

Declaration: `function BsrQWord(const AValue: QWord) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsfQWord` scans the `QWord` `AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1430](#)), `BsfWord` ([1431](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1430](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1431](#))

**75.11.58 BsrWord**

Synopsis: Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 16-bit value

Declaration: `function BsrWord(const AValue: Word) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `BsrWord` scans the word `AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsrByte` ([1431](#)), `BsfWord` ([1431](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1431](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1431](#))

**75.11.59 CaptureBacktrace**

Synopsis: Return stack trace

Declaration: `function CaptureBacktrace(skipframes: SizeInt; count: SizeInt; frames: PCodePointer) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CaptureBacktrace` will fill the array pointed to by `frames` with the addresses of a backtrace. It will skip `skipframes` frames, and will write at most `count` addresses. `Frames` must point to enough memory to hold the stacktrace, which is `count*sizeof(codepointer)` bytes.

See also: `Get_pc_addr` ([1476](#)), `get_caller_stackinfo` ([1475](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#))

**75.11.60 ChDir**

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `procedure ChDir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure ChDir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure ChDir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chdir` changes the working directory of the process to `S`.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Mkdir` ([1502](#)), `Rmdir` ([1521](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex7.pp`

**Program** `Example7;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the ChDir function. }*

```
begin
  {$I-}
  ChDir (ParamStr(1));
  if IOResult <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Cannot change to directory : ', paramstr (1));
end.
```

**75.11.61 Chr**

Synopsis: Convert byte value to character value

Declaration: `function Chr(b: Byte) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chr` returns the character which has ASCII value `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `chr` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on ASCII values of characters. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `chr` mostly obsolete. However, `chr` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ord` ([1507](#)), `Str` ([1543](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chr function. }*

**begin**

`Write (chr(10),chr(13)); { The same effect as Writeln; }`  
**end.**

---

**75.11.62 Close**

Synopsis: Close a file

Declaration: `procedure Close(var f: File)`  
`procedure Close(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` flushes the buffer of the file `F` and closes `F`. After a call to `Close`, data can no longer be read from or written to `F`. To reopen a file closed with `Close`, it isn't necessary to assign the file again. A call to `Reset` ([1519](#)) or `Rewrite` ([1520](#)) is sufficient.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Assign` ([1419](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#)), `Rewrite` ([1520](#)), `Flush` ([1465](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `Example9;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Close function. }*

**Var** `F : text;`

**begin**

`Assign (f, 'Test.txt');`  
`ReWrite (F);`

---

```

WriteLn (F, 'Some text written to Test.txt');
close (f); { Flushes contents of buffer to disk,
           closes the file. Omitting this may
           cause data NOT to be written to disk. }

end.

```

---

### 75.11.63 CloseThread

Synopsis: Close a thread and free up resources used by the thread

Declaration: `function CloseThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseThread` must be called on any thread started with `BeginThread` (1425). It must be called after the thread has ended (either by exiting the thread function or after calling `EndThread` (1450)).

Errors: If no threadmanager is installed, an exception may be raised or runtime error 232 may occur if no exceptions are used.

See also: `BeginThread` (1425), `EndThread` (1450)

### 75.11.64 CompareByte

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte

Declaration: `function CompareByte(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareByte` compares two memory regions `buf1`, `buf2` on a byte-per-byte basis for a total of `len` bytes.

The function returns one of the following values:

**less than 0** if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different bytes in the first `len` bytes, and the first such byte is smaller in `buf1` than the byte at the same position in `buf2`.

**0** if the first `len` bytes in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

**greater than 0** if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different bytes in the first `len` bytes, and the first such byte is larger in `buf1` than the byte at the same position in `buf2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareChar` (1435), `CompareChar0` (1436), `CompareWord` (1438), `CompareDWord` (1437)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex99.pp`

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareByte function. }*

**Const**

```

  ArraySize      = 100;
  HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

```

**Var**

```

  Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..ArraySize] of byte;

```

```

I : longint;

Procedure CheckPos(Len : Longint);

Begin
  Write('First ',Len,' positions are ');
  if CompareByte(Buf1,Buf2,Len)<>0 then
    Write('NOT ');
    Writeln('equal');
  end;

begin
  For I:=1 to ArraySize do
    begin
      Buf1[I]:=I;
      If I<=HalfArraySize Then
        Buf2[I]:=I
      else
        Buf2[I]:= HalfArraySize-I;
      end;
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
    end.

```

---

### 75.11.65 CompareChar

Synopsis: compare 2 memory buffers character per character

Declaration: `function CompareChar(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareChar compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a character-per-character basis for a total of len characters.

The CompareChar0 variant compares len bytes, or until a zero character is found.

The function returns one of the following values:

-1if buf1 and buf2 contain different characters in the first len positions, and the first such character is smaller in buf1 than the character at the same position in buf2.

0if the first len characters in buf1 and buf2 are equal.

1if buf1 and buf2 contain different characters in the first len positions, and the first such character is larger in buf1 than the character at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte ([1434](#)), CompareChar0 ([1436](#)), CompareWord ([1438](#)), CompareDWord ([1437](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex100.pp

---

**Program** Example100;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareChar function. }*

---

```

Const
  ArraySize      = 100;
  HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

Var
  Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..ArraySize] of char;
  I : longint;

  Procedure CheckPos(Len : Longint);

  Begin
    Write( 'First ', Len, ' characters are ');
    if CompareChar(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then
      Write( 'NOT ');
      Writeln( 'equal' );
    end;

  Procedure CheckNullPos(Len : Longint);

  Begin
    Write( 'First ', Len, ' non-null characters are ');
    if CompareChar0(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then
      Write( 'NOT ');
      Writeln( 'equal' );
    end;

begin
  For I:=1 to ArraySize do
    begin
      Buf1[I] := chr(I);
      If I <= HalfArraySize Then
        Buf2[I] := chr(I)
      else
        Buf2[I] := chr(HalfArraySize - I);
      end;
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
    For I:=1 to 4 do
      begin
        buf1[Random(ArraySize)+1] := Chr(0);
        buf2[Random(ArraySize)+1] := Chr(0);
      end;
    Randomize;
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
  end.

```

---

### 75.11.66 CompareChar0

**Synopsis:** Compare two buffers character by character till a null-character is reached.

**Declaration:** `function CompareChar0(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** CompareChar0 compares 2 buffers buf1 and buf2 for a maximum length of len or till a null character is reached in either buffer. The result depends on the contents of the buffers:

- < 0 If buf1 contains a character less than the corresponding character in buf2.
- 0 If both buffers are equal
- > 0 If buf1 contains a character greater than the corresponding character in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte (1434), CompareChar (1435), CompareDWord (1437), CompareWord (1438)

### 75.11.67 CompareDWord

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 memory buffers DWord per DWord

**Declaration:** function CompareDWord(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** CompareDWord compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a DWord-per-DWord basis for a total of len DWords. (A DWord is 4 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is smaller in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.
- 0 if the first len DWords in buf1 and buf2 are equal.
- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is larger in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar (1435), CompareByte (1434), CompareWord (1438)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareDWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Dword;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

    Write('First ', Len, ' DWords are ');  
    **if** CompareDWord(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
        Write('NOT ');  
        Writeln('equal');  
    **end**;

```

begin
  For I:=1 to ArraySize do
    begin
      Buf1[I]:=I;
      If I<=HalfArraySize Then
        Buf2[I]:=I
      else
        Buf2[I]:=HalfArraySize-I;
      end;
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);
      CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
    end.

```

---

### 75.11.68 CompareWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers word per word

Declaration: `function CompareWord(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareWord` compares two memory regions `buf1`, `buf2` on a Word-per-Word basis for a total of `len` Words. (A Word is 2 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

-1 if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different Words in the first `len` Words, and the first such Word is smaller in `buf1` than the Word at the same position in `buf2`.

0 if the first `len` Words in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

1 if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different Words in the first `len` Words, and the first such Word is larger in `buf1` than the Word at the same position in `buf2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareChar` ([1435](#)), `CompareByte` ([1434](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1437](#))

Listing: `./refex/ex102.pp`

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareWord function. }*

**Const**

```

  ArraySize      = 100;
  HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

```

**Var**

```

  Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..ArraySize] of Word;
  I : longint;

```

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

```

  Write('First ', Len, ' words are ');

```

```

    if CompareWord(Buf1 , Buf2 , Len) <> 0 then
        Write( 'NOT ');
        Writeln( 'equal ');
    end;

begin
    For I:=1 to ArraySize do
        begin
            Buf1[I]:= I;
            If I<=HalfArraySize Then
                Buf2[I]:= I
            else
                Buf2[I]:= HalfArraySize-I;
            end;
            CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
            CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
            CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);
            CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
        end.

```

---

### 75.11.69 Concat

Synopsis: Append one string or dynamic array to another.

Declaration: `function Concat(const S1: string; const S2: string; const S3: string;  
const Sn: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Concat` concatenates the strings S1,S2 etc. to one long string. The same operation can be performed with the + operation.

`Concat` can also be used to concatenate 2 dynamic arrays of any type, resulting in a new dynamic array containing all the elements of the dynamic arrays used in the call.

Errors: None.

See also: Copy ([1441](#)), Delete ([1445](#)), Insert ([1488](#)), Pos ([1510](#)), Length ([1495](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Concat function. }
Var
    S : String;

begin
    S:=Concat('This can be done',' Easier ','with the + operator !');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.70 Continue

Synopsis: Continue with next loop cycle.

Declaration: `procedure Continue`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Continue` jumps to the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Continue` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is then checked again.

This can be used with `For`, `repeat` and `While` statements.

Note that although `Continue` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as an identifier in the system unit, hence it can be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: [Break \(1428\)](#), [Exit \(1456\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex86.pp`

---

**Program** `Example86`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Continue function. }*

```

Var I : longint;

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I<5 Then
        Continue;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);
    If I<5 Then
      Continue;
    Writeln (i);
  Until I>=10;
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      If I<5 Then
        Continue;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
end.
```

---

**Listing:** `./refex/ex121.pp`

---

```

{
  Example 121:
  Continue, break and exit are system procedures.
  They can be redefined
}

procedure continue;

begin
  Writeln( 'Continue' );
end;
```

---

```

Procedure Exit ;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'exit ' );
end ;

Procedure Break ;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Break ' );
end ;

begin
  Repeat
    Continue ;
    Break ;
    exit ;
  Until True ;
end .

```

---

### 75.11.71 Copy

Synopsis: Copy part of a string.

**Declaration:** function Copy (S: AStringType; Index: SizeInt; Count: SizeInt) : string  
 function Copy (A: DynArrayType; Index: SizeInt; Count: SizeInt)  
                   : DynArray

Visibility: default

**Description:** Copy returns a string which is a copy of the Count characters in S, starting at position Index. If Count is larger than the length of the string S, the result is truncated. If Index is larger than the length of the string S, then an empty string is returned. Index is 1-based.

For dynamic arrays, Copy returns a new dynamic array of the same type as the original one, and copies Count elements from the old array, starting at the position in Index.

The Count argument can be omitted. In that case, the string (or dynamic array) is copied from the position Index till the end of the string or array.

Errors: None.

See also: Delete ([1445](#)), Insert ([1488](#)), Pos ([1510](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11 ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Copy function. }*

**Var** S,T : **String** ;

```

begin
  T:= '1234567' ;
  S:=Copy (T,1,2);   { S:= '12'   }
  S:=Copy (T,4,2);   { S:= '45'   }
  S:=Copy (T,4,8);   { S:= '4567' }
end .

```

---

### 75.11.72 CopyArray

Synopsis: Copy managed-type elements in array

Declaration: `procedure CopyArray(dest: Pointer; source: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer;  
count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyArray` copies `count` elements containing managed types from the array pointed to by `source` to the array pointed to by `dest`. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in `typeinfo`.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variables are assigned to each other.

See also: `InitializeArray` (1487), `FinalizeArray` (1463), `DynArraySize` (1450), `DynArrayClear` (1449), `DynArrayDim` (1449), `DynArrayBounds` (1448)

### 75.11.73 Cos

Synopsis: Calculate cosine of angle

Declaration: `function Cos(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cos` returns the cosine of `X`, where `X` is an angle, in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $2^{63}$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arctan` (1418), `Sin` (1539)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Cos function. }*

**Var** `R : Real;`

**begin**

`R:=Cos(Pi);      { R:=-1 }`

`R:=Cos(Pi/2);    { R:=0 }`

`R:=Cos(0);       { R:=1 }`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.74 CSeg

Synopsis: Return code segment

Declaration: `function CSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `CSeg` returns the Code segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: DSeg ([1447](#)), Seg ([1530](#)), Ofs ([1506](#)), Ptr ([1512](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program Example13;

{ Program to demonstrate the CSeg function. }

var W : word;

begin
  W:=CSeg; {W:=0, provided for compatibility,
            FPC is 32 bit.}
end.
```

---

### 75.11.75 Dec

Synopsis: Decrease value of variable

**Declaration:** `procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal; Decrement: TOrdinal)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Dec decreases the value of X with Decrement. If Decrement isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Dec can be used on typed pointers: in that case it decreases the value with Decrement the size of the type the pointer points to. This works independently of the setting of the \$POINTERMATH directive.

**Errors:** A range check can occur, or an underflow error, if an attempt is made to decrease X below its minimum value.

See also: Inc ([1480](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex14.pp

---

```
Program Example14;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dec function. }

Var
  I : Integer;
  L : Longint;
  W : Word;
  B : Byte;
  Si : ShortInt;

begin
  I:=1;
  L:=2;
  W:=3;
  B:=4;
  Si:=5;
  Dec (i);    { i:=0  }
```

---

```

Dec (L,2); { L:=0 }
Dec (W,2); { W:=1 }
Dec (B,-2); { B:=6 }
Dec (Si,0); { Si:=5 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.76 Default

Synopsis: Return Default initialized value

Declaration: `function Default(const T: AnyType) : AnyType`

Visibility: default

Description: `Default` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns for every type `T` a default value. In essence, this is a block of memory that is zeroed out. It can be used to correctly initialize any type, and more importantly, a managed type. It also works using a generic type template.

This function cannot be used on any of the file types or complex types that contain a file type.

See also: [TypeInfo \(1556\)](#), [Initialize \(1485\)](#), [Finalize \(1463\)](#)

### 75.11.77 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

Declaration: `procedure DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage;  
var dest: unicodestring; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when an ansistring must be converted to a unicodestring. It simply copies over all characters from the ansistring to the unicodestring, no conversion whatsoever is performed.

### 75.11.78 DefaultAnsi2WideMove

Synopsis: Standard implementation of Ansi to Widestring conversion routine

Declaration: `procedure DefaultAnsi2WideMove(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage;  
var dest: widestring; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultAnsi2WideMove` simply copies each character of the null-terminated ansi-string `Source` to the corresponding `WideChar` in `Dest`. At most `Len` characters will be copied.

Errors: None.

See also: [DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove \(1445\)](#)

### 75.11.79 DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

Declaration: `procedure DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove(source: PUnicodeChar;  
var dest: RawByteString;  
cp: TSystemCodePage; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when a Unicode string must be converted to an ansistring. It replaces all words with value < 256 with their value as ASCII code.

Errors: None.

See also: `WidestringManager` ([1414](#))

### 75.11.80 Delete

Synopsis: Delete elements (characters) from a string or dynamic array.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(var S: string; const Index: Integer;  
const Count: Integer)  
procedure Delete(var A: DynArrayType; const Index: Integer;  
const Count: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` removes `Count` characters from string `S`, starting at position `Index`. `Index` is 1-based. All characters after the deleted characters are shifted `Count` positions to the left, and the length of the string is adjusted.

For dynamic arrays, `Delete` removes `Count` elements from the array `A`, starting at position `Index`. `Index` is 0-based. All elements after the deleted elements are shifted `Count` positions to the left, and the length of the array is adjusted.

If the sum of `Index` and `Count` exceeds the length of the string or array, `Delete` removes the end of the string or array, starting at `Index`.

If `Index` is less than 1 or greater than the length of the string or array, or if `Count` is negative or zero, `Delete` does nothing.

See also: `Copy` ([1441](#)), `Pos` ([1510](#)), `Insert` ([1488](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Delete function. }*

**Var**

`S : String;`

**begin**

`S := 'This is not easy !';`

`Delete (S,9,4); { S := 'This is easy !' }`

**end.**

---

**75.11.81 Dispose**

Synopsis: Free dynamically allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure &Dispose(P: Pointer)`  
`procedure &Dispose(P: TypedPointer; Des: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: The first form `Dispose` releases the memory allocated with a call to `New` (1504). The pointer `P` must be typed. The released memory is returned to the heap.

The second form of `Dispose` accepts as a first parameter a pointer to an object type, and as a second parameter the name of a destructor of this object. The destructor will be called, and the memory allocated for the object will be freed.

Errors: An runtime error will occur if the pointer doesn't point to a location in the heap.

See also: `New` (1504), `Getmem` (1470), `Freemem` (1467)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dispose and New functions. }*

**Type** `SS = String[20];`

`AnObj = Object`  
`I : integer;`  
`Constructor Init;`  
`Destructor Done;`  
`end;`

**Var**

`P : ^SS;`  
`T : ^AnObj;`

**Constructor** `AnObj.Init;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Initializing an instance of AnObj !');`  
**end;**

**Destructor** `AnObj.Done;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Destroying an instance of AnObj !');`  
**end;**

**begin**

`New (P);`  
`P^:= 'Hello , World !';`  
`Dispose (P);`  
`{ P is undefined from here on !}`  
`New(T, Init);`  
`T^.i:=0;`  
`Dispose (T, Done);`  
**end.**

---

**75.11.82 divide(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement division ( / ) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator /(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the division / operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opDivide`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `*(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

**75.11.83 DoneCriticalSection**

Synopsis: Clean up a critical section.

Declaration: `procedure DoneCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneCriticalSection` cleans up the critical section CS. After a call to `DoneCriticalSection`, the critical section can no longer be used with `EnterCriticalSection` ([1451](#)) or `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1494](#)), unless it is again initialized with `InitCriticalSection` ([1485](#))

See also: `InitCriticalSection` ([1485](#)), `EnterCriticalSection` ([1451](#)), `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1494](#))

**75.11.84 DoneThread**

Synopsis: End the current thread

Declaration: `procedure DoneThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneThread` should be used to end the current thread. It performs the necessary housekeeping before actually ending the thread. Using the operating system calls to end the thread may result in data corruption or memory leaks.

See also: `BeginThread` ([1425](#))

**75.11.85 DSeg**

Synopsis: Return data segment

Declaration: `function DSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DSeg` returns the data segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `CSeg` ([1442](#)), `Seg` ([1530](#)), `Ofs` ([1506](#)), `Ptr` ([1512](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex17.pp

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DSeg function. }*

**Var**

W : Word;

**begin**

W:=**DSeg**; *{W:=0, This function is provided for compatibility,  
FPC is a 32 bit compiler.}*

**end.**

### 75.11.86 DumpExceptionBacktrace

**Synopsis:** Create backtrace

**Declaration:** `procedure DumpExceptionBacktrace(var f: text)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DumpExceptionBackTrace` writes a backtrace of the current exception to the file `f`. If no exception is currently being raised, nothing is written. As much frames as available are written. If debug info is available, then file names and line numbers will be written as well.

**Errors:** No check is done to see whether `f` is opened for writing.

See also: `dump_stack` ([1448](#))

### 75.11.87 Dump\_Stack

**Synopsis:** Dump stack to the given text file.

**Declaration:** `procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text; fp: pointer; addr: CodePointer)`  
`procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text; skipframes: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Dump_Stack` prints a stack dump to the file `f`, with base frame pointer `bp`

**Errors:** The file `f` must be opened for writing or an error will occur.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#)), `get_frame` ([1475](#))

### 75.11.88 DynArrayBounds

**Synopsis:** Return the bounds of the dynamic array

**Declaration:** `function DynArrayBounds(a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer) : TBoundArray`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DynArrayBounds` returns the bounds of all the dimensions of the dynamic array `a` with type information `typeInfo`.

The result is an array (zero-based) with the maximum valid index for each dimension in the array: the lower bound is not present in the result, it is always zero.

See also: `InitializeArray` ([1487](#)), `FinalizeArray` ([1463](#)), `CopyArray` ([1442](#)), `DynArraySize` ([1450](#)), `DynArrayClear` ([1449](#)), `DynArrayDim` ([1449](#))

**75.11.89 DynArrayClear**

Synopsis: Clears a dynamic array

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayClear(var a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayClear` clears the array (a) using its type info (typeInfo). It is equal to setting the length to zero.

See also: [InitializeArray \(1487\)](#), [FinalizeArray \(1463\)](#), [CopyArray \(1442\)](#), [DynArraySize \(1450\)](#), [DynArrayDim \(1449\)](#), [DynArrayBounds \(1448\)](#)

**75.11.90 DynArrayDim**

Synopsis: Return the number of dimensions in a dynamic array

Declaration: `function DynArrayDim(typeInfo: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayDim` returns the number of dimensions in a dynamic array, using the type information (typeInfo) of the array.

See also: [InitializeArray \(1487\)](#), [FinalizeArray \(1463\)](#), [CopyArray \(1442\)](#), [DynArraySize \(1450\)](#), [DynArrayClear \(1449\)](#), [DynArrayBounds \(1448\)](#)

**75.11.91 DynArrayIndex**

Synopsis: Return pointer to indicated element

Declaration: `function DynArrayIndex(a: Pointer; const indices: Array of SizeInt; typeInfo: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayIndex` returns a pointer to the element indicated by indices in dynamic array a with type information typinfo. The length of indices must equal the number of dimensions of the array (as returned by `DynArrayDim (1449)`).

Errors: No bounds checking is performed, it is therefor possible to get an access violation if one of the indexes is out of range.

See also: [InitializeArray \(1487\)](#), [FinalizeArray \(1463\)](#), [CopyArray \(1442\)](#), [DynArraySize \(1450\)](#), [DynArrayClear \(1449\)](#), [DynArrayBounds \(1448\)](#), [DynArrayDim \(1449\)](#), [IsDynArrayRectangular \(1493\)](#)

**75.11.92 DynArraySetLength**

Synopsis: Set the length of a dynamic array

Declaration: `procedure DynArraySetLength(var a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; dimCnt: SizeInt; lengthVec: PSizeInt)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DynArraySetLength` sets the length of the dynamic array `a` to the first `dimCnt` lengths specified in the array `lengthVec`. The dynamic array type is described in `typeInfo` which points to a record of type `TDynArrayTypeInfo` ([1382](#))

It should never be necessary to call this function directly, the standard `SetLength` ([1532](#)) function should be used instead.

**Errors:** If an invalid pointer is specified, an error may occur.

**See also:** `SetLength` ([1532](#)), `tdynarraytypeinfo` ([1382](#))

### 75.11.93 DynArraySize

**Synopsis:** Return length of dynamic array

**Declaration:** `function DynArraySize(a: pointer) : tdynarrayindex`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DynArraySize` gets the number of elements in the array (`a`) the result is equal to `Length` ([1495](#)) for dynamic arrays.

**See also:** `InitializeArray` ([1487](#)), `FinalizeArray` ([1463](#)), `CopyArray` ([1442](#)), `DynArrayClear` ([1449](#)), `DynArrayDim` ([1449](#)), `DynArrayBounds` ([1448](#))

### 75.11.94 EmptyMethod

**Synopsis:** Empty method alias

**Declaration:** `procedure EmptyMethod`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EmptyMethod` is meant for the compiler only. It should not be used directly.

### 75.11.95 EndThread

**Synopsis:** End the current thread.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndThread(ExitCode: DWord)`  
`procedure EndThread`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndThread` ends the current thread. If `ExitCode` is supplied, it is returned as the exit code for the thread to a function waiting for the thread to terminate (`WaitForThreadTerminate` ([1564](#))). If it is omitted, zero is used.

This function does not return.

**See also:** `WaitForThreadTerminate` ([1564](#)), `BeginThread` ([1425](#))

**75.11.96 EnterCriticalSection**

Synopsis: Enter a critical section

Declaration: `procedure EnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnterCriticalSection` will suspend the current thread if another thread has currently entered the critical section. When the other thread has left the critical section (through `LeaveCriticalSection` (1494)), the current thread resumes execution. The result is that only 1 thread is executing code which is protected by a `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection` pair.

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1485) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection`.

A call to `EnterCriticalSection` must always be matched by a call to `LeaveCriticalSection` (1494). To avoid problems, it is best to include the code to be execute in a `try . . . finally` block, as follows:

```
EnterCriticalSection(Section);
  Try
    // Code to be protected goes here.
  Finally
    LeaveCriticalSection(Section);
  end;
```

For performance reasons it is best to limit the code between the entering and leaving of a critical section as short as possible.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1485), `DoneCriticalSection` (1447), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1494)

**75.11.97 EnumResourceLanguages**

Synopsis: Enumerate available languages for a resource of given type and name

Declaration: `function EnumResourceLanguages(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;  
EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceLanguages` enumerates the available languages for a resource of given `ResourceName` and type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each language available, it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource `ResourceName`, the language ID, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` (1452), `EnumResourceNames` (1452), `EnumResourceLanguages` (1451)

**75.11.98 EnumResourceNames**

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource names for a specified resource type

Declaration: `function EnumResourceNames (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar;  
EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceNames` enumerates the names of all resources of type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` ([1452](#)), `EnumResourceLanguages` ([1451](#))

**75.11.99 EnumResourceTypes**

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource types

Declaration: `function EnumResourceTypes (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
EnumFunc: EnumResTypeProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceTypes` enumerates the types of all resources in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceNames` ([1452](#)), `EnumResourceLanguages` ([1451](#))

**75.11.100 EOF**

Synopsis: Check for end of file

Declaration: `function EOF (var f: File) : Boolean  
function EOF (var t: Text) : Boolean  
function EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Eof` returns `True` if the file-pointer has reached the end of the file, or if the file is empty. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed.

Note that calling this function may cause your program to wait: to determine whether you are at EOF, it is necessary to read data. If the file descriptor is not a real file (for instance for standard input or sockets), then this call may seem to hang the program while it is waiting for data to appear or for the file descriptor to be closed.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{ $I }` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{ $I- }` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` ([1453](#)), `Assign` ([1419](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#)), `Rewrite` ([1520](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Eof function. }

Var T1,T2 : text;
      C : Char;

begin
  { Set file to read from. Empty means from standard input. }
  assign (t1,paramstr(1));
  reset (t1);
  { Set file to write to. Empty means to standard output. }
  assign (t2,paramstr(2));
  rewrite (t2);
  While not eof(t1) do
    begin
      read (t1,C);
      write (t2,C);
    end;
    Close (t1);
    Close (t2);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.101 EOLn

**Synopsis:** Check for end of line

**Declaration:** `function EOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function EOLn : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EoLn` returns `True` if the file pointer has reached the end of a line, which is demarcated by a line-feed character (ASCII value 10), or if the end of the file is reached. In all other cases `EoLn` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed. It can only be used on files of type `Text`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Eof` ([1452](#)), `Assign` ([1419](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#)), `Rewrite` ([1520](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Eoln function. }

begin
  { This program waits for keyboard input. }
  { It will print True when an empty line is put in ,
  and false when you type a non-empty line.
  It will only stop when you press enter. }
```

---

```

While not Eoln do
  Writeln (eoln);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.102 equal(variant,variant):Boolean

Synopsis: Implement = (equality) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator =(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the equality (=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmeq`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator <(variant, variant): boolean ([1332](#))

### 75.11.103 Erase

Synopsis: Delete a file from disk

Declaration: `procedure Erase(var f: File)`  
`procedure Erase(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Erase` removes an unopened file from disk. The file should be assigned with `Assign`, but not opened with `Reset` or `Rewrite`

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Assign` ([1419](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Erase function. }*

**Var** `F : Text;`

**begin**

*{ Create a file with a line of text in it }*

`Assign (F, 'test.txt');`

`Rewrite (F);`

`Writeln (F, 'Try and find this when I'm finished !');`

`close (f);`

*{ Now remove the file }*

`Erase (f);`

**end.**

---

**75.11.104 Error**

Synopsis: Generate run-time error

Declaration: `procedure Error(RunTimeError: TRuntimeError)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` generates a run-time error with an exit code corresponding to `RunTimeError`. This function is implemented for Delphi compatibility, and is not used by the Free Pascal Run-Time Library.

See also: `RunError` ([1526](#)), `Halt` ([1476](#))

**75.11.105 Exclude**

Synopsis: Exclude element from a set if it is present.

Declaration: `procedure Exclude(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exclude` removes `E` from the set `S` if it is included in the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```
S:=S-[E];
Exclude(S,E);
```

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Include` ([1481](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex111.pp`

---

```
program Example111;

{ Program to demonstrate the Include/Exclude functions }

Type
  TEnumA = (aOne,aTwo,aThree);
  TEnumAs = Set of TEnumA;

Var
  SA : TEnumAs;

Procedure PrintSet(S : TEnumAs);

var
  B : Boolean;

procedure DoEI(A : TEnumA; Desc : String);

begin
  If A in S then
    begin
      If B then
        Write(' ');
```

```

        B:=True;
        Write ( Desc );
    end;
end;

begin
    Write ( ' [ ' );
    B:=False;
    DoEl(aOne, 'aOne');
    DoEl(aTwo, 'aTwo');
    DoEl(aThree, 'aThree');
    WriteLn ( ' ] ' )
end;

begin
    SA:=[];
    Include (SA,aOne);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Include (SA,aThree);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aOne);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aTwo);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aThree);
    PrintSet (SA);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.106 Exit

Synopsis: Exit current subroutine.

Declaration: `procedure &Exit (const X: TAnyType)`  
`procedure &Exit`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exit` exits the current subroutine, and returns control to the calling routine. If invoked in the main program routine, exit stops the program. The optional argument `X` allows to specify a return value, in the case `Exit` is invoked in a function. The function result will then be equal to `X`.

In Object Pascal or Delphi modes, if the `Exit` statement is surrounded by one or more `Try .. Finally` constructs, the `Finally` blocks are executed, which means that if the finally blocks are used to free resources, then these resources will also be freed when `Exit` is called.

Note that although `Exit` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as an identifier in the system unit, hence it can be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1476](#))

Listing: `./refex/ex21.pp`

Program Example21 ;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Exit function. }
```

```

Procedure DoAnExit (Yes : Boolean);

{ This procedure demonstrates the normal Exit }

begin
  Writeln ('Hello from DoAnExit !');
  If Yes then
    begin
      Writeln ('Bailing out early. ');
      exit;
    end;
  Writeln ('Continuing to the end. ');
end;

Function Positive (Which : Integer) : Boolean;

{ This function demonstrates the extra FPC feature of Exit :
  You can specify a return value for the function }

begin
  if Which > 0 then
    exit (True)
  else
    exit (False);
end;

begin
  { This call will go to the end }
  DoAnExit (False);
  { This call will bail out early }
  DoAnExit (True);
  if Positive (-1) then
    Writeln ('The compiler is nuts, -1 is not positive. ');
  else
    Writeln ('The compiler is not so bad, -1 seems to be negative. ');
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex121.pp

---

```

{
  Example 121:
  Continue, break and exit are system procedures.
  They can be redefined
}

procedure continue;

begin
  Writeln ('Continue ');
end;

Procedure Exit;

begin
  Writeln ('exit ');
end;

Procedure Break;

```

---

```

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Break ' );
end;

begin
  Repeat
    Continue;
  Break;
  exit;
  Until True;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.107 Exp

Synopsis: Exponentiate

Declaration: `function Exp(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exp` returns the exponent of X, i.e. the number e to the power X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ln` ([1497](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex22.pp`

---

```

Program Example22;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exp function. }

begin
  WriteLn (Exp(1):8:2); { Should print 2.72 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.108 Fail

Synopsis: Fail a constructor

Declaration: `procedure Fail`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fail` can be used in a constructor for an object or class. It will exit the constructor at once, and the memory allocated for the constructor is freed. This mean that for objects allocated with `New` ([1504](#)), the resulting pointer is `Nil` and for classes, the object instance will be `Nil`.

See also: `TypeOf` ([1556](#)), `New` ([1504](#)), `Initialize` ([1485](#)), `Finalize` ([1463](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex116.pp`

---

```

program testfail;

{$mode objfpc}

```

**Type**

```

TMyClass = Class
  Constructor Create;
end;

Constructor TMyClass.Create;

begin
  Fail;
end;

var
  M : TMyClass;

begin
  M:=TMyClass.Create;
  WriteIn('M is nil : ',Not Assigned(M));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.109 FilePos

Synopsis: Get position in file

Declaration: `function FilePos(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `FilePos` returns the current record position of the file-pointer in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. A compiler error will be generated if this is attempted. Untyped files have a default record size of 128, if the second parameter to `Reset` ([1519](#)) isn't specified.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filesize` ([1460](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the FilePos function. }

Var F : File of Longint;
    L,FP : longint;

begin
  { Fill a file with data :
    Each position contains the position ! }
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For L:=0 to 100 do
    begin
      FP:=FilePos(F);
      Write (F,FP);
    end;
  Close (F);
  Reset (F);
  { If all goes well, nothing is displayed here. }

```

---

```

While not (Eof(F)) do
  begin
    FP:=FilePos (F);
    Read (F,L);
    if L<>FP then
      Writeln ('Something wrong: Got ',l,' on pos ',FP);
    end;
    Close (F);
    Erase (f);
  end.

```

---

### 75.11.110 FileSize

Synopsis: Size of file

Declaration: `function FileSize(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSize` returns the total number of records in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. (under Linux and Unix, this also means that it cannot be invoked on pipes). If `F` is empty, 0 is returned. Untyped files have a default record size of 128, if the second parameter to `Reset` ([1519](#)) isn't specified.

Note that the file must be open for this function to return a result.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filepos` ([1459](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** `Example24`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSize function. }*

```

Var F : File Of byte;
    L : File Of Longint;

```

```

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Reset (F);
  Writeln ('File size in bytes : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (F);
  Assign (L,paramstr (1));
  Reset (L);
  Writeln ('File size in Longints : ',FileSize(L));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.111 FillByte

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillByte(var x; count: SizeInt; value: Byte)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** FillByte fills the memory starting at X with Count bytes with value equal to Value. This is useful for quickly zeroing out a memory location. When the size of the memory location to be filled out is a multiple of 2 bytes, it is better to use Fillword (1462), and if it is a multiple of 4 bytes it is better to use FillDWord (1462), these routines are optimized for their respective sizes.

**Errors:** No checking on the size of X is done.

See also: Fillchar (1461), FillDWord (1462), Fillword (1462), Move (1502)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex103.pp

---

**Program** Example103;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillByte function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
    I : Byte;

begin
    For i:=10 downto 0 do
        begin
            { Fill S with i bytes }
            FillByte (S,SizeOf(S),32);
            { Set Length }
            SetLength(S,I);
            Writeln (s, '*');
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 75.11.112 FillChar

**Synopsis:** Fill memory region with certain character

**Declaration:** procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Byte)  
 procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Boolean)  
 procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Char)

Visibility: default

**Description:** Fillchar fills the memory starting at X with Count bytes or characters with value equal to Value.

**Errors:** No checking on the size of X is done.

See also: Fillword (1462), Move (1502), FillByte (1460), FillDWord (1462)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex25.pp

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillChar function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
    I : Byte;

begin
    For i:=10 downto 0 do

```

```

begin
  { Fill S with i spaces }
  FillChar (S, SizeOf(S), ' ');
  { Set Length }
  SetLength(S, I);
  Writeln (s, '*');
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.113 FillDWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillDWord(var x; count: SizeInt; value: DWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillDWord` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` `DWords` with value equal to `Value`. A `DWord` is 4 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `FillByte` ([1460](#)), `FillChar` ([1461](#)), `FillWord` ([1462](#)), `Move` ([1502](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex104.pp`

**Program** `Example104`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillDWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`

**Var**

`S : Array [1..ArraySize] of DWord;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**

`FillDWord(S, ArraySize, 0);`

**For** `I:=1 to ArraySize do`

**If** `S[I]<>0 then`

`Writeln('Position ', I, ' not zeroed out');`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.114 FillWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillWord(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillWord` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` words with value equal to `Value`. A word is 2 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: Fillchar ([1461](#)), Move ([1502](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillWord function. }*

**Var** W : **Array**[1..100] **of** Word;

**begin**

*{ Quick initialization of array W }*

FillWord(W,100,0);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.115 Finalize

Synopsis: Finalize (clean up) memory block using RTTI

**Declaration:** procedure Finalize(var T: TAnyType; ACount: SizeInt)

Visibility: default

**Description:** Finalize is a compiler intrinsic: it cleans up (finalizes) a memory area T for any kind of managed variable. Finalizing means decreasing reference counts where necessary and generally zeroing out the memory area. It performs the opposite operation of initialize ([1485](#)).

The optional ACount parameter can be used to finalize an array of values.

For examples, see initialize ([1485](#)).

See also: initialize ([1485](#)), Default ([1444](#)), TypeInfo ([1556](#))

### 75.11.116 FinalizeArray

Synopsis: Finalize managed-type elements in array

**Declaration:** procedure FinalizeArray(p: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; count: SizeInt)

Visibility: default

**Description:** FinalizeArray dereferences and clears managed types in the array pointed to by p. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in typeinfo.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variable containing managed types goes out of scope.

See also: InitializeArray ([1487](#)), CopyArray ([1442](#)), DynArraySize ([1450](#)), DynArrayClear ([1449](#)), DynArrayDim ([1449](#)), DynArrayBounds ([1448](#))

### 75.11.117 FindResource

Synopsis: Locate a resource and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:** function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
                                   ResourceName: PChar; ResourceType: PChar)  
                                   : TFPResourceHandle  
 function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;

```

        const ResourceName: AnsiString;
        const ResourceType: AnsiString) : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        const ResourceName: AnsiString;
        ResourceType: PChar) : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        ResourceName: PChar;
        const ResourceType: AnsiString) : TFPResourceHandle

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResource searches for a resource with name ResourceName and of type ResourceType in the executable or library identified by ModuleHandle. It returns a TResourceHandle which can be used to load the resource with LoadResource (1498).

**Errors:** None. In case the resource was not found, 0 is returned.

**See also:** FreeResource (1468), LoadResource (1498), SizeofResource (1540), LockResource (1499), UnlockResource (1559), FreeResource (1468)

### 75.11.118 FindResourceEx

**Synopsis:** Find a resource based on type, name, language

```

Declaration: function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
        Language: Word) : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        const ResourceType: AnsiString;
        const ResourceName: AnsiString; Language: Word)
        : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        ResourceType: PChar;
        const ResourceName: AnsiString; Language: Word)
        : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
        const ResourceType: AnsiString;
        ResourceName: PChar; Language: Word)
        : TFPResourceHandle

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResourceEx looks in module ModuleHandle for a resource of type ResourceType and name ResourceName with language ID Language. Both ResourceName and ResourceName can be specified as a null-terminated array of characters, or as an AnsiString.

If the requested language/sublanguage is not found, then the search is conducted

1. with only primary language.
2. with the neutral language (LANG\_NEUTRAL)
3. with the English language

If none of these has returned a match, then the first available language is returned.

If a match is found, a handle to the resource is returned. If none is found, an empty handle (nil or 0) is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**75.11.119 float\_raise**

Synopsis: Raise floating point exception

Declaration: `procedure float_raise(i: TFPUEException)`  
`procedure float_raise(i: TFPUEExceptionMask)`

Visibility: default

Description: `float_raise` raises the floating point exceptions specified by `softfloat_exception_flags` (1413).

See also: `softfloat_exception_flags` (1413), `softfloat_exception_mask` (1413)

**75.11.120 Flush**

Synopsis: Write file buffers to disk

Declaration: `procedure Flush(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` empties the internal buffer of an opened file `F` and writes the contents to disk. The file is **not** closed as a result of this call.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Close` (1433)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Flush function. }*

**Var** `F : Text;`

**begin**

*{ Assign F to standard output }*

`Assign (F, '');`

**Rewrite** `(F);`

**Writeln** `(F, 'This line is written first, but appears later !');`

*{ At this point the text is in the internal pascal buffer, and not yet written to standard output }*

**Writeln** `('This line appears first, but is written later !');`

*{ A writeln to 'output' always causes a flush – so this text is written to screen }*

**Flush** `(f);`

*{ At this point, the text written to F is written to screen. }*

**Write** `(F, 'Finishing ');`

`Close (f);` *{ Closing a file always causes a flush first }*

**Writeln** `('off.');`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.121 FlushThread

Synopsis: Flush all standard files

Declaration: `procedure FlushThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `FlushThread` flushes any buffers from standard file descriptors such as standard input/output/error. It should normally not be called by user code, but is executed when a thread exits.

See also: `EndThread` ([1450](#))

### 75.11.122 FMADouble

Synopsis: Internal function, do not use

Declaration: `function FMADouble(d1: Double; d2: Double; d3: Double) : Double`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.123 FMAExtended

Synopsis: Internal function, do not use

Declaration: `function FMAExtended(e1: extended; e2: extended; e3: extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.124 FMASingle

Synopsis: Internal function, do not use

Declaration: `function FMASingle(s1: single; s2: single; s3: single) : single`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.125 FPower10

Synopsis: Fast multiply with a power of 10

Declaration: `function FPower10(val: Extended; Power: LongInt) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPower10` multiplies `val` with 10 to the power `Power`. It uses a fast algorithm to calculate the result.

### 75.11.126 Frac

Synopsis: Return fractional part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function Frac(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frac` returns the non-integer part of `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Round` ([1524](#)), `Int` ([1488](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Frac function. }*

**Var** `R : Real`;

**begin**

**WriteLn** (`Frac` (`123.456`):0:3); *{ Prints 0.456 }*

**WriteLn** (`Frac` (`-123.456`):0:3); *{ Prints -0.456 }*

**end.**

---

### 75.11.127 FreeLibrary

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` ([1559](#)), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` ([1559](#))

### 75.11.128 Freemem

Synopsis: Release allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Freemem(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function Freemem(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Freemem` releases the memory occupied by the pointer `P`, of size `Count` (in bytes), and returns it to the heap. `P` should point to the memory allocated to a dynamic variable.

Errors: An error will occur when `P` doesn't point to the heap.

See also: `Getmem` ([1470](#)), `New` ([1504](#)), `Dispose` ([1446](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FreeMem and GetMem functions. }*

**Var** `P : Pointer`;

`MM : Longint`;

**begin**

---

```

    { Get memory for P }
    GetMem (P,80);
    FillChar (P^,80,' ');
    FreeMem (P,80);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.129 Freememory

Synopsis: Alias for FreeMem ([1467](#))

Declaration: `procedure Freememory(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function Freememory(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeMemory` is an alias for `FreeMem` ([1467](#)).

See also: `FreeMem` ([1467](#))

### 75.11.130 FreeResource

Synopsis: Free a loaded resource

Declaration: `function FreeResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeResource` unloads the resource identified by `ResData` from memory. The resource must have been loaded by `LoadResource` ([1498](#)). It returns `True` if the operation was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `FindResource` ([1463](#)), `LoadResource` ([1498](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1540](#)), `LockResource` ([1499](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1559](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#))

### 75.11.131 Get8087CW

Declaration: `function Get8087CW : Word`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.132 GetCPUCount

Synopsis: Return the number of cores on the system

Declaration: `function GetCPUCount : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCPUCount` returns the number of CPU cores on the system. Whether these are physically separate CPUs or cores on a single CPU is deliberately undefined.

See also: `CPUCount` ([1332](#))

**75.11.133 GetCurrentThreadId**

Synopsis: Return the id of the currently running thread.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentThreadId : TThreadId`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCurrentThreadId` returns the ID of the currently running thread. It can be used in calls such as `KillThread` ([1494](#)) or `ThreadSetPriority` ([1553](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `KillThread` ([1494](#)), `ThreadSetPriority` ([1553](#))

**75.11.134 GetDir**

Synopsis: Return the current directory

Declaration: `procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getdir` returns in `dir` the current directory on the drive `drivenr`, where {`drivenr`} is 1 for the first floppy drive, 3 for the first hard disk etc. A value of 0 returns the directory on the current disk. On Linux and Unix systems, `drivenr` is ignored, as there is only one directory tree.

Errors: An error is returned under dos, if the drive requested isn't ready.

See also: `Chdir` ([1432](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `Example29;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDir function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`GetDir (0,S);`

`Writeln ('Current directory is : ',S);`

**end.**

---

**75.11.135 GetDynLibsManager**

Synopsis: Return currently active dynamic library support handler

Declaration: `procedure GetDynLibsManager (var Manager: TDynLibsManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDynLibsManager` returns the currently active dynamic library support handler. This handler has normally been set by inclusion of the `#rtl.dynlibs` ([710](#)) unit.

See also: `#rtl.dynlibs` ([710](#)), `SetDynLibsManager` ([1531](#))

**75.11.136 GetFPCHeapStatus**

Synopsis: Return FPC heap manager status information

Declaration: `function GetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: Return FPC heap manager status information

**75.11.137 GetHeapStatus**

Synopsis: Return the memory manager heap status.

Declaration: `function GetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

**75.11.138 GetLoadErrorStr**

Synopsis: Return an error describing the last library loading error

Declaration: `function GetLoadErrorStr : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLoadErrorStr` returns an error string describing the last library loading error. This function must be called before any other OS calls are performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([1498](#)), `SafeLoadLibrary` ([1526](#))

**75.11.139 GetMem**

Synopsis: Allocate new memory on the heap

Declaration: `procedure Getmem(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMem(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getmem` reserves `Size` bytes memory on the heap, and returns a pointer to this memory in `p`. What happens if no more memory is available, depends on the value of the variable `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` ([1413](#)): if the variable is `True` then `Nil` is returned. If the variable is `False`, a run-time error is generated. The default value is `False`, so by default an error is generated.

The newly allocated memory is not initialized in any way, and may contain garbage data. It must be cleared with a call to `FillChar` ([1461](#)) or `FillWord` ([1462](#)).

For an example, see `Freemem` ([1467](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Freemem` ([1467](#)), `Dispose` ([1446](#)), `New` ([1504](#)), `returnnilifgrowheapfails` ([1413](#)), `MemSize` ([1502](#))

**75.11.140 GetMemory**

Synopsis: Alias for GetMem ([1470](#))

Declaration: `procedure Getmemory(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMemory(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getmemory` is an alias for `GetMem` ([1470](#)).

See also: `GetMem` ([1470](#))

**75.11.141 GetMemoryManager**

Synopsis: Return current memory manager

Declaration: `procedure GetMemoryManager(var MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMemoryManager` stores the current Memory Manager record in `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetMemoryManager` ([1533](#)), `IsMemoryManagerSet` ([1494](#))

**75.11.142 GetMXCSR**

Declaration: `function GetMXCSR : DWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.143 GetProcAddress**

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; const ProcName: AnsiString)`  
`: Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcedureAddress` ([1471](#)), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

**75.11.144 GetProcedureAddress**

Synopsis: Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

Declaration: `function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle;`  
`const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer`  
`function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)`  
`: Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetProcAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` or ordinal value `Ordinal` in the dynamically loaded library specified by it's handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Only windows and OS/2 support getting the address of a function using an ordinal value.

**Errors:** If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` ([1498](#)), `UnLoadLibrary` ([1559](#))

### 75.11.145 GetProcessID

**Synopsis:** Get the current process ID

**Declaration:** `function GetProcessID : SizeUInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetProcessID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetThreadID` ([1473](#))

### 75.11.146 GetResourceManager

**Synopsis:** Return the currently active resource manager

**Declaration:** `procedure GetResourceManager (var Manager: TResourceManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetResourceManager` returns the currently active resource manager record in `Manager`. There is always an active resource manager record.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TResourceManager` ([1392](#)), `SetResourceManager` ([1534](#))

### 75.11.147 GetSSECSR

**Declaration:** `function GetSSECSR : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

### 75.11.148 GetTextCodePage

**Synopsis:** Get the codepage used in a text file.

**Declaration:** `function GetTextCodePage (var T: Text) : TSystemCodePage`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetTextCodePage` returns the codepage that the text file `T` uses. All strings written to the file will be converted to the indicated codepage. By default, the codepage is set to `CP_ACP`.

Errors: None.

See also: [TextRec \(1385\)](#), [SetTextCodePage \(1536\)](#)

### 75.11.149 GetThreadID

Synopsis: Get the current Thread ID.

Declaration: `function GetThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

See also: [GetProcessID \(1472\)](#)

### 75.11.150 GetThreadManager

Synopsis: Return the current thread manager

Declaration: `function GetThreadManager(var TM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadManager` returns the currently used thread manager in TM.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

See also: [SetThreadManager \(1537\)](#), [TThreadManager \(1396\)](#)

### 75.11.151 GetTypeKind

Synopsis: Return type kind for a type

Declaration: `function GetTypeKind(const T: AnyType) : TTypeKind`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTypeKind` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns the type kind for the type T. In difference with the [TypeInfo \(1556\)](#), if no type information was yet generated for the type, this statement will not ensure that the type information is available: the compiler knows the correct value, and will directly insert it into the code as a constant.

See also: [Default \(1444\)](#), [TypeInfo \(1556\)](#), [TypeOf \(1556\)](#), [Initialize \(1485\)](#), [Finalize \(1463\)](#)

### 75.11.152 GetUnicodeStringManager

Synopsis: Return a copy of the currently active UnicodeString manager.

Declaration: `procedure GetUnicodeStringManager(var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetUnicodeStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active Unicode string manager in `Old`

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `UnicodeStringManager` record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetUnicodeStringManager` ([1537](#)), `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1399](#))

### 75.11.153 GetVariantManager

**Synopsis:** Return the current variant manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetVariantManager (var VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetVariantManager` returns the current variant manager in `varmgr`.

See also: `SetVariantManager` ([1538](#))

### 75.11.154 GetWideStringManager

**Synopsis:** Return a copy of the currently active widestring manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetWideStringManager (var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetWideStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active heap manager in `Old`

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `WideString` manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetWideStringManager` ([1538](#)), `TWideStringManager` ([1408](#))

### 75.11.155 get\_caller\_addr

**Synopsis:** Return the address of the caller.

**Declaration:** `function get_caller_addr (framebp: pointer; addr: CodePointer)  
: CodePointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to address ( the return address) of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_frame` ([1475](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1448](#))

### 75.11.156 `get_caller_frame`

Synopsis: Return the frame pointer of the caller

Declaration: `function get_caller_frame(framebp: pointer; addr: CodePointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to the frame of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_frame` ([1475](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1448](#))

### 75.11.157 `get_caller_stackinfo`

Synopsis: Return caller stack information

Declaration: `procedure get_caller_stackinfo(var framebp: pointer;  
var addr: CodePointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_stackinfo` returns caller address in `addr` and frame base pointer in `framebp`.

See also: `CaptureBacktrace` ([1432](#)), `Get_pc_addr` ([1476](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#))

### 75.11.158 `get_cmdline`

Synopsis: Return the command-line as a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function get_cmdline : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_cmdline` returns the complete command-line as a null-terminated string. It is not recommended to use this function, since it builds a complete value from the actual command-line arguments. Instead, `ParamCount` ([1508](#)) and `ParamStr` ([1509](#)) should be used.

See also: `ParamCount` ([1508](#)), `ParamStr` ([1509](#))

### 75.11.159 `get_frame`

Synopsis: Return the current frame

Declaration: `function get_frame : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_frame` returns a pointer to the current stack frame.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#))

**75.11.160 Get\_pc\_addr**

Synopsis: Get Program Counter address

Declaration: `function Get_pc_addr : CodePointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get_pc_addr` returns the program counter address (current execution address).

See also: `CaptureBacktrace` ([1432](#)), `get_caller_stackinfo` ([1475](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1474](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1475](#))

**75.11.161 greaterthan(variant,variant):Boolean**

Synopsis: Implement > (greater than) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator >(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "greater than" comparison (>) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmpgt`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator <(variant, variant): boolean` ([1332](#))

**75.11.162 greaterthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean**

Synopsis: Implement >= (greater than or equal) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator >=(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "greater than or equal" comparison (>=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmpge`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator <(variant, variant): boolean` ([1332](#))

**75.11.163 Halt**

Synopsis: Stop program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Halt(errnum: LongInt)`  
`procedure Halt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Halt` stops program execution and returns control to the calling program. The optional argument `Errnum` specifies an exit value. If omitted, zero is returned.

Note that this skips any try/finally (implicit or explicit) or try/except blocks, thus may result in memory leaks. Finalization sections of units will be executed.

Errors: None.

See also: [Exit \(1456\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex30.pp

---

**Program** Example30;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Halt function. }

begin
  Writeln ('Before Halt. ');
  Halt (1); { Stop with exit code 1 }
  Writeln ('After Halt doesn't get executed. ');
end.
```

---

### 75.11.164 HexStr

Synopsis: Convert integer value to string with hexadecimal representation.

**Declaration:** function HexStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring  
 function HexStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring  
 function HexStr(Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring  
 function HexStr(Val: Pointer) : shortstring

Visibility: default

**Description:** HexStr returns a string with the hexadecimal representation of Value. The string has exactly cnt characters. (i.e. only the cnt rightmost nibbles are taken into account) To have a complete representation of a Longint-type value, 8 nibbles are needed, i.e. cnt=8.

Errors: None.

See also: [Str \(1543\)](#), [Val \(1562\)](#), [BinStr \(1426\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex81.pp

---

**Program** example81;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the HexStr function }

Const Value = 45678;

Var I : longint;

begin
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    Writeln (HexStr(Value, I));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.165 Hi

Synopsis: Return high byte/word/nibble of value.

**Declaration:** `function Hi(b: Byte) : Byte`  
`function Hi(i: Integer) : Byte`  
`function Hi(w: Word) : Byte`  
`function Hi(l: LongInt) : Word`  
`function Hi(l: DWord) : Word`  
`function Hi(i: Int64) : DWord`  
`function Hi(q: QWord) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Hi` returns the high nibble, byte or word or longword from `X`, depending on the size of `X`.

Table 75.21:

| Size | Return value         |
|------|----------------------|
| 8    | Byte, High nibble    |
| 16   | Byte, High byte      |
| 32   | Word, High word      |
| 64   | Cardinal, High DWord |

Note that in Delphi or TP, this function always treats its argument as if it was a `Word`, so the results may differ from FPC.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Lo` ([1497](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex31.pp`

---

```
Program Example31 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the Hi function. }

var
  L : Longint;
  W : Word;
  B : Byte;

begin
  L:=1 Shl 16;    { = $10000 }
  W:=1 Shl 8;     { = $100 }
  B:=1 Shl 4;     { = $10 }
  Writeln (Hi(L)); { Prints 1 }
  Writeln (Hi(W)); { Prints 1 }
  Writeln (Hi(B)); { Prints 1 }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.166 High

**Synopsis:** Return highest index of open array or enumerated

**Declaration:** `function High(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

**Visibility:** default

Description: The return value of `High` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `High` returns the highest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `High` returns the highest possible value of it's index. For dynamic arrays, it returns the same as `Length -1`, meaning that it reports -1 for empty arrays.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `High` returns the highest index of the array, as if the array has a zero-based index. If the array is empty, then -1 is returned.
- 4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the highest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument (This can lead to some nasty surprises !).

Errors: None.

See also: `Low` ([1500](#)), `Ord` ([1507](#)), `Pred` ([1511](#)), `Succ` ([1548](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex80.pp`

---

**Program** `example80;`

*{ Example to demonstrate the High and Low functions. }*

**Type** `TEnum = ( North , East , South , West );`  
`TRange = 14..55;`  
`TArray = Array [2..10] of Longint;`

**Function** `Average (Row : Array of Longint) : Real;`

**Var** `I : longint;`  
`Temp : Real;`

**begin**  
`Temp := Row[0];`  
`For I := 1 to High(Row) do`  
`Temp := Temp + Row[i];`  
`Average := Temp / (High(Row)+1);`  
**end;**

**Var** `A : TEnum;`  
`B : TRange;`  
`C : TArray;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**  
`Writeln ('TEnum goes from : ', Ord(Low(TEnum)), ' to ', Ord(high(TEnum)), '.');`  
`Writeln ('A goes from : ', Ord(Low(A)), ' to ', Ord(high(A)), '.');`  
`Writeln ('TRange goes from : ', Ord(Low(TRange)), ' to ', Ord(high(TRange)), '.');`  
`Writeln ('B goes from : ', Ord(Low(B)), ' to ', Ord(high(B)), '.');`  
`Writeln ('TArray index goes from : ', Ord(Low(TArray)), ' to ', Ord(high(TArray)), '.');`  
`Writeln ('C index goes from : ', Low(C), ' to ', high(C), '.');`  
`For I:=Low(C) to High(C) do`  
`C[i]:=I;`  
`Writeln ('Average : ', Average(c));`

---

```

    Write ('Type of return value is always same as type of argument:');
    Writeln(high(high(word)));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.167 HINSTANCE

Synopsis: Windows compatibility type for use in resources

Declaration: `function HINSTANCE : TFPResourceHMODULE`

Visibility: default

Description: This is an opaque type.

### 75.11.168 Inc

Synopsis: Increase value of integer variable

Declaration: `procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal; Increment: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Inc` increases the value of `X` with `Increment`. If `Increment` isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

`Inc` can be used on typed pointers: in that case it increases the value with `Increment` the size of the type the pointer points to. This works independently of the setting of the `$POINTERMATH` directive.

Errors: If range checking is on, then A range check can occur, or an overflow error, when an attempt is made to increase `X` over its maximum value.

See also: `Dec` ([1443](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex32.pp`

**Program** `Example32;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Inc function. }*

**Const**

```

C : Cardinal  = 1;
L : Longint   = 1;
I : Integer   = 1;
W : Word      = 1;
B : Byte      = 1;
SI : ShortInt = 1;
CH : Char     = 'A';

```

**begin**

```

Inc (C);      { C:=2    }
Inc (L,5);    { L:=6    }
Inc (I,-3);   { I:=-2   }
Inc (W,3);    { W:=4    }
Inc (B,100);  { B:=101  }
Inc (SI,-3);  { SI:=-2  }
Inc (CH,1);   { ch:='B' }

```

**end.**

---

**75.11.169 Include**

Synopsis: Include element in set if it was not yet present.

Declaration: `procedure Include(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Include` includes `E` in the set `S` if it is not yet part of the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```
S:=S+[E];
Include(S,E);
```

For an example, see `Exclude` ([1455](#))

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Exclude` ([1455](#))

**75.11.170 IndexByte**

Synopsis: Search for a byte in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexByte(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Byte) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexByte` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the byte `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexChar` ([1482](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1483](#)), `IndexWord` ([1484](#)), `CompareByte` ([1434](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexByte function. }*

**Const**

```
  ArraySize = 256;
  MaxValue = 256;
```

**Var**

```
  Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Byte;
  I,J : longint;
  K : Byte;
```

**begin**

```
  Randomize;
  For I:=1 To ArraySize do
    Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=Random(MaxValue);
```

---

```

J:=IndexByte ( Buffer , ArraySize ,K);
if J=-1 then
  Writeln('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
else
  Writeln('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.171 IndexChar

**Synopsis:** Search for a character in a memory range.

**Declaration:** `function IndexChar(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Char) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the character `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based. The `IndexChar0` variant stops looking if a null character is found, and returns -1 in that case.

**Errors:** `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1481](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1483](#)), `IndexWord` ([1484](#)), `CompareChar` ([1435](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex108.pp`

---

**Program** Example108;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexChar function. }*

**Const**

```

  ArraySize = 1000;
  MaxValue = 26;

```

**Var**

```

  Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Char;
  I,J : longint;
  K : Char;

```

**begin**

```

  Randomize;
  For I:=1 To ArraySize do
    Buffer[I]:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));
      J:=IndexChar(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
      if J=-1 then
        Writeln('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
      else
        Writeln('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
      end;
    end;

```

**end.**

---

**75.11.172 IndexChar0**

Synopsis: Return index of a character in null-terminated array of char.

Declaration: `function IndexChar0(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar0` returns the index of the character `b` in the null-terminated array `Buf`. At most `len` characters will be searched, or the null character if it is encountered first. If the character is not found, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1481](#)), `IndexChar` ([1482](#)), `IndexWord` ([1484](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1483](#)), `CompareChar0` ([1436](#))

**75.11.173 IndexDWord**

Synopsis: Search for a DWord value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexDWord(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: DWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexDWord` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the DWord `DW` and returns it's position if it found one. If `DW` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1481](#)), `IndexChar` ([1482](#)), `IndexWord` ([1484](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1437](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex106.pp`

**Program** `Example106;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexDWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`  
`MaxValue = 1000;`

**Var**

`Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of DWord;`  
`I, J : longint;`  
`K : DWord;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`For I:=1 To ArraySize do`

`Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);`

`For I:=1 to 10 do`

`begin`

`K:=Random(MaxValue);`

`J:=IndexDWord(Buffer, ArraySize, K);`

`if J=-1 then`

`Writeln('Value ', K, ' was not found in buffer.')`

`else`

`Writeln('Found ', K, ' at position ', J, ' in buffer');`

`end;`

`end.`

**75.11.174 IndexQWord**

Synopsis: Return the position of a QWord in a memory range

Declaration: `function IndexQWord(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: QWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexQWord` checks the first `len` qwords starting at `Buf`, and returns the position (zero-based) of `b`. If `b` does not appear in the first `len` qwords, then -1 is returned.

Note that the search is done on QWord boundaries, but that the address of `buf` need not be on a QWord boundary.

Errors: No check is done to see whether the indicated memory range is valid. If it is not, a run-error or exception may be triggered.

See also: `IndexDWord` ([1483](#))

**75.11.175 Indexword**

Synopsis: Search for a WORD value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function Indexword(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Word) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexWord` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the Word `W` and returns it's position if it found one. If `W` is not found then -1 is returned.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1481](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1483](#)), `IndexChar` ([1482](#)), `CompareWord` ([1438](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex107.pp`

---

**Program** `Example107;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`  
`MaxValue = 1000;`

**Var**

`Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Word;`  
`I,J : longint;`  
`K : Word;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`  
`For I:=1 To ArraySize do`  
`Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);`  
`For I:=1 to 10 do`  
`begin`  
`K:=Random(MaxValue);`  
`J:=IndexWord(Buffer,ArraySize,K);`  
`if J=-1 then`  
`WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')`  
`else`

---

```

    WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.176 InitCriticalSection

Synopsis: Initialize a critical section

Declaration: `procedure InitCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitCriticalSection` initializes a critical section CS for use. Before using a critical section with `EnterCriticalSection` (1451) or `LeaveCriticalSection` (1494) the critical section should be initialized with `InitCriticalSection`.

When a critical section is no longer used, it should be disposed of with `DoneCriticalSection` (1447)

See also: `DoneCriticalSection` (1447), `EnterCriticalSection` (1451), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1494)

### 75.11.177 Initialize

Synopsis: Initialize memory block using RTTI

Declaration: `procedure Initialize(var T: TAnyType; ACount: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Initialize` is a compiler intrinsic: it initializes a memory area T for any kind of managed variable. Initializing means zeroing out the memory area. In this sense it is close in functionality to `Default` (1444), but `Default` requires an already initialized variable. It performs the opposite operation of `finalize` (1463), which should be used to clean up the memory block when it is no longer needed.

The optional `ACount` parameter can be used to initialize an array. It then specifies the number of elements in the array.

See also: `finalize` (1463), `Default` (1444), `TypeInfo` (1556)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex117.pp`

---

```

{
  This example demonstrates the use of the Initialize and Finalize functions
  used to initialize (and clean up) any RTTI-enabled data not allocated with
  New or Create.
}

{$mode objfpc}
{$h+} // use ansistrings, they need to be initialized.
Type
  PData = ^TData;
  TData = record
    Street, City, Zip, Country, Tel: String;
    StreetNumber: Integer;
  end;

var
  Data: PData;

```

```

begin
    // Do not use New.
    GetMem(Data, SizeOf(TData));
    Try
        { Initialize the structure in memory, using Run-Time Type Information }
        Initialize(Data^);
        { Assign some string data to the ansistring contents.
          Note that this only works because the record was zeroed out by Initialize }
        Data^.Street := 'Sesame Street';
        Data^.City := 'Heaven';
        Data^.Zip := '7777777';
        Data^.Country := 'Spain';
        Data^.StreetNumber := 3;
    Finally
        { Clean up the record contents.
          Again, the structure of the record is detected through
          Run-time Type Information }
        Finalize(Data^);
        FreeMem(Data);
    end;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex118.pp

---

```

{
    This example demonstrates the use of the Initialize and Finalize functions
    used to initialize (and clean up) any RTTI-enabled data not allocated with
    New or Create.
}

{$mode objfpc}
{$h+} // use ansistrings, they need to be initialized.
Type
    PData = ^TData;
    TData = record
        Street, City, Zip, Country, Tel: String;
        StreetNumber : Integer;
    end;

var
    Data: PData;

begin
    // We use the fact that a pointer is also usable as an array.
    GetMem(Data, SizeOf(TData)*2);
    Try
        { Initialize the structure in memory, using Run-Time Type Information }
        Initialize(Data^, 2);
        { Assign some string data to the ansistring contents.
          Note that this only works because the record was zeroed out by Initialize }
        Data[0].Street := 'Sesame Street';
        Data[0].City := 'Heaven';
        Data[0].Zip := '7777777';
        Data[0].Country := 'Spain';
        Data[0].StreetNumber := 3;
        // Second, well known street
        Data[1].Street := 'Wall Street';
        Data[1].City := 'New York';
    End;
end.

```

---

```

    Data[1].Zip:= '10005';
    Data[1].Country:= 'USA';
    Data[1].StreetNumber:=11;
Finally
    { Clean up the record contents.
      Again, the structure of the record is detected through
      Run-time Type Information }
    Finalize(Data^);
    FreeMem(Data);
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.178 InitializeArray

Synopsis: Initialize managed-type elements in array

Declaration: `procedure InitializeArray(p: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitializeArray` initializes managed types in the array pointed to by `p`. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in `typeinfo`.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variable is declared and the array contains elements with managed types.

See also: `FinalizeArray` ([1463](#)), `CopyArray` ([1442](#))

### 75.11.179 InitThread

Synopsis: Initialize a thread

Declaration: `procedure InitThread(stklen: SizeUInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Do not use, this is used internally by the thread manager.

### 75.11.180 InitThreadVars

Synopsis: Initialize threadvars

Declaration: `procedure InitThreadVars(RelocProc: TRelocateThreadVarHandler)`

Visibility: default

Description: This routine should be called when threading is started. It is called by the compiler and should never be called manually, only from a thread manager.

Errors: None.

See also: `TThreadManager` ([1396](#))

**75.11.181 Insert**

Synopsis: Insert one string or dynamic array in another.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(const source: string; var S: string;  
const Index: Integer)  
procedure Insert(const source: DynArrayType; var S: DynArrayType;  
const Index: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts string `Source` in string `S`, at position `Index`, shifting all characters after `Index` to the right. The resulting string is truncated at 255 characters, if needed. (i.e. for shortstrings)

`Index` is a 1-based index. if `Index` is less than 1, the insert of `Source` happens at the start of the string, as if the value 1 was specified.

If the value of `Index` is larger than the length of the string `S`, `Source` is appended to the string `S`.

For dynamic arrays, `Insert` inserts the elements of array `Source` in array `S`, at position `Index`, shifting all elements after `Index` to the right.

`Index` is a 0-based index. if `Index` is less than 0, the insert of `Source` happens at position 0.

If the value of `Index` is larger than the length of the array `S`, `Source` is appended to the array `S`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Delete` ([1445](#)), `Copy` ([1441](#)), `Pos` ([1510](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex33.pp`

**Program** `Example33;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Insert function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`S := 'Free Pascal is difficult to use !';`

`Insert ('NOT ', S, pos('difficult', S));`

`writeln (s);`

**end.**

**75.11.182 Int**

Synopsis: Calculate integer part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function Int(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Int` returns the integer part of any Real `X`, as a Real.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1466](#)), `Round` ([1524](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** Example34;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Int function. }

begin
  Writeln (Int(123.456):0:1); { Prints 123.0 }
  Writeln (Int(-123.456):0:1); { Prints -123.0 }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.183 intdivide(variant,variant):variant

**Synopsis:** Implement div (integer division) operation on variants.

**Declaration:** operator div(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the integer division Div operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opintdivide.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator mod(variant, variant): variant ([1332](#))

### 75.11.184 InterlockedCompareExchange

**Synopsis:** Conditional exchange

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: LongInt;
                                   NewValue: LongInt;
                                   Comperand: LongInt) : LongInt
function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Pointer;
                                   NewValue: Pointer;
                                   Comperand: Pointer) : Pointer
function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Cardinal;
                                   NewValue: Cardinal;
                                   Comperand: Cardinal) : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** InterlockedCompareExchange does an compare-and-exchange operation on the specified values in a thread-safe way. The function compares Target and Comperand and exchanges Target with NewValue if Target and Comperand are equal. It returns the old value of Target. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the Target variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** InterLockedDecrement ([1490](#)), InterLockedIncrement ([1492](#)), InterLockedExchange ([1491](#)), InterLockedExchangeAdd ([1491](#))

**75.11.185 InterlockedCompareExchange64**

**Declaration:** `function InterlockedCompareExchange64 (var Target: Int64;  
   NewValue: Int64; Comperand: Int64)  
   : Int64  
 function InterlockedCompareExchange64 (var Target: QWord;  
   NewValue: QWord; Comperand: QWord)  
   : QWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.186 InterlockedCompareExchangePointer**

Synopsis: Compare pointers in an atomic operation

**Declaration:** `function InterlockedCompareExchangePointer (var Target: Pointer;  
   NewValue: Pointer;  
   Comperand: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InterlockedCompareExchangePointer` compares `Comperand` with `Target`. if they are equal, replaces `Target` with `NewValue`. This is done in a single atomic operation.

See also: `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1489](#))

**75.11.187 InterlockedDecrement**

Synopsis: Thread-safe decrement

**Declaration:** `function InterlockedDecrement (var Target: LongInt) : LongInt  
   function InterlockedDecrement (var Target: Pointer) : Pointer  
   function InterlockedDecrement (var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InterLockedDecrement` decrements `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way. (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedIncrement` ([1492](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1491](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1491](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1489](#))

**75.11.188 InterlockedDecrement64**

**Declaration:** `function InterlockedDecrement64 (var Target: Int64) : Int64  
   function InterlockedDecrement64 (var Target: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.189 InterlockedExchange**

Synopsis: Exchange 2 integers in a thread-safe way

Declaration: `function InterlockedExchange(var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function InterlockedExchange(var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer) : Pointer`  
`function InterlockedExchange(var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterLockedExchange` stores `Source` in `Target` and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedDecrement` ([1490](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1492](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1491](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1489](#))

**75.11.190 InterlockedExchange64**

Declaration: `function InterlockedExchange64(var Target: Int64; Source: Int64) : Int64`  
`function InterlockedExchange64(var Target: QWord; Source: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.191 InterlockedExchangeAdd**

Synopsis: Thread-safe add and exchange of 2 values

Declaration: `function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer) : Pointer`  
`function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterLockedExchangeAdd` adds to `Target` the value of `Source` in a thread-safe way, and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedDecrement` ([1490](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1492](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1491](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1489](#))

**75.11.192 InterlockedExchangeAdd64**

Declaration: `function InterlockedExchangeAdd64(var Target: Int64; Source: Int64) : Int64`  
`function InterlockedExchangeAdd64(var Target: QWord; Source: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.193 InterlockedIncrement**

Synopsis: Thread-safe increment

Declaration: `function InterlockedIncrement (var Target: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function InterlockedIncrement (var Target: Pointer) : Pointer`  
`function InterlockedIncrement (var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterLockedIncrement` increments `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

Errors: None.

See also: `InterLockedDecrement` ([1490](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1491](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1491](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1489](#))

**75.11.194 InterlockedIncrement64**

Declaration: `function InterlockedIncrement64 (var Target: Int64) : Int64`  
`function InterlockedIncrement64 (var Target: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**75.11.195 IOResult**

Synopsis: Return result of last file IO operation

Declaration: `function IOResult : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `IOresult` contains the result of any input/output call, when the `{\${i-}}` compiler directive is active, disabling IO checking. When the flag is read, it is reset to zero. If `IOresult` is zero, the operation completed successfully. If non-zero, an error occurred. The following errors can occur:

dos errors :

**2**File not found.

**3**Path not found.

**4**Too many open files.

**5**Access denied.

**6**Invalid file handle.

**12**Invalid file-access mode.

**15**Invalid disk number.

**16**Cannot remove current directory.

**17**Cannot rename across volumes.

I/O errors :

**100**Error when reading from disk.

**101**Error when writing to disk.

**102**File not assigned.

**103**File not open.

**104**File not opened for input.

**105**File not opened for output.

**106**Invalid number.

Fatal errors :

**150**Disk is write protected.

**151**Unknown device.

**152**Drive not ready.

**153**Unknown command.

**154**CRC check failed.

**155**Invalid drive specified..

**156**Seek error on disk.

**157**Invalid media type.

**158**Sector not found.

**159**Printer out of paper.

**160**Error when writing to device.

**161**Error when reading from device.

**162**Hardware failure.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** ./refex/ex35.pp

**Program** Example35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOResult function. }*

**Var** F : text;

**begin**

Assign (f,paramstr(1));

{ \$i- }

**Reset** (f);

{ \$i+ }

**If** IOresult<>0 **then**

  writeln ('File ',paramstr(1),' doesn't exist')

**else**

  writeln ('File ',paramstr(1),' exists');

**end.**

### 75.11.196 IsDynArrayRectangular

**Synopsis:** Check whether all dimensions have the same size

**Declaration:** function IsDynArrayRectangular(a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsDynArrayRectangular returns True if all dimensions of the dynamic array a with type information typinfo have the same bounds. It returns True if the array is empty.

**See also:** InitializeArray (1487), FinalizeArray (1463), CopyArray (1442), DynArraySize (1450), DynArray-Clear (1449), DynArrayBounds (1448), DynArrayDim (1449)

### 75.11.197 IsMemoryManagerSet

Synopsis: Is the memory manager set

Declaration: `function IsMemoryManagerSet : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsMemoryManagerSet` will return `True` if the memory manager has been set to another value than the system heap manager, it will return `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetMemoryManager` ([1533](#)), `GetMemoryManager` ([1471](#))

### 75.11.198 Is\_IntResource

Synopsis: Check whether a resource is an internal resource

Declaration: `function Is_IntResource(aStr: PChar) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Is_IntResource` returns `True` if the resource type is internal (system predefined) resource or false if it is a user-defined resource type.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.199 KillThread

Synopsis: Kill a running thread

Declaration: `function KillThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `KillThread` causes a running thread to be aborted. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `WaitForThreadTerminate` ([1564](#)), `EndThread` ([1450](#)), `SuspendThread` ([1548](#))

### 75.11.200 LeaveCriticalSection

Synopsis: Leave a critical section

Declaration: `procedure LeaveCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeaveCriticalSection` signals that the current thread is exiting the critical section CS it has entered with `EnterCriticalSection` ([1451](#)).

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` ([1485](#)) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection`.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` ([1485](#)), `DoneCriticalSection` ([1447](#)), `EnterCriticalSection` ([1451](#))

**75.11.201 leftshift(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement binary shl operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator shl(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the shl operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opshiftright.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator shr(variant, variant): variant ([1332](#))

**75.11.202 Length**

Synopsis: Returns length of a string or array.

Declaration: `function &Length(S: AStringType) : SizeInt`  
`function &Length(A: DynArrayType) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Length returns the length of the string or array S, which is limited to 255 for shortstrings. If the string S is empty, 0 is returned.

*Note:* The length of the string S is stored in S[0] for shortstrings only. The Length function should always be used on ansistrings and widestrings.

For dynamic or static arrays, the function returns the number of elements in the array.

Length also supports arguments of type PChar and PWideChar, in which case it is identical to the StrLen and WStrLen functions, respectively. In this case, the function actually calculates the length of the null-terminated string, and its execution time is proportional to the string length because the terminating null character is searched through a linear scan.

Errors: None.

See also: Pos ([1510](#)), SetLength ([1532](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Length function. }*

**type**

    somebytes = **array** [6..10] **of** byte;  
    somewords = **array** [3..10] **of** word;

**Var**

    S : **String**;  
    I : **Integer**;  
    bytes : somebytes;  
    words : somewords;

**begin**

    S:= '';  
    **for** i:=1 **to** 10 **do**

---

```

begin
S:=S+ '* ' ;
Writeln (Length(S):2, ' : ',s);
end;
Writeln ( 'Bytes : ',length(bytes));
Writeln ( 'Words : ',length(words));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.203 lessthan(variant,variant):Boolean

Synopsis: Implement < (less than) operation on variants.

Declaration: operator <(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "less than" comparison (<) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opcmplt.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator >(variant, variant): boolean ([1332](#))

### 75.11.204 lessthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean

Synopsis: Implement <= (less than or equal) operation on variants.

Declaration: operator <=(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "less than or equal" comparison (<=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opcmple.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator <(variant, variant): boolean ([1332](#))

### 75.11.205 LEtoN

Synopsis: Convert Little Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

Declaration: function LEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt  
function LEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word  
function LEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt  
function LEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
function LEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64  
function LEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

Visibility: default

Description: LEToN will rearrange the bytes in a Little-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a little-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a big-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: BEtoN ([1426](#)), NtoBE ([1505](#)), NtoLE ([1505](#))

**75.11.206 Ln**

Synopsis: Calculate logarithm

Declaration: `function Ln(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ln` returns the natural logarithm of the Real parameter X. X must be positive.

Errors: An run-time error will occur when X is negative.

See also: `Exp` ([1458](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex37.pp`

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ln function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Ln(1));      { Prints 0 }
  Writeln (Ln(Exp(1))); { Prints 1 }
end.
```

**75.11.207 Lo**

Synopsis: Return low nibble/byte/word of value.

Declaration: `function Lo(B: Byte) : Byte`  
`function Lo(i: Integer) : Byte`  
`function Lo(w: Word) : Byte`  
`function Lo(l: LongInt) : Word`  
`function Lo(l: DWord) : Word`  
`function Lo(i: Int64) : DWord`  
`function Lo(q: QWord) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lo` returns the high nibble, byte or word or longword from X, depending on the size of X.

Table 75.22:

| Size | Return value        |
|------|---------------------|
| 8    | Byte, low nibble    |
| 16   | Byte, low byte      |
| 32   | Word, low word      |
| 64   | Cardinal, low DWord |

Errors: None.

See also: `Ord` ([1507](#)), `Chr` ([1433](#)), `Hi` ([1477](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex38.pp`

---

```

Program Example38;

{ Program to demonstrate the Lo function. }

Var L : Longint;
      W : Word;
      B : Byte;
begin
  L:=(1 Shl 16) + (1 Shl 4); { $10010 }
  WriteLn (Lo(L));          { Prints 16 }
  W:=(1 Shl 8) + (1 Shl 4); { $110 }
  WriteLn (Lo(W));          { Prints 16 }
  B:=$EF;
  WriteLn (Lo(B));          { Prints 15 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.208 LoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:** `function LoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function LoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in file `Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle` ([1355](#)) is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

**Errors:** On error, `NilHandle` ([1355](#)) is returned.

**See also:** `UnloadLibrary` ([1559](#)), `GetProcAddress` ([1471](#))

### 75.11.209 LoadResource

**Synopsis:** Load a resource for use

**Declaration:** `function LoadResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;`  
`ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : TFPResourceHGLOBAL`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LoadResource` loads a resource identified by `ResHandle` from a module identified by `ModuleHandle` into memory. It returns a handle to the resource.

Loaded resources must be unloaded again using the `FreeResource` ([1468](#)) function.

**Errors:** On error, 0 is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` ([1463](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1540](#)), `LockResource` ([1499](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1559](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#))

**75.11.210 LockResource**

Synopsis: Lock a resource

Declaration: `function LockResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockResource` locks a resource previously loaded by `LoadResource` into memory. This means that any attempt to modify the resource will fail while it is locked. The function returns a pointer to the resource location in memory.

The resource can be freed again using the `UnlockResource` (1559) function.

Errors: if the function fails, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `FindResource` (1463), `FreeResource` (1468), `SizeofResource` (1540), `LoadResource` (1498), `UnlockResource` (1559), `FreeResource` (1468)

**75.11.211 logicaland(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement logical/binary `and` operation on variants

Declaration: `operator and(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the `and` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opand`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator or(variant, variant): variant` (1332), `operator xor(variant, variant): variant` (1332), `operator not(variant): variant` (1332)

**75.11.212 logicalnot(variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement logical/binary `not` operation on variants

Declaration: `operator not(const op: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the `not` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opnot`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator and(variant, variant): variant` (1332), `operator or(variant, variant): variant` (1332), `operator xor(variant, variant): variant` (1332)

**75.11.213 logicalor(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement logical/binary `or` operation on variants

Declaration: `operator or(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the `or` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opor`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `and(variant, variant)`: variant ([1332](#)), operator `xor(variant, variant)`: variant ([1332](#)), operator `not(variant)`: variant ([1332](#))

### 75.11.214 `logicalxor(variant,variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement logical/binary `xor` operation on variants

**Declaration:** `operator xor(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the `xor` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opxor`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `or(variant, variant)`: variant ([1332](#)), operator `and(variant, variant)`: variant ([1332](#)), operator `not(variant)`: variant ([1332](#))

### 75.11.215 `longjmp`

**Synopsis:** Jump to address.

**Declaration:** `procedure longjmp(var S: jmp_buf; value: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LongJump` jumps to the address in the `envjmp_buf`, and restores the registers that were stored in it at the corresponding `SetJump` ([1531](#)) call. In effect, program flow will continue at the `SetJump` call, which will return `value` instead of 0. If a `value` equal to zero is passed, it will be converted to 1 before passing it on. The call will not return, so it must be used with extreme care. This can be used for error recovery, for instance when a segmentation fault occurred.

For an example, see `SetJump` ([1531](#))

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetJump` ([1531](#))

### 75.11.216 `Low`

**Synopsis:** Return lowest index of open array or enumerated

**Declaration:** `function Low(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The return value of `Low` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `Low` returns the lowest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `Low` returns the lowest possible value of it's index.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `Low` returns the lowest element of the array, which is always zero.

4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the lowest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument.

for an example, see High ([1478](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: High ([1478](#)), Ord ([1507](#)), Pred ([1511](#)), Succ ([1548](#))

### 75.11.217 LowerCase

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LowerCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(c: Char) : Char; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`  
`function LowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`function LowerCase(c: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LowerCase` returns the lowercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to lowercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

`LowerCase` does not change the number of characters (or bytes) in an `ansistring`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Uppcase` ([1559](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex73.pp`

---

```
program Example73;

{ Program to demonstrate the Lowercase function. }

var c:char;

begin
  for c:= 'A' to 'Z' do
    write(lowercase(c));
  Writeln;
  Writeln(LowerCase( 'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ' ));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.218 MakeLangID

Synopsis: Create a language ID

**Declaration:** `function MakeLangID(primary: Word; sub: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MakeLangID` creates a language ID from the `primary` and `sub` language IDs.

**75.11.219 MemSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of a memory block.

Declaration: `function MemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `MemSize` returns the size of a memory block on the heap.

Errors: Passing an invalid pointer may lead to run-time errors (access violations).

See also: `GetMem` ([1470](#)), `FreeMem` ([1467](#))

**75.11.220 MkDir**

Synopsis: Create a new directory.

Declaration: `procedure MkDir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure MkDir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure MkDir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Mkdir` creates a new directory `S`.

For an example, see `Rmdir` ([1521](#)).

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` ([1432](#)), `Rmdir` ([1521](#))

**75.11.221 modulus(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement `mod` (modulo) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator mod(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the modulo `Mod` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opModulus`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator div(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

**75.11.222 Move**

Synopsis: Move data from one location in memory to another

Declaration: `procedure Move(const source; var dest; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Move` moves `Count` bytes from `Source` to `Dest`.

**Errors:** If either `Dest` or `Source` is outside the accessible memory for the process, then a run-time error will be generated.

See also: [Fillword \(1462\)](#), [Fillchar \(1461\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Move function. }*

**Var** S1,S2 : **String** [30];

**begin**

S1:= 'Hello World !';

S2:= 'Bye, bye !';

**Move** (S1,S2,**Sizeof**(S1));

**Writeln** (S2);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.223 MoveChar0

**Synopsis:** Move data till first zero character

**Declaration:** `procedure MoveChar0(const buf1; var buf2; len: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MoveChar0` moves `Count` bytes from `buf1` to `buf2`, and stops moving if a zero character is found.

**Errors:** No checking is done to see if `Count` stays within the memory allocated to the process.

See also: [Move \(1502\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex109.pp

---

**Program** Example109;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MoveChar0 function. }*

**Var**

Buf1,Buf2 : **Array**[1..80] **of** char;

I : longint;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**For** I:=**low**(buf1) **to** **high**(buf1) **do**

Buf1[I]:= **chr**(**Random**(16)+**Ord**( 'A' ));

**Writeln** ( 'Original buffer' );

**writeln** (Buf1);

Buf1 [**Random**(80)+1]:= #0;

`MoveChar0` (Buf1 ,Buf2 ,80);

**Writeln** ( 'Randomly zero-terminated Buffer' );

**Writeln** (Buf2);

**end.**

---

**75.11.224 multiply(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement multiplication ( `*` ) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator *(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the multiplication `*` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opMultiply`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `/(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

**75.11.225 negative(variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement `-` (unary minus, negation) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator -(const op: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the unary minus `-` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `varNeg`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `-(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

**75.11.226 New**

Synopsis: Dynamically allocate memory for variable

Declaration: `procedure &New(var P: Pointer)`  
`procedure &New(var P: Pointer; Cons: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `New` allocates a new instance of the type pointed to by `P`, and puts the address in `P`. If `P` is an object, then it is possible to specify the name of the constructor with which the instance will be created.

The newly allocated memory is not initialized in any way, and may contain garbage data. It must be cleared with a call to `FillChar` ([1461](#)) or `FillWord` ([1462](#)).

For an example, see `Dispose` ([1446](#)).

Errors: What happens if no more memory is available, depends on the value of the variable `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapfails` ([1413](#)): if the variable is `True` then `Nil` is returned. If the variable is `False`, a run-time error is generated.

See also: `Dispose` ([1446](#)), `Freemem` ([1467](#)), `Getmem` ([1470](#)), `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapfails` ([1413](#))

**75.11.227 NtoBE**

Synopsis: Convert Native-ordered integer to a Big Endian-ordered integer

Declaration: `function NtoBE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `NtoBE` will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the Big-Endian order. That is, for a Little-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: `BEtoN` ([1426](#)), `LEtoN` ([1496](#)), `NtoLE` ([1505](#))

**75.11.228 NtoLE**

Synopsis: Convert Native-ordered integer to a Little Endian-ordered integer

Declaration: `function NtoLE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `NtoLE` will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the little-Endian order. That is, for a Big-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a Little-Endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: `BEtoN` ([1426](#)), `LEtoN` ([1496](#)), `NtoBE` ([1505](#))

**75.11.229 Null**

Synopsis: Null variant

Declaration: `function Null : Variant`

Visibility: default

**75.11.230 OctStr**

Synopsis: Convert integer to a string with octal representation.

Declaration: `function OctStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `OctStr` returns a string with the octal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters.

Errors: None.

See also: Str ([1543](#)), Val ([1562](#)), BinStr ([1426](#)), HexStr ([1477](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex112.pp

---

```

Program example112;

  { Program to demonstrate the OctStr function }

  Const Value = 45678;

  Var I : longint;

  begin
    For I:=1 to 10 do
      Writeln (OctStr(Value,I));
    For I:=1 to 16 do
      Writeln (OctStr(I,3));
  end.

```

---

### 75.11.231 Odd

Synopsis: Is a value odd or even ?

**Declaration:** function Odd(l: LongInt) : Boolean  
 function Odd(l: LongWord) : Boolean  
 function Odd(l: Int64) : Boolean  
 function Odd(l: QWord) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** Odd returns True if X is odd, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Abs ([1414](#)), Ord ([1507](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex43.pp

---

```

Program Example43;

  { Program to demonstrate the Odd function. }

  begin
    If Odd(1) Then
      Writeln ('Everything OK with 1 !');
    If Not Odd(2) Then
      Writeln ('Everything OK with 2 !');
  end.

```

---

### 75.11.232 Ofs

Synopsis: Return offset of a variable.

**Declaration:** function Ofs(var X) : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: `Ofs` returns the offset of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always the complete address of the variable, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1447](#)), `CSeg` ([1442](#)), `Seg` ([1530](#)), `Ptr` ([1512](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex44.pp`

---

**Program** `Example44`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ofs function. }*

**Var** `W : Pointer`;

**begin**

`W:=Pointer(Ofs(W)); { W contains its own offset. }`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.233 Ord

Synopsis: Return ordinal value of an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Ord(X: TOrdinal) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ord` returns the Ordinal value of a ordinal-type variable `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `ord` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on non-integer ordinal types. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `ord` mostly obsolete. However `ord` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: `Chr` ([1433](#)), `Succ` ([1548](#)), `Pred` ([1511](#)), `High` ([1478](#)), `Low` ([1500](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ord, Pred, Succ functions. }*

**Type**

`TEnum = (Zero, One, Two, Three, Four);`

**Var**

`X : Longint`;

`Y : TEnum`;

**begin**

`X:=125;`

---

```

Writeln (Ord(X)); { Prints 125 }
X:=Pred(X);
Writeln (Ord(X)); { prints 124 }
Y:= One;
Writeln (Ord(y)); { Prints 1 }
Y:=Succ(Y);
Writeln (Ord(Y)); { Prints 2}
end.

```

---

### 75.11.234 Pack

Synopsis: Create packed array from normal array

Declaration: `procedure Pack(const A: UnpackedArrayType; StartIndex: TIndexType; out Z: PackedArrayType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pack` will copy the elements of an unpacked array (A) to a packed array (Z). It will start the copy at the index denoted by `StartIndex`. The type of the index variable `StartIndex` must match the type of the index of A. The elements are always transferred to the beginning of the packed array Z. (i.e. it starts at `Low(Z)`).

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays A and Z must match.

See also: `unpack` ([1559](#))

### 75.11.235 ParamCount

Synopsis: Return number of command-line parameters passed to the program.

Declaration: `function ParamCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Paramcount` returns the number of command-line arguments. If no arguments were given to the running program, 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Paramstr` ([1509](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** Example46;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the ParamCount and ParamStr functions. }
Var
  I : Longint;

begin
  Writeln (paramstr(0), ' : Got ', ParamCount, ' command-line parameters: ');
  For i:=1 to ParamCount do
    Writeln (ParamStr (i));
end.

```

---

**75.11.236 ParamStr**

Synopsis: Return value of a command-line argument.

Declaration: `function ParamStr(L: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParamStr` returns the `L`-th command-line argument. `L` must be between 0 and `Paramcount`, these values included. The zeroth argument is the path and file name with which the program was started.

The command-line parameters will be truncated to a length of 255, even though the operating system may support bigger command-lines. The `Objpas` unit (used in `objfpc` or `delphi` mode) defines versions of `ParamStr` which return the full-length command-line arguments, using `ansistrings`.

In the interest of portability, the `ParamStr` function tries to behave the same on all operating systems: like the original `ParamStr` function in Turbo Pascal. This means even on Unix, `paramstr(0)` returns the full path to the program executable. A notable exception is Mac OS X, where the returned value depends on how the application was started. It may be that just the name of the application is returned (in case of a command-line launch), so it is best to avoid using it on that platform.

In general, it's a bad idea to rely on the location of the binary. Often, this goes against best OS practices. Configuration data should (or can) not be stored next to the binary, but on designated locations. What locations these are, is very much operating system dependent. Therefore, `ParamStr(0)` should be used with care.

For an example, see `Paramcount` ([1508](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Paramcount` ([1508](#))

**75.11.237 Pi**

Synopsis: Return the value of PI.

Declaration: `function Pi : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pi` returns the value of Pi (3.1415926535897932385).

Errors: None.

See also: `Cos` ([1442](#)), `Sin` ([1539](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pi function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Pi);           {3.1415926}
  Writeln (Sin(Pi));
end.
```

---

**75.11.238 PopCnt**

Synopsis: Count number of set bits

Declaration: function PopCnt(const AValue: Byte) : Byte  
 function PopCnt(const AValue: Word) : Word  
 function PopCnt(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
 function PopCnt(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

Visibility: default

Description: PopCnt (population count) counts the number of set bits in AValue.

**75.11.239 Pos**

Synopsis: Search for substring in a string.

Declaration: function Pos(const substr: shortstring; const s: shortstring;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(C: Char; const s: shortstring; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const Substr: ShortString; const Source: RawByteString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const substr: shortstring; c: Char; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const Substr: RawByteString; const Source: RawByteString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: AnsiChar; const s: RawByteString; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const Substr: UnicodeString; const Source: UnicodeString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: Char; const s: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: UnicodeChar; const s: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: RawByteString; const s: UnicodeString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: UnicodeString; const s: RawByteString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: ShortString; const s: UnicodeString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const Substr: WideString; const Source: WideString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: Char; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: WideChar; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: WideChar; const s: RawByteString; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: RawByteString; const s: WideString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: WideString; const s: RawByteString;  
                           Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const c: ShortString; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt)  
                           : SizeInt  
 function Pos(c: Char; const v: Variant) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(s: ShortString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt  
 function Pos(const a: AnsiString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt

```

function Pos(const w: WideString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const w: UnicodeString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const c: Char) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const s: ShortString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const a: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const w: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const w: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v1: Variant; const v2: Variant) : SizeInt

```

Visibility: default

Description: Pos returns the index of Substr in S, if S contains Substr. In case Substr isn't found, 0 is returned. The search is case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: Length ([1495](#)), Copy ([1441](#)), Delete ([1445](#)), Insert ([1488](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pos function. }*

**Var**

S : **String**;

**begin**

S:= 'The first space in this sentence is at position : ';

**Writeln** (S, **pos**(' ', S));

S:= 'The last letter of the alphabet doesn't appear in this sentence ';

**If** (**Pos** ('Z', S)=0) **and** (**Pos** ('z', S)=0) **then**

**Writeln** (S);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.240 power(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement power (\*\*) operation on variants.

Declaration: operator **\*\***(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the power \*\* operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opPower.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator \*(variant, variant): variant ([1332](#))

### 75.11.241 Pred

Synopsis: Return previous element for an ordinal type.

Declaration: function **Pred**(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal

Visibility: default

Description: `Pred` returns the element that precedes the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the first value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`{ $R+ }`), then a run-time error will be generated.

For an example, see `Ord` (1507)

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` (1507), `Succ` (1548), `High` (1478), `Low` (1500)

### 75.11.242 Prefetch

Synopsis: Prefetch a memory location

Declaration: `procedure Prefetch(const mem)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Prefetch` can be used to optimize the CPU behaviour by already loading a memory location. It is mainly used as a hint for those processors that support it.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.243 Ptr

Synopsis: Combine segment and offset to pointer

Declaration: `function Ptr(sel: LongInt; off: LongInt) : FarPointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ptr` returns a pointer, pointing to the address specified by segment `Sel` and offset `Off`.

#### Remark

1. In the 32/64-bit flat-memory model supported by Free Pascal, this function is obsolete.
2. The returned address is simply the offset.

Errors: None.

See also: `Addr` (1416)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex59.pp`

**Program** Example59;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ptr (compatibility) function. }*

**type** pString = ^String;

**Var** P : pString;  
S : String;

**begin**

S:= 'Hello , World !';  
P:= pString (Ptr (Seg(S) , Longint (Ofs(S))));  
*{ P now points to S ! }*  
Writeln (P^);

**end.**

**75.11.244 RaiseList**

Synopsis: List of currently raised exceptions.

Declaration: `function RaiseList : PExceptObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `RaiseList` returns a pointer to the list of currently raised exceptions (i.e. a pointer to the first exception block).

**75.11.245 Random**

Synopsis: Generate random number

Declaration: `function Random(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Random(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Random : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Random` returns a random number larger or equal to 0 and strictly less than L. For negative values of L the behaviour is undefined. If the argument L is omitted, a Real number between 0 and 1 is returned (0 included, 1 excluded).

**Remark** The Free Pascal implementation of the `Random` routine uses a Mersenne Twister algorithm to simulate randomness. This implementation has a better statistical distribution than for example a Linear Congruential generator algorithm, but is considerably slower than the latter. If speed is an issue, then alternate random number generators should be considered.

Note that the fact that a Mersenne Twister is used is an implementation detail, which can be changed at any point. The only guarantee `Random()` offers is that setting `randseed` to particular value will result in the same sequence of random numbers in a particular version the RTL. A newer version of the RTL may result in a different sequence for the same `randseed`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Randomize \(1514\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Random and Randomize functions. }*

**Var** `I, Count, guess : Longint;`  
`R : Real;`

**begin**

`Randomize; { This way we generate a new sequence every time`  
`the program is run }`

`Count:=0;`

`For i:=1 to 1000 do`

`If Random>0.5 then inc(Count);`

`WriteLn ('Generated ',Count,' numbers > 0.5');`

`WriteLn ('out of 1000 generated numbers.');`

`count:=0;`

`For i:=1 to 5 do`

`begin`

`write ('Guess a number between 1 and 5 : ');`

---

```

    readln(Guess);
    If Guess=Random(5)+1 then inc(count);
    end;
    Writeln ('You guessed ',Count,' out of 5 correct. ');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.246 Randomize

Synopsis: Initialize random number generator

Declaration: `procedure Randomize`

Visibility: default

Description: `Randomize` initializes the random number generator of Free Pascal, by giving a value to `Randseed`, calculated with the system clock.

For an example, see `Random` ([1513](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Random` ([1513](#))

### 75.11.247 Read

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable

Declaration: `procedure Read(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure Read(Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc.; If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String`. If `F` is a typed file, then each of the variables must be of the type specified in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed as an argument.

In earlier versions of FPC, it was also allowed to read `Pchar` null-terminated strings, but this has been removed, since there is no buffer checking possible.

Errors: If no data is available, empty values are returned (0 for ordinal values, empty strings for string values)

See also: `Readln` ([1515](#)), `Blockread` ([1427](#)), `Write` ([1566](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1428](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** `Example50`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Read(Ln) function. }*

```

Var S : String;
    C : Char;
    F : File of char;

```

```

begin
    Assign (F, 'ex50.pp');
    Reset (F);

```

---

```

C:= 'A';
Writeln ('The characters before the first space in ex50.pp are : ');
While not Eof(f) and (C<>' ') do
  Begin
    Read (F,C);
    Write (C);
  end;
Writeln;
Close (F);
Writeln ('Type some words. An empty line ends the program. ');
repeat
  Readln (S);
until S='';
end.

```

---

### 75.11.248 ReadBarrier

Synopsis: Memory Read Barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads before the instruction will be finished before this instruction, before memory reads after the instruction occur.

See also: `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1515](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1516](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1567](#))

### 75.11.249 ReadDependencyBarrier

Synopsis: Memory Read Dependency Barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadDependencyBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDependencyBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads (loads) depending on previous loads are separate from the ones following the instruction.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1515](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1516](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1567](#))

### 75.11.250 ReadLn

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable and goto next line

Declaration: `procedure ReadLn(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure ReadLn(Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc. After that it goes to the next line in the file. The end of the line is marked by any of the supported line ending styles, independent of the platform on which the code is running (supported line ending styles are CRLF, LF or CR). The end-of-line marker is not considered part of the line and is ignored.

If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. The variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String` or `PChar`.

For an example, see `Read` (1514).

**Errors:** If no data is available, empty values are returned (0 for ordinal values, empty strings for string values)

See also: `Read` (1514), `Blockread` (1427), `Write` (1566), `Blockwrite` (1428)

### 75.11.251 ReadStr

**Synopsis:** Read variables from a string

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadStr(const S: string; Args: Arguments)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReadStr` behaves like `Read` (1514), except that it reads its input from the string variable `S` instead of a file. Semantically, the `ReadStr` call is equivalent to writing the string to a file using the `Write` call, and then reading them into the various arguments `Arg` using the `Read` call from the same file:

```
var
  F : Text;
begin
  Rewrite(F);
  Write(F, S);
  Close(F);
  Reset(F);
  Read(F, Args);
  Close(F);
end;
```

Obviously, the `ReadStr` call does not use a temporary file.

`ReadStr` is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the behaviour of the arguments can be found in the description of `Read` (1514).

See also: `Read` (1514), `WriteStr` (1568), `Write` (1566)

### 75.11.252 ReadWriteBarrier

**Synopsis:** Memory read/write barrier

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadWriteBarrier`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReadWriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read/write barrier in the CPU: both read (Loads) and write (stores) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` (1515), `ReadDependencyBarrier` (1515), `WriteBarrier` (1567)

**75.11.253 Real2Double**

Synopsis: Convert Turbo Pascal style real to double.

Declaration: `function Real2Double(r: Real48) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Real2Double` function converts a Turbo Pascal style real (6 bytes long) to a native Free Pascal double type. It can be used e.g. to read old binary TP files with FPC and convert them to Free Pascal binary files.

Note that the assignment operator has been overloaded so a `Real48` type can be assigned directly to a double or extended.

Errors: None.

Listing: `./refex/ex110.pp`

---

```

program Example110;

{ Program to demonstrate the Real2Double function. }

Var
  i : integer;
  R : Real48;
  D : Double;
  E : Extended;
  F : File of Real48;

begin
  Assign(F, 'reals.dat');
  Reset(f);
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Read(F,R);
      D:=Real2Double(R);
      WriteLn( 'Real ',i, ' : ',D);
      D:=R;
      WriteLn( 'Real (direct to double) ',i, ' : ',D);
      E:=R;
      WriteLn( 'Real (direct to Extended) ',i, ' : ',E);
    end;
  Close(f);
end.
```

---

**75.11.254 ReAllocMem**

Synopsis: Re-allocate memory on the heap

Declaration: `function ReAllocMem(var p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMem` resizes the memory pointed to by `P` so it has size `Size`. The value of `P` may change during this operation. The contents of the memory pointed to by `P` (if any) will be copied to the new location, but may be truncated if the newly allocated memory block is smaller in size. If a larger block is allocated, only the used memory is initialized, extra memory will not be zeroed out.

Note that `P` may be `nil`, in that case the behaviour of `ReAllocMem` is equivalent to `Getmem`.

See also: [GetMem \(1470\)](#), [FreeMem \(1467\)](#)

### 75.11.255 ReAllocMemory

Synopsis: Alias for [ReAllocMem \(1517\)](#)

Declaration: `function ReAllocMemory(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMemory` is an alias for [ReAllocMem \(1517\)](#).

See also: [ReAllocMem \(1517\)](#)

### 75.11.256 ReleaseExceptionObject

Synopsis: Decrease the reference count of the current exception object.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseExceptionObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReleaseExceptionObject` decreases the reference count of the current exception object. This should be called whenever a reference to the exception object was obtained via the `AcquireExceptionObject` ([1415](#)) call.

Calling this method is only valid within an `except` block.

Errors: If there is no current exception object, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: [AcquireExceptionObject \(1415\)](#)

### 75.11.257 Rename

Synopsis: Rename file on disk

Declaration: `procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: ShortString)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: shortstring)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the assigned file `F` to `S`. `F` must be assigned, but not opened.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: [Erase \(1454\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** Example77;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Rename function. }
Var F : Text;

begin
    Assign (F,paramstr(1));
    Rename (F,paramstr(2));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.258 Reset

Synopsis: Open file for reading

**Declaration:** `procedure Reset(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: File)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Reset(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Reset` opens a file `F` for reading. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is a text file, or refers to standard I/O (e.g. `”) then it is opened read-only, otherwise it is opened using the mode specified in filemode (1341).`

If `F` is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter `L`. A default value of 128 is used.

File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Reset`.

Note that the path can be only 255 characters long.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Rewrite` (1520), `Assign` (1419), `Close` (1433), `Append` (1417), `FileMode` (1341)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** Example51;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Reset function. }

Function FileExists (Name : String) : boolean;

Var F : File;

begin
    { $i- }
    Assign (F,Name);
    Reset (F);
    { $!+ }
    FileExists := (IOResult=0) and (Name<>' ');
    if FileExists then
        Close (f);
end;

begin
```

---

```

If FileExists (Paramstr(1)) then
  WriteLn ('File found')
else
  WriteLn ('File NOT found');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.259 ResumeThread

Synopsis: Resume a suspended thread.

Declaration: `function ResumeThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResumeThread` causes a suspended thread (using `SuspendThread` (1548)) to resume its execution. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `SuspendThread` (1548), `KillThread` (1494)

### 75.11.260 Rewrite

Synopsis: Open file for writing

Declaration: `procedure Rewrite(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: File)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rewrite` opens a file `F` for writing. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is an untyped or typed file, then it is opened for reading and writing. If `F` is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter `L`. Default a value of 128 is used. if `Rewrite` finds a file with the same name as `F`, this file is truncated to length 0. If it doesn't find such a file, a new file is created.

Contrary to Turbo Pascal, Free Pascal opens the file with mode `fmoutput`. If it should be opened in `fminout` mode, an extra call to `Reset` (1519) is needed.

File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Rewrite`.

Note that the path can be only 255 characters long.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Reset` (1519), `Assign` (1419), `Close` (1433), `Flush` (1465), `Append` (1417)

Listing: `./refex/ex52.pp`

---

Program Example52;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Rewrite function. }*

```

Var F : File;
    l : longint;

```

---

```

begin
  Assign (F, 'Test.tmp');
  { Create the file. Recordsize is 4 }
  Rewrite (F, Sizeof(l));
  For l:=1 to 10 do
    BlockWrite (F, l, 1);
  close (f);
  { F contains now a binary representation of
    10 longints going from 1 to 10 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.261 rightshift(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement binary shr operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator shr(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the shr operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation opshiftright.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator shl(variant, variant): variant ([1332](#))

### 75.11.262 RmDir

Synopsis: Remove directory when empty.

Declaration: `procedure RmDir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure RmDir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure RmDir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Rmdir removes the directory S.

Errors: Depending on the state of the {\$I} switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the {\$I-} state, use IOResult to check for errors.

See also: Chdir ([1432](#)), Mkdir ([1502](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mkdir and Rmdir functions. }*

**Const** D : **String**[8] = 'TEST.DIR';

**Var** S : **String**;

```

begin
  Writeln ('Making directory ',D);
  Mkdir (D);

```

---

```

Writeln ('Changing directory to ',D);
ChDir (D);
GetDir (0,S);
Writeln ('Current Directory is : ',S);
WRiteln ('Going back');
ChDir ('..');
Writeln ('Removing directory ',D);
Rmdir (D);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.263 RolByte

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a byte value to the left

**Declaration:** `function RolByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function RolByte(const AValue: Byte; const Dist: Byte) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RolByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `RorByte` ([1523](#)), `RolWord` ([1523](#)), `RolDWord` ([1522](#)), `RolQWord` ([1522](#))

### 75.11.264 RolDWord

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the left

**Declaration:** `function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord; const Dist: Byte) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RolDWord` rotates the bits of the DWord (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1522](#)), `RolWord` ([1523](#)), `RorDWord` ([1523](#)), `RolQWord` ([1522](#))

### 75.11.265 RolQWord

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a QWord (64-bit) value to the left

**Declaration:** `function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord; const Dist: Byte) : QWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the QWord (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1522](#)), `RolWord` ([1523](#)), `RolDWord` ([1522](#)), `RorQWord` ([1523](#))

**75.11.266 RolWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a word value to the left

Declaration: `function RolWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RolWord(const AValue: Word; const Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `RolWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1522](#)), `RorWord` ([1524](#)), `RolDWord` ([1522](#)), `RolQWord` ([1522](#))

**75.11.267 RorByte**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a byte value to the right

Declaration: `function RorByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function RorByte(const AValue: Byte; const Dist: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1522](#)), `RorWord` ([1524](#)), `RorDWord` ([1523](#)), `RorQWord` ([1523](#))

**75.11.268 RorDWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord; const Dist: Byte) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorDWord` rotates the bits of the DWord (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` ([1523](#)), `RolDWord` ([1522](#)), `RorWord` ([1524](#)), `RorQWord` ([1523](#))

**75.11.269 RorQWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a QWord (64-bit) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord; const Dist: Byte) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the QWord (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: [RorByte \(1523\)](#), [RorWord \(1524\)](#), [RorDWord \(1523\)](#), [RolQWord \(1522\)](#)

### 75.11.270 RorWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a word value to the right

Declaration: `function RorWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RorWord(const AValue: Word; const Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: [RorByte \(1523\)](#), [RolWord \(1523\)](#), [RorDWord \(1523\)](#), [RorQWord \(1523\)](#)

### 75.11.271 Round

Synopsis: Round floating point value to nearest integer number.

Declaration: `function Round(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Round` rounds `X` to the closest integer, which may be bigger or smaller than `X`.

In the case of .5, the algorithm uses "banker's rounding": .5 values are always rounded towards the even number.

Errors: None.

See also: [Frac \(1466\)](#), [Int \(1488\)](#), [Trunc \(1554\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Round function. }*

**begin**

```

Writeln (Round(1234.56)); { Prints 1235 }
Writeln (Round(-1234.56)); { Prints -1235 }
Writeln (Round(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
Writeln (Round(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
Writeln (Round(2.5)); { Prints 2 (down) }
Writeln (Round(3.5)); { Prints 4 (up) }

```

**end.**

---

### 75.11.272 RTLEventCreate

Synopsis: Create a new RTL event

Declaration: `function RTLEventCreate : PRTLEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventCreate` creates and initializes a new RTL event. RTL events are used to notify other threads that a certain condition is met, and to notify other threads of condition changes (conditional variables).

The function returns an initialized RTL event, which must be disposed of with `RTLEventdestroy` ([1525](#))

`RTLEvent` is used mainly for the `synchronize` method.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventReSetEvent` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1526](#))

### 75.11.273 RTLEventDestroy

Synopsis: Destroy a RTL Event

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventDestroy(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventdestroy` destroys the RTL event `State`. After a call to `RTLeventdestroy`, the `State` RTL event may no longer be used.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1525](#))

### 75.11.274 RTLEventResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset an event

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventResetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventResetEvent` resets the event: this should be used to undo the signaled state of an event. Resetting an event that is not set (or was already reset) has no effect.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1526](#))

### 75.11.275 RTLEventSetEvent

Synopsis: Notify threads of the event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventSetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventSetEvent` notifies other threads which are listening, that the event has occurred.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1525](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1526](#))

**75.11.276 RTLEventWaitFor**

Synopsis: Wait for an event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent)`  
`procedure RTLEventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventWaitFor` suspends the thread till the event occurs. The event will occur when another thread calls `RTLEventSetEvent` (1525) on `State`.

By default, the thread will be suspended indefinitely. However, if `TimeOut` is specified, then the thread will resume after timeout milliseconds have elapsed.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` (1525), `RTLEventDestroy` (1525), `RTLEventSetEvent` (1525), `RTLEventWaitFor` (1526)

**75.11.277 RunError**

Synopsis: Generate a run-time error.

Declaration: `procedure RunError(w: Word)`  
`procedure RunError`

Visibility: default

Description: `RunError` stops the execution of the program, and generates a run-time error `ErrorCode`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` (1456), `Halt` (1476)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the RunError function. }*

**begin**

*{ The program will stop and emit a run-error 106 }*

**RunError** (106);

**end.**

---

**75.11.278 SafeLoadLibrary**

Synopsis: Load a library safely

Declaration: `function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

Visibility: default

Description: `SafeLoadLibrary` calls `LoadLibrary` (1498) but restores the current FPU control word and exception mask to their current value after the library was loaded, thus preventing the loaded library initialization code from modifying their current values.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (1498)

**75.11.279 SarInt64**

Synopsis: 64-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarInt64(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function SarInt64(const AValue: Int64; Shift: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarInt64` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on a 64-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortInt` ([1527](#)), `SarSmallInt` ([1527](#)), `SarLongInt` ([1527](#))

**75.11.280 SarLongint**

Synopsis: 32-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarLongint(const AValue: LongInt; const Shift: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarLongint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on a 32-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortInt` ([1527](#)), `SarSmallInt` ([1527](#)), `SarInt64` ([1527](#))

**75.11.281 SarShortint**

Synopsis: 8-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarShortint(const AValue: ShortInt; const Shift: Byte)`  
`: ShortInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarShortint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on an 8-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarSmallint` ([1527](#)), `SarLongint` ([1527](#)), `SarInt64` ([1527](#))

**75.11.282 SarSmallint**

Synopsis: 16-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarSmallint(const AValue: SmallInt; const Shift: Byte)`  
`: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarSmallint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on an 16-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortint` ([1527](#)), `SarLongint` ([1527](#)), `SarInt64` ([1527](#))

**75.11.283 Seek**

Synopsis: Set file position

Declaration: `procedure Seek (var f: File; Pos: Int64)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the file-pointer for file `F` to record `Nr. Count`. The first record in a file has `Count=0`. `F` can be any file type, except `Text`. If `F` is an untyped file, with no record size specified in `Reset` (1519) or `Rewrite` (1520), 128 is assumed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` (1452), `SeekEof` (1528), `SeekEoln` (1529)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex56.pp`

**Program** `Example56`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Seek function. }*

**Var**

`F : File;`  
`I, j : longint;`

**begin**

*{ Create a file and fill it with data }*

`Assign (F, 'test.tmp');`

`Rewrite(F); { Create file }`

`Close(f);`

`FileMode:=2;`

`ReSet (F, Sizeof(i)); { Opened read/write }`

**For** `I:=0 to 10 do`

`BlockWrite (F,I,1);`

*{ Go Back to the beginning of the file }*

`Seek(F,0);`

**For** `I:=0 to 10 do`

**begin**

`BlockRead (F,J,1);`

**If** `J<>I then`

`Writeln ('Error: expected ', i, ', got ', j);`

**end;**

`Close (f);`

**end.**

**75.11.284 SeekEOF**

Synopsis: Set file position to end of file

Declaration: `function SeekEOF (var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekEof` returns `True` if the file-pointer is at the end of the file. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-file marker is reached.

If the end-of-file marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned.

If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

**Remark** The `SeekEOF` function can only be used on real textfiles: when assigning the file to other kinds of (virtual) text files, the function may fail, although it will perform a number of tests to guard against wrong usage.

**Errors:** A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1452](#)), `SeekEoln` ([1529](#)), `Seek` ([1528](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEof function. }
Var C : Char;

begin
  { this will print all characters from standard input except
    Whitespace characters. }
  While Not SeekEof do
    begin
      Read (C);
      Write (C);
    end;
end.
```

---

### 75.11.285 SeekEOLn

**Synopsis:** Set file position to end of line

**Declaration:** `function SeekEOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOLn : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SeekEoln` returns `True` if the file-pointer is at the end of the current line. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-line marker is reached. If the end-of-line marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned. The end-of-line marker is defined as `#10`, the `LineFeed` character. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

**Errors:** A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1452](#)), `SeekEof` ([1528](#)), `Seek` ([1528](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `Example58`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEoln function. }
Var
  C : Char;

begin
  { This will read the first line of standard output and print
    all characters except whitespace. }
```

---

```

While not SeekEoln do
  Begin
    Read (c);
    Write (c);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.286 Seg

Synopsis: Return segment

Declaration: `function Seg(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seg` returns the segment of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always 0, since Free Pascal uses a flat 32/64 bit memory model. In such a memory model segments have no meaning.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1447](#)), `CSeg` ([1442](#)), `Ofs` ([1506](#)), `Ptr` ([1512](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Seg function. }
Var
  W : Word;

begin
  W:=Seg(W); { W contains its own Segment}
end.

```

---

### 75.11.287 Set8087CW

Declaration: `procedure Set8087CW(cw: Word)`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.288 SetCodePage

Synopsis: Set the codepage of a string

Declaration: `procedure SetCodePage(var s: RawByteString; CodePage: TSystemCodePage; Convert: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCodePage` sets the codepage of a string `S` to `CodePage`. If `Convert` is `True` then the string will be transcoded to the new codepage. The resulting string will have reference count 1.

See also: `StringCodePage` ([1544](#))

**75.11.289 SetDynLibsManager**

Synopsis: Set a new handler for dynamic library support

Declaration: `procedure SetDynLibsManager(const &New: TDynLibsManager)`  
`procedure SetDynLibsManager(const &New: TDynLibsManager;`  
`var Old: TDynLibsManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDynLibsManager` sets the handler for dynamic library support to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active handler in `Old`.

This is the routine used by the `#rtl.dynlibs` (710) unit to set the default handler.

See also: `#rtl.dynlibs` (710), `GetDynLibsManager` (1469)

**75.11.290 Setjmp**

Synopsis: Save current execution point.

Declaration: `function Setjmp(var S: jmp_buf) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJmp` fills `env` with the necessary data for a jump back to the point where it was called. It returns zero if called in this way. If the function returns nonzero, then it means that a call to `LongJump` (1500) with `env` as an argument was made somewhere in the program.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongJump` (1500)

Listing: `./refex/ex79.pp`

---

```
program example79;

{ Program to demonstrate the setjmp, longjmp functions }

procedure dojmp(var env : jmp_buf; value : longint);

begin
  value:=2;
  Writeln ('Going to jump !');
  { This will return to the setjmp call,
    and return value instead of 0 }
  longjmp(env,value);
end;

var env : jmp_buf;

begin
  if setjmp(env)=0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Passed first time. ');
      dojmp(env,2);
    end
  else
    writeln ('Passed second time. ');
end.
```

---

**75.11.291 SetLength**

Synopsis: Set length of a string or dynamic array.

Declaration: `procedure &SetLength(var S: AStringType; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure &SetLength(var A: DynArrayType; Len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLength` for strings sets the length of the string `S` to `Len`. `S` can be an ansistring, a short string or a widestring. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255. For `AnsiStrings` it can have any value. For `AnsiString` strings, `SetLength` **must** be used to set the length of the string.

In the case of a dynamic array `A`, `SetLength` sets the number of elements. The elements are numbered from index 0, so the count runs from 0 to `Len-1`. If Zero is specified, the array is cleared and removed from memory.

In case the length is set to a smaller length than the current one, the elements 0-(`Len-1`) (or characters 1-`Len` in case of a string) are kept. The elements that fall outside the new length are finalized if the array element is a managed type.

In case the length is set to a larger length than the current one, the new elements are zeroed out for a dynamic array. For a string, the string is zero-terminated at the correct length.

Note that `SetLength` is governed by the Copy-On-Write principle for strings and dynamic arrays: the reference count after a call to `SetLength` will be 1 (except when the length is zero, then the array is removed from memory).

For multi-dimensional arrays, `SetLength` can be used to specify all dimensions at once:

```
Var
  arr : Array of Array of Integer;

begin
  SetLength(arr, 10, 20);
end;
```

This will create a dynamic array with 10 elements, where each element in itself is a dynamic array of 20 elements. `SetLength` will of course always create "rectangular" arrays: all elements will have the same size.

```
Var
  arr : Array of Integer;

begin
  SetLength(arr, 0);
end;
```

After this, `arr` is `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Length` ([1495](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex85.pp`

**Program** `Example85;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SetLength function. }
```

---

```

Var S : String;

begin
  Setlength(S,100);
  FillChar(S[1],100,#32);
  WriteLn ('"',S,'"');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.292 SetMemoryManager

Synopsis: Set a memory manager

Declaration: `procedure SetMemoryManager(const MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMemoryManager` sets the current memory manager record to `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMemoryManager` ([1471](#)), `IsMemoryManagerSet` ([1494](#))

### 75.11.293 SetMultiByteConversionCodePage

Synopsis: Set codepage for conversions from multi-byte strings to single-byte strings

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteConversionCodePage(CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` sets `DefaultSystemCodePage` ([1411](#)) to `CodePage`.

The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate multi-byte (UTF-16) strings to single-byte codepage-aware strings changes, and code page conversions will be done to the new codepage.

Do not set `DefaultSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

When the `DefaultSystemCodePage` ([1411](#)) changes and you use the `TEncoding` classes, you must call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` ([1814](#)) to regenerate the default encoding using the new code page.

See also: `DefaultSystemCodePage` ([1411](#)), `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` ([1533](#)), `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` ([1534](#))

### 75.11.294 SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage

Synopsis: Set codepage used when passing strings to OS single-byte file system APIs

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage(CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` sets the codepage used in single-byte OS file system APIs to `CodePage`. The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate multi-

byte (UTF-16) strings to single-byte codepage-aware strings used in File system APIs changes, and strings passed to the codepage-aware file system APIs will be passed using the new codepage.

This constant is not used if the file system API of the OS is multi-byte (such as on Windows).

Do not set `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

See also: `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` ([1410](#)), `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` ([1533](#)), `SetMultiByteRTL-FileSystemCodePage` ([1534](#))

### 75.11.295 SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage

Synopsis: Set codepage used when interpreting strings from OS single-byte file system APIs

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage(CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` sets the codepage used to interpreted strings returned by single-byte OS file system APIs to `CodePage`.

The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate single byte strings obtained from the OS to single-byte codepage-aware strings or multi-byte strings changes, and strings obtained from the codepage-aware file system APIs will be interpreted using the new codepage.

his constant is not used if the file system API of the OS is multi-byte (such as on Windows).

Do not set `DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

See also: `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` ([1533](#)), `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` ([1533](#)), `SetMultiByteRTL-FileSystemCodePage` ([1534](#))

### 75.11.296 SetMXCSR

Declaration: `procedure SetMXCSR(w: DWord)`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.297 SetResourceManager

Synopsis: Set the resource manager

Declaration: `procedure SetResourceManager(const &New: TResourceManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceManager` sets the active resource manager to `Manager`. After a call to `SetResourceManager`, the functions in the `Manager` record will be used to handle resources.

Note that it is not supported to change resource managers on-the-fly: any resources or information about resources obtained should be discarded prior to a call to `SetResourceManager`. Typically, `SetResourceManager` should be called once, at program startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceManager` ([1392](#)), `GetResourceManager` ([1472](#))

### 75.11.298 SetSSECSR

Declaration: `procedure SetSSECSR(w: DWord)`

Visibility: default

**75.11.299 SetString**

Synopsis: Set length of a string and copy buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetString(out S: AnsiString; Buf: PAnsiChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: AnsiString; Buf: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: Shortstring; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString; Buf: PUnicodeChar;`  
`Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString; Buf: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetString` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len` and if `Buf` is non-nil, copies `Len` characters from `Buf` into `S`. `S` can be an ansistring, a short string or a widestring. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLength` ([1532](#))

**75.11.300 SetTextBuf**

Synopsis: Set size of text file internal buffer

Declaration: `procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf)`  
`procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf; Size: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextBuf` assigns an I/O buffer to a text file. The new buffer is located at `Buf` and is `Size` bytes long. If `Size` is omitted, then `SizeOf (Buf)` is assumed. The standard buffer of any text file is 128 bytes long. For heavy I/O operations this may prove too slow. The `SetTextBuf` procedure allows to set a bigger buffer for the I/O of the application, thus reducing the number of system calls, and thus reducing the load on the system resources. The maximum size of the newly assigned buffer is 65355 bytes.

**Remark**

- Never assign a new buffer to an opened file. A new buffer can be assigned immediately after a call to `Rewrite` ([1520](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#)) or `Append`, but not after the file was read from/written to. This may cause loss of data. If a new buffer must be assigned after read/write operations have been performed, the file should be flushed first. This will ensure that the current buffer is emptied.
- Take care that the assigned buffer is always valid. If a local variable is assigned as a buffer, then after the program exits the local program block, the buffer will no longer be valid, and stack problems may occur.

Errors: No checking on `Size` is done.

See also: `Assign` ([1419](#)), `Reset` ([1519](#)), `Rewrite` ([1520](#)), `Append` ([1417](#))

Listing: `./refex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** Example61;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetTextBuf function. }*

**Var**

Fin, Fout : Text;  
Ch : Char;  
Bufin, Bufout : **Array**[1..10000] **of** byte;

**begin**

Assign (Fin, **paramstr**(1));  
**Reset** (Fin);  
Assign (Fout, **paramstr**(2));  
**Rewrite** (Fout);  
*{ This is harmless before IO has begun }*  
*{ Try this program again on a big file ,*  
*after commenting out the following 2*  
*lines and recompiling it. }*  
**SetTextBuf** (Fin, Bufin);  
**SetTextBuf** (Fout, Bufout);  
**While not eof**(Fin) **do**  
  **begin**  
    **Read** (Fin, ch);  
    **write** (Fout, ch);  
  **end**;  
  Close (Fin);  
  Close (Fout);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.301 SetTextCodePage

Synopsis: Set the codepage used in a text file.

Declaration: `procedure SetTextCodePage(var T: Text; CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextCodePage` sets the codepage that the text file T uses. All strings written to the file will be converted to the indicated codepage. By default, the codepage is set to CP\_ACP.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextRec` ([1385](#)), `GetTextCodePage` ([1472](#))

### 75.11.302 SetTextLineEnding

Synopsis: Set the end-of-line character for the given text file.

Declaration: `procedure SetTextLineEnding(var f: Text; Ending: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextLineEnding` sets the end-of-line character for the text file F to Ending. By default, this is the string indicated by `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([1339](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([1339](#)), `TTextLineBreakStyle` ([1395](#))

**75.11.303 SetThreadDebugName**

**Declaration:** `procedure SetThreadDebugName(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
   const ThreadName: AnsiString)  
       procedure SetThreadDebugName(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
   const ThreadName: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: default

**75.11.304 SetThreadManager**

**Synopsis:** Set the thread manager, optionally return the current thread manager.

**Declaration:** `function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager;  
   var OldTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean  
       function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetThreadManager` sets the thread manager to `NewTM`. If `OldTM` is given, `SetThreadManager` uses it to return the previously used thread manager.

The function returns `True` if the threadmanager was set successfully, `False` if an error occurred.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

**Errors:** If an error occurred cleaning up the previous manager, or an error occurred initializing the new manager, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetThreadManager` ([1473](#)), `TThreadManager` ([1396](#))

**75.11.305 SetUnicodeStringManager**

**Synopsis:** Set the unicodestring manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetUnicodeStringManager(const &New: TUnicodeStringManager)  
       procedure SetUnicodeStringManager(const &New: TUnicodeStringManager;  
   var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetUnicodeStringManager` sets the current unicodestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a Unicode-String manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1399](#))

**75.11.306 SetVariantManager**

Synopsis: Set the current variant manager.

Declaration: `procedure SetVariantManager(const VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVariantManager` sets the variant manager to `varmgr`.

See also: `GetVariantManager` ([1474](#))

**75.11.307 SetWideStringManager**

Synopsis: Set the widestring manager

Declaration: `procedure SetWideStringManager(const &New: TUnicodeStringManager)`  
`procedure SetWideStringManager(const &New: TUnicodeStringManager;`  
`var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWideStringManager` sets the current widestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `WideString` manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `TWideStringManager` ([1408](#))

**75.11.308 ShortCompareText**

Synopsis: Compare 2 shortstrings

Declaration: `function ShortCompareText(const S1: shortstring; const S2: shortstring)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortCompareText` compares two shortstrings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

`<0` if `S1<S2`.

`0` if `S1=S2`.

`>0` if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareText` ([1653](#))

**75.11.309 Sin**

Synopsis: Calculate sine of angle

Declaration: `function Sin(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sin` returns the sine of its argument `X`, where `X` is an angle in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $2^{63}$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Cos` ([1442](#)), `Pi` ([1509](#)), `Exp` ([1458](#)), `Ln` ([1497](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sin function. }

begin
  Writeln (Sin(Pi):0:1); { Prints 0.0 }
  Writeln (Sin(Pi/2):0:1); { Prints 1.0 }
end.
```

---

**75.11.310 SizeOf**

Synopsis: Return size of a variable or type.

Declaration: `function SizeOf(X: TAnyType) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SizeOf` returns the size, in bytes, of any variable or type-identifier.

**Remark** This isn't really a RTL function. Its result is calculated at compile-time, and hard-coded in the executable.

Errors: None.

See also: `Addr` ([1416](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex63.pp`

---

**Program** `Example63;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SizeOf function. }
Var
  I : Longint;
  S : String [10];

begin
  Writeln (SizeOf(I)); { Prints 4 }
  Writeln (SizeOf(S)); { Prints 11 }
end.
```

---

**75.11.311 SizeofResource**

Synopsis: Return the size of a particular resource

Declaration: `function SizeofResource (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SizeOfResource` returns the size of the resource identified by `ResHandle` in module identified by `ModuleHandle`. `ResHandle` should be obtained from a call to `LoadResource` ([1498](#))

Errors: In case of an error, 0 is returned.

See also: `FindResource` ([1463](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#)), `LoadResource` ([1498](#)), `LockResource` ([1499](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1559](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#))

**75.11.312 Slice**

Synopsis: Return part of an array

Declaration: `function Slice (const A: ArrayType; ACount: Integer) : ArrayType2`

Visibility: default

Description: `Slice` returns the first `ACount` elements from the array `A`. It returns an array with the same element type as `A`, but this array is not assignment compatible to any other array, and can therefor only be used in open array arguments to functions.

See also: `Length` ([1495](#)), `SetLength` ([1532](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex113.pp`

---

**Program** `Example113;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Slice function. }*

**procedure** `ShowArray (const A: array of Integer);`

**var**

`I: Integer;`

**begin**

`for I := Low(A) to High(A) do`

`WriteLn(I, ' : ', A[I]);`

**end;**

**begin**

`ShowArray ( Slice ([1,2,3,4],2));`

**end.**

---

**75.11.313 Space**

Synopsis: Return a string of spaces

Declaration: `function Space (b: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Space` returns a shortstring with length `B`, consisting of spaces.

See also: `StringOfChar` ([1545](#))

**75.11.314 SPtr**

Synopsis: Return current stack pointer

Declaration: `function SPtr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sptr` returns the current stack pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `SSeg` ([1542](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex64.pp`

---

```

program Example64;

  { Program to demonstrate the sptr function. }

  var p: ptnuint;

  begin
    p:=ofs(stackbottom); { P Contains now the current stack position. }
  end.

```

---

**75.11.315 Sqr**

Synopsis: Calculate the square of a value.

Declaration: `function Sqr(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Sqr(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Sqr(l: QWord) : QWord`  
`function Sqr(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqr` returns the square of its argument X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sqrt` ([1542](#)), `Ln` ([1497](#)), `Exp` ([1458](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex65.pp`

---

```

Program Example65;

  { Program to demonstrate the Sqr function. }
  Var i : Integer;

  begin
    For i:=1 to 10 do
      writeln (Sqr(i):3);
  end.

```

---

**75.11.316 Sqrt**

Synopsis: Calculate the square root of a value

Declaration: `function Sqrt (d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqrt` returns the square root of its argument `X`, which must be positive.

Errors: If `X` is negative, then a run-time error is generated.

See also: `Sqr` ([1541](#)), `Ln` ([1497](#)), `Exp` ([1458](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex66.pp`

---

**Program** `Example66;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sqrt function. }*

```
begin
  WriteLn (Sqrt(4):0:3); { Prints 2.000 }
  WriteLn (Sqrt(2):0:3); { Prints 1.414 }
end.
```

---

**75.11.317 SSeg**

Synopsis: Return stack segment register value.

Declaration: `function SSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SSeg` returns the Stack Segment. This function is only supported for compatibility reasons, as `Sptr` returns the correct contents of the stackpointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sptr` ([1541](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** `Example67;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SSeg function. }*

**Var** `W : Longint;`

```
begin
  W:=SSeg;
end.
```

---

**75.11.318 StackTop**

Synopsis: Top location of the stack.

Declaration: `function StackTop : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StackTop` contains the top of the stack for the current process. It is used to check the heap on some operating systems, and is set by the system unit initialization code. Do not use or modify this value.

See also: `StackBottom` ([1413](#)), `StackLength` ([1413](#))

### 75.11.319 Str

**Synopsis:** Convert a numerical or enumeration value to a string.

**Declaration:** `procedure Str(var X: TNumericType; var S: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Str` returns a string which represents the value of `X`. `X` can be any numerical or enumerated type. The actual declaration of `Str` is not according to pascal syntax, and should be

```
procedure Str(var X: TNumericType[:NumPlaces[:Decimals]];var S: String)
```

Where the optional `NumPlaces` and `Decimals` specifiers control the formatting of the string: `NumPlaces` gives the total width of the string, and `Decimals` the number of decimals after the decimal separator char.

`Str` can also be used to convert an enumerated type value to a string representation of the declared enumeration value. That means that the following will work:

```
Type
  TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
  S : String;
begin
  Str(one, s);
  Writeln(S);
end.
```

This will write `OnE` on the screen, which is consistent with the following - equivalent - program:

```
Type
  TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
  S : String;
  E : TMyEnum;
begin
  E:=one;
  Str(E, s);
  Writeln(S);
end.
```

For scoped enumerated types, only the value is written, which means the following program will have the same output:

```

{$SCOPEDENUMS+}
Type
    TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
    S : String;

begin
    Str(one, s);
    Writeln(S);
end.

```

Errors: None.

See also: Val ([1562](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex68.pp

**Program** Example68;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Str function. }
Var S : String;
```

```
Function IntToStr (l : Longint) : String;
```

```
Var S : String;
```

```
begin
  Str (I,S);
  IntToStr:=S;
end;
```

```
begin
  S:= '*' + IntToStr(-233) + '*';
  Writeln (S);
end.
```

## 75.11.320 StringCodePage

### Synopsis: Get the code page of a string

```
Declaration: function StringCodePage(const S: RawByteString) : TSystemCodePage
              ; Overload
              function StringCodePage(const S: UnicodeString) : TSystemCodePage
              ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringCodePage` returns the code page of a string (S), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411) is returned.

See also: [DefaultSystemCodePage \(1411\)](#), [StringElementSize \(1545\)](#), [StringRefCount \(1545\)](#), [SetCodePage \(1530\)](#)

**75.11.321 StringElementSize**

Synopsis: Get the character size of a string.

Declaration: `function StringElementSize(const S: RawByteString) : Word; Overload`  
`function StringElementSize(const S: UnicodeString) : Word; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringCodePage` returns the character size of a string (S), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, `SizeOf (AnsiChar)` (normally 1) is returned.

See also: `StringCodePage` ([1544](#)), `StringRefCount` ([1545](#))

**75.11.322 StringOfChar**

Synopsis: Return a string consisting of 1 character repeated N times.

Declaration: `function StringOfChar(c: AnsiChar; l: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringOfChar` creates a new `String` of length `l` and fills it with the character `c`.

It is equivalent to the following calls:

```
SetLength(StringOfChar, l);
FillChar(Pointer(StringOfChar)^, Length(StringOfChar), c);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLength` ([1532](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex97.pp`

---

**Program** `Example97`;

```
{ $H+ }

{ Program to demonstrate the StringOfChar function. }

Var S : String;

begin
  S:=StringOfChar(' ',40)+'Aligned at column 41.';
  Writeln(s);
end.
```

---

**75.11.323 StringRefCount**

Synopsis: Get the reference count of a string

Declaration: `function StringRefCount(const S: RawByteString) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function StringRefCount(const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringRefCount` returns the reference count of a string (`S`), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, 0 is returned.

See also: `StringCodePage` ([1544](#)), `StringElementSize` ([1545](#))

### 75.11.324 StringToPPChar

**Synopsis:** Split string in list of null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`  
`function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of pchars that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function is only available on certain platforms.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ArrayStringToPPchar` ([1418](#))

### 75.11.325 StringToUnicodeChar

**Synopsis:** Convert an ansistring to a null-terminated array of Unicode characters.

**Declaration:** `function StringToUnicodeChar(const Src: RawByteString; Dest: PUnicodeChar; DestSize: SizeInt) : PUnicodeChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringToUnicodeChar` converts the ansistring `S` to a unicodestring and places the result in `Dest`. The size of the memory location pointed to by `Dest` must be given in `DestSize`. If the result string is longer than the available size, the result string will be truncated.

The function always returns `Dest`.

**Errors:** No check is performed to see whether `Dest` points to a valid memory location.

See also: `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#))

### 75.11.326 StringToWideChar

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an array of widechars.

**Declaration:** `function StringToWideChar(const Src: RawByteString; Dest: PWideChar; DestSize: SizeInt) : PWideChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringToWideChar` converts a single-byte-character string `Src` to a null-terminated array of `WideChars`. The destination for this array is pointed to by `Dest`, and contains room for at least `DestSize` widechars.

**Errors:** No validity checking is performed on `Dest`.

**See also:** `WideCharToString` ([1565](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1566](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1565](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1565](#))

### 75.11.327 `StrLen`

**Synopsis:** Length of a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** `function StrLen(p: PChar) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns the length of the null-terminated string `P`.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.328 `StrPas`

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

**Declaration:** `function StrPas(p: PChar) : shortstring`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Converts a null terminated string in `P` to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.329 `subtract(variant,variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement subtraction (`-`) operation on variants.

**Declaration:** `operator -(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the subtraction `-` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opSubtract`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** `operator -(variant, variant): variant` ([1332](#))

### 75.11.330 Succ

Synopsis: Return next element of ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Succ(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Succ` returns the element that succeeds the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the last value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`{ $R+ }`), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see `Ord` ([1507](#)).

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1507](#)), `Pred` ([1511](#)), `High` ([1478](#)), `Low` ([1500](#))

### 75.11.331 SuspendThread

Synopsis: Suspend a running thread.

Declaration: `function SuspendThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SuspendThread` suspends a running thread. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `ResumeThread` ([1520](#)), `KillThread` ([1494](#))

### 75.11.332 Swap

Synopsis: Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable

Declaration: `function Swap(X: Word) : Word`  
`function Swap(X: Integer) : Integer`  
`function Swap(X: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Swap(X: Cardinal) : Cardinal`  
`function Swap(X: QWord) : QWord`  
`function Swap(X: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Swap` swaps the high and low order bytes of `X` if `X` is of type `Word` or `Integer`, or swaps the high and low order words of `X` if `X` is of type `Longint` or `Cardinal`. The return type is the type of `X`

Errors: None.

See also: `Lo` ([1497](#)), `Hi` ([1477](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** Example69;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Swap function. }
Var W : Word;
    L : Longint;

begin
    W:=$1234;
    W:=Swap(W);
    if W<>$3412 then
        writeln ('Error when swapping word !');
    L:=$12345678;
    L:=Swap(L);
    if L<>$56781234 then
        writeln ('Error when swapping Longint !');
end.
```

---

### 75.11.333 SwapEndian

**Synopsis:** Swap endianness of the argument

**Declaration:** function SwapEndian(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Word) : Word  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Int64) : Int64  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SwapEndian will swap the endianness of the bytes in its argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: hi ([1477](#)), lo ([1497](#)), swap ([1548](#)), BEToN ([1426](#)), NToBE ([1505](#)), NToLE ([1505](#)), LEToN ([1496](#))

### 75.11.334 SysAllocMem

**Synopsis:** System memory manager: Allocate memory

**Declaration:** function SysAllocMem(size: PtrUInt) : Pointer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SysFreeMem is the system memory manager implementation for AllocMem ([1417](#))

See also: AllocMem ([1417](#))

### 75.11.335 SysAssert

**Synopsis:** Standard Assert failure implementation

**Declaration:** procedure SysAssert(const Msg: ShortString; const FName: ShortString;  
LineNo: LongInt; ErrorAddr: Pointer)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysAssert` is the standard implementation of the assertion failed code. It is the default value of the `AssertErrorProc` constant. It will print the assert message `Msg` together with the filename `FName` and linenumber `LineNo` to standard error output (`StdErr`) and will halt the program with exit code 227. The error address `ErrorAddr` is ignored.

See also: `AssertErrorProc` ([1338](#))

### 75.11.336 SysBacktraceStr

**Synopsis:** Format an address suitable for inclusion in a backtrace

**Declaration:** `function SysBacktraceStr(Addr: CodePointer) : ShortString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysBackTraceStr` will create a string representation of the address `Addr`, suitable for inclusion in a stack backtrace.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.337 SysFlushStdIO

**Synopsis:** Flush all standard IO file descriptors

**Declaration:** `procedure SysFlushStdIO`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysFlushStdIO` calls `flush` ([1465](#)) on all standard file descriptors: output ([1413](#)), stdout ([1413](#)), stderr ([1413](#)), erroutput ([1412](#))

See also: output ([1413](#)), stdout ([1413](#)), stderr ([1413](#)), erroutput ([1412](#)), flush ([1465](#))

### 75.11.338 SysFreemem

**Synopsis:** System memory manager free routine.

**Declaration:** `function SysFreemem(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysFreeem` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1467](#))

See also: `FreeMem` ([1467](#))

### 75.11.339 SysFreememSize

**Synopsis:** System memory manager free routine.

**Declaration:** `function SysFreememSize(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SysFreeSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1467](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1502](#))

### 75.11.340 SysGetFPCHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the status of the FPC heapmanager

Declaration: `function SysGetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetFPCHeapStatus` returns the status of the default FPC heapmanager. It is set as the default value of the corresponding `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1470) function.

Errors: None. The result of this function is bogus information if the current heapmanager is not the standard FPC heapmanager.

See also: `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1470)

### 75.11.341 SysGetHeapStatus

Synopsis: System implementation of `GetHeapStatus` (1470)

Declaration: `function SysGetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetHeapStatus` is the system implementation of the `GetHeapStatus` (1470) call.

See also: `GetHeapStatus` (1470)

### 75.11.342 SysGetmem

Synopsis: System memory manager memory allocator.

Declaration: `function SysGetmem(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetmem` is the system memory manager implementation for `GetMem` (1470)

See also: `GetMem` (1470), `GetMemory` (1471)

### 75.11.343 SysInitExceptions

Synopsis: Initialize exceptions.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitExceptions`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitExceptions` initializes the exception system. This procedure should never be called directly, it is taken care of by the RTL.

### 75.11.344 SysInitFPU

Synopsis: Initialize the FPU

Declaration: `procedure SysInitFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitFPU` initializes (resets) the floating point unit, if one is available. It is called for instance when a new thread is started.

See also: `BeginThread` ([1425](#))

### 75.11.345 SysInitStdIO

Synopsis: Initialize standard input and output.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitStdIO`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitStdIO` initializes the standard input and output files: `Output` ([1413](#)), `Input` ([1412](#)) and `StdErr` ([1413](#)). This routine is called by the initialization code of the system unit, there should be no need to call it directly.

### 75.11.346 SysMemSize

Synopsis: System memory manager: free size.

Declaration: `function SysMemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeMemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `MemSize` ([1502](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1502](#))

### 75.11.347 SysReAllocMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: Reallocate memory

Declaration: `function SysReAllocMem(var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysReAllocMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1517](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1517](#))

### 75.11.348 SysResetFPU

Synopsis: Reset the floating point unit.

Declaration: `procedure SysResetFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysResetFPU` resets the floating point unit. There should normally be no need to call this unit; the compiler itself takes care of this.

### 75.11.349 SysSetCtrlBreakHandler

Synopsis: System CTRL-C handler

Declaration: `function SysSetCtrlBreakHandler (Handler: TCtrlBreakHandler)  
: TCtrlBreakHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysSetCtrlBreakHandler` sets the CTRL-C handler to the `Handler` callback, and returns the previous value of the handler.

See also: `TCtrlBreakHandler` ([1382](#))

### 75.11.350 SysTryResizeMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: attempt to resize memory.

Declaration: `function SysTryResizeMem (var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysTryResizeMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1517](#)), `SysReAllocMem` ([1552](#))

See also: `SysReAllocMem` ([1552](#)), `ReAllocMem` ([1517](#))

### 75.11.351 ThreadGetPriority

Synopsis: Return the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadGetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadGetPriority` returns the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. The returned priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadSetPriority` ([1553](#))

### 75.11.352 ThreadSetPriority

Synopsis: Set the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadSetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID; Prio: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSetPriority` sets the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. Priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadGetPriority` ([1553](#))

**75.11.353 ThreadSwitch**

Synopsis: Signal possibility of thread switch

Declaration: `procedure ThreadSwitch`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSwitch` signals the operating system that the thread should be suspended and that another thread should be executed.

This call is a hint only, and may be ignored.

See also: `SuspendThread` ([1548](#)), `ResumeThread` ([1520](#)), `KillThread` ([1494](#))

**75.11.354 ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName**

Synopsis: Convert string to encoding for use in single-byte file system API

Declaration: `function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName(const Str: UnicodeString)  
: RawByteString  
function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName  
(const arr: Array of WideChar)  
: RawByteString  
function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName(const Str: RawByteString)  
: RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName` converts the argument (`Str` or `Arr`) to a single-byte string, encoded using the codepage used by the single-byte file system API.

This routine is simply an auxiliary routine, which converts the argument to a single-byte string using `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` ([1410](#)) as a codepage.

See also: `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` ([1410](#))

**75.11.355 Trunc**

Synopsis: Truncate a floating point value.

Declaration: `function Trunc(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trunc` returns the integer part of `X`, which is always smaller than (or equal to) `X` in absolute value.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1466](#)), `Int` ([1488](#)), `Round` ([1524](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Trunc function. }*

**begin**

`WriteLn (Trunc(123.456)); { Prints 123 }`  
`WriteLn (Trunc(-123.456)); { Prints -123 }`

---

```

Writeln (Trunc(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
Writeln (Trunc(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.356 Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file at position

Declaration: `procedure Truncate(var F: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` truncates the (opened) file `F` at the current file position.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Append` ([1417](#)), `Filepos` ([1459](#)), `Seek` ([1528](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** Example71;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Truncate function. }*

```

Var F : File of longint;
    I,L : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For I:=1 to 10 Do
    Write (F,I);
  Writeln ('Filesize before Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
  Reset (F);
  Repeat
    Read (F,I);
  Until i=5;
  Truncate (F);
  Writeln ('Filesize after Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.357 TryEnterCriticalSection

Synopsis: Try entering a critical section

Declaration: `function TryEnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEnterCriticalSection` attempts to enter critical section `cs`. It returns at once. The return value is zero if another thread owns the critical section, or nonzero if the current thread already owns or successfully obtained the critical section.

**75.11.358 TypeInfo**

Synopsis: Return pointer to type information for type

Declaration: `function TypeInfo(const T: AnyType) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfo` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns a pointer to the generated type information (RTTI) for the type `T`. If no type information was yet generated for the type, this statement will ensure that type information is available, i.e. the result is always non-nil.

See also: [Default \(1444\)](#), [TypeOf \(1556\)](#), [GetTypeKind \(1473\)](#), [Initialize \(1485\)](#), [Finalize \(1463\)](#)

**75.11.359 TypeOf**

Synopsis: Return pointer to VMT of an object

Declaration: `function TypeOf(T: TObjectType) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeOf` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns a pointer to the VMT of the object type `T`.

See also: [Default \(1444\)](#), [TypeInfo \(1556\)](#), [GetTypeKind \(1473\)](#)

**75.11.360 UCS4StringToUnicodeString**

Synopsis: Convert a UCS-4 encoded string to a Unicode string

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToUnicodeString(const s: UCS4String) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` converts the UCS-4 encoded string `S` to a Unicode string and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

See also: [UnicodeStringToUCS4String \(1558\)](#)

**75.11.361 UCS4StringToWideString**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToWideString(const s: UCS4String) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description:

**75.11.362 Unassigned**

Synopsis: Unassigned variant.

Declaration: `function Unassigned : Variant`

Visibility: default

**75.11.363 UnicodeCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with Unicode characters to a unicodestring

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharLenToString(S: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to a unicodestring and returns the result.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1546](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#))

**75.11.364 UnicodeCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with Unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharLenToStrVar(Src: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: UnicodeString)  
procedure UnicodeCharLenToStrVar(Src: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#)).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1546](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#)), `UnicodeCharToStrVar` ([1558](#))

**75.11.365 UnicodeCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert Unicode character to string

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharToString(S: PUnicodeChar) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharToString` converts a null-word-terminated array of Unicode characters in `S` to a Unicode string value. It simply calls `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#)) with the length of the string `S`.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1546](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#)), `WidestringManager` ([1414](#))

**75.11.366 UnicodeCharToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated memory buffer with Unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharToStrVar(S: PUnicodeChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` up to the first null word, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#)).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1546](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1557](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1557](#))

**75.11.367 UnicodeStringToUCS4String**

Synopsis: Convert a Unicode string to a UCS-4 string.

Declaration: `function UnicodeStringToUCS4String(const s: UnicodeString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeStringToUCS4String` converts a Unicode string `S` to a UCS-4 encoded string, and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

See also: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` ([1556](#))

**75.11.368 UnicodeToUtf8**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; Source: PUnicodeChar;  
MaxBytes: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; MaxDestBytes: SizeUInt;  
Source: PUnicodeChar; SourceChars: SizeUInt)  
: SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

**75.11.369 UniqueString**

Synopsis: Make sure reference count of string is 1

Declaration: `procedure UniqueString(var S: RawByteString)  
procedure UniqueString(var S: UnicodeString)  
procedure UniqueString(var S: WideString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UniqueString` ensures that the ansistring `S` has reference count 1. It makes a copy of `S` if this is necessary, and returns the copy in `S`

Errors: None.

**75.11.370 UnloadLibrary**

Synopsis: Unload a previously loaded library

Declaration: `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([1498](#)), `GetProcAddress` ([1471](#))

**75.11.371 UnlockResource**

Synopsis: Unlock a previously locked resource

Declaration: `function UnlockResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnlockResource` unlocks a previously locked resource. Note that this function does not exist on windows, it's only needed on other platforms.

Errors: The function returns `False` if it failed.

See also: `FindResource` ([1463](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1540](#)), `LoadResource` ([1498](#)), `lockResource` ([1499](#)), `FreeResource` ([1468](#))

**75.11.372 UnPack**

Synopsis: Create unpacked array from packed array

Declaration: `procedure UnPack(const Z: PackedArrayType; out A: UnpackedArrayType;  
                                  StartIndex: TIndexType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPack` will copy the elements of a packed array (`Z`) to an unpacked array (`A`). All elements in `Z` are copied to `A`, starting at index `StartIndex` in `A`. The type of the index variable `StartIndex` must match the type of the index of `A`.

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays `A` and `Z` must match.

See also: `Pack` ([1508](#))

**75.11.373 UpCase**

Synopsis: Convert a string to all uppercase.

Declaration: `function UpCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring  
              function UpCase(c: Char) : Char  
              function UpCase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring  
              function UpCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString  
              function UpCase(c: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar  
              function UpCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UpCase` returns the uppercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to uppercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

`UpCase` does not change the number of characters in the string.

Errors: None.

See also: `Lowercase` ([1501](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program Example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the upcase function. }

var c:char;

begin
  for c:= 'a' to 'z' do
    write(upcase(c));
  Writeln;
  { This doesn't work in TP, but it does in Free Pascal }
  Writeln(upcase( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz '));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.374 Utf8CodePointLen

**Synopsis:** Length of an UTF-8 codepoint.

**Declaration:** `function Utf8CodePointLen(P: PAnsiChar; MaxLookAhead: SizeInt; IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks: Boolean) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Utf8CodePointLen` returns the length of the UTF-8 codepoint starting at the beginning of `P`. It will look at at most `MaxLookAhead` bytes to do create this codepoint. If `IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks` is true, combining diacritical marks trailing the first codepoint (which itself can also be such a mark) will be considered to be part of the codepoint.

If the function returns a value  $> 0$ , then this is the number of bytes occupied by the codepoint and, if requested, the trailing combining diacritical marks. If the result  $= 0$ , this means that all bytes within the requested `MaxLookAhead` could be part of a single valid codepoint and, if requested, its trailing diacritical marks, but that the codepoint is incomplete and more bytes need to be looked at. If the result is  $< 0$ , then the function determined that the codepoint was invalid after processing the number of bytes equal to the absolute value of the function result.

If `IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks` is `True`, then

- If the function processes all `MaxLookAhead` bytes, it will return the value `MaxLookAhead` rather than 0, even though in theory more combining diacritical marks might follow if more bytes would be looked at. Therefore, in order to ascertain that all combining diacritical marks are processed, pass all bytes at once to this function.

- If an invalid sequence is detected while processing a potential combining diacritical mark after a valid codepoint has been found already, the function will return the length of this valid codepoint (plus that of any preceding valid combining diacritical marks) as a positive value. The idea is that this invalid sequence at the end is by definition not a combining diacritical mark (since all of those are valid sequences) and hence should not render the preceding codepoint invalid.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.375 UTF8Decode

Synopsis: Convert an UTF-8 encoded ansistring to a unicodestring

Declaration: `function UTF8Decode(const s: RawByteString) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8Decode` converts the UTF-8 encoded ansistring *S* to a unicodestring and returns the resulting string. It calls the low-level `Utf8ToUnicode` (1562) function to do the actual work.

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1561), `Utf8ToAnsi` (1561), `SetWideStringManager` (1538), `Utf8ToUnicode` (1562)

### 75.11.376 UTF8Encode

Synopsis: Convert a widestring or unicodestring to an UTF-8 encoded ansistring

Declaration: `function UTF8Encode(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: UnicodeString) : RawByteString`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: WideString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8Encode` converts an ansistring or widestring *S* to the equivalent UTF-8 encoded Unicode string and returns this resulting string. It calls the low-level `UnicodeToUTF8` (1558) function to do the actual work.

The resulting string has code page `CP_UTF8`.

See also: `UTF8Decode` (1561), `Utf8ToAnsi` (1561), `UnicodeToUtf8` (1558), `SetWideStringManager` (1538)

### 75.11.377 Utf8ToAnsi

Synopsis: Convert a UTF-8 encoded Unicode string to an ansistring

Declaration: `function Utf8ToAnsi(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToAnsi` converts an utf8-encode Unicode string to an ansistring. It converts the string to a widestring and then converts the widestring to an ansistring.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1561), `UTF8Decode` (1561), `SetWideStringManager` (1538)

**75.11.378 UTF8ToString**

Synopsis: Convert UTF8 to Unicode String

Declaration: `function UTF8ToString(const s: RawByteString) : UnicodeString`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: ShortString) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: PAnsiChar) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: Array of AnsiChar) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: Array of Byte) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8ToString` converts a UTF8 single byte string to a UTF16 encoded unicodestring. The source string `S` is interpreted as an array of UTF8 characters.

**75.11.379 Utf8ToUnicode**

Synopsis: Convert a buffer with UTF-8 characters to widestring characters

Declaration: `function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; Source: PChar;`  
`MaxChars: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; MaxDestChars: SizeUInt;`  
`Source: PChar; SourceBytes: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToUnicode` converts the buffer in `Source` with a length of `SourceBytes` or for a maximum length of `MaxChars` (or `MaxDestChars`) widestring characters to the buffer pointed to by `Dest`.

The function returns the number of copied widestring characters.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `UTF8Encode` ([1561](#)), `UTF8Decode` ([1561](#)), `Utf8ToAnsi` ([1561](#)), `SetWideStringManager` ([1538](#))

**75.11.380 Val**

Synopsis: Calculate numerical/enumerated value of a string.

Declaration: `procedure Val(const S: string; var V; var Code: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Val` converts the value represented in the string `S` to a numerical value or an enumerated value, and stores this value in the variable `V`, which can be of type `Longint`, `Real` and `Byte` or any enumerated type. If the conversion isn't successful, then the parameter `Code` contains the index of the character in `S` which prevented the conversion. The string `S` is allowed to contain spaces in the beginning.

The string `S` can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference. For enumerated values, the string must be the name of the enumerated value. The name is searched case insensitively.

For hexadecimal values, the prefix `'0x'` or `'x'` (case insensitive) may be used as well.

The conversion to enumerated exists only as of version 2.3.1 (or later) of the compiler.

Errors: If the conversion doesn't succeed, the value of `Code` indicates the position where the conversion went wrong. The value of `V` is then undefined.

See also: [Str \(1543\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Val function. }
Var I, Code : Integer;

begin
  Val (ParamStr (1),I,Code);
  If Code<>0 then
    WriteLn ('Error at position ',code,' : ',Paramstr(1)[Code])
  else
    WriteLn ('Value : ',I);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.381 VarArrayGet

**Synopsis:** Get a value from a single cell of a variant array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayGet(const A: Variant; const Indices: Array of LongInt) : Variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayGet` returns the value in the variant array `A` at the location indicated by `Indices`. Thus the statement

```
B:=VarArrayGet (A, [2, 1]);
```

is equivalent to

```
B:=A[2, 1];
```

The difference is that the previous is usable when the amount of indices is not known at compile time.

**Errors:** If the number of indices is wrong (or out of range) an exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayPut` ([1563](#))

### 75.11.382 VarArrayPut

**Synopsis:** Put a value in a single cell of a variant array

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayPut(var A: Variant; const Value: Variant; const Indices: Array of LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayPut` puts `Value` in the variant array `A` at the location indicated by `Indices`. Thus the statement

```
VarArrayPut (A, B, [2, 1]);
```

is equivalent to

```
A[2, 1] := B;
```

The difference is that the previous is usable when the amount of indices is not known at compile time.

**Errors:** If the number of indices is wrong (or out of range) an exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayGet` ([1563](#))

### 75.11.383 `VarArrayRedim`

**Synopsis:** Redimension a variant array

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayRedim(var A: Variant; HighBound: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayRedim` re-sizes the first dimension of the variant array `A`, giving it a new high bound `HighBound`. Obviously, `A` must be a variant array for this function to work.

### 75.11.384 `VarCast`

**Synopsis:** Cast a variant to a certain type

**Declaration:** `procedure VarCast(var dest: variant; const source: variant;  
vartype: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarCast` converts the variant in `Source` to the type indicated in `VarType` and returns the result in `dest`. The `VarType` must be one of the predefined `VarNNN` constants.

**Errors:** If the conversion is not possible because the value cannot be correctly casted, then a run-time error or an exception may occur.

### 75.11.385 `WaitForThreadTerminate`

**Synopsis:** Wait for a thread to terminate.

**Declaration:** `function WaitForThreadTerminate(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WaitForThreadTerminate` waits for a thread to finish its execution. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`. If the thread does not exit within `TimeoutMs` milliseconds, the function will return with an error value.

The function returns the exit code of the thread.

Not all platforms support the timeout parameter: the Unix platforms (with threads support based on pthreads) do not support timeout, and will wait indefinitely for the thread to exit.

See also: `EndThread` ([1450](#)), `KillThread` ([1494](#))

**75.11.386 WideCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an unicodestring

Declaration: `function WideCharLenToString(S: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an unicodestring, and returns the unicodestring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1546](#)), `WideCharToString` ([1565](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1566](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1565](#))

**75.11.387 WideCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharLenToStrVar(Src: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: UnicodeString)  
procedure WideCharLenToStrVar(Src: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `Src` to an ansistring or Unicode string, and returns the resulting in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1546](#)), `WideCharToString` ([1565](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1566](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1565](#))

**75.11.388 WideCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an unicodestring

Declaration: `function WideCharToString(S: PWideChar) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an unicodestring, and returns the unicodestring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1546](#)), `WideCharToStrVar` ([1566](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1565](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1565](#))

**75.11.389 WideCharToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharToStrVar(S: PWideChar; out Dest: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure WideCharToStrVar(S: PWideChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an ansistring or Unicode string, and returns the resulting string in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1546](#)), `WideCharToString` ([1565](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1565](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1565](#))

**75.11.390 WideStringToUCS4String**

Synopsis: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

Declaration: `function WideStringToUCS4String(const s: WideString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

**75.11.391 Write**

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file or standard output

Declaration: `procedure Write(V1: Type1)`  
`procedure Write(V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure Write(V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes the contents of the variables `V1`, `V2`, `V3` etc. to the file `F`. `F` can be a typed file, or a Text file. If `F` is a typed file, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of the same type as the type in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed.

The `Write` command accepts an arbitrary number of arguments. The `V1`, `V2`, `V3` in the declaration here are in fact just samples, the actual number may be much higher. The types of arguments (`Type1` etc.) are limited to the following types:

- Any character type.
- Any string type (including `pchar`).
- Any ordinal type (integer, enumerated).
- The `Int64` and `QWord` type.
- Any floating-point type (such as `double`, `single`, `extended`).

If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the necessary conversions are done such that the output of the variables is in human-readable format. This conversion is done for all numerical types. Strings are printed exactly as they are in memory, as well as `PChar` types.

The format of the numerical conversions can be influenced through the following modifiers: `OutputVariable: NumChars [: Decimals ]` This will print the value of `OutputVariable` with a minimum of `NumChars` characters, from which `Decimals` are reserved for the decimals. If the number cannot be represented with `NumChars` characters, `NumChars` will be increased, until the representation fits. If the representation requires less than `NumChars` characters then the output is filled up with spaces, to the left of the generated string, thus resulting in a right-aligned representation. If no formatting is specified, then the number is written using its natural length, with nothing in front of it if it's positive, and a minus sign if it's negative. Real numbers are, by default, written in scientific notation.

**Remark** When writing string variables, no codepage conversions are done. The string is copied as-is to the file descriptor. In particular, for console output, it is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the codepage of the string matches the codepage of the console.

**Remark** Note that on MS Windows GUI applications do not have a standard output by default: Standard file descriptors are available only when the

```
{ $APPPTYPE CONSOLE }
```

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{ $I }` switch.

See also: `WriteLn` ([1567](#)), `Read` ([1514](#)), `ReadLn` ([1515](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1428](#))

### 75.11.392 WriteBarrier

**Synopsis:** Memory write barrier

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteBarrier`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a write barrier in the CPU: write (store) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1515](#)), `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1515](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1516](#))

### 75.11.393 WriteLn

**Synopsis:** Write variable to a text file or standard output and append newline

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1)`  
`procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WriteLn` does the same as `Write` (1566) for text files, and emits a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair after that. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If no variables are specified, a newline character sequence is emitted, resulting in a new line in the file `F`.

**Remark** The newline character is determined by the `slinebreak` (1357) constant.

**Remark** When writing string variables, no codepage conversions are done. The string is copied as-is to the file descriptor. In particular, for console output, it is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the codepage of the string matches the codepage of the console.

More details can be found in the `Write` (1566) description.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` switch.

See also: `Write` (1566), `Read` (1514), `ReadLn` (1515), `Blockwrite` (1428), `slinebreak` (1357)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** `Example75`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Write(Ln) function. }*

**Var**

`F : File of Longint;`  
`L : Longint;`

**begin**

`Write ('This is on the first line ! '); { No CR/LF pair! }`  
`Writeln ('And this too... ');`  
`Writeln ('But this is already on the second line... ');`  
`Assign (f, 'test.tmp');`  
`Rewrite (f);`  
`For L:=1 to 10 do`  
`write (F,L); { No writeln allowed here ! }`  
`Close (f);`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.394 WriteStr

**Synopsis:** Write variables to a string

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteStr(out S: string; Args: Arguments)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WriteStr` behaves like `Write` (1566), except that it stores its output in the string variable `S` instead of a file. Semantically, the `WriteStr` call is equivalent to writing the arguments to a file using the `Write` call, and then reading them into `S` using the `Read` call from the same file:

```
var
  F : Text;
begin
  Rewrite(F);
  Write(F, Args);
  Close(F);
  Reset(F);
  Read(F, S);
```

```

    Close (F) ;
end;

```

Obviously, the `WriteStr` call does not use a temporary file.

`WriteStr` is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the possible formatting can be found in the description of `Write` ([1566](#)).

See also: `Write` ([1566](#)), `ReadStr` ([1516](#)), `Read` ([1514](#))

## 75.12 TDoubleRec

```

TDoubleRec = packed record
private
    Bias = $3FF;
    function GetExp
    : QWord;
    procedure SetExp(e: QWord);
    function GetSign : Boolean
    ;
    procedure SetSign(s: Boolean);
    function GetFrac : QWord;
    procedure
    SetFrac(e: QWord);
public
    function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean
    ) : QWord;
    function Fraction : ValReal;
    function Exponent : LongInt
    ;
    property Sign : Boolean;
    property Exp : QWord;
    property Frac
    : QWord;
    function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial;
    procedure BuildUp
    (const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;
    const _Exponent: LongInt);
case Byte of
0: (
public
    Bytes : Array
    [0..7] of Byte;
);
1: (
public
    Words : Array[0..3] of Word;
);
2
: (
public
    Data : QWord;
);

```

```

3: (
public
  Value : Double;
);
end

```

`TDoubleRec` models the memory layout of a double value when using software floating point math.

### 75.12.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description                           |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1571</a> | <code>BuildUp</code>     | Build a double value                  |
| <a href="#">1571</a> | <code>Exponent</code>    | Exponent of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1570</a> | <code>Fraction</code>    | Fraction of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1570</a> | <code>Mantissa</code>    | Mantissa of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1571</a> | <code>SpecialType</code> | Is the floating point value special ? |

### 75.12.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties        | Access | Description                        |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------|------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1571</a> | <code>Exp</code>  | rw     | Exponent bitpattern representation |
| <a href="#">1572</a> | <code>Frac</code> | rw     | Fractional part of double          |
| <a href="#">1571</a> | <code>Sign</code> | rw     | Sign of the floating point value   |

### 75.12.3 `TDoubleRec.Mantissa`

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `Mantissa` returns the Mantissa part (significand bitpattern without hidden bit) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1571](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1571](#))

### 75.12.4 `TDoubleRec.Fraction`

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : ValReal`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` returns the fraction (value after decimal) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1571](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1571](#))

### 75.12.5 TDoubleRec.Exponent

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` returns the exponent ( $X$  in  $m \times 2^X$  representation) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1571](#))

### 75.12.6 TDoubleRec.SpecialType

Synopsis: Is the floating point value special ?

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` returns special characteristics of the floating point value, if any. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1385](#)) for an explanation of the various special values.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1571](#)), `TFloatSpecial` ([1385](#))

### 75.12.7 TDoubleRec.BuildUp

Synopsis: Build a double value

Declaration: `procedure BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;  
const _Exponent: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Buildup` will build a double value from the given `_Sign`, `_Mantissa` and `_Exponent`.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1570](#)), `TDoubleRec.Sign` ([1571](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exp` ([1571](#))

### 75.12.8 TDoubleRec.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 75.12.9 TDoubleRec.Exp

Synopsis: Exponent bitpattern representation

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` returns the internal bit representation of the exponent of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Sign` ([1571](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1571](#))

**75.12.10 TDoubleRec.Frac**

Synopsis: Fractional part of double

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the fractional part of the `Double`. This is the bit pattern representing the fractional part including the preceding 1. (The mantissa is that bit pattern without the preceding 1)

See also: `Frac` ([1466](#))

**75.13 TExtended80Rec**

```
TExtended80Rec = packed record
private
  Bias = $3FFF;
  function
  GetExp : QWord;
  procedure SetExp(e: QWord);
  function GetSign
    : Boolean;
  procedure SetSign(s: Boolean);
public
  function Mantissa
    (IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord;
  function Fraction : Extended
  ;
  function Exponent : LongInt;
  property Sign : Boolean;
  property
  Exp : QWord;
  function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial;
  procedure
  BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;
    const _Exponent: LongInt);
case Byte of
0: (
public
  Bytes
    : Array[0..9] of Byte;
);
1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..4] of Word
  ;
);
2: (
public
  _Exp : Word;
  Frac : QWord;
);
```

```

3: (
public
  Value
  : Extended;
);
end

```

TExtended80Rec models the memory layout of an extended value when using software floating point math.

### 75.13.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method      | Description                           |
|----------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1574</a> | BuildUp     |                                       |
| <a href="#">1574</a> | Exponent    | Exponent of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1573</a> | Fraction    | Fraction of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1573</a> | Mantissa    | Mantissa of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1574</a> | SpecialType | Is the floating point value special ? |

### 75.13.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                      |
|----------------------|------------|--------|----------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1574</a> | Exp        | rw     | Exponent representation          |
| <a href="#">1574</a> | Sign       | rw     | Sign of the floating point value |

### 75.13.3 TExtended80Rec.Mantissa

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: Mantissa returns the Mantissa part (bit pattern of the significand, skipping the hidden bit) of the floating point value.

See also: TExtended80Rec.Fraction ([1573](#)), TExtended80Rec.Exponent ([1574](#)), TExtended80Rec.SpecialType ([1574](#))

### 75.13.4 TExtended80Rec.Fraction

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: Fraction returns the fraction (value after decimal) of the floating point value.

See also: TExtended80Rec.Mantissa ([1573](#)), TExtended80Rec.Exponent ([1574](#)), TExtended80Rec.SpecialType ([1574](#))

### 75.13.5 TExtended80Rec.Exponent

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` returns the exponent (the X in the  $m \cdot 2^X$  representation) of the floating point value.

See also: `TExtended80Rec.Fraction` (1573), `TExtended80Rec.Mantissa` (1573), `TExtended80Rec.SpecialType` (1574)

### 75.13.6 TExtended80Rec.SpecialType

Synopsis: Is the floating point value special ?

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` returns special characteristics of the floating point value, if any. See `TFloatSpecial` (1385) for an explanation of the various special values.

See also: `TExtended80Rec.Fraction` (1573), `TExtended80Rec.Mantissa` (1573), `TExtended80Rec.Exponent` (1574), `TFloatSpecial` (1385)

### 75.13.7 TExtended80Rec.BuildUp

Declaration: `procedure BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;  
const _Exponent: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 75.13.8 TExtended80Rec.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 75.13.9 TExtended80Rec.Exp

Synopsis: Exponent representation

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exponent` returns the internal bit representation of the exponent of the floating point value.

See also: `TExtended80Rec.Sign` (1574), `TExtended80Rec.Exponent` (1574)

## 75.14 tinterfaceentry

```
tinterfaceentry = record
private
    function GetIID : PGuid;
    function
        GetIIDStr : PShortString;
public
    property IID : PGuid;
    property
        IIDStr : PShortString;
        IIDRef : ^PGuid;
        VTable : Pointer;
case
    Integer of
1: (
public
    IOffset : SizeUInt;
);
2: (
public
    IOffsetAsCodePtr
        : CodePointer;
    IIDStrRef : ^PShortString;
    IType : tinterfaceentrytype
        ;
);
end
```

tinterfaceentry is used to store the list of Interfaces of a class. This list is stored as an array of tinterfaceentry records.

### 75.14.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                                      |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1575</a> | IID        | r      | Unique GUID for this interface.                  |
| <a href="#">1575</a> | IIDStr     | r      | Pointer to GUID string. Always assigned for COM. |

### 75.14.2 tinterfaceentry.IID

Synopsis: Unique GUID for this interface.

Declaration: Property IID : PGuid

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 75.14.3 tinterfaceentry.IIDStr

Synopsis: Pointer to GUID string. Always assigned for COM.

Declaration: Property IIDStr : PShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 75.15 TSingleRec

```

TSingleRec = packed record
private
  Bias = $7F;
  function GetExp
    : QWord;
  procedure SetExp(e: QWord);
  function GetSign : Boolean
  ;
  procedure SetSign(s: Boolean);
  function GetFrac : QWord;
  procedure
    SetFrac(e: QWord);
public
  function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean
    ) : QWord;
  function Fraction : ValReal;
  function Exponent : LongInt
  ;
  property Sign : Boolean;
  property Exp : QWord;
  property Frac
    : QWord;
  function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial;
  procedure BuildUp
    (const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;
     const _Exponent: LongInt);
case Byte of
0: (
public
  Bytes : Array
    [0..3] of Byte;
);
1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..1] of Word;
);
2
  : (
public
  Data : DWord;
);
3: (
public
  Value : Single;
);
end

```

`TsingleRec` models the memory layout of a double value when using software floating point math.

### 75.15.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description                           |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1578</a> | <code>BuildUp</code>     |                                       |
| <a href="#">1577</a> | <code>Exponent</code>    | Exponent of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1577</a> | <code>Fraction</code>    | Fraction of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1577</a> | <code>Mantissa</code>    | Mantissa of the floating point value  |
| <a href="#">1578</a> | <code>SpecialType</code> | Is the floating point value special ? |

### 75.15.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties        | Access | Description                        |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------|------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1578</a> | <code>Exp</code>  | rw     | Exponent bitpattern representation |
| <a href="#">1578</a> | <code>Frac</code> | rw     | Fractional part of single          |
| <a href="#">1578</a> | <code>Sign</code> | rw     | Sign of the floating point value   |

### 75.15.3 TSingleRec.Mantissa

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `Mantissa` returns the Mantissa part (significand bitpattern without hidden bit) of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Fraction` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.Exponent` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.SpecialType` ([1578](#))

### 75.15.4 TSingleRec.Fraction

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : ValReal`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` returns the fraction (after decimal) of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Mantissa` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.Exponent` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.SpecialType` ([1578](#))

### 75.15.5 TSingleRec.Exponent

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` returns the exponent ( $X$  in  $m \times 2^X$  representation) of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Fraction` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.Mantissa` ([1577](#)), `TsingleRec.SpecialType` ([1578](#))

### 75.15.6 TSingleRec.SpecialType

Synopsis: Is the floating point value special ?

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` returns special characteristics of the floating point value, if any. See `TFloatSpecial` (1385) for an explanation of the various special values.

See also: `TSingleRec.Fraction` (1577), `TSingleRec.Mantissa` (1577), `TSingleRec.Exponent` (1577), `TFloatSpecial` (1385)

### 75.15.7 TSingleRec.BuildUp

Declaration: `procedure BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;  
const _Exponent: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 75.15.8 TSingleRec.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 75.15.9 TSingleRec.Exp

Synopsis: Exponent bitpattern representation

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` returns the internal bit representation of the exponent of the floating point value.

See also: `TSingleRec.Sign` (1578), `TSingleRec.Exponent` (1577)

### 75.15.10 TSingleRec.Frac

Synopsis: Fractional part of single

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the fractional part of the `Single`. This is the bit pattern representing the fractional part including the preceding 1. (The mantissa is that bit pattern without the preceding 1)

See also: `Frac` (1466)

## 75.16 TVmt

```

TVmt = record
public
  vInstanceSize : SizeInt;
  vInstanceSize2
    : SizeInt;
  vParentRef : PPVmt;
  vClassName : PShortString;
  vDynamicTable
    : Pointer;
  vMethodTable : Pointer;
  vFieldTable : Pointer;
  vTypeInfo
    : Pointer;
  vInitTable : Pointer;
  vAutoTable : Pointer;
  vIntfTable
    : pinterfacetable;
  vMsgStrPtr : pstringmessagetable;
  vDestroy
    : CodePointer;
  vNewInstance : CodePointer;
  vFreeInstance : CodePointer
;
  vSafeCallException : CodePointer;
  vDefaultHandler : CodePointer
;
  vAfterConstruction : CodePointer;
  vBeforeDestruction : CodePointer
;
  vDefaultHandlerStr : CodePointer;
  vDispatch : CodePointer;
  vDispatchStr : CodePointer;
  vEquals : CodePointer;
  vGetHashCode
    : CodePointer;
  vToString : CodePointer;
private
  function GetvParent
    : PVmt;
public
  property vParent : PVmt;
end

```

TVMT is a record describing the VMT of a class. It's various fields represent the available information in the VMT, as far as it is common to all classes.

### 75.16.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description           |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-----------------------|
| <a href="#">1580</a> | vParent    | r      | Pointer to parent VMT |

### 75.16.2 TVmt.vParent

Synopsis: Pointer to parent VMT

Declaration: `Property vParent : PVmt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 75.17 IDispatch

### 75.17.1 Description

IDispatch is the pascal definition of the Windows Dispatch interface definition.

See also: IUnknown ([1583](#))

### 75.17.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method           | Description                              |
|----------------------|------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1580</a> | GetIDsOfNames    | Return IDs of named procedures           |
| <a href="#">1580</a> | GetTypeInfo      | Return type information about properties |
| <a href="#">1580</a> | GetTypeInfoCount | Return number of properties.             |
| <a href="#">1581</a> | Invoke           | Invoke a dispatch method                 |

### 75.17.3 IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount

Synopsis: Return number of properties.

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfoCount(out count: LongInt) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 75.17.4 IDispatch.GetTypeInfo

Synopsis: Return type information about properties

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfo(Index: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt; out TypeInfo)  
: HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 75.17.5 IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames

Synopsis: Return IDs of named procedures

Declaration: `function GetIDsOfNames(const iid: TGuid; names: Pointer;  
NameCount: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt;  
DispIDs: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the ID of a procedure.

### 75.17.6 IDispatch.Invoke

Synopsis: Invoke a dispatch method

Declaration: `function Invoke(DispID: LongInt; const iid: TGuid; LocaleID: LongInt; Flags: Word; var params; VarResult: pointer; ExcepInfo: pointer; ArgErr: pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

## 75.18 IEnumerable

### 75.18.1 Description

`IEnumerable` can be used to get an enumerator from a class. If a class implements `IEnumerable`, it can return an enumerator interface `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)).

See also: `IEnumerator` ([1581](#))

### 75.18.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                     | Description                                   |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1581</a> | <code>GetEnumerator</code> | Return an enumerator interface for this class |

### 75.18.3 IEnumerable.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator interface for this class

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : IEnumerator`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns a new `IEnumerator` ([1581](#)) interface for this class. This is called by the compiler whenever a `for in` loop is encountered in the source code to retrieve the enumerator instance.

See also: `IEnumerator` ([1581](#))

## 75.19 IEnumerator

### 75.19.1 Description

`IEnumerator` is the interface needed by the `For ... in ...` language construct, when operating on classes. It contains all methods that the compiler needs to implement a loop.

A `for in` loop like the following:

```
For O in MyObject do
  begin
    // do things
  end;
```

is treated by the compiler as equivalent to the following code:

```

Var
  I : IEnumerator;
  O : TObject;

begin
  I:=MyObject.GetEnumerator;
  While I.MoveNext do
    begin
      O:=I.GetCurrent;
      // Do things
    end;
  end.

```

Any class that implements the `IEnumerable` interface must be able to return an `IEnumerator` instance for the compiler to use in a `For in` loop.

See also: `IEnumerable` ([1581](#))

### 75.19.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                  | Description  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1582</a> | <code>GetCurrent</code> | Returns the current element in the iteration cycle |
| <a href="#">1582</a> | <code>MoveNext</code>   | Move to the next value                             |
| <a href="#">1583</a> | <code>Reset</code>      | Reset the pointer                                  |

### 75.19.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties           | Access         | Description             |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| <a href="#">1583</a> | <code>Current</code> | <code>r</code> | Return the current item |

### 75.19.4 `IEnumerator.GetCurrent`

**Synopsis:** Returns the current element in the iteration cycle

**Declaration:** `function GetCurrent : TObject`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetCurrent` should return the object instance representing the current value in the `for in` loop. `GetCurrent` will always be called immediately after `IEnumerator.MoveNext` ([1582](#)) returned `True`.

**Remark** The actual return type of the interface should not necessarily be `TObject`, it can be any type. The compiler will check the actual return type with the type of the loop variable, and they should match.

See also: `IEnumerator.MoveNext` ([1582](#)), `IEnumerator.Reset` ([1583](#))

### 75.19.5 `IEnumerator.MoveNext`

**Synopsis:** Move to the next value

**Declaration:** `function MoveNext : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MoveNext` should move the current item pointer to the next available item. It should return `True` if an item is available, `False` if no more items are available. The first time it is called It will be called at the beginning of the for loop, so it should position the enumerator on the first value (if there is one). After `MoveNext` has returned `True`, `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1582) will be called to retrieve the item.

See also: `IEnumerator.Reset` (1583), `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1582)

### 75.19.6 IEnumerator.Reset

**Synopsis:** Reset the pointer

**Declaration:** `procedure Reset`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Reset` can be implemented to put the pointer at the start of the list. It is not mandatory to implement this method, the compiler does not use it.

See also: `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1582), `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1582)

### 75.19.7 IEnumerator.Current

**Synopsis:** Return the current item

**Declaration:** `Property Current : TObject`

**Visibility:** default

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Current` simply is the redefinition of `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1582) as a property. It is read-only.

See also: `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1582), `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1582)

## 75.20 IInvokable

### 75.20.1 Description

`IInvokable` is a descendent of `IInterface` (1367), compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state, so Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) is generated for it.

See also: `IDispatch` (1580), `IInterface` (1367)

## 75.21 IUnknown

### 75.21.1 Description

`IUnknown` is defined by windows. It's the basic interface which all COM objects must implement. The definition does not contain any code.

See also: `IInterface` (1367), `IDispatch` (1580), `IInvokable` (1583)

### 75.21.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method         | Description                               |
|----------------------|----------------|---|
| <a href="#">1584</a> | QueryInterface | Return pointer to VMT table of interface  |
| <a href="#">1584</a> | \_AddRef       | Increase reference count of the interface |
| <a href="#">1584</a> | \_Release      | Decrease reference count of the interface |

### 75.21.3 IUnknown.QueryInterface

Synopsis: Return pointer to VMT table of interface

Declaration: `function QueryInterface(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

### 75.21.4 IUnknown.\_AddRef

Synopsis: Increase reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _AddRef : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: IUnknown.\_Release ([1584](#))

### 75.21.5 IUnknown.\_Release

Synopsis: Decrease reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _Release : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: IUnknown.\_AddRef ([1584](#))

## 75.22 TAggregatedObject

### 75.22.1 Description

TAggregatedObject implements an object whose lifetime is governed by an external object (or interface). It does not implement the IUnknown interface by itself, but delegates all methods to the controller object, as exposed in the Controller ([1585](#)) property. In effect, the reference count of the aggregated object is the same as that of its controller, and additionally, all interfaces of the controller are exposed by the aggregated object.

Note that the aggregated object maintains a non-counted reference to the controller.

Aggregated objects should be used when using delegation to implement reference counted objects: the delegated interfaces can be implemented safely by TAggregatedObject descendents.

See also: Create ([1585](#)), Controller ([1585](#))

### 75.22.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method | Description                                |
|----------------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1585</a> | Create | Create a new instance of TAggregatedObject |

### 75.22.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description          |
|----------------------|------------|--------|----------------------|
| <a href="#">1585</a> | Controller | r      | Controlling instance |

### 75.22.4 TAggregatedObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAggregatedObject`

Declaration: constructor `Create(const aController: IUnknown)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TAggregatedObject` on the heap, and stores a reference to `aController`, so it can be exposed in the `Controller` ([1585](#)) property.

Errors: If not enough memory is present on the heap, an exception will be raised. If the `aController` is `Nil`, exceptions will occur when any of the `TAggregatedObject` methods (actually, the `IUnknown` methods) are used.

See also: `Controller` ([1585](#))

### 75.22.5 TAggregatedObject.Controller

Synopsis: Controlling instance

Declaration: Property `Controller : IUnknown`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Controller` exposes the controlling object, with all interfaces it has.

The value of the controller is set when the `TAggregatedObject` instance is created.

See also: `TAggregatedObject.Create` ([1585](#))

## 75.23 TContainedObject

### 75.23.1 Description

`TContainedObject` is the base class for contained objects, i.e. objects that do not implement a reference counting mechanism themselves, but are owned by some other object which handles the reference counting mechanism. It implements the `IUnknown` interface and, more specifically, the `QueryInterface` method of `IUnknown`.

See also: `IInterface` ([1367](#))

### 75.23.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces              | Description                                  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1367</a> | <code>IInterface</code> | Basic interface for all COM based interfaces |

## 75.24 TInterfacedObject

### 75.24.1 Description

TInterfacedObject is a descendent of TObject (1587) which implements the IUnknown (1583) interface. It can be used as a base class for all classes which need reference counting.

See also: IUnknown (1583), TObject (1587)

### 75.24.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces | Description                                  |
|----------------------|------------|--|
| <a href="#">1583</a> | IUnknown   | Basic interface for all COM-based interfaces |

### 75.24.3 Method overview

| Page                 | Method            | Description                      |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1586</a> | AfterConstruction | Handle reference count properly. |
| <a href="#">1587</a> | BeforeDestruction | Check reference count.           |
| <a href="#">1586</a> | destroy           | Destroy interfaced object        |
| <a href="#">1587</a> | NewInstance       | Create a new instance            |

### 75.24.4 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                        |
|----------------------|------------|--------|------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1587</a> | RefCount   | r      | Return the current reference count |

### 75.24.5 TInterfacedObject.destroy

Synopsis: Destroy interfaced object

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy overrides the default destructor to clean up: it explicitly sets all counters to zero.

See also: IUnknown.\_Release (1584)

### 75.24.6 TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Handle reference count properly.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: AfterConstruction overrides the basic method in TObject and adds some additional reference count handling.

Errors: None.

See also: BeforeDestruction (1587)

### 75.24.7 TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Check reference count.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` overrides the basic method in `TObject` and adds a reference count check: if the reference count is not zero, an error occurs.

Errors: A runtime-error 204 will be generated if the reference count is nonzero when the object is destroyed.

See also: `AfterConstruction` ([1586](#))

### 75.24.8 TInterfacedObject.NewInstance

Synopsis: Create a new instance

Declaration: `class function NewInstance : TObject; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewInstance` initializes a new instance of `TInterfacedObject` ([1586](#))

Errors: None.

### 75.24.9 TInterfacedObject.RefCount

Synopsis: Return the current reference count

Declaration: `Property RefCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RefCount` returns the current reference count. This reference count cannot be manipulated, except through the methods of `IUnknown` ([1583](#)). When it reaches zero, the class instance is destroyed.

See also: `IUnknown` ([1583](#))

## 75.25 TObject

### 75.25.1 Description

`TObject` is the parent root class for all classes in Object Pascal. If a class has no parent class explicitly declared, it is dependent on `TObject`. `TObject` introduces class methods that deal with the class' type information, and contains all necessary methods to create an instance at runtime, and to dispatch messages to the correct method (both string and integer messages).

See also: `TClass` ([1381](#))

**75.25.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                              | Description   |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1594</a> | <code>AfterConstruction</code>      | Method called after the constructor was called.                     |
| <a href="#">1594</a> | <code>BeforeDestruction</code>      | Method called before the destructor is called.                      |
| <a href="#">1591</a> | <code>ClassInfo</code>              | Return a pointer to the type information for this class.            |
| <a href="#">1591</a> | <code>ClassName</code>              | Return the current class name.                                      |
| <a href="#">1592</a> | <code>ClassNameIs</code>            | Check whether the class name equals the given name.                 |
| <a href="#">1592</a> | <code>ClassParent</code>            | Return the parent class.  |
| <a href="#">1591</a> | <code>ClassType</code>              | Return a "class of" pointer for the current class                   |
| <a href="#">1591</a> | <code>CleanupInstance</code>        | Finalize the class instance.  |
| <a href="#">1588</a> | <code>Create</code>                 | <code>TObject</code> Constructor                                    |
| <a href="#">1590</a> | <code>DefaultHandler</code>         | Default handler for integer message handlers.                       |
| <a href="#">1594</a> | <code>DefaultHandlerStr</code>      | Default handler for string messages.                                |
| <a href="#">1589</a> | <code>Destroy</code>                | <code>TObject</code> destructor.                                    |
| <a href="#">1594</a> | <code>Dispatch</code>               | Dispatch an integer message   |
| <a href="#">1595</a> | <code>DispatchStr</code>            | Dispatch a string message.  |
| <a href="#">1597</a> | <code>Equals</code>                 | Check if two objects are equal.                                     |
| <a href="#">1593</a> | <code>FieldAddress</code>           | Return the address of a field.                                      |
| <a href="#">1590</a> | <code>Free</code>                   | Check for <code>Nil</code> and call destructor.                     |
| <a href="#">1589</a> | <code>FreeInstance</code>           | Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.    |
| <a href="#">1597</a> | <code>GetHashCode</code>            | Return a hash code for the object                                   |
| <a href="#">1595</a> | <code>GetInterface</code>           | Return a reference to an interface                                  |
| <a href="#">1595</a> | <code>GetInterfaceByStr</code>      | Return an interface based on its GUID                               |
| <a href="#">1596</a> | <code>GetInterfaceEntry</code>      | Return the interface table entry by GUID                            |
| <a href="#">1596</a> | <code>GetInterfaceEntryByStr</code> | Return the interface table entry by string                          |
| <a href="#">1596</a> | <code>GetInterfaceTable</code>      | Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class |
| <a href="#">1596</a> | <code>GetInterfaceWeak</code>       | Get a reference to an interface, not increasing the reference count |
| <a href="#">1592</a> | <code>InheritsFrom</code>           | Check whether class is an ancestor.                                 |
| <a href="#">1590</a> | <code>InitInstance</code>           | Initialize a new class instance.                                    |
| <a href="#">1592</a> | <code>InstanceSize</code>           | Return the size of an instance.                                     |
| <a href="#">1593</a> | <code>MethodAddress</code>          | Return the address of a method                                      |
| <a href="#">1593</a> | <code>MethodName</code>             | Return the name of a method.  |
| <a href="#">1589</a> | <code>newinstance</code>            | Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance                      |
| <a href="#">1597</a> | <code>QualifiedClassName</code>     | Fully qualified classname   |
| <a href="#">1590</a> | <code>SafeCallException</code>      | Handle exception object   |
| <a href="#">1593</a> | <code>StringMessageTable</code>     | Return a pointer to the string message table.                       |
| <a href="#">1598</a> | <code>ToString</code>               | Return a string representation for the object                       |
| <a href="#">1597</a> | <code>UnitName</code>               | Unit name   |

**75.25.3 TObject.Create**

Synopsis: `TObject` Constructor

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TObject`. Currently it does nothing (except allocating memory for the new instance).

Note that allocating the memory for the object instance happens in hidden code generated as part of every constructor, not only in `TObject.Create`. The hidden code calls `NewInstance` ([1589](#)).

See also: [Destroy \(1589\)](#)

### 75.25.4 TObject.Destroy

Synopsis: TObject destructor.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` is the destructor of `TObject`. It will clean up the memory assigned to the instance. Descendent classes should override `destroy` if they want to do additional clean-up. No other destructor should be implemented.

It is bad programming practice to call `Destroy` directly. It is better to call the `Free (1590)` method, because that one will check first if `Self` is different from `Nil`.

To clean up an instance and reset the reference to the instance, it is best to use the `FreeAndNil (1706)` function.

See also: [Create \(1588\)](#), [Free \(1590\)](#)

### 75.25.5 TObject.newinstance

Synopsis: Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance

Declaration: `class function newInstance : TObject; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewInstance` allocates memory on the heap for a new instance of the current class. If the memory was allocated, the class will be initialized by a call to `InitInstance (1590)`. The function returns the newly initialized instance.

This method can be overridden to implement e.g. object pooling. Note that the method is responsible for correctly initializing the object, i.e. zeroing out the new instance.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, a `Nil` pointer may be returned, or an exception may be raised.

See also: [Create \(1588\)](#), [InitInstance \(1590\)](#), [InstanceSize \(1592\)](#), [FreeInstance \(1589\)](#)

### 75.25.6 TObject.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeInstance` cleans up an instance of the current class, and releases the heap memory occupied by the class instance.

See also: [Destroy \(1589\)](#), [InitInstance \(1590\)](#), [NewInstance \(1589\)](#)

### 75.25.7 TObject.SafeCallException

Synopsis: Handle exception object

Declaration: `function SafeCallException(exceptobject: TObject;  
exceptaddr: CodePointer) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SafeCallException` should be overridden to handle exceptions in a method marked with the `savecall` directive. The implementation in `TObject` simply returns zero.

### 75.25.8 TObject.DefaultHandler

Synopsis: Default handler for integer message handlers.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandler(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DefaultHandler` is the default handler for messages. If a message has an unknown message ID (i.e. does not appear in the table with integer message handlers), then it will be passed to `DefaultHandler` by the `Dispatch` (1594) method.

See also: `Dispatch` (1594), `DefaultHandlerStr` (1594)

### 75.25.9 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Check for `Nil` and call destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: public

Description: `Free` will check the `Self` pointer and calls `Destroy` (1589) if it is different from `Nil`. This is a safer method than calling `Destroy` directly. If a reference to the object must be reset as well (a recommended technique), then the function `FreeAndNil` (1706) should be called.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` (1589), `FreeAndNil` (1706)

### 75.25.10 TObject.InitInstance

Synopsis: Initialize a new class instance.

Declaration: `class function InitInstance(instance: pointer) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `InitInstance` initializes the memory pointer to by `Instance`. This means that the VMT is initialized, and the interface pointers are set up correctly. The function returns the newly initialized instance.

See also: `NewInstance` (1589), `Create` (1588)

### 75.25.11 TObject.CleanupInstance

Synopsis: Finalize the class instance.

Declaration: `procedure CleanupInstance`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CleanUpInstance` finalizes the instance, i.e. takes care of all reference counted objects, by decreasing their reference count by 1, and freeing them if their count reaches zero.

Normally, `CleanupInstance` should never be called, it is called automatically when the object is freed with it's constructor.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([1589](#)), `Free` ([1590](#)), `InitInstance` ([1590](#))

### 75.25.12 TObject.ClassType

Synopsis: Return a "class of" pointer for the current class

Declaration: `class function ClassType : TClass`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClassType` returns a `TClass` ([1381](#)) class type reference for the current class.

See also: `TClass` ([1381](#)), `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassName` ([1591](#))

### 75.25.13 TObject.ClassInfo

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the type information for this class.

Declaration: `class function ClassInfo : pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClassInfo` returns a pointer to the type information for this class. This pointer can be used in the various type information routines.

### 75.25.14 TObject.ClassName

Synopsis: Return the current class name.

Declaration: `class function ClassName : shortstring`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClassName` returns the class name for the current class. To check for the class name, you can use the `ClassNameIs` ([1592](#)) class method.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassType` ([1591](#)), `ClassNameIs` ([1592](#))

**75.25.15 TObject.ClassNameIs**

Synopsis: Check whether the class name equals the given name.

Declaration: `class function ClassNameIs(const name: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassNameIs` checks whether `Name` equals the class name. It takes of case sensitivity.

See also: `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassType` ([1591](#)), `ClassName` ([1591](#))

**75.25.16 TObject.ClassParent**

Synopsis: Return the parent class.

Declaration: `class function ClassParent : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassParent` returns the class of the parent class of the current class. This is always different from `Nil`, except for `TObject`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassType` ([1591](#)), `ClassNameIs` ([1591](#))

**75.25.17 TObject.InstanceSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of an instance.

Declaration: `class function InstanceSize : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstanceSize` returns the number of bytes an instance takes in memory. This is Just the memory occupied by the class structure, and does not take into account any additional memory that might be allocated by the constructor of the class.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitInstance` ([1590](#)), `ClassName` ([1591](#)), `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassType` ([1591](#))

**75.25.18 TObject.InheritsFrom**

Synopsis: Check whether class is an ancestor.

Declaration: `class function InheritsFrom(aclass: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `InheritsFrom` returns `True` if `AClass` is an ancestor class from the current class, and returns `false` if it is not.

See also: `ClassName` ([1591](#)), `ClassInfo` ([1591](#)), `ClassType` ([1591](#)), `TClass` ([1381](#))

### 75.25.19 TObject.StringMessageTable

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the string message table.

Declaration: `class function StringMessageTable : pstringmessagetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `StringMessageTable` returns a pointer to the string message table, which can be used to look up methods for dispatching a string message. It is used by the `DispatchStr` (1595) method.

Errors: If there are no string message handlers, `nil` is returned.

See also: `DispatchStr` (1595), `Dispatch` (1594)

### 75.25.20 TObject.MethodAddress

Synopsis: Return the address of a method

Declaration: `class function MethodAddress(const name: shortstring) : CodePointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodAddress` returns the address of a method, searching the method by its name. The `Name` parameter specifies which method should be taken. The search is conducted in a case-insensitive manner.

Errors: If no matching method is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `MethodName` (1593), `FieldAddress` (1593)

### 75.25.21 TObject.MethodName

Synopsis: Return the name of a method.

Declaration: `class function MethodName(address: CodePointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodName` searches the VMT for a method with the specified address and returns the name of the method.

Errors: If no method with the matching address is found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `MethodAddress` (1593), `FieldAddress` (1593)

### 75.25.22 TObject.FieldAddress

Synopsis: Return the address of a field.

Declaration: `function FieldAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FieldAddress` returns the address of the field with name `name`. The address is the address of the field in the current class instance.

Errors: If no field with the specified name is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `MethodAddress` (1593), `MethodName` (1593)

### 75.25.23 TObject.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Method called after the constructor was called.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` is a method called after the constructor was called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed after the constructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `BeforeDestruction` ([1594](#)), `Create` ([1588](#))

### 75.25.24 TObject.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Method called before the destructor is called.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is a method called before the destructor is called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed before the destructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `AfterConstruction` ([1594](#)), `Destroy` ([1589](#)), `Free` ([1590](#))

### 75.25.25 TObject.DefaultHandlerStr

Synopsis: Default handler for string messages.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandlerStr(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DefaultHandlerStr` is called for string messages which have no handler associated with them in the string message handler table. The implementation of `DefaultHandlerStr` in `TObject` does nothing and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific message handling behaviour.

See also: `DispatchStr` ([1595](#)), `Dispatch` ([1594](#)), `DefaultHandler` ([1590](#))

### 75.25.26 TObject.Dispatch

Synopsis: Dispatch an integer message

Declaration: `procedure Dispatch(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Dispatch` looks in the message handler table for a handler that handles `message`. The message is identified by the first dword (cardinal) in the message structure.

If no matching message handler is found, the message is passed to the `DefaultHandler` (1590) method, which can be overridden by descendent classes to add custom handling of messages.

See also: `DispatchStr` (1595), `DefaultHandler` (1590)

### 75.25.27 TObject.DispatchStr

**Synopsis:** Dispatch a string message.

**Declaration:** `procedure DispatchStr(var message); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `DispatchStr` extracts the message identifier from `Message` and checks the message handler table to see if a handler for the message is found, and calls the handler, passing along the message. If no handler is found, the default `DefaultHandlerStr` (1594) is called.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `DefaultHandlerStr` (1594), `Dispatch` (1594), `DefaultHandler` (1590)

### 75.25.28 TObject.GetInterface

**Synopsis:** Return a reference to an interface

**Declaration:** `function GetInterface(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : Boolean`  
`function GetInterface(const iidstr: shortstring; out obj) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterface` scans the interface tables and returns a reference to the interface `iid`. The reference is stored in `Obj` which should be an interface reference. It returns `True` if the interface was found, `False` if not.

The reference count of the interface is increased by this call.

**Errors:** If no interface was found, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetInterfaceByStr` (1595)

### 75.25.29 TObject.GetInterfaceByStr

**Synopsis:** Return an interface based on its GUID

**Declaration:** `function GetInterfaceByStr(const iidstr: shortstring; out obj) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterfaceByStr` returns in `obj` a pointer to the interface identified by `iidstr`. The function returns `True` if the interface is indeed implemented by the class, or `False` otherwise.

The `iidstr` is the unique GUID by which the interface was declared.

**Errors:** The function returns false if the requested interface is not implemented.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1596), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1596)

**75.25.30 TObject.GetInterfaceWeak**

Synopsis: Get a reference to an interface, not increasing the reference count

Declaration: `function GetInterfaceWeak(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceWeak` performs the same function as `GetInterface` (1595), but unlike the latter, it will not increase the reference count of the interface.

See also: `TObject.GetInterface` (1595)

**75.25.31 TObject.GetInterfaceEntry**

Synopsis: Return the interface table entry by GUID

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceEntry(const iid: TGuid) : pinterfaceentry`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceEntry` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iid` (the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1595), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1596)

**75.25.32 TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr**

Synopsis: Return the interface table entry by string

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceEntryByStr(const iidstr: shortstring)  
: pinterfaceentry`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceEntryByStr` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iidstr` (A string representation of the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1595), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1596)

**75.25.33 TObject.GetInterfaceTable**

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceTable : pinterfacetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceTable` returns a pointer to the internal table of implemented interfaces for a class. The result will always point to a valid address, if the class implements no interfaces the `EntryCount` field of the interface table will be zero.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1595), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1596)

### 75.25.34 TObject.UnitName

Synopsis: Unit name

Declaration: `class function UnitName : ansistring`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnitName` returns the unit name in which the class was defined. The name is obtained from the class definition data the compiler generates for each class.

### 75.25.35 TObject.QualifiedClassName

Synopsis: Fully qualified classname

Declaration: `class function QualifiedClassName : ansistring`

Visibility: public

Description: `QualifiedClassName` is the classname `TObject.ClassName` (1591) prepended with the unit name `TObject.UnitName` (1597) of the unit in which the class is defined. As such, this is a unique name for each class in the program.

See also: `TObject.ClassName` (1591), `TObject.UnitName` (1597)

### 75.25.36 TObject.Equals

Synopsis: Check if two objects are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Equals` returns `True` if the object instance pointer (`Self`) equals the instance pointer `Obj`.  
Descendent classes can override to check properties etc. in case the instance pointers are different.

See also: `TObject.GetHashCode` (1597), `TObject.ToString` (1598)

### 75.25.37 TObject.GetHashCode

Synopsis: Return a hash code for the object

Declaration: `function GetHashCode : PtrInt; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetHashCode` should return a hash code for the object. By default, the numerical (integer) address of `Self` is returned.

Descendent classes can use this to generate better suitable values to be used in a hash table.

See also: `TObject.ToString` (1598), `TObject.Equals` (1597)

### 75.25.38 TObject.ToString

Synopsis: Return a string representation for the object

Declaration: `function ToString : ansistring; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToString` returns by default the class name of the object. It is useful during sending of debug messages.

Descendent classes can override this method to give a better description of the object than just the class name.

See also: `TObject.GetHashCode` ([1597](#)), `TObject.Equals` ([1597](#))

## Chapter 76

# Reference for unit 'sysutils'

### 76.1 Used units

Table 76.1: Used units by unit 'sysutils'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| errors   | <a href="#">716</a>  |
| sysconst | ??                   |
| Unix     | <a href="#">2050</a> |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 76.2 Overview

This documentation describes the `sysutils` unit. The `sysutils` unit was started by Gertjan Schouten, and completed by Michael Van Canneyt. It aims to be compatible to the Delphi `sysutils` unit, but in contrast with the latter, it is designed to work on multiple platforms. It is implemented on all supported platforms.

### 76.3 Type Helpers for basic types

The `sysutils` unit contains type helpers for basic language types: boolean, ordinals (shortint, smallint, byte, word, integer, cardinal, int64, wqord, nativeint, nativeuint), strings, floating-point and GUID values. They can be used as-is, or they can be descended from to form your own type helpers.

See also: `TGuidHelper` ([1827](#)), `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TBooleanHelper` ([1798](#)), `TByteBoolHelper` ([1800](#)), `TWordBoolHelper` ([1896](#)), `TLongBoolHelper` ([1835](#)), `TSingleHelper` ([1857](#)), `TDoubleHelper` ([1808](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1821](#))

## 76.4 Localization support

Localization support depends on various constants and structures being initialized correctly. On Windows and OS/2 this is done automatically: a widestring manager is installed by default which helps taking care of the current locale when performing various operations on strings. The various internationalization settings (date/time format, currency, language etc) are also initialized correctly on these platforms.

On Unixes, the widestring support is in a separate unit: `cwstring`, which loads the various needed functions from the C library. It should be added manually to the `uses` clause of your program. No internationalization (or localisation) settings are applied by this unit, these must be initialized separately by including the `locale` unit in the `uses` clause of your program.

## 76.5 Unicode and codepage awareness

The many functions that deal with filenames in the `sysutils` routines have been changed from `AnsiString` to `RawByteString` so they do not perform implicit codepage conversions to the ANSI code page. At the same time, overloaded versions that accept a Unicode string have been created.

For routines that access actual OS functions using single-byte string APIs, the strings are converted to ensure that the OS routine receives a string with the correct encoding when using single-byte strings. This encoding is normally the `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` (1410) encoding.

On systems with a Unicode I/O API (2-byte strings), the native API is used, meaning that Unicode strings will be passed on as-is, but single-byte strings will be converted (implicitly) to Unicode.

The following is a minimal list of functions that have been changed and duplicated:

Table 76.2:

| Name                                | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>FileCreate</code> (1677)      | Create a new file and return a handle to it.               |
| <code>FileOpen</code> (1682)        | Open an existing file and return a file handle             |
| <code>FileExists</code> (1679)      | Check whether a particular file exists in the file system. |
| <code>DirectoryExists</code> (1664) | Check whether a directory exists in the file system.       |
| <code>FileSetDate</code> (1686)     | Set the date of a file.                                    |
| <code>FileGetAttr</code> (1680)     | Return attributes of a file.                               |
| <code>FileSetAttr</code> (1686)     | Set the attributes of a file.                              |
| <code>DeleteFile</code> (1663)      | Delete a file from the file system.                        |
| <code>RenameFile</code> (1726)      | Rename a file.   |
| <code>FileSearch</code> (1684)      | Search for a file in a path.                               |
| <code>ExeSearch</code> (1670)       | Search for an executable                                   |
| <code>FindFirst</code> (1688)       | Start a file search and return a findhandle                |
| <code>FindNext</code> (1689)        | Find the next entry in a findhandle.                       |
| <code>FindClose</code> (1687)       | Close a find handle  |
| <code>FileIsReadOnly</code> (1682)  | Check whether a file is read-only.                         |
| <code>GetCurrentDir</code> (1708)   | Return the current working directory of the application.   |
| <code>SetCurrentDir</code> (1728)   | Set the current directory of the application.              |

The following functions do not interact with the OS, but may nevertheless change the codepage of the strings involved in their operation:

Table 76.3:

| Name                                | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| ChangeFileExt (1650)                | Change the extension of a filename.   |
| ExtractFilePath (1675)              | Extract the path from a filename.   |
| ExtractFileDrive (1674)             | Extract the drive part from a filename.   |
| ExtractFileName (1674)              | Extract the filename part from a full path filename.                                  |
| ExtractFileExt (1674)               | Return the extension from a filename.   |
| ExtractFileDir (1673)               | Extract the drive and directory part of a filename.                                   |
| ExtractShortPathName (1676)         | Returns a 8.3 path name   |
| ExpandFileName (1671)               | Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.                                   |
| ExpandFileNameCase (1671)           | Expand a filename entered as case insensitive to the full path as stored on the disk. |
| ExtractRelativepath (1675)          | Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.                      |
| ExpandUNCFileName (1672)            | Expand a relative filename to an absolute UNC filename.                               |
| IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1716) | Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.                            |
| IncludeTrailingBackslash (1716)     | Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.                            |
| ExcludeTrailingBackslash (1669)     | Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.                        |
| ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1669) | Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.                        |
| IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter (1715)  | Prepend a path delimiter if there is not already one.                                 |
| ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter (1669)  | Strip the leading path delimiter of a path  |
| IsPathDelimiter (1720)              | Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?                              |
| DoDirSeparators (1665)              | Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.                |
| SetDirSeparators (1729)             | Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.                       |
| GetDirs (1708)                      | Return a list of directory names from a path.   |
| ConcatPaths (1654)                  | Concatenate an array of paths to form a single path                                   |
| GetEnvironmentVariable (1710)       | Return the value of an environment variable.  |

## 76.6 Miscellaneous conversion routines

Functions for various conversions.

Table 76.4:

| Name               | Description                                  |
|--------------------|--|
| BCDToInt (1647)    | Convert BCD number to integer                |
| CompareMem (1651)  | Compare two memory regions                   |
| FloatToStrF (1692) | Convert float to formatted string            |
| FloatToStr (1691)  | Convert float to string                      |
| FloatToText (1694) | Convert float to string                      |
| FormatFloat (1705) | Format a floating point value                |
| GetDirs (1708)     | Split string in list of directories          |
| IntToHex (1717)    | return hexadecimal representation of integer |
| IntToStr (1718)    | return decimal representation of integer     |
| StrToIntDef (1753) | Convert string to integer with default value |
| StrToInt (1751)    | Convert string to integer                    |
| StrToFloat (1750)  | Convert string to float                      |
| TextToFloat (1757) | Convert null-terminated string to float      |

## 76.7 Date/time routines

Functions for date and time handling.

Table 76.5:

| Name                                     | Description  |
|--|--|
| <code>DateTimeToFileDate</code> (1657)   | Convert <code>DateTime</code> type to file date            |
| <code>DateTimeToStr</code> (1657)        | Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>   |
| <code>DateTimeToString</code> (1658)     | Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>   |
| <code>DateTimeToSystemTime</code> (1659) | Convert <code>DateTime</code> to system time               |
| <code>DateTimeToTimeStamp</code> (1660)  | Convert <code>DateTime</code> to timestamp                 |
| <code>DateToStr</code> (1660)            | Construct string representation of date                    |
| <code>Date</code> (1656)                 | Get current date   |
| <code>DayOfWeek</code> (1661)            | Get day of week  |
| <code>DecodeDate</code> (1662)           | Decode <code>DateTime</code> to year month and day         |
| <code>DecodeTime</code> (1662)           | Decode <code>DateTime</code> to hours, minutes and seconds |
| <code>EncodeDate</code> (1666)           | Encode year, day and month to <code>DateTime</code>        |
| <code>EncodeTime</code> (1667)           | Encode hours, minutes and seconds to <code>DateTime</code> |
| <code>FormatDateTime</code> (1704)       | Return string representation of <code>DateTime</code>      |
| <code>IncMonth</code> (1716)             | Add 1 to month   |
| <code>IsLeapYear</code> (1719)           | Determine if year is leap year                             |
| <code>MSecsToTimeStamp</code> (1723)     | Convert nr of milliseconds to timestamp                    |
| <code>Now</code> (1724)                  | Get current date and time                                  |
| <code>StrToDateTime</code> (1748)        | Convert string to <code>DateTime</code>                    |
| <code>StrToDate</code> (1747)            | Convert string to date                                     |
| <code>StrToTime</code> (1754)            | Convert string to time                                     |
| <code>SystemTimeToDateTime</code> (1757) | Convert system time to datetime                            |
| <code>TimeStampToDateTime</code> (1759)  | Convert time stamp to <code>DateTime</code>                |
| <code>TimeStampToMSecs</code> (1759)     | Convert Timestamp to number of milliseconds                |
| <code>TimeToStr</code> (1760)            | return string representation of Time                       |
| <code>Time</code> (1758)                 | Get current time   |

## 76.8 File Name handling routines

Functions for file manipulation.

Table 76.6:

| Name   | Description                                  |
|--|--|
| <a href="#">AnsiCompareFileName (1632)</a>   | Compare 2 filenames                          |
| <a href="#">AnsiLowerCaseFileName (1637)</a> | Create lowercase filename                    |
| <a href="#">AnsiUpperCaseFileName (1645)</a> | Create uppercase filename                    |
| <a href="#">AddDisk (1631)</a>               | Add disk to list of disk drives              |
| <a href="#">ChangeFileExt (1650)</a>         | Change extension of file name                |
| <a href="#">CreateDir (1654)</a>             | Create a directory                           |
| <a href="#">DeleteFile (1663)</a>            | Delete a file                                |
| <a href="#">DiskFree (1664)</a>              | Free space on disk                           |
| <a href="#">DiskSize (1665)</a>              | Total size of disk                           |
| <a href="#">ExpandFileName (1671)</a>        | Create full file name                        |
| <a href="#">ExpandFileNameCase (1671)</a>    | Create full file name case insensitively     |
| <a href="#">ExpandUNCFileName (1672)</a>     | Create full UNC file name                    |
| <a href="#">ExtractFileDir (1673)</a>        | Extract drive and directory part of filename |
| <a href="#">ExtractFileDrive (1674)</a>      | Extract drive part of filename               |
| <a href="#">ExtractFileExt (1674)</a>        | Extract extension part of filename           |
| <a href="#">ExtractFileName (1674)</a>       | Extract name part of filename                |
| <a href="#">ExtractFilePath (1675)</a>       | Extract path part of filename                |
| <a href="#">ExtractRelativePath (1675)</a>   | Construct relative path between two files    |
| <a href="#">FileAge (1676)</a>               | Return file age                              |
| <a href="#">FileDateToDateTime (1679)</a>    | Convert file date to system date             |
| <a href="#">FileExists (1679)</a>            | Determine whether a file exists on disk      |
| <a href="#">FileGetAttr (1680)</a>           | Get attributes of file                       |
| <a href="#">FileGetDate (1681)</a>           | Get date of last file modification           |
| <a href="#">FileSearch (1684)</a>            | Search for file in path                      |
| <a href="#">FileSetAttr (1686)</a>           | Get file attributes                          |
| <a href="#">FileSetDate (1686)</a>           | Get file dates                               |
| <a href="#">FindFirst (1688)</a>             | Start finding a file                         |
| <a href="#">FindNext (1689)</a>              | Find next file                               |
| <a href="#">GetCurrentDir (1708)</a>         | Return current working directory             |
| <a href="#">RemoveDir (1725)</a>             | Remove a directory from disk                 |
| <a href="#">RenameFile (1726)</a>            | Rename a file on disk                        |
| <a href="#">SameFileName (1728)</a>          | Check whether 2 filenames are the same       |
| <a href="#">SetCurrentDir (1728)</a>         | Set current working directory                |
| <a href="#">SetDirSeparators (1729)</a>      | Set directory separator characters           |
| <a href="#">FindClose (1687)</a>             | Stop searching a file                        |
| <a href="#">DoDirSeparators (1665)</a>       | Replace directory separator characters       |

## 76.9 File input/output routines

Functions for reading/writing to file.

Table 76.7:

| Name                | Description                     |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| FileCreate (1677)   | Create a file and return handle |
| FileOpen (1682)     | Open file and return handle     |
| FileRead (1683)     | Read from file                  |
| FileSeek (1685)     | Set file position               |
| FileTruncate (1687) | Truncate file length            |
| FileWrite (1687)    | Write to file                   |
| FileClose (1677)    | Close file handle               |

## 76.10 PChar related functions

Most PChar functions are the same as their counterparts in the **STRINGS** unit. The following functions are the same :

1. StrCat (1732) : Concatenates two PChar strings.
2. StrComp (1733) : Compares two PChar strings.
3. StrCopy (1733) : Copies a PChar string.
4. StrECopy (1734) : Copies a PChar string and returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
5. StrEnd (1735) : Returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
6. StrIComp (1736) : Case insensitive compare of 2 PChar strings.
7. StrLCat (1738) : Appends at most L characters from one PChar to another PChar.
8. StrLComp (1738) : Case sensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
9. StrLCopy (1739) : Copies at most L characters from one PChar to another.
10. StrLen (1740) : Returns the length (exclusive terminating null byte) of a PChar string.
11. StrLIComp (1741) : Case insensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
12. StrLower (1741) : Converts a PChar to all lowercase letters.
13. StrMove (1742) : Moves one PChar to another.
14. StrNew (1742) : Makes a copy of a PChar on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.
15. StrPos (1744) : Returns the position of one PChar string in another?
16. StrRScan (1745) : returns a pointer to the last occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
17. StrScan (1745) : returns a pointer to the first occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
18. StrUpper (1755) : Converts a PChar to all uppercase letters.

The subsequent functions are different from their counterparts in **STRINGS**, although the same examples can be used.

## 76.11 Date and time formatting characters

Various date and time formatting routines accept a format string to format the date and or time. The following characters can be used to control the date and time formatting:

**c** Formats date using `shortdateformat` and formats time using `longtimeformat` if the time is not zero.

**f** Same as **c**, but adds the time even if it is zero.

**d** day of month

**dd** day of month (leading zero)

**ddd** day of week (abbreviation)

**dddd** day of week (full)

**dddddd** `shortdateformat`

**ddddddd** `longdateformat`

**m** month or minutes if preceded by **h** or **hh** specifiers.

**mm** month or minutes if preceded by **h** or **hh** specifiers, with leading zero.

**mmm** month (abbreviation)

**mmmm** month (full)

**y** year (2 digits)

**yy** year (two digits)

**yyyy** year (with century)

**h** hour

**hh** hour (leading zero)

**n** minute

**nn** minute (leading zero)

**s** second

**ss** second (leading zero)

**t** `shorttimeformat`

**tt** `longtimeformat`

**am/pm** use 12 hour clock and display am and pm accordingly

**a/p** use 12 hour clock and display a and p accordingly

**/** insert date separator

**:** insert time separator

**"xx"** literal text

**'xx'** literal text

**z** milliseconds

**zzz** milliseconds(leading zero)

**[h ]** hours including the hours of the full days (i.e. can be > 24).

**[hh ]** hours with leading zero, including the hours of the full days (i.e. can be > 24)

**[n ]** minutes including the minutes of the full hours and days

**[nn ]** minutes with leading zero, including the minutes of the full hours and days

**[s ]** seconds including the seconds of the full minutes, hours and days.

**[ss ]** seconds with leading zero, including the seconds of the full minutes, hours and days.

The forms in square brackets are only allowed if the `fdoInterval` (1620) option is included in the `Options` argument of `FormatDateTime`.

The date and time separators are taken from the `DefaultFormatSettings` (1627) record, unless a `TFormatSettings` (1621) record is passed to the `FormatDateTime` (1704) function.

Note that to include any of the above characters literally in the result string, they must be enclosed in double quotes.

See also: `DefaultFormatSettings` (1627), `TFormatSettings` (1621), `FormatDateTime` (1704), `TFormatDateTimeOption` (1620)

## 76.12 Formatting strings

Functions for formatting strings.

Table 76.8:

| Name                                 | Description                                   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>AdjustLineBreaks</code> (1632) | Convert line breaks to line breaks for system |
| <code>FormatBuf</code> (1703)        | Format a buffer                               |
| <code>Format</code> (1696)           | Format arguments in string                    |
| <code>FmtStr</code> (1695)           | Format buffer                                 |
| <code>QuotedStr</code> (1725)        | Quote a string                                |
| <code>StrFmt</code> (1735)           | Format arguments in a string                  |
| <code>StrLFmt</code> (1740)          | Format maximum L characters in a string       |
| <code>TrimLeft</code> (1761)         | Remove whitespace at the left of a string     |
| <code>TrimRight</code> (1762)        | Remove whitespace at the right of a string    |
| <code>Trim</code> (1760)             | Remove whitespace at both ends of a string    |

## 76.13 String functions

Functions for handling strings.

Table 76.9:

| Name  | Description                                      |
|---|--|
| <a href="#">AnsiCompareStr (1633)</a>       | Compare two strings                              |
| <a href="#">AnsiCompareText (1634)</a>      | Compare two strings, case insensitive            |
| <a href="#">AnsiExtractQuotedStr (1635)</a> | Removes quotes from string                       |
| <a href="#">AnsiLastChar (1636)</a>         | Get last character of string                     |
| <a href="#">AnsiLowerCase (1636)</a>        | Convert string to all-lowercase                  |
| <a href="#">AnsiQuotedStr (1637)</a>        | Quotes a string                                  |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrComp (1638)</a>          | Compare strings case-sensitive                   |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrIComp (1639)</a>         | Compare strings case-insensitive                 |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrLComp (1641)</a>         | Compare L characters of strings case sensitive   |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrLIComp (1641)</a>        | Compare L characters of strings case insensitive |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrLastChar (1640)</a>      | Get last character of string                     |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrLower (1642)</a>         | Convert string to all-lowercase                  |
| <a href="#">AnsiStrUpper (1644)</a>         | Convert string to all-uppercase                  |
| <a href="#">AnsiUpperCase (1644)</a>        | Convert string to all-uppercase                  |
| <a href="#">AppendStr (1645)</a>            | Append 2 strings                                 |
| <a href="#">AssignStr (1646)</a>            | Assign value of strings on heap                  |
| <a href="#">CompareStr (1652)</a>           | Compare two strings case sensitive               |
| <a href="#">CompareText (1653)</a>          | Compare two strings case insensitive             |
| <a href="#">DisposeStr (1665)</a>           | Remove string from heap                          |
| <a href="#">IsValidIdent (1720)</a>         | Is string a valid pascal identifier              |
| <a href="#">LastDelimiter (1721)</a>        | Last occurrence of character in a string         |
| <a href="#">LeftStr (1721)</a>              | Get first N characters of a string               |
| <a href="#">LoadStr (1722)</a>              | Load string from resources                       |
| <a href="#">LowerCase (1722)</a>            | Convert string to all-lowercase                  |
| <a href="#">NewStr (1723)</a>               | Allocate new string on heap                      |
| <a href="#">RightStr (1727)</a>             | Get last N characters of a string                |
| <a href="#">StrAlloc (1731)</a>             | Allocate memory for string                       |
| <a href="#">StrBufSize (1731)</a>           | Reserve memory for a string                      |
| <a href="#">StrDispose (1734)</a>           | Remove string from heap                          |
| <a href="#">StrPas (1743)</a>               | Convert PChar to pascal string                   |
| <a href="#">StrPCopy (1744)</a>             | Copy pascal string                               |
| <a href="#">StrPLCopy (1744)</a>            | Copy N bytes of pascal string                    |
| <a href="#">UpperCase (1771)</a>            | Convert string to all-uppercase                  |

## 76.14 Constants, types and variables

### 76.14.1 Constants

`ConfigExtension : string = '.cfg'`

`ConfigExtension` is the default extension used by the `GetAppConfigFile (1707)` call. It can be set to any valid extension for the current OS.

`CPUEndian = TEndian.Big`

`CPUEndian` describes whether the current CPU is little or big endian.

`DateDelta = 693594`

Days between 1/1/0001 and 12/31/1899

`DriveDelim = DriveSeparator`

`DriveDelim` refers to the system unit's `DriveSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`EmptyStr : string = ''`

Empty String Constant

`EmptyWideStr : WideString = ''`

Empty wide string.

`faAnyFile = $000001FF`

Use this attribute in the `FindFirst` (1688) call to find all matching files.

`faArchive = $00000020`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file has the archive bit set. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`faCompressed = $00000800platform`

`faTemporary` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1688) or `FindNext` (1689) to indicate that a returned file is compressed (on file systems that support this).

`faDirectory = $00000010`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a directory. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`faEncrypted = $00004000platform`

`faEncrypted` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1688) or `FindNext` (1689) to indicate that a returned file is encrypted (on file systems that support this).

`faHidden = $00000002platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`faNormal = $00000080`

`faNormal` can be used in `FindFirst` (1688) to indicate that normal files must be included in the result.

`faReadOnly = $00000001`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`faSymLink = $00000400platform`

`faSymLink` means the file (as returned e.g. by `FindFirst` (1688)/`FindNext` (1689)), is a symlink. It's ignored under Windows.

`faSysFile = $00000004platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a system file. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`faTemporary = $00000100platform`

`faTemporary` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1688) or `FindNext` (1689) to indicate that a returned file is a temporary file.

`faVirtual = $00010000platform`

`faVirtual` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1688) or `FindNext` (1689) to indicate that a returned file is virtual (on file systems that support this).

`faVolumeId = $00000008deprecated; platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the entry contains the volume ID. Used in `TSearchRec` (1623) and `FindFirst` (1688)

`feInvalidHandle = THandle(- 1)`

`feInvalidHandle` is the return value of `FileOpen` (1682) in case of an error.

`fmOpenRead = $0000`

`fmOpenRead` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call to open a file in read-only mode.

`fmOpenReadWrite = $0002`

`fmOpenReadWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call to open a file in read-write mode.

`fmOpenWrite = $0001`

`fmOpenWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call to open a file in write-only mode.

`fmShareCompat = $0000`

`fmOpenShareCompat` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmOpenRead` (1609) or `fmOpenWrite` (1609), to open a file in a sharing modus that is equivalent to sharing implemented in MS-DOS.

`fmShareDenyNone = $0040`

`fmShareDenyNone` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmOpenRead` (1609) or `fmOpenWrite` (1609), to open a file so other processes can read/write the file as well.

`fmShareDenyRead = $0030`

`fmOpenShareRead` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmOpenRead` (1609) or `fmOpenWrite` (1609), to open a file so other processes cannot read from it.

This constant only works on Windows, because other operating systems do not support this constants.

`fmShareDenyWrite = $0020`

`fmOpenShareDenyWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmOpenRead` (1609) or `fmOpenWrite` (1609), to open a file so other processes cannot write to it, they can only read.

`fmShareExclusive = $0010`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1682) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmOpenRead` (1609) or `fmOpenWrite` (1609), to open a file exclusively.

`fsFromBeginning = 0`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1685) call that a seek operation should be started at the start of the file.

`fsFromCurrent = 1`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1685) call that a seek operation should be started at the current position in the file.

`fsFromEnd = 2`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1685) call that a seek operation should be started at the last position in the file.

`GUID_NULL : TGuid = '{00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000}'`

**NULL GUID constant**

`HexDisplayPrefix : string = '$'`

`HexDisplayPrefix` is used by the formatting routines to indicate that the number which follows the prefix is in Hexadecimal notation.

`HoursPerDay = 24`

**Number of hours in a day.**

`JulianEpoch = TDateTime(- 2415018.5)`

**Starting point of the Julian calendar**

`LeadBytes : Set of Char = []`

LeadBytes contains the set of bytes that serve as lead byte in a MBCS string.

MaxCurrency : Currency = 922337203685477.5807

**Maximum currency value**

MaxDateTime : TDateTime = 2958465.999999999

**Maximum TDateTime value.**

MAX\_PATH = MaxPathLen

MAX\_PATH is the maximum number of characters that a filename (including path) can contain on the current operating system.

MinCurrency : Currency = - 922337203685477.5808

**Minimum Currency value**

MinDateTime : TDateTime = - 693593.999999999

**Minimum TDateTime value.**

MinsPerDay = HoursPerDay \* MinsPerHour

**Number of minutes per day.**

MinsPerHour = 60

**Number of minutes per hour.**

MonthDays : Array[Boolean] of TDayTable = ((31, 28, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31), (31, 29, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31))

Array with number of days in the months for leap and non-leap years.

MSecsPerDay = SecsPerDay \* MSecsPerSec

**Number of milliseconds per day**

MSecsPerSec = 1000

**Number of milliseconds per second**

NullStr : PString = @ EmptyStr

**Pointer to an empty string**

PathDelim = DirectorySeparator

`PathDelim` refers to the system unit's `DirectorySeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`PathSep = PathSeparator`

`PathSep` refers to the system unit's `PathSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`pfBCB4Produced = $08000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfDelphi4Produced = $0C000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfDesignOnly = $00000002`

Package is a design-time only package

`pfExeModule = $00000000`

Package is an executable

`pfIgnoreDupUnits = $00000008`

Ignore duplicate units in package

`pfLibraryModule = $80000000`

Package is a library

`pfModuleTypeMask = $C0000000`

Mask for module type flags

`pfNeverBuild = $00000001`

Never-build flag was specified when compiling package

`pfPackageModule = $40000000`

Package is a real package (not exe)

`pfProducerMask = $0C000000`

Mask for producer flags

`pfProducerUndefined = $04000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfRunOnly = $00000004`

Package is a run-time only package

`pfV3Produced = $00000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`RTL_SIGBUS = 4`

Bus error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGDEFAULT = - 1`

Default signal handler (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGFPE = 1`

Floating Point Error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGILL = 3`

Illegal instruction signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGINT = 0`

INTERRUPT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGLAST = RTL_SIGQUIT`

Last signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGQUIT = 5`

QUIT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGSEGV = 2`

Segmentation fault signal number (Unix only)

`SecsPerDay = MinsPerDay * SecsPerMin`

Number of seconds per day

`SecsPerHour = SecsPerMin * MinsPerHour`

`SecsPerMin = 60`

Number of seconds per minute

```
SwitchChars = ['/', '-']
```

The characters in this set will be used by the FindCmdLineSwitch (1688) function to determine whether a command-line argument is a switch (an option) or a value. If the first character of an argument is in SwitchChars, it will be considered an option or switch.

```
SysConfigDir : string = ''
```

SysConfigDir is the default system configuration directory. It is set at application startup by the sysutils initialization routines.

This directory may be returned by the GetAppConfigDir (1707) call on some systems.

```
ufImplicitUnit = $10
```

Unit was implicitly imported into package (did not appear in package contains list)

```
ufMainUnit = $01
```

Unit is the main unit of the package

```
ufOrgWeakUnit = $08
```

Unit is the original weak packaged unit

```
ufPackageUnit = $02
```

Unit is a packaged unit (appeared in package contains list)

```
ufWeakPackageUnit = ufPackageUnit or ufWeakUnit
```

Weak (original or not) packaged unit

```
ufWeakUnit = $04
```

Unit is a weak packaged unit

```
UnixDateDelta = Trunc(UnixEpoch)
```

Number of days between 1.1.1900 and 1.1.1970

```
UnixEpoch = JulianEpoch + TDateTime(2440587.5)
```

Starting point of the unix calendar (1/1/1970)

## 76.14.2 Types

```
EHeapException = EHeapMemoryError
```

EHeapMemoryError is raised when an error occurs in the heap management routines.

ExceptClass = Class of Exception

ExceptClass is a [Exception \(1788\)](#) class reference.

```
Int128Rec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : QWord
  ;
  Lo : QWord;
);
1: (
public
  DWords : Array[0..3] of DWord;
)
  ;
2: (
public
  Words : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
3: (
public
  Bytes
    : Array[0..15] of Byte;
);
end
```

Int128Rec is a record defining a 128-bit integer. It is made up of 2 QWords or 4 DWords or 8 words or 16 bytes.

```
Int64Rec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : Cardinal
  ;
  Lo : Cardinal;
);
1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..3] of Word;
);
2: (
public
  Bytes : Array[0..7] of Byte;
);
end
```

Int64Rec can be used to extract the parts of a Int64: the high and low cardinal, or a zero-based array of 4 words, or a zero based array of 8 bytes. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

LongRec = packed record

```

case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
);
1: (
public
  Bytes : Array[0..3] of Byte;
);
end

```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of an long Integer: the high and low word, or the 4 separate bytes as a zero-based array of bytes. Note that the meaning (or ordering) of High and Low parts are different on various CPUs, and may differ from what is shown in the declaration: the ordering depends on the endianness of the CPU.

```

OWordRec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : QWord
  ;
  Lo : QWord;
);
1: (
public
  DWords : Array[0..3] of DWord;
)
;
2: (
public
  Words : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
3: (
public
  Bytes
    : Array[0..15] of Byte;
);
end

```

OWordRec is a record defining a 128-bit integer. It is made up of 2 QWords or 4 DWords or 8 words or 16 bytes.

```
PByteArray = ^TByteArray
```

Generic pointer to TByteArray ([1617](#)). Use to access memory regions as a byte array.

```
PDayTable = ^TDayTable
```

Pointer to TDayTable type.

PString = ObjPas.PString

Pointer to a anistring

PSysCharSet = ^TSysCharSet

Pointer to TSysCharSet (1624) type.

PWordarray = ^TWordArray

Generic pointer to TWordArray (1625). Use to access memory regions as a word array.

TArray<T> = Array of T

TArray is a generic array. It can be used to define dynamic arrays in generic functions or classes.

This definition is provided for Delphi compatibility only, it is not needed in Free Pascal, where 2 array types are equal if their element types are equal.

TBeepHandler = procedure

TBeepHandler is the prototype used by the OnBeep (1628) handler. This in turn is called by the Beep (1647) call to actually implement the beep functionality. The call takes no arguments.

TByteArray = Array[0..32767] of Byte

TByteArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PByteArray (1616) type.

TByteBitIndex = 0..7

TBytes = Array of Byte

TBytes defines a dynamic array of bytes. This can be used to typecast e.g. strings to manipulate them byte for byte.

TCardinalBitIndex = 0..31

TCharArray = Array of Char

TCharArray is a dynamic array of characters.

TCompareOption = system.TCompareOption

TCompareOption is an alias for System.TCompareOption (1381).

TCompareOptions = system.TCompareOptions

TCompareOptions is an alias for System.TCompareOptions (1381).

TCreateGUIDFunc = function(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer

TCreateGUIDFunc is the prototype for a GUID creation handler. On return, the GUID argument should contain a new (unique) GUID. The return value of the function should be zero for success, nonzero for failure.

TDayTable = Array[1..12] of Word

Array of day names.

TEndian = ObjPas.TEndian

TEndian indicates whether the platform is little endian (LSB first), or big endian (MSB first).

TEventType = (etCustom,etInfo,etWarning,etError,etDebug)

Table 76.10: Enumeration values for type TEventType

| Value     | Explanation   |
|-----------|---|
| etCustom  | Custom log event, with application-specific meaning |
| etDebug   | Debug message.                                      |
| etError   | Error condition message                             |
| etInfo    | General information event message                   |
| etWarning | Warning message                                     |

TEventType is a type to be used by logging mechanisms (in particular, the TCustomApplication and TEventLog classes. It can be used to filter events, and write only certain types of event to the event log.

TEventTypes = Set of TEventType

TEventTypes is a set type of TEventType, defined for convenience. It is used in the custom application classes for logging purposes.

TExecuteFlags= Set of (ExecInheritsHandles)

Table 76.11: Enumeration values for type

| Value               | Explanation  |
|---------------------|--|
| ExecInheritsHandles | The new process inherits all (file) handles owned by the current process |

TExecuteFlags is a set of flags to influence the behaviour of the ExecuteProcess (1670) call.

TFileName = string

TFileName is used in the TSearchRec (1623) definition.

```
TFilenameCaseMatch = (mkNone, mkExactMatch, mkSingleMatch, mkAmbiguous
)
```

Table 76.12: Enumeration values for type TFilenameCaseMatch

| Value         | Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| mkAmbiguous   | More than one file will match the filename in a case-insensitive way                |
| mkExactMatch  | The filename can be used to refer to a file on the system (findFirst will find it). |
| mkNone        | No file was found   |
| mkSingleMatch | Exactly one match was found, but case didn't match.                                 |

TFilenameCaseMatch describes how ExpandFileNameCase ([1671](#)) found the file.

```
TFilenameCaseMatch = (mkNone, mkExactMatch, mkSingleMatch, mkAmbiguous
)
```

Table 76.13: Enumeration values for type TFilenameCaseMatch

| Value         | Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| mkAmbiguous   | More than one file will match the filename in a case-insensitive way                |
| mkExactMatch  | The filename can be used to refer to a file on the system (findFirst will find it). |
| mkNone        | No file was found   |
| mkSingleMatch | Exactly one match was found, but case didn't match.                                 |

TFilenameCaseMatch describes how ExpandFileNameCase ([1671](#)) found the file.

```
TFileRec = FileRec
```

Alias for FileRec ([1599](#)) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TFileSearchOption = (sfoImplicitCurrentDir, sfoStripQuotes)
```

Table 76.14: Enumeration values for type TFileSearchOption

| Value                 | Explanation   |
|-----------------------|---|
| sfoImplicitCurrentDir | Always search the current directory first, even if it is not specified. |
| sfoStripQuotes        | Strip quotes from the components in the search path.                    |

TFileSearchOption enumerates the options that can be used in the FileSearch call to control the behaviour of the search mechanism

```
TFileSearchOptions = Set of TFileSearchOption
```

TFileSearchOptions is a set of TFileSearchOption ([1619](#)) values, used in the FileSearch ([1684](#)) call when searching for files.

TFloatFormat = (ffGeneral, ffExponent, ffFixed, ffNumber, ffCurrency)

Table 76.15: Enumeration values for type TFloatFormat

| Value      | Explanation                                |
|------------|--|
| ffCurrency | Monetary format.                           |
| ffExponent | Scientific format.                         |
| ffFixed    | Fixed point format.                        |
| ffGeneral  | General number format.                     |
| ffNumber   | Fixed point format with thousand separator |

TFloatFormat is used to determine how a float value should be formatted in the FloatToText (1694) function.

```
TFloatRec = record
public
  Exponent : Integer;
  Negative : Boolean
;
  Digits : Array[0..18] of Char;
end
```

TFloatRec is used to describe a floating point value by the FloatToDecimal (1690) function.

TFloatValue = (fvExtended, fvCurrency, fvSingle, fvReal, fvDouble, fvComp)

Table 76.16: Enumeration values for type TFloatValue

| Value      | Explanation    |
|------------|----------------|
| fvComp     | Comp value     |
| fvCurrency | Currency value |
| fvDouble   | Double value   |
| fvExtended | Extended value |
| fvReal     | Real value     |
| fvSingle   | Single value   |

TFloatValue determines which kind of value should be returned in the (untyped) buffer used by the TextToFloat (1757) function.

TFormatDateTimeOption = (fdoInterval)

Table 76.17: Enumeration values for type TFormatDateTimeOption

| Value       | Explanation  |
|-------------|--|
| fdoInterval | Format the time as an interval, 24+hours are presented as such |

TFormatDateTimeOption enumerates possible options to the FormatDateTime (1704) routine.

TFormatDateTimeOptions = Set of TFormatDateTimeOption

TFormatDateTimeOptions is a set of TFormatDateTimeOptions (1621), and is used in the last argument of FormatDateTime (1704)

```
TFormatSettings = record
public
  CurrencyFormat : Byte;
  NegCurrFormat
    : Byte;
  ThousandSeparator : Char;
  DecimalSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyDecimals : Byte;
  DateSeparator : Char;
  TimeSeparator
    : Char;
  ListSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyString : string;
  ShortDateFormat
    : string;
  LongDateFormat : string;
  TimeAMString : string;
  TimePMString
    : string;
  ShortTimeFormat : string;
  LongTimeFormat : string;
  ShortMonthNames : TMonthNameArray;
  LongMonthNames : TMonthNameArray
    ;
  ShortDayNames : TWeekNameArray;
  LongDayNames : TWeekNameArray
    ;
  TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow : Word;
end
```

TFormatSettings is a record that contains a copy of all variables which determine formatting in the various string formatting routines. It is used to pass local copies of these values to the various formatting routines in a thread-safe way.

TGetAppNameEvent = function : string

This callback type is used by the OnGetApplicationName (1629) to return an alternative application name.

TGetTempDirEvent = function(Global: Boolean) : string

Function prototype for OnGetTempDir (1629) handler.

```
TGetTempFileEvent = function(const Dir: string; const Prefix: string
)
    : string
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempFile (1629) handler.

`TGetVendorNameEvent = function : string`

`TGetVendorNameEvent` is the function prototype for the `OnGetVendorName` (1629) callback, used by the `VendorName` (1772) function.

`THandle = System.THandle`

`THandle` refers to the definition of `THandle` in the system unit, and is provided for backward compatibility only.

`TInt64BitIndex = 0..63`

`TIntegerBitIndex = 0..31`

`TIntegerSet = Set of`

`TIntegerSet` is a generic integer subrange set definition whose size fits in a single integer.

`TLocaleOptions = (loInvariantLocale, loUserLocale)`

Table 76.18: Enumeration values for type `TLocaleOptions`

| Value                          | Explanation |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| <code>loInvariantLocale</code> |             |
| <code>loUserLocale</code>      |             |

`TLongIntBitIndex = TIntegerBitIndex`

`TMbcsByteType = (mbSingleByte, mbLeadByte, mbTrailByte)`

Table 76.19: Enumeration values for type `TMbcsByteType`

| Value                     | Explanation        |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>mbLeadByte</code>   | Uses lead-byte     |
| <code>mbSingleByte</code> | Single bytes       |
| <code>mbTrailByte</code>  | Uses trailing byte |

Type of multi-byte character set.

`TMonthNameArray = Array[1..12] of string`

`TMonthNameArray` is used in the month long and short name arrays.

`TProcedure = procedure`

TProcedure is a general definition of a procedural callback.

TQwordBitIndex = 0..63

TReplaceFlags= Set of (rfReplaceAll, rfIgnoreCase)

Table 76.20: Enumeration values for type

| Value        | Explanation   |
|--------------|---|
| rfIgnoreCase | Search case insensitive.  |
| rfReplaceAll | Replace all occurrences of the search string with the replacement string. |

TReplaceFlags determines the behaviour of the StringReplace (1737) function.

TSearchRec = TRawbyteSearchRec

TSearchRec is a search handle description record. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst (1688) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext (1689). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose (1687).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

TShortIntBitIndex = 0..7

TSignalState = (ssNotHooked, ssHooked, ssOverridden)

Table 76.21: Enumeration values for type TSignalState

| Value        | Explanation  |
|--------------|--|
| ssHooked     | A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.      |
| ssNotHooked  | No signal handler is set for the signal.                     |
| ssOverridden | A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code. |

TSignalState indicates the state of a signal handler in a unix system for a particular signal.

TSmallIntBitIndex = 0..15

TStringArray = Array of string

TStringArray is a dynamic array of strings.

TStringBuilder = TANSISTRINGBUILDER

TStringSplitOptions = (None, ExcludeEmpty, ExcludeLastEmpty)

Table 76.22: Enumeration values for type TStringSplitOptions

| Value            | Explanation                                 |
|------------------|---|
| ExcludeEmpty     | Do not include empty strings in the result. |
| ExcludeLastEmpty |   |
| None             | No options specified. The default           |

TStringSplitOptions describes the possible options for TStringHelper.Split ([1883](#)).

TSymLinkRec = TRawbyteSymLinkRec

TSysCharSet = Set of AnsiChar

Generic set of characters type.

```
TSysLocale = record
public
    DefaultLCID : Integer;
    PriLangID :
        Integer;
    SubLangID : Integer;
case Byte of
1: (
public
    FarEast
        : Boolean;
    MiddleEast : Boolean;
);
2: (
public
    MBCS : Boolean
        ;
    RightToLeft : Boolean;
);
end
```

TSysLocale describes the current locale. If Fareast or MBCS is True, then the current locale uses a Multi-Byte Character Set. If MiddleEast or RightToLeft is True then words and sentences are read from right to left.

```
TSystemTime = record
public
    Year : Word;
    Month : Word;
    Day
        : Word;
    DayOfWeek : Word;
    Hour : Word;
    Minute : Word;
    Second
```

```

    : Word;
    MilliSecond : Word;
end

```

The System time structure contains the date/time in a human-understandable format.

```

TTerminateProc = function : Boolean

```

TTerminateProc is the procedural type which should be used when adding exit procedures.

```

TTextRec = TextRec

```

Alias for TextRec ([1599](#)) for Delphi compatibility.

```

TTimeStamp = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Date : LongInt;
end

```

TTimeStamp contains a timestamp, with the date and time parts specified as separate TDateTime values.

```

TUnicodeCharArray = Array of UnicodeChar

```

TUnicodeCharArray is a definition of an array of UnicodeChar elements.

```

TUseBoolStrs = (False, True)

```

Table 76.23: Enumeration values for type TUseBoolStrs

| Value | Explanation                               |
|-------|---|
| False | Numerical values should be used (0 and 1) |
| True  | String representations should be used.    |

TUseBoolStrs is an enumerated type which indicates whether bool str must be used when converting boolean to strings.

Because the identifiers True and False are already used for the system boolean type, You must use the scoped identifiers to get the TUseBoolStrs versions of these 2 identifiers. Failure to do so will result in an error.

```

TWeekNameArray = Array[1..7] of string

```

TWeekNameArray is used in the day long and short name arrays.

```

TWordArray = Array[0..16383] of Word

```

TWordArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PWordArray ([1617](#)) type.

```
TWordBitIndex = 0..15
```

```
WordRec = packed record
public
  Hi : Byte;
  Lo : Byte;
end
```

`LongRec` can be used to extract the parts of a word: the high and low byte. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

### 76.14.3 Variables

```
CurrencyDecimals : Bytedeprecated
```

`CurrencyDecimals` is the number of decimals to be used when formatting a currency. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyFormat` (1627) instead.

```
CurrencyFormat : Bytedeprecated
```

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for positive currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyFormat` (1627) instead.

```
CurrencyString : stringdeprecated
```

`CurrencyString` is the currency symbol for the current locale. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyString` (1627) instead.

```
DateSeparator : Chardeprecated
```

`DateSeparator` is the character used by various date/time conversion routines as the character that separates the day from the month and the month from the year in a date notation. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.DateSeparator` (1627) instead.

```
DecimalSeparator : Chardeprecated
```

`DecimalSeparator` is used to display the decimal symbol in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.DecimalSeparator` (1627) instead.

```
DefaultFormatSettings : TFormatSettings = (CurrencyFormat: 1; NegCurrFormat
: 5; ThousandSeparator: ','; DecimalSeparator: '.'; CurrencyDecimals
: 2; DateSeparator: '-'; TimeSeparator: ':'; ListSeparator: ','; CurrencyString
: '$'; ShortDateFormat: 'd/m/y'; LongDateFormat: 'dd" "mmmm" "yyyy'
; TimeAMString: 'AM'; TimePMString: 'PM'; ShortTimeFormat: 'hh:nn'
; LongTimeFormat: 'hh:nn:ss'; ShortMonthNames: ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar'
, 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun', 'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec');
LongMonthNames: ('January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May',
'June', 'July', 'August', 'September', 'October', 'November', 'December'
); ShortDayNames: ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat'
); LongDayNames: ('Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', 'Thursday'
, 'Friday', 'Saturday'); TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow: 50)
```

`DefaultFormatSettings` contains the default settings for all type of formatting constants. If no thread-specific values are specified when a formatting function is called, this record is used as a default.

All other formatting constants refer to the fields of this variable using absolute addressing.

`FalseBoolStrs` : Array of string

`FalseBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `False` return value by `StrToBool` (1746).

`FormatSettings` : `TFormatSettings`

`FormatSettings` is provided for Delphi compatibility, and refers to the `DefaultFormatSettings` (1627) variable.

`ListSeparator` : `Char` deprecated

`ListSeparator` is the character used in lists of values. It is locale dependent.

`LongDateFormat` : `string` deprecated

`LongDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a long format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongDateFormat` (1627) instead.

`LongDayNames` : `TWeekNameArray` deprecated

`LongDayNames` is an array with the full names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

The array is indexed by values as returned by the `DayOfWeek` function.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongDayNames` (1627) instead.

`LongMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArray` deprecated

`LongMonthNames` is an array with the full names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongMonthNames` (1627) instead.

`LongTimeFormat` : `stringdeprecated`

`LongTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in full notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongTimeFormat` (1627) instead.

`NegCurrFormat` : `Bytedeprecated`

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for negative currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default:

- 0** Left parenthesis, currency symbol, amount, right parenthesis. Ex: (\$1.2)
- 1** Negative sign, currency symbol, amount. Ex: -\$1.2
- 2** Monetary symbol, negative sign, amount. Ex: \$-1.2
- 3** Monetary symbol, amount, negative sign. Ex: \$1.2-
- 4** Left parenthesis, amount, currency symbol, right parenthesis. Ex: (1.2\$)
- 5** Negative sign, amount, currency symbol. Ex: -1.2\$
- 5 6** Amount, negative sign, currency symbol. Ex: 1.2-\$
- 5 7** Amount, currency symbol, negative sign. Ex: 1.2\$-
- 5 8** Negative sign, amount, space, currency symbol (as #5, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: -1.2 \$
- 9** Negative sign, currency symbol, space, amount (as #1, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: -\$ 1.2
- 10** Amount, space, currency symbol, negative sign (as #7, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: 1.2 \$-
- 11** Monetary symbol, space, amount, negative sign (as #3, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: \$ 1.2-
- 12** Monetary symbol, space, negative sign, amount (as #2, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: \$ -1.2
- 13** Amount, negative sign, space, currency symbol (as #6, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: 1.2- \$
- 14** Left parenthesis, currency symbol, space, amount, right parenthesis (as #0, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: (\$ 1.2)
- 15** Left parenthesis, amount, space, currency symbol, right parenthesis (as ##4, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: (1.2 \$)

`OnBeep` : `TBeepHandler = Nil`

`OnBeep` is called whenever `Beep` is called. `Beep` contains no implementation to actually produce a beep, since there is no way to implement beep in a meaningful way for all possible implementations.

`OnCreateGUID : TCreateGUIDFunc = Nil`

`OnCreateGUID` can be set to point to a custom routine that creates GUID values. If set, the `CreateGUID` (1655) function will use it to obtain a GUID value. If it is not set, a default implementation using random values will be used to create the unique value. The function should return a valid GUID in the `GUID` parameter, and should return zero in case of success.

`OnGetApplicationName : TGetAppNameEvent`

By default, the configuration file routines `GetAppConfigDir` (1707) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1707) use a default application name to construct a directory or filename. This callback can be used to provide an alternative application name.

Since the result of this callback will be used to construct a filename, care should be taken that the returned name does not contain directory separator characters or characters that cannot appear in a filename.

`OnGetTempDir : TGetTempDirEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempDir` (1712) function. Note that the returned name should have a trailing directory delimiter character.

`OnGetTempFile : TGetTempFileEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempFileName` (1713) function. Note that the values for `Prefix` and `Dir` should be observed.

`OnGetVendorName : TGetVendorNameEvent`

`OnGetVendorName` must be set in order for `VendorName` (1772) to return a value. It will then be used in `GetAppConfigDir` (1707) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1707) to determine the configuration directory. Set it to a callback that returns the actual vendor name for the application.

`OnShowException : procedure(Msg: ShortString)`

`OnShowException` is the callback that `ShowException` (1729) uses to display a message in a GUI application. For GUI applications, this variable should always be set. Note that no memory may be available when this callback is called, so the callback should already have all resources it needs, when the callback is set.

`ShortDateFormat : stringdeprecated`

`ShortDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a short format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortDateFormat` (1627) instead.

`ShortDayNames : TWeekNameArraydeprecated`

`ShortDayNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

The array is indexed by values as returned by the `DayOfWeek` function.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortDayNames` (1627) instead.

`ShortMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArray`[deprecated](#)

`ShortMonthNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortMonthNames` ([1627](#)) instead.

`ShortTimeFormat` : `string`[deprecated](#)

`ShortTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in a short notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortTimeFormat` ([1627](#)) instead.

`SysLocale` : `TSysLocale`

`SysLocale` is initialized by the initialization code of the `SysUtils` unit. For an explanation of the fields, see `TSysLocale` ([1624](#))

`ThousandSeparator` : `Char`[deprecated](#)

`ThousandSeparator` is used to separate groups of thousands in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ThousandSeparator` ([1627](#)) instead.

`TimeAMString` : `string`[deprecated](#)

`TimeAMString` is used to display the AM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.TimeAMString` ([1627](#)) instead.

`TimePMString` : `string`[deprecated](#)

`TimePMString` is used to display the PM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.TimePMString` ([1627](#)) instead.

`TimeSeparator` : `Char`[deprecated](#)

`TimeSeparator` is used by the time formatting routines to separate the hours from the minutes and the minutes from the seconds. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TrueBoolStrs` : `Array of string`

`TrueBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `True` return value by `StrToBool` (1746).

`TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow` : `Word`

Window to determine what century 2 digit years are in.

## 76.15 Procedures and functions

### 76.15.1 AbandonSignalHandler

Synopsis: Abandon the signal handler

Declaration: `procedure AbandonSignalHandler(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbandonSignalHandler` tells the system routines that they should not re-install the signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum` under any circumstances. Normally, signal handlers are re-set when they are called. If `AbandonSignalHandler` has been called for a signal that is handled by the system code, the signal will not be re-set again.

### 76.15.2 Abort

Synopsis: Abort program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Abort`

Visibility: default

Description: `Abort` raises an `EAbort` (1779) exception.

See also: `EAbort` (1779)

### 76.15.3 AddDisk

Synopsis: Add a disk to the list of known disks (Unix only)

Declaration: `function AddDisk(const path: string) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: On Unix-like platforms both the `DiskFree` (1664) and `DiskSize` (1665) functions need a file on the specified drive, since is required for the `statfs` system call.

These filenames are set in `drivestr[0..26]`, and the first 4 have been preset to :

**Disk 0** ' .' default drive - hence current directory is used.

**Disk 1** ' /fd0/ .' floppy drive 1.

**Disk 2** ' /fd1/ .' floppy drive 2.

**Disk 3** ' / ' C: equivalent of DOS is the root partition.

Drives 4..26 can be set by your own applications with the `AddDisk` call.

The `AddDisk` call adds `Path` to the names of drive files, and returns the number of the disk that corresponds to this drive. If you add more than 21 drives, the count is wrapped to 4.

Errors: None.

See also: `DiskFree` (1664), `DiskSize` (1665)

### 76.15.4 AddTerminateProc

Synopsis: Add a procedure to the exit chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddTerminateProc(TermProc: TTerminateProc)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddTerminateProc` adds `TermProc` to the list of exit procedures. When the program exits, the list of exit procedures is run over, and all procedures are called one by one, in the reverse order that they were added to the exit chain.

Errors: If no memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1625](#)), `CallTerminateProcs` ([1649](#))

### 76.15.5 AdjustLineBreaks

Synopsis: Convert possible line-endings to the currently valid line ending.

Declaration: `function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: string) : string`  
`function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: string; Style: TTextLineBreakStyle)`  
`: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AdjustLineBreaks` will change all occurrences of `#13` and `#10` characters with the correct line-ending characters for the current platform. This is `#13#10` on Windows and Dos. On Unix-like platforms, this is `#10` and for Mac OS X it is `#13`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` ([1633](#)), `AnsiCompareText` ([1634](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AdjustLineBreaks function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Const**

`S = 'This is a string'#13'with embedded'#10'linefeed and'+`  
`#13'CR characters';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (AdjustLineBreaks(S));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.6 AnsiCompareFileName

Synopsis: Compare 2 filenames.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareFileName(const S1: string; const S2: string)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareFileName` compares 2 filenames `S1` and `S2`, and returns

< 0 if `S1`<`S2`.  
 = 0 if `S1`=`S2`.  
 > 0 if `S1`>`S2`.

The function actually checks `FileNameCaseSensitive` and returns the result of `AnsiCompareStr` (1633) or `AnsiCompareText` (1634) depending on whether `FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` or `False`

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiCompareStr` (1633), `AnsiCompareText` (1634), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` (1637)

### 76.15.7 AnsiCompareStr

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 ansistrings, case sensitive, ignoring accents characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiCompareStr(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareStr` compares two strings and returns the following result:

< 0 if `S1`<`S2`.  
 0 if `S1`=`S2`.  
 > 0 if `S1`>`S2`.

The comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareText` (1634), the comparison is case sensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AdjustLineBreaks` (1632), `AnsiCompareText` (1634)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

```
begin
  R:=AnsiCompareStr(S1,S2);
  Write ('"',S1,'" is ');
  If R<0 then
    write ('less than ')
  else If R=0 then
    Write ('equal to ')
end
```

---

```

    else
        Write ( 'larger than ');
    WriteLn ( '', S2, '' );
end;

Begin
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.8 AnsiCompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case insensitive, ignoring accents characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareText(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiCompareText` compares two strings and returns the following result:

```

<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.

```

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareStr` ([1633](#)), the comparison is case insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` ([1632](#)), `AnsiCompareText` ([1634](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

```

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareText function }
{$H+}

```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

```

begin
    R:=AnsiCompareText(S1,S2);
    Write ( '', S1, ' is ');
    If R<0 then
        write ( 'less than ')
    else If R=0 then
        Write ( 'equal to ')
    else

```

---

```

    Write ( 'larger than ');
    Writeln ( '', S2, '' );
end;

Begin
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.9 AnsiDequotedStr

Synopsis: Extract string without quotes

Declaration: `function AnsiDequotedStr(const S: string; AQuote: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiDequotedStr` is, similar to `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1635), a method to extract a string that was quoted using `AnsiQuotedStr` (1637). The string `S` must start and end with the quote character `AQuote` (they will be removed from the result) and all double occurrences of the quote character `AQuote` will be reduced to a single quote character.

Errors: If the string does not start and end with the quote character or has length less than 2, the original string is returned.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1635), `AnsiQuotedStr` (1637)

### 76.15.10 AnsiExtractQuotedStr

Synopsis: Removes the first quoted string from a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiExtractQuotedStr(var Src: PChar; Quote: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` returns the first quoted string in `Src`, and deletes the result from `Src`. The resulting string has with `Quote` characters removed from the beginning and end of the string (if they are present), and double `Quote` characters replaced by a single `Quote` characters. As such, it reverses the action of `AnsiQuotedStr` (1637).

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` (1637)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex51.pp`

---

```

Program Example51;
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiQuotedStr function }
Uses sysutils;

Var
    S : AnsiString;
    P : PChar;

Begin

```

---

```

S:= 'He said "Hello" and walked on';
P:= Pchar(S);
S:= AnsiQuotedStr(P, '"');
Writeln (S);
P:= Pchar(S);
Writeln (AnsiExtractQuotedStr(P, '"'));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.11 AnsiLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLastChar(const S: string) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function returns a pointer to the last character of S.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as `@S[Length[S]]`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiStrLastChar` ([1640](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLastChar function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;  
L : Longint;

**Begin**

```

S:= 'This is an ansistring.';
Writeln ('Last character of S is : ',AnsiLastChar(S));
L:= Longint(AnsiLastChar(S))-Longint(@S[1])+1;
Writeln ('Length of S is : ',L);

```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.12 AnsiLowerCase

**Synopsis:** Return a lowercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLowerCase(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiLowerCase` converts the string S to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiUpperCase \(1644\)](#), [AnsiStrLower \(1642\)](#), [AnsiStrUpper \(1644\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
  WriteLn (S, ' → ', AnsiLowerCase(S))  
**end**;

**Begin**  
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');  
  Testit('Some mixed STring');  
  Testit('a lowercase string');  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.13 AnsiLowerCaseFileName

Synopsis: Convert filename to lowercase.

**Declaration:** function AnsiLowerCaseFileName(const s: string) : string

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiLowerCaseFileName simply returns the result of

AnsiLowerCase(S);

See also: [AnsiLowerCase \(1636\)](#), [AnsiCompareFileName \(1632\)](#), [AnsiUpperCaseFileName \(1645\)](#)

### 76.15.14 AnsiPos

Synopsis: Return Position of one ansistring in another.

**Declaration:** function AnsiPos(const substr: string; const s: string) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiPos does the same as the standard Pos function.

See also: [AnsiStrPos \(1643\)](#), [AnsiStrScan \(1643\)](#), [AnsiStrRScan \(1643\)](#)

### 76.15.15 AnsiQuotedStr

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of a string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiQuotedStr(const S: string; Quote: Char) : string

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiQuotedString` quotes the string `S` and returns the result. This means that it puts the `Quote` character at both the beginning and end of the string and replaces any occurrence of `Quote` in `S` with 2 `Quote` characters. The action of `AnsiQuotedString` can be reversed by `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1635).

For an example, see `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1635)

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1635)

### 76.15.16 `AnsiSameStr`

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function AnsiSameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareStr` (1633) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` (1633), `SameText` (1728), `AnsiSameText` (1638)

### 76.15.17 `AnsiSameText`

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

**Declaration:** `function AnsiSameText(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareText` (1634) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (1634), `SameText` (1728), `AnsiSameStr` (1638)

### 76.15.18 `AnsiStrComp`

**Synopsis:** Compare two null-terminated strings. Case sensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiStrComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

```
<0 if S1<S2.
0 if S1=S2.
>0 if S1>S2.
```

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1634](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1633](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrComp(S1,S2);

**Write** ('"',S1,'" is ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ('less than ')

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ('equal to ')

**else**

**Write** ('larger than ');

**WriteLn** ('"',S2,'"');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.19 AnsiStrIComp

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case insensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrIComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrIComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1634\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1633\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex55.pp

---

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrlComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:= AnsiStrlComp (S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**WriteLn** ( '',S2, '' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ' );

  Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ' );

**End.**

---

### 76.15.20 AnsiStrLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLastChar(Str: PChar) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Return a pointer to the last character of the null-terminated string.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as @S[Length[S]].

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1634\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1633\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex56.pp

---

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLComp function }*

---

```

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

Var R : Longint;

begin
  R:=AnsiStrLComp(S1,S2,L);
  Write ( 'First ',L, ' characters of "',S1,'" are ');
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ' )
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ' )
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ' );
  WriteLn ( 'those of "',S2,'" ');
end;

Begin
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ',255);
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One String ',4);
  Testit( 'One string ', '1 string ',0);
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One string. ',9);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.21 AnsiStrLComp

Synopsis: Compare a limited number of characters of 2 strings

Declaration: `function AnsiStrLComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: SizeUInt) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrLComp` functions the same as `AnsiStrComp` ([1638](#)), but compares at most `MaxLen` characters. If the first `MaxLen` characters in both strings are the same, then zero is returned.

Note that this function processes embedded null characters, treating them as a normal character.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrComp` ([1638](#)), `AnsiStrIComp` ([1639](#)), `AnsiStrLComp` ([1641](#))

### 76.15.22 AnsiStrLIComp

Synopsis: Compares a given number of characters of a string, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrLIComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: SizeUInt) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrLIComp` compares the first `Maxlen` characters of 2 `PChar` strings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

```

<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.

```

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1634\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1633\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex57.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLIComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=AnsiStrLIComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ('First ',L,' characters of "',S1,'" are ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ('less than ');

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ('equal to ');

**else**

**Write** ('larger than ');

**WriteLn** ('those of "',S2,'"');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string',255);

  Testit('ONE STRING','one String',4);

  Testit('One string','1 STRING',0);

  Testit('One STRING','one string.',9);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.23 AnsiStrLower

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-lowercase characters.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLower(Str: PChar) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLower` converts the PChar `Str` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting pchar.

Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of [AnsiLowerCase \(1636\)](#). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiStrUpper \(1644\)](#), [AnsiLowerCase \(1636\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex59.pp

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLower function }*

**Uses** sysutils , strings ;

**Procedure** Testit (S : PChar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' → ', AnsiStrLower(**StrNew**(S)))

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

  Testit('Some mixed STring');

  Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

#### 76.15.24 AnsiStrPos

**Synopsis:** Return position of one null-terminated substring in another

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrPos(str: PChar; substr: PChar) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the first occurrence of SubStr in Str. If SubStr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if either Str or SubStr point to invalid memory.

**See also:** AnsiPos ([1637](#)), AnsiStrScan ([1643](#)), AnsiStrRScan ([1643](#))

#### 76.15.25 AnsiStrRScan

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrRScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the *last* occurrence of the character Chr in Str. If Chr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if Str points to invalid memory.

**See also:** AnsiPos ([1637](#)), AnsiStrScan ([1643](#)), AnsiStrPos ([1643](#))

#### 76.15.26 AnsiStrScan

**Synopsis:** Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the *first* occurrence of the character `Chr` in `Str`. If `Chr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if `Str` points to invalid memory.

**See also:** `AnsiPos` ([1637](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1643](#)), `AnsiStrPos` ([1643](#))

### 76.15.27 AnsiStrUpper

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-uppercase characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrUpper(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrUpper` converts the `PCharStr` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiUpperCase` ([1644](#)). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiUpperCase` ([1644](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1642](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1636](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrUpper function }*

**Uses** sysutils , strings ;

**Procedure** Testit (S : PChar);

**begin**  
     **WriteLn** (S, ' → ', AnsiStrUpper(**StrNew**(S)))  
**end**;

**Begin**  
     Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');  
     Testit('Some mixed STring');  
     Testit('a lowercase string');  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.28 AnsiUpperCase

**Synopsis:** Return an uppercase version of a string, taking into account special characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiUpperCase(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` ([1644](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1642](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1636](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiUpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (S, ' -> ', AnsiUpperCase(S))`

**end**;

**Begin**

`Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');`

`Testit('Some mixed STring');`

`Testit('a lowercase string');`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.29 AnsiUpperCaseFileName

**Synopsis:** Convert filename to uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiUpperCaseFileName(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

`AnsiUpperCase(S);`

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1644](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1632](#)), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` ([1637](#))

### 76.15.30 AppendStr

**Synopsis:** Append one ansistring to another.

**Declaration:** `procedure AppendStr(var Dest: string; const S: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AppendStr` appends `S` to `Dest`.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only, since it is completely equivalent to `Dest := Dest+S`.

Errors: None.

See also: [AssignStr \(1646\)](#), [NewStr \(1723\)](#), [DisposeStr \(1665\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex62.pp

---

```

Program Example62 ;

{ This program demonstrates the AppendStr function }

Uses sysutils ;

Var S : AnsiString ;

Begin
  S:= 'This is an ';
  AppendStr(S, 'AnsiString ');
  WriteLn ('S = "', S, '"');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.31 ApplicationName

Synopsis: Return a default application name

Declaration: `function ApplicationName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ApplicationName` returns the name of the current application. Standard this is equal to the filename part minus extension of `ParamStr(0)`, but it can be customized by setting the `OnGetApplicationName (1629)` callback.

Note that the returned value is only the name portion. It does not contain any path or file extension.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetAppConfigDir \(1707\)](#), [OnGetApplicationName \(1629\)](#), [GetAppConfigFile \(1707\)](#), [ConfigExtension \(1607\)](#)

### 76.15.32 AssignStr

Synopsis: Assigns an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStr(var P: PString; const S: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStr` allocates `S` to `P`. The old value of `P` is disposed of.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

Errors: None.

See also: [NewStr \(1723\)](#), [AppendStr \(1645\)](#), [DisposeStr \(1665\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AssignStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** P : PString;

**Begin**

```
P:=NewStr('A first AnsiString');
Writeln ('Before: P = "',P^,'"');
AssignStr(P,'A Second ansistring');
Writeln ('After : P = "',P^,'"');
DisposeStr(P);
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.33 BCDToInt

Synopsis: Convert a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Declaration: `function BCDToInt(Value: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: BCDToInt converts a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToInt ([1751](#)), IntToStr ([1718](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex64.pp

---

**Program** Example64;

```
{ This program demonstrates the BCDToInt function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit ( L : longint);

**begin**

```
Writeln (L, ' -> ',BCDToInt(L));
```

**end;**

**Begin**

```
Testit(10);
Testit(100);
Testit(23);
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.34 Beep

Synopsis: Sound the system bell.

Declaration: `procedure Beep`

Visibility: default

Description: `Beep` sounds the system bell, if one is available. The actual beep is produced by the `OnBeep` (1628) callback. The `Sysutils` unit itself contains no implementation of this call.

### 76.15.35 BoolToStr

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to a string.

Declaration: 

```
function BoolToStr(B: Boolean; UseBoolStrs: Boolean) : string
function BoolToStr(B: Boolean; const TrueS: string;
const FalseS: string) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `BoolToStr` converts the boolean `B` to one of the strings ' TRUE ' or ' FALSE '

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToBool` (1746)

### 76.15.36 ByteLength

Synopsis: Length (in bytes) of a unicodestring

Declaration: 

```
function ByteLength(const S: UnicodeString) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteLength` returns the length of a unicodestring in bytes. This equals the character length of the string (`Length` (1599)) multiplied by the number of bytes per character (2).

See also: `Length` (1599)

### 76.15.37 BytesOf

Synopsis: Return the bytes in a string

Declaration: 

```
function BytesOf(const Val: RawByteString) : TBytes
function BytesOf(const Val: AnsiChar) : TBytes
function BytesOf(const Val: UnicodeString) : TBytes; Overload
function BytesOf(const Val: WideChar) : TBytes; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `BytesOf` returns a copy of the string's content as an array of bytes. For an empty string, zero bytes are returned (i.e. `length(BytesOf(S))=0`).

See also: `TBytes` (1617)

**76.15.38 ByteToCharIndex**

Synopsis: Convert a character index in Bytes to an Index in characters

Declaration: `function ByteToCharIndex(const S: string; Index: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteToCharIndex` returns the index (in characters) of the `Index`-th byte in `S`.

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1650](#)), `ByteToCharLen` ([1649](#))

**76.15.39 ByteToCharLen**

Synopsis: Convert a length in bytes to a length in characters.

Declaration: `function ByteToCharLen(const S: string; MaxLen: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteToCharLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1650](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1649](#))

**76.15.40 ByteType**

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in an ansistring for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function ByteType(const S: string; Index: SizeUInt) : TMbcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteType` returns the type of byte in the ansistring `S` at (1-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: `TMbcsByteType` ([1622](#)), `StrByteType` ([1732](#))

**76.15.41 CallTerminateProcs**

Synopsis: Call the exit chain procedures.

Declaration: `function CallTerminateProcs : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallTerminateProcs` is run on program exit. It executes all terminate procedures that were added to the exit chain with `AddTerminateProc` ([1632](#)), and does this in reverse order.

Errors: If one of the exit procedure raises an exception, it is *not* caught, and the remaining exit procedures will not be executed.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1625](#)), `AddTerminateProc` ([1632](#))

**76.15.42 ChangeFileExt**

Synopsis: Change the extension of a filename.

Declaration: 

```
function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: UNICODESTRING;
                      const Extension: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING
function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING;
                      const Extension: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeFileExt` changes the file extension in `FileName` to `Extension`. The extension `Extension` includes the starting `.` (dot). The previous extension of `FileName` are all characters after the last `.`, the `.` character included.

If `FileName` doesn't have an extension, `Extension` is just appended.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileExt` ([1674](#)), `ExtractFileName` ([1674](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1675](#)), `ExpandFileName` ([1671](#))

**76.15.43 CharInSet**

Synopsis: Check whether a char is in a set of characters

Declaration: 

```
function CharInSet(Ch: AnsiChar; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : Boolean
function CharInSet(Ch: WideChar; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CharInSet` returns `True` if `Ch` matches one of the characters in `CSet`, it returns `False` otherwise. It is equivalent to

```
Ch in CSet
```

Later versions of this function may take `WideChar` into account.

**76.15.44 CharToByteLen**

Synopsis: Convert a length in characters to a length in bytes.

Declaration: 

```
function CharToByteLen(const S: string; MaxLen: SizeInt) : SizeInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CharToByteLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `ByteToCharLen` ([1649](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1649](#))

**76.15.45 CheckOSError**

Declaration: 

```
procedure CheckOSError(LastError: Integer)
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.46 CodePageNameToCodePage

Synopsis: Return a numeric identifier for the codepage.

Declaration: `function CodePageNameToCodePage(const cpname: AnsiString)  
: TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `CodePageNameToCodePage` returns the code page number for the specified codepage `cpname`.

Errors: If the code page is not found in the list of code pages, \$FFFF is returned.

See also: `CodePageToCodePageName` ([1651](#))

### 76.15.47 CodePageToCodePageName

Synopsis: Convert a numeric codepage identifier to a codepage name

Declaration: `function CodePageToCodePageName(cp: TSystemCodePage) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `CodePageToCodePageName` returns the name of the codepage `cp`.

Errors: If no matching codepage is found in the list of codepages, an empty string is returned.

See also: `CodePageNameToCodePage` ([1651](#))

### 76.15.48 CompareMem

Synopsis: Compare two memory areas.

Declaration: `function CompareMem(P1: Pointer; P2: Pointer; &Length: PtrUInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMem` compares, byte by byte, 2 memory areas pointed to by `P1` and `P2`, for a length of `L` bytes.

The function returns `True` if all `L` bytes are the same, and `False` otherwise.

### 76.15.49 CompareMemRange

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory locations

Declaration: `function CompareMemRange(P1: Pointer; P2: Pointer; &Length: PtrUInt)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMemRange` compares the 2 memory locations pointed to by `P1` and `P2` byte per byte. It stops comparing after `Length` bytes have been compared, or when it has encountered 2 different bytes. The result is then

>0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is bigger than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.

0 if all bytes in range `P1` are the same as the corresponding bytes in range `P2`.

<0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is less than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.





### 76.15.52 ComposeDateTime

Synopsis: Add a date and time

Declaration: `function ComposeDateTime(Date: TDateTime; Time: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ComposeDateTime` correctly adds `Date` and `Time`, also for dates before 1899-12-31. For dates after this date, it is just the mathematical addition.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.dateutils.EncodeDateTime` (602)

### 76.15.53 ConcatPaths

Synopsis: Concatenate an array of paths to form a single path

Declaration: `function ConcatPaths(const Paths: Array of UNICODESTRING)  
: UNICODESTRING  
function ConcatPaths(const Paths: Array of RAWBYTESTRING)  
: RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConcatPaths` will concatenate the different path components in `Paths` to a single path. It will insert directory separators between the various components of the path as needed. No directory separators will be added to the beginning or the end of the path, and none will be taken away.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716), `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` (1715), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1669), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex96.pp`

---

```

program ex96;

  { This program demonstrates the Concatpaths function }

uses sysutils;

begin
  // will write /this/path/more/levels/
  Writeln(ConcatPaths(['this/', 'path', 'more/levels/']));
  // will write this/path/more/levels/
  Writeln(ConcatPaths(['this/', 'path', 'more/levels/']));
  // will write this/path/more/levels
  Writeln(ConcatPaths(['this/', 'path', 'more/levels']));
end.

```

---

### 76.15.54 CreateDir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function CreateDir(const NewDir: RawByteString) : Boolean  
function CreateDir(const NewDir: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CreateDir` creates a new directory with name `NewDir`. If the directory doesn't contain an absolute path, then the directory is created below the current working directory.

The function returns `True` if the directory was successfully created, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case of an error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `RemoveDir` ([1725](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex26.pp`

**Program** `Example26`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CreateDir and RemoveDir functions }
{ Run this program twice in the same directory }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

```
If Not DirectoryExists ('NewDir') then
  If Not CreateDir ('NewDir') Then
    WriteLn ('Failed to create directory !')
  else
    WriteLn ('Created "NewDir" directory')
Else
  If Not RemoveDir ('NewDir') Then
    WriteLn ('Failed to remove directory !')
  else
    WriteLn ('Removed "NewDir" directory');
```

**End.**

### 76.15.55 CreateGUID

**Synopsis:** Create a new GUID

**Declaration:** `function CreateGUID(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `CreateGUID` can be called to create a new GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) value. The function returns the new GUID value in `GUID` and returns zero in case the GUID was created successfully. If no GUID was created, a nonzero error code is returned.

The default mechanism for creating a new GUID is system dependent. If operating system support is available, it is used. If none is available, a default implementation using random numbers is used.

The `OnCreateGUID` callback can be set to hook a custom mechanism behind the `CreateGUID` function. This can be used to let the GUID be created by an external GUID creation library.

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero return value is returned.

See also: `GUIDCase` ([1714](#)), `IsEqualGUID` ([1719](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1737](#)), `TryStringToGUID` ([1763](#)), `GUIDToString` ([1714](#))

### 76.15.56 CurrentYear

**Synopsis:** Return the current year

**Declaration:** `function CurrentYear : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrentYear` returns the current year as a 4-digit number.

Errors: None.

See also: [Date \(1656\)](#), [Time \(1758\)](#), [Now \(1724\)](#)

### 76.15.57 CurrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a currency value to a string.

Declaration: 

```
function CurrToStr(Value: Currency) : string
function CurrToStr(Value: Currency;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrToStr` will convert a currency value to a string with a maximum of 15 digits, and precision 2. Calling `CurrToStr` is equivalent to calling `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)):

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffNumber, 15, 2);
```

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see [Localization \(1600\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1746](#))

### 76.15.58 CurrToStrF

Synopsis: Format a currency to a string

Declaration: 

```
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer) : string
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrToStrF` formats the currency `Value` according to the value in `Format`, using the number of digits specified in `Digits`, and a precision of 19. This function simply calls `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)).

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see [Localization \(1600\)](#).

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)), [Localization \(1600\)](#)

### 76.15.59 Date

Synopsis: Return the current date.

Declaration: 

```
function Date : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Date` returns the current date in `TDateTime` format.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Time` ([1758](#)), `Now` ([1724](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ This program demonstrates the Date function }*

**uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `YY,MM,DD` : `Word`;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** (`'Date : ',Date`);

**DeCodeDate** (`Date,YY,MM,DD`);

**WriteIn** (`format ('Date is (DD/MM/YY): %d/%d/%d ',[dd,mm,yy ])`);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.60 DateTimeToFileDate

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` value to a file age (integer)

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToFileDate(DateTime: TDateTime) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DateTimeToFileDate` function converts a date/time indication in `TDateTime` format to a file-date function, such as returned for instance by the `FileAge` ([1676](#)) function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Time` ([1758](#)), `Date` ([1656](#)), `FileDateToDateTime` ([1679](#)), `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1659](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1660](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToFileDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** (`'FileTime of now would be: ',DateTimeToFileDate (Now)`);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.61 DateTimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime; ForceTimeIfZero: Boolean) : string`  
`function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings; ForceTimeIfZero: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToStr` returns a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `ShortDateFormat` and `LongTimeFormat`. It corresponds to a call to `FormatDateTime('c', DateTime)` (see [formatchars \(1605\)](#)).

Note that if the time part is 0 (i.e. midnight), no time is appended.

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see [Localization \(1600\)](#).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FormatDateTime` ([1704](#)), `DefaultFormatSettings` ([1627](#)), [Localization \(1600\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', DateTimeToStr(Now));`

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', FormatDateTime('c', Now));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.62 DateTimeToString

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string with a given format.

**Declaration:** `procedure DateTimeToString(out Result: string; const FormatStr: string; const DateTime: TDateTime; Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions)`  
`procedure DateTimeToString(out Result: string; const FormatStr: string; const DateTime: TDateTime; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings; Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToString` returns in `Result` a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `FormatStr`.

for a list of characters that can be used in the `FormatStr` formatting string, see [formatchars \(1605\)](#).

Note that for 'c', if the time part is 0 (i.e. midnight), no time is appended.

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see [Localization \(1600\)](#).

**Errors:** In case a wrong formatting character is found, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) is raised.

See also: [FormatDateTime \(1704\)](#), [formatchars \(1605\)](#), [EConvertError \(1781\)](#), [Localization \(1600\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;

{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToString function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure today (Fmt : string);

Var S : AnsiString;

begin
    DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Date);
    WriteLn (S);
end;

Procedure Now (Fmt : string);

Var S : AnsiString;

begin
    DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Time);
    WriteLn (S);
end;

Begin
    Today ('Today is "dddd dd mmmm y');
    Today ('Today is "d mmm yy');
    Today ('Today is "d/mmm/yy');
    Now ('The time is 'am/pmh:n:s');
    Now ('The time is 'hh:nn:ssam/pm');
    Now ('The time is 'tt');
End.
```

---

### 76.15.63 DateTimeToSystemTime

**Synopsis:** Converts a TDateTime value to a systemtime structure.

**Declaration:** `procedure DateTimeToSystemTime(DateTime: TDateTime;  
out SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToSystemTime converts a date/time pair in DateTime, with TDateTime format to a system time SystemTime.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [DateTimeToFileDate \(1657\)](#), [SystemTimeToDateTime \(1757\)](#), [DateTimeToTimeStamp \(1660\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToSystemTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

DateTimeToSystemTime(**Now**,ST);

**With** St **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Today is ',year,'/',month,'/',Day);

**Writeln** ('The time is ',Hour,':',minute,':',Second,'.',',MilliSecond);

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 76.15.64 DateTimeToTimeStamp

**Synopsis:** Converts a TDateTime value to a TimeStamp structure.

**Declaration:** function DateTimeToTimeStamp(DateTime: TDateTime) : TTimeStamp

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToSystemTime converts a date/time pair in DateTime, with TDateTime format to a TTimeStamp format.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** DateTimeToFileDate ([1657](#)), SystemTimeToDateTime ([1757](#)), DateTimeToSystemTime ([1659](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** TS : TTimeStamp;

**Begin**

TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (**Now**);

**With** TS **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Now is ',time,' millisecond past midnight');

**Writeln** ('Today is ',Date,' days past 1/1/0001');

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 76.15.65 DateToStr

**Synopsis:** Converts a TDateTime value to a date string with a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function DateToStr(Date: TDateTime) : string`  
`function DateToStr(Date: TDateTime;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateToStr` converts `Date` to a string representation. It uses `ShortDateFormat` as it's formatting string. It is hence completely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('dddd', Date)`.

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see [Localization \(1600\)](#).

**Errors:** None.

See also: [TimeToStr \(1760\)](#), [DateTimeToStr \(1657\)](#), [FormatDateTime \(1704\)](#), [StrToDate \(1747\)](#), [Localization \(1600\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7;`

`{ This program demonstrates the DateToStr function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (Format ('Today is: %s ', [DateToStr (Date)]));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.66 DayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Returns the day of the week.

**Declaration:** `function DayOfWeek(DateTime: TDateTime) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DayOfWeek` returns the day of the week from `DateTime`. Sunday is counted as day 1, Saturday is counted as day 7. The result of `DayOfWeek` can serve as an index to the `LongDayNames` constant array, to retrieve the name of the day.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [Date \(1656\)](#), [DateToStr \(1660\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

`{ This program demonstrates the DayOfWeek function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('Today 's day is ', LongDayNames[DayOfWeek (Date)]);`

**End.**

---

**76.15.67 DecodeDate**

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime to a year,month,day triplet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDate(Date: TDateTime; out Year: Word; out Month: Word; out Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDate` decodes the Year, Month and Day stored in `Date`, and returns them in the Year, Month and Day variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1666](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1662](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `Example9`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `YY,MM,DD` : `Word`;

**Begin**

`DecodeDate`( `Date` ,`YY`,`MM`,`DD`);

`WriteLn` ( `Format` ( 'Today is %d/%d/%d' ,[`dd`,`mm`,`yy`] ) );

**End.**

---

**76.15.68 DecodeDateFully**

Synopsis: Decode a date with additional date of the week.

Declaration: `function DecodeDateFully(const DateTime: TDateTime; out Year: Word; out Month: Word; out Day: Word; out DOW: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDateFully`, like `DecodeDate` ([1662](#)), decodes `DateTime` in its parts and returns these in Year, Month, Day but in addition returns the day of the week in DOW.

Errors: None.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1666](#)), `TryEncodeDate` ([1762](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1662](#))

**76.15.69 DecodeTime**

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime to a hour,minute,second,millisecond quartet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeTime(Time: TDateTime; out Hour: Word; out Minute: Word; out Second: Word; out MilliSecond: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeTime` decodes the hours, minutes, second and milliseconds stored in `Time`, and returns them in the Hour, Minute and Second and MilliSecond variables.

Errors: None.

See also: [EncodeTime \(1667\)](#), [DecodeDate \(1662\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** HH,MM,SS,MS: Word;

**Begin**

**DecodeTime**(Time,HH,MM,SS,MS);

**WriteLn** (format('The time is %d:%d:%d.%d',[hh,mm,ss,ms]));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.70 DeleteFile

Synopsis: Delete a file from the file system.

**Declaration:** function DeleteFile(const FileName: UnicodeString) : Boolean  
function DeleteFile(const FileName: RawByteString) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** DeleteFile deletes file FileName from disk. The function returns True if the file was successfully removed, False otherwise.

Errors: On error, False is returned.

See also: [FileCreate \(1677\)](#), [FileExists \(1679\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example31;

*{ This program demonstrates the DeleteFile function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

    Line : **String**;

    F,I : Longint;

**Begin**

    F:= FileCreate('test.txt');

    Line:='Some string line.'#10;

**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**

        FileWrite (F,Line[1],Length(Line));

**FileClose**(F);

**DeleteFile**('test.txt');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.71 DirectoryExists

Synopsis: Check whether a directory exists in the file system.

Declaration: `function DirectoryExists(const Directory: UnicodeString;  
FollowLink: Boolean) : Boolean  
function DirectoryExists(const Directory: RawByteString;  
FollowLink: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DirectoryExists` checks whether `Directory` exists in the file system and is actually a directory. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1679](#))

### 76.15.72 DiskFree

Synopsis: Return the amount of free disk space

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskFree` returns the free space (in bytes) on disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

**0**for the current drive.

**1**for the first floppy drive.

**2**for the second floppy drive.

**3**for the first hard-disk partition.

**4-26**for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the file system is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` and `DiskSize` ([1665](#)) functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` ([1631](#)).

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned.

See also: `DiskSize` ([1665](#)), `AddDisk` ([1631](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DiskFree function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`Write ('Size of current disk : ',DiskSize(0));`

`WriteLn (' (= ',DiskSize(0) div 1024,'k)');`

`Write ('Free space of current disk : ',Diskfree(0));`

`WriteLn (' (= ',Diskfree(0) div 1024,'k)');`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.73 DiskSize

Synopsis: Return the total amount of disk space.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the size (in bytes) of disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0** for the current drive.
- 1** for the first floppy drive.
- 2** for the second floppy drive.
- 3** for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26** for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the file system is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` (1664) and `DiskSize` functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1631)

For an example, see `DiskFree` (1664).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskFree` (1664), `AddDisk` (1631)

### 76.15.74 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose an anstring from the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(S: PString); Overload`  
`procedure DisposeStr(S: PShortString); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes the dynamically allocated string `S` from the heap, and releases the occupied memory.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

For an example, see `DisposeStr` (1665).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (1723), `AppendStr` (1645), `AssignStr` (1646)

### 76.15.75 DoDirSeparators

Synopsis: Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.

Declaration: `procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: UNICODESTRING)`  
`procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: RAWBYTESTRING)`

Visibility: default

Description: This function replaces all known directory separators in `FileName` to the directory separator character for the current system. The list of known separators is specified in the `AllowDirectorySeparators` (1338) constant.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractFileName ([1674](#)), ExtractFilePath ([1675](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex32.pp

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ This program demonstrates the DoDirSeparators function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (F : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteIn** ('Before : ',F);

    DoDirSeparators (F);

**WriteIn** ('After : ',F);

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (GetCurrentDir);

    Testit ('c:\pp\bin\win32');

    Testit ('/usr/lib/fpc');

    Testit ('\usr\lib\fpc');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.76 EncodeDate

**Synopsis:** Encode a Year,Month,Day to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function EncodeDate(Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EncodeDate encodes the Year, Month and Day variables to a date in TDateTime format. It does the opposite of the DecodeDate ([1662](#)) procedure.

The parameters must lie withing valid ranges (boundaries included):

**Year** must be between 1 and 9999.

**Month** must be within the range 1-12.

**Day** must be between 1 and 31.

**Errors:** In case one of the parameters is out of it's valid range, an EConvertError ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: EncodeTime ([1667](#)), DecodeDate ([1662](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,DD : Word;

**Begin**

```

DecodeDate ( Date, YY,MM,DD);
WriteLn ( 'Today is : ',FormatDateTime ( 'dd mmm yyyy ',EnCodeDate(YY,Mm,Dd)));
End.

```

---

**76.15.77 EncodeTime**

Synopsis: Encode a Hour,Min,Sec,millisecond to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeTime(Hour: Word; Minute: Word; Second: Word; MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: EncodeTime encodes the Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond variables to a TDateTime format result. It does the opposite of the DecodeTime (1662) procedure.

The parameters must have a valid range (boundaries included):

**Hour** must be between 0 and 23.

**Minute,second** must both be between 0 and 59.

**Millisecond** must be between 0 and 999.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is out of it's valid range, an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: EncodeDate (1666), DecodeTime (1662)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** Hh,MM,SS,MS : Word;

**Begin**

```

DeCodeTime ( Time, Hh,MM,SS,MS);
WriteLn ( 'Present Time is : ',FormatDateTime( 'hh:mm:ss ',EnCodeTime (HH,MM,SS,MS)));
End.

```

---

**76.15.78 ExceptAddr**

Synopsis: Current exception address.

Declaration: `function ExceptAddr : CodePointer`

Visibility: default

Description: ExceptAddr returns the address from the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

See also: ExceptObject (1668), ExceptionErrorMessage (1668), ShowException (1729)

### 76.15.79 ExceptFrameCount

Synopsis: Number of frames included in an exception backtrace

Declaration: `function ExceptFrameCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptFrameCount` returns the number of frames that are included in an exception stack frame backtrace. The function returns 0 if there is currently no exception being handled. (i.e. it only makes sense to call this function in an `finally..end` or `except..end` block.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExceptFrames` (1668), `ExceptAddr` (1667), `ExceptObject` (1668), `#rtl.system.ExceptProc` (1340)

### 76.15.80 ExceptFrames

Synopsis: Return the current exception stack frames

Declaration: `function ExceptFrames : PCodePointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptFrames` returns the current list frames on the exception stack. If there is no exception in progress, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `ExceptFrameCount` (1668), `ExceptAddr` (1667), `ExceptObject` (1668), `#rtl.system.ExceptProc` (1340)

### 76.15.81 ExceptionErrorMessage

Synopsis: Return a message describing the exception.

Declaration: `function ExceptionErrorMessage(ExceptObject: TObject;  
  ExceptAddr: Pointer; Buffer: PChar;  
  Size: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptionErrorMessage` creates a string that describes the exception object `ExceptObject` at address `ExceptAddr`. It can be used to display exception messages. The string will be stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer`, and will at most have `Size` characters.

The routine checks whether `ExceptObject` is a `Exception` (1788) object or not, and adapts the output accordingly.

See also: `ExceptObject` (1668), `ExceptAddr` (1667), `ShowException` (1729)

### 76.15.82 ExceptObject

Synopsis: Current Exception object.

Declaration: `function ExceptObject : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptObject` returns the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

Errors: If there is no exception, the function returns `Nil`

See also: `ExceptAddr` (1667), `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1668), `ShowException` (1729)

### 76.15.83 ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter

## Synopsis: Strip the leading path delimiter of a path

```
Declaration: function ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                     : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                     : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter` will remove any path delimiter on the first position of `Path` if there is one. if there is none (or the path is empty), it is left untouched.

See also: [IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter \(1716\)](#), [IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter \(1715\)](#), [ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter \(1669\)](#), [ConcatPaths \(1654\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex95.pp

**Program** Example95;

```
{ This program demonstrates the IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

## Begin

```
// Will print "/this/path"
WriteLn(IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter('this/path'));
// The same result
WriteLn(IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter('/this/path'));
End.
```

### 76.15.84 ExcludeTrailingBackslash

**Synopsis:** Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

```
Declaration: function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
              : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
              : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1669) instead.

See also: IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1716), ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1669), PathDelim (1612), IsPathDelimiter (1720)

### 76.15.85 ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

```
Declaration: function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                     : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                     : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` removes the trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1612)) from `Path` if it is present, and returns the result.

**See also:** `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` (1669), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716), `PathDelim` (1612), `IsPathDelimiter` (1720)

### 76.15.86 `ExecuteProcess`

**Synopsis:** Execute another process (program).

**Declaration:**

```
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: RawByteString;
                       const ComLine: RawByteString;
                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: RawByteString;
                       const ComLine: Array of RawByteString;
                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: UnicodeString;
                       const ComLine: UnicodeString;
                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: UnicodeString;
                       const ComLine: Array of UnicodeString;
                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExecuteProcess` will execute the program in `Path`, passing it the arguments in `ComLine`. `ExecuteProcess` will then wait for the program to finish, and will return the exit code of the executed program. In case `ComLine` is a single string, it will be split out in an array of strings, taking into account common whitespace and quote rules.

The program specified in `Path` is not searched in the searchpath specified in the `PATH` environment variable, so the full path to the executable must be specified in `Path`, although some operating systems may perform this search anyway (notably, windows)

`Flags` can be used to control the passing of file handles: if `ExecInheritsHandles` is included, the file handles of the current process will be passed on to the newly executed process.

**Errors:** In case the program could not be executed or an other error occurs, an `EOSError` (1785) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TExecuteFlags` (1618), `EOSError` (1785)

### 76.15.87 `ExeSearch`

**Synopsis:** Search for an executable

**Declaration:**

```
function ExeSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;
                  const DirList: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
function ExeSearch(const Name: RawByteString;
                  const DirList: RawByteString) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExeSearch` searches for an executable `Name` in the list of directories `DirList` (a list of directories, separator by `PathSeparator` (1355)). If the current OS also searches implicitly in the current working directory, the current directory is searched in the first place.

If the executable is found, then the full path of the executable is returned. If it is not found, an empty string is returned.

No check is performed whether the found file is actually executable.

See also: `FileSearch` (1684)

### 76.15.88 ExpandFileName

**Synopsis:** Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.

**Declaration:** `function ExpandFileName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExpandFileName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExpandFileName` expands the filename to an absolute filename. It changes all directory separator characters to the one appropriate for the system first.

If an empty filename is passed, it is expanded to the current directory.

If `BasePath` is not passed, the current directory is used as base path.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExpandFileNameCase` (1671), `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (F : String)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (F, ' expands to : ', ExpandFileName(F));`  
**end**;

**Begin**

`Testit ('ex33.pp');`  
    `Testit (ParamStr(0));`  
    `Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');`  
    `Testit ('\\pp\\bin\\win32\\ppc386');`  
    `Testit ('.');`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.89 ExpandFileNameCase

**Synopsis:** Expand a filename entered as case insensitive to the full path as stored on the disk.

**Declaration:**

```
function ExpandFileNameCase(const FileName: UNICODESTRING;
                           out MatchFound: TFilenameCaseMatch)
    : UNICODESTRING
function ExpandFileNameCase(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING;
                           out MatchFound: TFilenameCaseMatch)
    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** On case insensitive platforms, `ExpandFileNameCase` behaves similarly to `ExpandFileName` (1671) except for the fact that it returns the final part of the path with the same case of letters as found on the disk (if it exists - otherwise the case equals the one provided on input). On case sensitive platforms it also checks whether one or more full paths exist on disk which would correspond to the provided input if treated case insensitively and returns the first such match found and information whether the match is unique or not.

Note that the behaviour is basically undefined if the input includes wildcards characters. Normally, wildcards in the last part of path provided on input are resolved to the first corresponding item found on the disk, but it is better not to rely on that and use other more suitable functions if working with wildcards like `FindFirst` (1688)/`FindNext` (1689).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (1671), `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex33.pp

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (F : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteIn** (F, ' expands to : ', **ExpandFileName**(F));

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit('ex33.pp');

    Testit(**ParamStr**(0));

    Testit('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');

    Testit('\pp\bin\win32\ppc386');

    Testit('.');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.90 ExpandUNCFileName

**Synopsis:** Expand a relative filename to an absolute UNC filename.

**Declaration:**

```
function ExpandUNCFileName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING)
    : UNICODESTRING
function ExpandUNCFileName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING)
    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandUNCFileName` runs `ExpandFileName` (1671) on `FileName` and then attempts to replace the drive letter by the name of a shared disk.

Errors: If an unexpected error occurs while determining the name of the shared disk, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (1671), `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

### 76.15.91 ExtractFileDir

Synopsis: Extract the drive and directory part of a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDir` returns only the directory part of `FileName`, including a drive letter. The directory name has NO ending directory separator, in difference with `ExtractFilePath` (1675).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex34.pp

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractFileName function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit(F : **String**);

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'FileName : ', F);  
**Writeln** ( 'Has Name : ', **ExtractFileName**(F));  
**Writeln** ( 'Has Path : ', **ExtractFilePath**(F));  
**Writeln** ( 'Has Extension : ', **ExtractFileExt**(F));  
**Writeln** ( 'Has Directory : ', **ExtractFileDir**(F));  
**Writeln** ( 'Has Drive : ', **ExtractFileDrive**(F));

**end**;

**Begin**

Testit (**Paramstr**(0));  
Testit ('/usr/local/bin/mysqld');  
Testit ('c:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386.exe');  
Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386.exe');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.92 ExtractFileDrive

Synopsis: Extract the drive part from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDrive` extracts the drive letter from a filename. Note that some operating systems do not support drive letters.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1673).

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

### 76.15.93 ExtractFileExt

Synopsis: Return the extension from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileExt` returns the extension (including the . (dot) character) of `FileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1673).

Errors: None.

See also: `ChangeFileExt` (1650), `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

### 76.15.94 ExtractFileName

Synopsis: Extract the filename part from a full path filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileName` returns the filename part from `FileName`. The filename consists of all characters after the last directory separator character ('/' or '\') or drive letter.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` (1675) and `ExtractFileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1673).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

### 76.15.95 ExtractFilePath

**Synopsis:** Extract the path from a filename.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractFilePath` returns the path part (including drive letter) from `FileName`. The path consists of all characters before the last directory separator character ('/' or '\'), including the directory separator itself. In case there is only a drive letter, that will be returned.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` and `ExtractFileName` (1674).

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1673).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674), `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

### 76.15.96 ExtractRelativePath

**Synopsis:** Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractRelativePath(const BaseName: UNICODESTRING;`  
`const DestName: UNICODESTRING)`  
`: UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractRelativePath(const BaseName: RAWBYTESTRING;`  
`const DestName: RAWBYTESTRING)`  
`: RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractRelativePath` constructs a relative path to go from `BaseName` to `DestName`. If `DestName` is on another drive (Not on Unix-like platforms) then the whole `Destname` is returned.

Note that directories must end on a path delimiter for this function to work correctly. If not, the last part is stripped and treated as a file name.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractFileName` (1674), `ExtractFilePath` (1675), `ExtractFileDir` (1673), `ExtractFileDrive` (1674), `ExtractFileExt` (1674)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractRelativePath function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (FromDir, ToDir : **String**);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'From "', FromDir, '" to "', ToDir, '" via "');

**WriteLn** ( ExtractRelativePath(FromDir, ToDir), '"');

**end**;

**Begin**

```

Testit ('/pp/src/compiler/', '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/');
Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/', '/pp/src/compiler/');
Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/', '/pp/src/compiler/ppcx386/');
Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/', '/pp/src/compiler/ppcx386/');
Testit ('/pp/bin/win32', '/pp/src/compiler/ppcx386');
Testit ('e:/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/', 'd:/pp/src/compiler/');
Testit ('e:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386/', 'd:\pp\src\compiler/');
Testit ('C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ', 'C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ');
Testit ('C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ', 'C:\FPC\3.0.4 rc1\ ');
Testit ('Q:\ ', 'Q:\FPC\3.0.4 rc1\ ');

```

**End.****76.15.97 ExtractShortPathName**

**Synopsis:** Returns a 8.3 path name

**Declaration:**

```

function ExtractShortPathName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING)
    : UNICODESTRING
function ExtractShortPathName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING)
    : RAWBYTESTRING

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractShortPathName` returns a 8.3 compliant filename that represents the same file as `FileName`. On platforms other than windows, this is `FileName` itself.

See also: `ExtractFilePath` ([1675](#)), `ExtractFileName` ([1674](#))

**76.15.98 FileAge**

**Synopsis:** Return the timestamp of a file.

**Declaration:**

```

function FileAge(const FileName: UnicodeString) : LongInt
function FileAge(const FileName: UnicodeString;
    out FileDateTime: TDateTime; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean
function FileAge(const FileName: RawByteString;
    out FileDateTime: TDateTime; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean
function FileAge(const FileName: RawByteString) : LongInt

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileAge` returns the last modification time of file `FileName`. The `FileDate` format can be transformed to `TDateTime` format with the `FileDateToDateTime` ([1679](#)) function.

Fileage cannot be used on directories, it will return -1 if `FileName` indicates a directory.

**Errors:** In case of errors, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileDateToDateTime` ([1679](#)), `FileExists` ([1679](#)), `FileGetAttr` ([1680](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex36.pp

---

```

Program Example36;

{ This program demonstrates the FileAge function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : TDateTime;
    fa : Longint;
Begin
    fa := FileAge( 'ex36.pp' );
    If fa < -1 then
        begin
            S := FileDateToDateTime( fa );
            WriteLn ( 'I'm from ', DateTimeToStr(S))
        end;
End.

```

---

### 76.15.99 FileClose

**Synopsis:** Close a file handle.

**Declaration:** `procedure FileClose(Handle: THandle)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileClose` closes the file handle `Handle`. After this call, attempting to read or write from the handle will result in an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1677)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FileCreate` (1677), `FileWrite` (1687), `FileOpen` (1682), `FileRead` (1683), `FileTruncate` (1687), `FileSeek` (1685)

### 76.15.100 FileCreate

**Synopsis:** Create a new file and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:**

```

function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString; Rights: Integer)
    : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString; ShareMode: Integer;
    Rights: Integer) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString; Rights: Integer)
    : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString; ShareMode: Integer;
    Rights: Integer) : THandle

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileCreate` creates a new file with name `FileName` on the disk and returns a file handle which can be used to read or write from the file with the `FileRead` (1683) and `FileWrite` (1687) functions.

If a file with name `FileName` already existed on the disk, it is overwritten.

The `ShareMode` parameter determines how file sharing is handled for the new file. It can have one or more of the following values, OR-ed together:

Table 76.24:

| Name                          | Description                                 |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>fmShareCompat</code>    | Open file in DOS share-compatibility mode   |
| <code>fmShareDenyNone</code>  | Do not lock file.                           |
| <code>fmShareDenyRead</code>  | Lock file so other processes cannot read.   |
| <code>fmShareDenyWrite</code> | Lock file so other processes can only read. |
| <code>fmShareExclusive</code> | Lock file for exclusive use                 |

The optional `Rights` parameter only has an effect under UNIX, where it can be used to set the mode (read, write, execute, sticky bit, setgid and setuid flags) of the created file to the specified custom value. On other platforms, the `Rights` parameter is ignored.

**Errors:** If an error occurs (e.g. disk full or non-existent path), the function returns `THandle(-1)`.

See also: `FileClose` (1677), `FileWrite` (1687), `FileOpen` (1682), `FileRead` (1683), `FileTruncate` (1687), `FileSeek` (1685)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex37.pp`

**Program** `Example37`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate/FileSeek/FileRead/FileTruncate functions }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `I, J, F` : `Longint`;

**Begin**

```

F:=FileCreate ('test.dat');
If F=-1 then
  Halt(1);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));
FileClose(f);
F:=FileOpen ('test.dat',fmOpenRead);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  begin
    FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
    If J<>I then
      Writeln ('Mismatch at file position ',I)
    end;
  FileSeek(F,0,fsFromBeginning);
  Randomize;
  Repeat
    FileSeek(F,Random(100)*4,fsFromBeginning);
    FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
    Writeln ('Random read : ',j);
  Until J>80;
  FileClose(F);
F:=FileOpen('test.dat',fmOpenWrite);
I:=50*SizeOf(Longint);
If FileTruncate(F,I) then

```

```

WriteIn( 'Successfully truncated file to ',l,' bytes. ');
FileClose(F);
End.

```

### 76.15.101 FileDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a `FileDate` value to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function FileDateToDateTime(Filedate: LongInt) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileDateToDateTime` converts the date/time encoded in `filedate` to a `TDateTime` encoded form. It can be used to convert date/time values returned by the `FileAge` (1676) or `FindFirst` (1688)/`FindNext` (1689) functions to `TDateTime` form.

Errors: None.

See also: [DateTimeToFileDate \(1657\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex13.pp

**Program** Example13;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FileDateToDateTime function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

### Var

```
ThisAge : Longint;
```

## Begin

```
Write ( 'ex13.pp created on :' );
```

```
ThisAge:=FileAge( 'ex13.pp' );
```

```
WriteIn ( DateTimeToStr ( FileDateToDateTime ( ThisAge ) ) );
```

**End .**

## 76.15.102 FileExists

**Synopsis:** Check whether a particular file exists in the file system.

```
Declaration: function FileExists(const FileName: UnicodeString; FollowLink: Boolean)
              : Boolean
              function FileExists(const FileName: RawByteString; FollowLink: Boolean)
              : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileExists` returns `True` if a file with name `FileName` exists on the disk, `False` otherwise.  
On windows, this function will return `False` if a directory is passed as `FileName`.

On Unixes, passing a directory name used to result in `True`. (The rationale is that on UNIX, a directory is a file as well). As of version 3.2.0, this behaviour has been changed for a Delphi-compatible approach.

Note that this function accepts a single filename as an argument, without wildcards. To check for the existence of multiple files, see the [FindFirst \(1688\)](#) function.

Errors: None.

See also: FindFirst ([1688](#)), FileAge ([1676](#)), FileGetAttr ([1680](#)), FileSetAttr ([1686](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileExists function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**If FileExists(ParamStr(0)) Then**

        WriteLn ('All is well, I seem to exist.');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.103 FileFlush

**Declaration:** function FileFlush(Handle: THandle) : Boolean

Visibility: default

### 76.15.104 FileGetAttr

Synopsis: Return attributes of a file.

**Declaration:** function FileGetAttr(const FileName: UnicodeString) : LongInt  
function FileGetAttr(const FileName: RawByteString) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FileGetAttr returns the attribute settings of file FileName. The attribute is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly**The file is read-only.

**faHidden**The file is hidden. (On UNIX, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile**The file is a system file (On UNIX, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId**Volume Label. Only for DOS/Windows on a plain FAT (not VFAT or Fat32) file system.

**faDirectory**File is a directory.

**faArchive**file should be archived. Not possible on Unix

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: FileSetAttr ([1686](#)), FileAge ([1676](#)), FileGetDate ([1681](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetAttr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

---

```

Procedure Testit (Name : String);

Var F : Longint;

Begin
  F:= FileGetAttr(Name);
  If F<>-1 then
    begin
      Writeln ('Testing : ',Name);
      If (F and faReadOnly)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is ReadOnly');
      If (F and faHidden)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is hidden');
      If (F and faSysFile)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is a system file');
      If (F and faVolumeID)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is a disk label');
      If (F and faArchive)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is artchive file');
      If (F and faDirectory)<>0 then
        Writeln ('File is a directory');
      end
    else
      Writeln ('Error reading attributes of ',Name);
    end;

  begin
    testit ('ex40.pp');
    testit (ParamStr(0));
    testit ('. ');
    testit ('/ ');
  End.

```

---

### 76.15.105 FileGetDate

Synopsis: Return the file time of an opened file.

Declaration: `function FileGetDate(Handle: THandle) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetdate` returns the filetime of the opened file with file handle `Handle`. It is the same as `FileAge` (1676), with this difference that `FileAge` only needs the file name, while `FilegetDate` needs an open file handle.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileAge` (1676)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** F,D : Longint;

**Begin**

```

F:= FileCreate('test.dat');
D:= FileGetDate(F);
WriteLn ('File created on ',DateTimeToStr(FileDateToDateTime(D)));
FileClose(F);
DeleteFile('test.dat');

```

**End.****76.15.106 FileGetSymLinkTarget**

**Declaration:**

```

function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: UnicodeString;
                             out SymLinkRec: TSymLinkRec)
                             : Boolean

function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: UnicodeString;
                             out TargetName: UnicodeString) : Boolean

function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: RawByteString;
                             out SymLinkRec: TRawByteSymLinkRec)
                             : Boolean

function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: RawByteString;
                             out TargetName: RawByteString) : Boolean

```

**Visibility:** default

**76.15.107 FileIsReadOnly**

**Synopsis:** Check whether a file is read-only.

**Declaration:**

```

function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: UnicodeString) : Boolean
function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: RawByteString) : Boolean

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileIsReadOnly` checks whether `FileName` exists in the file system and is a read-only file. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1679](#))

**76.15.108 FileOpen**

**Synopsis:** Open an existing file and return a file handle

**Declaration:**

```

function FileOpen(const FileName: uncodestring; Mode: Integer)
                 : THandle

function FileOpen(const FileName: RawByteString; Mode: Integer)
                 : THandle

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileOpen` opens a file with name `FileName` with mode `Mode`. `Mode` can be one of the following constants:

**`fmOpenReadOpen`** file in read-only mode

**`fmOpenWriteOpen`** file in write-only mode

**fmOpenReadWrite** Open file in read/write mode.

Under Windows and Unix, the above mode can be or-ed with one of the following sharing/locking flags:

**fmShareCompat** Open file in DOS share-compatibility mode

**fmShareExclusive** Lock file for exclusive use

**fmShareDenyWrite** Lock file so other processes can only read.

**fmShareDenyRead** Lock file so other processes cannot read.

**fmShareDenyNone** Do not lock file.

If the file has been successfully opened, it can be read from or written to (depending on the `Mode` parameter) with the `FileRead` (1683) and `FileWrite` functions.

**Remark** Remark that you cannot open a file if it doesn't exist yet, i.e. it will not be created for you. If you want to create a new file, or overwrite an old one, use the `FileCreate` (1677) function.

There are some limitations to the sharing modes.

1. Sharing modes are only available on Unix and Windows platforms.
2. Unix only support sharing modes as of 2.4.0.
3. `fmShareDenyRead` only works under Windows at this time, and will always result in an error on Unix platforms because its file locking APIs do not support this concept.
4. File locking is advisory on Unix platforms. This means that the locks are only checked when a file is opened using a file locking mode. In other cases, existing locks are simply ignored. In particular, this means that `fmShareDenyNone` has no effect under Unix, because this can only be implemented as "use no locking" on those platforms. As a result, opening a file using this mode will always succeed under Unix as far as the locking is concerned, even if the file has already been opened using `fmShareExclusive`.
5. Under Solaris, closing a single file handle associated with a file will result in all locks on that file (even via other handles) being destroyed due to the behaviour of the underlying API (`fcntl`). Because of the same reason, on Solaris you cannot use `fmShareDenyWrite` in combination with `fmOpenWrite`, nor `fmShareExclusive` in combination with `fmOpenRead` although both work with `fmOpenReadWrite`.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1677)

Errors: On Error, `THandle(-1)` is returned.

See also: `fmOpenRead` (1609), `fmOpenWrite` (1609), `fmOpenReadWrite` (1609), `fmShareDenyWrite` (1610), `fmShareExclusive` (1610), `fmShareDenyRead` (1610), `fmShareDenyNone` (1609), `fmShareCompat` (1609), `FileClose` (1677), `FileWrite` (1687), `FileCreate` (1677), `FileRead` (1683), `FileTruncate` (1687), `FileSeek` (1685)

### 76.15.109 FileRead

Synopsis: Read data from a file handle in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FileRead(Handle: THandle; out Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileRead` reads `Count` bytes from file-handle `Handle` and stores them into `Buffer`. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes long. No checking on this is performed, so be careful not to overwrite any memory. `Handle` must be the result of a `FileOpen` (1682) call.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1677)

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1677), `FileWrite` (1687), `FileCreate` (1677), `FileOpen` (1682), `FileTruncate` (1687), `FileSeek` (1685)

### 76.15.110 FileSearch

**Synopsis:** Search for a file in a path.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;
                   const DirList: UnicodeString;
                   Options: TFileSearchOptions) : UnicodeString
function FileSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;
                   const DirList: UnicodeString;
                   ImplicitCurrentDir: Boolean) : UnicodeString
function FileSearch(const Name: RawByteString;
                   const DirList: RawByteString;
                   Options: TFileSearchOptions) : RawByteString
function FileSearch(const Name: RawByteString;
                   const DirList: RawByteString;
                   ImplicitCurrentDir: Boolean) : RawByteString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileSearch` looks for the file `Name` in `DirList`, where `dirlist` is a list of directories, separated by semicolons or colons. It returns the full filename of the first match found. The optional `Options` parameter may be specified to influence the behaviour of the search algorithm. It is a set of the following options:

**sfoImplicitCurrentDir** Always search the current directory first, even if it is not specified.

**sfoStripQuotes** Strip quotes from the components in the search path.

A deprecated form of the function allowed to specify using the boolean `ImplicitCurrentDir` parameter whether the current directory was searched implicitly or not. By default, the current directory is searched.

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

**See also:** `ExpandFileName` (1671), `FindFirst` (1688)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41` ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSearch function. }*

**Uses** `Sysutils` ;

**Const**  
*{ \$ifdef unix }*

---

```

    FN = 'find';
    P = '.: / bin : / usr / bin';
  {$else}
    FN = 'find.exe';
    P = 'c : \ dos ; c : \ windows ; c : \ windows \ system ; c : \ windows \ system32';
  {$endif}

begin
  WriteLn ('find is in : ', FileSearch (FN,P));
end.

```

---

### 76.15.111 FileSeek

Synopsis: Set the current file position on a file handle.

Declaration: `function FileSeek(Handle: THandle; FOffset: LongInt; Origin: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function FileSeek(Handle: THandle; FOffset: Int64; Origin: LongInt) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSeek` sets the file pointer on position `Offset`, starting from `Origin`. `Origin` can be one of the following values:

**fsFromBeginning** `Offset` is relative to the first byte of the file. This position is zero-based. i.e. the first byte is at offset 0.

**fsFromCurrent** `Offset` is relative to the current position.

**fsFromEnd** `Offset` is relative to the end of the file. This means that `Offset` can only be zero or negative in this case.

If successful, the function returns the new file position, relative to the beginning of the file.

**Remark** The above mentioned constants do not exist in Delphi.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` ([1677](#)), `FileWrite` ([1687](#)), `FileCreate` ([1677](#)), `FileOpen` ([1682](#)), `FileRead` ([1683](#)), `FileTruncate` ([1687](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate/FileSeek/FileReed/FileTruncate functions }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I,J,F : Longint;

**Begin**

```

F:=FileCreate ('test.dat');
If F=-1 then
  Halt(1);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));
FileClose(f);

```

---

```

F:=FileOpen ('test.dat',fmOpenRead);
For I:=0 to 100 do
begin
  FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
  If J<>I then
    Writeln ('Mismatch at file position ',I)
  end;
FileSeek (F,0,fsFromBeginning);
Randomize;
Repeat
  FileSeek (F,Random(100)*4,fsFromBeginning);
  FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
  Writeln ('Random read : ',j);
Until J>80;
FileClose(F);
F:=FileOpen('test.dat',fmOpenWrite);
I:=50*SizeOf(LongInt);
If FileTruncate(F,I) then
  Writeln('Successfully truncated file to ',I,' bytes. ');
FileClose(F);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.112 FileSetAttr

Synopsis: Set the attributes of a file.

Declaration: `function FileSetAttr(const Filename: UnicodeString; Attr: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function FileSetAttr(const Filename: RawByteString; Attr: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSetAttr` sets the attributes of `FileName` to `Attr`. If the function was successful, 0 is returned, -1 otherwise. `Attr` can be set to an OR-ed combination of the predefined `faXXX` constants.

This function is not implemented on Unixes.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned (always on Unixes).

See also: `FileGetAttr` ([1680](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1681](#)), `FileSetDate` ([1686](#))

### 76.15.113 FileSetDate

Synopsis: Set the date of a file.

Declaration: `function FileSetDate(const FileName: UnicodeString; Age: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function FileSetDate(const FileName: RawByteString; Age: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function FileSetDate(Handle: THandle; Age: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSetDate` sets the file date of the open file with handle `Handle` or to `Age`, where `Age` is a DOS date-and-time stamp value.

Alternatively, the filename may be specified with the `FileName` argument. This variant of the call is mandatory on Unixes, since there is no OS support for setting a file timestamp based on a handle. (the handle may not be a real file at all).

The function returns zero if successful.

**Errors:** On Unix, the handle variant always returns -1, since this is impossible to implement. On Windows and DOS, a negative error code is returned.

#### 76.15.114 FileTruncate

**Synopsis:** Truncate an open file to a given size.

**Declaration:** `function FileTruncate(Handle: THandle; Size: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileTruncate` truncates the file with handle `Handle` to `Size` bytes. The file must have been opened for writing prior to this call. The function returns `True` is successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1677).

**Errors:** On error, the function returns `False`.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1677), `FileWrite` (1687), `FileCreate` (1677), `FileOpen` (1682), `FileRead` (1683), `FileSeek` (1685)

#### 76.15.115 FileWrite

**Synopsis:** Write data from a buffer to a given file handle.

**Declaration:** `function FileWrite(Handle: THandle; const Buffer; Count: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileWrite` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the file with handle `Handle`. Prior to this call, the file must have been opened for writing. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes large, or a memory access error may occur.

The function returns the number of bytes written, or -1 in case of an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1677).

**Errors:** In case of error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1677), `FileCreate` (1677), `FileOpen` (1682), `FileRead` (1683), `FileTruncate` (1687), `FileSeek` (1685)

#### 76.15.116 FindClose

**Synopsis:** Close a find handle

**Declaration:** `procedure FindClose(var F: TUnicodeSearchRec)  
procedure FindClose(var F: TRawbyteSearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindClose` ends a series of `FindFirst` (1688)/`FindNext` (1689) calls, and frees any memory used by these calls. It is *absolutely* necessary to do this call, or huge memory losses may occur.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (1688).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FindFirst` (1688), `FindNext` (1689)

### 76.15.117 FindCmdLineSwitch

**Synopsis:** Check whether a certain switch is present on the command-line.

**Declaration:**

```
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string;
                           const Chars: TSysCharSet; IgnoreCase: Boolean)
                           : Boolean
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean)
                           : Boolean
function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindCmdLineSwitch` will check all command-line arguments for the presence of the option `Switch`. It will return `True` if it was found, `False` otherwise. Characters that appear in `Chars` (default is `SwitchChars` (1614)) are assumed to indicate an option (switch). If the parameter `IgnoreCase` is `True`, case will be ignored when looking for the switch. Default is to search case sensitive.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SwitchChars` (1614)

### 76.15.118 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start a file search and return a findhandle

**Declaration:**

```
function FindFirst(const Path: UnicodeString; Attr: LongInt;
                  out Rslt: TUnicodeSearchRec) : LongInt
function FindFirst(const Path: RawByteString; Attr: LongInt;
                  out Rslt: TRawbyteSearchRec) : LongInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindFirst` looks for files that match the name (possibly with wildcards) in `Path` and extra attributes `Attr`. It then fills up the `Rslt` record with data gathered about the file. It returns 0 if a file matching the specified criteria is found, a nonzero value (-1 on Unix-like platforms) otherwise.

`Attr` is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**faAnyFile** Find any file (this is a combination of the other flags).

**faReadOnly** The file is read-only.

**faHidden** The file is hidden. (On UNIX, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile** The file is a system file (On unix, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId** Drive volume Label. Not possible under unix, and on Windows-like systems, this works only for plan FAT (not Fat32 or VFAT) file systems.

**faDirectory** File is a directory.

**faArchive** file needs to be archived. Not possible on Unix

It is a common misconception that `Attr` specifies a set of attributes which must be matched in order for a file to be included in the list. This is not so: The value of `Attr` specifies *additional* attributes, this means that the returned files are either normal files or have an attribute which is present in `Attr`.

Specifically: specifying `faDirectory` as a value for `Attr` does not mean that only directories will be returned. Normal files *and* directories will be returned.

The `Rslt` record can be fed to subsequent calls to `FindNext`, in order to find other files matching the specifications.

**Remark** A successful `FindFirst` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` (1687) call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory leaks. If the `findfirst` call failed (i.e. returned a nonzero handle) there is no need to call `FindClose`.

Errors: On error the function returns -1 on Unix-like platforms, a nonzero error code on Windows.

See also: `FindClose` (1687), `FindNext` (1689)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindFirst function }*

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Var** Info : TSearchRec;  
Count : Longint;

**Begin**

Count:=0;

**If** FindFirst ('\*',faAnyFile,Info)=0 **then**  
**begin**

**Repeat**

**Inc**(Count);

**With** Info **do**

**begin**

**If** (Attr **and** faDirectory) = faDirectory **then**

**Write**('Dir : ');

**WriteLn** (Name:40,Size:15);

**end**;

**Until** FindNext(info)<>0;

**FindClose**(Info);

**end**;

**WriteLn** ('Finished search. Found ',Count,' matches');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.119 FindNext

Synopsis: Find the next entry in a findhandle.

**Declaration:** function FindNext(var Rslt: TUnicodeSearchRec) : LongInt  
function FindNext(var Rslt: TRawbyteSearchRec) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindNext` finds a next occurrence of a search sequence initiated by `FindFirst`. If another record matching the criteria in `Rslt` is found, 0 is returned, a nonzero constant is returned otherwise.

**Remark** The last `FindNext` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (1688)

Errors: On error (no more file is found), a nonzero constant is returned.

See also: `FindFirst` (1688), `FindClose` (1687)

### 76.15.120 FloattoCurr

Synopsis: Convert a float to a Currency value.

Declaration: `function FloattoCurr(const Value: Extended) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToCurr` converts the `Value` floating point value to a Currency value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` (1611) and `MaxCurrency` (1611)). If not, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `EConvertError` (1781), `TryFloatToCurr` (1763), `MinCurrency` (1611), `MaxCurrency` (1611)

### 76.15.121 FloatToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a float to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function FloatToDateTime(const Value: Extended) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToDateTime` converts the `Value` floating point value to a TDateTime value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of dates (determined by `MinDateTime` (1611) and `MaxDateTime` (1611)). If not, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `EConvertError` (1781), `MinDateTime` (1611), `MaxDateTime` (1611)

### 76.15.122 FloatToDecimal

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a TFloatRec value.

Declaration: 

```
procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; const Value;
                        ValueType: TFloatValue; Precision: Integer;
                        Decimals: Integer)
procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; Value: Extended;
                        Precision: Integer; Decimals: Integer)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToDecimal` converts the float `Value` to a float description in the `Result` `TFloatRec` (1620) format. It will store `Precision` digits in the `Digits` field, of which at most `Decimal` decimals.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFloatRec` (1620)

**76.15.123 FloatToStr**

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a fixed format.

**Declaration:**

```
function FloatToStr(Value: Extended) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Extended;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Double) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Double;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Single) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Single;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Currency) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Currency;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
    : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
    : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FloatToStr` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation. It will choose the shortest possible notation of the two following formats:

**Fixed format** will represent the string in fixed notation,

**Decimal format** will represent the string in scientific notation.

More information on these formats can be found in `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)). `FloatToStr` is completely equivalent to the following call:

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffGeneral, 15, 0);
```

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see `Localization` ([1600](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1705](#)), `StrToFloat` ([1750](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** Example67;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStr function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Procedure Testit (Value : Extended);
```

```
begin
```

```
    WriteLn (Value, ' -> ', FloatToStr(Value));
```

```
    WriteLn (-Value, ' -> ', FloatToStr(-Value));
```

```
end;
```

**Begin**

```

Testit (0.0);
Testit (1.1);
Testit (1.1e-3);
Testit (1.1e-20);
Testit (1.1e-200);
Testit (1.1e+3);
Testit (1.1e+20);
Testit (1.1e+200);

```

**End.****76.15.124 FloatToStrF**

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a given format.

**Declaration:**

```

function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Double; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Double; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FloatToStrF converts the floating point number value to a string representation, according to the settings of the parameters Format, Precision and Digits.

The meaning of the Precision and Digits parameter depends on the Format parameter. The format is controlled mainly by the Format parameter. It can have one of the following values:

**ffcurrency**Money format. Value is converted to a string using the global variables `CurrencyString`, `CurrencyFormat` and `NegCurrFormat`. The `Digits` parameter specifies the number of digits following the decimal point and should be in the range -1 to 18. If `Digits` equals -1, `CurrencyDecimals` is assumed. The `Precision` parameter is ignored.

**ffExponent**Scientific format. Value is converted to a string using scientific notation: 1 digit before the decimal point, possibly preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. The number of digits after the decimal point is controlled by `Precision` and must lie in the range 0 to 15.

**ffFixed**Fixed point format. Value is converted to a string using fixed point notation. The result is composed of all digits of the integer part of `Value`, preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. Following the integer part is `DecimalSeparator` and then the fractional part of `Value`, rounded off to `Digits` numbers. If the number is too large then the result will be in scientific notation.

**ffGeneral**General number format. The argument is converted to a string using `ffExponent` or `ffFixed` format, depending on which one gives the shortest string. There will be no trailing zeroes. If `Value` is less than 0.00001 or if the number of decimals left of the decimal point is larger than `Precision` then scientific notation is used, and `Digits` is the minimum number of digits in the exponent. Otherwise `Digits` is ignored.

**ffnumber**Is the same as `ffFixed`, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` ([1691](#)), `FloatToText` ([1694](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex68.pp

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [TFloatFormat] **of** **string**[10] =  
           ('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I, J : longint;  
       FF : TFloatFormat;

**begin**

**For** I:=5 **to** 15 **do**

**For** J:=1 **to** 4 **do**

**For** FF:=ffgeneral **to** ffcurrency **do**

**begin**

**Write** (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

**Writeln** (FloatToStrf(Value, FF, I, J));

**Write** (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

**Writeln** (FloatToStrf(-Value, FF, I, J));

**end**;

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit (1.1);

  Testit (1.1E1);

  Testit (1.1E-1);

```

Testit (1.1E5);
Testit (1.1E-5);
Testit (1.1E10);
Testit (1.1E-10);
Testit (1.1E15);
Testit (1.1E-15);
Testit (1.1E100);
Testit (1.1E-100);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.125 FloatToText

Synopsis: Return a string representation of a float, with a given format.

Declaration: `function FloatToText (Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended;`  
`format: TFloatFormat; Precision: Integer;`  
`Digits: Integer) : LongInt`  
`function FloatToText (Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended;`  
`format: TFloatFormat; Precision: Integer;`  
`Digits: Integer;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToText` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation and stores it in `Buffer`. The conversion is governed by `format`, `Precision` and `Digits`. more information on these parameters can be found in `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#)). `Buffer` should point to enough space to hold the result. No checking on this is performed.

The result is the number of characters that was copied in `Buffer`.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` ([1691](#)), `FloatToStrF` ([1692](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** `Example68;`

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Const** `Fmt : Array [TFloatFormat] of string[10] =`  
`('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');`

**Procedure** `Testit (Value : Extended);`

**Var** `I, J : longint;`  
`FF : TFloatFormat;`  
`S : ShortString;`

**begin**

**For** `I:=5 to 15 do`

**For** `J:=1 to 4 do`

**For** `FF:=ffgeneral to ffcurrency do`

**begin**

**Write** `(Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');`

```

    SetLength(S,FloatToText (@S[1],Value,FF,I,J));
    Writeln (S);
    Write (-Value,'(Prec: ',I:2,', Dig: ',J,', fmt : ',Fmt[ff],') : ');
    SetLength(S,FloatToText (@S[1],-Value,FF,I,J));
    Writeln (S);
end;

Begin
  Testit (1.1);
  Testit (1.1E1);
  Testit (1.1E-1);
  Testit (1.1E5);
  Testit (1.1E-5);
  Testit (1.1E10);
  Testit (1.1E-10);
  Testit (1.1E15);
  Testit (1.1E-15);
  Testit (1.1E100);
  Testit (1.1E-100);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.126 FloatToTextFmt

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a string using a given mask.

Declaration: `function FloatToTextFmt(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar; FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Integer`  
`function FloatToTextFmt(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToTextFmt` returns a textual representation of `Value` in the memory location pointed to by `Buffer`. it uses the formatting specification in `Format` to do this. The return value is the number of characters that were written in the buffer.

For a list of valid formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` ([1705](#))

Errors: No length checking is performed on the buffer. The buffer should point to enough memory to hold the complete string. If this is not the case, an access violation may occur.

See also: `FormatFloat` ([1705](#))

### 76.15.127 FmtStr

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments.

Declaration: `procedure FmtStr(var Res: string; const Fmt: string; const args: Array of const)`  
`procedure FmtStr(var Res: string; const Fmt: string; const args: Array of const; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FmtStr` calls `Format` ([1696](#)) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `Format` ([1696](#)).

Errors: In case of error, a `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `Format` (1696), `FormatBuf` (1703), `EConvertError` (1781)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex70.pp

---

**Program** Example70;

*{ This program demonstrates the FmtStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:= '';

**FmtStr** (S, 'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.', ['Format']);

**WriteLn** (S);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.128 ForceDirectories

Synopsis: Create a chain of directories

**Declaration:** `function ForceDirectories(const Dir: RawByteString) : Boolean`  
`function ForceDirectories(const Dir: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ForceDirectories` tries to create any missing directories in `Dir` till the whole path in `Dir` exists. It returns `True` if `Dir` already existed or was created successfully. If it failed to create any of the parts, `False` is returned.

### 76.15.129 Format

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments.

**Declaration:** `function Format(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const) : string`  
`function Format(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Format` replaces all placeholders in `Fmt` with the arguments passed in `Args` and returns the resulting string. A placeholder looks as follows:

`'%' [[Index] ':' ] ['-'] [Width] ['.' Precision] ArgType`

elements between single quotes must be typed as shown without the quotes, and elements between square brackets [ ] are optional. The meaning of the different elements are shown below:

`'%'` starts the placeholder. If you want to insert a literal `%` character, then you must insert two of them: `%%`.

**Index ':'** takes the `Index`-th element in the argument array as the element to insert. If `index` is omitted, then the zeroth argument is taken.

**'-'** tells `Format` to left-align the inserted text. The default behaviour is to right-align inserted text. This can only take effect if the `Width` element is also specified.

**Width** the inserted string must have at least `Width` characters. If not, the inserted string will be padded with spaces. By default, the string is left-padded, resulting in a right-aligned string. This behaviour can be changed by the usage of the `'-'` character.

**'.'** **Precision** Indicates the precision to be used when converting the argument. The exact meaning of this parameter depends on `ArgType`.

The `Index`, `Width` and `Precision` parameters can be replaced by `*`, in which case their value will be read from the next element in the `Args` array. This value must be an integer, or an `EConvertError` (1781) exception will be raised.

The argument type is determined from `ArgType`. It can have one of the following values (case insensitive):

**D** Decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**E** Scientific format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a Floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using scientific notation, using `FloatToStrF` (1692), where the optional precision is used to specify the total number of decimals. (default a value of 15 is used). The exponent is formatted using maximally 3 digits.

In short, the `E` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffexponent, Precision, 3)
```

**F** Fixed point format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string, using fixed notation (see `FloatToStrF` (1692)). `Precision` indicates the number of digits following the decimal point.

In short, the `F` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffFixed, ffixed, 9999, Precision)
```

**G** General number format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using fixed point notation or scientific notation, depending on which gives the shortest result. `Precision` is used to determine the number of digits after the decimal point.

In short, the `G` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffGeneral, Precision, 3)
```

**M** Currency format. the next argument in the `Args` array must be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using currency notation. This means that fixed-point notation is used, but that the currency symbol is appended. If precision is specified, then then it overrides the `CurrencyDecimals` global variable used in the `FloatToStrF` (1692)

In short, the `M` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffCurrency, 9999, Precision)
```

**N** Number format. This is the same as fixed point format, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

**P** Pointer format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a pointer (typed or untyped). The pointer value is converted to a string of length 8, representing the hexadecimal value of the pointer.

**SString** format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a string. The argument is simply copied to the result string. If `Precision` is specified, then only `Precision` characters are copied to the result string.

**UUnsigned decimal** format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an unsigned integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**Xhexadecimal** format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be an integer. The argument is converted to a hexadecimal string with just enough characters to contain the value of the integer. If `Precision` is specified then the resulting hexadecimal representation will have at least `Precision` characters in it (with a maximum value of 32).

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` exception is raised. Possible errors are:

- 1.Errors in the format specifiers.
- 2.The next argument is not of the type needed by a specifier.
- 3.The number of arguments is not sufficient for all format specifiers.

See also: `FormatBuf` ([1703](#)), `EConvertError` ([1781](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex71.pp`

**Program** `example71;`

`{ $mode objfpc }`

`{ This program demonstrates the Format function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `P : Pointer;`  
`fmt,S : string;`

`{ Expected output:`  
`[%d] => [10]`  
`[%%] => [%]`  
`[%10d] => [          10]`  
`[% .4d] => [0010]`  
`[%10.4d] => [          0010]`  
`[%0:d] => [10]`  
`[%0:10d] => [          10]`  
`[%0:10.4d] => [          0010]`  
`[%0:-10d] => [10          ]`  
`[%0:-10.4d] => [0010      ]`  
`[%-*.d] => [00010]`  
`}`

**Procedure** `TestInteger;`

**begin**

**Try**

`Fmt:='[%d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%%]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `fmt:='[% .4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%0:d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%0:10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`  
    `Fmt:='[%0:10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);`

```

    Fmt:= '%0:-10d'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:-10.4d'; S:=Format (fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%-*.d'; S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

```

{ Expected output:

```

    [%x] => [A]
    [%10x] => [          A]
    [%10.4x] => [          000A]
    [%0:x] => [A]
    [%0:10x] => [          A]
    [%0:10.4x] => [          000A]
    [%0:-10x] => [A          ]
    [%0:-10.4x] => [000A      ]
    [%-*.x] => [0000A]
}

```

**Procedure** TestHexaDecimal;

```

begin
  try
    Fmt:= '%x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%10x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%10.4x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:10x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:10.4x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:-10x'; S:=Format (Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%0:-10.4x'; S:=Format (fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '%-*.x'; S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

```

{ Expected output:

```

    [0x%p] => [0x0012D687]
    [0x%10p] => [0x 0012D687]
    [0x%10.4p] => [0x 0012D687]
    [0x%0:p] => [0x0012D687]
    [0x%0:10p] => [0x 0012D687]
    [0x%0:10.4p] => [0x 0012D687]
    [0x%0:-10p] => [0x0012D687 ]
    [0x%0:-10.4p] => [0x0012D687 ]
    [%-*.p] => [0012D687]
}

```

**Procedure** TestPointer;

```

begin
  P:= Pointer(1234567);
  try
    Fmt:= '[0x%p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%0:p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%0:10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%0:10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%0:-10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[0x%0:-10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,P]); writeln(Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
  end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
  [%s]=> [This is a string]
  [%0:s]=> [This is a string]
  [%0:18s]=> [ This is a string]
  [%0:-18s]=> [This is a string ]
  [%0:18.12s]=> [ This is a st]
  [%-*.s]=> [This is a st ]
}
Procedure TestString;
begin
  try
    Fmt:= '[%s]'; S:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    fmt:= '[%0:s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    fmt:= '[%0:18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    fmt:= '[%0:-18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    fmt:= '[%0:18.12s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    fmt:= '[%-*.s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[18,12,'This is a string']); Writeln(fmt:12, '=> ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
  end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
  [%e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
  [%10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
  [%10.4e] => [1.234E+000]
  [%0:e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
  [%0:10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
  [%0:10.4e] => [1.234E+000]
  [%0:-10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
  [%0:-10.4e] => [1.234E+000]

```

```

    [%-*.e] => [1.2340E+000]
}
Procedure TestExponential;
begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format (fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
        writeln ('Press enter');
        readln;
    end;

{ Expected output:
    [%e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%0:e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%0:-10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%-*.e] => [-1.2340E+000]
}

Procedure TestNegativeExponential;
begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format (fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
        writeln ('Press enter');
        readln;
    end;

{ Expected output:

```

```

    [%e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%10e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
    [%0:e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
    [%0:-10e] => [1.2300000000000000E-002]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
    [%-*.e] => [1.2340E-002]
}
Procedure TestSmallExponential;
begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[0.0123]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]';S:=Format (fmt,[0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.e]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
    [%e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
    [%0:e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
    [%0:-10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
    [%-*.e] => [-1.2340E-002]
}
Procedure TestSmallNegExponential;
begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]';S:=Format (fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.e]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin

```

```

        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

begin
    TestInteger;
    TestHexadecimal;
    TestPointer;
    teststring;
    TestExponential;
    TestNegativeExponential;
    TestSmallExponential;
    TestSmallNegExponential;
end.

```

---

### 76.15.130 FormatBuf

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments and store the result in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt; fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const) : Cardinal`  
`function FormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt; fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatBuf` calls `Format` ([1696](#)) and stores the result in `Buf`.

See also: `Format` ([1696](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex72.pp`

---

**Program** Example72;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatBuf function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

S : ShortString;

**Const**

Fmt : ShortString = 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.';

**Begin**

S:= '';

SetLength(S, **FormatBuf** (S[1],255,Fmt[1], **Length**(Fmt),[ 'Format' ]));

**Writeln** (S);

**End.**

---

**76.15.131 FormatCurr**

Synopsis: Format a currency

Declaration: `function FormatCurr(const Format: string; Value: Currency) : string`  
`function FormatCurr(const Format: string; Value: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatCurr` formats the currency `Value` according to the formatting rule in the `Format` parameter, and returns the resulting string.

For an explanation of the formatting characters usable in the `Format` parameter, see `FormatFloat` (1705).

See also: `FormatFloat` (1705), `FloatToText` (1694)

**76.15.132 FormatDateTime**

Synopsis: Return a string representation of a `TDateTime` value with a given format.

Declaration: `function FormatDateTime(const FormatStr: string; DateTime: TDateTime;`  
`Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions) : string`  
`function FormatDateTime(const FormatStr: string; DateTime: TDateTime;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings;`  
`Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatDateTime` formats the date and time encoded in `DateTime` according to the formatting given in `FormatStr`. The complete list of formatting characters can be found in `formatchars` (1605).

When the format string is empty, 'c' is used instead.

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see `Localization` (1600).

Errors: On error (such as an invalid character in the formatting string), and `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `DateTimeToStr` (1657), `DateToStr` (1660), `TimeToStr` (1760), `StrToDateTime` (1748), `EConvertError` (1781), `Localization` (1600)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14;`

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatDateTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `ThisMoment : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`ThisMoment:=Now;`

`WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn ',ThisMoment ));`

`WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'DD MM YYYY',ThisMoment ));`

`WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'c',ThisMoment ));`

**End.**

---

**76.15.133 FormatFloat**

**Synopsis:** Format a float according to a certain mask.

**Declaration:** `function FormatFloat(const Format: string; Value: Extended) : string`  
`function FormatFloat(const Format: string; Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FormatFloat` formats the floating-point value given by `Value` using the format specifications in `Format`. The format specifier can give format specifications for positive, negative or zero values (separated by a semicolon).

If the format specifier is empty or the value needs more than 18 digits to be correctly represented, the result is formatted with a call to `FloatToStrF` (1692) with the `ffGeneral` format option.

The following format specifiers are supported:

**0** is a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the 0. If not, the 0 is left as-is.

**#** is also a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the #. If not, it is removed. by a space.

**.** determines the location of the decimal point. Only the first '.' character is taken into account. If the value contains digits after the decimal point, then it is replaced by the value of the `DecimalSeparator` character.

**,** determines the use of the thousand separator character in the output string. If the format string contains one or more ',' characters, then thousand separators will be used. The `ThousandSeparator` character is used.

**E** determines the use of scientific notation. If 'E+' or 'E-' (or their lowercase counterparts) are present then scientific notation is used. The number of digits in the output string is determined by the number of 0 characters after the 'E+'.

**;** This character separates sections for positive, negative, and zero numbers in the format string.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, an exception is raised.

**See also:** `FloatToStr` (1691)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex89.pp`

**Program** `Example89`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatFloat function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Const**

```
NrFormat=9;
FormatStrings : Array[1..NrFormat] of string = (
    '',
    '0',
    '0.00 ',
    '#.## ',
    '#.##0.00 ',
    '#.##0.00;(#.##0.00) ',
    '#.##0.00;;Zero ',
    '0.000E+00 ',
    '#.###E-0');
```

---

```

NrValue = 5;
FormatValues : Array[1..NrValue] of Double =
  (1234, -1234, 0.5, 0, -0.5);

Width = 12;
FWidth = 20;

Var
  I, J : Integer;
  S : String;

begin
  Write( 'Format':FWidth);
  For I:=1 to NrValue do
    Write(FormatValues[I]:Width:2);
  WriteLn;
  For I:=1 to NrFormat do
    begin
      Write(FormatStrings[I]:FWidth);
      For J:=1 to NrValue do
        begin
          S:=FormatFloat(FormatStrings[I],FormatValues[J]);
          Write(S:Width);
        end;
      WriteLn;
    end;
End.

```

---

### 76.15.134 FreeAndNil

**Synopsis:** Free object if needed, and set object reference to Nil

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeAndNil(var obj)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeAndNil` will free the object in `Obj` and will set the reference in `Obj` to `Nil`. The reference is set to `Nil` first, so if an exception occurs in the destructor of the object, the reference will be `Nil` anyway.

**Errors:** Exceptions that occur during the destruction of `Obj` are not caught.

### 76.15.135 FreeMemAndNil

**Synopsis:** Free the heap memory pointed to by a pointer and set pointer to nil.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeMemAndNil(var p)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeMemAndNil` will free the memory pointed to by `P` and will set `P` to `Nil`. Note that this function is not type safe; the programmer is responsible for ensuring that this function is called with a correct pointer parameter. Failure to do so may result in run-time errors.

See also: `FreeAndNil` ([1706](#))

**76.15.136 GetAppConfigDir**

**Synopsis:** Return the appropriate directory for the application's configuration files.

**Declaration:** `function GetAppConfigDir(Global: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigDir` returns the name of a directory in which the application should store its configuration files on the current OS. If the parameter `Global` is `True` then the directory returned is a global directory, i.e. valid for all users on the system. If the parameter `Global` is false, then the directory is specific for the user who is executing the program. On systems that do not support multi-user environments, these two directories may be the same.

The directory which is returned is the name of the directory where the application is supposed to store files. This does not mean that the directory exists, or that the user can write in this directory (especially if `Global=True`). It just returns the name of the appropriate location. Also note that the returned name always contains an ending path delimiter.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine this location, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1646) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1629) callback.

If `VendorName` (1772) is not-empty, then `VendorName` will also be inserted before the application-specific directory.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetAppConfigFile` (1707), `ApplicationName` (1646), `OnGetApplicationName` (1629), `CreateDir` (1654), `SysConfigDir` (1614), `VendorName` (1772)

**76.15.137 GetAppConfigFile**

**Synopsis:** Return an appropriate name for an application configuration file.

**Declaration:** `function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean) : string`  
`function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean; SubDir: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigFile` returns the name of a file in which the application can store its configuration parameters. The exact name and location of the file depends on the customs of the operating system.

The `Global` parameter determines whether it is a global configuration file (value `True`) or a personal configuration file (value `False`).

The parameter `SubDir`, in case it is set to `True`, will insert the name of a directory before the filename. This can be used in case the application needs to store other data than configuration data in an application-specific directory. Default behaviour is to set this to `False`.

Note that on Windows, even when `Subdir` is `False`, a subdirectory is created for the application configuration files, as per the windows specifications. Specifying `true` will create a subdirectory of the application settings subdirectory.

The default file extension of the returned file is: `.cfg`

No assumptions should be made about the existence or writeability of this file, or the directory where the file should reside. It is best to call `ForceDirectories` (1696) prior to opening a file with the resulting filename.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine the location of configuration files, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1646) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1629) callback.

If `VendorName` (1772) is not-empty, then `VendorName` will be inserted in the path for the config file directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` (1707), `OnGetApplicationName` (1629), `ApplicationName` (1646), `CreateDir` (1654), `ConfigExtension` (1607), `SysConfigDir` (1614), `VendorName` (1772)

### 76.15.138 GetCurrentDir

Synopsis: Return the current working directory of the application.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentDir : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCurrentDir` returns the current working directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCurrentDir` (1728), `DiskFree` (1664), `DiskSize` (1665)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28`;

*{ This program demonstrates the GetCurrentDir function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('Current Directory is : ',GetCurrentDir);`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.139 GetDirs

Synopsis: Return a list of directory names from a path.

Declaration: `function GetDirs(var DirName: UNICODESTRING;  
                          var Dirs: Array of PUNICODECHAR) : LongInt`  
`function GetDirs(var DirName: RAWBYTESTRING;  
                  var Dirs: Array of PANSICHAR) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDirs` splits `DirName` in a null-byte separated list of directory names, `Dirs` is an array of `PChars`, pointing to these directory names. The function returns the number of directories found, or -1 if none were found. `DirName` must contain only `OSDirSeparator` as Directory separator chars.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractRelativePath` (1675)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex45.pp

**Program** Example45;

```
{ This program demonstrates the GetDirs function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Var Dirs : Array[0..127] of pchar;
    I,Count : longint;
    Dir,NewDir : String;
```

**Begin**

```
Dir:=GetCurrentDir;
WriteLn ('Dir : ',Dir);
NewDir:= '';
count:=GetDirs(Dir , Dirs );
For I:=0 to Count-1 do
    begin
        NewDir:=NewDir+ '/' +StrPas( Dirs [ I ] );
        WriteLn (NewDir);
    end;
```

**End.**

### 76.15.140 GetDriveIDFromLetter

**Synopsis:** Return the drive ID based on a drive letter

**Declaration:** function GetDriveIDFromLetter(const ADrive: RawByteString) : Byte  
function GetDriveIDFromLetter(const ADrive: UnicodeString) : Byte

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetDriveIDFromLetter returns the drive ID based on a drive letter. The drive ID can then be used in the DiskSize (1665) and DiskFree (1664) calls.

See also: DiskSize (1665), DiskFree (1664)

### 76.15.141 GetEnvironmentString

**Synopsis:** Return an environment variable by index.

**Declaration:** function GetEnvironmentString(Index: Integer) : AnsiString

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetEnvironmentString returns the Index-th environment variable. The index is 1 based, and is bounded from above by the result of GetEnvironmentVariableCount (1710).

For an example, GetEnvironmentVariableCount (1710).

**Remark** Note that on Windows, environment strings can start with an equal sign (=). This is a trick used to pass the current working directory to a newly created process. In this case, extracting the variable name as the characters before the first equal sign will result in an empty name.

**Errors:** If there is no environment, an empty string is returned.

See also: GetEnvironmentVariable (1710), GetEnvironmentVariableCount (1710)

**76.15.142 GetEnvironmentVariable**

Synopsis: Return the value of an environment variable.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: AnsiString) : AnsiString`  
`function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: UnicodeString)`  
`: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariable` returns the value of the `EnvVar` environment variable. If the specified variable does not exist or `EnvVar` is empty, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` ([1709](#)), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` ([1710](#))

**76.15.143 GetEnvironmentVariableCount**

Synopsis: Return the number of variables in the environment.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` returns the number of variables in the environment. The number is 1 based, but the result may be zero if there are no environment variables.

Errors: If there is no environment, -1 may be returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` ([1709](#)), `GetEnvironmentVariable` ([1710](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex92.pp`

---

```
{ $h+ }
program example92;

{ This program demonstrates the
  GetEnvironmentVariableCount function }

uses sysutils;

Var
  I : Integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to GetEnvironmentVariableCount do
    Writeln(i:3, ' : ', GetEnvironmentString(i));
end.
```

---

**76.15.144 GetFileAsString**

Declaration: `function GetFileAsString(const aFileName: RawByteString) : RawByteString`  
`function GetFileAsString(const aFileName: RawByteString;`  
`aEncoding: TEncoding) : RawByteString`  
`function GetFileAsString(const aFileName: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`function GetFileAsString(const aFileName: UnicodeString;`  
`aEncoding: TEncoding) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

#### 76.15.145 GetFileContents

**Declaration:** `function GetFileContents(const aFileName: RawByteString) : TBytes`  
`function GetFileContents(const aFileName: UnicodeString) : TBytes`  
`function GetFileContents(const aHandle: THandle) : TBytes`

Visibility: default

#### 76.15.146 GetFileHandle

**Synopsis:** Extract OS handle from an untyped file or text file.

**Declaration:** `function GetFileHandle(var f: File) : THandle`  
`function GetFileHandle(var f: Text) : THandle`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetFileHandle` returns the operating system handle for the file descriptor `F`. It can be used in various file operations which are not directly supported by the pascal language.

#### 76.15.147 GetLastOSError

**Synopsis:** Return the last code from the OS.

**Declaration:** `function GetLastOSError : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetLastOSError` returns the error code from the last operating system call. It does not reset this code. In general, it should be called when an operating system call reported an error condition. In that case, `GetLastOSError` gives extended information about the error.

No assumptions should be made about the resetting of the error code by subsequent OS calls. This may be platform dependent.

See also: `RaiseLastOSError` ([1725](#))

#### 76.15.148 GetLocalTime

**Synopsis:** Get the local time.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetLocalTime(var SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetLocalTime` returns the system time in a `TSystemTime` ([1625](#)) format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1724](#)), `Date` ([1656](#)), `Time` ([1758](#)), `TSystemTime` ([1625](#))

#### 76.15.149 GetLocalTimeOffset

**Synopsis:** Return local timezone offset

**Declaration:** `function GetLocalTimeOffset : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetLocalTimeOffset` returns the local timezone offset in minutes. This is the difference between UTC time and local time:

```
UTC = LocalTime + GetLocalTimeOffset
```

The `TDateTime`-overloads return the offset at the specified `DateTime`. In case the `TDateTime`-aware function is not supported on the current platform, `False` is returned or it falls back to the offset to current time (depending on the overload used).

Note that on Linux/Unix, the information returned from the `TDateTime`-unaware function may be inaccurate around the DST time changes (for optimization). In that case, the `unix.ReReadLocalTime` (2080) unit must be used to re-initialize the timezone information.

The `TDateTime`-aware overloads are supported currently only on Windows Vista and newer.

See also: `unix.ReReadLocalTime` (2080), `Date` (1656), `Time` (1758), `Now` (1724)

### 76.15.150 GetModuleName

**Synopsis:** Return the name of the current module

**Declaration:** `function GetModuleName(Module: HMODULE) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetModuleName` returns the name of the current module. On windows, this is the name of the executable when executed in an executable, or the name of the library when executed in a library.

On all other platforms, the result is always empty, since they provide no such functionality.

### 76.15.151 GetTempDir

**Synopsis:** Return name of system's temporary directory

**Declaration:** `function GetTempDir(Global: Boolean) : string`  
`function GetTempDir : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetTempDir` returns the temporary directory of the system. If `Global` is `True` (the default value) it returns the system temporary directory, if it is `False` then a directory private to the user is returned. The returned name will end with a directory delimiter character.

These directories may be the same. No guarantee is made that this directory exists or is writeable by the user.

The `OnGetTempDir` (1629) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `OnGetTempDir` (1629), `GetTempFileName` (1713)

**76.15.152 GetTempFileName**

Synopsis: Return the name of a temporary file.

Declaration: 

```
function GetTempFileName(const Dir: string; const Prefix: string)
                        : string
function GetTempFileName : string
function GetTempFileName(Dir: PChar; Prefix: PChar; uUnique: DWORD;
                        TempFileName: PChar) : DWORD
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTempFileName` returns the name of a temporary file in directory `Dir`. The name of the file starts with `Prefix`.

If `Dir` is empty, the value returned by `GetTempDir` is used, and if `Prefix` is empty, 'TMP' is used.

The `OnGetTempFile` ([1629](#)) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetTempDir` ([1712](#)), `OnGetTempFile` ([1629](#))

**76.15.153 GetTickCount**

Synopsis: Get tick count (32-bit, deprecated)

Declaration: 

```
function GetTickCount : LongWord
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTickCount` returns an increasing clock tick count in milliseconds. It is useful for time measurements, but no assumptions should be made as to the interval between the ticks. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use `GetTickCount64` ([1713](#)) instead.

See also: `GetTickCount64` ([1713](#)), `Now` ([1724](#)), `Time` ([1758](#)), `Sleep` ([1730](#))

**76.15.154 GetTickCount64**

Synopsis: Get tick count (64-bit)

Declaration: 

```
function GetTickCount64 : QWord
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTickCount64` returns an increasing clock tick count in milliseconds. It is useful for time measurements, but no assumptions should be made as to the interval between the ticks.

See also: `Now` ([1724](#)), `Time` ([1758](#)), `Sleep` ([1730](#))

**76.15.155 GetUserDir**

Synopsis: Returns the current user's home directory.

Declaration: `function GetUserDir : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetUserDir` returns the home directory of the current user. On Unix-like systems (that includes Mac OS X), this is the value of the HOME environment variable. On Windows, this is the PROFILE special folder. On all other platforms, the application installation directory is returned.

If non-empty, it contains a trailing path delimiter.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` ([1707](#))

**76.15.156 GuidCase**

Synopsis: Return the index of a GUID in an array of GUID values

Declaration: `function GuidCase(const GUID: TGUID; const List: Array of TGuid)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GuidCase` returns the index of GUID in the array `List`, where 0 denotes the first element in the list. If GUID is not present in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `IsEqualGUID` ([1719](#))

**76.15.157 GUIDToString**

Synopsis: Convert a TGUID to a string representation.

Declaration: `function GUIDToString(const GUID: TGUID) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GUIDToString` converts the GUID identifier in `GUID` to a string representation in the form

`{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}`

Where each X is a hexadecimal digit.

Errors: None.

See also: `Supports` ([1756](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1388](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1737](#)), `IsEqualGuid` ([1719](#))

**76.15.158 HashName**

Synopsis: Calculate a hash from a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function HashName(Name: PAnsiChar) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `HashName` calculates a hash value from a null terminated string. The hash value is calculated in such a way that it returns the same value for strings that only differ in case.

### 76.15.159 HookSignal

**Synopsis:** Hook a specified signal

**Declaration:** `procedure HookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HookSignal` installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. It does not check whether the signal is already handled, and should therefor only be called if `InquireSignal` returns `ssNotHooked`.

### 76.15.160 IncAMonth

**Synopsis:** Increase a date with a certain amount of months

**Declaration:** `procedure IncAMonth(var Year: Word; var Month: Word; var Day: Word; NumberOfMonths: Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncAMonth` increases the date as specified by `Year`, `Month`, `Day` with `NumberOfMonths`. It takes care of the number of days in a month when calculating the result.

This function does the same as `IncMonth` (1716), but operates on an already decoded date.

See also: `IncMonth` (1716)

### 76.15.161 IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Prepend a path delimiter if there is not already one.

**Declaration:** `function IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING): UNICODESTRING`  
`function IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING): RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` will insert a path delimiter (`#rtl.system.DirectorySeparator` (1340)) in the first position of `Path`, if there is not already a directory separator at that position. It will return the resulting string. If the path is empty, a `DirectorySeparator` character is returned.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716), `ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter` (1669), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1669), `ConcatPaths` (1654)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex94.pp`

---

**Program** `Example94`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

**End.**

---

**76.15.162 IncludeTrailingBackslash**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                : UNICODESTRING
function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1716), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1669), `PathDelim` (1612), `IsPathDelimiter` (1720)

**76.15.163 IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                    : UNICODESTRING
function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` adds a trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1612)) to `Path` if none is present yet, and returns the result.

If `Path` is empty, a path delimiter is returned, for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` (1716), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1669), `PathDelim` (1612), `IsPathDelimiter` (1720)

**76.15.164 IncMonth**

Synopsis: Increases the month in a `TDateTime` value with a given amount.

Declaration: 

```
function IncMonth(const DateTime: TDateTime; NumberOfMonths: Integer)
                : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMonth` increases the month number in `DateTime` with `NumberOfMonths`. It wraps the result as to get a month between 1 and 12, and updates the year accordingly. `NumberOfMonths` can be negative, and can be larger than 12 (in absolute value).

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` (1656), `Time` (1758), `Now` (1724)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMonth function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ThisDay : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

  ThisDay := Date;
  Writeln ('ThisDay : ', DateToStr(ThisDay));
  Writeln ('6 months ago : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, -6)));
  Writeln ('6 months from now : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, 6)));
  Writeln ('12 months ago : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, -12)));
  Writeln ('12 months from now : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, 12)));
  Writeln ('18 months ago : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, -18)));
  Writeln ('18 months from now : ', DateToStr(IncMonth(ThisDay, 18)));

```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.165 InquireSignal

**Synopsis:** Check whether a signal handler is set (unix only)

**Declaration:** function InquireSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer) : TSignalState

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** RtlSigNum will check whether the signal RtlSigNum is being handled, and by whom. It returns a TSignalState result to report the state of the signal, which can be one of the following values:

**ssNotHooked** No signal handler is set for the signal.

**ssHooked** A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.

**ssOverridden** A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code.

This routine works by resetting the signal handlers, so it is risky to call.

### 76.15.166 IntToHex

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a hexadecimal string.

**Declaration:** function IntToHex(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer) : string

function IntToHex(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : string

function IntToHex(Value: QWord; Digits: Integer) : string

function IntToHex(Value: Int8) : string

function IntToHex(Value: UInt8) : string

function IntToHex(Value: Int16) : string

function IntToHex(Value: UInt16) : string

function IntToHex(Value: Int32) : string

function IntToHex(Value: UInt32) : string

function IntToHex(Value: Int64) : string

function IntToHex(Value: UInt64) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IntToHex` converts `Value` to a hexadecimal string representation. The result will contain at least `Digits` characters. If `Digits` is less than the needed number of characters, the string will NOT be truncated. If `Digits` is larger than the needed number of characters, the result is padded with zeroes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1718](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex73.pp`

---

**Program** `Example73`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToHex function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `I` : `longint`;

**Begin**

**For** `I:=0 to 31 do`

**begin**

**WriteLn** (`IntToHex(1 shl I,8)`);

**WriteLn** (`IntToHex(15 shl I,8)`)

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 76.15.167 IntToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a decimal string.

**Declaration:** `function IntToStr(Value: LongInt) : string`  
`function IntToStr(Value: Int64) : string`  
`function IntToStr(Value: QWord) : string`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `IntToStr` converts `Value` to its string representation. The resulting string has only as much characters as needed to represent the value. If the value is negative a minus sign is prepended to the string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `IntToHex` ([1717](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex74.pp`

---

**Program** `Example74`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `I` : `longint`;

**Begin**

**For** `I:=0 to 31 do`

**begin**

```

    Writeln (IntToStr(1 shl I));
    Writeln (IntToStr(15 shl I));
end;
End.

```

---

### 76.15.168 IsDelimiter

Synopsis: Check whether a given string is a delimiter character.

Declaration: `function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: string; const S: string; Index: SizeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDelimiter` checks whether the `Index`-th character in the string `S` is a delimiter character as passed in `Delimiters`. If `Index` is out of range, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LastDelimiter` ([1721](#))

### 76.15.169 IsEqualGUID

Synopsis: Check whether two `TGUID` variables are equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqualGUID(const guid1: TGUID; const guid2: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEqualGUID` checks whether `guid1` and `guid2` are equal, and returns `True` if this is the case, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `Supports` ([1756](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1388](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1737](#)), `GuidToString` ([1714](#))

### 76.15.170 IsLeadChar

Declaration: `function IsLeadChar(C: AnsiChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLeadChar(B: Byte) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLeadChar(Ch: WideChar) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

### 76.15.171 IsLeapYear

Synopsis: Determine whether a year is a leap year.

Declaration: `function IsLeapYear(Year: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLeapYear` returns `True` if `Year` is a leap year, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `IncMonth` ([1716](#)), `Date` ([1656](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex16.pp

**Program** Example16;

```
{ This program demonstrates the IsLeapYear function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Var YY,MM,dd : Word;
```

```
Procedure TestYear (Y : Word);
```

**begin**

```

    WriteLn (Y, ' is leap year : ', IsLeapYear(Y));
end;

```

## Begin

```
DeCodeDate (Date ,YY,mm,dd );
TestYear (yy );
TestYear (2000);
TestYear (1900);
TestYear (1600);
TestYear (1992);
TestYear (1995);
```

**End .**

## 76.15.172 IsPathDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?

```
Declaration: function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING; Index: Integer)
           : Boolean
           function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING; Index: Integer)
           : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsPathDelimiter` returns `True` if the character at position `Index` equals `PathDelim` (1612), i.e. if it is a path delimiter character for the current platform.

Errors: IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1716)ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1669)PathDelim (1612)

## 76.15.173 IsValidIdent

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string is a valid identifier name.

[illegible]

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsValidIdent` returns `True` if `Ident` can be used as a component name. It returns `False` otherwise. `Ident` must consist of a letter or underscore, followed by a combination of letters, numbers or underscores to be a valid identifier.

Errors: None.



**Description:** `LeftStr` returns the `Count` leftmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy (S, 1, Count)`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `RightStr` ([1727](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1761](#)), `TrimRight` ([1762](#)), `Trim` ([1760](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex76.pp`

---

**Program** `Example76`;

*{ This program demonstrates the LeftStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (`LeftStr ('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 20)`);

**WriteLn** (`LeftStr ('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 15)`);

**WriteLn** (`LeftStr ('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 1)`);

**WriteLn** (`LeftStr ('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 200)`);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.176 LoadStr

**Synopsis:** Load a string from the resource tables.

**Declaration:** `function LoadStr(Ident: Integer) : string`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** This function is not yet implemented. resources are not yet supported.

### 76.15.177 LowerCase

**Synopsis:** Return a lowercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LowerCase(const s: string) : string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: string; LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions)`  
`: string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const V: variant) : string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString; Overload`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `LowerCase` returns the lowercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the lowercase function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

`LowerCase` does not change the number of characters (or bytes) in an ansistring or shortstring.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1636](#)), `UpperCase` ([1771](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1644](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the LowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (LowerCase('THIS WILL COME out all LoWeRcAsE !'));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.178 MSecsToTimeStamp

**Synopsis:** Convert a number of milliseconds to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function MSecsToTimeStamp(MSecs: Comp) : TTimeStamp

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MSecsToTimeStamp converts the given number of milliseconds to a TTimeStamp date/time notation.

Use TTimeStamp variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

**Errors:** None.

See also: TimeStampToMSecs ([1759](#)), DateTimeToTimeStamp ([1660](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the MSecsToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** MS : Comp;

    TS : TTimeStamp;

    DT : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp(**Now**);

**WriteLn** ('Now in days since 1/1/0001 : ',TS.**Date**);

**WriteLn** ('Now in millisecs since midnight : ',TS.**Time**);

    MS:=TimeStampToMSecs(TS);

**WriteLn** ('Now in millisecs since 1/1/0001 : ',MS);

    MS:=MS-1000\*3600\*2;

    TS:=MSecsToTimeStamp(MS);

    DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);

**WriteLn** ('Now minus 1 day : ',**DateTimeToStr**(DT));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.179 NewStr

**Synopsis:** Allocate a new ansistring on the heap.

**Declaration:** function NewStr(const S: string) : PString; Overload

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NewStr` assigns a new dynamic string on the heap, copies `S` into it, and returns a pointer to the newly assigned string.

This function is obsolete, and shouldn't be used any more. The `AnsiString` mechanism also allocates ansistrings on the heap, and should be preferred over this mechanism.

For an example, see `AssignStr` (1646).

**Errors:** If not enough memory is present, an `EOutOfMemory` exception will be raised.

See also: `AssignStr` (1646), `DisposeStr` (1665)

### 76.15.180 Now

**Synopsis:** Returns the current date and time.

**Declaration:** `function Now : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Now` returns the current date and time. It is equivalent to `Date+Time`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Date` (1656), `Time` (1758)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex18.pp`

**Program** `Example18`;

*{ This program demonstrates the Now function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Now : ', DateTimeToStr(Now) );`

**End.**

### 76.15.181 OutOfMemoryError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EOutOfMemory` exception

**Declaration:** `procedure OutOfMemoryError`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `OutOfMemoryError` raises an `EOutOfMemory` (1786) exception, with an exception object that has been allocated on the heap at program startup. The program should never create an `EOutOfMemory` (1786) exception, but always call this routine.

See also: `EOutOfMemory` (1786)

**76.15.182 QuotedStr**

Synopsis: Return a quotes version of a string.

Declaration: `function QuotedStr(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `QuotedStr` returns the string `S`, quoted with single quotes. This means that `S` is enclosed in single quotes, and every single quote in `S` is doubled. It is equivalent to a call to `AnsiQuotedStr(S, '"')`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1637](#)), `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1635](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex78.pp`

---

**Program** `Example78`;

*{ This program demonstrates the QuotedStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S` : `AnsiString`;

**Begin**

`S := 'He said ''Hello'' and walked on';`

`Writeln (S);`

`Writeln (' becomes');`

`Writeln (QuotedStr(S));`

**End.**

---

**76.15.183 RaiseLastError**

Synopsis: Raise an exception with the last Operating System error code.

Declaration: `procedure RaiseLastError; Overload`  
`procedure RaiseLastError(LastError: Integer); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RaiseLastError` raises an `EOSError` ([1785](#)) exception with the error code returned by `GetLastError`. If the Error code is nonzero, then the corresponding error message will be returned. If the error code is zero, a standard message will be returned.

Errors: This procedure may not be implemented on all platforms. If it is not, then a normal Exception ([1788](#)) will be raised.

See also: `EOSError` ([1785](#)), `GetLastError` ([1711](#)), Exception ([1788](#))

**76.15.184 RemoveDir**

Synopsis: Remove a directory from the file system.

Declaration: `function RemoveDir(const Dir: RawByteString) : Boolean`  
`function RemoveDir(const Dir: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RemoveDir` removes directory `Dir` from the disk. If the directory is not absolute, it is appended to the current working directory.

For an example, see `CreateDir` (1654).

**Errors:** In case of error (e.g. the directory isn't empty) the function returns `False`. If successful, `True` is returned.

### 76.15.185 RenameFile

**Synopsis:** Rename a file.

**Declaration:**

```
function RenameFile(const OldName: UnicodeString;
                    const NewName: UnicodeString) : Boolean
function RenameFile(const OldName: RawByteString;
                    const NewName: RawByteString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RenameFile` renames a file from `OldName` to `NewName`. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. For safety, the new name must be a full path specification, including the directory, otherwise it will be assumed to be a filename relative to the current working directory.

*Remark:* The implementation of `RenameFile` relies on the underlying OS's support for renaming/-moving a file. Whether or not a file can be renamed across disks or partitions depends entirely on the OS. On unix-like OS-es, the rename function will fail when used across partitions. On Windows, it will work.

**Errors:** On Error, `False` is returned.

See also: `DeleteFile` (1663)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex44.pp`

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ This program demonstrates the RenameFile function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** F : Longint;  
      S : **String**;

**Begin**

```
S:= 'Some short file.';
F:= FileCreate ( 'test.dap' );
FileWrite (F,S[1],Length(S));
FileClose(F);
If RenameFile ( 'test.dap', 'test.dat' ) then
  Writeln ( 'Successfully renamed files.' );
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.186 ReplaceDate

**Synopsis:** Replace the date part of a date/time stamp

**Declaration:** `procedure ReplaceDate(var DateTime: TDateTime; const NewDate: TDateTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReplaceDate` replaces the date part of `DateTime` with `NewDate`. The time part is left unchanged.

See also: `ReplaceTime` ([1727](#))

### 76.15.187 ReplaceTime

**Synopsis:** Replace the time part

**Declaration:** `procedure ReplaceTime(var dateTime: TDateTime; NewTime: TDateTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReplaceTime` replaces the time part in `dateTime` with `NewTime`. The date part remains untouched.

### 76.15.188 RightStr

**Synopsis:** Return a number of characters from a string, starting at the end.

**Declaration:** `function RightStr(const S: string; Count: Integer) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RightStr` returns the `Count` rightmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy (S, Length (S) +1-Count, Count)`. If `Count` is larger than the actual length of `S` only the real length will be used.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1721](#)), `Trim` ([1760](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1761](#)), `TrimRight` ([1762](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the RightStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**Writeln** (RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',20));

**Writeln** (RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',15));

**Writeln** (RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',1));

**Writeln** (RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',200));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.189 SafeLoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Load a library safely

**Declaration:** `function SafeLoadLibrary(const FileName: AnsiString; ErrorMode: DWord)  
: HMODULE`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeLoadLibrary` saves and restores some registers before and after issuing a call to `LoadLibrary`.

**Errors:** None.

## 76.15.190 SameFileName

### Synopsis: Are two filenames referring to the same file ?

**Declaration:** `function SameFileName(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameFileName returns True if calling AnsiCompareFileName (1632) with arguments S1 and S2 returns 0, and returns False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareFileName \(1632\)](#)

## 76.15.191 SameStr

**Synopsis:** Check whether 2 strings are the same, case insensitive

```
Declaration: function SameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean
                ; Overload
                function SameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string;
                                LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameStr checks whether S1 and S2 are the same. This is equivalent to checking that CompareStr (1652) returns 0.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareStr \(1652\)](#)

### 76.15.192 SameText

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

```
Declaration: function SameText(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean
                ; Overload
                function SameText(const s1: string; const s2: string;
                                LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameText calls CompareText (1653) with S1 and S2 as parameters and returns True if the result of that call is zero, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareText \(1653\)](#), [AnsiSameText \(1638\)](#), [AnsiSameStr \(1638\)](#)

## 76.15.193 SetCurrentDir

**Synopsis:** Set the current directory of the application.

```
Declaration: function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: RawByteString) : Boolean
              function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetCurrentDir` sets the current working directory of your program to `NewDir`. It returns `True` if the function was successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case of error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `GetCurrentDir` ([1708](#))

### 76.15.194 SetDirSeparators

**Synopsis:** Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.

**Declaration:** `function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetDirSeparators` returns `FileName` with all possible `DirSeparators` replaced by `OSDirSeparator`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExpandFileName` ([1671](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1675](#)), `ExtractFileDir` ([1673](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SetDirSeparators function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( SetDirSeparators ( '/pp\bin\win32\ppc386' ) );`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.195 ShowException

**Synopsis:** Show the current exception to the user.

**Declaration:** `procedure ShowException(ExceptObject: TObject; ExceptAddr: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ShowException` shows a message stating that a `ExceptObject` was raised at address `ExceptAddr`. It uses `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1668](#)) to create the message, and is aware of the fact whether the application is a console application or a GUI application. For a console application, the message is written to standard error output. For a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1629](#)) is executed.

**Errors:** If, for a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1629](#)) is not set, no message will be displayed to the user.

The exception message can be at most 255 characters long: It is possible that no memory can be allocated on the heap, so ansistrings are not available, so a shortstring is used to display the message.

**See also:** `ExceptObject` ([1668](#)), `ExceptAddr` ([1667](#)), `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1668](#))

**76.15.196 Sleep**

**Synopsis:** Suspend execution of a program for a certain time.

**Declaration:** `procedure Sleep(milliseconds: Cardinal)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Sleep` suspends the execution of the program for the specified number of milliseconds (`milliseconds`). After the specified period has expired, program execution resumes.

**Remark** The indicated time is not exact, i.e. it is a minimum time. No guarantees are made as to the exact duration of the suspension.

**76.15.197 SScanf**

**Synopsis:** Scan a string for substrings and return the content of these substrings as typed values

**Declaration:** `function SScanf(const s: string; const fmt: string;  
const Pointers: Array of Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SScanF` does in essence the opposite of `Format` (1696): it scans the string `S` for the elements specified in `Fmt`, and returns the value of the found elements in the memory locations pointed to by the addresses in `Pointers`. The `Fmt` can contain placeholders of the form `%X` where `X` can be one of the following characters:

**d**Placeholder for a decimal number.

**f**Placeholder for a floating point number (an extended)

**s**Placeholder for a string of arbitrary length.

**c**Placeholder for a single character

The `Pointers` array contains a list of pointers, each pointer should point to a memory location of a type that corresponds to the type of placeholder in that position:

**d**A pointer to an integer.

**f**A pointer to an extended.

**s**A pointer to an ansistring.

**c**A pointer to a single character.

On return, these locations will be filled with the actual values found in `S` for the placeholders in `fmt`. The return value of the function is the number of found values.

**Errors:** No error checking is performed on the type of the memory location.

**See also:** `Format` (1696)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex98.pp`

---

```
Program Example98;
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+}
{ This program demonstrates the function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

---

```

var
  count,i: Integer;
  f: Extended;
  s: String;

begin
  count:=SScanf( '234 32.4 hello ', '%d %f %s ',[@i,@f,@s]);
  writeln(count, ' ',i, ' ',f, ' ',s);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.198 StrAlloc

**Synopsis:** Allocate a null-terminated string on the heap.

**Declaration:** `function StrAlloc(Size: Cardinal) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `StrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory. Therefore this function is NOT compatible with the `StrAlloc` (1281) function of the `Strings` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (1731).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1731), `StrDispose` (1734), `StrAlloc` (1281)

### 76.15.199 StrBufSize

**Synopsis:** Return the size of a null-terminated string allocated on the heap.

**Declaration:** `function StrBufSize(Str: PChar) : Cardinal`  
`function StrBufSize(str: pwidechar) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrBufSize` returns the memory allocated for `Str`. This function ONLY gives the correct result if `Str` was allocated using `StrAlloc` (1731).

**Errors:** If no more memory is available, a runtime error occurs.

See also: `StrAlloc` (1731), `StrDispose` (1734)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** Example46;

```

{ This program demonstrates the StrBufSize function }
{$H+}

```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** S = 'Some nice string';

**Var** P : Pchar;

---

```

Begin
  P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
  StrPCopy(P,S);
  Write (P, ' has length ',length(S));
  Writeln (' and buffer size ',StrBufSize(P));
  StrDispose(P);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.200 StrByteType

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in a null-terminated string for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function StrByteType(Str: PChar; Index: SizeUInt) : TmbcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrByteType` returns the type of byte in the null-terminated string `Str` at (0-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: `TmbcsByteType` ([1622](#)), `ByteType` ([1649](#))

### 76.15.201 strcat

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strcat(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches `Source` to `Dest` and returns `Dest`.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCat` ([1738](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** Example11;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

```

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat (P2,P1);                { Append P2 once more }
  Writeln ('P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

**76.15.202 StrCharLength**

Synopsis: Return the length of a null-terminated string in characters.

Declaration: `function StrCharLength(const Str: PChar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrCharLength` returns the length of the null-terminated string `Str` (a widestring) in characters (not in bytes). It uses the widestring manager to do this.

**76.15.203 strcmp**

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt`  
`function strcmp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `Longint` when `S1>S2`.

For an example, see `StrLComp` ([1738](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1738](#)), `StrIComp` ([1736](#)), `StrLComp` ([1741](#))

**76.15.204 StrCopy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar; Overload`  
`function StrCopy(Dest: PWideChar; Source: PWideChar) : PWideChar`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain `Source`, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1744](#)), `StrLCopy` ([1739](#)), `StrECopy` ([1734](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';`

---

```

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc (Strlen(P)+1);
  StrCopy (PP,P);
  If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
    Writeln ('Oh-oh problems...')
  else
    Writeln ('All is well : PP=',PP);
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 76.15.205 StrDispose

Synopsis: Dispose of a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure StrDispose(Str: PChar)`  
`procedure StrDispose(str: pwidechar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrDispose` frees any memory allocated for `Str`. This function will only function correctly if `Str` has been allocated on the heap, for example using `StrAlloc` (1731) or `StrNew` (1742) from the `SysUtils` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (1731).

Errors: If an invalid pointer is passed, or a pointer not allocated with `StrAlloc`, an error may occur.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1731), `StrAlloc` (1731), `StrNew` (1742)

### 76.15.206 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strecopy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strecopy(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` (1739), `StrCopy` (1733)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

---

```

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);
  If Longint(StrECopy(PP,P))-Longint(PP)<>StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln ('PP= ',PP);
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 76.15.207 strend

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strend(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLen ([1740](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

```

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P))-Longint(P)<>StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln ('All is well..');
end.

```

---

### 76.15.208 StrFmt

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, store the result in a buffer.

Declaration: `function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar; Fmt: PChar; const args: Array of const)`  
`: Pchar`  
`function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar; Fmt: PChar; const Args: Array of const;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: StrFmt will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the Format ([1696](#)) function does, and it will store the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain the whole result.

Errors: for a list of errors, see [Format \(1696\)](#).

See also: [StrLFmt \(1740\)](#), [FmtStr \(1695\)](#), [Format \(1696\)](#), [FormatBuf \(1703\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example80;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

SetLength(S,80);

**WriteLn** (**StrFmt** (@S[1], 'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.', ['Format']));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.209 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** function stricmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt  
function stricmp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: [StrLComp \(1738\)](#), [StrComp \(1733\)](#), [StrLComp \(1741\)](#)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'P1 and P2 are ');

**If** **StrComp** (P1,P2)<>0 **then write** ( 'NOT ');

**write** ( 'equal. The first ');

L:=1;

**While** **StrLComp**(P1,P2,L)=0 **do inc** (L);

---

```

    dec(l);
    WriteLn (l, ' characters are the same. ');
end.

```

---

### 76.15.210 StringOf

Synopsis: Create a Unicode string from an array of bytes

Declaration: `function StringOf(const Bytes: TBytes) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringOf` converts an array of bytes (`Bytes`) to a Unicode string. It interprets the bytes as a single-byte string, using the default codepage.

To create a string where the bytes are interpreted as wide chars, use `WideStringOf` ([1775](#)) instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideBytesOf` ([1772](#)), `WideStringOf` ([1775](#))

### 76.15.211 StringReplace

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a string.

Declaration: `function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string; const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags; out aCount: Integer) : string`  
`function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string; const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringReplace` searches the string `S` for occurrences of the string `OldPattern` and, if it is found, replaces it with `NewPattern`. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of `StringReplace` can be tuned with `Flags`, which is of type `TReplaceFlags` ([1623](#)). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of `OldPattern`, and to search case sensitively.

Errors: None.

See also: `TReplaceFlags` ([1623](#)), `WideStringReplace` ([1775](#))

### 76.15.212 StringToGUID

Synopsis: Convert a string to a native TGUID type.

Declaration: `function StringToGUID(const S: string) : TGUID`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToGUID` converts the string `S` to a valid GUID. The string `S` should be of the form

```
{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}
```

Where each X is a hexadecimal digit. The dashes and braces are required.

Errors: In case `S` contains an invalid GUID representation, a `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Supports` ([1756](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1388](#)), `GUIDToString` ([1714](#)), `IsEqualGuid` ([1719](#))

**76.15.213 strlcat**

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

Declaration: `function strlcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`  
`function strlcat(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Adds MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns Dest.

Errors: None.

See also: StrCat ([1732](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = '1234567890';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)\*2+1);

P2^:=#0; *{ Zero length }*

**StrCat** (P2,P1);

**StrLCat** (P2,P1,5);

**WriteLn** ('P2 = ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2)

**end.**

---

**76.15.214 strlcomp**

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function strlcomp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function strlcomp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp ([1733](#)), StrIComp ([1736](#)), StrLComp ([1741](#))



**76.15.216 StrLen**

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint; Overload`  
`function StrLen(p: pwidechar) : sizeint; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P. If P equals Nil then zero (0) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1742](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P : ',p);

**WriteLn** ('length(P) : ',StrLen(P));

**end.**

---

**76.15.217 StrLFmt**

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, but with limited length.

Declaration: `function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar; Maxlen: Cardinal; Fmt: PChar;`  
`const args: Array of const) : Pchar`  
`function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar; Maxlen: Cardinal; Fmt: PChar;`  
`const args: Array of const;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: StrLFmt will format fmt with Args, as the Format ([1696](#)) function does, and it will store maximally Maxlen characters of the result in Buffer. The function returns Buffer. Buffer should point to enough space to contain MaxLen characters.

Errors: for a list of errors, see Format ([1696](#)).

See also: StrFmt ([1735](#)), FmtStr ([1695](#)), Format ([1696](#)), FormatBuf ([1703](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex81.pp

---

**Program** Example80;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

```
SetLength(S,80);
WriteLn (StrLFmt (@S[1],80,'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.',['Format']));
End.
```

---

**76.15.218 strlicomp**

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function strlicomp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrIComp ([1736](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1738](#)), StrComp ([1733](#)), StrIComp ([1736](#))

**76.15.219 strlower**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strlower(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-lowercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrUpper ([1755](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

```
P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';
P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';
```



Description: Copies `P` to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns `Nil` if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: `StrCopy` ([1733](#)), `StrDispose` ([1734](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';`

**var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:=StrNew (P1);`

**If** `P1=P2` **then**

`writeln ('This can't be happening...')`

**else**

`writeln ('P2 : ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

### 76.15.222 StrNextChar

Synopsis: Returns a pointer to the location of the next empty character in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function StrNextChar(const Str: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrNextChar` returns a pointer to the null-character that terminates the string `Str`

Errors: if `Str` is not properly terminated, an access violation may occur.

### 76.15.223 StrPas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to an ansistring.

Declaration: `function StrPas(Str: PChar) : string; Overload`  
               `function StrPas(Str: PWideChar) : UnicodeString; Overload`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `Str` to an `AnsiString`, and returns this string. This string is NOT truncated at 255 characters as is the system unit's version.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1744](#)), `StrPLCopy` ([1744](#))

**76.15.224 StrPCopy**

Synopsis: Copy an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPCopy(Dest: PChar; const Source: string) : PChar; Overload`  
`function StrPCopy(Dest: PWideChar; const Source: UnicodeString)`  
`: PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPCopy` Converts the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`.  
`Dest` needs enough room to contain the string `Source`, i.e. `Length(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `Source`.

See also: `StrPLCopy` ([1744](#)), `StrPas` ([1743](#))

**76.15.225 StrPLCopy**

Synopsis: Copy a limited number of characters from an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPLCopy(Dest: PChar; const Source: string; MaxLen: SizeUInt)`  
`: PChar; Overload`  
`function StrPLCopy(Dest: PWideChar; const Source: UnicodeString;`  
`MaxLen: SizeUInt) : PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPLCopy` Converts maximally `MaxLen` characters of the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the characters.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `L` characters of `Source`.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1744](#))

**76.15.226 strpos**

Synopsis: Find position of one null-terminated substring in another.

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strpos(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `S2` in `S1`. If `S2` does not occur in `S1`, returns `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrScan` ([1745](#)), `StrRScan` ([1745](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

---

```

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';
        S : Pchar = 'is';
begin
    WriteLn ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',sizeint(StrPos(P,S))–sizeint(P));
end.

```

---

### 76.15.227 strscan

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`  
`function strscan(p: pwidechar; c: WideChar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan ([1745](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1745](#)), StrPos ([1744](#))

### 76.15.228 StrScan

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar; Overload`  
`function StrScan(P: PWideChar; C: WideChar) : PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan ([1745](#)), StrPos ([1744](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

```

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';
        S : Char = 's' ;

```

```

begin
    WriteLn ('P, starting from first ''s'' : ',StrScan(P,s));
    WriteLn ('P, starting from last ''s'' : ',StrRScan(P,s));
end.

```

---

**76.15.229 StrToBool**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: `function StrToBool(const S: string) : Boolean`  
`function StrToBool(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToBool` will convert the string `S` to a boolean value. The string `S` can contain one of 'True', 'False' (case is ignored) or a numerical value. If it contains a numerical value, 0 is converted to False, all other values result in True. If the string `S` contains no valid boolean, then an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

Errors: On error, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `BoolToStr` (1648)

**76.15.230 StrToBoolDef**

Synopsis: Convert string to boolean value, returning default in case of error

Declaration: `function StrToBoolDef(const S: string; Default: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`function StrToBoolDef(const S: string; Default: Boolean;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToBoolDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a boolean value, and returns the boolean value in case of success. In case `S` does not contain a valid boolean string, `Default` is returned.

See also: `StrToBool` (1746), `TryStrToBool` (1764)

**76.15.231 StrToCurr**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value

Declaration: `function StrToCurr(const S: string) : Currency`  
`function StrToCurr(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurr` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

Errors: On error, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `CurrToStr` (1656), `StrToCurrDef` (1747)

**76.15.232 StrToCurrDef**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value, using a default value

Declaration: `function StrToCurrDef(const S: string; Default: Currency) : Currency`  
`function StrToCurrDef(const S: string; Default: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurrDef` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, the fallback `Default` value is returned.

Errors: On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `CurrToStr` ([1656](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1746](#))

**76.15.233 StrToDate**

Synopsis: Convert a date string to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function StrToDate(const S: ShortString) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: Ansistring) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: ShortString; separator: Char) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: AnsiString; separator: Char) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: string; FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)`  
`: TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: ShortString; const useformat: string;`  
`separator: Char) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: AnsiString; const useformat: string;`  
`separator: Char) : TDateTime`  
`function StrToDate(const S: PChar; Len: Integer;`  
`const useformat: string; separator: Char) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDate` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `StrToTime` ([1754](#)), `DateToStr` ([1660](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1760](#)), `EConvertError` ([1781](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `TestStr (S : String);`

**begin**

```

    WriteLn (S, ' : ', DateToStr(StrToDate(S)));
end;

Begin

    WriteLn ('ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat);
    TestStr(DateTimeToStr(Date));
    TestStr('05'+DateSeparator+'05'+DateSeparator+'1999');
    TestStr('5'+DateSeparator+'5');
    TestStr('5');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.234 StrToDateDef

Synopsis: Convert string to date, returning a default value

Declaration: function StrToDateDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)  
: TDateTime  
function StrToDateDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;  
separator: Char) : TDateTime  
function StrToDateDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)  
: TDateTime  
function StrToDateDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;  
separator: Char) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: StrToDateDef tries to convert the string S to a valid TDateTime date value, and returns DefValue if S does not contain a valid date indication.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToDate ([1747](#)), TryStrToDate ([1764](#)), StrToTimeDef ([1755](#))

### 76.15.235 StrToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a date/time string to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: function StrToDateTime(const S: AnsiString) : TDateTime  
function StrToDateTime(const s: ShortString;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : TDateTime  
function StrToDateTime(const s: AnsiString;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: StrToDateTime converts the string S to a TDateTime date and time value. The date and time parts must be separated by a space.

For the date part, the same restrictions apply as for the StrToDate ([1747](#)) function: The Date must consist of 1 to three numbers, separated by the DateSeparator character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the 3 numbers (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the ShortDateFormat variable.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: StrToDate (1747), StrToTime (1754), DateTimeToStr (1657), EConvertError (1781)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex20.pp

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestStr (S : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteIn** (S, ' : ', DateTimeToStr(StrToDateTime(S)));

**end**;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ('ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat);

    TestStr(DateTimeToStr(**Now**));

    TestStr('05-05-1999 15:50');

    TestStr('5-5 13:30');

    TestStr('5 1:30PM');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.236 StrToDateTimeDef

Synopsis: Convert string to date/time, returning a default value

**Declaration:** function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: ShortString;  
   const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime  
 function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: AnsiString;  
   const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime  
 function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: AnsiString;  
   const Defvalue: TDateTime;  
   const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)  
   : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** StrToDateTimeDef tries to convert the string S to a valid TDateTime date and time value, and returns DefValue if S does not contain a valid date-time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToTimeDef (1755), StrToDateDef (1748), TryStrToDateTime (1765), StrToDateTime (1748)

### 76.15.237 StrToDWord

Synopsis: Convert string to DWord (cardinal)

**Declaration:** function StrToDWord(const s: string) : DWord

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToDWord` will convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value, and returns the value.

**Errors:** In case the string `S` is not a valid number, or is a value outside the `DWord` range, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TryStrToDWord` (1765), `StrToDWordDef` (1750)

### 76.15.238 StrToDWordDef

**Synopsis:** Convert string to `DWord` (cardinal), using default

**Declaration:** `function StrToDWordDef(const S: string; Default: DWord) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDWordDef` will try to convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value. If the conversion was successful, it returns the value.

If the conversion failed, the fallback value in `Default` is returned.

See also: `TryStrToDWord` (1765), `StrToDWord` (1749)

### 76.15.239 StrToFloat

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a floating-point value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToFloat(const S: string) : Extended`  
`function StrToFloat(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToFloat` converts the string `S` to a floating point value. `S` should contain a valid string representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). The `thousandseparator` character may however not be used.

Up to and including version 2.2.2 of the compiler, if the string contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a `'.'` or the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

As of version 2.3.1, the string may contain only the `DecimalSeparator` character. The dot `('')` can no longer be used instead of the `DecimalSeparator`.

**Errors:** If the string `S` doesn't contain a valid floating point string, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TextToFloat` (1757), `FloatToStr` (1691), `FormatFloat` (1705), `StrToInt` (1751)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex90.pp`

---

**Program** `Example90`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils`;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of string =
    ('1,1 ', '-0,2 ', '1,2E-4 ', '0 ', '1E4');
```

```

Procedure Testit;

Var
  I : Integer;
  E : Extended;

begin
  Writeln('Using DecimalSeparator : ',DecimalSeparator);
  For I:=1 to NrValues do
    begin
      Writeln('Converting : ',TestStr[i]);
      Try
        E:=StrToFloat(TestStr[i]);
        Writeln('Converted value : ',E);
      except
        On E : Exception do
          Writeln('Exception when converting : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  end;

Begin
  DecimalSeparator:=',';
  Testit;
  DecimalSeparator:= '.';
  Testit;
End.

```

## 76.15.240 StrToFloatDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a float, with a default value.

```
Declaration: function StrToFloatDef(const S: string; const Default: Extended)
           : Extended
           function StrToFloatDef(const S: string; const Default: Extended;
           const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToFloatDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

**Errors:** None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

## 76.15.241 StrToInt

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an integer value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToInt(const s: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToInt` will convert the string `S` to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then an `EConvertError` (1781) is raised.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

The string *S* can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference. For enumerated values, the string must be the name of the enumerated value. The name is searched case insensitively.

For hexadecimal values, the prefix '0x' or 'x' (case insensitive) may be used as well.

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1718](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1753](#)), `EConvertError` ([1781](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex82.pp`

---

**Program** `Example82;`

```
{ $mode objfpc }

{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  Writeln ( StrToInt( '1234' ));
  Writeln ( StrToInt( '-1234' ));
  Writeln ( StrToInt( '0' ));
  Try
    Writeln ( StrToInt( '12345678901234567890' ));
  except
    On E : EConvertError do
      Writeln ( 'Invalid number encountered' );
  end;
End.
```

---

### 76.15.242 `StrToInt64`

Synopsis: Convert a string to an `Int64` value.

Declaration: `function StrToInt64(const s: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToInt64` converts the string *S* to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the \$ character) are supported.

Errors: On error, a `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToInt64` ([1766](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1752](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1766](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1753](#))

### 76.15.243 `StrToInt64Def`

Synopsis: Convert a string to an `Int64` value, with a default value

Declaration: `function StrToInt64Def(const S: string; Default: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToInt64Def` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

**Errors:** None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` ([1752](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1766](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1766](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1753](#))

### 76.15.244 StrToIntDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an integer value, with a default value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToIntDef(const S: string; Default: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToIntDef` will convert a string to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then `Default` is returned.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1718](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex83.pp`

**Program** Example82;

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (`StrToIntDef` ('1234', 0));

**WriteLn** (`StrToIntDef` ('-1234', 0));

**WriteLn** (`StrToIntDef` ('0', 0));

**Try**

**WriteLn** (`StrToIntDef` ('12345678901234567890', 0));

**except**

**On** `E` : `EConvertError` **do**

**WriteLn** ('Invalid number encountered');

**end;**

**End.**

### 76.15.245 StrToQWord

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a `QWord`.

**Declaration:** `function StrToQWord(const s: string) : QWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryStrToQWord` converts the string `S` to a valid `QWord` (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result.

**Errors:** If the string `S` does not contain a valid `QWord` value, a `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToQWord` ([1767](#)), `StrToQWordDef` ([1754](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1752](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

## 76.15.246 StrToQWordDef

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a QWord, returning a default value in case of failure.

**Declaration:** `function StrToQWordDef(const S: string; Default: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToQWordDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `QWord` (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result. If the conversion fails, the function returns the value passed in `Def`.

See also: [StrToQWord \(1753\)](#), [TryStrToQWord \(1767\)](#), [StrToInt64Def \(1752\)](#), [StrToIntDef \(1753\)](#)

## 76.15.247 StrToTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a time string to a `TDateTime` value.

```
Declaration: function StrToTime(const S: Shortstring) : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: Ansistring) : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: ShortString; separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: AnsiString; separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: string; FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
: TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: PChar; Len: Integer; separator: Char)
: TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` time value. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

**Errors:** On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: [StrToDate \(1747\)](#), [StrToDateTime \(1748\)](#), [TimeToStr \(1760\)](#), [EConvertError \(1781\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex21.pp

**Program** Example21 ;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrToTime function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Procedure TestStr (S : String);
```

```
begin
  WriteLn (S, ' : ', TimeToStr(StrToTime(S)));
end;
```

```

Begin
    teststr (TimeToStr(Time));
    teststr ('12:00');
    teststr ('15:30');
    teststr ('3:30PM');
End.

```

### 76.15.248 StrToTimeDef

Synopsis: Convert string to time, returning a default value

Declaration: 

```
function StrToTimeDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
                    : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
                    separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
                    : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
                    separator: Char) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: StrToTimeDef tries to convert the string S to a valid TDateTime time value, and returns DefValue if S does not contain a valid time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToTime ([1754](#)), TryStrToTime ([1767](#)), StrToDateDef ([1748](#))

### 76.15.249 StrToUInt

Declaration: 

```
function StrToUInt(const s: string) : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.250 StrToUInt64

Declaration: 

```
function StrToUInt64(const s: string) : UInt64
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.251 StrToUInt64Def

Declaration: 

```
function StrToUInt64Def(const S: string; Default: UInt64) : UInt64
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.252 StrToUIntDef

Declaration: 

```
function StrToUIntDef(const S: string; Default: Cardinal) : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.253 strupper

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: 

```
function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar
function strupper(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower ([1741](#))

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** StrLower ([1741](#))

### 76.15.254 Supports

**Synopsis:** Check whether a class or given interface supports an interface

**Declaration:**

```
function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const AClass: TClass;
                  out Obj) : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const IID: TGUID;
                  out Intf) : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: TGUID; out Intf)
                  : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: Shortstring;
                  out Intf) : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const AClass: TClass)
                  : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const IID: TGUID)
                  : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: TGUID) : Boolean
                  ; Overload
function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: Shortstring)
                  : Boolean; Overload
function Supports(const AClass: TClass; const IID: TGUID) : Boolean
                  ; Overload
function Supports(const AClass: TClass; const IID: Shortstring)
                  : Boolean; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Supports checks whether Instance supports the interface identified by IID. It returns True if it is supported, False. Optionally, a pointer to the interface is returned to Intf.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** StringToGUID ([1737](#))

### 76.15.255 SysErrorMessage

**Synopsis:** Format a system error message.

**Declaration:** function SysErrorMessage(ErrorCode: Integer) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SysErrorMessage returns a string that describes the operating system error code ErrorCode.

**Errors:** This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

**See also:** EOSError ([1785](#))

**76.15.256 SystemTimeToDateTime**

**Synopsis:** Convert a system time to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** `function SystemTimeToDateTime(const SystemTime: TSystemTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SystemTimeToDateTime` converts a TSystemTime record to a TDateTime style date/time indication.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1659](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the SystemTimeToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

  DateTimeToSystemTime(Now, ST);

**With** St **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Today is       ', year, '/', month, '/', Day);

**Writeln** ('The time is   ', Hour, ':', minute, ':', Second, '.', MilliSecond);

**end**;

**Writeln** ('Converted : ', DateTimeToStr(SystemTimeToDateTime(ST)));

**End.**

---

**76.15.257 TextToFloat**

**Synopsis:** Convert a buffer to a float value.

**Declaration:** `function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value: Extended) : Boolean`

`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value: Extended;`

`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value; ValueType: TFloatValue)`  
     `: Boolean`

`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value; ValueType: TFloatValue;`  
     `const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TextToFloat` converts the string in Buffer to a floating point value. Buffer should contain a valid string representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation).

If the buffer contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character must be the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

**Remark** Note that this behaviour has changed, earlier implementations also allowed the use of '.' in addition to the decimal separator character.

The function returns `True` if the conversion was successful.

Errors: If there is an invalid character in the buffer, then the function returns `False`

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1750](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1691](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1705](#))

---

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex91.pp

---

**Program** Example91;

```
{ This program demonstrates the TextToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of pchar =
    ('1,1 ', '-0,2 ', '1,2E-4 ', '0 ', '1E4');
```

**Procedure** Testit;

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
WriteLn('Using DecimalSeparator : ', DecimalSeparator);
```

```
For I:=1 to NrValues do
```

```
begin
```

```
WriteLn('Converting : ', TestStr[I]);
```

```
If TextToFloat(TestStr[I], E) then
```

```
WriteLn('Converted value : ', E)
```

```
else
```

```
WriteLn('Unable to convert value.');
```

```
end;
```

```
end;
```

**Begin**

```
DecimalSeparator:= ',';
```

```
Testit;
```

```
DecimalSeparator:= '.';
```

```
Testit;
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.258 Time

Synopsis: Returns the current time.

Declaration: `function Time : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Time` returns the current time in `TDateTime` format. The date part of the `TDateTimeValue` is set to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1724](#)), `Date` ([1656](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex23.pp

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ This program demonstrates the Time function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ('The time is : ', **TimeToStr**(**Time**));  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.259 TimeStampToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a **TimeStamp** value to a **TDateTime** value.

**Declaration:** `function TimeStampToDateTime(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeStampToDateTime` converts `TimeStamp` to a `TDateTime` format variable. It is the inverse operation of `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1660](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1660](#)), `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1759](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeStampToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** TS : TTimeStamp;  
    DT : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (**Now**);  
    **With** TS **do**  
        **begin**  
            **WriteLn** ('Now is ', **time**, ' millisecond past midnight');  
            **WriteLn** ('Today is ' , **Date**, ' days past 1/1/0001');  
        **end**;  
    DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);  
    **WriteLn** ('Together this is : ', **DateTimeToStr**(DT));  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.260 TimeStampToMSecs

**Synopsis:** Converts a timestamp to a number of milliseconds.

**Declaration:** `function TimeStampToMSecs(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : comp`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeStampToMSecs` converts `TimeStamp` to the number of milliseconds since 1/1/0001.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

For an example, see `MSecsToTimeStamp` (1723).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `MSecsToTimeStamp` (1723), `TimeStampToDateTime` (1759)

### 76.15.261 TimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` time to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:**

```
function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime) : string
function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime;
                  const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeToStr` converts the time in `Time` to a string. It uses the `LongTimeFormat` variable to see what formatting needs to be applied. It is therefor entirely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('tt', Time)` call.

Note that on unix systems, the localization support must be enabled explicitly, see `Localization` (1600).

**Errors:** None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('The current time is : ', TimeToStr(Time));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.262 Trim

**Synopsis:** Trim whitespace from the ends of a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function Trim(const S: string) : string
function Trim(const S: widestring) : widestring
function Trim(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the beginning and end of `S` and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TrimLeft` (1761), `TrimRight` (1762)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex84.pp

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the Trim function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
 {\$H+}

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
     **WriteLn** ( ' ', Trim(S), ' ');  
**end**;

**Begin**  
     Testit (' ha ha what gets lost ? ');  
     Testit (#10#13'haha ');  
     Testit (' ');  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.263 TrimLeft

**Synopsis:** Trim whitespace from the beginning of a string.

**Declaration:** function TrimLeft(const S: string) : string  
                   function TrimLeft(const S: widestring) : widestring  
                   function TrimLeft(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Trim strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the beginning of S and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: Trim ([1760](#)), TrimRight ([1762](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex85.pp

---

**Program** Example85;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimLeft function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
 {\$H+}

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
     **WriteLn** ( ' ', TrimLeft(S), ' ');  
**end**;

**Begin**  
     Testit (' ha ha what gets lost ? ');  
     Testit (#10#13'haha ');

---

```

    Testit ( '          ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.264 TrimRight

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the end of a string.

Declaration: `function TrimRight(const S: string) : string`  
`function TrimRight(const S: wideststring) : wideststring`  
`function TrimRight(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the end of `S` and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` ([1760](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1761](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex86.pp`

---

**Program** `Example86;`

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimRight function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`  
`{ $H+ }`

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String);`

**begin**  
    `WriteLn ('"', TrimRight(S), '"');`  
**end;**

**Begin**  
    `Testit (' ha ha what gets lost ? ');`  
    `Testit (#10#13'haha ');`  
    `Testit (' ');`  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.265 TryEncodeDate

Synopsis: Try to encode a date, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDate(Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word;`  
`out Date: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeDate` will check the validity of the `Year`, `Month` and `Day` arguments, and if they are all valid, then they will be encoded as a `TDateTime` value and returned in `Date`. The function will return `True` in this case. If an invalid argument is passed, then `False` will be returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1666](#)), `DecodeDateFully` ([1662](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1662](#)), `TryEncodeTime` ([1763](#))

**76.15.266 TryEncodeTime**

Synopsis: Try to encode a time, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeTime(Hour: Word; Min: Word; Sec: Word; MSec: Word;  
out Time: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeTime` will check the validity of the `Hour`, `Min`, `Sec` and `MSec` arguments, and will encode them in a `TDateTime` value which is returned in `Time`. If the arguments are valid, then `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeTime` ([1667](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1662](#)), `TryEncodeDate` ([1762](#))

**76.15.267 TryFloatToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a float value to a currency value and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryFloatToCurr(const Value: Extended; var AResult: Currency)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryFloatToCurr` tries convert the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. If successful, the function returns `True` and the resulting currency value is returned in `AResult`. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` ([1611](#)) and `MaxCurrency` ([1611](#))). If not, `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, `False` is returned.

See also: `FloatToCurr` ([1690](#)), `MinCurrency` ([1611](#)), `MaxCurrency` ([1611](#))

**76.15.268 TryStringToGUID**

Synopsis: Try to transform a string to a GUID

Declaration: `function TryStringToGUID(const S: string; out Guid: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStringToGUID` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TGUID` value, returned in `GUID`. It returns `True` if the conversion succeeds, and `False` if the string `S` does not contain a valid GUID notation. The string `S` must be 38 characters long, must start with `{` and end on `}`, and contain a valid GUID string (hex number grouped using 8-4-4-4-12 digits).

Errors: In case `S` does not contain a valid GUID number, `False` is returned.

See also: `StringToGUID` ([1737](#))

**76.15.269 TryStrToBool**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToBool(const S: string; out Value: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToBool(const S: string; out Value: Boolean;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToBool` tries to convert the string `S` to a boolean value, and returns this value in `Value`. In this case, the function returns `True`. If `S` does not contain a valid boolean string, the function returns `False`, and the contents of `Value` is undetermined.

Valid boolean string constants are in the `FalseBoolStrs` (1627) (for `False` values) and `TrueBoolStrs` (1631) (for `True` values) variables.

See also: `StrToBool` (1746), `StrToBoolDef` (1746)

**76.15.270 TryStrToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a currency

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToCurr(const S: string; out Value: Currency) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToCurr(const S: string; out Value: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToCurr` converts the string `S` to a currency value and returns the value in `Value`. The function returns `True` if it was successful, `False` if not. This is contrary to `StrToCurr` (1746), which raises an exception when the conversion fails.

The function takes into account locale information.

See also: `StrToCurr` (1746), `TextToFloat` (1757)

**76.15.271 TryStrToDate**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a date indication to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime;`  
`separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime;`  
`separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime;`  
`const useformat: string; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime;`  
`const useformat: string; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToDate` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value, and stores the date in `Value`. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `StrToDate` (1747), `StrToTime` (1754), `TryStrToTime` (1767), `TryStrToDateTime` (1765), `DateToStr` (1660), `TimeToStr` (1760)

### 76.15.272 TryStrToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string with date/time indication to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:**

```
function TryStrToDateTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime)
    : Boolean
function TryStrToDateTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime)
    : Boolean
function TryStrToDateTime(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
    : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryStrToDateTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month (This is *not* supported in Delphi). The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date and time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TryStrToDate` (1764), `TryStrToTime` (1767), `StrToDateTime` (1748), `StrToTime` (1754), `DateToStr` (1660), `TimeToStr` (1760)

### 76.15.273 TryStrToDWord

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to `DWord` (cardinal)

**Declaration:**

```
function TryStrToDWord(const s: string; out D: DWord) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryStrToDWord` will try to convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value. It returns `True` if the conversion was successful, and in that case returns the value in `D`.

If the conversion failed or the value was outside of the valid range for `DWord` values, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToDWord` (1749), `StrToDWordDef` (1750)

**76.15.274 TryStrToFloat**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a float.

Declaration: `function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Single) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Single;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Double) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Double;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToFloat` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and stores the result in `Value`. It returns `True` if the operation was successful, and `False` if it failed. This operation takes into account the system settings for floating point representations.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1750](#))

**76.15.275 TryStrToInt**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an integer, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt(const s: string; out i: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt` tries to convert the string `S` to an integer, and returns `True` if this was successful. In that case the converted integer is returned in `I`. If the conversion failed, (an invalid string, or the value is out of range) then `False` is returned.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt` ([1751](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1766](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1753](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1752](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1752](#))

**76.15.276 TryStrToInt64**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an int64 value, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt64(const s: string; out i: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt64` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value in `I` if successful. If the conversion was successful, the function result is `True`, or `False` otherwise. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` ([1752](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1752](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1766](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1753](#))

**76.15.277 TryStrToQWord**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a QWord value, and report on success

Declaration: `function TryStrToQWord(const s: string; out Q: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToQWord` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid QWord (unsigned 64-bit) value, and stores the result in `I`. If the conversion fails, the function returns `False`, else it returns `True`.

See also: `StrToQWord` ([1753](#)), `StrToQWordDef` ([1754](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1766](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1766](#))

**76.15.278 TryStrToTime**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a time indication to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryStrToTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToTime(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a TDateTime time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TryStrToDate` ([1764](#)), `TryStrToDateTime` ([1765](#)), `StrToDate` ([1747](#)), `StrToTime` ([1754](#)), `DateToStr` ([1660](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1760](#))

**76.15.279 TryStrToUInt**

Declaration: `function TryStrToUInt(const s: string; out C: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**76.15.280 TryStrToUInt64**

Declaration: `function TryStrToUInt64(const s: string; out u: UInt64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**76.15.281 UIntToStr**

Declaration: `function UIntToStr(Value: QWord) : string`  
`function UIntToStr(Value: Cardinal) : string`

Visibility: default

**76.15.282 UnhookSignal**

Synopsis: UnHook a specified signal

Declaration: `procedure UnhookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer; OnlyIfHooked: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnhookSignal` de-installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. If `OnlyIfHooked` is `True` then `UnhookSignal` will first check if the signal was hooked by the RTL routines, and has not been overridden since.

**76.15.283 UnicodeCompareStr**

Synopsis: Compare 2 Unicode strings

Declaration: `function UnicodeCompareStr(const s1: UnicodeString;  
const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCompareStr` compares 2 Unicode strings `S1` and `S2` in a case sensitive manner. The result of the function is

< 0 If `S1 < S2`

0 If `S1 = S2`

> 0 If `S1 > S2`

This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` (1768), `CompareStr` (1652), `CompareText` (1653), `UnicodeSameStr` (1770)

**76.15.284 UnicodeCompareText**

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings case insensitively

Declaration: `function UnicodeCompareText(const s1: UnicodeString;  
const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCompareText` compares 2 Unicode strings `S1` and `S2`, ignoring case. The result of the function is

< 0 If `S1 < S2`

0 If `S1 = S2`

> 0 If `S1 > S2`

This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` (1768), `CompareStr` (1652), `CompareText` (1653), `UnicodeSameStr` (1770)

**76.15.285 UnicodeFmtStr**

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, procedural version.

Declaration: 

```
procedure UnicodeFmtStr(var Res: UnicodeString;
                        const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                        const args: Array of const)
procedure UnicodeFmtStr(var Res: UnicodeString;
                        const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                        const args: Array of const;
                        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeFmtStr` calls `UnicodeFormat` (1769) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `UnicodeFormat` (1769).

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `UnicodeFormat` (1769), `UnicodeFormatBuf` (1769)

**76.15.286 UnicodeFormat**

Synopsis: Format Unicode string

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeFormat(const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                      const Args: Array of const) : UnicodeString
function UnicodeFormat(const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                      const Args: Array of const;
                      const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                      : UnicodeString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeFormat` is the Unicode equivalent of `Format` (1696). It follows the same rules and uses the same formatting strings.

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `Format` (1696), `UnicodeFormatBuf` (1769)

**76.15.287 UnicodeFormatBuf**

Synopsis: Format a Unicode string with given arguments and store the result in a unicodebuffer.

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                        fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const)
                        : Cardinal
function UnicodeFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                        fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const;
                        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                        : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeFormatBuf` is the Unicode equivalent of `FormatBuf` (1703). It follows the same rules and uses the same formatting st

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `FormatBuf` ([1703](#)), `UnicodeFormat` ([1769](#))

### 76.15.288 `UnicodeLowerCase`

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string

Declaration: `function UnicodeLowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeLowerCase` returns an all-lowercase version of the unicodestring `S`. It relies on the Unicode manager to do so.

See also: `UnicodeUpperCase` ([1771](#)), `UpperCase` ([1771](#)), `LowerCase` ([1722](#))

### 76.15.289 `UnicodeSameStr`

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings are equal

Declaration: `function UnicodeSameStr(const s1: UnicodeString;  
const s2: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeSameStr` checks whether the Unicode strings `S1` and `S2` are equal, case sensitively. The function returns `True` if the strings are equal, `False` if they are not. This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` ([1768](#)), `CompareStr` ([1652](#)), `CompareText` ([1653](#)), `UnicodeSameText` ([1770](#)), `SameStr` ([1728](#))

### 76.15.290 `UnicodeSameText`

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings are the same, ignoring case

Declaration: `function UnicodeSameText(const s1: UnicodeString;  
const s2: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeSameText` checks whether the Unicode strings `S1` and `S2` are equal, ignoring case. The function returns `True` if the strings are equal, `False` if they are not. This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` ([1768](#)), `CompareStr` ([1652](#)), `CompareText` ([1653](#)), `UnicodeSameStr` ([1770](#)), `SameText` ([1728](#))

**76.15.291 UnicodeStringReplace**

Synopsis: Replace one occurrence of a string with another

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeStringReplace(const S: UnicodeString;
                             const OldPattern: UnicodeString;
                             const NewPattern: UnicodeString;
                             Flags: TReplaceFlags) : UnicodeString
function UnicodeStringReplace(const S: UnicodeString;
                             const OldPattern: UnicodeString;
                             const NewPattern: UnicodeString;
                             Flags: TReplaceFlags; out aCount: Integer)
                             : UnicodeString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeStringReplace` is the Unicode version of `StringReplace` (1737); it follows the same rules and has the same behaviour, but operates on Unicode strings instead of ansistrings.

See also: `StringReplace` (1737)

**76.15.292 UnicodeUpperCase**

Synopsis: Return uppercase version of a string

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeUpperCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeUpperCase` returns an all-uppercase version of the unicodestring S. It relies on the Unicode manager to do so.

See also: `UnicodeLowerCase` (1770), `LowerCase` (1722), `UpperCase` (1771)

**76.15.293 UpperCase**

Synopsis: Return an uppercase version of a string.

Declaration: 

```
function UpperCase(const s: string) : string; Overload
function UpperCase(const s: string; LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions)
                  : string; Overload
function UpperCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UpperCase` returns the uppercase equivalent of S. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the `UpCase` function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` (1636), `LowerCase` (1722), `AnsiUpperCase` (1644)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex87.pp

---

**Program** Example87;

```
{ This program demonstrates the UpperCase function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

**Begin**

```
WriteLn (UpperCase('this will come OUT ALL uPpErCaSe !'));
```

```
End.
```

### 76.15.294 VendorName

```

: Return Application vendor Name

```

```
:function VendorName : string
```

: default

`VendorName` returns the application vendor name. In order to set the application vendor name, the `OnGetVendorName` (1629) event must be set, and an appropriate return value must be returned. The Vendor name is used in `GetAppConfigDir` (1707) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1707) to determine the configuration directory.

: If OnGetVendorName (1629) is not set, an empty string is returned.

: OnGetVendorName (1629), GetAppConfigDir (1707), GetAppConfigFile (1707)

### 76.15.295 WideBytesOf

: Returns the contents of a widestring as an array of bytes

```
:function WideBytesOf(const Value: UnicodeString) : TBytes
```

: default

: `WideBytesOf` returns the contents of the `widestring Value` as an array of bytes. The array will have as length twice the length of the wide string, as each wide character contains 2 bytes.

: StringOf (1737)

### 76.15.296 WideCompareStr

```
: Compare two widestrings (case sensitive)
```

```

: function WideCompareStr(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString;
                        : PtrInt

```

: default

`:WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

**< 0**if  $S_1 < S_2$ .

```

0if s1=s2.

```

> **0**if  $S_1 > S_2$ .

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters.  
 Contrary to `WideCompareText` (1773), the comparison is case sensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareText` (1773), `WideSameStr` (1774), `WideSameText` (1775)

### 76.15.297 `WideCompareText`

Synopsis: Compare two widestrings (ignoring case).

Declaration: `function WideCompareText(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

`< 0` if `S1 < S2`.  
`0` if `S1 = S2`.  
`> 0` if `S1 > S2`.

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters.  
 Contrary to `WideCompareStr` (1772), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareStr` (1772), `WideSameStr` (1774), `WideSameText` (1775)

### 76.15.298 `WideFmtStr`

Synopsis: Widestring format

Declaration: `procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString; const Fmt: WideString;  
const args: Array of const)  
procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString; const Fmt: WideString;  
const args: Array of const;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFmtStr` formats `Args` according to the format string in `Fmt` and returns the resulting string in `Res`.

See also: `WideFormat` (1773), `WideFormatBuf` (1774), `Format` (1696)

### 76.15.299 `WideFormat`

Synopsis: Format a wide string.

Declaration: `function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString; const Args: Array of const)  
: WideString  
function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString; const Args: Array of const;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WideFormat` does the same as `Format` ([1696](#)) but accepts as a formatting string a `WideString`. The resulting string is also a `WideString`.

For more information about the used formatting characters, see the `Format` ([1696](#)) string.

See also: `Format` ([1696](#))

### 76.15.300 WideFormatBuf

**Synopsis:** Format widestring in a buffer.

**Declaration:**

```
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                      fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const)
                      : Cardinal
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                      fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const;
                      const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WideFormatBuf` calls simply `WideFormat` ([1773](#)) with `Fmt` (with length `FmtLen` bytes) and stores maximum `BufLen` bytes in the buffer `buf`. It returns the number of copied bytes.

See also: `WideFmtStr` ([1773](#)), `WideFormat` ([1773](#)), `Format` ([1696](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1703](#))

### 76.15.301 WideLowerCase

**Synopsis:** Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

**Declaration:** `function WideLowerCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WideLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `WideUpperCase` ([1776](#))

### 76.15.302 WideSameStr

**Synopsis:** Check whether two widestrings are the same (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function WideSameStr(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WideSameStr` returns `True` if `WideCompareStr` ([1772](#)) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameText` ([1775](#)), `WideCompareStr` ([1772](#)), `WideCompareText` ([1773](#)), `AnsiSameStr` ([1638](#))

**76.15.303 WideStringText**

Synopsis: Check whether two wstrings are the same (ignoring case)

Declaration: `function WideStringText(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideStringText` returns `True` if `WideCompareText` (1773) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameStr` (1774), `WideCompareStr` (1772), `WideCompareText` (1773), `AnsiSameText` (1638)

**76.15.304 WideStringAlloc**

Synopsis: Allocate a null-terminated wstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function WideStringAlloc(size: Cardinal) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideStrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a wstring with length `Len`, (terminating `#0#0` included), and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `WideStrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1731), `StrDispose` (1734), `StrAlloc` (1281)

**76.15.305 WideStringOf**

Synopsis: Create Unicode string from array of bytes

Declaration: `function WideStringOf(const Value: TBytes) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideStringOf` converts an array of bytes (`Bytes`) to a Unicode string. It considers each pair of bytes in the array as a single wide char. The array should have an even length. If the length is uneven, the last byte will be ignored.

This function performs the opposite operation of `BytesOf` (1648).

To create a string where the bytes are interpreted as ansichars, use `StringOf` (1737) instead.

See also: `StringOf` (1737), `WideBytesOf` (1772), `BytesOf` (1648)

**76.15.306 WideStringReplace**

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a wstring.

Declaration: `function WideStringReplace(const S: WideString;  
const OldPattern: WideString;  
const NewPattern: WideString;  
Flags: TReplaceFlags) : WideString`  
`function WideStringReplace(const S: WideString;  
const OldPattern: WideString;  
const NewPattern: WideString;`

```
Flags: TReplaceFlags; out aCount: Integer)
: WideString
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WideStringReplace` searches the string `S` for occurrences of the string `OldPattern` and, if it is found, replaces it with `NewPattern`. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of `StringReplace` can be tuned with `Flags`, which is of type `TReplaceFlags` (1623). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of `OldPattern`, and to search case sensitively.

Errors: None.

See also: `TReplaceFlags` (1623), `StringReplace` (1737)

### 76.15.307 WideStringReplace

**Synopsis:** Change a widestring to all-uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function WideStringReplace(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WideUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideLowerCase` (1774)

### 76.15.308 WrapText

**Synopsis:** Word-wrap a text.

**Declaration:** `function WrapText(const Line: string; const BreakStr: string;
const BreakChars: TSysCharSet; MaxCol: Integer)
: string
function WrapText(const Line: string; MaxCol: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WrapText` does a wordwrap at column `MaxCol` of the string in `Line`. It breaks the string only at characters which are in `BreakChars` (default whitespace and hyphen) and inserts then the string `BreakStr` (default the lineending character for the current OS).

Portions of text that are between single or double quotes will be considered single words and the text will not be broken between the quotes.

See also: `StringReplace` (1737)

## 76.16 TRawbyteSearchRec

```
TRawbyteSearchRec = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Size : Int64
    ;
    Attr : LongInt;
    Name : RawByteString;
    ExcludeAttr : LongInt
    ;
    FindHandle : THandle;
private
    function GetTimeStamp : TDateTime
    ;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end
```

TRawbyteSearchRec is a search handle description record using single-byte strings. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst (1688) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext (1689). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose (1687).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

**Remark** Note that for files with Unicode filenames this is a converted value from the Unicode filename. Depending on the codepage, this may or may not be a correct rendering of the correct Unicode filename.

### 76.16.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1777</a> | TimeStamp  | r      |             |

### 76.16.2 TRawbyteSearchRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.17 TRawbyteSymLinkRec

```
TRawbyteSymLinkRec = record
public
    TargetName : RawByteString;
    Size : Int64;
    Attr : LongInt;
private
    function GetTimeStamp
```

```

    : TDateTime;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end

```

### 76.17.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1778</a> | TimeStamp  | r      |             |

### 76.17.2 TRawbyteSymLinkRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.18 TUnicodeSearchRec

```

TUnicodeSearchRec = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Size : Int64
    ;
    Attr : LongInt;
    Name : UnicodeString;
    ExcludeAttr : LongInt
    ;
    FindHandle : THandle;
private
    function GetTimeStamp : TDateTime
    ;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end

```

TRawbyteSearchRec is a search handle description record using multi-byte strings. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst ([1688](#)) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext ([1689](#)). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose ([1687](#)).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

### 76.18.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1779</a> | TimeStamp  | r      |             |

### 76.18.2 TUnicodeSearchRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.19 TUnicodeSymLinkRec

```
TUnicodeSymLinkRec = record
public
  TargetName : UnicodeString;
  Attr : LongInt;
  Size : Int64;
private
  function GetTimeStamp
    : TDateTime;
public
  property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end
```

### 76.19.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1779</a> | TimeStamp  | r      |             |

### 76.19.2 TUnicodeSymLinkRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.20 EAbort

### 76.20.1 Description

`EAbort` is raised by the `Abort` ([1631](#)) procedure. It is not displayed in GUI applications, and serves only to immediately abort the current procedure, and return control to the main program loop.

See also: `Abort` ([1631](#))

## 76.21 EAbstractError

### 76.21.1 Description

`EAbstractError` is raised when an abstract error occurs, i.e. when an unimplemented abstract method is called.

## 76.22 EAccessViolation

### 76.22.1 Description

`EAccessViolation` is raised when the OS reports an Access Violation, i.e. when invalid memory is accessed.

See also: `EObjectCheck` ([1785](#))

## 76.23 EArgumentException

### 76.23.1 Description

`EArgumentException` is raised by many character conversion/handling routines to indicate an erroneous argument was passed to the function (usually indicating an invalid codepoint in a Unicode string).

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` ([1780](#))

## 76.24 EArgumentNilException

### 76.24.1 Description

`EArgumentNilException` is an exception raised when an argument is `Nil` when it should not be `Nil`.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1788](#))

## 76.25 EArgumentOutOfRangeException

### 76.25.1 Description

`EArgumentOutOfRangeException` is raised by many character conversion/handling routines to indicate an erroneous argument was passed to the function (indicating an invalid character index in a Unicode string).

See also: `EArgumentException` ([1780](#))

## 76.26 EAssertionFailed

### 76.26.1 Description

`EAssertionFailed` is raised when an application that is compiled with assertions, encounters an invalid assertion.

## 76.27 EBusError

### 76.27.1 Description

`EBusError` is raised in case of a bus error.

## 76.28 EControlC

### 76.28.1 Description

`EControlC` is raised when the user has pressed CTRL-C in a console application.

## 76.29 EConvertError

### 76.29.1 Description

`EConvertError` is raised by the various conversion routines in the `SysUtils` unit. The message will contain more specific error information.

## 76.30 EDirectoryNotFoundException

### 76.30.1 Description

`EDirectoryNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a directory is referenced that does not exist.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1788](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1782](#)), `EPathNotFoundException` ([1786](#)), `EPathTooLongException` ([1786](#))

## 76.31 EDivByZero

### 76.31.1 Description

`EDivByZero` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a division by zero error.

## 76.32 EEncodingError

### 76.32.1 Description

`EEncodingError` is the exception classed used by the `TEncoding` class to indicate errors.

See also: `TEncoding` ([1814](#))

## 76.33 EExternal

### 76.33.1 Description

`EExternal` is the base exception for all external exceptions, as reported by the CPU or operating system, as opposed to internal exceptions, which are raised by the program itself. The `SysUtils` unit converts all operating system errors to descendants of `EExternal`.

See also: `EIntError` (1783), `EExternal` (1782), `EMathError` (1784), `EExternalException` (1782), `EAccessViolation` (1780), `EPrivilege` (1787), `EStackOverflow` (1787), `EControlC` (1781)

## 76.34 EExternalException

### 76.34.1 Description

`EExternalException` is raised when an external routine raises an exception.

See also: `EExternal` (1782)

## 76.35 EFileNotFoundException

### 76.35.1 Description

`EFileNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a file is referenced that does not exist. This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` (1788), `EPathNotFoundException` (1786), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` (1781), `EPathTooLongException` (1786)

## 76.36 EFormatError

### 76.36.1 Description

`EFormatError` is raised in case of an error in one of the various `Format` (1696) functions.

See also: `Format` (1696)

## 76.37 EHeapMemoryError

### 76.37.1 Description

`EHeapMemoryError` is raised when an error occurs in heap (dynamically allocated) memory.

See also: `EHeapException` (1614), `EOutOfMemory` (1786), `EInvalidPointer` (1784)

### 76.37.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                    | Description                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">1783</a> | <code>FreeInstance</code> | Free the exception instance |

### 76.37.3 EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Free the exception instance

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeInstance` checks whether the exception instance may be freed prior to calling the inherited `FreeInstance`. The exception is only freed in case of normal program shutdown, if a heap error occurred, the exception instance is not freed.

## 76.38 EInOutError

### 76.38.1 Description

`EInOutError` is raised when a IO routine of Free Pascal returns an error. The error is converted to an `EInOutError` only if the input/output checking feature of FPC is turned on. The error code of the input/output operation is returned in `ErrorCode` (??).

See also: `EInOutError.ErrorCode` (??)

## 76.39 EIntError

### 76.39.1 Description

`EIntError` is used when the operating system or CPU signals an integer operation error, e.g., an overflow.

## 76.40 EIntfCastError

### 76.40.1 Description

`EIntfCastError` is raised when an invalid interface cast is encountered.

See also: `EInvalidCast` ([1783](#))

## 76.41 EIntOverflow

### 76.41.1 Description

`EIntOverflow` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a integer overflow error.

See also: `EIntError` ([1783](#)), `EDivByZero` ([1781](#)), `ERangeError` ([1787](#))

## 76.42 EInvalidCast

### 76.42.1 Description

`EInvalidCast` is raised when an invalid typecast error (using the `as` operator) is encountered.

See also: `EIntfCastError` ([1783](#))

## 76.43 EInvalidContainer

### 76.43.1 Description

EInvalidContainer is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.44 EInvalidInsert

### 76.44.1 Description

EInvalidInsert is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.45 EInvalidOp

### 76.45.1 Description

EInvalidOp is raised when an invalid operation is encountered.

## 76.46 EInvalidOpException

## 76.47 EInvalidPointer

### 76.47.1 Description

EInvalidPointer is raised when an invalid heap pointer is used.

See also: EHeapException ([1614](#)), EHeapMemoryError ([1782](#)), EOutOfMemory ([1786](#))

## 76.48 EMathError

### 76.48.1 Description

EMathError is used when the operating system or CPU signals a floating point overflow error.

See also: EIntError ([1783](#)), EIntOverflow ([1783](#)), EDivByZero ([1781](#)), ERangeError ([1787](#))

## 76.49 ENoConstructException

### 76.49.1 Description

ENoConstructException is the exception raised when an instance of type TCharacter is being created. The TCharacter class only contains static methods, no instances of this class should be instantiated.

## 76.50 ENoDynLibsSupport

## 76.51 ENoThreadSupport

### 76.51.1 Description

`ENoThreadSupport` is raised when some thread routines are invoked, and thread support was not enabled when the program was compiled.

## 76.52 ENotImplemented

### 76.52.1 Description

`ENotImplemented` can be used to raise an exception when a particular call had been defined, but was not implemented.

## 76.53 ENotSupportedException

### 76.53.1 Description

`ENotSupportedException` is an exception raised when a function or procedure is not supported for a certain platform.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: [Exception \(1788\)](#)

## 76.54 ENoWideStringSupport

### 76.54.1 Description

`ENoWideStringSupport` is the exception raised when a run-time 233 occurs, i.e. when widestring routines are called and the application does not contain widestring support.

## 76.55 EObjectCheck

### 76.55.1 Description

`EObjectCheck` is raised when the `-CR` (check object references) command-line option or `{ $OBJECTCHECKS ON }` directive is in effect and a `Nil` reference to an object or class was encountered.

See also: [EAccessViolation \(1780\)](#)

## 76.56 EOSError

### 76.56.1 Description

`EOSError` is raised when some Operating System call fails. The `ErrorCode` (??) property contains the operating system error code.

See also: `EOSError.ErrorCode` (??)

## 76.57 EOutOfMemory

### 76.57.1 Description

`EOutOfMemory` occurs when memory can no longer be allocated on the heap. An instance of `EOutOfMemory` is allocated on the heap at program startup, so it is available when needed.

See also: `EHeapException` ([1614](#)), `EHeapMemoryError` ([1782](#)), `EInvalidPointer` ([1784](#))

## 76.58 EOverflow

### 76.58.1 Description

`EOverflow` occurs when a float operation overflows. (i.e. result is too big to represent).

See also: `EIntError` ([1783](#)), `EIntOverflow` ([1783](#)), `EDivByZero` ([1781](#)), `ERangeError` ([1787](#)), `EUnderFlow` ([1788](#))

## 76.59 EPackageError

### 76.59.1 Description

`EPackageError` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.60 EPathNotFoundException

### 76.60.1 Description

`EPathNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a path is referenced that does not exist. This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1788](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1782](#)), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` ([1781](#)), `EPathTooLongException` ([1786](#))

## 76.61 EPathTooLongException

### 76.61.1 Description

`EPathTooLongException` is an exception raised when a pathname argument is longer than the allowed pathname length for files.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1788](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1782](#)), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` ([1781](#)), `EPathNotFoundException` ([1786](#))

## 76.62 EPrivilege

### 76.62.1 Description

EPrivilege is raised when the OS reports that an invalid instruction was executed.

## 76.63 EProgrammerNotFound

## 76.64 EPropReadOnly

### 76.64.1 Description

EPropReadOnly is raised when an attempt is made to write to a read-only property.

## 76.65 EPropWriteOnly

### 76.65.1 Description

EPropWriteOnly is raised when an attempt is made to read from a write-only property.

See also: EPropReadOnly ([1787](#))

## 76.66 ERangeError

### 76.66.1 Description

ERangeError is raised by the Free Pascal runtime library if range checking is on, and a range check error occurs.

See also: EIntError ([1783](#)), EDivByZero ([1781](#)), EIntOverflow ([1783](#))

## 76.67 ESafecallException

### 76.67.1 Description

ESafecallException is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.68 ESigQuit

## 76.69 EStackOverflow

### 76.69.1 Description

EStackOverflow occurs when the stack has grown too big (e.g. by infinite recursion).

## 76.70 EThreadError

## 76.71 EUnderflow

### 76.71.1 Description

EOverflow occurs when a float operation underflows (i.e. result is too small to represent).

See also: EIntError ([1783](#)), EIntOverflow ([1783](#)), EDivByZero ([1781](#)), ERangeError ([1787](#)), EOverflow ([1786](#))

## 76.72 EVariantError

### 76.72.1 Description

EVariantError is raised by the internal variant routines.

### 76.72.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method     | Description   |
|----------------------|------------|---|
| <a href="#">1788</a> | CreateCode | Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code. |

### 76.72.3 EVariantError.CreateCode

Synopsis: Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code.

Declaration: constructor CreateCode (Code: LongInt)

Visibility: default

Description: CreateCode calls the inherited constructor, and sets the ErrCode (??) property to Code.

See also: ErrCode (??)

## 76.73 Exception

### 76.73.1 Description

Exception is the base class for all exception handling routines in the RTL and FCL. While it is possible to raise an exception with any class descending from TObject, it is recommended to use Exception as the basis of exception class objects: the Exception class introduces properties to associate a message and a help context with the exception being raised. What is more, the SysUtils unit sets the necessary hooks to catch and display unhandled exceptions: in such cases, the message displayed to the end user, will be the message stored in the exception class.

See also: ExceptObject ([1668](#)), ExceptAddr ([1667](#)), ExceptionErrorMessage ([1668](#)), ShowException ([1729](#)), Abort ([1631](#))

**76.73.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method           | Description   |
|----------------------|------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1789</a> | Create           | Constructs a new exception object with a given message.   |
| <a href="#">1789</a> | CreateFmt        | Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.  |
| <a href="#">1790</a> | CreateFmtHelp    | Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message                 |
| <a href="#">1790</a> | CreateHelp       | Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.  |
| <a href="#">1789</a> | CreateRes        | Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.                             |
| <a href="#">1790</a> | CreateResFmt     | Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.                          |
| <a href="#">1791</a> | CreateResFmtHelp | Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource |
| <a href="#">1790</a> | CreateResHelp    | Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource    |
| <a href="#">1791</a> | ToString         | Nicely formatted version of the exception message   |

**76.73.3 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties  | Access | Description                                 |
|----------------------|-------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">1791</a> | HelpContext | rw     | Help context associated with the exception. |
| <a href="#">1791</a> | Message     | rw     | Message associated with the exception.      |

**76.73.4 Exception.Create**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object with a given message.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const msg: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` ([1789](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1791](#))

**76.73.5 Exception.CreateFmt**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const msg: string; const args: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` ([1789](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1791](#)), `Format` ([1696](#))

**76.73.6 Exception.CreateRes**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateRes(ResString: PString)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1789), `Exception.CreateFmt` (1789), `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1790), `Exception.Message` (1791)

### 76.73.7 `Exception.CreateResFmt`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateResFmt(ResString: PString; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateResFmt` does the same as `CreateFmt` (1789), but fetches the message from the resource string `ResString`.

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1789), `Exception.CreateFmt` (1789), `Exception.CreateRes` (1789), `Exception.Message` (1791)

### 76.73.8 `Exception.CreateHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.

Declaration: `constructor CreateHelp(const Msg: string; AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateHelp` does the same as the `Create` (1789) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1791) property.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1789)

### 76.73.9 `Exception.CreateFmtHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmtHelp(const Msg: string;  
const Args: Array of const;  
AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateFmt` (1789) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1791) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` (1789)

### 76.73.10 `Exception.CreateResHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

Declaration: `constructor CreateResHelp(ResString: PString; AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `CreateResHelp` does the same as the `CreateRes` (1789) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1791) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateRes` (1789)

### 76.73.11 `Exception.CreateResFmtHelp`

**Synopsis:** Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource

**Declaration:** `constructor CreateResFmtHelp(ResString: PString;  
const Args: Array of const;  
AHelpContext: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CreateResFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateResFmt` (1790) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1791) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1790)

### 76.73.12 `Exception.ToString`

**Synopsis:** Nicely formatted version of the exception message

**Declaration:** `function ToString : string; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToString` overrides the `ToString` method to return a concatenation of classname and `Exception.Message` (1791).

See also: `Exception.Message` (1791)

### 76.73.13 `Exception.HelpContext`

**Synopsis:** Help context associated with the exception.

**Declaration:** `Property HelpContext : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `HelpContext` is the help context associated with the exception, and can be used to provide context-sensitive help when the exception error message is displayed. It should be set in the exception constructor.

See also: `Exception.CreateHelp` (1790), `Exception.Message` (1791)

### 76.73.14 `Exception.Message`

**Synopsis:** Message associated with the exception.

**Declaration:** `Property Message : string`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Message` provides additional information about the exception. It is shown to the user in e.g. the `ShowException` (1729) routine, and should be set in the constructor when the exception is raised.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1789), `Exception.HelpContext` (1791)

## 76.74 EZeroDivide

### 76.74.1 Description

`EZeroDivide` occurs when a float division by zero occurs.

See also: `EIntError` (1783), `EIntOverflow` (1783), `EDivByZero` (1781), `ERangeError` (1787)

## 76.75 IReadWriteSync

### 76.75.1 Description

`IReadWriteSync` is an interface for synchronizing read/write operations. Writers are always guaranteed to have exclusive access: readers may or may not have simultaneous access, depending on the implementation.

### 76.75.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                  | Description              |
|------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1792 | <code>BeginRead</code>  | Start a read operation.  |
| 1793 | <code>BeginWrite</code> | Start a write operation. |
| 1792 | <code>EndRead</code>    | End a read operation     |
| 1793 | <code>EndWrite</code>   | End a write operation.   |

### 76.75.3 IReadWriteSync.BeginRead

**Synopsis:** Start a read operation.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginRead`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `BeginRead` indicates that a read operation is about to be started. If a write operation is in progress, then the call will block until the write operation finished. Depending on the implementation the call may also block if another read operation is in progress.

After `BeginRead`, any write operation started with `BeginWrite` (1793) will block until `EndRead` (1792) is called.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` (1792), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` (1793), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` (1793)

### 76.75.4 IReadWriteSync.EndRead

**Synopsis:** End a read operation

**Declaration:** `procedure EndRead`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `EndRead` signals the end of a read operation. If there was any blocked write operation, that will be unblocked by a call to `EndRead`.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1792](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` ([1793](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1793](#))

### 76.75.5 IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite

**Synopsis:** Start a write operation.

**Declaration:** `function BeginWrite : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `BeginWrite` signals the begin of a write operation. This call will block if any other read or write operation is currently in progress. It will resume only after all other read or write operations have finished.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1792](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1793](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1792](#))

### 76.75.6 IReadWriteSync.EndWrite

**Synopsis:** End a write operation.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndWrite`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `EndWrite` signals the end of a write operation. After the call to `EndWrite` any other read or write operations can start.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1792](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1793](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1792](#))

## 76.76 TANSISTRINGBUILDER

### 76.76.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1794</a> | <code>Append</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1794</a> | <code>AppendFormat</code>   |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>AppendLine</code>     |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>Clear</code>          |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>CopyTo</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1794</a> | <code>Create</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>EnsureCapacity</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>Equals</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1795</a> | <code>Insert</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1796</a> | <code>Remove</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1796</a> | <code>Replace</code>        |             |
| <a href="#">1796</a> | <code>ToString</code>       |             |

**76.76.2 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties  | Access | Description |
|----------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1797</a> | Capacity    | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1797</a> | Chars       | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1797</a> | Length      | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1797</a> | MaxCapacity | r      |             |

**76.76.3 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Create**

Declaration: constructor Create

```

constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING)
constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer; aMaxCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING; aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                  aLength: Integer; aCapacity: Integer)

```

Visibility: public

**76.76.4 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Append**

Declaration: function Append(const AValue: Boolean) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

function Append(const AValue: Byte) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Currency) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Double) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: SmallInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: LongInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Int64) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: TObject) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ShortInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Single) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UInt64) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Word) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Cardinal) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: PANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: RawByteString) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSICHAR; RepeatCount: Integer)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR; StartIndex: Integer;
                SBCharCount: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSISTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                Count: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const Fmt: ANSISTRING; const Args: Array of const)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

Visibility: public

**76.76.5 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat**

Declaration: function AppendFormat(const Fmt: ANSISTRING; const Args: Array of const) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.76.6 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine

Declaration: function AppendLine : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function AppendLine(const AValue: RawByteString) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.76.7 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Clear

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

### 76.76.8 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo

Declaration: procedure CopyTo(SourceIndex: Integer;  
                               var Destination: Array of ANSICHAR;  
                               DestinationIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)

Visibility: public

### 76.76.9 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity

Declaration: function EnsureCapacity(aCapacity: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: public

### 76.76.10 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Equals

Declaration: function Equals(StringBuilder: TANSISTRINGBUILDER) : Boolean  
                               ; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.76.11 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Insert

Declaration: function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Boolean)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Byte) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSICHAR)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Currency)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Double)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: SmallInt)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: LongInt)  
                               : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
           function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR)

```

        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Int64)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: TObject)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ShortInt)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Single)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSISTRING)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Word) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Cardinal)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UInt64)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSISTRING;
        const aRepeatCount: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR;
        startIndex: Integer; SBCharCount: Integer)
        : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

Visibility: public

#### 76.76.12 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Remove

Declaration: function Remove(StartIndex: Integer; RemLength: Integer)  
                           : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

#### 76.76.13 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Replace

Declaration: function Replace(const OldChar: ANSICHAR; const NewChar: ANSICHAR)  
                           : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldChar: ANSICHAR; const NewChar: ANSICHAR;  
                           StartIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)  
                           : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: RAWBYTESTRING;  
                           const NewValue: RAWBYTESTRING) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: RAWBYTESTRING;  
                           const NewValue: RAWBYTESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;  
                           Count: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

#### 76.76.14 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.ToString

Declaration: function ToString : ANSISTRING; Override  
                           function ToString(aStartIndex: Integer; aLength: Integer) : ANSISTRING  
                           ; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

**76.76.15 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Chars**

Declaration: Property Chars[index: Integer]: ANSICHAR; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.76.16 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Length**

Declaration: Property &Length : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.76.17 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Capacity**

Declaration: Property Capacity : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.76.18 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity**

Declaration: Property MaxCapacity : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**76.77 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding****76.77.1 Description**

TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-16 big-endian encoding.

See also: TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding ([1797](#)), TUTF7Encoding ([1893](#)), TMBCSEncoding ([1837](#)), TBigen-  
dianUnicodeEncoding ([1797](#))

**76.77.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method      | Description                                |
|----------------------|-------------|--|
| <a href="#">1797</a> | Clone       | Clone a TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding instance |
| <a href="#">1798</a> | GetPreamble | Return BOM marker bytes                    |

**76.77.3 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding instance

Declaration: function Clone : TEncoding; Override

Visibility: public

Description: `CLone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` (1815) to provide a clone of the `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` (1815)

#### 76.77.4 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817) to return the 2 UTF-16 BOM Marker bytes (\$FF,\$FE).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817)

### 76.78 TBooleanHelper

#### 76.78.1 Description

`TBooleanHelper` is a helper type for the `Boolean` type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1866), `TShortIntHelper` (1851), `TSmallIntHelper` (1863), `TWordHelper` (1897), `TCardinalHelper` (1805), `TIntegerHelper` (1832), `TInt64Helper` (1829), `TQWordHelper` (1848), `TNativeIntHelper` (1841), `TByteHelper` (1801), `TByteBoolHelper` (1800), `TWordBoolHelper` (1896), `TLongBoolHelper` (1835)

#### 76.78.2 Method overview

| Page | Method                  | Description                                |
|------|-------------------------|--|
| 1798 | <code>Parse</code>      | Convert string value to boolean value.     |
| 1799 | <code>Size</code>       | Return the size (in bytes) of the          |
| 1799 | <code>ToInteger</code>  | Convert to an integer value                |
| 1799 | <code>ToString</code>   | Convert a boolean value to string.         |
| 1799 | <code>TryToParse</code> | Try to convert a string to a boolean value |

#### 76.78.3 TBooleanHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to boolean value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` attempts to convert the string `S` to a boolean value. It uses the `StrToBool` (1746) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid string representation, then an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.TryToParse` (1799), `TBooleanHelper.ToString` (1799), `TBooleanHelper.ToInteger` (1799)

### 76.78.4 TBooleanHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the boolean value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (Boolean)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

### 76.78.5 TBooleanHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` boolean to a string representation.

In the function method version the boolean value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the boolean strings `BoolStrs` ([1599](#)). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` ([1648](#)) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` ([1599](#)), `BoolToStr` ([1648](#))

### 76.78.6 TBooleanHelper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a boolean value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.Parse` ([1798](#)), `TBooleanHelper.ToString` ([1799](#))

### 76.78.7 TBooleanHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the boolean value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.ToString` ([1799](#))

## 76.79 TByteBoolHelper

### 76.79.1 Description

TByteBoolHelper is a helper type for the ByteBool type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: TStringHelper (1866), TShortIntHelper (1851), TSmallIntHelper (1863), TWordHelper (1897), TCardinalHelper (1805), TIntegerHelper (1832), TInt64Helper (1829), TQWordHelper (1848), TNativeIntHelper (1841), TByteHelper (1801), TByteBoolHelper (1800), TWordBoolHelper (1896), TLongBoolHelper (1835)

### 76.79.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method     | Description                                 |
|----------------------|------------|---|
| <a href="#">1800</a> | Parse      | Convert string value to ByteBool value.     |
| <a href="#">1800</a> | Size       | Return the size (in bytes) of the           |
| <a href="#">1801</a> | ToInteger  | Convert to an integer value                 |
| <a href="#">1800</a> | ToString   | Convert a ByteBool value to string.         |
| <a href="#">1801</a> | TryToParse | Try to convert a string to a ByteBool value |

### 76.79.3 TByteBoolHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to ByteBool value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Parse attempts to convert the string S to a ByteBool value. It uses the StrToBool (1746) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If S does not contain a valid string representation, then an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: TByteBoolHelper.TryToParse (1801), TByteBoolHelper.ToString (1800), TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger (1801)

### 76.79.4 TByteBoolHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Size returns the size (in bytes) of the ByteBool value. This is equivalent to SizeOf(ByteBool).

See also: SizeOf (1539)

### 76.79.5 TByteBoolHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a ByteBool value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
                                  UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
                                  ; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` `ByteBool` to a string representation. In the function method version the `ByteBool` value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the `ByteBool` strings `BoolStrs` (1599). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` (1648) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` (1599), `BoolToStr` (1648)

### 76.79.6 TByteBoolHelper.TryToParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `ByteBool` value

Declaration: `class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryToParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a `ByteBool` value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TByteBoolHelper.Parse` (1800), `TByteBoolHelper.ToString` (1800)

### 76.79.7 TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the `ByteBool` value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TByteBoolHelper.ToString` (1800)

## 76.80 TByteHelper

### 76.80.1 Description

`TByteHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a byte-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1866), `TShortIntHelper` (1851), `TSmallIntHelper` (1863), `TWordHelper` (1897), `TCardinalHelper` (1805), `TIntegerHelper` (1832), `TInt64Helper` (1829), `TQWordHelper` (1848), `TNativeIntHelper` (1841), `TNativeUIntHelper` (1845)

**76.80.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method      | Description  |
|----------------------|-------------|--|
| <a href="#">1804</a> | ClearBit    |  |
| <a href="#">1802</a> | Parse       | Convert from a string  |
| <a href="#">1804</a> | SetBit      |  |
| <a href="#">1802</a> | Size        | Size, in bytes, of the byte value                            |
| <a href="#">1805</a> | TestBit     |  |
| <a href="#">1804</a> | ToBinString |  |
| <a href="#">1803</a> | ToBoolean   | Convert to a boolean value                                   |
| <a href="#">1803</a> | ToDouble    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value               |
| <a href="#">1803</a> | ToExtended  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value            |
| <a href="#">1805</a> | ToggleBit   |  |
| <a href="#">1804</a> | ToHexString | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation               |
| <a href="#">1804</a> | ToSingle    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value               |
| <a href="#">1802</a> | ToString    | Convert the value to string                                  |
| <a href="#">1803</a> | TryParse    | Try to convert a string to a byte, report success or failure |

**76.80.3 TByteHelper.Parse**

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Byte; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a byte value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1751](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid byte value, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1802](#)), `TByteHelper.TryParse` ([1803](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

**76.80.4 TByteHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the byte value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the byte value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Byte)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

**76.80.5 TByteHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Byte) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the byte value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TByteHelper.Parse` (1802), `IntToStr` (1718)

### 76.80.6 TByteHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a byte, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Byte)  
: Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a byte, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the byte is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1599) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TByteHelper.Parse` (1802), `Val` (1562)

### 76.80.7 TByteHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the byte value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToSingle` (1804), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` (1803), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` (1803), `TByteHelper.ToString` (1802), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

### 76.80.8 TByteHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the byte value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` (1803), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` (1803), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` (1804), `TByteHelper.ToString` (1802), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

### 76.80.9 TByteHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the byte value to an extended-sized floating point value

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` ([1804](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1802](#)), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` ([1804](#))

### 76.80.10 TByteHelper.ToBinString

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.80.11 TByteHelper.ToHexString

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the byte value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` ([1804](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1802](#)), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` ([1803](#))

### 76.80.12 TByteHelper.ToSingle

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the byte value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` ([1803](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1802](#)), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` ([1804](#))

### 76.80.13 TByteHelper.SetBit

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.80.14 TByteHelper.ClearBit

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.80.15 TByteHelper.ToggleBit

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

Visibility: public

### 76.80.16 TByteHelper.TestBit

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

## 76.81 TCardinalHelper

### 76.81.1 Description

`TCardinalHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a Cardinal-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1845](#))

### 76.81.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1808</a> | <code>ClearBit</code>    |  |
| <a href="#">1805</a> | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string  |
| <a href="#">1808</a> | <code>SetBit</code>      |  |
| <a href="#">1806</a> | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the Cardinal value                            |
| <a href="#">1808</a> | <code>TestBit</code>     |  |
| <a href="#">1807</a> | <code>ToBinString</code> |  |
| <a href="#">1806</a> | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value                                       |
| <a href="#">1807</a> | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                   |
| <a href="#">1807</a> | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                |
| <a href="#">1808</a> | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |  |
| <a href="#">1807</a> | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                   |
| <a href="#">1807</a> | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                   |
| <a href="#">1806</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string                                      |
| <a href="#">1806</a> | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a Cardinal, report success or failure |

### 76.81.3 TCardinalHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Cardinal; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a Cardinal value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1751](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid Cardinal value, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1806](#)), `TCardinalHelper.TryParse` ([1806](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

#### 76.81.4 TCardinalHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the Cardinal value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Size returns the size (in Cardinals) of the Cardinal value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (Cardinal)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

#### 76.81.5 TCardinalHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Cardinal) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: ToString will, in the class function variant of this method, convert AValue to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of ToString, the Cardinal value itself is used. The `IntToStr` ([1718](#)) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.Parse` ([1805](#)), `IntToStr` ([1718](#))

#### 76.81.6 TCardinalHelper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a Cardinal, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Cardinal)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a Cardinal, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then True is returned, and the actual value of the Cardinal is returned in AValue.

It uses the `val` ([1599](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.Parse` ([1805](#)), `Val` ([1562](#))

#### 76.81.7 TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: ToBoolean converts the Cardinal value to a boolean: it returns True if the value is nonzero, False if it is zero.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` ([1807](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` ([1807](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` ([1807](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1806](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` ([1807](#))

### 76.81.8 TCardinalHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the Cardinal value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` (1807)

### 76.81.9 TCardinalHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the Cardinal value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` (1807)

### 76.81.10 TCardinalHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.81.11 TCardinalHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the Cardinal value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` (1807)

### 76.81.12 TCardinalHelper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to a single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the Cardinal value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` (1807), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` (1806), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` (1807)

**76.81.13 TCardinalHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

**76.81.14 TCardinalHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

**76.81.15 TCardinalHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

**76.81.16 TCardinalHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**76.82 TDoubleHelper****76.82.1 Description**

`TDoubleHelper` is the helper type for the Double-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a Double.

See also: `TDoubleHelper` ([1808](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1821](#))

**76.82.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                          | Description   |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1811</a> | <code>BuildUp</code>            | Build a Double-sized floating point from its composing parts    |
| <a href="#">1812</a> | <code>Exponent</code>           | Exponent of the floating-point value                            |
| <a href="#">1812</a> | <code>Fraction</code>           | Fraction of the floating-point value                            |
| <a href="#">1809</a> | <code>IsInfinity</code>         | Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.         |
| <a href="#">1809</a> | <code>IsNan</code>              | Check whether a value equals NaN.                               |
| <a href="#">1809</a> | <code>IsNegativeInfinity</code> | Check whether a value is negative infinity.                     |
| <a href="#">1810</a> | <code>IsPositiveInfinity</code> | Check whether a value is positive infinity.                     |
| <a href="#">1812</a> | <code>Mantissa</code>           | Mantissa of the floating-point                                  |
| <a href="#">1810</a> | <code>Parse</code>              | Convert a string to a floating point value                      |
| <a href="#">1810</a> | <code>Size</code>               | Size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value.         |
| <a href="#">1813</a> | <code>SpecialType</code>        | Return the type of the Double-sized floating point value        |
| <a href="#">1810</a> | <code>ToString</code>           | Convert a Double-sized floating point value to a string         |
| <a href="#">1811</a> | <code>TryParse</code>           | Try to convert a string to a Double-sized floating point value. |

### 76.82.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description  |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1813</a> | Bytes      | rw     | Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value |
| <a href="#">1814</a> | Exp        | rw     | The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.               |
| <a href="#">1814</a> | Frac       | rw     | Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.                      |
| <a href="#">1813</a> | Sign       | rw     | Sign of the floating point value                                   |
| <a href="#">1813</a> | Words      | rw     | Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value  |

#### 76.82.4 TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

```
Declaration: class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean; Overload
                ; Static
                function IsInfinity : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TDoubeHelper.IsNan` ([1809](#)), `TDoubeHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1810](#)), `TDoubeHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1809](#))

### 76.82.5 TDoubleHelper.IsNan

### Synopsis: Check whether a value equals NaN.

```
Declaration: class function IsNan(const AValue: Double) : Boolean; Overload; Static
            function IsNan : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsNaN` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TDoubeHelper.IsInfinity` (1809), `TDoubeHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` (1810), `TDoubeHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1809)

### 76.82.6 TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

```
Declaration: class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean
                                                    ; Overload; Static
function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsNegativeInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TDoubeHelper.IsNan` ([1809](#)), `TDoubeHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1810](#)), `TDoubeHelper.IsInfinity` ([1809](#))

### 76.82.7 TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity

Synopsis: Check whether a value is positive infinity.

Declaration: `class function IsPositiveInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsPositiveInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsPositiveInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a positive infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.IsNan` (1809), `TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1809), `TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity` (1809)

### 76.82.8 TDoubleHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert a string to a floating point value

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Double; Overload; Static  
class function Parse(const AString: string;  
const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Double  
; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a Double-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

Errors: If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1691), `TDoubleHelper.ToString` (1810), `TDoubleHelper.TryParse` (1811)

### 76.82.9 TDoubleHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value.

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` is the size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value. It is equivalent to calling `SizeOf(Double)`.

See also: `SizeOf` (1539)

### 76.82.10 TDoubleHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a Double-sized floating point value to a string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Double) : string; Overload  
; Static  
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;  
const AFormat: TFloatFormat;  
const APrecision: Integer;  
const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload`

```

; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;
                        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                        const APrecision: Integer;
                        const ADigits: Integer;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                  const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)
: string; Overload
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                  const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;
                  const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will convert `AValue` (or `Self` in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally `FormatSettings` can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision `APrecision` and number of digits `ADigits` can be specified, in conjunction with a `AFormat` parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see `TFloatFormat` (1620) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, `FloatToStrF` (1692) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, `FloatToStr` (1691) is called.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1691), `FloatToStrF` (1692), `TFloatFormat` (1620)

### 76.82.11 TDoubleHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a Double-sized floating point value.

```

Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Double)
: Boolean; Overload; Static
class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Double;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a Double-sized floating point value and reports `True` if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in `AValue`.

If the conversion failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Parse` (1810), `TDoubleHelper.ToString` (1810)

### 76.82.12 TDoubleHelper.BuildUp

**Synopsis:** Build a Double-sized floating point from its composing parts

**Declaration:** `procedure BuildUp(const ASignFlag: Boolean; const AMantissa: QWord;  
const AExponent: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `BuildUp` will compose a Double-sized floating point value from the sign `ASignFlag`, mantissa `AMantissa` and exponent `AExponent`. It simply sets the `Sign` (1813), `Exp` (1814) and `Frac` (1814) properties in 1 call.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1814)

### 76.82.13 TDoubleHelper.Exponent

**Synopsis:** Exponent of the floating-point value

**Declaration:** `function Exponent : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \cdot 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1812)

### 76.82.14 TDoubleHelper.Fraction

**Synopsis:** Fraction of the floating-point value

**Declaration:** `function Fraction : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1812)

### 76.82.15 TDoubleHelper.Mantissa

**Synopsis:** Mantissa of the floating-point

**Declaration:** `function Mantissa : QWord`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Mantissa` is the value of the significand without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1812)

**76.82.16 TDoubleHelper.SpecialType**

Synopsis: Return the type of the Double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SpecialType` checks whether the Double-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1599](#)) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` ([1599](#))

**76.82.17 TDoubleHelper.Bytes**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Double-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Words` ([1813](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Size` ([1810](#))

**76.82.18 TDoubleHelper.Words**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Double-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` ([1813](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Size` ([1810](#))

**76.82.19 TDoubleHelper.Sign**

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` ([1813](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` ([1814](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` ([1814](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` ([1812](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` ([1812](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` ([1812](#))

### 76.82.20 TDoubleHelper.Exp

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent (1812).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1812)

### 76.82.21 TDoubleHelper.Frac

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1813), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1814), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1812), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1812)

## 76.83 TEncoding

### 76.83.1 Description

`TEncoding` is a mostly abstract class that contains various methods to deal with different encodings in single- and double-byte strings. In practice, one instance of a descendent of this class for each needed encoding can be instantiated and used. The class contains several class methods and properties to create such instances, and has several often-used instances available as class properties, in particular the default encoding.

When using encodings (and in particular `TEncoding.Default` (1819) or `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819)), if the `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411) changes, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` (1814) to regenerate the encodings.

See also: `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

**76.83.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method             | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1815</a> | Clone              | Clone a TEncoding instance   |
| <a href="#">1815</a> | Convert            | Convert an array of bytes from one encoding to another                               |
| <a href="#">1816</a> | GetBufferEncoding  | Attempt to guess the encoding of a buffer  |
| <a href="#">1816</a> | GetEncoding        | Get an encoding instance for a given codepage.                                       |
| <a href="#">1817</a> | GetMaxByteCount    | Returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string                     |
| <a href="#">1817</a> | GetMaxCharCount    | Return the maximum number of characters that can be represented in a number of bytes |
| <a href="#">1817</a> | GetPreamble        | Return the BOM Marker used by the encoding   |
| <a href="#">1818</a> | GetString          | Return a string based on an array of bytes   |
| <a href="#">1816</a> | IsStandardEncoding | Check if the encoding is one of the standard encodings                               |

**76.83.3 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties       | Access | Description                                     |
|----------------------|------------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">1819</a> | ANSI             | r      | Ansi encoding instance                          |
| <a href="#">1819</a> | ASCII            | r      | ASCII encoding instance                         |
| <a href="#">1819</a> | BigEndianUnicode | r      | Big-endian Unicode (UTF16BE) encoding instance  |
| <a href="#">1818</a> | CodePage         | r      | Codepage for this encoding                      |
| <a href="#">1819</a> | Default          | r      | Default codepage                                |
| <a href="#">1818</a> | EncodingName     | r      | Name of this encoding                           |
| <a href="#">1818</a> | IsSingleByte     | r      | Is the encoding a single-byte encoding or not ? |
| <a href="#">1820</a> | SystemEncoding   | r      |   |
| <a href="#">1820</a> | Unicode          | r      | UTF16 encoding instance                         |
| <a href="#">1820</a> | UTF7             | r      | UTF7 encoding instance                          |
| <a href="#">1820</a> | UTF8             | r      | UTF8 encoding instance                          |

**76.83.4 TEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a TEncoding instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Clone creates a copy of a TEncoding instance. This method returns Nil in TEncoding and must be implemented in descendent classes.

See also: TEncoding.Create ([1814](#))

**76.83.5 TEncoding.Convert**

Synopsis: Convert an array of bytes from one encoding to another

Declaration: `class function Convert(Source: TEncoding; Destination: TEncoding;  
const Bytes: TBytes) : TBytes; Overload  
class function Convert(Source: TEncoding; Destination: TEncoding;  
const Bytes: TBytes; StartIndex: Integer;  
Count: Integer) : TBytes; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Convert will convert the bytes in Bytes from encoding Source to encoding Destination and returns the converted bytes as an array. If StartIndex and Count are specified, the conversion starts at (zero-based) index StartIndex, and only Count bytes will be converted.

See also: TEncoding.GetBytes (1814), TEncoding.GetChars (1814)

### 76.83.6 TEncoding.IsStandardEncoding

**Synopsis:** Check if the encoding is one of the standard encodings

**Declaration:** `class function IsStandardEncoding(AEncoding: TEncoding) : Boolean  
; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** IsStandardEncoding will return True is one of the standard encoding instances TEncoding.ANSI (1819), TEncoding.ASCII (1819), TEncoding.Default (1819), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1819), TEncoding.Unicode (1820), TEncoding.UTF7 (1820) or TEncoding.UTF8 (1820). Otherwise it returns False.

See also: TEncoding.ANSI (1819), TEncoding.ASCII (1819), TEncoding.Default (1819), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1819), TEncoding.Unicode (1820), TEncoding.UTF7 (1820), TEncoding.UTF8 (1820)

### 76.83.7 TEncoding.GetBufferEncoding

**Synopsis:** Attempt to guess the encoding of a buffer

**Declaration:** `class function GetBufferEncoding(const Buffer: TBytes;  
var AEncoding: TEncoding) : Integer  
; Overload; Static  
class function GetBufferEncoding(const Buffer: TBytes;  
var AEncoding: TEncoding;  
ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding) : Integer  
; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** GetBufferEncoding checks the BOM marker of an array of bytes Buffer, and returns the found encoding in AEncoding. Only the TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1819) TEncoding.Unicode (1820) and TEncoding.UTF8 (1820) encodings will be tried.

If AEncoding is non-Nil on entry, it will be used to check the BOM marker with. No other encoding will be tried in that case.

If ADefaultEncoding is specified, it will be returned in case no match was found.

The function returns the number of bytes in the BOM Marker.

See also: TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1819), TEncoding.Unicode (1820), TEncoding.UTF8 (1820), TEncoding.GetPreamble (1817)

### 76.83.8 TEncoding.GetEncoding

**Synopsis:** Get an encoding instance for a given codepage.

**Declaration:** `class function GetEncoding(CodePage: Integer) : TEncoding; Overload  
; Static  
class function GetEncoding(const EncodingName: UnicodeString)  
: TEncoding; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetEncoding` will return an instance of `TEncoding` for the given codepage `CodePage`. The codepage can also be specified by name `EncodingName`. The returned instance is an appropriate descendent of `TEncoding` and needs to be freed by the caller.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1887](#)), `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1797](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1894](#)), `TUTF7Encoding` ([1893](#)), `TMBCSEncoding` ([1837](#))

### 76.83.9 TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount

**Synopsis:** Returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string

**Declaration:** `function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetMaxByteCount` returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string of `CharCount` characters in the given encoding.

This is an abstract method, implemented by descendents of `TEncoding`.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` ([1817](#))

### 76.83.10 TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount

**Synopsis:** Return the maximum number of characters that can be represented in a number of bytes

**Declaration:** `function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetMaxCharCount` returns the theoretical maximum number of characters that can be represented in a buffer of length `ByteCount` in the given encoding. Note that the actual number of characters that can be represented may well be much less and depends on the encoding and the actual characters.

This is an abstract method, implemented by descendents of `TEncoding`.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` ([1817](#))

### 76.83.11 TEncoding.GetPreamble

**Synopsis:** Return the BOM Marker used by the encoding

**Declaration:** `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetPreamble` returns the BOM marker bytes used by the encoding. This is only meaningful for the UTF8 and Unicode encodings, for all other encodings there is no BOM Marker.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1887](#)), `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1797](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1894](#))

### 76.83.12 TEncoding.GetString

Synopsis: Return a string based on an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetString(const Bytes: TBytes) : UnicodeString; Overload`  
`function GetString(const Bytes: TBytes; ByteIndex: Integer;`  
`ByteCount: Integer) : UnicodeString; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetString` will return a Unicode string, created from the bytes in the `Bytes` array. The bytes array will be interpreted according to the encoding which the `TEncoding` represents.

If `ByteIndex` and `ByteCount` are specified, only the `ByteCount` bytes starting at position `ByteIndex` will be converted.

Errors: In case of invalid bytes, an `EEncodingError` exception may be raised.

### 76.83.13 TEncoding.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage for this encoding

Declaration: `Property CodePage : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CodePage` is the numerical codepage for this encoding. It is a number as used in the Windows codepage registry.

See also: `TEncoding.EncodingName` ([1818](#))

### 76.83.14 TEncoding.EncodingName

Synopsis: Name of this encoding

Declaration: `Property EncodingName : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EncodingName` is the name for this encoding. It's based on the windows name for the encoding and is calculated from the codepage.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` ([1818](#))

### 76.83.15 TEncoding.IsSingleByte

Synopsis: Is the encoding a single-byte encoding or not ?

Declaration: `Property IsSingleByte : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsSingleByte` determines whether an encoding is single-byte or not. It is `false` for all standard encodings.

### 76.83.16 TEncoding.ANSI

Synopsis: Ansi encoding instance

Declaration: `Property ANSI : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ANSI` is the ANSI codepage encoding instance, it is the default single-byte string codepage on windows (as returned by `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1599)). This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.17 TEncoding.ASCII

Synopsis: ASCII encoding instance

Declaration: `Property ASCII : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ASCII` is the ASCII codepage (`CP_ASCII`) encoding instance. This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.18 TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode

Synopsis: Big-endian Unicode (UTF16BE) encoding instance

Declaration: `Property BigEndianUnicode : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BigEndianUnicode` is the Big-endian Unicode encoding instance (`CP_UTF16BE`) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.19 TEncoding.Default

Synopsis: Default codepage

Declaration: `Property Default : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `Default` is the default encoding instance (it equals the ANSI codepage). This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

if the `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1411) changes, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` (1814) to regenerate the default encoding using the new code page.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.20 `TEncoding.SystemEncoding`

**Declaration:** `Property SystemEncoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 76.83.21 `TEncoding.Unicode`

Synopsis: UTF16 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property Unicode : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `Unicode` is the Big-endian Unicode encoding instance (CP\_UTF16) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.22 `TEncoding.UTF7`

Synopsis: UTF7 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property UTF7 : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `UTF7` is the UTF7 encoding instance (CP\_UTF7) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1819), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1819), `TEncoding.Default` (1819), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1819), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1820), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1820)

### 76.83.23 `TEncoding.UTF8`

Synopsis: UTF8 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property UTF8 : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** UTF8 is the UTF7 encoding instance (CP\_UTF7) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), TEncoding.ANSI ([1819](#)), TEncoding.ASCII ([1819](#)), TEncoding.Default ([1819](#)), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode ([1819](#)), TEncoding.Unicode ([1820](#)), TEncoding.UTF7 ([1820](#))

## 76.84 TExtendedHelper

### 76.84.1 Description

TExtendedHelper is the helper type for the Extended-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a Extended.

See also: TDoubleHelper ([1808](#)), TExtendedHelper ([1821](#))

### 76.84.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method             | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1824</a> | BuildUp            | Build a Extended-sized floating point from its composing parts    |
| <a href="#">1825</a> | Exponent           | Exponent of the floating-point value                              |
| <a href="#">1825</a> | Fraction           | Fraction of the floating-point value                              |
| <a href="#">1823</a> | IsInfinity         | Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.           |
| <a href="#">1823</a> | IsNan              | Check whether a value equals NaN.                                 |
| <a href="#">1823</a> | IsNegativeInfinity | Check whether a value is negative infinity.                       |
| <a href="#">1824</a> | IsPositiveInfinity | Check whether a value is positive infinity.                       |
| <a href="#">1825</a> | Mantissa           | Mantissa of the floating-point                                    |
| <a href="#">1822</a> | Parse              | Convert a string to a floating point value                        |
| <a href="#">1824</a> | Size               | Size (in bytes) of a Extended-sized floating point value.         |
| <a href="#">1825</a> | SpecialType        | Return the type of the Extended-sized floating point value        |
| <a href="#">1821</a> | ToString           | Convert a Extended-sized floating point value to a string         |
| <a href="#">1822</a> | TryParse           | Try to convert a string to a Extended-sized floating point value. |

### 76.84.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description  |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1826</a> | Bytes      | rw     | Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value |
| <a href="#">1826</a> | Exp        | rw     | The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.               |
| <a href="#">1827</a> | Frac       | rw     | Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.                      |
| <a href="#">1826</a> | Sign       | rw     | Sign of the floating point value                                   |
| <a href="#">1826</a> | Words      | rw     | Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value  |

### 76.84.4 TExtendedHelper.ToString

**Synopsis:** Convert a Extended-sized floating point value to a string

**Declaration:**

```

class function ToString(const AValue: Extended) : string; Overload
; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
    const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
```

```

        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer;
        const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload
        ; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer;
        const ADigits: Integer;
        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload; Static
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)
        : string; Overload
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;
        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will convert `AValue` (or `Self` in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally `FormatSettings` can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision `APrecision` and number of digits `ADigits` can be specified, in conjunction with a `AFormat` parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see `TFloatFormat` (1620) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, `FloatToStrF` (1692) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, `FloatToStr` (1691) is called.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1691), `FloatToStrF` (1692), `TFloatFormat` (1620)

### 76.84.5 TExtendedHelper.Parse

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a floating point value

```

Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : Extended; Overload
                ; Static
class function Parse(const AString: string;
                const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended
                ; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a `Extended`-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

**Errors:** If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1691), `TExtendedHelper.ToString` (1821), `TExtendedHelper.TryParse` (1822)

### 76.84.6 TExtendedHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `Extended`-sized floating point value.

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Extended; const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Extended`-sized floating point value and reports `True` if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in `AValue`. If the conversion failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Parse` ([1822](#)), `TExtendedHelper.ToString` ([1821](#))

### 76.84.7 TExtendedHelper.IsNan

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value equals NaN.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNan(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsNan : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNan` checks whether a `Extended`-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity` ([1823](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1824](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1823](#))

### 76.84.8 TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a `Extended`-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsNan` ([1823](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1824](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1823](#))

### 76.84.9 TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsNegativeInfinity` checks whether a `Extended`-sized floating point value represents a negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsNan` ([1823](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1824](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity` ([1823](#))

## 76.84.10 TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive infinity.

```
Declaration: class function IsPositiveInfinity(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean
                                                    ; Overload; Static
function IsPositiveInfinity : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsPositiveInfinity` checks whether a Extended-sized floating point value represents a positive infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsNan` ([1823](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1823](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity` ([1823](#))

## 76.84.11 TExtendedHelper.Size

**Synopsis:** Size (in bytes) of a Extended-sized floating point value.

**Declaration:** class function Size : Integer; Static

Visibility: public

**Description:** *Size* is the size (in bytes) of a Extended-sized floating point value. It is equivalent to calling `SizeOf(Extended)`.

See also: [SizeOf \(1539\)](#)

## 76.84.12 TExtendedHelper.BuildUp

## Synopsis: Build a Extended-sized floating point from its composing parts

```
Declaration: procedure BuildUp(const ASignFlag: Boolean; const AMantissa: QWord;
                               const AExponent: Integer)
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** BuildUp will compose a Extended-sized floating point value from the sign ASignFlag, mantissa AMantissa and exponent AExponent. It simply sets the Sign (1826), Exp (1826) and Frac (1827) properties in 1 call.

See also: TExtendedHelper.Sign (1826), TExtendedHelper.Exp (1826), TExtendedHelper.Frac (1827)

**76.84.13 TExtendedHelper.Exponent**

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \times 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1827), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` (1825), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` (1825)

**76.84.14 TExtendedHelper.Fraction**

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` (1825), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1827), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` (1825)

**76.84.15 TExtendedHelper.Mantissa**

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating-point

Declaration: `function Mantissa : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `Mantissa` is the value of the significand without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` (1825), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1827), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` (1825)

**76.84.16 TExtendedHelper.SpecialType**

Synopsis: Return the type of the Extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` checks whether the Extended-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` (1599) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` (1599)

**76.84.17 TExtendedHelper.Bytes**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Extended-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Words` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Size` ([1824](#))

**76.84.18 TExtendedHelper.Words**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Extended-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Size` ([1824](#))

**76.84.19 TExtendedHelper.Sign**

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` ([1827](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` ([1825](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` ([1825](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` ([1825](#))

**76.84.20 TExtendedHelper.Exp**

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent ([1825](#)).

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Sign` ([1826](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` ([1827](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` ([1825](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` ([1825](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` ([1825](#))

### 76.84.21 TExtendedHelper.Frac

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1826), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` (1825), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` (1825), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` (1825)

## 76.85 TGuidHelper

### 76.85.1 Description

`TGuidHelper` provides various methods for a `TGUID` (1599) type.

See also: `TGUID` (1599)

### 76.85.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1827</a> | <code>Create</code>      | Initialize a <code>TGUID</code> instance from data. |
| <a href="#">1828</a> | <code>NewGuid</code>     | Create a new <code>GUID</code>                      |
| <a href="#">1828</a> | <code>ToByteArray</code> | Convert to array of bytes                           |
| <a href="#">1828</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert to string                                   |

### 76.85.3 TGuidHelper.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a `TGUID` instance from data.

```

Declaration: class function Create(const Data; BigEndian: Boolean) : TGUID; Overload
              ; Static
class function Create(const Data: Array of Byte; AStartIndex: Cardinal;
                    BigEndian: Boolean) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(const Data; DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID
              ; Overload; Static
class function Create(const B: TBytes; DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID
              ; Overload; Static
class function Create(const B: TBytes; AStartIndex: Cardinal;
                    DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(const S: string) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Integer; B: SmallInt; C: SmallInt;
                    const D: TBytes) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Integer; B: SmallInt; C: SmallInt; D: Byte;
                    E: Byte; F: Byte; G: Byte; H: Byte; I: Byte;
                    J: Byte; K: Byte) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Cardinal; B: Word; C: Word; D: Byte; E: Byte;
                    F: Byte; G: Byte; H: Byte; I: Byte; J: Byte;
                    K: Byte) : TGUID; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` will initialize a `TGUID` ([1599](#)) from byte data. The byte-data can come in different forms

**Data** can be a plain buffer. The GUID Data will be read from the buffer (`SizeOf(TGUID)` bytes), according to the `BigEndian` argument.

**Data** can be an array of bytes. `SizeOf(TGUID)` bytes will be read from the array, starting at index `StartIndex` (default 0). The GUID Data will be read according to the `BigEndian` argument.

**Scan** can be a string containing a string representation of the GUID, which is converted using `StringToGUID` ([1737](#)).

**A,B,C,D (optionally E,F,G,H,I,J,K)** where the arguments are simply the various components of the GUID.

See also: `TGUID` ([1599](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1737](#))

#### 76.85.4 TGUIDHelper.NewGuid

Synopsis: Create a new GUID

Declaration: `class function NewGuid : TGUID; Static`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewGUID` creates and returns a new (??) using `CreateGUID` ([1655](#))

See also: `CreateGUID` ([1655](#))

#### 76.85.5 TGUIDHelper.ToByteArray

Synopsis: Convert to array of bytes

Declaration: `function ToByteArray(DataEndian: TEndian) : TBytes`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToByteArray` converts the `TGUID` to an array of bytes (of length `SizeOf(TGUID)`). The bytes will be ordered according to `DataEndian`.

See also: `TGUIDHelper.ToString` ([1828](#)), `TGUIDHelper.Create` ([1827](#))

#### 76.85.6 TGUIDHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert to string

Declaration: `function ToString(SkipBrackets: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToString` will convert the `TGUID` to a string representation, using `GUIDToString` ([1714](#))

See also: `GUIDToString` ([1714](#))

## 76.86 TInt64Helper

### 76.86.1 Description

`TInt64Helper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `Int64`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1845](#))

### 76.86.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1832</a> | <code>ClearBit</code>    |   |
| <a href="#">1829</a> | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string   |
| <a href="#">1831</a> | <code>SetBit</code>      |   |
| <a href="#">1829</a> | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the <code>Int64</code> value                             |
| <a href="#">1832</a> | <code>TestBit</code>     |   |
| <a href="#">1831</a> | <code>ToBinString</code> |   |
| <a href="#">1830</a> | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value  |
| <a href="#">1830</a> | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                              |
| <a href="#">1831</a> | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                           |
| <a href="#">1832</a> | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |   |
| <a href="#">1831</a> | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                              |
| <a href="#">1831</a> | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                              |
| <a href="#">1830</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string   |
| <a href="#">1830</a> | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a <code>Int64</code> , report success or failure |

### 76.86.3 TInt64Helper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Int64; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `Int64` value. It uses the `StrToInt64` ([1752](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid `Int64` value, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1830](#)), `TInt64Helper.TryParse` ([1830](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1752](#))

### 76.86.4 TInt64Helper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the `Int64` value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Size` returns the size (in `Int64`s) of the `Int64` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Int64)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

### 76.86.5 TInt64Helper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Int64) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `Int64` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TInt64Helper.Parse` (1829), `IntToStr` (1718)

### 76.86.6 TInt64Helper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `Int64`, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Int64)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Int64`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `Int64` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1599) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TInt64Helper.Parse` (1829), `Val` (1562)

### 76.86.7 TInt64Helper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `Int64` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToString` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` (1831)

### 76.86.8 TInt64Helper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Int64` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToString` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` (1831)

**76.86.9 TInt64Helper.ToExtended**

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Int64` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToString` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` (1831)

**76.86.10 TInt64Helper.ToBinString**

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

**76.86.11 TInt64Helper.ToHexString**

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `Int64` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToString` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` (1831)

**76.86.12 TInt64Helper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `Int64` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` (1831), `TInt64Helper.ToString` (1830), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` (1831)

**76.86.13 TInt64Helper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: public

**76.86.14 TInt64Helper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

**76.86.15 TInt64Helper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

**76.86.16 TInt64Helper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**76.87 TIntIntegerHelper****76.87.1 Description**

`TIntegerHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a Integer-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1845](#))

**76.87.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1835</a> | <code>ClearBit</code>    |   |
| <a href="#">1833</a> | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string   |
| <a href="#">1835</a> | <code>SetBit</code>      |   |
| <a href="#">1832</a> | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the Integer value                            |
| <a href="#">1835</a> | <code>TestBit</code>     |   |
| <a href="#">1834</a> | <code>ToBinString</code> |   |
| <a href="#">1834</a> | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value                                      |
| <a href="#">1834</a> | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                  |
| <a href="#">1834</a> | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value               |
| <a href="#">1835</a> | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |   |
| <a href="#">1834</a> | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                  |
| <a href="#">1835</a> | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                  |
| <a href="#">1833</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string                                     |
| <a href="#">1833</a> | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a Integer, report success or failure |

**76.87.3 TIntIntegerHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the Integer value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in Integers) of the Integer value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Integer)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1539\)](#)

## 76.87.4 IntegerHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: Integer) : string; Overload
                ; Static
                function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will, in the class function variant of this method, convert AValue to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of ToString, the Integer value itself is used. The IntToStr (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.Parse \(1833\)](#), [IntToStr \(1718\)](#)

### 76.87.5 TIntegerHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string AString to a Integer value. It uses the StrToInt (1751) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid Integer value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.ToString \(1833\)](#), [TIntegerHelper.TryParse \(1833\)](#), [StrToInt \(1751\)](#)

## 76.87.6 TIntegerHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a Integer, report success or failure

```
Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Integer)
                                         : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a Integer, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then True is returned, and the actual value of the Integer is returned in AValue.

It uses the `val (1599)` function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.Parse \(1833\)](#), [Val \(1562\)](#)

### 76.87.7 TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `Integer` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1833), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1834)

### 76.87.8 TIntegerHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Integer` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1833), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1834)

### 76.87.9 TIntegerHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Integer` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1833), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1834)

### 76.87.10 TIntegerHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: `public`

### 76.87.11 TIntegerHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `Integer` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1834), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1833), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1834)

**76.87.12 TIntegerHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the Integer value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` ([1834](#)), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` ([1834](#)), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` ([1834](#)), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` ([1833](#)), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` ([1834](#))

**76.87.13 TIntegerHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.14 TIntegerHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.15 TIntegerHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.16 TIntegerHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.88 TLongBoolHelper****76.88.1 Description**

`TLongBoolHelper` is a helper type for the `LongBool` type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TByteBoolHelper` ([1800](#)), `TWordBoolHelper` ([1896](#)), `TLongBoolHelper` ([1835](#))

### 76.88.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                  | Description                                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1836</a> | <code>Parse</code>      | Convert string value to LongBool value.     |
| <a href="#">1836</a> | <code>Size</code>       | Return the size (in bytes) of the           |
| <a href="#">1837</a> | <code>ToInteger</code>  | Convert to an integer value                 |
| <a href="#">1836</a> | <code>ToString</code>   | Convert a LongBool value to string.         |
| <a href="#">1837</a> | <code>TryToParse</code> | Try to convert a string to a LongBool value |

### 76.88.3 TLongBoolHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to LongBool value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Parse` attempts to convert the string `S` to a LongBool value. It uses the `StrToBool` ([1746](#)) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid string representation, then an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse` ([1837](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1836](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger` ([1837](#))

### 76.88.4 TLongBoolHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the LongBool value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(LongBool)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

### 76.88.5 TLongBoolHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a LongBool value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
                                  UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
                                  ; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` LongBool to a string representation. In the function method version the LongBool value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the LongBool strings `BoolStrs` ([1599](#)). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` ([1648](#)) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` ([1599](#)), `BoolToStr` ([1648](#))

### 76.88.6 TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a LongBool value

Declaration: `class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryToParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a LongBool value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TLongBoolHelper.Parse` ([1836](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1836](#))

### 76.88.7 TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the LongBool value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1836](#))

## 76.89 TMBCSEncoding

### 76.89.1 Description

`TMBCSEncoding` is the encoding class used for most of the encodings, except the actual Unicode encodings. The codepage is specified during creation, and is by default the system codepage.

The name is somewhat misleading, since the MBCS is also used for single-byte encodings.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1887](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1894](#)), `TUTF7Encoding` ([1893](#)), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` ([1797](#))

### 76.89.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1838</a> | <code>Clone</code>           | Clone a <code>TMBCSEncoding</code> instance                                  |
| <a href="#">1837</a> | <code>Create</code>          | Create a new instance of a multi-byte character set encoding                 |
| <a href="#">1838</a> | <code>GetMaxByteCount</code> | Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string                      |
| <a href="#">1838</a> | <code>GetMaxCharCount</code> | Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes |
| <a href="#">1838</a> | <code>GetPreamble</code>     | Return BOM marker bytes  |

### 76.89.3 TMBCSEncoding.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a multi-byte character set encoding

Declaration: `constructor Create; Virtual; Overload  
constructor Create(ACodePage: Integer); Virtual; Overload  
constructor Create(ACodePage: Integer; MBToWCharFlags: Integer;  
WCharToMBCFlags: Integer); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the multi-byte character set encoding. The `ACodePage` parameter is optional, and defaults to `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1599).

The `MBToWCharFlags` and `WCharToMBFlags` parameters are stored but are otherwise unused in the Free Pascal implementation of `TMBCSEncoding`

#### 76.89.4 `TMBCSEncoding.Clone`

Synopsis: Clone a `TMBCSEncoding` instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` (1815) to provide a clone of the `TMBCSEncoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` (1815)

#### 76.89.5 `TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxByteCount`

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount (CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMaxByteCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1817)

#### 76.89.6 `TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxCharCount`

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount (ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMaxCharCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1817)

#### 76.89.7 `TMBCSEncoding.GetPreamble`

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817) to return the BOM Marker bytes (none, for this implementation).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817)

## 76.90 TMREWException

## 76.91 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer

### 76.91.1 Description

`TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` is a default implementation of the `IReadWriteSync` (1792) interface. It uses a single mutex to protect access to the read/write resource, resulting in a single thread having access to the resource.

See also: `IReadWriteSync` (1792)

### 76.91.2 Interfaces overview

| Page | Interfaces                  | Description             |
|------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1792 | <code>IReadWriteSync</code> | Read/Write synchronizer |

### 76.91.3 Method overview

| Page | Method                  | Description  |
|------|-------------------------|--|
| 1840 | <code>Beginread</code>  | Request read access to the resource  |
| 1840 | <code>Beginwrite</code> | Request write access to the resource.  |
| 1839 | <code>Create</code>     | Create a new instance of the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> class |
| 1840 | <code>Destroy</code>    | Destroys the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> instance              |
| 1841 | <code>Endread</code>    | Release read access to the resource  |
| 1840 | <code>Endwrite</code>   | Release write access to the resource   |

### 76.91.4 Property overview

| Page | Properties                  | Access | Description |
|------|-----------------------------|--------|-------------|
| 1841 | <code>RevisionLevel</code>  | r      |             |
| 1841 | <code>WriterThreadID</code> | r      |             |

### 76.91.5 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of the `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` class

**Declaration:** `constructor Create; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer`. It initializes a `TRTLCriticalSection`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRTLCriticalSection` (1392)

### 76.91.6 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create destroys the instance of TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer. It frees the TRTLCriticalSection it initialized, and calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: None.

See also: TRTLCriticalSection ([1392](#))

### 76.91.7 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite

Synopsis: Request write access to the resource.

Declaration: `function Beginwrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite. It simply enters the critical section, and returns True.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite ([1793](#)), EndWrite ([1840](#))

### 76.91.8 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite

Synopsis: Release write access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endwrite`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.EndWrite. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.EndWrite ([1793](#)), BeginWrite ([1840](#))

### 76.91.9 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread

Synopsis: Request read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Beginread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: BeginRead is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginRead. It simply attempts to enter the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.BeginRead ([1792](#)), EndRead ([1841](#))

### 76.91.10 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread

Synopsis: Release read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndRead` is the implementation of `IReadWriteSync.EndRead`. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1792](#)), `BeginRead` ([1840](#))

### 76.91.11 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.RevisionLevel

Declaration: `Property RevisionLevel : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

### 76.91.12 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.WriterThreadID

Declaration: `Property WriterThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 76.92 TNativeIntHelper

### 76.92.1 Description

`TNativeIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `NativeInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1848](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#))

## 76.92.2 Method overview

| Page | Method      | Description   |
|------|-------------|---|
| 1844 | ClearBit    |   |
| 1842 | Parse       | Convert from a string   |
| 1844 | SetBit      |   |
| 1842 | Size        | Size, in bytes, of the NativeInt value                            |
| 1845 | TestBit     |   |
| 1844 | ToBinString |   |
| 1843 | ToBoolean   | Convert to a boolean value  |
| 1843 | ToDouble    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                    |
| 1843 | ToExtended  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                 |
| 1845 | ToggleBit   |   |
| 1844 | ToHexString | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                    |
| 1844 | ToSingle    | Convert to an single-sized floating point value                   |
| 1842 | ToString    | Convert the value to string                                       |
| 1843 | TryParse    | Try to convert a string to a NativeInt, report success or failure |

### 76.92.3 TNativeIntHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : NativeInt; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `NativeInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` (1751) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid NativeInt value, an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: [TNativeIntHelper.ToString \(1842\)](#), [TNativeIntHelper.TryParse \(1843\)](#), [StrToInt \(1751\)](#)

#### 76.92.4 TNativeIntHelper.Size

**Synopsis:** Size, in bytes, of the NativeInt value

```
Declaration: class function Size : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in `NativeInts`) of the `NativeInt` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(NativeInt)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1539\)](#)

### 76.92.5 TNativeIntHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: NativeInt) : string; Overload
                ; Static
                function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `NativeInt` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.Parse` (1842), `IntToStr` (1718)

### 76.92.6 TNativeIntHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `NativeInt`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: NativeInt) : Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `NativeInt`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `NativeInt` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1599) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.Parse` (1842), `Val` (1562)

### 76.92.7 TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `NativeInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` (1844), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` (1843), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` (1843), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` (1842), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` (1844)

### 76.92.8 TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `NativeInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` (1843), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` (1844), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` (1842), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` (1844)

### 76.92.9 TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `NativeInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1844](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1842](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1844](#))

### 76.92.10 `TNativeIntHelper.ToBinString`

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.92.11 `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString`

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the `NativeInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1844](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1842](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1843](#))

### 76.92.12 `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the `NativeInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1843](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1842](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1844](#))

### 76.92.13 `TNativeIntHelper.SetBit`

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

Visibility: public

### 76.92.14 `TNativeIntHelper.ClearBit`

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

Visibility: public

**76.92.15 TNativeIntHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.92.16 TNativeIntHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.93 TNativeUIntHelper****76.93.1 Description**

`NativeUInt` contains some auxiliary routines for a `NativeUInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1866), `TShortIntHelper` (1851), `TSmallIntHelper` (1863), `TWordHelper` (1897), `TCardinalHelper` (1805), `TIntegerHelper` (1832), `TInt64Helper` (1829), `TQWordHelper` (1848), `TNativeIntHelper` (1841), `TByteHelper` (1801)

**76.93.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method                   | Description  |
|------|--------------------------|--|
| 1848 | <code>ClearBit</code>    |  |
| 1845 | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string  |
| 1848 | <code>SetBit</code>      |  |
| 1846 | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the <code>NativeUInt</code> value                             |
| 1848 | <code>TestBit</code>     |  |
| 1847 | <code>ToBinString</code> |  |
| 1846 | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value   |
| 1847 | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                                   |
| 1847 | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                                |
| 1848 | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |  |
| 1847 | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                                   |
| 1847 | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                                   |
| 1846 | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string  |
| 1846 | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a <code>NativeUInt</code> , report success or failure |

**76.93.3 TNativeUIntHelper.Parse**

**Synopsis:** Convert from a string

**Declaration:** `class function Parse(const AString: string) : NativeUInt; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `NativeUInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` (1751) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid `NativeUInt` value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception is raised.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse` (1846), `StrToInt` (1751)

### 76.93.4 TNativeUIntHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the NativeUInt value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in NativeUInts) of the NativeUInt value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (NativeUInt)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

### 76.93.5 TNativeUIntHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: NativeUInt) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the NativeUInt value itself is used. The `IntToStr` ([1718](#)) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.Parse` ([1845](#)), `IntToStr` ([1718](#))

### 76.93.6 TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a NativeUInt, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: NativeUInt)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a NativeUInt, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the NativeUInt is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` ([1599](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.Parse` ([1845](#)), `Val` ([1562](#))

### 76.93.7 TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the NativeUInt value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1847](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1847](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1847](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` ([1846](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1847](#))

### 76.93.8 TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1847)

### 76.93.9 TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `NativeUInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1847)

### 76.93.10 TNativeUIntHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.93.11 TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1847)

### 76.93.12 TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1847), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1846), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1847)

**76.93.13 TNativeUIntHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.14 TNativeUIntHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.15 TNativeUIntHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.16 TNativeUIntHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.94 TQWordHelper****76.94.1 Description**

`TQWordHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `QWord`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1866](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1851](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1863](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1897](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1805](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1832](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1829](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1801](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1841](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1845](#))

**76.94.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1851</a> | <code>ClearBit</code>    |   |
| <a href="#">1849</a> | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string   |
| <a href="#">1851</a> | <code>SetBit</code>      |   |
| <a href="#">1849</a> | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the <code>QWord</code> value                             |
| <a href="#">1851</a> | <code>TestBit</code>     |   |
| <a href="#">1850</a> | <code>ToBinString</code> |   |
| <a href="#">1850</a> | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value  |
| <a href="#">1850</a> | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                              |
| <a href="#">1850</a> | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                           |
| <a href="#">1851</a> | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |   |
| <a href="#">1850</a> | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                              |
| <a href="#">1851</a> | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                              |
| <a href="#">1849</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string   |
| <a href="#">1849</a> | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a <code>QWord</code> , report success or failure |

### 76.94.3 TQWordHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

**Declaration:** `class function Parse(const AString: string) : QWord; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `QWord` value. It uses the `StrToQWord` (1753) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid QWord value, an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: [TQWordHelper.ToString \(1849\)](#), [TQWordHelper.TryParse \(1849\)](#), [StrToQWord \(1753\)](#)

#### 76.94.4 TQWordHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the QWord value

```
Declaration: class function Size : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in QWords) of the QWord value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (QWord)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1539\)](#)

### 76.94.5 TQWordHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: QWord) : string; Overload
                ; Static
                function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will, in the class function variant of this method, convert AValue to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of ToString, the QWord value itself is used. The IntToStr (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: [TQWordHelper.Parse \(1849\)](#), [IntToStr \(1718\)](#)

## 76.94.6 TQWordHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a QWord, report success or failure

```
Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: QWord)
                                     : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a QWord, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then True is returned, and the actual value of the QWord is returned in AValue.

It uses the `val (1599)` function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: [TQWordHelper.Parse \(1849\)](#), [Val \(1562\)](#)

**76.94.7 TQWordHelper.ToBoolean**

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `QWord` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1851](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1849](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1850](#))

**76.94.8 TQWordHelper.ToDouble**

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `QWord` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1851](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1849](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1850](#))

**76.94.9 TQWordHelper.ToExtended**

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `QWord` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1851](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1849](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1850](#))

**76.94.10 TQWordHelper.ToBinString**

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: `public`

**76.94.11 TQWordHelper.ToHexString**

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `QWord` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1851](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1850](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1849](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1850](#))

**76.94.12 TQWordHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `QWord` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` (1850), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` (1850), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` (1850), `TQWordHelper.ToString` (1849), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` (1850)

**76.94.13 TQWordHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.14 TQWordHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.15 TQWordHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.16 TQWordHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.95 TShortIntHelper****76.95.1 Description**

`TShortIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `ShortInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1866), `TByteHelper` (1801), `TSmallIntHelper` (1863), `TWordHelper` (1897), `TCardinalHelper` (1805), `TIntegerHelper` (1832), `TInt64Helper` (1829), `TQWordHelper` (1848), `TNativeIntHelper` (1841), `TNativeUIntHelper` (1845)

## 76.95.2 Method overview

| Page | Method      | Description  |
|------|-------------|--|
| 1854 | ClearBit    |  |
| 1852 | Parse       | Convert from a string  |
| 1854 | SetBit      |  |
| 1852 | Size        | Size, in bytes, of the ShortInt value                            |
| 1855 | TestBit     |  |
| 1854 | ToBinString |  |
| 1853 | ToBoolean   | Convert to a boolean value                                       |
| 1853 | ToDouble    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                   |
| 1853 | ToExtended  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                |
| 1855 | ToggleBit   |  |
| 1854 | ToHexString | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                   |
| 1854 | ToSingle    | Convert to an single-sized floating point value                  |
| 1852 | ToString    | Convert the value to string                                      |
| 1853 | TryParse    | Try to convert a string to a ShortInt, report success or failure |

### 76.95.3 TShortIntHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : ShortInt; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `ShortInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` (1751) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid ShortInt value, an EConvertError (1781) exception is raised.

See also: [TShortIntHelper.ToString \(1852\)](#), [TShortIntHelper.TryParse \(1853\)](#), [StrToInt \(1751\)](#)

## 76.95.4 TShortIntHelper.Size

**Synopsis:** Size, in bytes, of the ShortInt value

**Declaration:** class function Size : Integer; Static

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in `ShortInts`) of the `ShortInt` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Byte)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1539\)](#)

### 76.95.5 TShortIntHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: ShortInt) : string; Overload
              ; Static
              function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `ShortInt` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.Parse` (1852), `IntToStr` (1718)

### 76.95.6 TShortIntHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `ShortInt`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: ShortInt) : Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `ShortInt`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `ShortInt` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1599) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.Parse` (1852), `Val` (1562)

### 76.95.7 TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `ShortInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1854), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` (1853), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1853), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1852), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1854)

### 76.95.8 TShortIntHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `ShortInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1853), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1853), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1854), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1852), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1854)

### 76.95.9 TShortIntHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `ShortInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1854](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` ([1852](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1854](#))

### 76.95.10 TShortIntHelper.ToBinString

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.95.11 TShortIntHelper.ToHexString

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the `ShortInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1854](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` ([1852](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1853](#))

### 76.95.12 TShortIntHelper.ToSingle

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the `ShortInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1853](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` ([1852](#)), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1854](#))

### 76.95.13 TShortIntHelper.SetBit

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.95.14 TShortIntHelper.ClearBit

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.95.15 TShortIntHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.95.16 TShortIntHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.96 TSimpleRWSync****76.96.1 Description**

`TSimpleRWSync` implements a simple read/write locking mechanism. It controls access to an object: only a single thread is allowed access to an object for either read or write operations.

Access is controlled through a single critical section.

See also: `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` ([1839](#))

**76.96.2 Interfaces overview**

| Page                 | Interfaces                  | Description             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <a href="#">1792</a> | <code>IReadWriteSync</code> | Read/Write synchronizer |

**76.96.3 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                  | Description   |
|----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1856</a> | <code>Beginread</code>  | Acquire a read lock   |
| <a href="#">1856</a> | <code>Beginwrite</code> | Acquire a write lock  |
| <a href="#">1855</a> | <code>Create</code>     | Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleRWSync</code>         |
| <a href="#">1856</a> | <code>Destroy</code>    | Removes the <code>TSimpleRWSync</code> instance from memory |
| <a href="#">1857</a> | <code>Endread</code>    | Release the read lock                                       |
| <a href="#">1856</a> | <code>Endwrite</code>   | Release the write lock                                      |

**76.96.4 TSimpleRWSync.Create**

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of `TSimpleRWSync`

**Declaration:** `constructor Create; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` allocates a new instance of `TSimpleRWSync` and initializes the critical section for use in the various methods.

See also: `TSimpleRWSync.Destroy` ([1856](#))

### 76.96.5 TSimpleRWSync.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the TSimpleRWSync instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the critical section and removes the TSimpleRWSync instance from memory.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.Create ([1855](#))

### 76.96.6 TSimpleRWSync.Beginwrite

Synopsis: Acquire a write lock

Declaration: `function Beginwrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Beginwrite` waits till all other threads have released their read or write locks on the object, and then acquires a write lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginRead ([1856](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndWrite ([1856](#))

### 76.96.7 TSimpleRWSync.Endwrite

Synopsis: Release the write lock

Declaration: `procedure Endwrite`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndWrite` releases the current threads lock on the object, allowing other threads to acquire a read or write lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginWrite ([1856](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndRead ([1857](#))

### 76.96.8 TSimpleRWSync.Beginread

Synopsis: Acquire a read lock

Declaration: `procedure Beginread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginRead` waits till all other threads have released their read or write locks on the object, and then acquires a read lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginWrite ([1856](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndRead ([1857](#))

### 76.96.9 TSimpleRWSync.Endread

Synopsis: Release the read lock

Declaration: `procedure Endread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndRead` releases the current threads read lock on the object, allowing other threads to acquire a read or write lock on the object.

See also: `TSimpleRWSync.BeginRead` ([1856](#)), `TSimpleRWSync.EndWrite` ([1856](#))

## 76.97 TSingleHelper

### 76.97.1 Description

`TSingleHelper` is the helper type for the single-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a single.

See also: `TDoubleHelper` ([1808](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1821](#))

### 76.97.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                          | Description   |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">1860</a> | <code>BuildUp</code>            | Build a single-sized floating point from its composing parts    |
| <a href="#">1861</a> | <code>Exponent</code>           | Exponent of the floating-point value                            |
| <a href="#">1861</a> | <code>Fraction</code>           | Fraction of the floating-point value                            |
| <a href="#">1858</a> | <code>IsInfinity</code>         | Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.         |
| <a href="#">1857</a> | <code>IsNan</code>              | Check whether a value equals NaN.                               |
| <a href="#">1858</a> | <code>IsNegativeInfinity</code> | Check whether a value is negative infinity.                     |
| <a href="#">1858</a> | <code>IsPositiveInfinity</code> | Check whether a value is positive infinity.                     |
| <a href="#">1861</a> | <code>Mantissa</code>           | Mantissa of the floating-point                                  |
| <a href="#">1859</a> | <code>Parse</code>              | Convert a string to a floating point value                      |
| <a href="#">1859</a> | <code>Size</code>               | Size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value.         |
| <a href="#">1861</a> | <code>SpecialType</code>        | Return the type of the single-sized floating point value        |
| <a href="#">1859</a> | <code>ToString</code>           | Convert a single-sized floating point value to a string         |
| <a href="#">1860</a> | <code>TryParse</code>           | Try to convert a string to a single-sized floating point value. |

### 76.97.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties         | Access          | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--|
| <a href="#">1862</a> | <code>Bytes</code> | <code>rw</code> | Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value |
| <a href="#">1862</a> | <code>Exp</code>   | <code>rw</code> | The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.               |
| <a href="#">1863</a> | <code>Frac</code>  | <code>rw</code> | Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.                      |
| <a href="#">1862</a> | <code>Sign</code>  | <code>rw</code> | Sign of the floating point value                                   |
| <a href="#">1862</a> | <code>Words</code> | <code>rw</code> | Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value  |

### 76.97.4 TSingleHelper.IsNan

Synopsis: Check whether a value equals NaN.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNan(const AValue: Single) : Boolean; Overload; Static  
function IsNan : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNan` checks whether a single-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` ([1858](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1858](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1858](#))

### 76.97.5 TSingleHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean; Overload  
; Static  
function IsInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.IsNan` ([1857](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1858](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1858](#))

### 76.97.6 TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNegativeInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.IsNan` ([1857](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1858](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` ([1858](#))

### 76.97.7 TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsPositiveInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsPositiveInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsPositiveInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a positive infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.IsNan` ([1857](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1858](#)), `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` ([1858](#))

### 76.97.8 TSingleHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert a string to a floating point value

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Single; Overload; Static`  
`class function Parse(const AString: string;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Single`  
`; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a single-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

Errors: If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` ([1691](#)), `TSingleHelper.ToString` ([1859](#)), `TSingleHelper.TryParse` ([1860](#))

### 76.97.9 TSingleHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value.

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` is the size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value. It is equivalent to calling `SizeOf(Single)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

### 76.97.10 TSingleHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a single-sized floating point value to a string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Single) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`  
`; Overload; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer;`  
`const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer;`  
`const ADigits: Integer;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`  
`; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)`  
`: string; Overload`  
`function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`

```

        const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;
        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will convert AValue (or Self in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally FormatSettings can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision APrecision and number of digits ADigits can be specified, in conjunction with a AFormat parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see TFloatFormat (1620) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, FloatToStrF (1692) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, FloatToStr (1691) is called.

See also: FloatToStr (1691), FloatToStrF (1692), TFloatFormat (1620)

### 76.97.11 TSingleHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a single-sized floating point value.

```

Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Single)
                : Boolean; Overload; Static
        class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Single;
                const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
                ; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a single-sized floating point value and reports True if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in AValue.

If the conversion failed, False is returned.

See also: TSingleHelper.Parse (1859), TSingleHelper.ToString (1859)

### 76.97.12 TSingleHelper.BuildUp

**Synopsis:** Build a single-sized floating point from its composing parts

```

Declaration: procedure BuildUp(const ASignFlag: Boolean; const AMantissa: QWord;
                const AExponent: Integer)

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** BuildUp will compose a single-sized floating point value from the sign ASignFlag, mantissa AMantissa and exponent AExponent. It simply sets the Sign (1862), Exp (1862) and Frac (1863) properties in 1 call.

See also: TSingleHelper.Sign (1862), TSingleHelper.Exp (1862), TSingleHelper.Frac (1863)

**76.97.13 TSingleHelper.Exponent**

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \cdot 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1863](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1861](#))

**76.97.14 TSingleHelper.Fraction**

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1863](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1861](#))

**76.97.15 TSingleHelper.Mantissa**

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating-point

Declaration: `function Mantissa : QWord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Mantissa` is the value of the significant without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1863](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1861](#))

**76.97.16 TSingleHelper.SpecialType**

Synopsis: Return the type of the single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SpecialType` checks whether the single-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1599](#)) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` ([1599](#))

### 76.97.17 TSingleHelper.Bytes

Synopsis: Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the single-sized floating point value.  
The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Words` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Size` ([1859](#))

### 76.97.18 TSingleHelper.Words

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the single-sized floating point value.  
The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Size` ([1859](#))

### 76.97.19 TSingleHelper.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1863](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1861](#))

### 76.97.20 TSingleHelper.Exp

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent ([1861](#)).

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1862](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1863](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1861](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1861](#))

### 76.97.21 TSingleHelper.Frac

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: [TSingleHelper.Bytes \(1862\)](#), [TSingleHelper.Sign \(1862\)](#), [TSingleHelper.Exp \(1862\)](#), [TSingleHelper.Mantissa \(1861\)](#), [TSingleHelper.Fraction \(1861\)](#), [TSingleHelper.Exponent \(1861\)](#)

## 76.98 TSmallIntHelper

### 76.98.1 Description

`TSmallIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `SmallInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: [TStringHelper \(1866\)](#), [TShortIntHelper \(1851\)](#), [TByteHelper \(1801\)](#), [TWordHelper \(1897\)](#), [TCardinalHelper \(1805\)](#), [TIntegerHelper \(1832\)](#), [TInt64Helper \(1829\)](#), [TQWordHelper \(1848\)](#), [TNativeIntHelper \(1841\)](#), [TNativeUIntHelper \(1845\)](#)

### 76.98.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1866</a> | <code>ClearBit</code>    |  |
| <a href="#">1863</a> | <code>Parse</code>       | Convert from a string  |
| <a href="#">1866</a> | <code>SetBit</code>      |  |
| <a href="#">1864</a> | <code>Size</code>        | Size, in bytes, of the <code>SmallInt</code> value                             |
| <a href="#">1866</a> | <code>TestBit</code>     |  |
| <a href="#">1865</a> | <code>ToBinString</code> |  |
| <a href="#">1865</a> | <code>ToBoolean</code>   | Convert to a boolean value   |
| <a href="#">1865</a> | <code>ToDouble</code>    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value                                 |
| <a href="#">1866</a> | <code>ToExtended</code>  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value                              |
| <a href="#">1866</a> | <code>ToggleBit</code>   |  |
| <a href="#">1865</a> | <code>ToHexString</code> | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation                                 |
| <a href="#">1865</a> | <code>ToSingle</code>    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value                                 |
| <a href="#">1864</a> | <code>ToString</code>    | Convert the value to string  |
| <a href="#">1864</a> | <code>TryParse</code>    | Try to convert a string to a <code>SmallInt</code> , report success or failure |

### 76.98.3 TSmallIntHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : SmallInt; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `SmallInt` value. It uses the [StrToInt \(1751\)](#) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.



### 76.98.7 TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `SmallInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1866), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1864), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1865)

### 76.98.8 TSmallIntHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.98.9 TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `SmallInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1864), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1866)

### 76.98.10 TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `SmallInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1866), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1864), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1865)

### 76.98.11 TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `SmallInt` value to a double-sized floating point value

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1866), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1865), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1864), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1865)

### 76.98.12 TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `SmallInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1865](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1865](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1865](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` ([1864](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1865](#))

### 76.98.13 TSmallIntHelper.SetBit

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: public

### 76.98.14 TSmallIntHelper.ClearBit

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: public

### 76.98.15 TSmallIntHelper.ToggleBit

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: public

### 76.98.16 TSmallIntHelper.TestBit

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

## 76.99 TStringHelper

### 76.99.1 Description

`TStringHelper` adds various helper routines to the string type. These are mostly conversion routines, and some formatting routines.

For similarity to C-like languages, all the indexes in these helper routines are zero based.

See also: `TGUIDHelper` ([1827](#))



**76.99.2 Method overview**

| Page | Method             | Description   |
|------|--------------------|---|
| 1869 | Compare            | Compare 2 strings   |
| 1870 | CompareOrdinal     | Compare 2 strings byte for byte   |
| 1870 | CompareText        | Compare 2 strings case insensitively.                                     |
| 1876 | CompareTo          | Compare string to another   |
| 1876 | Contains           | Check if the string contains another                                      |
| 1870 | Copy               | Return a unique copy of a string  |
| 1876 | CopyTo             | Copy part of the string to an array of characters                         |
| 1876 | CountChar          | Count the occurrences of a character                                      |
| 1871 | Create             | Create a new string   |
| 1877 | DeQuotedString     | Return a dequoted version of the string                                   |
| 1871 | EndsText           | Check if one string is the ending of another.                             |
| 1877 | EndsWith           | Check if the string is ended by another.                                  |
| 1871 | Equals             | Check if 2 strings are equal  |
| 1872 | Format             | Format a string using provided arguments.                                 |
| 1877 | GetHashCode        | Get a hash code for the string  |
| 1877 | IndexOf            | Find the position (index) of a string or character                        |
| 1878 | IndexOfAny         | Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.           |
| 1879 | IndexOfAnyUnquoted | Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.           |
| 1878 | IndexOfUnQuoted    | Index of string, skipping quoted parts.                                   |
| 1879 | Insert             | Insert a string at a given position                                       |
| 1880 | IsDelimiter        | Check whether a character at a given position is a delimiter              |
| 1880 | IsEmpty            | Check whether the string is empty.  |
| 1872 | IsNullOrEmpty      | Check if a string is empty  |
| 1872 | IsNullOrWhiteSpace | Check if a string is empty or contains only whitespace characters.        |
| 1872 | Join               | Join a series of strings, separated using a given separator               |
| 1880 | LastDelimiter      | Return the last position of one of a series of delimiters                 |
| 1880 | LastIndexOf        | Find the last position (index) of a string or character                   |
| 1881 | LastIndexOfAny     | Find the last position (index) of any string or character in a list.      |
| 1873 | LowerCase          | Return the lowercase version of a string.                                 |
| 1881 | PadLeft            | Pad the string on the left with an indicated character                    |
| 1882 | PadRight           | Pad the string on the right with an indicated character                   |
| 1873 | Parse              | Return a string representation of the argument                            |
| 1882 | QuotedString       | Return a quoted version of the string                                     |
| 1882 | Remove             | Remove a number of characters from the string                             |
| 1883 | Replace            | Replace occurrences of one string with another.                           |
| 1883 | Split              | Split a string in a number of parts                                       |
| 1884 | StartsWith         | Check if one string starts with another                                   |
| 1884 | Substring          | Return a part of the string   |
| 1873 | ToBoolean          | Convert string to boolean   |
| 1885 | ToCharArray        | Return the string as an array of characters.                              |
| 1874 | ToDouble           | Convert string to double-sized floating point value                       |
| 1874 | ToExtended         | Convert string to extended-sized floating point value                     |
| 1874 | ToInt64            | Convert string to 64-bit signed integer                                   |
| 1875 | ToInteger          | Convert string to 32-bit signed integer                                   |
| 1885 | ToLower            | Convert to lowercase  |
| 1885 | ToLowerInvariant   | Convert to lowercase  |
| 1875 | ToSingle           | Convert string to single-sized floating point value                       |
| 1885 | ToUpper            | Convert to uppercase.   |
| 1886 | ToUpperInvariant   | Convert to uppercase  |
| 1886 | Trim               | Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning and end of the string. |
| 1887 | TrimEnd            | Alias for TrimRight   |
| 1886 | TrimLeft           | Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning of the string.         |
| 1886 | TrimRight          | Strips a set of trim characters from the end of the string.               |
| 1887 | TrimStart          | Alias for TrimLeft  |
| 1875 | UpperCase          | Return uppercase version of a string                                      |

### 76.99.3 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description  |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1887</a> | Chars      | r      | Zero-based Indexed access to the characters in the string. |
| <a href="#">1887</a> | Length     | r      | Return the length of the string                            |

#### 76.99.4 TStringHelper.Compare

### Synopsis: Compare 2 strings

```

Declaration: class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer
                ; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string;
                IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string;
                Options: TCompareOptions) : Integer; Overload
                ; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
                const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt)
                : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
                const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt;
                IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
                const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt;
                Options: TCompareOptions) : Integer; Overload
                ; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Compare compares strings A and B. It returns the following result:

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if  $A < B$
- a positive number if  $A > B$

The comparison can be influenced by using the appropriate overloaded version of the function.

- If the `IndexA` and `IndexB` parameters are present, the comparison starts at character index `IndexA` and `IndexB`. The indexes are zero-based.
- If the `ALen` parameter is present, then only the first `ALen` characters are compared. If not enough characters are present in either `A` or `B`, the comparison will include only as much characters as are present.
- If `IgnoreCase` is present and used, it determines whether the comparison is done case-sensitively. This form is deprecated, it is recommended to use the `AOptions` parameter and to include `coIgnoreCase`.
- The `AOptions` argument can be used to specify additional options. See `TCompareOption` (1381) for a list of possible values in this set.

Errors: None.

See also: [TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal \(1870\)](#), [TCompareOption \(1381\)](#), [TStringHelper.CompareTo \(1876\)](#)

### 76.99.5 TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings byte for byte

Declaration: `class function CompareOrdinal(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer; Overload; Static`  
`class function CompareOrdinal(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt; const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : Integer; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareOrdinal` compares 2 strings A and B bitwise. It is faster than a regular compare, but offers less options.

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if  $A < B$
- a positive number if  $A > B$

Optionally, a zero-based starting index for the compare can be given for each of the strings: `IndexA` and `IndexB`. In this case a maximum amount of characters (`ALen`) to be compared must also be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHelper.Compare` ([1869](#)), `TStringHelper.CompareTo` ([1876](#))

### 76.99.6 TStringHelper.CompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings case insensitively.

Declaration: `class function CompareText(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareText` simply calls `SysUtils` ([1653](#)) with the 2 passed arguments.

Errors: None.

See also: `SysUtils` ([1653](#)), `TStringHelper.CompareTo` ([1876](#))

### 76.99.7 TStringHelper.Copy

Synopsis: Return a unique copy of a string

Declaration: `class function Copy(const Str: string) : string; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Copy` will copy the string on which it operates, and makes sure the result has reference count 1.

See also: `UniqueString` ([1599](#))



**76.99.11 TStringHelper.Format**

Synopsis: Format a string using provided arguments.

Declaration: `class function Format(const AFormat: string; const args: Array of const) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function Format(const args: Array of const) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Format` just calls `Sysutils.Format` ([1696](#)), passing on `AFormat` and `Args`. If `AFormat` is omitted, the string itself is used as the formatting string.

See also: `Sysutils.Format` ([1696](#))

**76.99.12 TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty**

Synopsis: Check if a string is empty

Declaration: `class function IsNullOrEmpty(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsNullOrEmpty` returns `True` if string `A` has length 0.

See also: `System.Length` ([1599](#)), `TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace` ([1872](#))

**76.99.13 TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace**

Synopsis: Check if a string is empty or contains only whitespace characters.

Declaration: `class function IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace(const AValue: string) : Boolean`  
`; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsNullOrEmpty` returns `True` if string `A` has length 0 or contains only whitespace characters (characters with ASCII code 32 or less).

See also: `TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty` ([1872](#)), `Trim` ([1760](#))

**76.99.14 TStringHelper.Join**

Synopsis: Join a series of strings, separated using a given separator

Declaration: `class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of const) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of string) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;`  
`ACount: SizeInt) : string; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Join will return a string that consists of all the strings in `Values` concatenated, with `Separator` between them. `Values` can be an array of strings, but can also be an array of arbitrary values: the values will first be transformed to a string representation first.

In case an array of strings is passed on, a start index `StartIndex` and element count `ACount` can be passed on as well.

**Errors:** Classes, pointers or interfaces will not be transformed, but will result in a 'unknown type: NNN' string being inserted.

See also: [TStringHelper.Split \(1883\)](#)

### 76.99.15 TStringHelper.LowerCase

**Synopsis:** Return the lowercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `class function LowerCase(const S: string) : string; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LowerCase` returns the lowercase version of the string `S`. This function is an alias for the `SysUtils.LowerCase` (1722) function.

See also: `sysutils.LowerCase` ([1722](#))

## 76.99.16 TStringHelper.Parse

**Synopsis:** Return a string representation of the argument

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AValue: Boolean) : string; Overload; Static
              class function Parse(const AValue: Extended) : string; Overload
                      ; Static
              class function Parse(const AValue: Int64) : string; Overload; Static
              class function Parse(const AValue: Integer) : string; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will return a string representation of the argument AValue. How this is done depends on the type of the AValue argument:

**Boolean**The result is formatted using BoolToStr (1648).

**Extended**The result is formatted using `FloatToStr` (1691).

**Int64** The result is formatted using `IntToStr` (1718).

**Integer**he result is formatted using `IntToStr` (1718).

See also: BoolToStr (1648), FloatToStr (1691), IntToStr (1718)

## 76.99.17 TStringHelper.ToBoolean

### Synopsis: Convert string to boolean

```
Declaration: class function ToBoolean(const S: string) : Boolean; Overload; Static
            function ToBoolean : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` returns the contents of the string `S` as a boolean (if possible). It uses `StrToBool` (1746) to convert the value to a boolean.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a boolean, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToBool` (1746), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1875), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1875)

### 76.99.18 TStringHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert string to double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToDouble(const S: string) : Double; Overload; Static  
function ToDouble : Double; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` returns the contents of the string `S` as a Double-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1750) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1750), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1875), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1875)

### 76.99.19 TStringHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert string to extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToExtended(const S: string) : Extended; Overload  
; Static  
function ToExtended : Extended; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToExtended` returns the contents of the string `S` as a Extended-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1750) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1750), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1875), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1875)

### 76.99.20 TStringHelper.ToInt64

**Synopsis:** Convert string to 64-bit signed integer

**Declaration:** `class function ToInt64(const S: string) : Int64; Overload; Static  
function ToInt64 : Int64; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToInt64` returns the contents of the string `S` as a 64-bit signed integer value (if possible). It uses `StrToInt64` (1752) to convert the value to an 64-bit sized integer value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to an integer value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` (1752), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1875), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1875)

### 76.99.21 `TStringHelper.ToInteger`

**Synopsis:** Convert string to 32-bit signed integer

**Declaration:** `class function ToInteger(const S: string) : Integer; Overload; Static  
function ToInteger : Integer; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToInteger` returns the contents of the string `S` as a 32-bit signed integer value (if possible). It uses `StrToInt64` (1752) to convert the value to an 64-bit sized integer value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to an integer value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` (1752), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1875)

### 76.99.22 `TStringHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert string to single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToSingle(const S: string) : Single; Overload; Static  
function ToSingle : Single; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToSingle` returns the contents of the string `S` as a single-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1750) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1781) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1750), `EConvertError` (1781), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1874), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1875), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1874)

### 76.99.23 `TStringHelper.UpperCase`

**Synopsis:** Return uppercase version of a string

**Declaration:** `class function UpperCase(const S: string) : string; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `UpperCase` returns an uppercase version of the string `S`.

**See also:** `#rtl.sysutils.UpperCase` (1771)

**76.99.24 TStringHelper.CompareTo**

Synopsis: Compare string to another

Declaration: `function CompareTo(const B: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareTo` will compare the string value to the string B. It returns the following result:

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if `Self < B`
- a positive number if `Self > B`

The `StrComp` (1733) function is used for this.

See also: `TStringHelper.Compare` (1869), `TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal` (1870), `StrComp` (1733)

**76.99.25 TStringHelper.Contains**

Synopsis: Check is the string contains another

Declaration: `function Contains(const AValue: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Contains` returns `True` if the string value contains `AValue`, i.e. it returns `Pos(Self, AValue) > 0`.

See also: `Pos` (1510)

**76.99.26 TStringHelper.CopyTo**

Synopsis: Copy part of the string to an array of characters

Declaration: `procedure CopyTo(SourceIndex: SizeInt; var destination: Array of Char;  
DestinationIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyTo` copies at most `ACount` characters from the source string (`Self`) to the array `Destination`, starting at (zero based) index `SourceIndex`. The characters are copied to the array starting at position `DestinationIndex` (zero based).

See also: `Copy` (1441)

**76.99.27 TStringHelper.CountChar**

Synopsis: Count the occurrences of a character

Declaration: `function CountChar(const C: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `CountChar` returns the number of occurrences of `C` in the string (`Self`).

See also: `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1877), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` (1878)

**76.99.28 TStringHelper.DeQuotedString**

Synopsis: Return a dequoted version of the string

Declaration: `function DeQuotedString : string; Overload`  
`function DeQuotedString(const AQuoteChar: Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeQuotedString` will return a dequoted version of the string (`Self`), where the quote character is `AQuoteChar` (default: a single quote `'`). The string must start and end with the quote character, or it is returned as-is. Any double occurrences of the quote character `AQuoteChar` will be returned as a single quote.

See also: `AnsiQuotedString` ([1599](#)), `AnsiExtractQuotedString` ([1599](#))

**76.99.29 TStringHelper.EndsWith**

Synopsis: Check if the string is ended by another.

Declaration: `function EndsWith(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function EndsWith(const AValue: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `EndsWith` returns `True` if the string (`Self`) ends on `AValue`, i.e. whether the last characters in `Self` are the ones found in `AValue`. The comparison is done case insensitively depending on the `IgnoreCase` argument (which is false by default).

See also: `CompareText` ([1653](#)), `TStringHelper.EndsWithText` ([1871](#))

**76.99.30 TStringHelper.GetHashCode**

Synopsis: Get a hash code for the string

Declaration: `function GetHashCode : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetHashCode` returns a hash value for the string (`Self`).

**76.99.31 TStringHelper.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Find the position (index) of a string or character

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AValue: Char) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(AValue: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(AValue: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string; StartIndex: SizeInt;`  
`ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the zero-based index of `AValue` in the string (`Self`). The value to search for can be a character or string (`AValue`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

See also: `Pos` ([1510](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnQuoted` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1879](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1880](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1881](#))

### 76.99.32 TStringHelper.IndexOfUnQuoted

**Synopsis:** Index of string, skipping quoted parts.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfUnQuoted(const AValue: string; StartQuote: Char;
                        EndQuote: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IndexOfUnQuoted` will return the zero-based index of `AValue` in the string (`Self`), but disregards any quoted parts in the string. A quoted part is determined by a starting `StartQuote` and end-quote character `EndQuote`. The search starts at (zero-based) position `StartIndex`, which is by default 0.

See also: `Pos` ([1510](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1877](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1879](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1880](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1881](#))

### 76.99.33 TStringHelper.IndexOfAny

**Synopsis:** Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char; StartIndex: SizeInt)
: SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt)
: SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt; out AMatch: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IndexOfAny` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

If `AMatch` is specified, on successful return it will contain the index of the element in the array that contains the found match.

See also: `Pos` (1510), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1877), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` (1878), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` (1879), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` (1880), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` (1881)

### 76.99.34 TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted

Synopsis: Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char) : SizeInt
                           ; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)
                           : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of string;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt; out Matched: SizeInt)
                           : SizeInt; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IndexOfAnyUnquoted` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`), but disregards any quoted parts in the string. A quoted part is determined by a starting `StartQuote` and end-quote character `EndQuote`.

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

If `AMatch` is specified, on successful return it will contain the index of the element in the array that contains the found match.

See also: `Pos` (1510), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1877), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` (1878), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` (1878), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` (1880), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` (1881)

### 76.99.35 TStringHelper.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a string at a given position

**Declaration:**

```
function Insert(StartIndex: SizeInt; const AValue: string) : string
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Insert inserts the string AValue in a string (Self) at the (zero-based) position StartIndex. It returns the resulting string (Self). If StartIndex is less than zero, it is set to zero. If StartIndex is higher than the length, AValue is appended to the string.

See also: Insert ([1488](#))

### 76.99.36 TStringHelper.IsDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Check whether a character at a given position is a delimiter

**Declaration:** function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: string; Index: SizeInt) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsDelimiter returns True if the character at (zero-based) position Index is one of the delimiter characters in Delimiters. If Index is out of range, False is returned.

See also: IsDelimiter ([1719](#))

### 76.99.37 TStringHelper.IsEmpty

**Synopsis:** Check whether the string is empty.

**Declaration:** function IsEmpty : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsEmpty returns True if the string has length zero.

See also: TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty ([1872](#)), TStringHelper.Length ([1887](#)), Length ([1495](#))

### 76.99.38 TStringHelper.LastDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Return the last position of one of a series of delimiters

**Declaration:** function LastDelimiter(const Delims: string) : SizeInt

Visibility: public

**Description:** LastDelimiter searches the string backwards for an occurrence of one of the characters in Delims, and returns the corresponding (zero-based) index in the string. If no occurrence is found, -1 is returned.

See also: TStringHelper.isDelimiter ([1880](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOf ([1877](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAny ([1878](#)), TStringHelper.LastIndexOf ([1880](#)), TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny ([1881](#))

### 76.99.39 TStringHelper.LastIndexOf

**Synopsis:** Find the last position (index) of a string or character

**Declaration:** function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char) : SizeInt; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string) : SizeInt; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char; AStartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 ; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string; AStartIndex: SizeInt)

```

        : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char; AStartIndex: SizeInt;
        ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string; AStartIndex: SizeInt;
        ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LastIndexOf` returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence of `AValue` in the string (`Self`). The value to search for can be a character or string (`AValue`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character and proceeds towards the beginning of the string. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying `length-1`.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying `StartIndex+1`.

See also: `Pos` ([1510](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1879](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1877](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1881](#))

#### 76.99.40 TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny

**Synopsis:** Find the last position (index) of any string or character in a list.

```

Declaration: function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
        AStartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
        AStartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LastIndexOfAny` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character and proceeds to the start of the string. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying `Length-1`.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying `StartIndex+1`.

See also: `Pos` ([1510](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1877](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` ([1878](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1879](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1880](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1878](#))

#### 76.99.41 TStringHelper.PadLeft

**Synopsis:** Pad the string on the left with an indicated character

```

Declaration: function PadLeft(ATotalWidth: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function PadLeft(ATotalWidth: SizeInt; PaddingChar: Char) : string
; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: `PadLeft` pads the string (`Self`) on the left (i.e. at the beginning) till it reaches length `ATotalWidth` with character `PaddingChar`. If `PaddingChar` is omitted, a space is used.

See also: `TStringHelper.PadRight` ([1882](#))

### 76.99.42 `TStringHelper.PadRight`

Synopsis: Pad the string on the right with an indicated character

Declaration: 

```
function PadRight(ATotalWidth: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function PadRight(ATotalWidth: SizeInt; PaddingChar: Char) : string
; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `PadLeft` pads the string (`Self`) on the right (i.e. at the end) till it reaches length `ATotalWidth` with character `PaddingChar`. If `PaddingChar` is omitted, a space is used.

See also: `TStringHelper.PadLeft` ([1881](#))

### 76.99.43 `TStringHelper.QuotedString`

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of the string

Declaration: 

```
function QuotedString : string; Overload
function QuotedString(const AQuoteChar: Char) : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `QuotedString` returns a quoted version of the string (`Self`). The quote character is specified in `AQuoteChar`, which by default is the double quote (`"`). Any existing quote characters occurrences will be doubled.

See also: `QuotedStr` ([1725](#)), `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1637](#))

### 76.99.44 `TStringHelper.Remove`

Synopsis: Remove a number of characters from the string

Declaration: 

```
function Remove(StartIndex: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function Remove(StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt) : string
; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `ACount` characters from the string, starting at (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. If `ACount` is omitted, all remaining characters are removed.

See also: `Delete` ([1445](#)), `TStringHelper.Replace` ([1883](#)), `TStringHelper.Insert` ([1879](#))

**76.99.45 TStringHelper.Replace**

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one string with another.

**Declaration:** function Replace(OldChar: Char; NewChar: Char) : string; Overload  
 function Replace(OldChar: Char; NewChar: Char;  
                   ReplaceFlags: TReplaceFlags) : string; Overload  
 function Replace(const OldValue: string; const NewValue: string)  
                   : string; Overload  
 function Replace(const OldValue: string; const NewValue: string;  
                   ReplaceFlags: TReplaceFlags) : string; Overload

Visibility: public

**Description:** Replace will replace occurrences of OldChar with NewChar or OldValue with NewValue.

If rfReplaceAll is in the ReplaceFlags, then all occurrences will be replaced, otherwise only the first occurrence is replaced.

If rfCaseInsensitive is in the ReplaceFlags, then the search for OldChar or OldValue is performed ignoring case.

See also: StringReplace ([1737](#)), TReplaceFlags ([1623](#))

**76.99.46 TStringHelper.Split**

Synopsis: Split a string in a number of parts

**Declaration:** function Split(const Separators: Array of Char) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; ACount: SizeInt)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string; ACount: SizeInt)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuote: Char)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; Options: TStringSplitOptions)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload

```

function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuote: Char)
    : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char) : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; Options: TStringSplitOptions)
    : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt) : TStringArray
    ; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt;
    Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: Split will split the string (Self) using Separators as separator characters.

If ACount is supplied, then at most ACount strings will be included in the result. The default behaviour is to supply all strings.

if Options contains ExcludeEmpty then no empty strings will be included in the result. Empty strings may be included if multiple successive separator characters are found in the source string, but not for the last character: If the last characters is a separator string, the 'empty string' behind it is not added to the result.

If AQuoteStart and AQuoteEnd are supplied, then no splitting will be performed between AQuoteStart and AQuoteEnd characters.

See also: TStringHelper.Join ([1872](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAny ([1878](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted ([1879](#))

### 76.99.47 TStringHelper.StartsWith

Synopsis: Check if one string starts with another

```

Declaration: function StartsWith(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Overload
function StartsWith(const AValue: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: StartsWith will return True if the first characters of the string (Self) equal the string AValue.

If IgnoreCase is True, then the comparison is done case insensitive. The default is to compare strings case sensitively.

See also: TStringHelper.EndsWith ([1877](#))

### 76.99.48 TStringHelper.Substring

Synopsis: Return a part of the string

```

Declaration: function Substring(AStartIndex: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function Substring(AStartIndex: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : string
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SubString` returns the portion of the string starting at (zero-based) index `AStartIndex` with length `ALen`. If `ALen` is omitted, then all remaining characters are returned.

See also: `TStringHelper.Insert` (1879), `Copy` (1441), `TStringHelper.ToCharArray` (1885)

### 76.99.49 TStringHelper.ToCharArray

**Synopsis:** Return the string as an array of characters.

**Declaration:** `function ToCharArray : TCharArray; Overload`  
`function ToCharArray(AStartIndex: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : TCharArray`  
`; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToCharArray` returns part of the string (`Self`) as an array of characters. The characters are copied starting at (zero-based) index `AStartIndex` and at most `ALen` characters are copied. If `AStartIndex` and `ALen` are omitted, all the characters are returned.

**Errors:** If `AStartIndex` is less than zero, an `EAccessViolation` (1780) exception may be raised.

See also: `TStringHelper.Substring` (1884), `TStringHelper.Insert` (1879), `Copy` (1441)

### 76.99.50 TStringHelper.ToLower

**Synopsis:** Convert to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function ToLower : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLower` returns a lowercase version of the string.

See also: `TStringHelper.LowerCase` (1873), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1885), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` (1886)

### 76.99.51 TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant

**Synopsis:** Convert to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function ToLowerInvariant : string`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLowerInvariant` is equal to `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1885)

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1885), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1885), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` (1886)

### 76.99.52 TStringHelper.ToUpper

**Synopsis:** Convert to uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function ToUpper : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `>ToUpper` returns an uppercase version of the string.

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` ([1885](#)), `TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant` ([1885](#)), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` ([1886](#))

### 76.99.53 `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant`

Synopsis: Convert to uppercase

Declaration: `function ToUpperInvariant : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToUpperInvariant` is equal to `TStringHelper.ToUpper` ([1885](#))

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` ([1885](#)), `TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant` ([1885](#)), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` ([1885](#))

### 76.99.54 `TStringHelper.Trim`

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning and end of the string.

Declaration: `function Trim : string; Overload`  
`function Trim(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the start and end of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `Trim` ([1760](#)), `TStringHelper.TrimLeft` ([1886](#)), `TStringHelper.TrimRight` ([1886](#))

### 76.99.55 `TStringHelper.TrimLeft`

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning of the string.

Declaration: `function TrimLeft : string; Overload`  
`function TrimLeft(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the start of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `TrimLeft` ([1760](#)), `TStringHelper.Trim` ([1886](#)), `TStringHelper.TrimRight` ([1886](#))

### 76.99.56 `TStringHelper.TrimRight`

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the end of the string.

Declaration: `function TrimRight : string; Overload`  
`function TrimRight(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the end of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `Trim` ([1760](#)), `TStringHelper.Trim` ([1886](#)), `TStringHelper.TrimLeft` ([1886](#))

### 76.99.57 TStringHelper.TrimEnd

Synopsis: Alias for TrimRight

Declaration: `function TrimEnd(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: TrimEnd is an alias for TStringHelper.TrimRight ([1886](#))

See also: TStringHelper.TrimRight ([1886](#)), TStringHelper.TrimStart ([1887](#))

### 76.99.58 TStringHelper.TrimStart

Synopsis: Alias for TrimLeft

Declaration: `function TrimStart(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: TrimStart is an alias for TStringHelper.TrimLeft ([1886](#))

See also: TStringHelper.TrimEnd ([1887](#)), TStringHelper.TrimLeft ([1886](#))

### 76.99.59 TStringHelper.Chars

Synopsis: Zero-based Indexed access to the characters in the string.

Declaration: `Property Chars[AIndex: SizeInt]: Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Chars provides zero-based indexed access to the characters in the string. The first character is at index 0, the last at Length-1.

See also: TStringHelper.Length ([1887](#))

### 76.99.60 TStringHelper.Length

Synopsis: Return the length of the string

Declaration: `Property &Length : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Length returns the length (in bytes for single-byte strings) of the string.

See also: Length ([1495](#))

## 76.100 TUnicodeEncoding

### 76.100.1 Description

TUnicodeEncoding is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-16 encoding.

See also: TUnicodeEncoding ([1887](#)), TUTF7Encoding ([1893](#)), TMBCSEncoding ([1837](#)), TBigendianUnicodeEncoding ([1797](#))

**76.100.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method          | Description  |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| <a href="#">1888</a> | Clone           | Clone a TUnicodeEncoding instance  |
| <a href="#">1888</a> | Create          | Create a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class                          |
| <a href="#">1888</a> | GetMaxByteCount | Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string                      |
| <a href="#">1888</a> | GetMaxCharCount | Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes |
| <a href="#">1889</a> | GetPreamble     | Return BOM marker bytes  |

**76.100.3 TUnicodeEncoding.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class

Declaration: constructor Create; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class and sets the codepage to CP\_UTF16.

See also: TEncoding.CodePage ([1818](#)), TEncoding ([1814](#))

**76.100.4 TUnicodeEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a TUnicodeEncoding instance

Declaration: function Clone : TEncoding; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Clone overrides TEncoding.Clone ([1815](#)) to provide a clone of the TUnicodeEncoding instance.

See also: TEncoding.Clone ([1815](#))

**76.100.5 TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxByteCount**

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxByteCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount ([1817](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount ([1817](#))

**76.100.6 TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxCharCount**

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxCharCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount ([1817](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount ([1817](#))

### 76.100.7 TUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817) to return the 2 UTF-16 BOM Marker bytes (\$FF,\$FE).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1817)

## 76.101 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

### 76.101.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                      | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1889</a> | <code>Append</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1890</a> | <code>AppendFormat</code>   |             |
| <a href="#">1890</a> | <code>AppendLine</code>     |             |
| <a href="#">1890</a> | <code>Clear</code>          |             |
| <a href="#">1890</a> | <code>CopyTo</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1889</a> | <code>Create</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1891</a> | <code>EnsureCapacity</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1891</a> | <code>Equals</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1891</a> | <code>Insert</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1892</a> | <code>Remove</code>         |             |
| <a href="#">1892</a> | <code>Replace</code>        |             |
| <a href="#">1892</a> | <code>ToString</code>       |             |

### 76.101.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties               | Access          | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1893</a> | <code>Capacity</code>    | <code>rw</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1892</a> | <code>Chars</code>       | <code>rw</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1892</a> | <code>Length</code>      | <code>rw</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1893</a> | <code>MaxCapacity</code> | <code>r</code>  |             |

### 76.101.3 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create`

```

constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING)
constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer; aMaxCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                  aLength: Integer; aCapacity: Integer)

```

Visibility: `public`

### 76.101.4 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Append

Declaration: `function Append(const AValue: Boolean) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER`

```
function Append(const AValue: Byte) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: WideChar) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Currency) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Double) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: SmallInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: LongInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Int64) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: TObject) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ShortInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Single) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UInt64) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of WideChar) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Word) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Cardinal) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: PWIDECHAR) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UNICODESTRING) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: RawByteString) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: WideChar; RepeatCount: Integer)
    : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of WideChar; StartIndex: Integer;
    SBCharCount: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
    Count: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const Fmt: UNICODESTRING; const Args: Array of const)
    : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
```

Visibility: public

### 76.101.5 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat

Declaration: function AppendFormat(const Fmt: UNICODESTRING;  
const Args: Array of const) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.6 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine

Declaration: function AppendLine : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function AppendLine(const AValue: RawByteString) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.7 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Clear

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

### 76.101.8 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo

Declaration: procedure CopyTo(SourceIndex: Integer;  
var Destination: Array of WideChar;  
DestinationIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)

Visibility: public

### 76.101.9 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity

Declaration: function EnsureCapacity(aCapacity: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: public

### 76.101.10 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Equals

Declaration: function Equals(StringBuilder: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER) : Boolean  
; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.101.11 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Insert

Declaration: function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Boolean)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Byte)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Currency)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Double)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: SmallInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: LongInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Int64)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: TObject)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ShortInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Single)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UNICODESTRING)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Word)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Cardinal)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UInt64)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const aRepeatCount: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of WideChar;  
startIndex: Integer; SBCharCount: Integer)

: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.12 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Remove

Declaration: function Remove(StartIndex: Integer; RemLength: Integer)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.13 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Replace

Declaration: function Replace(const OldChar: WideChar; const NewChar: WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldChar: WideChar; const NewChar: WideChar;  
StartIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const NewValue: UNICODESTRING) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const NewValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;  
Count: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.14 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.ToString

Declaration: function ToString : UNICODESTRING  
function ToString(aStartIndex: Integer; aLength: Integer)  
: UNICODESTRING; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.101.15 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Chars

Declaration: Property Chars[index: Integer]: WideChar; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 76.101.16 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Length

Declaration: Property &Length : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.101.17 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Capacity**

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

**76.101.18 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity**

Declaration: `Property MaxCapacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**76.102 TUTF7Encoding****76.102.1 Description**

`TUTF7Encoding` is the encoding class used to represent the UTF7 encoding. This encoding is not so often used, and the class is provided mostly for completeness.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1887](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1894](#)), `TMBCSEncoding` ([1837](#)), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` ([1797](#))

**76.102.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                       | Description  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1893</a> | <code>Clone</code>           | Clone a <code>TUTF7Encoding</code> instance                                  |
| <a href="#">1893</a> | <code>Create</code>          | Create a new instance of the <code>TUTF7Encoding</code> class                |
| <a href="#">1894</a> | <code>GetMaxByteCount</code> | Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string                      |
| <a href="#">1894</a> | <code>GetMaxCharCount</code> | Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes |

**76.102.3 TUTF7Encoding.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TUTF7Encoding` class

Declaration: `constructor Create; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TUTF7Encoding` class and sets the codepage to `CP_UTF7`.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` ([1818](#)), `TEncoding` ([1814](#))

**76.102.4 TUTF7Encoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a `TUTF7Encoding` instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` ([1815](#)) to provide a clone of the `TUTF7Encoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` ([1815](#))

### 76.102.5 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxByteCount

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount (CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMaxByteCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1817)

### 76.102.6 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxCharCount

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount (ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMaxCharCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1817)

## 76.103 TUTF8Encoding

### 76.103.1 Description

`TUTF8Encoding` is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-8 encoding.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` (1887), `TUTF7Encoding` (1893), `TMBCSEncoding` (1837), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` (1797)

### 76.103.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                       | Description  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1895</a> | <code>Clone</code>           | Clone a <code>TUTF8Encoding</code> instance                                  |
| <a href="#">1894</a> | <code>Create</code>          | Create a new instance of the <code>TUTF8Encoding</code> class                |
| <a href="#">1895</a> | <code>GetMaxByteCount</code> | Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string                      |
| <a href="#">1895</a> | <code>GetMaxCharCount</code> | Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes |
| <a href="#">1895</a> | <code>GetPreamble</code>     | Return BOM marker bytes  |

### 76.103.3 TUTF8Encoding.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TUTF8Encoding` class

Declaration: `constructor Create; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TUTF8Encoding` class and sets the codepage to `CP_UTF8`.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` (1818), `TEncoding` (1814)

#### 76.103.4 TUTF8Encoding.Clone

Synopsis: Clone a TUTF8Encoding instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Clone overrides TEncoding.Clone (1815) to provide a clone of the TUTF8Encoding instance.

See also: TEncoding.Clone (1815)

#### 76.103.5 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxByteCount

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxByteCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount (1817)

#### 76.103.6 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxCharCount

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxCharCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount (1817) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount (1817)

#### 76.103.7 TUTF8Encoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetPreamble overrides TEncoding.GetPreamble (1817) to return the 3 UTF8 BOM Marker bytes (\$EF,\$BB,\$BF).

See also: TEncoding.GetPreamble (1817)

## 76.104 TWordBoolHelper

### 76.104.1 Description

TWordBoolHelper is a helper type for the WordBool type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: TStringHelper ([1866](#)), TShortIntHelper ([1851](#)), TSmallIntHelper ([1863](#)), TWordHelper ([1897](#)), TCardinalHelper ([1805](#)), TIntegerHelper ([1832](#)), TInt64Helper ([1829](#)), TQWordHelper ([1848](#)), TNativeIntHelper ([1841](#)), TByteHelper ([1801](#)), TByteBoolHelper ([1800](#)), TWordBoolHelper ([1896](#)), TLongBoolHelper ([1835](#))

### 76.104.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method     | Description                                 |
|----------------------|------------|---|
| <a href="#">1896</a> | Parse      | Convert string value to WordBool value.     |
| <a href="#">1896</a> | Size       | Return the size (in bytes) of the           |
| <a href="#">1897</a> | ToInteger  | Convert to an integer value                 |
| <a href="#">1896</a> | ToString   | Convert a WordBool value to string.         |
| <a href="#">1897</a> | TryToParse | Try to convert a string to a WordBool value |

### 76.104.3 TWordBoolHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to WordBool value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Parse attempts to convert the string S to a WordBool value. It uses the StrToBool ([1746](#)) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If S does not contain a valid string representation, then an EConvertError ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: TWordBoolHelper.TryToParse ([1897](#)), TWordBoolHelper.ToString ([1896](#)), TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger ([1897](#))

### 76.104.4 TWordBoolHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Size returns the size (in bytes) of the WordBool value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(WordBool)`.

See also: SizeOf ([1539](#))

### 76.104.5 TWordBoolHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a WordBool value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
                                  UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
                                  ; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue WordBool` to a string representation. In the function method version the `WordBool` value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the `WordBool` strings `BoolStrs` (1599). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` (1648) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` (1599), `BoolToStr` (1648)

### 76.104.6 TWordBoolHelper.TryToParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `WordBool` value

Declaration: `class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryToParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a `WordBool` value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TWordBoolHelper.Parse` (1896), `TWordBoolHelper.ToString` (1896)

### 76.104.7 TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the `WordBool` value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TWordBoolHelper.ToString` (1896)

## 76.105 TWordHelper

### 76.105.1 Description

`TWordHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `Word`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1866), `TShortIntHelper` (1851), `TSmallIntHelper` (1863), `TByteHelper` (1801), `TCardinalHelper` (1805), `TIntegerHelper` (1832), `TInt64Helper` (1829), `TQWordHelper` (1848), `TNativeIntHelper` (1841), `TNativeUIntHelper` (1845)

**76.105.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method      | Description  |
|----------------------|-------------|--|
| <a href="#">1900</a> | ClearBit    |  |
| <a href="#">1898</a> | Parse       | Convert from a string  |
| <a href="#">1900</a> | SetBit      |  |
| <a href="#">1898</a> | Size        | Size, in bytes, of the Word value                            |
| <a href="#">1901</a> | TestBit     |  |
| <a href="#">1900</a> | ToBinString |  |
| <a href="#">1899</a> | ToBoolean   | Convert to a boolean value                                   |
| <a href="#">1899</a> | ToDouble    | Convert to a double-sized floating point value               |
| <a href="#">1899</a> | ToExtended  | Convert to an extended-sized floating point value            |
| <a href="#">1901</a> | ToggleBit   |  |
| <a href="#">1900</a> | ToHexString | Convert to a hexadecimal string representation               |
| <a href="#">1900</a> | ToSingle    | Convert to a single-sized floating point value               |
| <a href="#">1898</a> | ToString    | Convert the value to string                                  |
| <a href="#">1899</a> | TryParse    | Try to convert a string to a Word, report success or failure |

**76.105.3 TWordHelper.Parse**

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Word; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `Word` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1751](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid `Word` value, an `EConvertError` ([1781](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1898](#)), `TWordHelper.TryParse` ([1899](#)), `StrToInt` ([1751](#))

**76.105.4 TWordHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the Word value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in Words) of the `Word` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Word)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1539](#))

**76.105.5 TWordHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Word) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `Word` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1718) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TWordHelper.Parse` (1898), `IntToStr` (1718)

### 76.105.6 TWordHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `Word`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Word)  
: Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Word`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `Word` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1599) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TWordHelper.Parse` (1898), `Val` (1562)

### 76.105.7 TWordHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `Word` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToSingle` (1900), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` (1899), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` (1899), `TWordHelper.ToString` (1898), `TWordHelper.ToHexString` (1900)

### 76.105.8 TWordHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `Word` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` (1899), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` (1899), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` (1900), `TWordHelper.ToString` (1898), `TWordHelper.ToHexString` (1900)

### 76.105.9 TWordHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `Word` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1900](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1898](#)), `TWordHelper.HexString` ([1900](#))

### 76.105.10 `TWordHelper.ToBinString`

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.105.11 `TWordHelper.HexString`

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the `Word` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1900](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1898](#)), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1899](#))

### 76.105.12 `TWordHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the `Word` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1899](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1898](#)), `TWordHelper.HexString` ([1900](#))

### 76.105.13 `TWordHelper.SetBit`

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### 76.105.14 `TWordHelper.ClearBit`

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### **76.105.15 TWordHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### **76.105.16 TWordHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

## Chapter 77

# Reference for unit 'Types'

### 77.1 Used units

Table 77.1: Used units by unit 'Types'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 77.2 Overview

Starting with D6, types from Windows specific units that were needed in Kylix were extracted to this unit. So it mostly contains type of Windows origin that are needed in the VCL framework.

### 77.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 77.3.1 Constants

`E_FAIL = HRESULT($80004005)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`E_INVALIDARG = HRESULT($80070057)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`GUID_NULL : TGuid = '{00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000}'`

GUID\_NULL is the definition of the NULL (empty) GUID.

`LOCK_EXCLUSIVE = 2`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`LOCK_ONLYONCE = 4`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`LOCK_WRITE = 1`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STATFLAG_DEFAULT = 0`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STATFLAG_NONAME = 1`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STATFLAG_NOOPEN = 2`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STGTY_LOCKBYTES = 3`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STGTY_PROPERTY = 4`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STGTY_STORAGE = 1`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STGTY_STREAM = 2`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STG_E_ABNORMALAPIEXIT = HRESULT($800300FA)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STG_E_ACCESSDENIED = HRESULT($80030005)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STG_E_BADBASEADDRESS = HRESULT($80030110)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STG_E_CANTSAVE = HRESULT($80030103)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STG_E_DISKISWRITEPROTECTED = HRESULT($80030013)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_DOCFILECORRUPT = HRESULT(\$80030109)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_EXTANTMARSHALLINGS = HRESULT(\$80030108)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_FILEALREADYEXISTS = HRESULT(\$80030050)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_FILENOTFOUND = HRESULT(\$80030002)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INCOMPLETE = HRESULT(\$80030201)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INSUFFICIENTMEMORY = HRESULT(\$80030008)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INUSE = HRESULT(\$80030100)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDFLAG = HRESULT(\$800300FF)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDFUNCTION = HRESULT(\$80030001)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDHANDLE = HRESULT(\$80030006)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDHEADER = HRESULT(\$800300FB)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDNAME = HRESULT(\$800300FC)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDPARAMETER = HRESULT(\$80030057)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDPOINTER = HRESULT(\$80030009)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_LOCKVIOLATION = HRESULT(\$80030021)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_MEDIUMFULL = HRESULT(\$80030070)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_NOMOREFILES = HRESULT(\$80030012)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_NOTCURRENT = HRESULT(\$80030101)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_OLDDLL = HRESULT(\$80030105)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_OLDFORMAT = HRESULT(\$80030104)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_PATHNOTFOUND = HRESULT(\$80030003)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_PROPSSETMISMATCHED = HRESULT(\$800300F0)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_READFAULT = HRESULT(\$8003001E)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_REVERTED = HRESULT(\$80030102)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SEEKERROR = HRESULT(\$80030019)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SHAREREQUIRED = HRESULT(\$80030106)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SHAREVIOLATION = HRESULT(\$80030020)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_TERMINATED = HRESULT(\$80030202)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_TOOMANYOPENFILES = HRESULT(\$80030004)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_UNIMPLEMENTEDFUNCTION = HRESULT(\$800300FE)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_UNKNOWN = HRESULT(\$800300FD)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_WRITEFAULT = HRESULT(\$8003001D)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_BLOCK = \$00030201

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_CONVERTED = \$00030200

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_MONITORING = \$00030203

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_RETRYNOW = \$00030202

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_CUR = 1

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_END = 2

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_SET = 0

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

### 77.3.2 Types

`ArgList = Pointer`

`ArgList` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`DWORD = LongWord`

Alias for cardinal type

`FILETIME = _FILETIME`

Alias for the `_FILETIME` type

`Largeint = Int64`

`Largeint` is an alias for the `Int64` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LargeUint = QWord`

`LargeUint` is an alias for the `QWord` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LARGE_INT = Largeint`

`LARGE_INT` is an alias for the `Int64` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LARGE_UINT = LargeUint`

`LARGE_UINT` is an alias for the `QWord` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PByte = System.PByte`

`PByte` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PCLSID = PGuid`

`PCLSID` is a pointer to a `TCLSID` type.

`PDisplay = Pointer`

`PDisplay` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`PDouble = System.PDouble`

`PDouble` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PDWord = ^DWORD`

`PDWord` is equivalent to the `PCardinal` type.

`PEvent` = `Pointer`

`PEvent` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`PFileTime` = `^TFileTime`

**Pointer to `TFileTime` type**

`PLargeInt` = `^Largeint`

`PLargeInt` is an alias for the `PInt64` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PLargeUInt` = `^LargeUInt`

`PLargeUInt` is an alias for the `PQWord` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PLongint` = `System.PLongint`

`PLongint` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PoleStr` = `PWideChar`

`PoleStr` is a pointer to a (double) null-terminated array of `TChar` characters.

`PPoint` = `^TPoint`

`PPoint` is a typed pointer to the `TPoint` (1917) type.

`PPoleStr` = `^PoleStr`

`PPoleStr` is a typed pointer to a `PoleStr` variable.

`PRect` = `^TRect`

`PRect` is a typed pointer to the `TRect` (1925) type.

`PSize` = `^TSize`

`PSize` is a typed pointer to the `TSize` (1930) type.

`PSmallInt` = `System.PSmallInt`

`PSmallInt` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PSmallPoint` = `^TSmallPoint`

`PSmallPoint` is a typed pointer to the `TSmallPoint` (1912) record.

```
PStatStg = ^TStatStg
```

Pointer to TStatStg record.

```
PXrmOptionDescRec = ^TXrmOptionDescRec
```

PXrmOptionDescRec is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
Region = Pointer
```

Region is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
STATSTG = TStatStg
```

Alias for the TStatStg type.

```
TagPoint = TPoint deprecated
```

tagPOINT is a simple alias for TPoint ([1917](#))

```
TagSize = TSize deprecated
```

tagSize is an alias for the TSize ([1930](#)) type.

```
tagSTATSTG = record
public
  pwcsName : POleStr;
  dwType : DWORD
  ;
  cbSize : LARGE_UINT;
  mtime : TFileTime;
  ctime : TFileTime
  ;
  atime : TFileTime;
  grfMode : DWORD;
  grfLocksSupported : DWORD
  ;
  clsid : TCLSID;
  grfStateBits : DWORD;
  reserved : DWORD;
end
```

tagSTATSTG is used in the IStream.Stat ([1936](#)) call. It describes a storage medium (typically a file).

```
TArray4IntegerType = Array[0..3] of LongInt
```

```
TBooleanDynArray = Array of Boolean
```

TBooleanDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of booleans.

TByteDynArray = Array of Byte

TByteDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (8-bit, unsigned) bytes.

TCardinalDynArray = Array of Cardinal

TCardinalDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, unsigned) cardinals.

TCLSID = TGuid

TCLSID is an alias for the #rtl.system.TGUID (1388) type.

TCompDynArray = Array of Comp

TCurrencyArray = Array of currency

TDirection = (FromBeginning, FromEnd)

Table 77.2: Enumeration values for type TDirection

| Value         | Explanation |
|---------------|-------------|
| FromBeginning |             |
| FromEnd       |             |

TDoubleDynArray = Array of Double

TSoubleDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of doubles. (regular floating point type)

TDuplicates = (dupIgnore, dupAccept, dupError)

Table 77.3: Enumeration values for type TDuplicates

| Value     | Explanation  |
|-----------|--|
| dupAccept | Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.                |
| dupError  | Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate. |
| dupIgnore | Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.            |

TDuplicates can be used to indicate how a list structure acts on the addition of a duplicate item to the list.

**dupIgnore** Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.

**dupAccept** Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.

**dupError** Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate.

TEndian = Objpas.TEndian

TExtendedDynArray = Array of Extended

TFileTime = \_FILETIME

Alias for the \_FILETIME type

TInt64DynArray = Array of Int64

TInt64DynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (64-bit, signed) int64s.

TIntegerDynArray = Array of Integer

TIntegerDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, signed) integers.

TListCallback = procedure(data: pointer; arg: pointer) of object

TListCallback is the prototype for a Foreach operation on a list. It will be called with as Data the pointer in the list, and Arg will contain the extra user data added to the Foreach call. It can be used in methods of objects; for a version that can be used as a global procedure, see TListStaticCallback ([1911](#))

TListStaticCallback = procedure(data: pointer; arg: pointer)

TListStaticCallback is the prototype for a Foreach operation on a list. It will be called with as Data the pointer in the list, and Arg will contain the extra user data added to the Foreach call. It can be used in plain procedures; for a version that can be used as a method, see TListCallback ([1911](#))

TLongWordDynArray = Array of LongWord

TLongWordDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, unsigned) LongWords.

TObjectDynArray = Array of TObject

TOLEChar = WideChar

TOLEChar is an alias for the WideChar type, defined in the system unit.

TPointerDynArray = Array of Pointer

Dynamic array of untyped pointers

TQWordDynArray = Array of QWord

TQWordDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (64-bit, unsigned) QWords.

TShortIntDynArray = Array of ShortInt

TShortintDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (8-bit, signed) shortints.

TSingleDynArray = Array of Single

TSingleDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of singles. (smallest floating point type)

TSmallIntDynArray = Array of SmallInt

TSmallintDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (16-bit, unsigned) integers.

```
TSmallPoint = packed record
public
  X : SmallInt;
  Y : SmallInt
;
end
```

TSmallPoint defines a point in a 2-dimensional plane, just like TPoint (1917), but the coordinates have a smaller range: The coordinates are smallints (16-bit, signed) and they run from -MaxSmallInt to maxSmallint.

TSplitRectType = (srLeft, srRight, srTop, srBottom)

Table 77.4: Enumeration values for type TSplitRectType

| Value    | Explanation |
|----------|-------------|
| srBottom |             |
| srLeft   |             |
| srRight  |             |
| srTop    |             |

TStatStg = tagSTATSTG

TStatStg is a record type describing a storage medium. It is uses in the IStream.Stat (1936) function.

TStringDynArray = Array of AnsiString

TStringDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of Ansistrings.

TValueRelationship = - 1..1

TWideStringDynArray = Array of WideString

TWideStringDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of WideStrings.

```
TWordDynArray = Array of Word
```

TWordDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (16-bit, unsigned) words.

```
TXrmOptionDescRec = record
end
```

TXrmOptionDescRec is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
Widget = Pointer
```

Widget is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
WidgetClass = Pointer
```

WidgetClass is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
XrmOptionDescRec = TXrmOptionDescRec
```

XrmOptionDescRec is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

```
_FILETIME = packed record
public
    dwLowDateTime : DWORD;
    dwHighDateTime
    : DWORD;
end
```

\_FILETIME describes a file time stamp. It is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used except when implementing or accessing the IStream interface. The TDateTime type should be used instead.

## 77.4 Procedures and functions

### 77.4.1 Bounds

**Synopsis:** Create a rectangle, given a position and size

**Declaration:** `function Bounds(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; AWidth: Integer; AHeight: Integer) : TRect`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Bounds returns a TRect structure with the indicated position (Left=ALeft and Top=ATop) and size (Right=ALeft+AWidth and Bottom=ATop+AHeight)

**See also:** Rect ([1916](#)), PtInRect ([1915](#)), IntersectRect ([1914](#)), UnionRect ([1916](#))

### 77.4.2 CenterPoint

Synopsis: Return the center point of a rectangle

Declaration: `function CenterPoint(const Rect: TRect) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `CenterPoint` returns the center point of the rectangle `Rect`.

See also: `PtinRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915)

### 77.4.3 EqualRect

Synopsis: Check if two rectangles are equal.

Declaration: `function EqualRect(const r1: TRect; const r2: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `EqualRect` returns `True` if the rectangles `R1` and `R2` are equal (i.e. have the position and size). If the rectangles differ, the function returns `False`

See also: `Rect` (1916), `Bounds` (1913), `PtinRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `UnionRect` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

### 77.4.4 InflateRect

Synopsis: Increase the rectangle in size, keeping it centered

Declaration: `function InflateRect(var Rect: TRect; dx: Integer; dy: Integer)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InflateRect` inflates the rectangle horizontally with `dx` pixels on each side, and vertically with `dy` pixels, thus keeping its center point on the same location. It returns `true` if the operation was successfully, `False` if it was not (only possible if the address of `Rect` is `Nil`).

See also: `PtinRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `CenterPoint` (1914), `Size` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915)

### 77.4.5 IntersectRect

Synopsis: Return the intersection of 2 rectangles

Declaration: `function IntersectRect(var Rect: TRect; const R1: TRect;  
const R2: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntersectRect` returns the intersection of the 2 rectangles `R1` and `R2` in `Rect`. It returns `True` if the 2 rectangles have an intersection, otherwise `False` is returned, and `Rect` is filled with zero.

See also: `PtinRect` (1915), `UnionRect` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

### 77.4.6 IsRectEmpty

Synopsis: Check whether a rectangle is empty

Declaration: `function IsRectEmpty(const Rect: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsRectEmpty` returns true if the rectangle is empty, i.e. has a zero or negative width or height.

See also: `PtinRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

### 77.4.7 OffsetRect

Synopsis: Offset the rectangle

Declaration: `function OffsetRect(var Rect: TRect; DX: Integer; DY: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `OffsetRect` offsets the rectangle `Rect` by a horizontal distance `DX` and a vertical distance `DY`. The operation returns `True` if the operation was successful, `false` if it was not (only possible if the address of `Rect` is `Nil`).

See also: `PtinRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915)

### 77.4.8 Point

Synopsis: Create a point

Declaration: `function Point(x: Integer; y: Integer) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Point` returns a `TPoint` structure with the given position (`X`, `Y`).

See also: `Rect` (1916), `PtInRect` (1915)

### 77.4.9 PtInRect

Synopsis: Check whether a point is inside a rectangle.

Declaration: `function PtInRect(const Rect: TRect; const p: TPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PtInRect` returns `True` if `p` is located inside `Rect`, and `False` if it is located outside the rectangle.

**Remark** Note that the bottom, right edges are not considered part of the rectangle, therefore a point located on one of these edges will not be considered part of the rectangle, meaning that for a record (10,10,100,100) the point (90,100) will not be considered part of the record, but 90, 10 will be.

See also: `IntersectRect` (1914), `UnionRect` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

### 77.4.10 Rect

Synopsis: Create a rectangle record

Declaration: `function Rect (Left: Integer; Top: Integer; Right: Integer;  
Bottom: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rect` returns a rectangle structure with the 4 members `Left`, `Top`, `Right` and `Bottom` as passed in the arguments.

See also: `Bounds` (1913), `PtInRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `UnionRect` (1916), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

### 77.4.11 Size

Synopsis: Return the size of the rectangle

Declaration: `function Size (AWidth: Integer; AHeight: Integer) : TSize`  
`function Size (const ARect: TRect) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `Size` returns a `TSize` record with the indicated `AWidth`, `AHeight`. In the case `ARect` is passed, the width and height are calculated (taking into account that the right, bottom are not considered part of the rectangle).

See also: `PtInRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `CenterPoint` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915)

### 77.4.12 UnionRect

Synopsis: Return the union of 2 rectangles.

Declaration: `function UnionRect (var Rect: TRect; const R1: TRect; const R2: TRect)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnionRect` returns the rectangle that encompasses both `R1` and `R2` in `Rect`. It returns `True` if the resulting rectangle is not empty, `False` if the result is an empty rectangle (in which case the result is filled with zeroes)

See also: `PtInRect` (1915), `IntersectRect` (1914), `IsRectEmpty` (1915), `OffsetRect` (1915), `InflateRect` (1914), `Size` (1916)

## 77.5 TPoint

```
TPoint = packed record
public
  X : LongInt;
  Y : LongInt;
class
  function Zero : TPoint; Static;
  function Add(const apt: TPoint
```

```

) : TPoint;
function Distance(const apt: TPoint) : ValReal;
function
IsZero : Boolean;
function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint
;
SetLocation;
Offset;
class function PointInCircle(const apt
: TPoint; const acenter: TPoint;
const
aradius: Integer) : Boolean; Static;
TPoint.class operator =(const
apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)
: Boolean
;
TPoint.class operator <>(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint
)
: Boolean;
TPoint.class operator +
(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint.class
operator -(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint
.class operator :=(const aspt: TSmallPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint.class
operator explicit(const apt: TPoint) : TSmallPoint;
end

```

TPoint is a generic definition of a point in a 2-dimensional discrete plane, where X indicates the horizontal position, and Y the vertical position (positions usually measured in pixels), and 0, 0 is the origin of the plane.

Usually, the origin is the upper-left corner of the screen, with Y increasing as one moves further down the screen - this is opposite to the mathematical view where Y increases as one moves upwards.

The coordinates are integers, (32-bit, signed) so the coordinate system runs from -MaxInt to MaxInt.

**77.5.1 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                          | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1918</a> | Add                             |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint       |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint      |             |
| <a href="#">1918</a> | Distance                        |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean    |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint    |             |
| <a href="#">1918</a> | IsZero                          |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | Offset                          |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | PointInCircle                   |             |
| <a href="#">1918</a> | SetLocation                     |             |
| <a href="#">1918</a> | Subtract                        |             |
| <a href="#">1919</a> | subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint  |             |
| <a href="#">1918</a> | Zero                            |             |

**77.5.2 TPoint.Zero**

Declaration: `class function Zero : TPoint; Static`

Visibility: `public`

**77.5.3 TPoint.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

**77.5.4 TPoint.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const apt: TPoint) : ValReal`

Visibility: `public`

**77.5.5 TPoint.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**77.5.6 TPoint.Subtract**

Declaration: `function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

**77.5.7 TPoint.SetLocation**

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure SetLocation(ax: LongInt; ay: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.5.8 TPoint.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure Offset(dx: LongInt; dy: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.9 TPoint.PointInCircle

Declaration: `class function PointInCircle(const apt: TPoint; const acenter: TPoint;`  
`const aradius: Integer) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.10 TPoint.equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator =(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.11 TPoint.notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator <>(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.12 TPoint.add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator +(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.13 TPoint.subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator -(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.14 TPoint.assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator :=(const aspt: TSmallPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.15 TPoint.explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator explicit(const apt: TPoint) : TSmallPoint`

Visibility: public

**77.6 TPointF**

```

TPointF = packed record
public
  x : Single;
  y : Single;
  Add;
  function Distance(const apt: TPointF) : Single;
  function DotProduct
    (const apt: TPointF) : Single;
  function IsZero : Boolean;
  Subtract
;
  SetLocation;
  Offset;
  function Scale(afactor: Single) : TPointF
;
  function Ceiling : TPoint;
  function Truncate : TPoint;
  function
    Floor : TPoint;
  function Round : TPoint;
  function &Length : Single
;
  Create;
  TPointF.class operator =(const apt1: TPointF; const
    apt2: TPointF)
                        : Boolean;
  TPointF.class
  operator <>(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
    : Boolean;
  TPointF.class operator +(const apt1
    : TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                        : TPointF
;
  TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF
    )
                        : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator
    -(const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator *(const
    apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                        :
    Single;
  TPointF.class operator *(const apt1: TPointF; afactor:
    single) : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator *(afactor: single; const
    apt1: TPointF) : TPointF;
end

```

**77.6.1 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                            | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1921</a> | Add                               |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF      |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Ceiling                           |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | Create                            |             |
| <a href="#">1921</a> | Distance                          |             |
| <a href="#">1921</a> | DotProduct                        |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean    |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Floor                             |             |
| <a href="#">1921</a> | IsZero                            |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | Length                            |             |
| <a href="#">1924</a> | multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF  |             |
| <a href="#">1924</a> | multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF  |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single  |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | negative(TPointF):TPointF         |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Offset                            |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Round                             |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Scale                             |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | SetLocation                       |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Subtract                          |             |
| <a href="#">1923</a> | subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF |             |
| <a href="#">1922</a> | Truncate                          |             |

**77.6.2 TPointF.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const apt: TPoint) : TPointF`  
`function Add(const apt: TPointF) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

**77.6.3 TPointF.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const apt: TPointF) : Single`

Visibility: public

**77.6.4 TPointF.DotProduct**

Declaration: `function DotProduct(const apt: TPointF) : Single`

Visibility: public

**77.6.5 TPointF.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.6 TPointF.Subtract

Declaration: `function Subtract(const apt: TPointF) : TPointF`  
`function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.7 TPointF.SetLocation

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPointF)`  
`procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure SetLocation(ax: LongInt; ay: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.8 TPointF.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const apt: TPointF)`  
`procedure Offset(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure Offset(dx: LongInt; dy: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.9 TPointF.Scale

Declaration: `function Scale(afactor: Single) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.10 TPointF.Ceiling

Declaration: `function Ceiling : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.11 TPointF.Truncate

Declaration: `function Truncate : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.12 TPointF.Floor

Declaration: `function Floor : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.13 TPointF.Round

Declaration: `function Round : TPoint`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.14 TPointF.Length

Declaration: `function &Length : Single`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.15 TPointF.Create

Declaration: `class function Create(const ax: Single; const ay: Single) : TPointF  
; Overload; Static  
class function Create(const apt: TPointF) : TPointF; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.16 TPointF.equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator =(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.17 TPointF.notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator <>(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.18 TPointF.add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator +(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)  
: TPointF`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.19 TPointF.subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)  
: TPointF`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.20 TPointF.negative(TPointF):TPointF

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

#### 77.6.21 TPointF.multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single

Declaration: `TPointF.class operator *(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)  
: Single`

Visibility: public

### 77.6.22 TPointF.multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF

Declaration: TPointF.class operator \*(const apt1: TPointF; afactor: single) : TPointF

Visibility: public

### 77.6.23 TPointF.multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF

Declaration: TPointF.class operator \*(afactor: single; const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF

Visibility: public

## 77.7 TRect

```

TRect = packed record
private
    function getHeight : LongInt;
    function
        getLocation : TPoint;
    function getSize : TSize;
    function getWidth
        : LongInt;
    procedure setHeight (AValue: LongInt);
    procedure setSize
        (AValue: TSize);
    procedure setWidth (AValue: LongInt);
public
    Create
    ;
    TRect.class operator =(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean;
    TRect
        .class operator <>(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean;
    TRect.class operator
        +(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect;
    TRect.class operator *(L: TRect
        ; R: TRect) : TRect;
    class function Empty : TRect; Static;
    procedure
        NormalizeRect;
    function IsEmpty : Boolean;
    Contains;
    function
        IntersectsWith(R: TRect) : Boolean;
    Intersect;
    Union;
    Offset
    ;
    SetLocation;
    Inflate;
    function CenterPoint : TPoint;
    SplitRect
    ;
    property Height : LongInt;

```

```

    property Width : LongInt;
    property
    Size : TSize;
    property Location : TPoint;
case LongInt of
0: (
    public
    Left : LongInt;
    Top : LongInt;
    Right : LongInt;
    Bottom
    : LongInt;
);
1: (
public
    TopLeft : TPoint;
    BottomRight : TPoint
    ;
);
2: (
public
    Vector : TArray4IntegerType;
);
end

```

TRect defines a rectangle in a discrete plane. It is described by the horizontal (`left`, `right`) or vertical (`top`, `Bottom`) positions (in pixels) of the edges, or, alternatively, by the coordinates of the top left (`TopLeft`) and bottom right (`BottomRight`) corners.

### 77.7.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                                     | Description |
|----------------------|--|-------------|
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>add(TRect,TRect):TRect</code>        |             |
| <a href="#">1928</a> | <code>CenterPoint</code>                   |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>Contains</code>                      |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>Create</code>                        |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>Empty</code>                         |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</code>    |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>Inflate</code>                       |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>Intersect</code>                     |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>IntersectsWith</code>                |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>IsEmpty</code>                       |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect</code>   |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>NormalizeRect</code>                 |             |
| <a href="#">1926</a> | <code>notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>Offset</code>                        |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>SetLocation</code>                   |             |
| <a href="#">1928</a> | <code>SplitRect</code>                     |             |
| <a href="#">1927</a> | <code>Union</code>                         |             |

**77.7.2 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1928</a> | Height     | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1928</a> | Location   | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1928</a> | Size       | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1928</a> | Width      | rw     |             |

**77.7.3 TRect.Create**

Declaration: constructor Create(Origin: TPoint)  
 constructor Create(Origin: TPoint; AWidth: LongInt; AHeight: LongInt)  
 constructor Create(ALeft: LongInt; ATop: LongInt; ARight: LongInt;  
                     ABottom: LongInt)  
 constructor Create(P1: TPoint; P2: TPoint; Normalize: Boolean)  
 constructor Create(R: TRect; Normalize: Boolean)

Visibility: public

**77.7.4 TRect.equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean**

Declaration: TRect.class operator =(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**77.7.5 TRect.notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean**

Declaration: TRect.class operator <>(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**77.7.6 TRect.add(TRect,TRect):TRect**

Declaration: TRect.class operator +(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect

Visibility: public

**77.7.7 TRect.multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect**

Declaration: TRect.class operator \*(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect

Visibility: public

**77.7.8 TRect.Empty**

Declaration: class function Empty : TRect; Static

Visibility: public

**77.7.9 TRect.NormalizeRect**

Declaration: procedure NormalizeRect

Visibility: public

### 77.7.10 TRect.IsEmpty

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.11 TRect.Contains

Declaration: `function Contains(Pt: TPoint) : Boolean`  
`function Contains(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.12 TRect.IntersectsWith

Declaration: `function IntersectsWith(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.13 TRect.Intersect

Declaration: `class function Intersect(R1: TRect; R2: TRect) : TRect; Static`  
`procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.14 TRect.Union

Declaration: `class function Union(R1: TRect; R2: TRect) : TRect; Static`  
`procedure Union(R: TRect)`  
`class function Union(const Points: Array of TPoint) : TRect; Static`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.15 TRect.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(DX: LongInt; DY: LongInt)`  
`procedure Offset(DP: TPoint)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.16 TRect.SetLocation

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(X: LongInt; Y: LongInt)`  
`procedure SetLocation(P: TPoint)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.7.17 TRect.Inflate

Declaration: `procedure Inflate(DX: LongInt; DY: LongInt)`  
`procedure Inflate(DL: LongInt; DT: LongInt; DR: LongInt; DB: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.7.18 TRect.CenterPoint**

Declaration: `function CenterPoint : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.7.19 TRect.SplitRect**

Declaration: `function SplitRect (SplitType: TSplitRectType; ASize: LongInt) : TRect`  
`function SplitRect (SplitType: TSplitRectType; Percent: Double) : TRect`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.7.20 TRect.Height**

Declaration: `Property Height : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.7.21 TRect.Width**

Declaration: `Property Width : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.7.22 TRect.Size**

Declaration: `Property Size : TSize`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.7.23 TRect.Location**

Declaration: `Property Location : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

## **77.8 TRectF**

```
TRectF = packed record
private
  function GetHeight : Single;
  function
    GetWidth : Single;
  procedure SetHeight (AValue: Single);
  procedure
```

```

    SetWidth(AValue: Single);
public
    function Union(const r: TRectF
    ) : TRectF;
    procedure Offset(const dx: Single; const dy: Single
    );
    property Width : Single;
    property Height : Single;
case Integer
    of
0: (
public
    Left : Single;
    Top : Single;
    Right : Single
    ;
    Bottom : Single;
);
1: (
public
    TopLeft : TPointF;
    BottomRight
    : TPointF;
);
end

```

### 77.8.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method | Description |
|----------------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1929</a> | Offset |             |
| <a href="#">1929</a> | Union  |             |

### 77.8.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1930</a> | Height     | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1930</a> | Width      | rw     |             |

### 77.8.3 TRectF.Union

Declaration: `function Union(const r: TRectF) : TRectF`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.8.4 TRectF.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const dx: Single; const dy: Single)`

Visibility: `public`

**77.8.5 TRectF.Width**

Declaration: Property Width : Single

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.8.6 TRectF.Height**

Declaration: Property Height : Single

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.9 TSize**

```
TSize = packed record
public
  cx : LongInt;
  cy : LongInt;
  function
    Add(const asz: TSize) : TSize;
    function Distance(const asz: TSize
    ) : Double;
    function IsZero : Boolean;
    function Subtract(const
    asz: TSize) : TSize;
    TSize.class operator =(const asz1: TSize;
    const asz2: TSize) : Boolean;
    TSize.class operator <>(const asz1
    : TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean;
    TSize.class operator +(const
    asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize;
    TSize.class operator
    -(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize;
  property Width
    : LongInt;
  property Height : LongInt;
end
```

TSize is a type to describe the size of a rectangular area, where `cx` is the width, `cy` is the height (in pixels) of the rectangle.

**77.9.1 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                        | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1931</a> | Add                           |             |
| <a href="#">1932</a> | add(TSize,TSize):TSize        |             |
| <a href="#">1931</a> | Distance                      |             |
| <a href="#">1931</a> | equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean    |             |
| <a href="#">1931</a> | IsZero                        |             |
| <a href="#">1931</a> | notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean |             |
| <a href="#">1931</a> | Subtract                      |             |
| <a href="#">1932</a> | subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize   |             |

**77.9.2 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1932</a> | Height     | rw     |             |
| <a href="#">1932</a> | Width      | rw     |             |

**77.9.3 TSize.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const asz: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.9.4 TSize.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const asz: TSize) : Double`

Visibility: public

**77.9.5 TSize.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.9.6 TSize.Subtract**

Declaration: `function Subtract(const asz: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.9.7 TSize.equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator =(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.9.8 TSize.notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator <>(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.9.9 TSize.add(TSize,TSize):TSize**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator +(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.9.10 TSize.subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator -(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.9.11 TSize.Width**

Declaration: `Property Width : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.9.12 TSize.Height**

Declaration: `Property Height : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.10 IClassFactory****77.10.1 Description**

`IClassFactory` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

**77.10.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                      | Description                            |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1932</a> | <code>CreateInstance</code> | Create a new instance of an interface. |
| <a href="#">1933</a> | <code>LockServer</code>     | Lock ActiveX server object.            |

**77.10.3 IClassFactory.CreateInstance**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of an interface.

Declaration: `function CreateInstance(const unkOuter: IUnknown; const riid: TGuid;  
out vObject) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `IClassFactory.CreateInstance` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

### 77.10.4 IClassFactory.LockServer

Synopsis: Lock ActiveX server object.

Declaration: `function LockServer(fLock: LongBool) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `IClassFactory.LockServer` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

## 77.11 ISequentialStream

### 77.11.1 Description

`ISequentialStream` is the interface for streams which only support sequential reading of chunks of data. It is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

See also: `IStream` ([1933](#))

### 77.11.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method | Description               |
|----------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| <a href="#">1933</a> | Read   | Read data from the stream |
| <a href="#">1933</a> | Write  | Write data to the stream  |

### 77.11.3 ISequentialStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream

Declaration: `function Read(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbRead: PDWord) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads `cbCount` bytes from the stream into the memory pointed to by `pv` and returns the number of bytes read in `pcbRead`. The result is zero for success or an error code.

See also: `ISequentialStream.Write` ([1933](#))

### 77.11.4 ISequentialStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function Write(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbWritten: PDWord) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes `cbCount` bytes from the memory pointed to by `pv` to the stream and returns the number of bytes written in `pcbWritten`. The result is zero for success or an error code.

See also: `ISequentialStream.Read` ([1933](#))

## 77.12 IStream

### 77.12.1 Description

An abstract interface for an external (non pascal) stream, as defined in Microsoft COM interfaces

**77.12.2 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method       | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------|---|
| <a href="#">1936</a> | Clone        | Clone the stream instance                                 |
| <a href="#">1935</a> | Commit       | Commit data to the stream                                 |
| <a href="#">1934</a> | CopyTo       | Copy data from one stream to another                      |
| <a href="#">1935</a> | LockRegion   | Lock a region of bytes in the stream                      |
| <a href="#">1935</a> | Revert       | Revert changes  |
| <a href="#">1934</a> | Seek         | Set the stream position                                   |
| <a href="#">1934</a> | SetSize      | Set the stream size                                       |
| <a href="#">1936</a> | Stat         | return information about the stream.                      |
| <a href="#">1935</a> | UnlockRegion | Unlocks a previously locked region of bytes in the stream |

**77.12.3 IStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set the stream position

Declaration: `function Seek(dlibMove: Largeint; dwOrigin: DWORD;  
out libNewPosition: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the stream position at `dlibMove` bytes from `dwOrigin` (one of the `SEEK_*` constants) and returns the new absolute position in `libNewPosition`. The function returns zero on success, or an error code.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

**77.12.4 IStream.SetSize**

Synopsis: Set the stream size

Declaration: `function SetSize(libNewSize: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetSize` sets the size of the stream to `libNewSize` bytes, if the stream allows it. On success, zero is returned.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

**77.12.5 IStream.CopyTo**

Synopsis: Copy data from one stream to another

Declaration: `function CopyTo(stm: IStream; cb: LargeUint; out cbRead: LargeUint;  
out cbWritten: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyTo` copies `cb` bytes from the stream to target stream `stm`. `cbRead` returns how many bytes were read from the stream, `cbwrite` returns how many bytes were actually written to the destination stream. The function returns zero on success.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.6 IStream.Commit

Synopsis: Commit data to the stream

Declaration: `function Commit(grfCommitFlags: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Commit` commits the data in the stream to the underlying medium. `Flags` is a set of options to control the commit operation (see MSDN for the possible flags).

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.7 IStream.Revert

Synopsis: Revert changes

Declaration: `function Revert : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Revert` reverts all changes that were done to a transacted stream, i.e. all changes since the last commit. The function returns zero on success.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.8 IStream.LockRegion

Synopsis: Lock a region of bytes in the stream

Declaration: `function LockRegion(libOffset: LargeUInt; cb: LargeUInt;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockRegion` locks a region of the storage, starting at `libOffset`, for `cbCount` bytes. The applied lock is of type `dwLockType`. The function returns zero if the lock was successfully applied.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.9 IStream.UnlockRegion

Synopsis: Unlocks a previously locked region of bytes in the stream

Declaration: `function UnlockRegion(libOffset: LargeUInt; cb: LargeUInt;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnlockRegion` removes the lock on a region of the storage, starting at `libOffset`, for `cbCount` bytes. The lock must be of type `dwLockType`. The function returns zero if the lock was successfully removed.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.10 IStream.Stat

Synopsis: return information about the stream.

Declaration: `function Stat(out statstg: TStatStg; grfStatFlag: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Stat` returns information about the stream in `statstg`, taking into account the flags in `grfStatFlag` (one of the `STATFLAG_` constants). The function returns zero if the call was successful.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.12.11 IStream.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the stream instance

Declaration: `function Clone(out stm: IStream) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clone` returns an independent but initially equal copy of the stream in `stm`. The function returns zero if the call was successful.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

## 77.13 TBitConverter

### 77.13.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                  | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1936</a> | <code>From</code>       |             |
| <a href="#">1937</a> | <code>InTo</code>       |             |
| <a href="#">1936</a> | <code>UnsafeFrom</code> |             |
| <a href="#">1937</a> | <code>UnsafeInTo</code> |             |

### 77.13.2 TBitConverter.UnsafeFrom

Declaration: `class procedure UnsafeFrom<T>(const ASrcValue: T;  
var ADestination: Array of Byte;  
AOffset: Integer); Static`

Visibility: default

### 77.13.3 TBitConverter.From

Declaration: `class procedure From<T>(const ASrcValue: T;  
var ADestination: Array of Byte;  
AOffset: Integer); Static`

Visibility: default

#### 77.13.4 TBitConverter.UnsafeInTo

Declaration: `class function UnsafeInTo<T>(const ASource: Array of Byte;  
AOffset: Integer) : T; Static`

Visibility: default

#### 77.13.5 TBitConverter.InTo

Declaration: `class function InTo<T>(const ASource: Array of Byte; AOffset: Integer)  
: T; Static`

Visibility: default

## Chapter 78

# Reference for unit 'TypeInfo'

### 78.1 Used units

Table 78.1: Used units by unit 'TypeInfo'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils | <a href="#">1599</a> |

### 78.2 Overview

The `TypeInfo` unit contains many routines which can be used for the querying of the Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) which is generated by the compiler for classes that are compiled under the `{ $M+ }` switch. This information can be used to retrieve or set property values for published properties for totally unknown classes. In particular, it can be used to stream classes. The `TPersistent` class in the `Classes` unit is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state and serves as the base class for all classes that need to be streamed.

The unit should be compatible to the Delphi unit with the same name.

The examples in this chapter use a `rttiobj` auxiliary unit, which contains an object that has a published property for all supported types. It also contains some auxiliary routines and definitions. This unit is included in the documentation sources, in the directory `typinfex`.

### 78.3 Auxiliary functions

Other `typinfo` related functions.

Table 78.2:

| Name                                 | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>GetEnumName</code> (1952)      | Get an enumerated type element name                          |
| <code>GetEnumValue</code> (1954)     | Get ordinal number of an enumerated type, based on the name. |
| <code>GetEnumNameCount</code> (1952) | Get number of elements in an enumerated type.                |
| <code>GetTypeData</code> (1966)      | Skip type name and return a pointer to the type data         |
| <code>SetToString</code> (1976)      | Convert a set to its string representation                   |
| <code>StringToSet</code> (1978)      | Convert a string representation of a set to a set            |

## 78.4 Getting or setting property values

Functions to set or set a property's value.

Table 78.3:

| Name                                 | Description                                     |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>GetEnumProp</code> (1953)      | Return the value of an enumerated type property |
| <code>GetFloatProp</code> (1954)     | Return the value of a float property            |
| <code>GetInt64Prop</code> (1955)     | Return the value of an Int64 property           |
| <code>GetMethodProp</code> (1956)    | Return the value of a procedural type property  |
| <code>GetObjectProp</code> (1958)    | Return the value of an object property          |
| <code>GetOrdProp</code> (1960)       | Return the value of an ordinal type property    |
| <code>GetProperty</code> (1963)      | Return the value of a property as a variant     |
| <code>GetSetProp</code> (1964)       | Return the value of a set property              |
| <code>GetStringProp</code> (1965)    | Return the value of a string property           |
| <code>GetWideStrProp</code> (1967)   | Return the value of a widestring property       |
| <code>GetVariantProp</code> (1967)   | Return the value of a variant property          |
| <code>SetEnumProp</code> (1971)      | Set the value of an enumerated type property    |
| <code>SetFloatProp</code> (1972)     | Set the value of a float property               |
| <code>SetInt64Prop</code> (1972)     | Set the value of an Int64 property              |
| <code>SetMethodProp</code> (1973)    | Set the value of a procedural type property     |
| <code>SetObjectProp</code> (1974)    | Set the value of an object property             |
| <code>SetOrdProp</code> (1974)       | Set the value of an ordinal type property       |
| <code>SetPropertyValue</code> (1975) | Set the value of a property through a variant   |
| <code>SetSetProp</code> (1975)       | Set the value of a set property                 |
| <code>SetStrProp</code> (1976)       | Set the value of a string property              |
| <code>SetWideStrProp</code> (1978)   | Set the value of a widestring property          |
| <code>SetVariantProp</code> (1978)   | Set the value of a variant property             |

## 78.5 Examining published property information

Functions for retrieving or examining property information

Table 78.4:

| Name                      | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| FindPropInfo (1950)       | Getting property type information, With error checking. |
| GetPropInfo (1961)        | Getting property type information, No error checking.   |
| GetPropInfos (1961)       | Find property information of a certain kind             |
| GetObjectPropClass (1959) | Return the declared class of an object property         |
| GetPropList (1962)        | Get a list of all published properties                  |
| IsPublishedProp (1967)    | Is a property published                                 |
| IsStoredProp (1968)       | Is a property stored                                    |
| PropIsType (1969)         | Is a property of a certain kind                         |
| PropType (1970)           | Return the type of a property                           |

## 78.6 Constants, types and variables

### 78.6.1 Constants

`BooleanIdents : Array[Boolean] of string = ('False', 'True')`

Names for boolean values

`DotSep : string = '.'`

Name separator character

`OnGetPropValue : TGetPropValue = Nil`

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the `GetPropValue` (1963) function.

`OnGetVariantprop : TGetVariantProp = Nil`

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of variant properties. If set, it is called by the `GetVariantProp` (1967) function.

`OnSetPropValue : TSetPropValue = Nil`

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the `SetPropValue` (1975) function.

`OnSetVariantprop : TSetVariantProp = Nil`

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of variant properties. If set, it is called by the `GetVariantProp` (1967) function.

`ptConst = 3`

Constant used in access method

`ptField = 0`

Property access directly from field

```
ptStatic = 1
```

Property access via static method

```
ptVirtual = 2
```

Property access via virtual method

```
tkAny = [Low(TTypeKind)..High(TTypeKind)]
```

Any property type

```
tkArray = System.tkArray
```

```
tkAString = System.tkAString
```

```
tkBool = System.tkBool
```

```
tkChar = System.tkChar
```

```
tkClass = System.tkClass
```

```
tkClassRef = System.tkClassRef
```

```
tkDynArray = System.tkDynArray
```

```
tkEnumeration = System.tkEnumeration
```

```
tkFile = System.tkFile
```

```
tkFloat = System.tkFloat
```

```
tkHelper = System.tkHelper
```

```
tkInt64 = System.tkInt64
```

```
tkInteger = System.tkInteger
```

```
tkInterface = System.tkInterface
```

`tkInterfaceRaw = System.tkInterfaceRaw`

`tkLString = System.tkLString`

`tkMethod = System.tkMethod`

`tkMethods = [tkMethod]`

**Only method properties. (event handlers)**

`tkObject = System.tkObject`

`tkPointer = System.tkPointer`

`tkProcedure = tkProcVar`

**Procedure kind**

`tkProcVar = System.tkProcVar`

`tkProperties = tkAny - tkMethods - [tkUnknown]`

**Real properties. (not methods)**

`tkQWord = System.tkQWord`

`tkRecord = System.tkRecord`

`tkSet = System.tkSet`

`tkSSString = System.tkSSString`

`tkString = tkSSString`

**Alias for the `tsSSString` enumeration value**

`tkUChar = System.tkUChar`

`tkUnknown = System.tkUnknown`

`tkUString = System.tkUString`

`tkVariant = System.tkVariant`

`tkWChar = System.tkWChar`

`tkWString = System.tkWString`

### 78.6.2 Types

`PClassData = ^TClassData`

`PInitManagedField = ^TInitManagedField`

`PInterfaceData = ^TInterfaceData`

`PInterfaceRawData = ^TInterfaceRawData`

`PIntfMethodEntry = ^TIntfMethodEntry`

`PIntfMethodTable = ^TIntfMethodTable`

`PManagedField = ^TManagedField`

`PManagedField` is a pointer to `TManagedField` (1985). It is used to describe automatically managed fields in records when the type kind is `tkRecord`.

`PParameterLocation = ^TParameterLocation`

`PParameterLocations = ^TParameterLocations`

`PProcedureParam = ^TProcedureParam`

`PProcedureParam` is a pointer to `TProcedureParam`. It is used in `TProcedureSignature` (1988).

`PPropData = ^TPropData`

`PPropInfo = ^TPropInfo`

Pointer to `TPropInfo` (1990) record

`PPropList = ^TPropList`

Pointer to `TPropList` (1947)

`PTypeInfo = ^PTypeInfo`

Pointer to `PTypeInfo` (1944) pointer

`PRecInitData = ^TRecInitData`

PRecOpOffsetTable = ^TRecOpOffsetTable

PTypeData = ^TTypeData

Pointer to TTypeData (2006) record.

PTypeInfo = ^TTypeInfo

Pointer to TTypeInfo (1949) record

PVmtFieldClassTab = ^TVmtFieldClassTab

PVmtFieldEntry = ^TVmtFieldEntry

Pointer to #rtl.typinfo.TVmtFieldEntry (2009) type.

PVmtFieldTable = ^TVmtFieldTable

Pointer to #rtl.typinfo.TVmtFieldTable (2010) type.

PVmtMethodEntry = ^TVmtMethodEntry

PVmtMethodParam = ^TVmtMethodParam

PVmtMethodTable = ^TVmtMethodTable

ShortStringBase = string

ShortStringBase is the base definition of a short string.

```
TCallConv = (ccReg, ccCdecl, ccPascal, ccStdCall, ccSafeCall, ccCppdecl,
             ,
             ccFar16, ccOldFPCCall, ccInternProc, ccSysCall, ccSoftFloat
             ,
             ccMWPascal)
```

Table 78.5: Enumeration values for type TCallConv

| Value        | Explanation                                       |
|--------------|---|
| ccCdecl      | Cdecl calling convention.                         |
| ccCppdecl    | Cppdecl calling convention                        |
| ccFar16      | Far16 calling convention (Delphi compatibility)   |
| ccInternProc | InternProc calling convention (compiler internal) |
| ccMWPascal   | MWPascal (MetroWerks Pascal) calling convention.  |
| ccOldFPCCall | OldFPCCall calling convention (deprecated)        |
| ccPascal     | Pascal calling convention.                        |
| ccReg        | Register calling convention                       |
| ccSafeCall   | SafeCall calling convention.                      |
| ccSoftFloat  | Softfloat calling convention.                     |
| ccStdCall    | stdcall calling convention.                       |
| ccSysCall    | SysCall calling convention.                       |

TCallConv is a type describing the calling convention used by a method. It contains an element for all supported calling conventions.

```
TFloatType = (ftSingle, ftDouble, ftExtended, ftComp, ftCurr)
```

Table 78.6: Enumeration values for type TFloatType

| Value      | Explanation         |
|------------|---------------------|
| ftComp     | Comp-type float     |
| ftCurr     | Currency-type float |
| ftDouble   | Double-sized float  |
| ftExtended | Extended-size float |
| ftSingle   | Single-sized float  |

The size of a float type.

```
TGetPropValue = function(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
    PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant
```

The callback function must return the property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`. If `PreferStrings` is true, it should favour converting the property to a string value. The function needs to return the variant with the property value.

```
TGetVariantProp = function(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo
    )
    : Variant
```

The callback function must return the variant property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`.

```
TInitManagedField = TManagedField
```

```
TIntfFlag = (ifHasGuid, ifDispInterface, ifDispatch, ifHasStrGUID)
```

Table 78.7: Enumeration values for type TIntfFlag

| Value           | Explanation                            |
|-----------------|--|
| ifDispatch      | Interface is a dispatch interface      |
| ifDispInterface | Interface is a dual dispatch interface |
| ifHasGuid       | Interface has GUID identifier          |
| ifHasStrGUID    | Interface has a string GUID identifier |

Type of interface.

```
TIntfFlags = Set of TIntfFlag
```

Set of TIntfFlag ([1945](#)).

TIntfFlagsBase = Set of TIntfFlag

Set of TIntfFlag (1945).

```
TMethodKind = (mkProcedure, mkFunction, mkConstructor, mkDestructor,
mkClassProcedure, mkClassFunction, mkClassConstructor
,
mkClassDestructor, mkOperatorOverload)
```

Table 78.8: Enumeration values for type TMethodKind

| Value              | Explanation               |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| mkClassConstructor | Class constructor method. |
| mkClassDestructor  | Class destructor method.  |
| mkClassFunction    | Class function            |
| mkClassProcedure   | Class procedure           |
| mkConstructor      | Class constructor         |
| mkDestructor       | Class Destructor          |
| mkFunction         | Function method           |
| mkOperatorOverload | Operator overloader       |
| mkProcedure        | Procedure method.         |

Method type description

```
TOrdType = (otSByte, otUByte, otSWord, otUWord, otSLong, otULong, otSQWord
,
otUQWord)
```

Table 78.9: Enumeration values for type TOrdType

| Value    | Explanation                 |
|----------|-----------------------------|
| otSByte  | Signed byte                 |
| otSLong  | Signed longint              |
| otSQWord |                             |
| otSWord  | Signed word                 |
| otUByte  | Unsigned byte               |
| otULong  | Unsigned longint (Cardinal) |
| otUQWord |                             |
| otUWord  | Unsigned word               |

If the property is and ordinal type, then TOrdType determines the size and sign of the ordinal type:

```
TParamFlag = (pfVar, pfConst, pfArray, pfAddress, pfReference, pfOut,
pfConstRef, pfHidden, pfHigh, pfSelf, pfVmt, pfResult)
```

Table 78.10: Enumeration values for type TParamFlag

| Value       | Explanation  |
|-------------|--|
| pfAddress   | Parameter is passed by address                           |
| pfArray     | Parameter is an array parameter                          |
| pfConst     | Parameter is a const parameter (i.e. cannot be modified) |
| pfConstRef  |  |
| pfHidden    |  |
| pfHigh      |  |
| pfOut       | Parameter is a string parameter                          |
| pfReference | Parameter is passed by reference                         |
| pfResult    |  |
| pfSelf      |  |
| pfVar       | Parameter is a var parameter (passed by reference)       |
| pfVmt       |  |

TParamFlag describes a parameter.

TParamFlags = Set of TParamFlag

The kind of parameter for a method

TProcInfoProc = procedure(PropInfo: PPropInfo) of object

Property info callback method

TPropList = Array[0..65535] of PPropInfo

Array of property information pointers

```
TRecInitData = packed record
public
  Terminator : Pointer;
  Size
  : Integer;
  InitOffsetOp : PRecOpOffsetTable;
  ManagementOp : Pointer
;
  ManagedFieldCount : Integer;
end
```

```
TRecOpOffsetEntry = packed record
public
  ManagementOperator : CodePointer
;
  FieldOffset : SizeUInt;
end
```

```
TRecOpOffsetTable = packed record
public
  Count : LongWord;
  Entries
    : Array[0..0] of TRecOpOffsetEntry;
end
```

```
TRegisterType = (Invalid, Int, FP, MMX, MultiMedia, Special, Address)
```

Table 78.11: Enumeration values for type TRegisterType

| Value      | Explanation |
|------------|-------------|
| Address    |             |
| FP         |             |
| Int        |             |
| Invalid    |             |
| MMX        |             |
| MultiMedia |             |
| Special    |             |

```
TSetPropValue = procedure (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the property with name PropName of instance Instance to Value.

```
TSetVariantProp = procedure (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo
  ;
  const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the variant property with name PropName of instance to Value.

```
TSubRegister = (None, Lo, Hi, Word, DWord, QWord, FloatSingle, FloatDouble
  ,
  FloatQuad, MultiMediaSingle, MultiMediaDouble,
  MultiMediaWhole, MultiMediaX, MultiMediaY)
```

Table 78.12: Enumeration values for type TSubRegister

| Value            | Explanation |
|------------------|-------------|
| DWord            |             |
| FloatDouble      |             |
| FloatQuad        |             |
| FloatSingle      |             |
| Hi               |             |
| Lo               |             |
| MultiMediaDouble |             |
| MultiMediaSingle |             |
| MultiMediaWhole  |             |
| MultiMediaX      |             |
| MultiMediaY      |             |
| None             |             |
| QWord            |             |
| Word             |             |

```

TypeInfo = record
public
  Kind : TTypeKind;
  Name : ShortString
;
end

```

The `TypeInfo` function returns a pointer to a `TypeInfo` record.

Note that the `Name` field is stored with as much bytes as needed to store the name, it is not padded to 255 characters. The type data immediately follows the `TypeInfo` record as a `TTypeData` (2006) record.

```
TTypeKind = System.TTypeKind
```

Type of a property.

```
TTypeKinds = Set of TTypeKind
```

Set of `TTypeKind` (1949) enumeration.

```

TVmtFieldClassTab = packed record
public
  Count : Word;
  ClassRef
    : Array[0..0] of PClass;
end

```

```

TVmtMethodEntry = packed record
public
  Name : PShortString;
  CodeAddress
    : CodePointer;
end

```

## 78.7 Procedures and functions

### 78.7.1 AddEnumElementAliases

Declaration: `procedure AddEnumElementAliases(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo;  
const aNames: Array of string;  
aStartValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.2 AlignPTypeInfo

Declaration: `function AlignPTypeInfo(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.3 AlignTParamFlags

Declaration: `function AlignTParamFlags(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.4 AlignTypeData

Declaration: `function AlignTypeData(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.5 DerefTypeInfoPtr

Declaration: `function DerefTypeInfoPtr(Info: PTypeInfo) : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.6 FindPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property information by property name.

Declaration: `function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)  
: PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;  
AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindPropInfo` examines the published property information of a class and returns a pointer to the property information for property `PropName`. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** class pointer.

**Instance** an instance of the class to be investigated.

If the property does not exist, a `EPropertyError` exception will be raised. The `GetPropInfo` (1961) function has the same function as the `FindPropInfo` function, but returns `Nil` if the property does not exist.

Errors: Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetPropInfo` (1961), `GetPropList` (1962), `GetPropInfos` (1961)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindPropInfo function }*

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**uses**

rttiobj, typinfo, sysutils;

**Var**

O : TMyTestObject;

PT : PTypeData;

PI : PPropInfo;

I, J : Longint;

PP : PPropList;

prl : PPropInfo;

**begin**

O := TMyTestObject.Create;

PI := FindPropInfo(O, 'BooleanField');

WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Instance, BooleanField) : ', PI^.Name);

PI := FindPropInfo(O.ClassType, 'ByteField');

WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Class, ByteField) : ', PI^.Name);

Write('FindPropInfo(Class, NonExistingProp) : ');

Try

PI := FindPropInfo(O, 'NonExistingProp');

except

On E: Exception do

WriteLn('Caught exception "', E.ClassName, '" with message : ', E.Message);

end;

O.Free;

end.

---

### 78.7.7 GetDynArrayProp

**Declaration:** function GetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: Pointer  
function GetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)  
: Pointer

Visibility: default

### 78.7.8 GetEnumeratedAliasValue

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumeratedAliasValue(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo;  
const aName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.9 GetEnumName

Synopsis: Return name of enumeration constant.

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumName(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetEnumName` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the name of the enumeration constant for the element with ordinal value equal to `Value`.

If `Value` is out of range, the first element of the enumeration type is returned. The result is returned in the case that was used in the declaration. (In earlier versions of FPC, the name was lowercased).

This can be used in combination with `GetOrdProp` to stream a property of an enumerated type.

**Errors:** No check is done to determine whether `TypeInfo` really points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetOrdProp` ([1960](#)), `GetEnumValue` ([1954](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex9.pp`

---

```

program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumName, GetEnumValue functions }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  TI := GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField')^.PropType;
  WriteLn ( 'GetEnumName      : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  WriteLn ( 'GetEnumValue(mefirst) : ', GetEnumName(TI, GetEnumValue(TI, 'mefirst')));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.10 GetEnumNameCount

Synopsis: Return number of names in an enumerated type

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumNameCount(enum1: PTypeInfo) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetEnumNameCount` returns the number of values (names) in the enumerated type, described by `enum1`

**Errors:** No checking is done to see whether `Enum1` is really type information of an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumValue` (1954), `GetEnumName` (1952)

### 78.7.11 GetEnumProp

**Synopsis:** Return the value of an enumeration type property.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string
function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo)
    : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnumProp` returns the value of an property of an enumerated type and returns the name of the enumerated value for the object `Instance`. The property whose value must be returned can be specified by its property info in `PropInfo` or by its name in `PropName`

**Errors:** No check is done to determine whether `PropInfo` really points to the property information for an enumerated type. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetEnumProp` (1971), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetMethodProp` (1956), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumProp` (1953)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex2.pp`

---

```
program example2;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField');
  TI:=PI^.PropType;
  Writeln('Enum property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  Writeln('Get (name)                 : ', GetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)             : ', GetEnumProp(O, PI));
  SetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField', 'meFirst');
  Writeln('Set (name, meFirst)        : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  SetEnumProp(O, PI, 'meSecond');
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, meSecond)   : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.12 GetEnumValue

**Synopsis:** Get ordinal value for enumerated type by name

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumValue (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Name: string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnumValue` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the ordinal value for the element in the enumerated type that has identifier `Name`. The identifier is searched in a case-insensitive manner.

This can be used to set the value of enumerated properties from a stream.

For an example, see `GetEnumName` (1952).

**Errors:** If `Name` is not found in the list of enumerated values, then -1 is returned. No check is done whether `TypeInfo` points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1952), `SetOrdProp` (1974)

### 78.7.13 GetFloatProp

**Synopsis:** Return value of floating point property

**Declaration:** `function GetFloatProp (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Extended`  
`function GetFloatProp (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)`  
`: Extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetFloatProp` returns the value of the float property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`. All float types are converted to extended.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetFloatProp` (1972), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetMethodProp` (1956), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumProp` (1953)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex4.pp`

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the GetFloatProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn('Real property : ');
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'RealField');
  WriteLn('Value          : ', O.RealField);

```

---

```

Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ',GetFloatProp(O, 'RealField' ));
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)   : ',GetFloatProp(O, PI ));
SetFloatProp(O, 'RealField',system.Pi);
Writeln ( 'Set (name,pi)    : ',O.RealField);
SetFloatProp(O, PI,exp(1));
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo,e) : ',O.RealField);
Writeln ( 'Extended property : ');
PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'ExtendedField');
Writeln ( 'Value           : ',O.ExtendedField);
Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ',GetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField' ));
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)   : ',GetFloatProp(O, PI ));
SetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField',system.Pi);
Writeln ( 'Set (name,pi)    : ',O.ExtendedField);
SetFloatProp(O, PI,exp(1));
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo,e) : ',O.ExtendedField);
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.14 GetInt64Prop

Synopsis: return value of an Int64 property

**Declaration:** `function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Remark** Publishing of Int64 properties is not yet supported by Free Pascal. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only at the moment.

`GetInt64Prop` returns the value of the property of type `Int64` that is described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid `Int64` property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception

See also: `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetMethodProp` (1956), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumerator` (1953)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex15.pp`

---

```

program example15;

{ This program demonstrates the GetInt64Prop function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln ('Int64 property : ');
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'Int64Field');

```

---

```

Writeln ( 'Value           : ', O.Int64Field );
Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ', GetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field' ));
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)   : ', GetInt64Prop(O, PI ));
SetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field', 12345);
Writeln ( 'Set (name,12345) : ', O.Int64Field );
SetInt64Prop(O, PI, 54321);
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo,54321) : ', O.Int64Field );
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.15 GetInterfaceProp

Synopsis: Return interface-typed property

**Declaration:** `function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : IInterface`  
`function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : IInterface`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetInterfaceProp` returns the interface which the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetInterfaceProp` (1973), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumProp` (1953)

### 78.7.16 GetMethodProp

Synopsis: Return value of a method property

**Declaration:** `function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TMethod`  
`function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : TMethod`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetMethodProp` returns the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`. The return type `TMethod` is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```

TMethod = packed record
    Code, Data: Pointer;
end;

```

`Data` points to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` (1973), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumProp` (1953)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the GetMethodProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo, sysutils;

Type
  TNotifyObject = Class(TObject)
    Procedure Notification1(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure Notification2(Sender : TObject);
  end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification1(Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write('Received notification 1 of object with class: ');
  Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification2(Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write('Received notification 2 of object with class: ');
  Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO : TNotifyObject;
  M : TMethod;

Procedure PrintMethod (Const M : TMethod);

begin
  If (M.Data=Pointer(NO)) Then
    If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification1)) then
      Writeln('Notification1 ')
    else If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification2)) then
      Writeln('Notification2 ')
    else
      begin
        Write('Unknown method address (data: ');
        Write(hexStr(Longint(M.data), 8));
        Writeln(' ,code: ', hexstr(Longint(M.Code), 8), ' ');
      end;
    end;
end;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO:=TNotifyObject.Create;
  O.NotifyEvent:=@NO.Notification1;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'NotifyEvent');
  Writeln('Method property : ');

```

---

```

Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify ;
Write( 'Get (name)                               : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent ');
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify ;
Write( 'Get (propinfo)                           : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification2 );
SetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent ',M);
Write( 'Set (name, Notification2)                 : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify ;
Write( 'Set (propinfo , Notification1) : ');
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification1 );
SetMethodProp(O, PI,M);
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify ;
O. Free ;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.17 GetObjectProp

Synopsis: Return value of an object-type property.

**Declaration:** `function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : TObject`

```

function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetObjectProp` returns the object which the property described by `PropInfo` with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

If `MinClass` is specified, then if the object is not descendent of class `MinClass`, then `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` (1973), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetSetProp` (1964), `GetObjectProp` (1958), `GetEnumProp` (1953)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex5.pp`

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the GetObjectProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO1, NO2 : TNamedObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO1 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO1.ObjectName := 'First named object';
  NO2 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO2.ObjectName := 'Second named object';
  O.ObjField := NO1;
  Writeln ('Object property : ');
  PI := GetPropInfo (O, 'ObjField');
  Write ('Property class      : ');
  Writeln (GetObjectPropClass (O, 'ObjField').ClassName);
  Write ('Value                : ');
  Writeln ((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write ('Get (name)             : ');
  Writeln ((GetObjectProp (O, 'ObjField') as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write ('Get (propinfo)         : ');
  Writeln ((GetObjectProp (O, PI, TObj) as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp (O, 'ObjField', NO2);
  Write ('Set (name, NO2)         : ');
  Writeln ((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp (O, PI, NO1);
  Write ('Set (propinfo, NO1)    : ');
  Writeln ((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.18 GetObjectPropClass

Synopsis: Return class of property.

**Declaration:** function GetObjectPropClass (Instance: TObj; const PropName: string)  
   : TClass  
 function GetObjectPropClass (AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)  
   : TClass

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetObjectPropClass returns the declared class of the property with name PropName. This may not be the actual class of the property value.

For an example, see GetObjectProp ([1958](#)).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: [SetMethodProp \(1973\)](#), [GetOrdProp \(1960\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1965\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1954\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1955\)](#)

### 78.7.19 GetOrdProp

Synopsis: Get the value of an ordinal property

Declaration: `function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetOrdProp` returns the value of the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for the object `Instance`. The value is returned as a longint, which should be typecast to the needed type.

Ordinal properties that can be retrieved include:

**Integers and subranges of integers**The value of the integer will be returned.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types**The ordinal value of the enumerated type will be returned.

**Sets**If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. If a bit is set in the return value, then the corresponding element of the base ordinal class of the set type must be included in the set.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [SetOrdProp \(1974\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1965\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1954\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1955\)](#), [GetMethodProp \(1956\)](#), [GetSetProp \(1964\)](#), [GetObjectProp \(1958\)](#), [GetEnumProp \(1953\)](#)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex1.pp`

---

```
program example1 ;

{ This program demonstrates the GetOrdProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject ;
  PI : PPropInfo ;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create ;
  Writeln('Boolean property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ',O.BooleanField);
  Writeln('Ord(Value)                  : ',Ord(O.BooleanField));
  Writeln('Get (name)                   : ',GetOrdProp(O,'BooleanField'));
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O,'BooleanField');
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)               : ',GetOrdProp(O,PI));
  SetOrdProp(O,'BooleanField',Ord(False));
  Writeln('Set (name,false)             : ',O.BooleanField);
  SetOrdProp(O,PI,Ord(True));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo,true)         : ',O.BooleanField);
  O.Free ;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.20 GetPropInfo

**Synopsis:** Return property type information, by property name.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: string)
    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: string;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: string) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetPropInfo` returns a pointer to the `TPropInfo` record for the `PropName` property of a class. The class to examine can be specified in one of three ways:

**Instance** An instance of the class.

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**TypeInfo** A pointer to the type information of the class.

In each of these three ways, if `AKinds` is specified, if the property has `TypeKind` which is not included in `AKinds`, `Nil` will be returned.

For an example, see most of the other functions.

**Errors:** If the property `PropName` does not exist, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `GetPropInfos` ([1961](#)), `GetPropList` ([1962](#))

### 78.7.21 GetPropInfos

**Synopsis:** Return a list of published properties.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure GetPropInfos (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; PropList: PPropList)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetPropInfos` stores pointers to the property information of all published properties of a class with class info `TypeInfo` in the list pointed to by `PropList`. The `PropList` pointer must point to a memory location that contains enough space to hold all properties of the class and its parent classes.

**Errors:** No checks are done to see whether `PropList` points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: `GetPropInfo` ([1961](#)), `GetPropList` ([1962](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `example12;`

```
{ This program demonstrates the GetPropInfos function }
```

---

```

uses
    rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject ;
    PT : PTypeData ;
    PI : PTypeInfo ;
    I , J : Longint ;
    PP : PPropList ;
    prl : PPropInfo ;

begin
    O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
    PI := O.ClassInfo ;
    PT := GetTypeData(PI) ;
    WriteLn('Property Count : ', PT^.PropCount) ;
    GetMem (PP, PT^.PropCount * SizeOf(Pointer)) ;
    GetPropInfos(PI, PP) ;
    For I := 0 to PT^.PropCount - 1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write('Property ', I + 1 : 3, ': ', name : 30) ;
                    writeln('  Type: ', TypeName[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]) ;
                end ;
            end ;
        FreeMem(PP) ;
    O.Free ;
end .

```

---

### 78.7.22 GetPropList

Synopsis: Return a list of a certain type of published properties.

**Declaration:**

```

function GetPropList (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; TypeKinds: TTypeKinds;
                      PropList: PPropList; Sorted: Boolean) : LongInt
function GetPropList (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; out PropList: PPropList)
                      : SizeInt
function GetPropList (AClass: TClass; out PropList: PPropList) : Integer
function GetPropList (Instance: TObject; out PropList: PPropList)
                      : Integer

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetPropList stores pointers to property information of the class with class info TypeInfo for properties of kind TypeKinds in the list pointed to by PropList. PropList must contain enough space to hold all properties.

The function returns the number of pointers that matched the criteria and were stored in PropList.

**Errors:** No checks are done to see whether PropList points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: GetPropInfos ([1961](#)), GetPropInfo ([1961](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program example13;

{ This program demonstrates the GetPropList function }

uses
    rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject;
    PT : PTypeData;
    PI : PTypeInfo;
    I, J : Longint;
    PP : PPropList;
    prl : PPropInfo;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    PI:=O.ClassInfo;
    PT:=GetTypeData(PI);
    WriteLn('Total property Count : ', PT^.PropCount);
    GetMem(PP, PT^.PropCount*SizeOf(Pointer));
    J:=GetPropList(PI, OrdinalTypes, PP);
    WriteLn('Ordinal property Count : ', J);
    For I:=0 to J-1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write('Property ', i+1:3, ': ', name:30);
                    writeLn('  Type: ', TypeName[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]);
                end;
            end;
        FreeMem(PP);
        O.Free;
    end.

```

---

### 78.7.23 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Get property value as a string.

**Declaration:** function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: Variant

```

function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
    PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant
function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Variant
function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
    PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Due to missing Variant support, GetPropValue is not yet implemented. The declaration is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

### 78.7.24 GetRawByteStrProp

**Declaration:** function GetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)

```

                                : RawByteString
function GetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                                : RawByteString

```

Visibility: default

### 78.7.25 GetRawInterfaceProp

Synopsis: Get a raw (CORBA) interface property.

```

Declaration: function GetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                                : Pointer
function GetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                                : Pointer

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetRawInterfaceProp` can be used to retrieve the value of a published CORBA interface property with name `PropName` from object `Instance`. Alternatively, the required property information can be specified by `PropInfo` instead of the property name. In difference with the `GetInterfaceProp` (1956) function, no reference counting is done.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, an `EPropertyError` exception is raised.

See also: `GetInterfaceProp` (1956), `SetRawInterfaceProp` (1975)

### 78.7.26 GetSetProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a set property.

```

Declaration: function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string
function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string

```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSetProp` returns the contents of a set property as a string. The property to be returned can be specified by its name in `PropName` or by its property information in `PropInfo`.

The returned set is a string representation of the elements in the set as returned by `SetToString` (1976). The `Brackets` option can be used to enclose the string representation in square brackets.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetSetProp` (1975), `GetStrProp` (1965), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetMethodProp` (1956)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program example7;

{ This program demonstrates the GetSetProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

```

---

```

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

Function SetAsString (ASet : TMyEnums) : String;

Var
  i : TmyEnum;

begin
  result := '';
  For i := mefirst to methird do
    If i in ASet then
      begin
        If (Result <> '') then
          Result := Result + ', ';
          Result := Result + MyEnumNames[i];
        end;
      end;
end;

Var
  S : TMyEnums;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  O.SetField := [mefirst, meSecond, meThird];
  Writeln ('Set property      : ');
  Writeln ('Value                               : ', SetAsString(O.SetField));
  Writeln ('Ord(Value)                           : ', Byte(O.SetField));
  Writeln ('Get (name)                             : ', GetSetProp(O, 'SetField'));
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  Writeln ('Get (propinfo)                         : ', GetSetProp(O, PI, false));
  S := [meFirst, meThird];
  SetOrdProp(O, 'SetField', Byte(S));
  Write ('Set (name,[mefirst, methird]) : ');
  Writeln (SetAsString(O.SetField));
  S := [meSecond];
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, Byte(S));
  Write ('Set (propinfo,[meSecond])      : ');
  Writeln (SetAsString(O.SetField));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.27 GetStrProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a string property.

**Declaration:** `function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Ansistring`  
`function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetStrProp returns the value of the string property described by PropInfo or with name PropName for object Instance.



Visibility: default

Description: `GetUnicodeStrProp` returns the `UnicodeString` property from `Instance`, where the property is identified by the `PropInfo` pointer or the `PropertyName`.

Errors: If no property of the indicated name exists, or the value is not a Unicode string, an exception will occur.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1965), `SetUnicodeStrProp` (1977)

### 78.7.30 GetVariantProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a variant property.

Declaration: 

```
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                        : Variant
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : Variant
```

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, the `GetVariantProp` function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

See also: `SetVariantProp` (1978)

### 78.7.31 GetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Read a widestring property

Declaration: 

```
function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                        : WideString
function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetWideStrProp` returns the value of the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1965), `SetWideStrProp` (1978), `GetOrdProp` (1960), `GetFloatProp` (1954), `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetMethodProp` (1956)

### 78.7.32 IsPublishedProp

Synopsis: Check whether a published property exists.

Declaration: 

```
function IsPublishedProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : Boolean
function IsPublishedProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)
                        : Boolean
```

Visibility: default



Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsStoredProp` returns `True` if the `Stored` modifier evaluates to `True` for the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`. It returns `False` otherwise. If the function returns `True`, this indicates that the property should be written when streaming the object `Instance`.

If there was no `stored` modifier in the declaration of the property, `True` will be returned.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` (1967), `PropIsType` (1969)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex11.pp`

---

```

program example11 ;

{ This program demonstrates the IsStoredProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
  Writeln('Stored tests      : ');
  Write('IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerConstFalse)      : ');
  Writeln(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerConstFalse'));
  Write('IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerConstTrue)       : ');
  Writeln(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerConstTrue'));
  Write('IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerMethod)          : ');
  Writeln(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerMethod'));
  Write('IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerVirtualMethod)   : ');
  Writeln(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerVirtualMethod'));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.35 IsWriteableProp

**Declaration:**

```

function IsWriteableProp(PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean
function IsWriteableProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
    : Boolean
function IsWriteableProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)
    : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

### 78.7.36 PropIsType

**Synopsis:** Check the type of a published property.

**Declaration:** `function PropIsType(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean  
function PropIsType(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PropIsType` returns `True` if the property with name `PropName` has type `TypeKind`. It returns `False` otherwise. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` ([1967](#)), `IsStoredProp` ([1968](#)), `PropType` ([1970](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex16.pp`

---

```
program example16;

{ This program demonstrates the PropIsType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln( 'Property tests      : ');
  Write( 'PropIsType(O, BooleanField, tkBool)      : ');
  Writeln( PropIsType(O, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write( 'PropIsType(Class, BooleanField, tkBool) : ');
  Writeln( PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write( 'PropIsType(O, ByteField, tkString)      : ');
  Writeln( PropIsType(O, 'ByteField', tkString));
  Write( 'PropIsType(Class, ByteField, tkString) : ');
  Writeln( PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField', tkString));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.37 PropType

**Synopsis:** Return the type of a property

**Declaration:** `function PropType(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : TTypeKind  
function PropType(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string) : TTypeKind`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PropType` returns the type of the property `PropName` for a class. The class to be examined can be specified in one of 2 ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` (1967), `IsStoredProp` (1968), `PropIsType` (1969)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex17.pp

---

```

program example17;

{ This program demonstrates the PropType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn( 'Property tests      : ');
  Write( 'PropType(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write( 'PropType(Class, BooleanField) : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write( 'PropType(O, ByteField)        : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O, 'ByteField')]);
  Write( 'PropType(Class, ByteField)     : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField')]);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.38 RemoveEnumElementAliases

Declaration: `procedure RemoveEnumElementAliases(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.39 SetDynArrayProp

Declaration: `procedure SetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: Pointer)  
procedure SetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.40 SetEnumProp

Synopsis: Set value of an enumerated-type property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                      const Value: string)
procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: string)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetEnumProp sets the property described by PropInfo or with name PropName to Value. Value must be a string with the name of the enumerate value, i.e. it can be used as an argument to GetEnumValue (1954).

For an example, see GetEnumProp (1953).

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure Instance or PropInfo are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

**See also:** GetEnumProp (1953), SetStrProp (1976), SetFloatProp (1972), SetInt64Prop (1972), SetMethodProp (1973)

### 78.7.41 SetFloatProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of a float property.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                      Value: Extended)
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      Value: Extended)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetFloatProp assigns Value to the property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see GetFloatProp (1954).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid float property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

**See also:** GetFloatProp (1954), SetOrdProp (1974), SetStrProp (1976), SetInt64Prop (1972), SetMethodProp (1973)

### 78.7.42 SetInt64Prop

**Synopsis:** Set value of a Int64 property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: Int64)
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                      const Value: Int64)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetInt64Prop assigns Value to the property of type Int64 that is described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see GetInt64Prop (1955).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid `Int64` property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetInt64Prop` (1955), `GetMethodProp` (1956), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972)

### 78.7.43 SetInterfaceProp

**Synopsis:** Set interface-valued property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                           const Value: IInterface)
procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                           const Value: IInterface)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetInterfaceProp` assigns `Value` to the object property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid interface property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetInterfaceProp` (1956), `SetObjectProp` (1974), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `SetMethodProp` (1973)

### 78.7.44 SetMethodProp

**Synopsis:** Set the value of a method property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: TMethod)
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: TMethod)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetMethodProp` assigns `Value` to the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

The type `TMethod` of the `Value` parameter is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```
TMethod = packed record
  Code, Data: Pointer;
end;
```

`Data` should point to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

For an example, see `GetMethodProp` (1956).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetMethodProp` (1956), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972)

### 78.7.45 SetObjectProp

Synopsis: Set the value of an object-type property.

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        Value: TObject)
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        Value: TObject)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetObjectProp` assigns `Value` to the object property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetObjectProp` (1958).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid object property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetObjectProp` (1958), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `SetMethodProp` (1973)

### 78.7.46 SetOrdProp

Synopsis: Set value of an ordinal property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    Value: Int64)
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    Value: Int64)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetOrdProp` assigns `Value` to the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

Ordinal properties that can be set include:

**Integers and subranges of integers** The actual value of the integer must be passed.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types** The ordinal value of the enumerated type must be passed.

**Subrange types** of integers or enumerated types. Here the ordinal value must be passed.

**Sets** If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. For each possible value; the corresponding bit of `Value` must be set.

For an example, see `GetOrdProp` (1960).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetOrdProp` (1960), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `SetMethodProp` (1973)

**78.7.47 SetPropValue**

Synopsis: Set property value as variant

Declaration: `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: Variant)  
procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented; it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

**78.7.48 SetRawByteStrProp**

Declaration: `procedure SetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: RawByteString)  
procedure SetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

**78.7.49 SetRawInterfaceProp**

Synopsis: Set a raw (CORBA) interface property.

Declaration: `procedure SetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject;  
const PropName: string;  
const Value: Pointer)  
procedure SetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetRawInterfaceProp` can be used to set the value of a published CORBA interface with name `PropName` from object `Instance` to `Value`. Alternatively, the required property information can be specified by `PropInfo` instead of the property name. In difference with the `SetInterfaceProp` (1973) procedure, no reference counting is done.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, an `EPropertyError` exception is raised.

See also: `SetInterfaceProp` (1973), `GetRawInterfaceProp` (1964)

**78.7.50 SetSetProp**

Synopsis: Set value of set-typed property.

Declaration: `procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: string)  
procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: string)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetSetProp` sets the property specified by `PropInfo` or `PropName` for object `Instance` to `Value`. `Value` is a string which contains a comma-separated list of values, each value being a string-representation of the enumerated value that should be included in the set. The value should be accepted by the `StringToSet` (1978) function.

The value can be formed using the `SetToString` (1976) function.

For an example, see `GetSetProp` (1964).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetSetProp` (1964), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetStrProp` (1976), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `SetMethodProp` (1973), `SetToString` (1976), `StringToSet` (1978)

### 78.7.51 SetStrProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of a string property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    const Value: AnsiString)
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    const Value: Ansistring)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetStrProp` assigns `Value` to the string property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetStrProp` (1965)

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid string property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1965), `SetWideStrProp` (1978), `SetOrdProp` (1974), `SetFloatProp` (1972), `SetInt64Prop` (1972), `SetMethodProp` (1973)

### 78.7.52 SetToString

**Synopsis:** Convert set to a string description

**Declaration:**

```
function SetToString(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: LongInt;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: LongInt;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: LongInt) : string
function SetToString(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Pointer;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Pointer;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetToString` takes an integer representation of a set (as received e.g. by `GetOrdProp`) and turns it into a string representing the elements in the set, based on the type information found in the `PropInfo` property information. By default, the string representation is not surrounded by square

brackets. Setting the `Brackets` parameter to `True` will surround the string representation with brackets.

The function returns the string representation of the set.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1952), `GetEnumValue` (1954), `StringToSet` (1978)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex18.pp`

---

```

program example18;

{ This program demonstrates the SetToString function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  I : longint;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst, meSecond, meThird ];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Set property to string : ');
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst, meSecond ];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, 'mefirst');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, '[mesecond, methird]');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.53 SetUnicodeStrProp

Synopsis: Set UnicodeString-valued property

**Declaration:** `procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;`  
   `const Value: UnicodeString)`  
           `procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;`  
   `const Value: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetUnicodeStrProp` sets the `UnicodeString` property from `Instance` to `Value`, where the property is identified by the `PropInfo` pointer or the `PropertyName`.

Errors: If no property of the indicated name exists, or it is not of type `unicodestring`, an exception will occur.

See also: `SetStrProp` ([1976](#)), `GetUnicodeStrProp` ([1966](#))

### 78.7.54 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set value of a variant property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: Variant)
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: Variant)
```

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

### 78.7.55 SetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Set a widestring property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: WideString)
procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: WideString)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWideStrProp` assigns `Value` to the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetWideStrProp` ([1967](#)), `SetStrProp` ([1976](#)), `SetOrdProp` ([1974](#)), `SetFloatProp` ([1972](#)), `SetInt64Prop` ([1972](#)), `SetMethodProp` ([1973](#))

### 78.7.56 StringToSet

Synopsis: Convert string description to a set.

Declaration: 

```
function StringToSet(PropInfo: PPropInfo; const Value: string) : LongInt
function StringToSet(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Value: string) : LongInt
procedure StringToSet(PropInfo: PPropInfo; const Value: string;
                    Result: Pointer)
procedure StringToSet(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Value: string;
                    Result: Pointer)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToSet` converts the string representation of a set in `Value` to a integer representation of the set, using the property information found in `PropInfo`. This property information should point to the property information of a set property. The function returns the integer representation of the set. (i.e, the set value, typecast to an integer)

The string representation can be surrounded with square brackets, and must consist of the names of the elements of the base type of the set. The base type of the set should be an enumerated type. The elements should be separated by commas, and may be surrounded by spaces. each of the names will be fed to the `GetEnumValue` (1954) function.

For an example, see `SetToString` (1976).

**Errors:** No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information. If a wrong name is given for an enumerated value, then an `EPropertyError` will be raised.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1952), `GetEnumValue` (1954), `SetToString` (1976)

## 78.8 TArrayTypeData

```
TArrayTypeData = packed record
private
  function GetElType : PTypeInfo
  ;
  function GetDims(aIndex: Byte) : PTypeInfo;
public
  property
    ElType : PTypeInfo;
  property Dims[Index: Byte]: PTypeInfo;
  Size
    : SizeInt;
  ElCount : SizeInt;
  ElTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  DimCount
    : Byte;
  DimsRef : Array[0..255] of PTypeInfo;
end
```

`TArrayTypeData` is used to describe arrays in RTTI. It can be encountered when the type kind is `tkArray`, and is used for both static and dynamic arrays and single or multi-dimensional arrays. The type of the array elements is described in `elType`, and the ranges for each of the dimensions (specified in `DimCount` in `Dims`).

### 78.8.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties          | Access | Description                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">1980</a> | <code>Dims</code>   | r      | Range information for each dimension in the array |
| <a href="#">1979</a> | <code>ElType</code> | r      | Type information for an element in the array      |

### 78.8.2 TArrayTypeData.ElType

**Synopsis:** Type information for an element in the array

**Declaration:** `Property ElType : PTypeInfo`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

### 78.8.3 TArrayTypeData.Dims

Synopsis: Range information for each dimension in the array

Declaration: `Property Dims[Index: Byte]: PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.9 TClassData

```
TClassData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName : ShortString
    ;
    function GetPropertyTable : PPropData;
public
    ClassType : TClass
    ;
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    PropCount : SmallInt;
    property UnitName
    : ShortString;
    property PropertyTable : PPropData;
private
    UnitNameField
    : ShortString;
end
```

### 78.9.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties    | Access | Description |
|----------------------|---------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1980</a> | PropertyTable | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1980</a> | UnitName      | r      |             |

### 78.9.2 TClassData.UnitName

Declaration: `Property UnitName : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.9.3 TClassData.PropertyTable

Declaration: `Property PropertyTable : PPropData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.10 TInterfaceData

```
TInterfaceData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName : ShortString
    ;
    function GetPropertyTable : PPropData;
    function GetMethodTable
    : PIntfMethodTable;
public
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TIntfFlagsBase
    ;
    GUID : TGuid;
    property UnitName : ShortString;
    property PropertyTable
    : PPropData;
    property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable;
private
    UnitNameField : ShortString;
end
```

### 78.10.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties    | Access | Description |
|----------------------|---------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1981</a> | MethodTable   | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1981</a> | PropertyTable | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1981</a> | UnitName      | r      |             |

### 78.10.2 TInterfaceData.UnitName

Declaration: Property UnitName : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.10.3 TInterfaceData.PropertyTable

Declaration: Property PropertyTable : PPropData

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.10.4 TInterfaceData.MethodTable

Declaration: Property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.11 TInterfaceRawData

```

TInterfaceRawData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName
      : ShortString;
    function GetIIDStr : ShortString;
    function GetPropertyTable
      : PPropData;
    function GetMethodTable : PIntfMethodTable;
public
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TIntfFlagsBase;
    IID : TGuid;
    property UnitName : ShortString;
    property IIDStr : ShortString
      ;
    property PropertyTable : PPropData;
    property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable
      ;
private
    UnitNameField : ShortString;
end

```

### 78.11.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties    | Access | Description |
|----------------------|---------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1982</a> | IIDStr        | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1983</a> | MethodTable   | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1982</a> | PropertyTable | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1982</a> | UnitName      | r      |             |

### 78.11.2 TInterfaceRawData.UnitName

Declaration: Property UnitName : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.3 TInterfaceRawData.IIDStr

Declaration: Property IIDStr : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.4 TInterfaceRawData.PropertyTable

Declaration: Property PropertyTable : PPropData

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.5 TInterfaceRawData.MethodTable

Declaration: Property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.12 TIntfMethodEntry

```
TIntfMethodEntry = packed record
private
    function GetParam(Index
        : Word) : PVmtMethodParam;
    function GetResultLocs : PParameterLocations
    ;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
    function GetNext : PIntfMethodEntry
    ;
    function GetName : ShortString;
public
    ResultType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    CC : TCallConv;
    Kind : TMethodKind;
    ParamCount : Word;
    StackSize
    : SizeInt;
    NamePtr : PShortString;
    property Name : ShortString
    ;
    property Param[Index: Word]: PVmtMethodParam;
    property ResultLocs
    : PParameterLocations;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property Next
    : PIntfMethodEntry;
end
```

### 78.12.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1984</a> | Name       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1984</a> | Next       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1984</a> | Param      | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1984</a> | ResultLocs | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1984</a> | Tail       | r      |             |

**78.12.2 TIntfMethodEntry.Name**

Declaration: Property Name : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.12.3 TIntfMethodEntry.Param**

Declaration: Property Param[Index: Word]: PVmtMethodParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.12.4 TIntfMethodEntry.ResultLocs**

Declaration: Property ResultLocs : PParameterLocations

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.12.5 TIntfMethodEntry.Tail**

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.12.6 TIntfMethodEntry.Next**

Declaration: Property Next : PIntfMethodEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.13 TIntfMethodTable**

```
TIntfMethodTable = packed record
private
  function GetMethod(Index
    : Word) : PIntfMethodEntry;
public
  Count : Word;
  RTTICount : Word
;
  property Method[Index: Word]: PIntfMethodEntry;
end
```

### 78.13.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1985</a> | Method     | r      |             |

### 78.13.2 TIntfMethodTable.Method

Declaration: `Property Method[Index: Word]: PIntfMethodEntry`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 78.14 TManagedField

```
TManagedField = packed record
private
    function GetTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
public
    property TypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    TypeRefRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    FldOffset : SizeInt;
end
```

`TManagedField` describes 1 managed field in a record. It consists of type information (`TypeRef`) and an offset in the record's memory layout (`FldOffset`). Size can be determined from the type information.

### 78.14.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                    |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1985</a> | TypeRef    | r      | Type information for the field |

### 78.14.2 TManagedField.TypeRef

Synopsis: Type information for the field

Declaration: `Property TypeRef : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 78.15 TParameterLocation

```
TParameterLocation = packed record
private
    LocType : Byte;
    function
```

```

    GetRegType : TRegisterType;
    function GetReference : Boolean;
    function GetShiftVal : Int8;
public
    RegSub : TSubRegister;
    RegNumber
    : Word;
    Offset : SizeInt;
    property Reference : Boolean;
    property
    RegType : TRegisterType;
    property ShiftVal : Int8;
end

```

### 78.15.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1986</a> | Reference  | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1986</a> | RegType    | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1986</a> | ShiftVal   | r      |             |

### 78.15.2 TParameterLocation.Reference

Declaration: Property Reference : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.15.3 TParameterLocation.RegType

Declaration: Property RegType : TRegisterType

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.15.4 TParameterLocation.ShiftVal

Declaration: Property ShiftVal : Int8

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.16 TParameterLocations

```

TParameterLocations = packed record
private
    function GetLocation
    (aIndex: Byte) : PParameterLocation;

```

```

    function GetTail : Pointer
    ;
public
    Count : Byte;
    property Location[Index: Byte]: PParameterLocation
    ;
    property Tail : Pointer;
end

```

### 78.16.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1987</a> | Location   | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1987</a> | Tail       | r      |             |

### 78.16.2 TParameterLocations.Location

Declaration: `Property Location[Index: Byte]: PParameterLocation`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

### 78.16.3 TParameterLocations.Tail

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 78.17 TProcedureParam

```

TProcedureParam = packed record
private
    function GetParamType :
    PTypeInfo;
    function GetFlags : Byte;
public
    property ParamType
    : PTypeInfo;
    property Flags : Byte;
    ParamFlags : TParamFlags
    ;
    ParamTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    Name : ShortString;
end

```

TProcedureParam describes a single parameter to a procedure (or function).

### 78.17.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                                |
|----------------------|------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">1988</a> | Flags      | r      | Flags for this parameter (see TParamFlags) |
| <a href="#">1988</a> | ParamType  | r      | Type information for this parameter        |

### 78.17.2 TProcedureParam.ParamType

Synopsis: Type information for this parameter

Declaration: `Property ParamType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.17.3 TProcedureParam.Flags

Synopsis: Flags for this parameter (see TParamFlags)

Declaration: `Property Flags : Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.18 TProcedureSignature

```

TProcedureSignature = packed record
private
    function GetResultType
        : PTypeInfo;
public
    property ResultType : PTypeInfo;
    Flags :
        Byte;
    CC : TCallConv;
    ResultTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    ParamCount
        : Byte;
    function GetParam(ParamIndex: Integer) : PProcedureParam
;
end

```

TProcedureSignature describes a procedure/method call signature. It consists of some flags (Flags), a calling convention (CC), the result type (ResultType) if any, and a list of ParamCount parameters (of type TProcedureParam ([1987](#))).

### 78.18.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method   | Description             |
|----------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| <a href="#">1989</a> | GetParam | Get parameter signature |

### 78.18.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                         |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1989</a> | ResultType | r      | Result type info (Nil if no result) |

### 78.18.3 TProcedureSignature.GetParam

Synopsis: Get parameter signature

Declaration: `function GetParam(ParamIndex: Integer) : PProcedureParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParam` can be used to retrieve a pointer to the description of a parameter. The index `ParamIndex` is zero-based.

Errors: In case of an invalid parameter index, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TProcedureParam` ([1987](#))

### 78.18.4 TProcedureSignature.ResultType

Synopsis: Result type info (Nil if no result)

Declaration: `Property ResultType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.19 TPropData

```

TPropData = packed record
private
    function GetProp(Index: Word)
        : PPropInfo;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
public
    PropCount : Word
    ;
    PropList : record
    public
        _alignmentdummy : PtrInt;
    end
    ;
    property Prop[Index: Word]: PPropInfo;
    property Tail : Pointer
    ;
end

```

The `TPropData` record is not used, but is provided for completeness and compatibility with Delphi.

### 78.19.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">1990</a> | Prop       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">1990</a> | Tail       | r      |             |

### 78.19.2 TPropData.Prop

Declaration: `Property Prop[Index: Word]: PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.19.3 TPropData.Tail

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.20 TPropInfo

```

TPropInfo = packed record
private
    function GetPropType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
    function GetNext : PPropInfo;
public
    PropTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    GetProc : CodePointer;
    SetProc :
    CodePointer;
    StoredProc : CodePointer;
    Index : Integer;
    Default
    : LongInt;
    NameIndex : SmallInt;
    PropProcs : Byte;
    Name : ShortString
    ;
    property PropType : PTypeInfo;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property
    Next : PPropInfo;
end

```

The `TPropInfo` record describes one published property of a class. The property information of a class are stored as an array of `TPropInfo` records.

The `Name` field is stored not with 255 characters, but with just as many characters as required to store the name.

**78.20.1 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description   |
|----------------------|------------|--------|---------------|
| <a href="#">1991</a> | Next       | r      |               |
| <a href="#">1991</a> | PropType   | r      | Property type |
| <a href="#">1991</a> | Tail       | r      |               |

**78.20.2 TPropInfo.PropType**

Synopsis: Property type

Declaration: `Property PropType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.20.3 TPropInfo.Tail**

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.20.4 TPropInfo.Next**

Declaration: `Property Next : PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21 TTypeData**

```

TTypeData = packed record
private
    function GetBaseType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetCompType : PTypeInfo;
    function GetParentInfo : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetRecInitData : PRecInitData;
    function GetHelperParent
    : PTypeInfo;
    function GetExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo;
    function GetIntfParent
    : PTypeInfo;
    function GetRawIntfParent : PTypeInfo;
    function
    GetIIDStr : ShortString;
    function GetElType : PTypeInfo;
    function
    GetElType2 : PTypeInfo;

```

```

function GetInstanceType : PTypeInfo;
function GetRefType : PTypeInfo;
public
property BaseType : PTypeInfo
;
property CompType : PTypeInfo;
property ParentInfo : PTypeInfo
;
property RecInitData : PRecInitData;
property HelperParent
: PTypeInfo;
property ExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo;
property IntfParent
: PTypeInfo;
property RawIntfParent : PTypeInfo;
property IIDStr
: ShortString;
property ElType2 : PTypeInfo;
property ElType
: PTypeInfo;
property InstanceType : PTypeInfo;
property RefType
: PTypeInfo;
case TTypeKind of
tkUnknown: (
);, tkLString: (
);,
    tkWString: (
);, tkVariant: (
);, tkUString: (
);
tkAString: (
public
    CodePage : Word;
);
tkInt64: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
case
    TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue :
    LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value
    : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue

```

```

    : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize :
    SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkQWord: (
public
    OrdType
    : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt
    ;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar
    : (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
    of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt
    ;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool
    : (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;

```

```

case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
  MinInt64Value : Int64;
  MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
  MinQWordValue : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize : SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkInteger
  : (
public
  OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
  : (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue
    : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
    LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
    );
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;
);
tkQWord: (

```

```

public
  MinQWordValue : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue :
    QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize : SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo
  ;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
  OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
  tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case
  TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
  ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration
  : (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList
  : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue

```

```

    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value
    : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue
    : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef :
    PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
    case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);

```

```

);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue :
    LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value
    : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64;
    );
tkQWord: (

```

```

public
  MinQWordValue
    : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize :
  SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
  OrdType
    : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
    ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar
  : (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
    ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool
  : (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
    of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList
        : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
        : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
        : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkWChar:
(
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);

```

```

);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue
    : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
    LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;

```

```

);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue :
        QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo
    ;
);
);, tkSet: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger
    : (
public
        MinValue : LongInt;
        MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
    of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList
        : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
        : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
        : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (

```

```

public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
        LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue :
        QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
);
);
tkFloat: (
public
    FloatType : TFloatType;
);
tkSSString:
    (
public
    MaxLength : Byte;
);
tkClass: (
public

```

```

    ClassType : TClass
    ;
    ParentInfoRef : PTypeInfo;
    PropCount : SmallInt;
    UnitName
    : ShortString;
);
tkRecord: (
public
    RecInitInfo : Pointer;
    RecSize
    : Integer;
case Boolean of
False: (
public
    ManagedFldCount : Integerdeprecated
    ;
);
True: (
public
    TotalFieldCount : Integer;
);
);
tkHelper:
(
public
    HelperParentRef : PTypeInfo;
    ExtendedInfoRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    HelperProps : SmallInt;
    HelperUnit : ShortString;
);
tkMethod
: (
public
    MethodKind : TMethodKind;
    ParamCount : Byte;
    ParamList
    : Array[0..1023] of Char;
);
tkProcVar: (
public
    ProcSig : TProcedureSignature
    ;
);
tkInterface: (
public
    IntfParentRef : PTypeInfo;
    IntfFlags
    : TIntfFlagsBase;
    GUID : TGuid;
    IntfUnit : ShortString;
);
tkInterfaceRaw

```

```

    : (
public
    RawIntfParentRef : PPTypeInfo;
    RawIntfFlags : TIntfFlagsBase
    ;
    IID : TGuid;
    RawIntfUnit : ShortString;
);
tkArray: (
public
    ArrayData : TArrayTypeData;
);
tkDynArray: (
public
    elSize :
    PtrUInt;
    elType2Ref : PPTypeInfo;
    varType : LongInt;
    elTypeRef
    : PPTypeInfo;
    DynUnitName : ShortStringBase;
);
tkClassRef: (
public
    InstanceTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
);
tkPointer: (
public
    RefTypeRef
    : PPTypeInfo;
);
end

```

If the typeinfo kind is `tkClass`, then the property information follows the `UnitName` string, as an array of `TPropInfo` (1990) records.

### 78.21.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties    | Access | Description   |
|----------------------|---------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">2007</a> | BaseType      | r      | Base type on which this type is based.                    |
| <a href="#">2007</a> | CompType      | r      | Comp type   |
| <a href="#">2009</a> | ElType        | r      | Dynamical array Element type                              |
| <a href="#">2008</a> | ElType2       | r      | Dynamical array Element type                              |
| <a href="#">2008</a> | ExtendedInfo  | r      | Type information for the extended type (record or class). |
| <a href="#">2007</a> | HelperParent  | r      | Type information for parent helper class                  |
| <a href="#">2008</a> | IIDStr        | r      | IID string representation of interface                    |
| <a href="#">2009</a> | InstanceType  | r      | Pointer to instance type data                             |
| <a href="#">2008</a> | IntfParent    | r      | Parent interface type data.                               |
| <a href="#">2007</a> | ParentInfo    | r      | Parent class type info                                    |
| <a href="#">2008</a> | RawIntfParent | r      | Raw interface parent.                                     |
| <a href="#">2007</a> | RecInitData   | r      |   |
| <a href="#">2009</a> | RefType       | r      | Type info for referred type (Nil for untyped pointer)     |

### 78.21.2 TTypeData.BaseType

Synopsis: Base type on which this type is based.

Declaration: `Property BaseType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.3 TTypeData.CompType

Synopsis: Comp type

Declaration: `Property CompType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.4 TTypeData.ParentInfo

Synopsis: Parent class type info

Declaration: `Property ParentInfo : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.5 TTypeData.RecInitData

Declaration: `Property RecInitData : PRecInitData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.6 TTypeData.HelperParent

Synopsis: Type information for parent helper class

Declaration: `Property HelperParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `HelperParent` points to the type information of the parent helper class. It is `Nil` if there is no parent class.

See also: `TTypeData.ExtendedInfo` ([2008](#))

### 78.21.7 TTypeData.ExtendedInfo

Synopsis: Type information for the extended type (record or class).

Declaration: `Property ExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExtendedInfo` points to the type information of the type that is being extended.

See also: `TTypeData.HelperParent` ([2007](#))

### 78.21.8 TTypeData.IntfParent

Synopsis: Parent interface type data.

Declaration: `Property IntfParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.9 TTypeData.RawIntfParent

Synopsis: Raw interface parent.

Declaration: `Property RawIntfParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.10 TTypeData.IIDStr

Synopsis: IID string representation of interface

Declaration: `Property IIDStr : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.11 TTypeData.ElType2

Synopsis: Dynamical array Element type

Declaration: `Property ElType2 : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.12 TTypeData.ElType**

Synopsis: Dynamical array Element type

Declaration: `Property ElType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.13 TTypeData.InstanceType**

Synopsis: Pointer to instance type data

Declaration: `Property InstanceType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.14 TTypeData.RefType**

Synopsis: Type info for referred type (Nil for untyped pointer)

Declaration: `Property RefType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.22 TVmtFieldEntry**

```
TVmtFieldEntry = packed record
private
  function GetNext : PVmtFieldEntry
  ;
  function GetTail : Pointer;
public
  FieldOffset : PtrUInt;
  TypeIndex : Word;
  Name : ShortString;
  property Tail : Pointer
  ;
  property Next : PVmtFieldEntry;
end
```

TVmtFieldEntry records are generated by the compiler for all fields of a record or class that have RTTI associated with them. They describe the field as known to the compiler.

**78.22.1 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2010</a> | Next       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">2010</a> | Tail       | r      |             |

### 78.22.2 TVmtFieldEntry.Tail

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.22.3 TVmtFieldEntry.Next

Declaration: Property Next : PVmtFieldEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.23 TVmtFieldTable

```

TVmtFieldTable = packed record
private
  function GetField(aIndex
    : Word) : PVmtFieldEntry;
public
  Count : Word;
  ClassTab : PVmtFieldClassTab
  ;
  Fields : Array[0..0] of TVmtFieldEntry;
  property Field[aIndex
    : Word]: PVmtFieldEntry;
end

```

TVmtFieldTable describes the fields for which RTTI was generated. A TVmtFieldTable entry is generated by the compiler in the RTTI information, it is not something one creates manually. Basically it contains a list of TVmtFieldEntry ([2009](#)) values.

### 78.23.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2010</a> | Field      | r      |             |

### 78.23.2 TVmtFieldTable.Field

Declaration: Property Field[aIndex: Word]: PVmtFieldEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.24 TVmtMethodParam

```

TVmtMethodParam = packed record
private

```

```

    function GetTail : Pointer
    ;
    function GetNext : PVmtMethodParam;
    function GetName : ShortString
    ;
public
    ParamType : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TParamFlags;
    NamePtr
    : PShortString;
    ParaLocs : PParameterLocations;
    property Name
    : ShortString;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property Next : PVmtMethodParam
    ;
end

```

### 78.24.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2011</a> | Name       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">2011</a> | Next       | r      |             |
| <a href="#">2011</a> | Tail       | r      |             |

### 78.24.2 TVmtMethodParam.Name

Declaration: Property Name : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.24.3 TVmtMethodParam.Tail

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.24.4 TVmtMethodParam.Next

Declaration: Property Next : PVmtMethodParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.25 TVmtMethodTable

```

TVmtMethodTable = packed record
private
    function GetEntry(Index
        : LongWord) : PVmtMethodEntry;
public
    Count : LongWord;
    property
        Entry[Index: LongWord]: PVmtMethodEntry;
private
    Entries : Array
        [0..0] of TVmtMethodEntry;
end

```

### 78.25.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2012</a> | Entry      | r      |             |

### 78.25.2 TVmtMethodTable.Entry

**Declaration:** `Property Entry[Index: LongWord]: PVmtMethodEntry`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

## 78.26 EPropertyConvertError

### 78.26.1 Description

`EPropertyConvertError` is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of the `typinfo` unit, but is declared for Delphi compatibility.

## 78.27 EPropertyError

### 78.27.1 Description

Exception raised in case of an error in one of the functions.

## Chapter 79

# Reference for unit 'unicodedata'

### 79.1 Overview

The `fpwidingstring` (2013) unit relies on having relevant Unicode collation data linked in the binary. The Unicode data is managed using the routines in the `unicodedata` unit. The FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in `.bco` files which can be loaded using the `LoadCollation` (2024) routines. The `LoadCollation` is the main routine of this unit.

All collation data requires at least the Default Unicode Collation Element Table to be registered (called `DUCET`). The `DUCET` encoding is provided by the `unicodeducet` unit, part of the `rtl-Unicode` package.

There are two ways to register collations :

1. **at compile time**: by including the desired collation unit, for example for Russian and Japanese languages to be available you will have to include `collation_ru` and `collation_ja` from package "rtl-unicode".
2. **at runtime** using the above mentioned `LoadCollation` function.

The two ways can co-exist: some collations may be compile time included (for example for most used collations) and others can be loaded at runtime in the same application.

The binary collation files are endian sensitive:

- there are files for little endian systems named `collation__le.bco` (such as `collation_ru_le.bco` and `collation_ja_le.bco`)
- there are files for big endian systems named `collation__be.bco` (such as `collation_ru_be.bco` and `collation_ja_be.bco`).

Note that the compile time units collation units (`collation_lang.pas`) include already the `unicodeducet.pas` (`DUCET`) unit so it is not necessary to include it manually, contrary to the binary files. So an application that only uses the binary collation files should at least include the `unicodeducet` unit or manually load the binary collation `collation_ducet_le.bco` or `collation_ducet_be.bco`, depending on the endianness of the platform. The `LoadCollation` (2024) call using a directory and the language `ducet` automatically select the correct file.

## 79.2 Constants, types and variables

### 79.2.1 Resource strings

`SCollationNotFound` = 'Collation not found : "%s".'

Error message when a collation is not found.

### 79.2.2 Constants

`DEFAULT_UCA_COMPARISON_STRENGTH` = 3

`DirectorySeparator` = '/'

`ENDIAN_NATIVE` = `TEndianKind.Little`

`ENDIAN_NON_NATIVE` = `TEndianKind.Big`

`ENDIAN_SUFFIX` : `Array[TEndianKind] of UnicodeString` = ('le', 'be')

`ENDIAN_SUFFIX` contains the suffixes used in `LoadCollation` (2024) when constructing a collation filename for a language.

`ERROR_INVALID_CODEPOINT_SEQUENCE` = 1

Error exit code for `UnicodeToLower/UnicodeToUpper`

`HIGH_SURROGATE_BEGIN` = `Word($D800)`

First value for high surrogate values.

`HIGH_SURROGATE_COUNT` = `HIGH_SURROGATE_END - HIGH_SURROGATE_BEGIN + 1`

Number of high surrogate values.

`HIGH_SURROGATE_END` = `Word($DBFF)`

Last value for high surrogate values.

`LOW_SURROGATE_BEGIN` = `Word($DC00)`

First value for low surrogate values.

`LOW_SURROGATE_END` = `Word($DFFF)`

Last value for low surrogate values.

`MAX_LEGAL_UTF32 = $10FFFF`

Maximum value of a legally encoded UTF32 value (currently unused)

`MAX_WORD = High(Word)`

`MAX_WORD` is the maximum value of a `WORD` typed value.

`reCodesetConversion = reRangeError`

`ROOT_COLLATION_NAME = 'DUCET'`

Name of the root collation (used if no collation name is given)

`UCS4_HALF_BASE = LongWord($10000)`

Offset for UCS4 character encoding

`UCS4_HALF_MASK = Word($3FF)`

Unused currently

`UGC_ClosePunctuation = 14`

Unicode token category: Close punctuation

`UGC_CombiningMark = 6`

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

`UGC_ConnectPunctuation = 11`

Unicode token category: Connect punctuation

`UGC_Control = 25`

Unicode token category: control token

`UGC_CurrencySymbol = 19`

Unicode token category: Currency symbol

`UGC_DashPunctuation = 12`

Unicode token category: Dash punctuation

`UGC_DecimalNumber = 8`

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

UGC\_EnclosingMark = 7

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

UGC\_FinalPunctuation = 16

Unicode token category: Final punctuation

UGC\_Format = 26

Unicode token category: Formatting token

UGC\_InitialPunctuation = 15

Unicode token category: Initial punctuation

UGC\_LetterNumber = 9

Unicode token category: Letter-number

UGC\_LineSeparator = 23

Unicode token category: Line separator

UGC\_LowercaseLetter = 1

Unicode general category: Lowercase letter

UGC\_MathSymbol = 18

Unicode token category: Math symbol

UGC\_ModifierLetter = 3

Unicode general category: modifier letter

UGC\_ModifierSymbol = 20

Unicode token category: modifier symbol

UGC\_NonSpacingMark = 5

Unicode general category: Non-spacing mark

UGC\_OpenPunctuation = 13

Unicode token category: Open punctuation

UGC\_OtherLetter = 4

Unicode general category: Other letter

UGC\_OtherNumber = 10

Unicode token category: Other number

UGC\_OtherPunctuation = 17

Unicode token category: Other punctuation

UGC\_OtherSymbol = 21

Unicode token category: Other symbol

UGC\_ParagraphSeparator = 24

Unicode token category: Paragraph separator

UGC\_PrivateUse = 28

Unicode token category: For private use

UGC\_SpaceSeparator = 22

Unicode token category: Space separator

UGC\_Surrogate = 27

Unicode token category: Surrogate token

UGC\_TitlecaseLetter = 2

Unicode general category: Titlecase letter

UGC\_Unassigned = 29

Unicode token category: As yet unassigned

UGC\_UppercaseLetter = 0

Unicode general category: Uppercase letter

```
UnicodeCategoryNames : Array[0..29] of string = ('Lu', 'Ll', 'Lt'
, 'Lm', 'Lo', 'Mn', 'Mc', 'Me', 'Nd', 'Nl', 'No', 'Pc', 'Pd', 'Ps'
, 'Pe', 'Pi', 'Pf', 'Po', 'Sm', 'Sc', 'Sk', 'So', 'Zs', 'Zl', 'Zp'
, 'Cc', 'Cf', 'Cs', 'Co', 'Cn')
```

ZERO\_UINT24 : UInt24 = (byte0: 0; byte1: 0; byte2: 0)

TUInt24Rec value with all bytes zero.

### 79.2.3 Types

DWord = UInt32

PCollationTableItem = ^TCollationTableItem

PDWord = ^DWord

PtrInt = NativeInt

PtrUInt = NativeUInt

PUCA\_DataBook = ^TUCA\_DataBook

**Pointer to TUCA\_DataBook type.**

PUCA\_PropItemContextRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemContextRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextRec**

PUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec =  
^TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec**

PUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec**

PUCA\_PropItemRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemRec**

PUCA\_PropWeights = ^TUCA\_PropWeights

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropWeights**

PUC\_Prop = ^TUC\_Prop

**Pointer to TUC\_Prop record**

PUInt24 = ^UInt24

**Pointer to TUInt24Rec**

PUnicodeChar = ^UnicodeChar

SizeInt = NativeInt

TCategoryMask = Set of

TCollationField = (BackWard, VariableLowLimit, VariableHighLimit, Alternate, Normalization, Strength)

Table 79.1: Enumeration values for type TCollationField

| Value             | Explanation                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Alternate         |                                     |
| BackWard          | Backwards encoded                   |
| Normalization     |                                     |
| Strength          |                                     |
| VariableHighLimit | Has upper bound on variable weights |
| VariableLowLimit  | Has lower bound on variable weights |

TCollationField describes some properties of the collation data items.

TCollationFields = Set of TCollationField

Set of TCollationField

TCollationName = Array[0..(128-1)] of Byte

Collation name string type (fixed length)

```
TCollationTableItem = record
public
  Collation : PUCA_DataBook;
  Aliases : TUnicodeStringArray;
end
```

TCollationTableItemArray = Array of TCollationTableItem

TCollationVersion = TCollationName

TEndianKind = (Little, Big)

Table 79.2: Enumeration values for type TEndianKind

| Value  | Explanation            |
|--------|------------------------|
| Big    | Big-endian platform    |
| Little | Little-endian platform |

TEndianKind is an auxiliary enumerated type to enumerate the endianness of platforms.

TSetOfByte = Set of Byte

TUCASortKey = Array of TUCASortKeyItem

Array of TUCASortKeyItem

TUCASortKeyItem = Word

Alias for WORD

```
TUCA_PropWeights = packed record
public
  Weights : Array[0..2] of
    Word;
end
```

TUC\_PropWeights describes the weights of collation characteristics of a unicode character. It is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

```
TUCA_VariableKind = (ucaShifted, ucaNonIgnorable, ucaBlanked,
  ucaShiftedTrimmed, ucaIgnoreSP)
```

Table 79.3: Enumeration values for type TUCA\_VariableKind

| Value             | Explanation   |
|-------------------|---|
| ucaBlanked        | Variable collation elements and any subsequent ignorable collation elements are reset so that all weights are zero            |
| ucaIgnoreSP       | Not implemented (variant of Shifted that reduces the set of variable collation elements to include only non-space characters) |
| ucaNonIgnorable   | Variable collation elements are not reset to be quaternary collation elements   |
| ucaShifted        | Variable collation elements are reset to zero at levels one through three   |
| ucaShiftedTrimmed | This option is the same as Shifted, except that all trailing FFFFs are trimmed from the sort key.                             |

Options for weighting data

TUnicodeStringArray = Array of UnicodeString

UInt24 = TUInt24Rec

Alias for TUInt24Rec

UnicodeChar = WideChar

## 79.3 Procedures and functions

### 79.3.1 AddAliasCollation

**Declaration:** function AddAliasCollation (ACollation: PUCA\_DataBook;  
AALias: UnicodeString) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

### 79.3.2 BytesToName

**Declaration:** `function BytesToName(const ABytes: Array of Byte) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 79.3.3 BytesToString

**Declaration:** `function BytesToString(const ABytes: Array of Byte;  
const AValidChars: TSetOfByte) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 79.3.4 CanonicalOrder

**Synopsis:** Put unicode string in canonical order.

**Declaration:** `procedure CanonicalOrder(var AString: UnicodeString); Overload  
procedure CanonicalOrder(AString: PUnicodeChar; const ALength: SizeInt)  
; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CanonicalOrder` transforms a unicode string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AString` with length `ALength`) so it is in canonical order (as defined by the unicode specification). A string needs to be in canonical order to be able to compare strings. This function is called as part of `NormalizeNFD` (2025).

See also: `NormalizeNFD` (2025)

### 79.3.5 CompareSortKey

**Synopsis:** Compare two sort keys.

**Declaration:** `function CompareSortKey(const A: TUCASortKey; const B: TUCASortKey)  
: Integer; Overload  
function CompareSortKey(const A: TUCASortKey; const B: Array of Word)  
: Integer; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CompareSortKey` compares 2 sort keys `A` and `B`. It returns

- a negative number if `A` comes alphabetically ordered before `B`.
- Zero if `A` is alphabetically identical to `B`.
- A positive number if `A` is alphabetically ordered after `B`.

Sort keys can be constructed from unicode strings using `ComputeSortKey` (2022).

See also: `ComputeSortKey` (2022)

### 79.3.6 ComputeSortKey

Synopsis: Compute the sort key for a string

Declaration: 

```
function ComputeSortKey(const AString: UnicodeString;
                        const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : TUCASortKey
                        ; Overload
function ComputeSortKey(const AStr: PUnicodeChar;
                        const ALength: SizeInt;
                        const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : TUCASortKey
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ComputeSortKey` computes the sort key for a unicode string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AStr` with length `ALength`) using the Unicode Collation Algorithm data in `ACollation`. This key can then be used in `CompareSortKey` ([2021](#)) to compare unicode strings.

See also: `CompareSortKey` ([2021](#))

### 79.3.7 FilterString

Declaration: 

```
function FilterString(const AStr: PUnicodeChar; const ALength: SizeInt;
                     const AExcludedMask: TCategoryMask) : UnicodeString
                     ; Overload
function FilterString(const AStr: UnicodeString;
                     const AExcludedMask: TCategoryMask) : UnicodeString
                     ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

### 79.3.8 FindCollation

Synopsis: Find a collation by name

Declaration: 

```
function FindCollation(AName: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
function FindCollation(const AIndex: Integer) : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FindCollection` searches a collation with name `AName` or index `AIndex` in the list of known collations and returns a pointer to the collation data. If the requested collation is not known, i.e. the name is not found, or the index is out of range, then `Nil` is returned. The valid index range is 0 to `GetCollationCount-1`.

See also: `GetCollationCount` ([2023](#))

### 79.3.9 FreeCollation

Synopsis: Free collation data.

Declaration: 

```
procedure FreeCollation(AItem: PUCA_DataBook)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeCollation` removes all structures in the collation data from memory. It will not do anything when the header field `Dynamic` is `false`. (collations loaded and registered using `LoadCollation` ([2024](#)) are always dynamic and must be freed).

See also: [LoadCollation \(2024\)](#)

### 79.3.10 FromUCS4

Synopsis: Convert UCS4 to UnicodeChar

Declaration: `procedure FromUCS4(const AValue: UCS4Char; out AHighS: UnicodeChar;  
out ALowS: UnicodeChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FromUCS4` converts the UCS4 encoded unicode character `AValue` to a set of unicode (surrogate pair) characters encoded in UTF16: `AHighS`, `ALowS`.

See also: [ToUCS4 \(2026\)](#), [UnicodeIsHighSurrogate \(2026\)](#), [UnicodeIsLowSurrogate \(2027\)](#), [UnicodeIsSurrogatePair \(2027\)](#)

### 79.3.11 GetCollationCount

Synopsis: Return the number of known collations.

Declaration: `function GetCollationCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCollationCount` returns the number of registered collations. The collation data can be retrieved by index using the [FindCollation \(2022\)](#). The maximum index is `GetCollationCount-1`.

See also: [FindCollation \(2022\)](#)

### 79.3.12 GetProps

Synopsis: Get unicode character data

Declaration: `function GetProps(const ACodePoint: Word) : PUC_Prop; Overload  
function GetProps(const AHighS: UnicodeChar; const ALowS: UnicodeChar)  
: PUC_Prop; Overload  
function GetProps(const ACodePoint: Cardinal) : PUC_Prop; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProps` returns a pointer to a general unicode character property data structure. The character can be specified using a word or cardinal sized codepoint (`ACodePoint`), or using a UTF16 encoded surrogate pair (`AHighS`, `ALowS`).

The returned pointer must not be freed, it points to part of a static structure.

See also: [GetPropUCA \(2023\)](#)

### 79.3.13 GetPropUCA

Synopsis: Get unicode collation algorithm properties for a unicode character

**Declaration:**

```
function GetPropUCA(const AHighS: UnicodeChar;
                   const ALowS: UnicodeChar; const ABook: PUCA_DataBook)
    : PUCA_PropItemRec; Overload
function GetPropUCA(const AChar: UnicodeChar;
                   const ABook: PUCA_DataBook) : PUCA_PropItemRec
    ; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetPropUCA returns UCA data for the unicode character (AChar) or surrogate pair AHighS, ALowS) in the collation data book ABook. If no data is available, Nil is returned.

**Errors:** if an invalid ABook is specified, an access violation may occur.

**See also:** GetProps ([2023](#))

### 79.3.14 IncrementalCompareString

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 strings using the specified collation

**Declaration:**

```
function IncrementalCompareString(const AStrA: PUnicodeChar;
                                const ALengthA: SizeInt;
                                const AStrB: PUnicodeChar;
                                const ALengthB: SizeInt;
                                const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook)
    : Integer; Overload
function IncrementalCompareString(const AStrA: UnicodeString;
                                const AStrB: UnicodeString;
                                const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook)
    : Integer; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncrementalCompareString creates 2 compare keys from the strings AStrA and AStrB using collation data in ACollation. The keys are computed only to the point where the two strings differ. This means the keys cannot be reused for other comparisons if the strings differ. The two strings can be specified as a unicode string or as a pointer to a null-terminated character array with a length (ALengthA and ALengthB). It returns then the result of CompareSortKey ([2021](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** ComputeSortKey ([2022](#)), CompareSortKey ([2021](#))

### 79.3.15 LoadCollation

**Synopsis:** Load a binary collation data file from file

**Declaration:**

```
function LoadCollation(const AData: Pointer;
                      const ADataLength: Integer;
                      var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const AData: Pointer; const ADataLength: Integer)
    : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
function LoadCollation(const AFileName: UnicodeString;
                      var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
```

```

function LoadCollation(const AFileName: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const ADirectory: UnicodeString;
    const ALanguage: UnicodeString;
    var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const ADirectory: UnicodeString;
    const ALanguage: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LoadCollation` loads collation data from file `AFileName`, or from a memory block `AData` with length `ADataLength`. If successful, it returns a pointer which can be used to register the collation using `RegisterCollation` (2026). If there is a problem with the data, `Nil` is returned.

The filename can also be specified as a `Directory` and language name `ALanguage`. The latter is prepended with `collation_` and appended with the native endianness of the current platform, and has extension `.bco`

**Errors:** If the file containing data does not exist or has a size which is less than the encoded header size, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (2026)

### 79.3.16 NormalizeNFD

**Synopsis:** Perform unicode normalization D on a string

```

Declaration: function NormalizeNFD(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload
function NormalizeNFD(const AStr: PUnicodeChar; ALength: SizeInt)
    : UnicodeString; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NormalizeNFD` normalizes the string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AStr` with length `ALength`) to Unicode Normalization Form D. The resulting string can be used to determine equivalence of unicode strings.

See also: `CanonicalOrder` (2021)

### 79.3.17 PrepareCollation

**Synopsis:** Prepare a collation for use in the list

```

Declaration: procedure PrepareCollation(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook;
    const ABaseName: UnicodeString;
    const AChangedFields: TCollationFields)

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `PrepareCollation` will link collation definition `ACollation` to the base collection with name `ABaseName` (if empty, it defaults to the root collation). It will also initialize some fields in the definition, copying them from the base collation, but excludes the fields enumerated in `AChangedFields`.

It should normally not be needed to call this function, it is called as part of `LoadCollation` (2024).

See also: `LoadCollation` (2024)

### 79.3.18 RegisterCollation

Synopsis: Register a new collation

Declaration: 

```
function RegisterCollation(const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : Boolean
                        ; Overload
function RegisterCollation(const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook;
                        const AAliasList: Array of UnicodeString)
                        : Boolean; Overload
function RegisterCollation(ADirectory: UnicodeString;
                        ALanguage: UnicodeString) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterCollation` registers a new collation `ACollation` in the list of known collations. The collation data can be specified directly (`ACollation`) or a name of a language (`ALanguage`) in a directory (`ADirectory`). The latter option will load the binary encoded collation from file using `LoadCollation` (2024).

If the collation is loaded correctly, `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned (for instance when a collation with the same name is already loaded).

See also: `UnRegisterCollation` (2028), `UnRegisterCollations` (2028), `LoadCollation` (2024)

### 79.3.19 ToUCS4

Synopsis: Encode unicode UTF16 surrogate pair to UCS4 character

Declaration: 

```
function ToUCS4(const AHighS: UnicodeChar; const ALowS: UnicodeChar)
                : UCS4Char
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ToUCS4` converts set of unicode (surrogate pair) characters encoded in UTF16: `AHighS`, `ALowS` to a UCS4 encoded unicode character.

See also: `FromUCS4` (2023), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (2026), `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate` (2027), `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` (2027)

### 79.3.20 UnicodeIsHighSurrogate

Synopsis: Check if a UTF16 character is the high character in a surrogate pair.

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeIsHighSurrogate(const AValue: UnicodeChar) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` checks whether `AValue` is a valid high character of a surrogate pair, and returns `True` if this is the case. It does this by checking whether the values are within the bounds for high characters in surrogate pairs.

See also: `FromUCS4` (2023), `ToUCS4` (2026), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (2026), `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate` (2027), `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` (2027)

### 79.3.21 `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate`

**Synopsis:** Check if a UTF16 character is the low character in a surrogate pair.

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeIsLowSurrogate(const AValue: UnicodeChar) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` checks whether `AValue` is a valid high character of a surrogate pair, and returns `True` if this is the case. It does this by checking whether the values are within the bounds for high characters in surrogate pairs.

See also: `FromUCS4` (2023), `ToUCS4` (2026), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (2026), `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` (2027)

### 79.3.22 `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair`

**Synopsis:** Check if a pair of UTF16 encoded characters is a valid surrogate pair.

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeIsSurrogatePair(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;  
const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` checks whether `AHighSurrogate`, `ALowSurrogate` constitute a valid surrogate pair, and returns `True` if this is the case. It does this by checking whether the values are within the bounds for high and low surrogate pairs.

See also: `FromUCS4` (2023), `ToUCS4` (2026), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (2026), `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate` (2027)

### 79.3.23 `UnicodeToLower`

**Synopsis:** Transform unicode string to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeToLower(const AString: UnicodeString;  
const AIgnoreInvalidSequence: Boolean;  
out AResultString: UnicodeString) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeToLower` transforms a UTF16 unicode string `AString` to its lowercase equivalent and returns this in `AResultString`. If the transformation was successful, then the function returns 0. A nonzero return value means an error occurred. `AResultString` will remain untouched in that case.

If a character in `AString` cannot be found in the unicode data tables, an error will be reported, unless `AIgnoreInvalidSequence` is set to `True`, in which case the character will be copied as-is to the output.

Unicode collation data can be loaded using `RegisterCollation` (2026) or `LoadCollation` (2024)

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero value will be returned.

See also: `UnicodeToUpper` (2028), `RegisterCollation` (2026), `LoadCollation` (2024)

### 79.3.24 UnicodeToUpper

Synopsis: Transform unicode string to uppercase

Declaration: `function UnicodeToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString;  
const AIgnoreInvalidSequence: Boolean;  
out AResultString: UnicodeString) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeToUpper` transforms a UTF16 unicode string `AString` to its uppercase equivalent and returns this in `AResultString`. If the transformation was successful, then the function returns 0. A nonzero return value means an error occurred. `AResultString` will remain untouched in that case.

If a character in `AString` cannot be found in the unicode data tables, an error will be reported, unless `AIgnoreInvalidSequence` is set to `True`, in which case the character will be copied as-is to the output.

Unicode collation data can be loaded using `RegisterCollation` (2026) or `LoadCollation` (2024)

Errors: On error, a nonzero value will be returned.

See also: `UnicodeToLower` (2027), `RegisterCollation` (2026), `LoadCollation` (2024)

### 79.3.25 UnregisterCollation

Synopsis: Remove a collation from the list of known collections.

Declaration: `function UnregisterCollation(AName: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterCollation` removes a collation `AName` from the list of known collations. It returns `True` if the collation was found and successfully removed.

Errors: If the collation was not found, `False` is returned.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (2026), `UnRegisterCollations` (2028), `LoadCollation` (2024)

### 79.3.26 UnregisterCollations

Synopsis: Unregister all collations.

Declaration: `procedure UnregisterCollations(const AFreeDynamicCollations: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterCollations` unregisters all known collations. If `AFreeDynamicCollations` is `True`, then dynamic collations will be removed from memory using `FreeCollation` (2022). This must normally be set to `true`.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (2026), `UnRegisterCollation` (2028), `LoadCollation` (2024), `FreeCollation` (2022)

## 79.4 TCollationTable

```
TCollationTable = record
private
  FItems : TCollationTableItemArray
  ;
  FCount : Integer;
  function GetCapacity : Integer;
  function
  GetCount : Integer;
  function GetItem(const AIndex: Integer) : PCollationTableItem
  ;
  procedure Grow;
  procedure ClearItem(AItem: PCollationTableItem
  );
  AddAlias;
public
  class function NormalizeName(AName: UnicodeString
  ) : UnicodeString
  ; Static;

  procedure
  Clear;
  IndexOf;
  Find;
  function Add(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook
  ) : Integer;
  function Remove(AIndex: Integer) : PUCA_DataBook;
  property Item[AIndex: Integer]: PCollationTableItem; default;
  property Count : Integer;
  property Capacity : Integer;
end
```

### 79.4.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method        | Description |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Add           |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Clear         |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Find          |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | IndexOf       |             |
| <a href="#">2029</a> | NormalizeName |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Remove        |             |

### 79.4.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| <a href="#">2031</a> | Capacity   | r      |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Count      | r      |             |
| <a href="#">2030</a> | Item       | r      |             |

### 79.4.3 TCollationTable.NormalizeName

Declaration: class function NormalizeName(AName: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString

; Static

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.4 TCollationTable.Clear**

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.5 TCollationTable.IndexOf**

Declaration: function IndexOf(AName: UnicodeString) : Integer; Overload  
function IndexOf(ACollation: PUCA\_DataBook) : Integer; Overload

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.6 TCollationTable.Find**

Declaration: function Find(AName: UnicodeString) : PCollationTableItem; Overload  
function Find(ACollation: PUCA\_DataBook) : PCollationTableItem  
; Overload

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.7 TCollationTable.Add**

Declaration: function Add(ACollation: PUCA\_DataBook) : Integer

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.8 TCollationTable.Remove**

Declaration: function Remove(AIndex: Integer) : PUCA\_DataBook

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.9 TCollationTable.Item**

Declaration: Property Item[AIndex: Integer]: PCollationTableItem; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read

#### **79.4.10 TCollationTable.Count**

Declaration: Property Count : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 79.4.11 TCollationTable.Capacity

Declaration: Property Capacity : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 79.5 TUCA\_DataBook

```

TUCA_DataBook = record
public
  Base : PUCA_DataBook;
  Version :
    TCollationVersion;
  CollationName : TCollationName;
  VariableWeight
    : TUCA_VariableKind;
  Backwards : Array[0..3] of Boolean;
  BMP_Table1
    : PByte;
  BMP_Table2 : PUInt24;
  OBMP_Table1 : PWord;
  OBMP_Table2
    : PUInt24;
  PropCount : Integer;
  Props : PUCA_PropItemRec;
  VariableLowLimit
    : Word;
  VariableHighLimit : Word;
  NoNormalization : Boolean;
  ComparisonStrength : Byte;
  Dynamic : Boolean;
  function IsVariable
    (const AWeight: PUCA_PropWeights) : Boolean;
end

```

TUCA\_DataBook describes a Unicode Collation Algorithm data set. data sets can be registered using the RegisterCollation (2026) function or loaded from file using LoadCollation (2024). A collation data book must be specified when comparing unicode strings.

### 79.5.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method     | Description                            |
|----------------------|------------|--|
| <a href="#">2031</a> | IsVariable | Check if a weight is a variable weight |

### 79.5.2 TUCA\_DataBook.IsVariable

Synopsis: Check if a weight is a variable weight

Declaration: function IsVariable(const AWeight: PUCA\_PropWeights) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsVariable checks whether AWeight is between the VariableLowLimit and VariableHighLimit limits.

## 79.6 TUCA\_PropItemContextRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextRec = packed record
public
  CodePointCount :
    Byte;
  WeightCount : Byte;
  function GetCodePoints : PUInt24;
  function GetWeights : PUCA_PropWeights;
end
```

This is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.6.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method        | Description                            |
|----------------------|---------------|--|
| <a href="#">2032</a> | GetCodePoints | get the address of actual code points. |
| <a href="#">2032</a> | GetWeights    | Get the Address of actual weights.     |

### 79.6.2 TUCA\_PropltemContextRec.GetCodePoints

**Synopsis:** get the address of actual code points.

**Declaration:** function GetCodePoints : PUInt24

**Visibility:** public

### 79.6.3 TUCA\_PropltemContextRec.GetWeights

**Synopsis:** Get the Address of actual weights.

**Declaration:** function GetWeights : PUCA\_PropWeights

**Visibility:** public

## 79.7 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec = packed record
public
  Left : Word
  ;
  Right : Word;
  Data : TUCA_PropItemContextRec;
  function GetLeftNode
    : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
  function GetRightNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec
  ;
end
```

This is an internal structure for the tree which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.7.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method       | Description                    |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <a href="#">2033</a> | GetLeftNode  | Access to left tree node data  |
| <a href="#">2033</a> | GetRightNode | Access to right tree node data |

### 79.7.2 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetLeftNode

Synopsis: Access to left tree node data

Declaration: `function GetLeftNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

### 79.7.3 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetRightNode

Synopsis: Access to right tree node data

Declaration: `function GetRightNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

## 79.8 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec = packed record
public
    Size : UInt24
    ;
    function GetData : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
property
    Data : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
    function Find(const AChars
        : PUInt24; const ACharCount: Integer;
            out ANode: PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec
    ) : Boolean;
end
```

This is an internal tree structure for storing unicode collation data which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.8.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method  | Description                                    |
|----------------------|---------|--|
| <a href="#">2034</a> | Find    | Find data for encoded character                |
| <a href="#">2034</a> | GetData | Access to tree data (getter for Data property) |

### 79.8.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                   |
|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------------|
| <a href="#">2034</a> | Data       | r      | Read-only access to tree data |

### 79.8.3 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.GetData

Synopsis: Access to tree data (getter for Data property)

Declaration: `function GetData : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

### 79.8.4 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.Find

Synopsis: Find data for encoded character

Declaration: `function Find(const AChars: PUInt24; const ACharCount: Integer;  
out ANode: PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Find searches the tree for the collation data for the character encoded in AChars (ACharCount). It returns true if the data was found, false if not. A pointer to the collation data is returned in ANode.

### 79.8.5 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.Data

Synopsis: Read-only access to tree data

Declaration: `Property Data : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 79.9 TUCA\_PropItemRec

```
TUCA_PropItemRec = packed record
private
    FLAG_VALID = 0;
    FLAG_CODEPOINT
    = 1;
    FLAG_CONTEXTUAL = 2;
    FLAG_DELETION = 3;
    FLAG_COMPRESS_WEIGHT_1
    = 6;
    FLAG_COMPRESS_WEIGHT_2 = 7;
    function GetCodePoint : UInt24
    ;
public
    WeightLength : Byte;
    ChildCount : Byte;
    Size : Word
    ;
    Flags : Byte;
    function HasCodePoint : Boolean;
    property CodePoint
    : UInt24;
    function IsValid : Boolean;
    procedure GetWeightArray
```

```

(ADest: PUCA_PropWeights);
function GetSelfOnlySize : Cardinal;
function GetContextual : Boolean;
property Contextual : Boolean
;
function GetContext : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec;
function
IsDeleted : Boolean;
function IsWeightCompress_1 : Boolean;
function
IsWeightCompress_2 : Boolean;
end

```

TUCA\_PropItemRec encodes 1 entry from the Unicode Collation data in an encoded form.

### 79.9.1 Method overview

| Page                 | Method              | Description   |
|----------------------|---------------------|---|
| <a href="#">2036</a> | GetContext          | Access to context data  |
| <a href="#">2036</a> | GetContextual       | Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags (getter for Contextual) |
| <a href="#">2036</a> | GetSelfOnlySize     | Size of this item data (in bytes).                                      |
| <a href="#">2036</a> | GetWeightArray      | Return an array of weights  |
| <a href="#">2035</a> | HasCodePoint        | Check flags whether a codepoint is present.                             |
| <a href="#">2036</a> | IsDeleted           | Check flags if deleted bit is set                                       |
| <a href="#">2035</a> | IsValid             | Check flags for validity  |
| <a href="#">2036</a> | IsWeightCompress\_1 | Check whether weight compression flag 1 is set                          |
| <a href="#">2037</a> | IsWeightCompress\_2 | Check whether weight compression flag 2 is set                          |

### 79.9.2 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties | Access | Description                                     |
|----------------------|------------|--------|---|
| <a href="#">2037</a> | CodePoint  | r      | Get the codepoint                               |
| <a href="#">2037</a> | Contextual | r      | Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags |

### 79.9.3 TUCA\_PropltemRec.HasCodePoint

Synopsis: Check flags whether a codepoint is present.

Declaration: `function HasCodePoint : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.4 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsValid

Synopsis: Check flags for validity

Declaration: `function IsValid : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.5 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetWeightArray

Synopsis: Return an array of weights

Declaration: `procedure GetWeightArray (ADest: PUCA_PropWeights)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetWeightArray` returns an array with the weights in `ADest`. `ADest` must point to enough room for `WeightLength` weights.

### 79.9.6 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetSelfOnlySize

Synopsis: Size of this item data (in bytes).

Declaration: `function GetSelfOnlySize : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Description: Return the size of the item's data and properties.

### 79.9.7 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetContextual

Synopsis: Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags (getter for Contextual)

Declaration: `function GetContextual : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.8 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetContext

Synopsis: Access to context data

Declaration: `function GetContext : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetContext` returns a pointer to the context data. It is `Nil` if the context flag is not set.

### 79.9.9 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsDeleted

Synopsis: Check flags if deleted bit is set

Declaration: `function IsDeleted : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.10 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsWeightCompress\_1

Synopsis: Check whether weight compression flag 1 is set

Declaration: `function IsWeightCompress_1 : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**79.9.11 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsWeightCompress\_2**

Synopsis: Check whether weight compression flag 2 is set

Declaration: `function IsWeightCompress_2 : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**79.9.12 TUCA\_PropltemRec.CodePoint**

Synopsis: Get the codepoint

Declaration: `Property CodePoint : UInt24`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Access to codepoint if `HasCodePoint` returns true. If `HasCodePoint` returns false, an exception will be raised.

**79.9.13 TUCA\_PropltemRec.Contextual**

Synopsis: Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags

Declaration: `Property Contextual : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**79.10 TUC\_Prop**

```
TUC_Prop = packed record
private
    function GetCategory : Byte;
    procedure SetCategory(AValue: Byte);
    function GetWhiteSpace : Boolean
    ;
    procedure SetWhiteSpace(AValue: Boolean);
    function GetHangulSyllable
    : Boolean;
    procedure SetHangulSyllable(AValue: Boolean);
    function
    GetNumericValue : Double;
public
    CategoryData : Byte;
    CCC : Byte
    ;
    NumericIndex : Byte;
    SimpleUpperCase : UInt24;
    SimpleLowerCase
    : UInt24;
    DecompositionID : SmallInt;
    property Category : Byte
```

```

;
property WhiteSpace : Boolean;
property HangulSyllable : Boolean
;
property NumericValue : Double;
end

```

TUC\_Prop describes the collation characteristics of a unicode character. It is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.10.1 Property overview

| Page                 | Properties     | Access | Description                            |
|----------------------|----------------|--------|--|
| <a href="#">2038</a> | Category       | rw     | Get the category                       |
| <a href="#">2038</a> | HangulSyllable | rw     | Is the character a hangul syllable     |
| <a href="#">2039</a> | NumericValue   | r      | Numeric value                          |
| <a href="#">2038</a> | WhiteSpace     | rw     | Is the character considered whitespace |

### 79.10.2 TUC\_Prop.Category

Synopsis: Get the category

Declaration: `Property Category : Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CategoryData` provides access to the category part of `CategoryData` (encoded).

### 79.10.3 TUC\_Prop.WhiteSpace

Synopsis: Is the character considered whitespace

Declaration: `Property WhiteSpace : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Whitespace` provides easy access to the Whitespace part of `CategoryData` (encoded).

### 79.10.4 TUC\_Prop.HangulSyllable

Synopsis: Is the character a hangul syllable

Declaration: `Property HangulSyllable : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HangulSyllable` provides easy access to the HangulSyllable part of `CategoryData` (encoded).

### 79.10.5 TUC\_Prop.NumericValue

Synopsis: Numeric value

Declaration: Property NumericValue : Double

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: NumericValue uses numericalindex to get the numerical value.

## 79.11 TUInt24Rec

```

TUInt24Rec = packed record
public
    byte0 : Byte;
    byte1 : Byte;
    byte2 : Byte;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Cardinal;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec)
    : LongInt;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) :
    Word;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Byte
    ;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: Cardinal) : TUInt24Rec;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
    : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: LongInt
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: LongInt; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Word
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Word; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Byte
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Byte; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b
    : TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean;

    TUInt24Rec
    .class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) :
    Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b

```

```

: TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal
)
                                : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec
.class operator greaterthan(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec;
b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
lessthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthan(a: TUInt24Rec
; b: Cardinal) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthan(a:
Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal
(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal(a
: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal(a: Cardinal
; b: TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean
;
end

```

Unicode data exists mostly of 24-bit data (3 bytes). This type is meant to deal efficiently with this data. it has members to split out the data in bytes, and functions to query the various properties stored in the data.



**79.11.1 Method overview**

| Page | Method   | Description   |
|------|--|---|
| 2045 | <code>equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>                    | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a byte value.                         |
| 2044 | <code>equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>                | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a cardinal value.                     |
| 2045 | <code>equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>                 | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.                      |
| 2045 | <code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean</code>                    | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a byte value.                         |
| 2044 | <code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>                | Check if cardinal and TUInt24Rec are equal                                    |
| 2044 | <code>equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean</code>                 | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.                      |
| 2044 | <code>equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>              | Determine equality of 2 TUInt24Rec records                                    |
| 2045 | <code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean</code>                    | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a word value.                         |
| 2045 | <code>equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>                    | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a word value.                         |
| 2046 | <code>greaterthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>          | Check whether a cardinal value is greater than a TUInt24Rec value             |
| 2046 | <code>greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>          | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than a cardinal value             |
| 2046 | <code>greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>        | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than another TUInt24Rec value     |
| 2047 | <code>greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>   | Check whether a cardinal value is greater than or equal to a TUInt24Rec value |
| 2047 | <code>greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>   | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value |
| 2047 | <code>greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code> | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value |
| 2044 | <code>implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec</code>                     | Assign TUInt24Rec from Cardinal   |
| 2043 | <code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte</code>                         | Assign TUInt24Rec to byte   |
| 2043 | <code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal</code>                     | Assign TUInt24Rec to cardinal   |
| 2043 | <code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt</code>                      | Assign TUInt24Rec to longint  |
| 2043 | <code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word</code>                         | Assign TUInt24Rec to word   |
| 2048 | <code>lessthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>             | Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value                |
| 2047 | <code>lessthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>             | Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is   |

### 79.11.2 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to cardinal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to cardinal, byte0 to MSB and so on.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2044), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2040)

### 79.11.3 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to longint

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to cardinal, byte0 to MSB and so on.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2043)

### 79.11.4 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to word

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Word`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to word, byte0 to MSB, byte1 to MSB.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FFFF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Longint` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2044), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2040)

### 79.11.5 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to byte

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Byte`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to byte, byte0 is assigned.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Longint` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2044), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2040)

**79.11.6 TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec**

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec from Cardinal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: Cardinal) : TUInt24Rec`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign from cardinal, byte0 to MSB.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FFFFFF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2043), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(LongInt):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2040), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2040)

**79.11.7 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Determine equality of 2 TUInt24Rec records

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The 2 records are considered equal if the 3 bytes are equal.

**79.11.8 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check if cardinal and TUInt24Rec are equal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal b is considered equal to a if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

**79.11.9 TUInt24Rec.equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal a is considered equal to b if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

**79.11.10 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The longint b is considered equal to a if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

### 79.11.11 `TUInt24Rec.equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a longint value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: LongInt; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The longint `a` is considered equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.12 `TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a word value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The word `b` is considered equal to `a` if its 2 bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2` is zero.

### 79.11.13 `TUInt24Rec.equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a word value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Word; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The word `a` is considered equal to `b` if its 2 bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2` is zero.

### 79.11.14 `TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a byte value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Byte) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The byte `b` is considered equal to `a` if it equals `byte0` and `byte1` and `byte1` are zero.

### 79.11.15 `TUInt24Rec.equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a byte value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Byte; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The byte `b` is considered equal to `a` if it equals `byte0` and `byte1` and `byte1` are zero.

### 79.11.16 `TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether 2 `TUInt24Rec` values differ.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.17 `TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec, Cardinal): Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value differs from a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal `a` is considered not equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is nonzero, or one of the first three bytes differ from `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.18 `TUInt24Rec.notequal(Cardinal, TUInt24Rec): Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value differs from a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal `a` is considered not equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is nonzero, or one of the first three bytes differ from `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.19 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec, TUInt24Rec): Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than another `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`

### 79.11.20 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec, Cardinal): Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.21 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(Cardinal, TUInt24Rec): Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is greater than a `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.22 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec;  
b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.23 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.24 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is greater than or equal to a `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.25 `TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is less than another `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less than(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing the bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.26 `TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is less than a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less than(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.27 TUInt24Rec.less-than(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value

### **79.11.28 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is less than or equal to another TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing the bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.29 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is less than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.30 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is less than or equal to a TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

## Chapter 80

# Reference for unit 'unicodeducet'

### 80.1 Used units

Table 80.1: Used units by unit 'unicodeducet'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 80.2 Overview

The `unicodeducet` unit registers the root Unicode collation (DUCET). This collation is needed by all other collations, so any collation unit will include this file.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

# Chapter 81

## Reference for unit 'Unix'

### 81.1 Used units

Table 81.1: Used units by unit 'Unix'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| unixtype | <a href="#">2088</a> |

### 81.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 81.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`fs_ext = $137d`

File system type (TStatFS ([2065](#))): (ext) Extended

`fs_ext2 = $ef53`

File system type (TStatFS ([2065](#))): (ext2) Second extended

`fs_iso = $9660`

File system type (TStatFS ([2065](#))): ISO 9660

`fs_minix = $137f`

File system type (TStatFS ([2065](#))): Minix

`fs_minix_30 = $138f`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): Minix 3.0

`fs_minix_V2 = $2468`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): Minix V2

`fs_msdos = $4d44`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): MSDOS (FAT)

`fs_nfs = $6969`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): NFS

`fs_old_ext2 = $ef51`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): (ext2) Old second extended

`fs_proc = $9fa0`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): PROC fs

`fs_xia = $012FD16D`

File system type (TStatFS (2065)): XIA

`IOctl_TCGETS = $5401`

IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings

`LOCK_EX = 2`

FpFLock (2074) Exclusive lock

`LOCK_NB = 4`

FpFLock (2074) Non-blocking operation

`LOCK_SH = 1`

FpFLock (2074) Shared lock

`LOCK_UN = 8`

FpFLock (2074) unlock

`MAP_FAILED = baseunix.MAP_FAILED`

Error return value for mmap: mmap operation failed.

`MAP_FIXED = baseunix.MAP_FIXED`

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_PRIVATE = baseunix.MAP\_PRIVATE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = baseunix.MAP\_SHARED

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = baseunix.MAP\_TYPE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

Open\_Accmode = 3

Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

File open mode: Append to file

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

File open mode: Minimize caching effects

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

File open mode: File must be directory.

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

File open mode: Open exclusively

Open\_LargeFile = 1 shl 15

File open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

Open\_NDelay = Open\_NonBlock

File open mode: Alias for Open\_NonBlock (2053)

Open\_NoCtty = 4 shl 6

File open mode: No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

File open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

File open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

File open mode: Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

File open mode: Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

File open mode: Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

File open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

File open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`PRIO_PGRP = UnixType.PRIO_PGRP`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get process group priority.

`PRIO_PROCESS = UnixType.PRIO_PROCESS`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get process priority.

`PRIO_USER = UnixType.PRIO_USER`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get user priority.

`PROT_EXEC = baseunix.PROT_EXEC`

`#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201)` memory access: page can be executed

`PROT_NONE = baseunix.PROT_NONE`

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = baseunix.PROT\_READ

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = baseunix.PROT\_WRITE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (201) memory access: page can be written

P\_IN = 1

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

P\_OUT = 2

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

SIG\_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG\_MAXSIG

Maximum system signal number.

STAT\_IFBLK = \$6000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Block device

STAT\_IFCHR = \$2000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Character device

STAT\_IFDIR = \$4000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Directory

STAT\_IFIFO = \$1000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: FIFO

STAT\_IFLNK = \$a000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Socket

STAT\_IRGRP = STAT\_IROTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Group read permission

STAT\_IROTH = \$4

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Other read permission

STAT\_IRUSR = STAT\_IROTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Owner read permission

STAT\_IRWXG = STAT\_IRWXO shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXO = \$7

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXU = STAT\_IRWXO shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

STAT\_ISGID = \$0400

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: GID bit set

STAT\_ISUID = \$0800

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: UID bit set

STAT\_ISVTX = \$0200

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Sticky bit set

STAT\_IWGRP = STAT\_IWOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Group write permission

STAT\_IWOTH = \$2

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Other write permission

STAT\_IWUSR = STAT\_IWOTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Owner write permission

STAT\_IXGRP = STAT\_IXOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXOTH = $1
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (234) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN
```

Max system name length.

```
Wait_Any = - 1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (229): Wait on any process

```
Wait_Clone = $800000000
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (229): Wait on clone processes only.

```
Wait_MyPGRP = 0
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (229): Wait processes from current process group

```
Wait_NoHang = 1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (229): Do not wait

```
Wait_UnTraced = 2
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (229): Also report stopped but untraced processes

### 81.2.2 Types

```
cbool = UnixType.cbool
```

Boolean type

```
cchar = UnixType.cchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cchar (2090)

```
cdouble = UnixType.cdouble
```

Double precision real format.

```
cfloat = UnixType.cfloat
```

Floating-point real format

```
cint = UnixType.cint
```

C type: integer (natural size)

```
cint16 = UnixType.cint16
```

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint32 = UnixType.cint32
```

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint64 = UnixType.cint64
```

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint8 = UnixType.cint8
```

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

```
clock_t = UnixType.clock_t
```

Clock ticks type

```
clong = UnixType.clong
```

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

```
clonglong = UnixType.clonglong
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

```
coff_t = UnixType.TOff
```

character offset type.

```
cschar = UnixType.cschar
```

Signed character type

```
cshort = UnixType.cshort
```

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

```
csigned = UnixType.csigned
```

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` ([2057](#)).

```
csint = UnixType.csint
```

Signed integer

```
csize_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Character size type.

```
cslong = UnixType.cslong
```

The size is CPU dependent.

```
cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong
```

cslonglong is an alias for clonglong (2057).

```
csshort = UnixType.csshort
```

Short signed integer type

```
cuchar = UnixType.cuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cuchar (2091)

```
cuint = UnixType.cuint
```

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

```
cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16
```

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32
```

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64
```

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8
```

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
culong = UnixType.culong
```

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

```
culonglong = UnixType.culonglong
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

```
cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned
```

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` (2092)

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = UnixType.gid_t`

Group ID type.

`ino_t = UnixType.ino_t`

Inode type.

`mode_t = UnixType.mode_t`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

Number of links type.

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

Offset type.

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` (2056)

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` (2093)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (165) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (165) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cInt` (2057) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

```
pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32
```

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

```
pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64
```

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

```
pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = UnixType.pClock
```

Pointer to TClock (2063) type.

```
pclong = UnixType.pclong
```

Pointer to cLong (2057) type.

```
pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = UnixType.pcschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (2057).

```
pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort
```

Pointer to cShort (2057) type.

```
pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (2057).

```
pcsint = UnixType.pcsint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (2058)

```
pctype_t = UnixType.pctype_t
```

Pointer to character size type pctype\_t.

```
pcslong = UnixType.pcslong
```

Pointer to the signed long cslong (2058)

```
pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (2058)

```
pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (2058)

```
pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar (2094)

```
pcuint = UnixType.pcuint
```

Pointer to cUInt (2058) type.

```
pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to cuLong (2058) type.

```
pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned
```

Alias for #rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned (2095)

```
pcushort = UnixType.pcushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (2059) type.

```
pDev = UnixType.pDev
```

Pointer to TDev (2063) type.

```
pGid = UnixType.pGid
```

Pointer to TGid (2064) type.

```
pid_t = UnixType.pid_t
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = UnixType.pIno
```

Pointer to TIno (2064) type.

```
pMode = UnixType.pMode
```

Pointer to TMode (2064) type.

```
pnLink = UnixType.pnLink
```

Pointer to TnLink (2064) type.

```
pOff = UnixType.pOff
```

Pointer to TOff (2064) type.

```
pPid = UnixType.pPid
```

Pointer to TPid (2064) type.

```
pSize = UnixType.pSize
```

Pointer to TSize (2065) type.

```
pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t
```

Pointer to type Size\_t.

```
pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen
```

Pointer to TSockLen (2065) type.

```
psSize = UnixType.psSize
```

Pointer to TsSize (2065) type

```
pstatfs = UnixType.PStatFs
```

Pointer to statfs type

```
pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t
```

Thread conditional variable type.

```
pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t
```

Thread mutex type.

```
pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t
```

POSIX thread type.

```
pTime = UnixType.pTime
```

Pointer to TTime (2065) type.

```
ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec
```

Pointer to timespec (2064) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (2064) type.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (2064) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (2065) type.

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Alias for clock\_t (2057) type.

```
TDev = UnixType.TDev
```

Alias for dev\_t (2059) type.

```
TFSearchOption = (NoCurrentDirectory, CurrentDirectoryFirst,  
    CurrentDirectoryLast)
```

Table 81.2: Enumeration values for type TFSearchOption

| Value                 | Explanation  |
|-----------------------|--|
| CurrentDirectoryFirst | Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path. |
| CurrentDirectoryLast  | Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path    |
| NoCurrentDirectory    | Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path. |

Describes the search strategy used by FSearch ([2076](#))

TGid = UnixType.TGid

Alias for gid\_t ([2059](#)) type.

timespec = UnixType.timespec

Short time specification type.

timeval = UnixType.timeval

Time specification type.

time\_t = UnixType.time\_t

Time span type

TIno = UnixType.TIno

Alias for ino\_t ([2059](#)) type.

TIOctlRequest = UnixType.TIOctlRequest

Alias for the TIOctlRequest ([2098](#)) type in unixtypes

TMode = UnixType.TMode

Alias for mode\_t ([2059](#)) type.

TnLink = UnixType.TnLink

Alias for nlink\_t ([2059](#)) type.

TOff = UnixType.TOff

Alias for off\_t ([2059](#)) type.

TPid = UnixType.TPid

Alias for pid\_t ([2062](#)) type.

`TSize = UnixType.TSize`

Alias for `size_t` (2063) type

`TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen`

Alias for `socklen_t` (2063) type.

`TsSize = UnixType.TsSize`

Alias for `ssize_t` (2063) type

`tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs`

`StatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the file `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `TStatFS` (2102).

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime` (2065) type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec` (2064) type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval` (2064) type.

`TUId = UnixType.TUId`

Alias for `uid_t` (2065) type.

`uid_t = UnixType.uid_t`

User ID type

### 81.2.3 Variables

`tzdaylight : Boolean`

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname : Array[Boolean] of pchar`

Timezone name.

## 81.3 Procedures and functions

### 81.3.1 AssignPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

**Declaration:** `function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: cint; var pipe_out: cint) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: text; var pipe_out: text) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: File; var pipe_out: File) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** AssignPipe creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to Pipe\_out, can be read from Pipe\_in.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual `Readln(Pipe_in, ...)` and `Writeln(Pipe_out, ...)` procedures.

The function returns `True` if everything went successfully, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case the function fails and returns `False`, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` (2079), `#rtl.baseunix.FpMkFifo` (201)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex36.pp`

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
       s : String;

```
begin
  Writeln ('Assigning Pipes. ');
  If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);
  Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing. ');
  Writeln (pipo, 'This is a textstring '); close(pipo);
  Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
  While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
      Readln (pipi, s);
      Writeln ('Read from pipe : ', s);
    end;
  close (pipi);
  writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
  writeln
end.
```

### 81.3.2 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign stream for in and output to a program

Declaration: 

```
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
                    const Prog: ansiString;
                    const args: Array of ansistring) : cint
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
                    var streamerr: text; const Prog: ansiString;
                    const args: Array of ansistring) : cint
```

Visibility: default

Description: AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output, (and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the path of a program (including path). The options for the program can be specified in Args.

What is written to StreamOut, will go to the standard input of Prog. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard output can be read from StreamIn. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard error read from StreamErr, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual Readln(StreamIn, ...) and Writeln(StreamOut, ...) procedures.

**Remark** You should *not* use Reset or Rewrite on a file opened with POpen. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (192) function.

**sys\_emfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_emfile** The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the fork and exec programs

See also: AssignPipe (2066), POpen (2079)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex38.pp

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** Si, So : Text;  
S : String;  
i : longint;

```
begin
  if not (paramstr(1) = '-son') then
    begin
      Writeln ('Calling son');
      Assignstream (Si, So, paramstr(0), ['-son']);
      if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
        begin
          writeln ('AssignStream failed !');
          halt(1);
        end;
```

---

```

Writeln ('Speaking to son');
For i:=1 to 10 do
begin
  writeln (so,'Hello son !');
  if ioreult<>0 then writeln ('Can''t speak to son...');
end;
For i:=1 to 3 do writeln (so,'Hello chap !');
close (so);
while not eof(si) do
begin
  readln (si,s);
  writeln ('Father: Son said : ',S);
end;
Writeln ('Stopped conversation');
Close (Si);
Writeln ('Put down phone');
end
Else
begin
  Writeln ('This is the son ');
  While not eof (input) do
  begin
    readln (s);
    if pos ('Hello son !',S)<>0 then
      Writeln ('Hello Dad !')
    else
      writeln ('Who are you ?');
    end;
  close (output);
  end
end.

```

---

### 81.3.3 FpExecL

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `function FpExecL(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecL` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The current process' environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecL` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([192](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccessFile** is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (186), `FpExecv` (2071), `FpExecvp` (2072), `FpExecl` (2069), `FpExeclp` (2070), `FpFork` (189)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
 FpExecl ( '/bin/ls', [ '-l' ] );

**end.**

---

### 81.3.4 FpExeclE

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment)

**Declaration:** `function FpExeclE(const PathName: RawByteString;  
                               const S: Array of RawByteString; MyEnv: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpExeclE` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The environment in `MyEnv` is passed to the program. On success, `FpExeclE` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (186), `FpExecv` (2071), `FpExecvp` (2072), `FpExecl` (2068), `FpExeclp` (2070), `FpFork` (189)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

---

```

begin
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  { envp is defined in the system unit. }
  Execle ('/bin/ls -l',envp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.5 FpExecLP

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

**Declaration:** `function FpExecLP(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecLP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. S is an array of command options. The executable in PathName is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecLP does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([192](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: FpExecve ([186](#)), FpExecv ([2071](#)), FpExecvp ([2072](#)), FpExecle ([2069](#)), FpExecl ([2068](#)), FpFork ([189](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FpExeclp function. }
```

**Uses** Unix, strings;

```

begin
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  { envp is defined in the system unit. }
  FpExeclp ('ls',[ '-l' ]);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.6 FpExecLPE

Synopsis: Execute a program in the path, and pass it an environment

Declaration: `function FpExecLPE(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString; env: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecLPE` does the same as `FpExecLP` (2070), but additionally it specifies the environment for the new process in `env`, a pointer to a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings.

Errors: On success, this function does not return.

See also: `FpExecLP` (2070), `FpExecLE` (2069)

### 81.3.7 FpExecV

Synopsis: Execute process

Declaration: `function FpExecV(const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecV` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecV` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (186), `FpExecvp` (2072), `FpExecle` (2069), `FpExecl` (2068), `FpExeclp` (2070), `FpFork` (189)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lis';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

```

begin
  GetMem (PP, 3 * SizeOf (Pchar));
  PP[0] := Arg0;
  PP[1] := Arg1;
  PP[3] := Nil;
  { Execute '/bin/l$ -l', with current environment }
  fpExecv ('/bin/l$', pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.8 FpExecVP

Synopsis: Execute process, search path

Declaration: function FpExecVP (const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar) : cint

Visibility: default

Description: FpExecVP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (192) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: FpExecve (186), FpExecv (2071), FpExecl (2069), FpExecl (2068), FpExeclp (2070), FpFork (189)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
           Arg1 : PChar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

---

```

GetMem (PP,3*SizeOf(Pchar));
PP[0]:=Arg0;
PP[1]:=Arg1;
PP[2]:=Nil;
{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.9 FpExecVPE

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path using environment

**Declaration:** `function FpExecVPE(const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar;  
env: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecVP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The environment in Env is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([192](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: FpExecve ([186](#)), FpExecv ([2071](#)), FpExecle ([2069](#)), FpExecl ([2068](#)), FpExeclp ([2070](#)), FpFork ([189](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
Arg1 : PChar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**  
GetMem (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));

---

```

PP[0]:=Arg0;
PP[1]:=Arg1;
PP[2]:=Nil;
{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable.}
fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.10 fpFlock

Synopsis: Lock a file (advisory lock)

Declaration: `function fpFlock(var T: text; mode: cint) : cint`  
`function fpFlock(var F: File; mode: cint) : cint`  
`function fpFlock(fd: cint; mode: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFlock` implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file `F`. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`, or it can be a Linux file descriptor (a `longint`) `Mode` can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN**unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB**This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns zero if successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([192](#)) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFcntl` ([187](#)), `FSync` ([2050](#))

### 81.3.11 fpfStatFS

Synopsis: Retrieve file system information.

Declaration: `function fpfStatFS(Fd: cint; Info: pstatfs) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the open file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, or an error code if the call failed.

Errors: On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpStatFS` ([2075](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpfStat` ([189](#))

### 81.3.12 `fpfsync`

Synopsis: Flush cached data to disk

Declaration: `function fpfsync(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfsync` forces the system to write all paged (in-memory) changes to file descriptor `fd` to disk. If the call was successful, 0 is returned.

Errors: On error, a nonzero error-code is returned.

### 81.3.13 `fpgettimeofday`

Synopsis: Return kernel time of day in GMT

Declaration: `function fpgettimeofday(tp: ptimeval; tzp: ptimezone) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

Errors: None.

### 81.3.14 `fpStatFS`

Synopsis: Retrieve file system information.

Declaration: `function fpStatFS(Path: pchar; Info: pstatfs) : cint`  
`function fpStatFS(Path: ansistring; Info: pstatfs) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the file or path `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, or an error code if the call failed.

Errors: On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpFStatFS` ([2074](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpStat` ([221](#))

### 81.3.15 `fpSystem`

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function fpSystem(const Command: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSystem` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command in `wait(3)` format, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` ([189](#)) or `FpExecve` ([186](#)) calls. To convert the return value of `fpssystem` to the real return value use `WEXITSTATUS()` ([231](#)).

Errors: Errors are reported in (fpget)ErrNo ([192](#))

See also: POpen ([2079](#)), FpFork ([189](#)), FpExecve ([186](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex80.pp

---

```

program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ('Output of ls -l *.pp');
  S:=fpSystem('ls -l *.pp');
  WriteLn ('Command exited with status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.16 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

**Declaration:**

```

function FSearch(const path: RawByteString; dirlist: RawByteString;
  CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : RawByteString
function FSearch(const path: RawByteString; dirlist: RawByteString)
  : RawByteString
function FSearch(const path: UnicodeString; dirlist: UnicodeString;
  CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : UnicodeString
function FSearch(const path: UnicodeString; dirlist: UnicodeString)
  : UnicodeString

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FSearch searches in DirList, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named Path. It then returns a path to the found file.

The CurrentDirStrategy determines how the current directory is treated when searching:

**NoCurrentDirectory** Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryFirst** Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryLast** Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path

It is mainly provided to mimic DOS search path behaviour. Default behaviour is to search the current directory first.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: rtl.unixutil.FNMatch ([2104](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex46.pp

---

```

Program Example46;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

```

---

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix, Strings;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('ls is in : ',FSearch ('ls',strpas(fpGetenv('PATH'))));
end.
```

---

### 81.3.17 GetDomainName

Synopsis: Return current domain name

Declaration: `function GetDomainName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` ([2077](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }*

**Uses** Unix;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('Domain name of this machine is : ',GetDomainName);
end.
```

---

### 81.3.18 GetHostName

Synopsis: Return host name

Declaration: `function GetHostName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDomainName` ([2077](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** unix;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('Name of this machine is : ',GetHostName);
end.
```

---

### 81.3.19 GetLocalTimezone

Synopsis: Return local timezone information

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint; var leap_correct: cint;  
var leap_hit: cint)  
procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTimezone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` (2078), `ReadTimezoneFile` (2080)

### 81.3.20 GetTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Return name of timezone information file

Declaration: `function GetTimezoneFile : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

Errors: If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` (2080)

### 81.3.21 PClose

Synopsis: Close file opened with `POpen` (2079)

Declaration: `function PClose(var F: File) : cint  
function PClose(var F: text) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `PClose` closes a file opened with `POpen` (2079). It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see `POpen` (2079)

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function.

See also: `POpen` (2079)

### 81.3.22 POpen

Synopsis: Pipe file to standard input/output of program

**Declaration:** `function POpen(var F: text; const Prog: RawByteString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: File; const Prog: RawByteString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: text; const Prog: UnicodeString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: File; const Prog: UnicodeString; rw: Char) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `POpen` runs the command specified in `Prog`, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe `F`. The parameter `rw` indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then `F` can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from `stdin`. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from `F`. `F` should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`. A file opened with `POpen` can be closed with `Close`, but also with `PClose` (2078). The result is the same, but `PClose` returns the exit status of the command `Prog`.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function. Errors are essentially those of the `Execve`, `Dup` and `AssignPipe` commands.

See also: `AssignPipe` (2066), `PClose` (2078)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex37.pp`

**Program** Example37;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
  writeln ('and input back to stdout');
  assign (f, 'test21a');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
  writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \'$*\');
  writeln (f, 'cat');
  writeln (f, 'exit 2');
  writeln (f);
  close (f);
  fpchmod ('test21a', &755);
  popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2', 'W');
  if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
    writeln ('error from POpen : errno : ', fpgeterrno);
  for i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
  Flush(f);
  Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
  writeln;
  writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
  readln;
  assign (f, 'test21a');
```

---

```

    erase (f)
end.

```

---

### 81.3.23 ReadTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

Declaration: `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the linux unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` (2078), `GetLocalTimezone` (2078)

### 81.3.24 ReReadLocalTime

Synopsis: Re-Read the local time files.

Declaration: `procedure ReReadLocalTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReReadLocalTime` can be used to re-initialize the local timezone information.

To speed up conversion of epoch (UTC) time to local time, the timezone information is loaded only once, at program startup. Calling this routine re-reads the timezone information using current timezone settings.

The `EpochToLocal` (2105) function uses timezone information to transform epoch time to local time. This timezone information does not change while the application is running: in particular, on DST transitions or when the timezone files change, the time returned by local time routines will be wrong.

See also: `Date` (1656), `Time` (1758), `Now` (1724), `EpochToLocal` (2105)

### 81.3.25 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

Declaration: `procedure SeekDir(p: pDir; loc: clong)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `loc`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (206).

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (192) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` (183), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` (210), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (206), `TellDir` (2081)

### 81.3.26 TellDir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: `function TellDir(p: pDir) : TOff`

Visibility: default

Description: `TellDir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns -1 on failure.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (206).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` (183), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` (210), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (206), `SeekDir` (2080)

### 81.3.27 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitProcess(Pid: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (229) call:

```
FpWaitPid(PID, @result, 0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` ( $\geq 0$ ) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (229), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (232), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (231), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (231), `WIFSTOPPED` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (231), `W_EXITCODE` (2082), `W_STOPCODE` (2082), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (231)

### 81.3.28 WIFSTOPPED

Synopsis: Check whether the process is currently stopped.

Declaration: `function WIFSTOPPED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSTOPPED` checks `Status` and returns `true` if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if `WUNTRACED` was specified in the options of `FpWaitPID` (229).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (229), `WaitProcess` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (232), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (231), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (231), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (231), `W_EXITCODE` (2082), `W_STOPCODE` (2082), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (231)

### 81.3.29 W\_EXITCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

Declaration: `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer; Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_EXITCODE` combines `ReturnCode` and `Signal` to a status code fit for `WaitPid`.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (229), `WaitProcess` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (232), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (231), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (231), `WIFSTOPPED` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (231), `W_EXITCODE` (2082), `W_STOPCODE` (2082), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (231)

### 81.3.30 W\_STOPCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on a signal.

Declaration: `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_STOPCODE` constructs an exit status based on `Signal`, which will cause `WIFSIGNALED` (231) to return `True`

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (229), `WaitProcess` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (232), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (231), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (231), `WIFSTOPPED` (2081), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (231), `W_EXITCODE` (2082), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (231)

## Chapter 82

# Reference for unit 'unixcp'

### 82.1 Used units

Table 82.1: Used units by unit 'unixcp'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 82.2 Overview

The `unixcp` unit provides routines to handle mapping of code page names to numerical values as used in `libiconv`. The `GetCodepageByName` ([2086](#)) function is the main function for this. The `GetCodepageData` ([2087](#)) can be used to map a code page number to a name. These function can be used for instance to map code page information in environment variables to code page numbers used in string encodings. The supported code page names are the ones commonly in use in `libiconv`.

This unit is used for example in unit `cwstring` ([582](#)).

### 82.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 82.3.1 Constants

```
UnixCpMap : Array[-1..UnixCpMapLimit] of TUnixCpData = ((cp: 0; name
: 'UTF-8'), (cp: 37; name: 'IBM037'), (cp: 37; name: 'IBM-037'),
(cp: 154; name: 'CP154'), (cp: 154; name: 'CYRILLIC-ASIAN'), (cp:
154; name: 'PT154'), (cp: 154; name: 'PTCP154'), (cp: 154; name:
'CSPTCP154'), (cp: 437; name: '437'), (cp: 437; name: 'CP437'),
(cp: 437; name: 'IBM-437'), (cp: 437; name: 'CSPC8CODEPAGE437'),
(cp: 437; name: 'IBM437'), (cp: 500; name: 'IBM500'), (cp: 500; name
: 'IBM-500'), (cp: 708; name: 'ASMO-708'), (cp: 720; name: 'DOS-720'
), (cp: 737; name: 'CP737'), (cp: 737; name: 'ibm737'), (cp: 775;
name: 'CP775'), (cp: 775; name: 'IBM775'), (cp: 775; name: 'CSPC775BALTIC'
), (cp: 775; name: 'ibm775'), (cp: 850; name: '850'), (cp: 850; name
: 'CP850'), (cp: 850; name: 'IBM850'), (cp: 850; name: 'CSPC850MULTILINGUAL'
```

```

), (cp: 850; name: 'ibm850'), (cp: 852; name: '852'), (cp: 852; name
: 'CP852'), (cp: 852; name: 'IBM852'), (cp: 852; name: 'CSPCP852'
), (cp: 852; name: 'ibm852'), (cp: 853; name: 'CP853'), (cp: 855;
name: '855'), (cp: 855; name: 'CP855'), (cp: 855; name: 'IBM855'
), (cp: 855; name: 'CSIBM855'), (cp: 855; name: 'IBM855'), (cp: 857
; name: '857'), (cp: 857; name: 'CP857'), (cp: 857; name: 'IBM857'
), (cp: 857; name: 'CSIBM857'), (cp: 857; name: 'ibm857'), (cp: 858
; name: 'CP858'), (cp: 858; name: 'IBM00858'), (cp: 860; name: '860'
), (cp: 860; name: 'CP860'), (cp: 860; name: 'IBM860'), (cp: 860;
name: 'CSIBM860'), (cp: 860; name: 'IBM860'), (cp: 861; name: '861'
), (cp: 861; name: 'CP-IS'), (cp: 861; name: 'CP861'), (cp: 861; name
: 'IBM861'), (cp: 861; name: 'CSIBM861'), (cp: 861; name: 'ibm861'
), (cp: 862; name: '862'), (cp: 862; name: 'CP862'), (cp: 862; name
: 'IBM862'), (cp: 862; name: 'CSPC862LATINHEBREW'), (cp: 862; name
: 'DOS-862'), (cp: 863; name: '863'), (cp: 863; name: 'CP863'), (cp
: 863; name: 'CSIBM863'), (cp: 863; name: 'IBM863'), (cp: 864; name
: 'CP864'), (cp: 864; name: 'CSIBM864'), (cp: 864; name: 'IBM864'
), (cp: 865; name: '865'), (cp: 865; name: 'IBM-865'), (cp: 865; name
: 'CP865'), (cp: 865; name: 'CSIBM865'), (cp: 865; name: 'IBM865'
), (cp: 866; name: '866'), (cp: 866; name: 'CP866'), (cp: 866; name
: 'IBM866'), (cp: 866; name: 'CSIBM866'), (cp: 866; name: 'cp866'
), (cp: 869; name: '869'), (cp: 869; name: 'IBM-869'), (cp: 869; name
: 'CP-GR'), (cp: 869; name: 'CP869'), (cp: 869; name: 'IBM869'),
(cp: 869; name: 'CSIBM869'), (cp: 869; name: 'ibm869'), (cp: 870;
name: 'IBM870'), (cp: 874; name: 'CP874'), (cp: 874; name: 'WINDOWS-874'
), (cp: 874; name: 'windows-874'), (cp: 875; name: 'cp875'), (cp:
932; name: 'CP932'), (cp: 932; name: 'IBM-943'), (cp: 932; name:
'MS932'), (cp: 932; name: 'SHIFFT_JIS'), (cp: 932; name: 'SHIFFT_JIS-MS'
), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS'), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS-MS'), (cp: 932;
name: 'SJIS-OPEN'), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS-WIN'), (cp: 932; name:
'WINDOWS-31J'), (cp: 932; name: 'WINDOWS-932'), (cp: 932; name: 'CSWINDOWS31J'
), (cp: 932; name: 'shift_jis'), (cp: 932; name: 'shift-jis'), (cp
: 936; name: 'CP936'), (cp: 936; name: 'GBK'), (cp: 936; name: 'MS936'
), (cp: 936; name: 'WINDOWS-936'), (cp: 936; name: 'gb2312'), (cp
: 949; name: 'CP949'), (cp: 949; name: 'UHC'), (cp: 949; name: 'EUC-KR'
), (cp: 949; name: 'ks_c_5601-1987'), (cp: 950; name: 'CP950'), (cp
: 950; name: 'BIG5'), (cp: 950; name: 'big5'), (cp: 1026; name: 'IBM1026'
), (cp: 1047; name: 'IBM01047'), (cp: 1125; name: 'CP1125'), (cp:
1125; name: 'IBM-1125'), (cp: 1133; name: 'CP1133'), (cp: 1133; name
: 'IBM-1133'), (cp: 1133; name: 'IBM-CP1133'), (cp: 1140; name: 'IBM01140'
), (cp: 1141; name: 'IBM01141'), (cp: 1142; name: 'IBM01142'), (cp
: 1143; name: 'IBM01143'), (cp: 1144; name: 'IBM01144'), (cp: 1145
; name: 'IBM01145'), (cp: 1146; name: 'IBM01146'), (cp: 1147; name
: 'IBM01147'), (cp: 1148; name: 'IBM01148'), (cp: 1149; name: 'IBM01149'
), (cp: 1200; name: 'UTF-16LE'), (cp: 1200; name: 'UTF16LE'), (cp
: 1200; name: 'UCS-2LE'), (cp: 1200; name: 'CP1200'), (cp: 1201; name
: 'UTF-16BE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'UTF16BE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'UCS-2BE'
), (cp: 1201; name: 'unicodeFFFE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'CP1201'), (cp
: 1250; name: 'CP1250'), (cp: 1250; name: 'MS-EE'), (cp: 1250; name
: 'WINDOWS-1250'), (cp: 1250; name: 'windows-1250'), (cp: 1251; name
: 'CP1251'), (cp: 1251; name: 'MS-CYRL'), (cp: 1251; name: 'WINDOWS-1251'
), (cp: 1251; name: 'windows-1251'), (cp: 1252; name: 'CP1252'),
(cp: 1252; name: 'MS-ANSI'), (cp: 1252; name: 'WINDOWS-1252'), (cp
: 1252; name: 'windows-1252'), (cp: 1253; name: 'CP1253'), (cp: 1253

```

```

; name: 'MS-GREEK'), (cp: 1253; name: 'WINDOWS-1253'), (cp: 1253;
name: 'windows-1253'), (cp: 1254; name: 'CP1254'), (cp: 1254; name
: 'MS-TURK'), (cp: 1254; name: 'WINDOWS-1254'), (cp: 1254; name: 'windows-1254'
), (cp: 1255; name: 'CP1255'), (cp: 1255; name: 'MS-HEBR'), (cp: 1255
; name: 'WINDOWS-1255'), (cp: 1255; name: 'windows-1255'), (cp: 1256
; name: 'CP1256'), (cp: 1256; name: 'MS-ARAB'), (cp: 1256; name: 'WINDOWS-1256'
), (cp: 1256; name: 'windows-1256'), (cp: 1257; name: 'CP1257'),
(cp: 1257; name: 'WINBALTRIM'), (cp: 1257; name: 'WINDOWS-1257'),
(cp: 1257; name: 'windows-1257'), (cp: 1258; name: 'CP1258'), (cp
: 1258; name: 'WINDOWS-1258'), (cp: 1258; name: 'windows-1258'),
(cp: 1361; name: 'CP1361'), (cp: 1361; name: 'JOHAB'), (cp: 1361;
name: 'Johab'), (cp: 10000; name: 'macintosh'), (cp: 10001; name
: 'x-mac-japanese'), (cp: 10002; name: 'x-mac-chinesetrad'), (cp:
10003; name: 'x-mac-korean'), (cp: 10004; name: 'x-mac-arabic'),
(cp: 10005; name: 'x-mac-hebrew'), (cp: 10006; name: 'x-mac-greek'
), (cp: 10007; name: 'x-mac-cyrillic'), (cp: 10008; name: 'x-mac-chinesesimp'
), (cp: 10010; name: 'x-mac-romanian'), (cp: 10017; name: 'x-mac-ukrainian'
), (cp: 10021; name: 'x-mac-thai'), (cp: 10029; name: 'x-mac-ce')
, (cp: 10079; name: 'x-mac-icelandic'), (cp: 10081; name: 'x-mac-turkish'
), (cp: 10082; name: 'x-mac-croatian'), (cp: 12000; name: 'UTF-32LE'
), (cp: 12000; name: 'CP12000'), (cp: 12000; name: 'UTF32LE'), (cp
: 12001; name: 'UTF-32BE'), (cp: 12001; name: 'CP12001'), (cp: 12001
; name: 'UTF32BE'), (cp: 20000; name: 'x-Chinese_CNS'), (cp: 20001
; name: 'x-cp20001'), (cp: 20002; name: 'x_Chinese-Eten'), (cp: 20003
; name: 'x-cp20003'), (cp: 20004; name: 'x-cp20004'), (cp: 20005;
name: 'x-cp20005'), (cp: 20105; name: 'x-IA5'), (cp: 20106; name
: 'x-IA5-German'), (cp: 20107; name: 'x-IA5-Swedish'), (cp: 20108
; name: 'x-IA5-Norwegian'), (cp: 20127; name: 'US-ASCII'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'ASCII'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ANSI_X3.4-1968'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'ANSI_X3.4-1986'), (cp: 20127; name: 'CP367'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'IBM367'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ISO-IR-6'), (cp: 20127; name
: 'ISO646-US'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ISO_646.IRV:1991'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'US'), (cp: 20127; name: 'CSASCII'), (cp: 20127; name: 'us-ascii'
), (cp: 20261; name: 'x-cp20261'), (cp: 20269; name: 'x-cp20269')
, (cp: 20273; name: 'IBM273'), (cp: 20277; name: 'IBM277'), (cp: 20278
; name: 'IBM278'), (cp: 20280; name: 'IBM280'), (cp: 20284; name:
'IBM284'), (cp: 20285; name: 'IBM285'), (cp: 20290; name: 'IBM290'
), (cp: 20297; name: 'IBM297'), (cp: 20420; name: 'IBM420'), (cp:
20423; name: 'IBM423'), (cp: 20424; name: 'IBM424'), (cp: 20833;
name: 'x-EBCDIC-KoreanExtended'), (cp: 20838; name: 'IBM-Thai'),
(cp: 20866; name: 'koi8-r'), (cp: 20871; name: 'IBM871'), (cp: 20880
; name: 'IBM880'), (cp: 20905; name: 'IBM905'), (cp: 20924; name:
'IBM00924'), (cp: 20932; name: 'EUC-JP'), (cp: 20936; name: 'x-cp20936'
), (cp: 20949; name: 'x-cp20949'), (cp: 21025; name: 'cp1025'), (cp
: 21866; name: 'koi8-u'), (cp: 28591; name: 'CP819'), (cp: 28591;
name: 'IBM819'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO-8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name
: 'ISO-IR-100'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name
: 'ISO_8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO_8859-1:1987'), (cp: 28591
; name: 'L1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'LATIN1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'CSISOLATIN1'
), (cp: 28591; name: 'iso-8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'iso8859-1'
), (cp: 28592; name: 'iso-8859-2'), (cp: 28592; name: 'iso8859-2'
), (cp: 28593; name: 'iso-8859-3'), (cp: 28593; name: 'iso8859-3'
), (cp: 28594; name: 'iso-8859-4'), (cp: 28594; name: 'iso8859-4'
), (cp: 28595; name: 'iso-8859-5'), (cp: 28595; name: 'iso8859-5'

```

```

), (cp: 28596; name: 'iso-8859-6'), (cp: 28596; name: 'iso8859-6'
), (cp: 28597; name: 'iso-8859-7'), (cp: 28597; name: 'iso8859-7'
), (cp: 28598; name: 'iso-8859-8'), (cp: 28598; name: 'iso8859-8'
), (cp: 28599; name: 'iso-8859-9'), (cp: 28599; name: 'iso8859-9'
), (cp: 28603; name: 'iso-8859-13'), (cp: 28603; name: 'iso8859-13'
), (cp: 28605; name: 'iso-8859-15'), (cp: 28605; name: 'iso8859-15'
), (cp: 29001; name: 'x-Europa'), (cp: 38598; name: 'iso-8859-8-i'
), (cp: 38598; name: 'iso8859-8-i'), (cp: 50220; name: 'iso-2022-jp'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO-2022-JP'), (cp: 50221; name: 'CP50221')
, (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO-2022-JP-MS'), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO2022-JP'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO2022-JP-MS'), (cp: 50221; name: 'MS50221'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'WINDOWS-50221'), (cp: 50221; name: 'csISO2022JP'
), (cp: 50222; name: 'iso-2022-jp'), (cp: 50225; name: 'iso-2022-kr'
), (cp: 50225; name: 'iso2022-kr'), (cp: 50227; name: 'x-cp50227'
), (cp: 51932; name: 'EUC-JP'), (cp: 51932; name: 'CP51932'), (cp
: 51932; name: 'MS51932'), (cp: 51932; name: 'WINDOWS-51932'), (cp
: 51932; name: 'euc-jp'), (cp: 51936; name: 'EUC-CN'), (cp: 51949
; name: 'euc-kr'), (cp: 52936; name: 'hz-gb-2312'), (cp: 54936; name
: 'GB18030'), (cp: 57002; name: 'x-iscii-de'), (cp: 57003; name: 'x-iscii-be'
), (cp: 57004; name: 'x-iscii-ta'), (cp: 57005; name: 'x-iscii-te'
), (cp: 57006; name: 'x-iscii-as'), (cp: 57007; name: 'x-iscii-or'
), (cp: 57008; name: 'x-iscii-ka'), (cp: 57009; name: 'x-iscii-ma'
), (cp: 57010; name: 'x-iscii-gu'), (cp: 57011; name: 'x-iscii-pa'
), (cp: 65001; name: 'UTF-8'), (cp: 65001; name: 'CP65001'), (cp:
65001; name: 'UTF8'))

```

UnixCpMap is a fixed structure with codepage number/codepage name pairs. It is used in `GetCodepageData` (2087), `GetSystemCodepage` (2087) and `GetCodepageByName` (2086) to map code page names to numbers and vice versa.

The map is ordered on code page number, and for equal code page numbers, the names are ordered so the most common one is used first.

`UnixCpMapLimit = 406 - 83`

Number of code pages in map `UnixCpMap`.

## 82.3.2 Types

## 82.4 Procedures and functions

### 82.4.1 `GetCodepageByName`

Synopsis: Find code page by name

Declaration: `function GetCodepageByName(cpname: RawByteString) : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCodepageByName` returns the code page number matching `cpname`. The supported code page names are the ones commonly in use in `libiconv`. Names are searched case-sensitively, with the exception that 'cpN' is converted to 'CPN', where N is a digit.

Errors: If no matching code page name is found, `CP_NONE` is returned.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2086), `GetSystemCodepage` (2087), `GetCodepageData` (2087)

### 82.4.2 GetCodepageData

Synopsis: Return index of codepage.

Declaration: `function GetCodepageData(cp: TSystemCodePage) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCodepageData` returns the index of the first entry in `UnixCpMap` (2086) which matches `cp`. Since the entries are ordered by code page number, this means the entries can be scanned for alternate code names starting at this index.

Errors: If no matching code page is found, -1 is returned.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2086), `GetSystemCodepage` (2087), `GetCodepageByName` (2086)

### 82.4.3 GetSystemCodepage

Synopsis: Return the system code page based on the program environment.

Declaration: `function GetSystemCodepage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSystemCodepage` returns the system code page, based on one of the environment variables `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE` or `LANG`. The first non-empty variable (in the order mentioned here) is used.

Errors: If none is found, then a system default is used: Linux and Darwin use `CP_UTF8`, others use `CP_ASCII`.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2086), `GetSystemCodepage` (2087), `GetCodepageByName` (2086)

## 82.5 TUnixCpData

```
TUnixCpData = record
  cp : Word;
  name : ansistring;
end
```

`TUnixCpData` contains 2 fields necessary to construct a map between code page number (`cp`) and name (`name`).

# Chapter 83

## Reference for unit 'unixtype'

### 83.1 Overview

The `unixtype` unit contains the definitions of basic UNIX types. It was initially implemented by Marco van de Voort.

When porting to a new UNIX platform, this unit should be adapted to the sizes and conventions of the platform to which the compiler is ported.

### 83.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 83.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = 131072`

Max number of command-line arguments.

`NAME_MAX = 255`

Max length (in bytes) of filename

`PATH_MAX = 4095`

Max length (in bytes) of pathname

`Prio_PGrp = 1`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get process group priority.

`Prio_Process = 0`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get process priority.

`Prio_User = 2`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (195)` option: Get user priority.

`pthread_rwlocksize = 56`

Size of `pthread_rwlock_t` \_data structure

`SIG_MAXSIG = 128`

Maximum signal number.

`SYS_NMLN = 65`

Max system namelength

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP = 3`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP = 2`

Mutex options: double lock returns an error code.

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_FAST_NP = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP`

Mutex options: Fast mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP = 1`

Mutex options: recursive mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP = 0`

Mutex options: ?

### 83.2.2 Types

`cbool = longbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = cint8`

C type: 8-bit signed integer

`cdouble = Double`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = single`

Floating-point real format

`cint = cint32`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = SmallInt`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = LongInt`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = Int64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = ShortInt`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = cuint64`

Clock ticks type

`clong = Int64`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`longdouble = extended`

Usually translates to an extended, but is CPU dependent.

`longlong = cint64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

```
cschar = cint8
```

Signed character type

```
cshort = cint16
```

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

```
csigned = cint
```

csigned is an alias for cint ([2090](#)).

```
csint = cint32
```

Signed integer

```
cslong = Int64
```

The size is CPU dependent.

```
cslonglong = cint64
```

cslonglong is an alias for clonglong ([2091](#)).

```
csshort = cint16
```

Short signed integer type

```
cuchar = cuint8
```

C type: 8-bit unsigned integer

```
cuint = cuint32
```

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

```
cuint16 = Word
```

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint32 = LongWord
```

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint64 = QWord
```

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint8 = Byte
```

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`culong = QWord`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong = cuint64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned = cuint`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cuint` ([2091](#))

`cushort = cuint16`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = cuint64`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = cuint32`

Group ID type.

`ino64_t = cuint64`

`ino64_t` is an inode type capable of containing 64-bit inodes.

`ino_t = clong`

Inode type.

`ipc_pid_t = cint`

Process ID

`kDev_t = cushort`

Kernel device type

```
mbstate_value_t = record
case Byte of
0: (
  __wch : wint_t;
);
1
  : (
  __wchb : Array[0..3] of Char;
);
end
```

This type should never be used directly. It is part of the `mbstate_t` (2100) type.

`mode_t = cint`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = cuint32`

Number of links type.

`off64_t = cint64`

64-bit offset type.

`off_t = cint64`

Offset type.

`pbool = ^cbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` (2090)

`pcchar = ^cchar`

Pointer to `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` (2090)

`pcdouble = ^cdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (2090) type.

`pcfloat = ^cfloat`

Pointer to `cfloat` (2090) type.

`pcint = ^cint`

Pointer to `cInt` (2090) type.

`pcint16 = ^cint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

`pcint32 = ^cint32`

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

`pcint64 = ^cint64`

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

`pcint8 = ^cint8`

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = ^clock_t
```

Pointer to TClock (2098) type.

```
pclong = ^clong
```

Pointer to cLong (2090) type.

```
pclongdouble = ^clongdouble
```

Pointer to the long double type clongdouble (2090)

```
pclonglong = ^clonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = ^cschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (2091).

```
pcshort = ^cshort
```

Pointer to cShort (2091) type.

```
pcsigned = ^csigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (2091).

```
pcsint = ^csint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (2091)

```
pcslong = ^cslong
```

Pointer to the signed long cslong (2091)

```
pcslonglong = ^cslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (2091)

```
pcsshort = ^csshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (2091)

```
pcuchar = ^cuchar
```

Pointer to #rtl.UnixType.cuchar (2091)

```
pcuint = ^cuint
```

Pointer to cUInt (2091) type.

```
pcuint16 = ^cuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = ^cuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = ^cuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = ^cuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = ^culong
```

Pointer to cuLong (2092) type.

```
pculonglong = ^culonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = ^cunsigned
```

Pointer to #rtl.unixtype.cunsigned (2092)

```
pcushort = ^cushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (2092) type.

```
pDev = ^dev_t
```

Pointer to TDev (2098) type.

```
pGid = ^gid_t
```

Pointer to TGid (2098) type.

```
pid_t = cint
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = ^ino_t
```

Pointer to TIno (2098) type.

```
pIno64 = ^ino64_t
```

Pointer to `ino64_t` (2092)

```
pkDev = ^kDev_t
```

Pointer to `TkDev` (2099) type.

```
pmbstate_t = ^mbstate_t
```

Pointer to `mbstate_t` (2100) type

```
pMode = ^mode_t
```

Pointer to `TMode` (2099) type.

```
pnLink = ^nlink_t
```

Pointer to `TnLink` (2099) type.

```
pOff = ^off_t
```

Pointer to `TOff` (2099) type.

```
pOff64 = ^off64_t
```

Pointer to `off64_t` type

```
pPid = ^pid_t
```

Pointer to `TPid` (2099) type.

```
pSize = ^size_t
```

Pointer to `TSize` (2099) type.

```
psize_t = pSize
```

Pointer to `size_t` (2098) type.

```
pSockLen = ^socklen_t
```

Pointer to `TSockLen` (2099) type.

```
pSSize = ^ssize_t
```

Pointer to `TsSize` (2099) type

```
PStatFS = ^TStatfs
```

Pointer to `TStatFS` (2102) type.

```
pthread_key_t = cuint
```

Thread local storage key (opaque)

```
PTHREAD_MUTEX_T = record
case Byte of
1: (
  __m_reserved : LongInt
  ;
  __m_count : LongInt;
  __m_owner : pointer;
  __m_kind : LongInt
  ;
  __m_lock : record
    __status : sizeint;
    __spinlock : LongInt
  ;
  end;
);
end
```

`_pthread_mutex_t` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlock_t = record
case Boolean of
False: (
  _data : Array
    [0..pthread_rwlocksize-1] of Char;
);
True: (
  align : clong;
);
end
```

`pthread_rwlock_t` describes a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_t = culong
```

Thread description record

```
pTime = ^time_t
```

Pointer to TTime (2099) type.

```
ptimespec = ^timespec
```

Pointer to timespec (2102) record.

```
ptimeval = ^timeval
```

Pointer to timeval (2102) record.

`ptime_t = ^time_t`

Pointer to `time_t` (2098) type.

`pUId = ^uid_t`

Pointer to `TUId` (2099) type.

`pwchar_t = ^wchar_t`

Pointer to `wchar_t` (2100) type.

`size_t = cuint64`

Size specification type.

`socklen_t = cuint32`

Socket address length type.

`ssize_t = cint64`

Small size type.

`TClock = clock_t`

Alias for `clock_t` (2090) type.

`TDev = dev_t`

Alias for `dev_t` (2092) type.

`TGid = gid_t`

Alias for `gid_t` (2092) type.

`time_t = cint64`

Time span type

`TIno = ino_t`

Alias for `ino_t` (2092) type.

`TIno64 = ino64_t`

Alias for `ino64_t` (2092)

`TIOCtlRequest = culong`

Opaque type used in `FpIOCtl` (196)

TkDev = kDev\_t

Alias for kDev\_t (2092) type.

TMode = mode\_t

Alias for mode\_t (2093) type.

TnLink = nlink\_t

Alias for nlink\_t (2093) type.

TOff = off\_t

Alias for off\_t (2093) type.

TOff64 = off64\_t

Alias for off64\_t type.

TPid = pid\_t

Alias for pid\_t (2095) type.

TSize = size\_t

Alias for size\_t (2098) type

TSockLen = socklen\_t

Alias for socklen\_t (2098) type.

TSSize = ssize\_t

Alias for ssize\_t (2098) type

TTime = time\_t

Alias for TTime (2099) type.

TTimeSpec = timespec

Alias for TimeSpec (2102) type.

TTimeVal = timeval

Alias for TimeVal (2102) record.

TUid = uid\_t

Alias for uid\_t (2100) type.

```
uid_t = cint32
```

User ID type

```
wchar_t = cint32
```

Wide character type.

```
wint_t = cint32
```

Wide character size type.

### 83.3 mbstate\_t

```
mbstate_t = record
  __count : cint;
  __value : mbstate_value_t;
end
```

This type should never be used directly.

### 83.4 pthread\_attr\_t

```
pthread_attr_t = record
  __detachstate : cint;
  __schedpolicy :
  cint;
  __schedparam : sched_param;
  __inheritsched : cint;
  __scope
  : cint;
  __guardsize : size_t;
  __stackaddr_set : cint;
  __stackaddr
  : pointer;
  __stacksize : size_t;
end
```

`pthread_attr_t` describes the thread attributes. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime. Use the appropriate functions to set the thread attributes.

### 83.5 pthread\_condattr\_t

```
pthread_condattr_t = record
  __dummy : cint;
end
```

`pthread_condattr_t` describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.6 pthread\_cond\_t

```
pthread_cond_t = record
  __c_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
  __c_waiting
  : pointer;
  __padding : Array[0..48-1-sizeof(_pthread_fastlock)
    -sizeof(pointer)-sizeof(clonglong)] of Byte;
  __align : clonglong
;
end
```

pthread\_cond\_t describes a thread conditional variable. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.7 pthread\_mutexattr\_t

```
pthread_mutexattr_t = record
  __mutexkind : cint;
end
```

pthread\_mutexattr\_t describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.8 pthread\_rwlockattr\_t

```
pthread_rwlockattr_t = record
  __lockkind : cint;
  __pshared : cint
;
end
```

pthread\_rwlockattr\_t describes the attributes of a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.9 sched\_param

```
sched_param = record
  __sched_priority : cint;
end
```

Scheduling parameter description record.

### 83.10 sem\_t

```
sem_t = record
```

```

__sem_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
__sem_value : cint
;
__sem_waiting : pointer;
end

```

`sem_t` describes a thread semaphore. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.11 timespec

```

timespec = record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_nsec : clong;
end

```

Record specifying time interval.

### 83.12 timeval

```

timeval = record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_usec : clong;
end

```

Time specification type.

### 83.13 TStatfs

```

TStatfs = record
  fstype : clong;
  bsize : clong;
  blocks : culong
;
  bfree : culong;
  bavail : culong;
  files : culong;
  ffree
  : culong;
  fsid : Array[0..1] of cint;
  namelen : clong;
  frsize
  : clong;
  flags : clong;
  spare : Array[0..3] of clong;
end

```

Record describing a file system in the `unix.fpstatfs` (2088) call.

### 83.14 `_pthread_fastlock`

```
_pthread_fastlock = record
  __status : clong;
  __spinlock : cint
;
end
```

`_pthread_fastlock` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

# Chapter 84

## Reference for unit 'unixutil'

### 84.1 Used units

Table 84.1: Used units by unit 'unixutil'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 84.2 Overview

The UnixUtil unit contains some of the routines that were present in the old Linux unit, but which do not really belong in the UNIX ([2050](#)) or baseunix ([140](#)) units.

Most of the functions described here have cross-platform counterparts in the SysUtils ([1599](#)) unit. It is therefore recommended to use that unit.

### 84.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 84.3.1 Variables

`Tzseconds : LongInt`

Seconds west of GMT

### 84.4 Procedures and functions

#### 84.4.1 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Concert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of RawByteString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([2106](#))

### 84.4.2 EpochToLocal

**Synopsis:** Convert epoch time to local time

**Declaration:** `procedure EpochToLocal (epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word; var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00, January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timezone settings of your system.

**Errors:** None

See also: `LocalToEpoch` ([2106](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix, UnixUtil;`

**Var** `Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;`

**begin**

`EpochToLocal (FPTIME, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds);`

`WriteLn ('Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4);`

`WriteLn ('Current time : ', Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', seconds:2);`

**end.**

---

### 84.4.3 GregorianToJulian

**Synopsis:** Converts a Gregorian date to a Julian date

**Declaration:** `function GregorianToJulian (Year: LongInt; Month: LongInt; Day: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GregorianToJulian` takes a Gregorian date and converts it to a Julian day.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `JulianToGregorian` ([2106](#))

### 84.4.4 JulianToGregorian

Synopsis: Converts a Julian date to a Gregorian date

Declaration: `procedure JulianToGregorian(JulianDN: LongInt; var Year: Word;  
var Month: Word; var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `JulianToGregorian` takes a Julian day and converts it to a Gregorian date. (Start of the Julian Date count is from 0 at 12 noon 1 JAN -4712 (4713 BC),)

Errors: None.

See also: `GregorianToJulian` ([2105](#))

### 84.4.5 LocalToEpoch

Synopsis: Convert local time to epoch (UNIX) time

Declaration: `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word; hour: Word;  
minute: Word; second: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00, January 1, 1970).

Errors: None

See also: `EpochToLocal` ([2105](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }*

**Uses** `UnixUtil;`

**Var** `year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;`

**begin**

`Write ('Year : '); readln(Year);`

`Write ('Month : '); readln(Month);`

`Write ('Day : '); readln(Day);`

`Write ('Hour : '); readln(Hour);`

`Write ('Minute : '); readln(Minute);`

`Write ('Seonds : '); readln(Second);`

`Write ('This is : ');`

`Write (LocalToEpoch(year, month, day, hour, minute, second));`

`Writeln (' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980');`

**end.**

---

### 84.4.6 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`  
`function StringToPPChar(var S: RawByteString; ReserveEntries: Integer)`  
`: PPChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of pchars that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various `Exec` calls.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ArrayStringToPPchar` ([2104](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.FpExecve` ([186](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }*

**Uses** `UnixUtil;`

**Var** `S : String;`  
`P : PPChar;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**  
*// remark whitespace at end.*  
`S:= 'This is a string with words. ';`  
`P:=StringToPPChar(S,0);`  
`I:=0;`  
**While** `P[I]<>Nil` **do**  
  **begin**  
    `Writeln( 'Word ',I, ' : ',P[I] );`  
    `Inc(I);`  
  **end;**  
  `FreeMem(P, I*SizeOf(Pchar));`  
**end.**

---

## Chapter 85

# Reference for unit 'Variants'

### 85.1 Used units

Table 85.1: Used units by unit 'Variants'

| Name      | Page                 |
|-----------|----------------------|
| rtlconsts | ??                   |
| sysconst  | ??                   |
| System    | <a href="#">1332</a> |
| sysutils  | <a href="#">1599</a> |
| TypeInfo  | <a href="#">1938</a> |

### 85.2 Overview

The compiler has built-in support for variants, and for many operations, variants can be used without thinking about it. The system unit has built-in support for some of the basic operations on a variant, as well as some compiler helper routines. However, some operations and definitions are implemented in the `Variants` unit so as not to burden the system unit with routines that may not always be needed.

There is a basic set of variants that are defined by the Windows OS, these are supported by the compiler and the routines in the `Variants` unit. Additional variant types can be registered using the `TCustomVariantType` ([2137](#)) type.

The variants unit also registers a handler for setting published properties (using RTTI) using variant-typed values. Nothing needs to be done for this except including the variants unit in your program.

### 85.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 85.3.1 Constants

`CFirstUserType = CMinVarType + CIncVarType`

`CFirstUserType` is the first allocated value for `vType` when registering a variant type by the RTL, when instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` ([2137](#)) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a custom variant type value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

```
CIncVarType = $000F
```

`CIncVarType` specifies the width of the gap after `CMinVarType` (2109). No user types are registered between `CMinVarType` and `CMinVarType+CIncVarType`.

```
CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes = $0EFF
```

`CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes` is the amount of custom variant types that can be registered. The range of the variant type indicator (`vType`) only allows a limited amount of variants. This constant is the maximum amount.

```
CMaxVarType = CMinVarType + CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes
```

`CMaxVarType` is the maximum allowed value for `vType` when registering a variant type, instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` (2137) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

```
CMinVarType = $0100
```

`CMinVarType` is the first allowed value for `vType` when registering a variant type by the OS, instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` (2137) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a custom variant type value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

```
FloatVarTypes = [varSingle, varDouble, varCurrency, varDecimal]
```

`FloatlVarTypes` is used in `VarIsFloat` (2126) to decide which variant types are considered ordinals.

```
OrdinalVarTypes = [varSmallInt, varInteger, varBoolean, varShortInt,
    , varByte, varWord, varLongWord, varInt64, varQWord]
```

`OrdinalVarTypes` is used in `VarIsOrdinal` (2126) to decide which variant types are considered ordinals.

```
VarOpAsText : Array[TVarOp] of string = ('+', '-', '*', '/', 'div'
    , 'mod', 'shl', 'shr', 'and', 'or', 'xor', '', '-', 'not', '=', '<>'
    , '<', '<=', '>', '>=', '**')
```

`VarOpAsText` is an array with the names of the various variant operations.

### 85.3.2 Types

```
TAnyProc = procedure(var V: tvardata)
```

`TAnyProc` is the type for the `ClearAnyProc` (2111), `ChangeAnyProc` (2111) and `RefAnyProx` (2108) callbacks. It accepts a reference to a variant record. The operation to be performed depends on the callback.

```
TBooleanToStringRule = (bsrAsIs, bsrLower, bsrUpper)
```

Table 85.2: Enumeration values for type TBooleanToStringRule

| Value    | Explanation          |
|----------|----------------------|
| bsrAsIs  | Leave casing as is   |
| bsrLower | Convert to lowercase |
| bsrUpper | Convert to uppercase |

TBooleanToStringRule describes how boolean values are converted to string values. It is defined for Delphi compatibility, but is not used in the FPC runtime.

TCustomVariantTypeClass = Class of TCustomVariantType

TCustomVariantTypeClass is the class type of TCustomVariantType.

TNullCompareRule = (ncrError, ncrStrict, ncrLoose)

Table 85.3: Enumeration values for type TNullCompareRule

| Value     | Explanation                                    |
|-----------|--|
| ncrError  | Raise an error when one of the values is Null. |
| ncrLoose  | Attempt to compare anyway                      |
| ncrStrict | Act as if the comparison is false              |

TNullCompareRule is the type for the NullEqualityRule (2112) and NullMagnitudeRule (2112) variables. It can have the following values:

**ncrError** Raise an error when one of the values is Null.

**ncrStrict** Act as if the comparison is false

**ncrLoose** Attempt to compare anyway

TVarCompareResult = (crLessThan, crEqual, crGreaterThan)

Table 85.4: Enumeration values for type TVarCompareResult

| Value         | Explanation                                      |
|---------------|--|
| crEqual       | Both values are equal                            |
| crGreaterThan | The first value is greater than the second value |
| crLessThan    | The first value is less than the second value    |

TVarCompareResult is used when comparing 2 custom variant values in TCustomVariantType.Compare (2141). The following values exist:

**crLessThan** The first value is less than the second value

**crGreaterThan** The first value is greater than the second value

**crEqual** Both values are equal

```
TVarDataArray = Array of tvardata
```

TVarDataArray is a helper type for instance used in IVarInvokeable.DoFunction (2136) to represent the arguments passed to a function.

```
TVarDispProc = procedure(Dest: PVariant; const Source: Variant;
    CallDesc: pcalldesc; Params: Pointer)
```

TVarDispProc is the type for the VarDispProc (2113) callback handler. It accepts a destination variant (Dest) for a result. Source is the variant on which the operation was invoked, CallDesc Describes the arguments to the call and Params points to the parameters provided in the call.

```
TVariantRelationship = (vrEqual, vrLessThan, vrGreaterThan, vrNotEqual
    )
```

Table 85.5: Enumeration values for type TVariantRelationship

| Value         | Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| vrEqual       | Are the 2 variants equal                                |
| vrGreaterThan | Is the first variant (strictly) greater than the second |
| vrLessThan    | Is the first variant (strictly) less than the second    |
| vrNotEqual    | Are the 2 variants unequal                              |

TVariantRelationship is used by VarCompareValue (2122) to indicate the type of comparison operation it must perform. It has the following values:

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

**vrLessThan** Is the first variant (strictly) less than the second

**vrGreaterThan** Is the first variant (strictly) greater than the second

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

### 85.3.3 Variables

```
ChangeAnyProc : TAnyProc
```

ChangeAnyProc is currently not used in the Variants unit.

```
ClearAnyProc : TAnyProc
```

ClearAnyProc is called when the system needs to clear a variant of type varAny. it must clear the variant.

```
EmptyParam : OleVariant
```

`EmptyParam` is an initialized variant with type `varError` and error value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`. In difference with `Null` (2115) and `UnAssigned` (2116) it is a variable. You should take care never to write to it.

`InvalidCustomVariantType` : `TCustomVariantType`

`InvalidCustomVariantType` can be set to a `TCustomVariantType` (2137) instance to indicate an unknown type. By default it is set to `Pointer(-1)`.

`NullAsStringValue` : `string` = ''

`NullAsStringValue` is the value used when converting a `Null` to a string. It is only used when `NullStrictConvert` (2112) is `False`, if `NullStrictConvert` (2112) is `True`, the value of `NullAsStringValue` is ignored.

`NullEqualityRule` : `TNullCompareRule` = `ncrLoose`

`NullEqualityRule` is checked when the system needs to compare the equality of variants with `Null` values (operations `opCmpEq`, `opCmpNe`). Check `TNullCompareRule` (2110) for a list of allowed values. The default is `ncrLoose`.

For determining the order (less than, greater than etc.) see `NullMagnitudeRule` (2112).

`NullMagnitudeRule` : `TNullCompareRule` = `ncrLoose`

`NullEqualityRule` is checked when the system needs to determine the ordering of variants with `Null` values (operations like `opCmpGe`, `opCmpLe`). Check `TNullCompareRule` (2110) for a list of allowed values. The default is `ncrLoose`.

For determining equality (`opCmpEq`, `opCmpNe`) of `Null` values, see `NullEqualityRule` (2112).

`NullStrictConvert` : `Boolean` = `True`

`NullStrictConvert` determines what to do when typecasting a `Null` value to another type: If it is `True` then an exception will be raised using `VarCastError` (2121). If it is `False` then a sensible default is used: 0 or some variation on 0 based on the type of the variant. For string values the `NullAsStringValue` (2112) is used.

`OleVariantInt64AsDouble` : `Boolean` = `False`

`OleVariantInt64AsDouble` describes what to do when a `Int64` value must be converted to a `OleVariant` value. When `True` the `Int64` variant is cast to a double. When `False`, it remains an `int64` value.

`PackVarCreation` : `Boolean` = `True`

`PackVarCreation` determines what to do when a variant array is created for elements with an integer type (`varSmallint`, `varByte` and the like). A value of `False` means the array will contain `varInteger` elements. This can result in better memory alignment. When `PackVarCreation` is `True` then the smallest possible size is selected for the elements.

`RefAnyProc` : `TAnyProc`

`RefAnyProc` is called when the system needs to obtain a reference to a variant of type `varAny`. it must replace the variant with a reference to the variant.

`VarDispProc : TVarDispProc`

`VarDispProc` is the handler invoked when a dispatch invoke is handled on a variant of type `varDispatch`, `varAny` or `varUnknown`.

## 85.4 Procedures and functions

### 85.4.1 DynArrayFromVariant

Synopsis: Convert a variant to a dynamic array

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayFromVariant(var DynArray: Pointer; const V: Variant; TypeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayFromVariant` transforms a variant array to a dynamic array. It uses `TypeInfo` to calculate the length, element type and dimension of the array.

The opposite transformation can be performed with `DynArrayToVariant` (2113).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2117), `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `VarArrayOf` (2119), `DynArrayToVariant` (2113)

### 85.4.2 DynArrayToVariant

Synopsis: Convert a Dynamic Array To a Variant

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayToVariant(var V: Variant; const DynArray: Pointer; TypeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayToVariant` converts the dynamic array `DynArray` to a variant array `V`. It uses the type information in `TypeInfo` to calculate the number of dimensions, array lengths and type of the element. The dynamic array can only contain basic types.

If there is no data, an empty variant will be returned.

The opposite transformation can be performed with `DynArrayFromVariant` (2113).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2117), `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `VarArrayOf` (2119), `DynArrayFromVariant` (2113)

### 85.4.3 FindCustomVariantType

Synopsis: Find a custom variant class on vartype

Declaration: `function FindCustomVariantType(const aVarType: tvartype; out CustomVariantType: TCustomVariantType) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function FindCustomVariantType(const TypeName: string; out CustomVariantType: TCustomVariantType) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindCustomVariantType` searches the registry of known `TCustomVariantType` (2137) classes and returns the instance registered for the variant type `aVarType` or the class name `TypeNames` in `CustomVariantType` if found.

It returns `True` if it found a matching definition, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `TCustomVariantType` (2137)

#### 85.4.4 FindVarData

Synopsis: Return a pointer to variant data

**Declaration:** `function FindVarData(const V: Variant) : pvardata`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindVarData` returns a pointer to the argument `V` if it is not a reference. If it is a reference, then the reference pointer is returned.

#### 85.4.5 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Return a property value as a variant

**Declaration:** `function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetPropValue` returns the value of the property described by `PropInfo` from the `Instance`. The property value is returned as a variant type.

when `PreferStrings` is true, the implementation will tend to cast to a string-valued variant when a conversion must be done.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2108) unit's `OnGetPropValue` (2108) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2108), `TypeInfo.OnGetPropValue` (2108), `SetPropValue` (2115)

#### 85.4.6 GetVariantProp

Synopsis: Get variant valued property

**Declaration:** `function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)  
: Variant  
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: Variant`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVariantProp` returns the value of the variant-types property described by `PropInfo` or `PropName` from the `Instance`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2108) unit's `OnGetVariantProp` (2108) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2108), `TypeInfo.OnGetVariantProp` (2108), `SetVariantProp` (2116), `GetPropValue` (2114)

### 85.4.7 HandleConversionException

Synopsis: Convert an exception to a variant exception

Declaration: `procedure HandleConversionException(const ASourceType: tvartype;  
const ADestType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `HandleConversionException` converts a RTL exception (`EConvertError` (2108) or `ERangeError` (2108) or `EOverflow` (2108)) to an appropriate variant error (`varCastError` (2121) and `varOverflowError` (2128)). Other exceptions are re-raised. If a source and destination type `ASourceType` and `ADestType` are specified they are included in the error message.

See also: `EConvertError` (2108), `ERangeError` (2108), `varCastError` (2121), `varOverflowError` (2128), `EOverflow` (2108)

### 85.4.8 Null

Synopsis: Return a null variant

Declaration: `function Null : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnAssigned` returns a Null variant (`type = varNull`). It can be used to test for equality with a Null variant.

See also: `UnAssigned` (2116), `EmptyParam` (2112)

### 85.4.9 SetClearVarToEmptyParam

Synopsis: Create an error variant with value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`

Declaration: `procedure SetClearVarToEmptyParam(var V: tvardata)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` clears the variant `Vvar` and sets its type to `varError` and value to `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`. `VarIsEmptyParam(SetClearVarToEmptyParam(V))` will return `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `VarIsEmptyParam` (2125), `VarIsError` (2125)

### 85.4.10 SetPropValue

Synopsis: Set a property value as a variant

Declaration: `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetPropValue` sets the value of the property described by `PropInfo` from the `Instance`. The property value is set from the variant-typed value `Value`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2108) unit's `OnSetPropValue` (2108) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2108), `TypeInfo.OnSetPropValue` (2108), `GetPropValue` (2114)

### 85.4.11 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set variant valued property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: Variant)
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: Variant)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVariantProp` sets the value of the variant-types property described by `PropInfo` or `PropName` from the `Instance` to `Value`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2108) unit's `OnSetVariantProp` (2108) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2108), `TypeInfo.OnSetVariantProp` (2108), `GetVariantProp` (2114), `GetPropValue` (2114)

### 85.4.12 Unassigned

Synopsis: Return an unassigned variant

Declaration: 

```
function Unassigned : Variant
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnAssigned` returns an unassigned variant (`type = varEmpty`). It can be used to test for equality with an empty variant.

See also: `Null` (2115), `EmptyParam` (2112)

### 85.4.13 VarArrayAsPSafeArray

Synopsis: Return internal array of variant value

Declaration: 

```
function VarArrayAsPSafeArray(const A: Variant) : pvararray
```

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayAsPSafeArray` returns the internal array of the variant `A` if it is a variant array. If not, an exception is raised.

Errors: if the variant `A` is not an array, an `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2133) exception is raised.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2124), `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2133)

### 85.4.14 VarArrayCreate

Synopsis: Create a variant array

Declaration: 

```
function VarArrayCreate(const Bounds: Array of SizeInt;
                        aVarType: tvartype) : Variant
function VarArrayCreate(const Bounds: pvararrayboundarray;
                        Dims: SizeInt; aVarType: tvartype) : Variant
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarArrayCreate` creates a (optionally multidimensional) array with upper,lower bounds specified in `Bounds`. The number of bounds (in case of a single array) must be even: 2 bounds for every dimension of the array are required. All elements of the array are of the same type. The following examples create a one-dimensional array with 10 elements

```
VarArrayCreate([0,9],varInteger);
VarArrayCreate([1,10],varInteger);
```

The first array is 0-based, the second is 1-based. The following creates a 2-dimensional array:

```
VarArrayCreate([0,9,0,1],varInteger);
VarArrayCreate([1,10,1,2],varInteger);
```

The first array is 0-based, the second is 1-based. Each array consists of an array of 2 elements.

The array can also be specified as a pointer to array of `system.tvararraybound` (2108) records, and a number of dimensions. The above 1-dimensional arrays can be specified as:

```
var
  B : tvararraybound;
begin
  b.elementcount:=10;
  B.lowbound:=0;
  VarArrayCreate(@B,1,varInteger);
  b.elementcount:=10;
  B.lowbound:=1;
  VarArrayCreate(@B,1,varInteger);
```

**Errors:** If an uneven amount of bounds is specified or the operating system failed to create the array, an exception is raised using `VarArrayCreateError` (2117)

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2117), `VarArrayOf` (2119)

#### 85.4.15 VarArrayCreateError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EVariantArrayCreateError` error

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayCreateError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayCreateError` raises an `EVariantArrayCreateError` (2132) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantArrayCreateError` (2132), `VarOverflowError` (2128), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarBadIndexError` (2120), `VarArrayLockedError` (2118)

#### 85.4.16 VarArrayDimCount

**Synopsis:** Return the number of dimensions of the array.

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayDimCount(const A: Variant) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayDimCount` returns the number of dimensions of the array `A`. If `A` is not an array, zero is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `VarArrayLowBound` (2119), `VarArrayHighBound` (2118)

### 85.4.17 `VarArrayHighBound`

**Synopsis:** Return lower bound of an array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayHighBound(const A: Variant; Dim: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayHighBound` returns the high bound (max index) of dimension `Dim` of array `A`. The dimension `Dim` is 1-based.

**Errors:** If the dimension is out of range, or `A` is not a variant array, an exception will be raised.

**See also:** `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `VarArrayDimCount` (2117), `VarArrayLowBound` (2119)

### 85.4.18 `VarArrayLock`

**Synopsis:** get a pointer to data of a variant array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayLock(const A: Variant) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayLock` returns a pointer to the data of an array-typed variant `A` and locks the variant. The pointer can then be used to manipulate the data of the array and be sure that the data is not modified by another process or thread. While the data is not released using `VarArrayUnlock` (2119) the variant cannot be changed or released, it is therefor imperative that the variant is again released. Memory leaks will be the result if this is not done.

**See also:** `VarArrayUnlock` (2119)

### 85.4.19 `VarArrayLockedError`

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EVariantArrayLockedError` error

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayLockedError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayLockedError` raises an `EVariantArrayLockedError` (2132) exception with a standard error message.

**See also:** `EVariantArrayLockedError` (2132), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarBadIndexError` (2120)

### 85.4.20 VarArrayLowBound

Synopsis: Return lower bound of an array

Declaration: `function VarArrayLowBound(const A: Variant; Dim: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayLowBound` returns the lower bound (min index) of dimension `Dim` of array `A`. The dimension `Dim` is 1-based.

Errors: If the dimension is out of range, or `A` is not a variant array, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `VarArrayDimCount` (2117), `VarArrayHighBound` (2118)

### 85.4.21 VarArrayOf

Synopsis: Create a variants array of a series of values

Declaration: `function VarArrayOf(const Values: Array of Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayOf` creates a variant array with elements of type `varVariant`. The array has as many values as there are elements in `Values` and the element values are copied from `Values`.

Errors: If the array cannot be created, an `EVariantError` exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2117), `VarArrayCreate` (2116), `DynArrayToVariant` (2113)

### 85.4.22 VarArrayRef

Synopsis: Get a reference to a variant array

Declaration: `function VarArrayRef(const A: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayRef` returns a reference to the variant array `A`.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the variant `A` is not an array.

See also: `VarArrayLock` (2118), `VarArrayUnlock` (2119), `VarIsArray` (2124)

### 85.4.23 VarArrayUnlock

Synopsis: Release data captured by `VarArrayLock`

Declaration: `procedure VarArrayUnlock(const A: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayUnlock` unlocks the variant array `A` that was previously locked using `VarArrayLock` (2118).

See also: `VarArrayLock` (2118)

#### 85.4.24 VarAsError

Synopsis: Create an error-typed variant

Declaration: `function VarAsError (AResult: HRESULT) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarAsError` creates an error-typed variant with value `aResult`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2115), `VarIsError` (2125)

#### 85.4.25 VarAsType

Synopsis: Attempt to cast a variant to another type

Declaration: `function VarAsType (const V: Variant; aVarType: tvartype) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarAsType` attempts to cast the variant `V` to a new variant of type `aVarType` and returns the new variant.

Errors: If the requested type cast is not supported or possible, an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135) exception may be raised.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135), `VarIsType` (2127), `VarAsType` (2120)

#### 85.4.26 VarBadIndexError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantBadIndexError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarBadIndexError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarBadIndexError` raises an `EVariantBadIndexError` (2133) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantBadIndexError` (2133), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarArrayLockedError` (2118)

#### 85.4.27 VarBadTypeError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantBadVarTypeError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarBadTypeError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarBadTypeError` raises an `EVariantBadVarTypeError` (2133) exception.

See also: `EVariantBadVarTypeError` (2133), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123)

### 85.4.28 VarCastError

Synopsis: Raise a variant type cast error `EVariantTypeCastError`

Declaration: `procedure VarCastError`  
`procedure VarCastError(const ASourceType: tvartype;`  
`const ADestType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCastError` raises an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135) exception. If the source and destination types are specified, then a description of the types is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135), `VarCastErrorOle` (2121)

### 85.4.29 VarCastErrorOle

Synopsis: Raise a variant type cast error `EVariantTypeCastError`

Declaration: `procedure VarCastErrorOle(const ASourceType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCastError` raises an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135) exception. a description of the source type (`aSourceType`) is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2135), `VarCastError` (2121)

### 85.4.30 VarCheckEmpty

Synopsis: Raise exception if a variant is empty.

Declaration: `procedure VarCheckEmpty(const V: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCheckEmpty` will raise an `EVariantError` (2108) exception if the variant `V` is empty (it uses `VarIsEmpty` (2125) to check this.)

Errors: if the variant is empty an `EVariantError` (2108) exception is raised.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarType` (2131), `VarIsNull` (2126)

### 85.4.31 VarClear

Synopsis: Clear the variant value

Declaration: `procedure VarClear(var V: Variant)`  
`procedure VarClear(var V: OleVariant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarClear` clears the variant, possibly freeing any memory taken by the value

Errors: None.

See also: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2115), `VarIsError` (2125), `VarIsClear` (2124)

### 85.4.32 VarCompareValue

Synopsis: Compare 2 variant values

Declaration: `function VarCompareValue(const A: Variant; const B: Variant)  
: TVariantRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCompareValue` compares 2 variants A and B. It returns one of the following values:

**vrEqual** if the 2 variant values are equal.

**vrUnequal** if one of the 2 variant is null or empty and the other is not.

**vrGreaterThan** if  $A > B$

**vrLessThan** if  $A < B$

See also: `VarSameValue` ([2128](#))

### 85.4.33 VarCopyNoInd

Synopsis: Not supported

Declaration: `procedure VarCopyNoInd(var Dest: Variant; const Source: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCopyNoInd` is currently not supported.

Errors: An `EVariantError` exception is always raised.

### 85.4.34 VarEnsureRange

Synopsis: Make sure the variant is within a specified range.

Declaration: `function VarEnsureRange(const AValue: Variant; const AMin: Variant;  
const AMax: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarEnsureRange` checks `AValue` and returns it if it is in the range specified by `AMin`, `AMax`. If it is less than `AMin`, then `AMin` is returned. If it is larger than `AMax`, then `AMax` is returned.

Errors: If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarInRange` ([2123](#))

### 85.4.35 VarFromDateTime

Synopsis: Create variant from `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function VarFromDateTime(const DateTime: TDateTime) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarFromDateTime` creates a variant with type `varDate` and value `DateTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `varToDateTime` ([2129](#))

### 85.4.36 VarInRange

Synopsis: Check if a variant is in a range of values

Declaration: `function VarInRange(const AValue: Variant; const AMin: Variant;  
const AMax: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInRange` is an auxiliary function which checks whether `AValue` is in the range defined by `AMin` and `AMax`, borders included.

Errors: If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarEnsureRange` ([2122](#))

### 85.4.37 VarInvalidArgError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantInvalidArgError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidArgError  
procedure VarInvalidArgError(AType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidArgError` raises an `EVariantInvalidArgError` ([2133](#)) exception with a standard error message. If the `AType` argument is specified, a description of the argument type is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantInvalidArgError` ([2133](#)), `VarInvalidNullOp` ([2123](#)), `VarInvalidOp` ([2123](#)), `VarBadIndexError` ([2120](#)), `VarArrayLockedError` ([2118](#))

### 85.4.38 VarInvalidNullOp

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantInvalidOpError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidNullOp`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidNullOp` raises an `EVariantInvalidOpError` ([2133](#)) exception including null type description.

See also: `EVariantInvalidOpError` ([2133](#)), `VarInvalidOp` ([2123](#))

### 85.4.39 VarInvalidOp

Synopsis: Raise a `EVariantInvalidOpError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidOp  
procedure VarInvalidOp(const aLeft: tvartype; const aRight: tvartype;  
aOpCode: tvarop)  
procedure VarInvalidOp(const aRight: tvartype; aOpCode: tvarop)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidOp` raises an `EVariantInvalidOpError` ([2133](#)) exception. when the left and/or right operand types (`aLeft`, `aRight` and the operation are specified, a description of the operand types and operation is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantInvalidOpError` ([2133](#)), `VarCastError` ([2121](#))

#### 85.4.40 VarIsArray

Synopsis: Check whether a variant is an array

Declaration: `function VarIsArray(const A: Variant) : Boolean`  
`function VarIsArray(const A: Variant; AResolveByRef: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsArray` returns `True` if `A` is an array. If `AResolveByRef` is `True` (the default) then it will resolve all references first.

Errors: None.

See also: `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2131)

#### 85.4.41 VarIsBool

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a boolean

Declaration: `function VarIsBool(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is a boolean value.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsCustom` (2125), `VarIsOrdinal` (2126), `VarIsFloat` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.42 VarIsByRef

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a reference to a value.

Declaration: `function VarIsByRef(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsByRef` checks whether the variant `V` is a reference to a value instead of an actual value. It returns `True` if this is the case, `False` if not.

See also: `VarType` (2131), `VarAsType` (2120), `VarIsType` (2127), `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126)

#### 85.4.43 VarIsClear

Synopsis: Check if a variant is clear

Declaration: `function VarIsClear(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsClear` returns `True` if the variant `V` is empty, or it is a dispatch type with value `Nil`. For custom types, the decision is left to the custom type.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsNumeric` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.44 VarIsCustom

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a custom value.

Declaration: `function VarIsCustom(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is a custom variant (type is larger than `CFirstUserType` (2108)).

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsOrdinal` (2126), `VarIsNumeric` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.45 VarIsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the variant is empty

Declaration: `function VarIsEmpty(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsEmpty` checks whether the variant `V` is empty (i.e. the type is `varEmpty`).

See also: `VarType` (2131), `VarAsType` (2120), `VarIsType` (2127), `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarCheckEmpty` (2121), `VarIsNull` (2126)

#### 85.4.46 VarIsEmptyParam

Synopsis: Check if the variant is an error value for `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`

Declaration: `function VarIsEmptyParam(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsEmptyParam` returns `True` if the variant `V` is an error typed variant with value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `VarIsError` (2125), `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2115)

#### 85.4.47 VarIsError

Synopsis: Check if the variant has type `varError`

Declaration: `function VarIsError(const V: Variant; out AResult: HRESULT) : Boolean`  
`function VarIsError(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsError` checks `V` and returns `True` if the type is `varError`.

See also: `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsOrdinal` (2126), `VarIsEmptyParam` (2125)

#### 85.4.48 VarIsFloat

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a floating-point value.

Declaration: `function VarIsFloat(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal types: `FloatVarTypes` (2109) (`varSingle`, `varDouble`, `varCurrency`).

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsCustom` (2125), `VarIsOrdinal` (2126), `VarIsNumeric` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.49 VarIsNull

Synopsis: Check if a variant is null

Declaration: `function VarIsNull(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsNull` returns `True` if the type of the variant `V` is `varNull`. No dereferencing is done.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarType` (2131), `VarIsNumeric` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.50 VarIsNumeric

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a numerical value

Declaration: `function VarIsNumeric(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal or floating point types: `FloatVarTypes` (2109), `OrdinalVarTypes` (2109)

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsCustom` (2125), `VarIsOrdinal` (2126), `VarIsFloat` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

#### 85.4.51 VarIsOrdinal

Synopsis: Check if the variant is an ordinal value.

Declaration: `function VarIsOrdinal(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal types: `OrdinalVarTypes` (2109) (`varSmallInt`, `varInteger`, `varBoolean`, `varShortInt`, `varByte`, `varWord`, `varLongWord`, `varInt64`)

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2125), `VarIsNull` (2126), `VarIsCustom` (2125), `VarIsFloat` (2126), `VarIsNumeric` (2126), `VarIsStr` (2127)

### 85.4.52 VarlsStr

### Synopsis: Check if the variant is a string

**Declaration:** `function VarIsStr(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** VarIsCustom returns True if the variant V is of one of the string types: varOleStr, varUString, varString

See also: [VarIsEmpty \(2125\)](#), [VarIsNull \(2126\)](#), [VarIsCustom \(2125\)](#), [VarIsOrdinal \(2126\)](#), [VarIsFloat \(2126\)](#), [VarIsBool \(2124\)](#)

### 85.4.53 VarIsType

### Synopsis: Check if a variant is of certain type

```
Declaration: function VarIsType(const V: Variant; aVarType: tvartype) : Boolean
                ; Overload
function VarIsType(const V: Variant; const AVarTypes: Array of tvartype)
                : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarIsType` will return `True` if the variant `V` is of type `aVarType` or is in `aVarTypes`.

See also: [VarType \(2131\)](#), [VarAsType \(2120\)](#), [VarIsByRef \(2124\)](#), [VarIsNull \(2126\)](#), [VarIsEmpty \(2125\)](#)

### 85.4.54 VarNotImplError

### Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantNotImplError` error

```
Declaration: procedure VarNotImplError
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarNotImplError` raises an `EVariantNotImplError` (2134) exception with a standard error message.

See also: [EVariantNotImpError \(2134\)](#), [VarInvalidNullOp \(2123\)](#), [VarInvalidOp \(2123\)](#), [VarBadIndexError \(2120\)](#), [VarArrayLockedError \(2118\)](#)

### 85.4.55 VarOutOfMemoryError

### Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOutOfMemoryError` error

Declaration: procedure VarOutOfMemoryError

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarOutOfMemoryError` raises an `EVariantOutOfMemoryError` (2134) exception with a standard error message.

See also: [EVariantOutOfMemoryError \(2134\)](#), [VarInvalidNullOp \(2123\)](#), [VarInvalidOp \(2123\)](#), [VarBadIndexError \(2120\)](#), [VarArrayLockedError \(2118\)](#)

### 85.4.56 VarOverflowError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOverflowError` error.

Declaration: `procedure VarOverflowError`  
`procedure VarOverflowError(const ASourceType: tvartype;`  
`const ADestType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarOverflowError` raises a `EVariantOverflowError` (2134) exception with a description of the `ASourceType` and `ADestType` types in the message.

See also: `EVariantOverflowError` (2134), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123)

### 85.4.57 VarRangeCheckError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOverflowError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarRangeCheckError(const AType: tvartype)`  
`procedure VarRangeCheckError(const ASourceType: tvartype;`  
`const ADestType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarRangeCheckError` raises an `EVariantOverflowError` (2134) exception with a standard error message. A description of the type `AType` is included in the error message, similarly if a `ASourceType` and `aDestType` source and destination types are provided.

See also: `EVariantOverflowError` (2134), `VarOverflowError` (2128), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarBadIndexError` (2120), `VarArrayLockedError` (2118)

### 85.4.58 VarResultCheck

Synopsis: Check the result of an operation and raise exception if not OK.

Declaration: `procedure VarResultCheck(AResult: HRESULT)`  
`procedure VarResultCheck(AResult: HRESULT; ASourceType: tvartype;`  
`ADestType: tvartype)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarResultCheck` checks the result `aResult`. If it differs from `VAR_OK` then an appropriate exception is raised based on the error code. If a source and destination type `ASourceType` and `aDestType` are specified they are included in the error message.

See also: `VarOverflowError` (2128), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarBadIndexError` (2120), `VarArrayLockedError` (2118)

### 85.4.59 VarSameValue

Synopsis: Check if 2 variants are the same

Declaration: `function VarSameValue(const A: Variant; const B: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `varSameValue` checks whether A and B have the same value. Here empty variants equal empty variants, and null variants equal null variants. For all other cases, the actual values are compared.

**Errors:** If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

### 85.4.60 VarSupports

**Synopsis:** Check if a variant supports an interface.

**Declaration:**

```
function VarSupports(const V: Variant; const IID: TGuid; out Intf)
    : Boolean
function VarSupports(const V: Variant; const IID: TGuid) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarSupports` checks if the variant V contains an interface (types `Unknown`, `varDispatch`) and the interface supports the specified interface IID. If it does, `True` is returned, `False` otherwise. If `Intf` is specified, and the variant supports the requested interface, the interface instance is returned in `Intf`.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.Supports` ([1756](#))

### 85.4.61 VarToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to datetime value

**Declaration:**

```
function VarToDateTime(const V: Variant) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToDateTime` attempts to convert the variant V to a `TDateTime` value.

**Errors:** If the value is `Null`, an exception is raised.

See also: `VarToUnicodeStr` ([2130](#)), `VarToStrDef` ([2129](#)), `VarIsStr` ([2127](#)), `VarToWideStr` ([2130](#)), `VarToWideStrDef` ([2130](#)), `VarFromDateTime` ([2122](#))

### 85.4.62 VarToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value

**Declaration:**

```
function VarToStr(const V: Variant) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToStr` attempts to convert the variant V to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToStrDef` ([2129](#)), `VarIsStr` ([2127](#)), `VarToWideStr` ([2130](#))

### 85.4.63 VarToStrDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

**Declaration:**

```
function VarToStrDef(const V: Variant; const ADefault: string) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToStrDef` (2129), `VarIsStr` (2127), `VarToStr` (2129)

#### 85.4.64 `VarToUnicodeStr`

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value

**Declaration:** `function VarToUnicodeStr(const V: Variant) : UnicodeString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToUnicodeStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToWideStr` (2130), `VarToUnicodeStrDef` (2130), `VarIsStr` (2127), `VarToStr` (2129), `VarToUnicodeStr` (2130)

#### 85.4.65 `VarToUnicodeStrDef`

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

**Declaration:** `function VarToUnicodeStrDef(const V: Variant;  
const ADefault: UnicodeString)  
: UnicodeString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToUnicodeStrDef` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToUnicodeStr` (2130), `VarToStrDef` (2129), `VarIsStr` (2127), `VarToWideStr` (2130), `VarToWideStrDef` (2130)

#### 85.4.66 `VarToWideStr`

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value

**Declaration:** `function VarToWideStr(const V: Variant) : WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToWideStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToWideStrDef` (2130), `VarIsStr` (2127), `VarToStr` (2129), `VarToUnicodeStr` (2130)

#### 85.4.67 `VarToWideStrDef`

**Synopsis:** Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

**Declaration:** `function VarToWideStrDef(const V: Variant; const ADefault: WideString)  
: WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarToWideStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToWideStrDef` (2130), `VarIsStr` (2127), `VarToWideStr` (2130), `VarToUnicodeStrDef` (2130)

### 85.4.68 VarType

**Synopsis:** Return the type of a variant.

**Declaration:** `function VarType(const V: Variant) : tvartype`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarType` returns the type of the variant `V`. (it returns the internal type field of the variant structure)

See also: `VarTypeDeRef` (2131), `VarIsType` (2127), `VarAsType` (2120)

### 85.4.69 VarTypeAsText

**Synopsis:** Return a textual description of the variant type

**Declaration:** `function VarTypeAsText(const AType: tvartype) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarTypeAsText` returns a textual description of the variant type `aType`. It is used in all exception raising routines to describe types, if a type is provided. For custom variant types, the name of the class is returned.

See also: `VarOpAsText` (2109)

### 85.4.70 VarTypeDeRef

**Synopsis:** Returns the resolved type of a variant.

**Declaration:** `function VarTypeDeRef(const V: Variant) : tvartype; Overload`  
`function VarTypeDeRef(const V: tvardata) : tvartype; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarTypeDeRef` will resolve the final type of the variant `V`: if `V` is a reference to another variant, the function will return the type of the referenced variant, recursing as much as needed till a non-variant type is encountered.

See also: `VarType` (2131), `VarIsType` (2127), `VarAsType` (2120)

### 85.4.71 VarTypeIsValidArrayType

**Synopsis:** Check if a variant type can be used in an array

**Declaration:** `function VarTypeIsValidArrayType(const aVarType: tvartype) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` checks if the variant type `aVarType` can be used as the type of a variant array. It returns `True` if it is usable, false otherwise. Currently, the following types are valid: `SmallInt`, `Integer`, `Single`, `Double`, `Date`, `Currency`, `OleStr`, `Dispatch`, `Error`, `Boolean`, `Variant`, `Unknown` (interface `IUnknown`), `ShortInt`, `Byte`, `Word`, `LongWord`.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2124), `VarTypeIsValidElementType` (2132)

### 85.4.72 VarTypeIsValidElementType

Synopsis: Check if a variant type can be used in an array

Declaration: `function VarTypeIsValidElementType(const aVarType: tvartype) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarTypeIsValidElementType` checks if the variant type `aVarType` can be used as the type of a variant array, similar to `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2131). It returns `True` if it is usable, `False` otherwise. Currently, the following types are valid: `SmallInt`, `Integer`, `Single`, `Double`, `Date`, `Currency`, `OleStr`, `Dispatch`, `Error`, `Boolean`, `Variant`, `Unknown` (interface `IUnknown`), `ShortInt`, `Byte`, `Word`, `LongWord` `int64`. In addition, if the variant type is an known custom variant type, `True` is also returned.

Reference and array indicators are stripped before the test.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2124), `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2131)

### 85.4.73 VarUnexpectedError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantUnexpectedError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarUnexpectedError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarUnexpectedError` raises an `EVariantUnexpectedError` (2135) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantUnexpectedError` (2135), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2123), `VarInvalidOp` (2123), `VarBadIndexError` (2120), `VarArrayLockedError` (2118)

## 85.5 EVariantArrayCreateError

### 85.5.1 Description

`EVariantArrayCreateError` is the exception raised when a problem is detected during creation of an array. It can be raised manually by calling `VarArrayCreateError` (2117).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2117)

## 85.6 EVariantArrayLockedError

### 85.6.1 Description

`EVariantArrayLockedError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_ARRAYISLOCKED` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2128)

See also: `VarResultCheck` (2128)

## 85.7 EVariantBadIndexError

### 85.7.1 Description

`EVariantBadIndexError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_BADINDEX` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.8 EVariantBadVarTypeError

### 85.8.1 Description

`EVariantBadVarTypeError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_BADVARTYPE` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.9 EVariantDispatchError

### 85.9.1 Description

`EVariantDispatchError` is the exception raised when a dispatch call fails.

See also: `TCustomVariantType` ([2137](#))

## 85.10 EVariantInvalidArgError

### 85.10.1 Description

`EVariantInvalidArgError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_INVALIDARG` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.11 EVariantInvalidNullOpError

### 85.11.1 Description

`EVariantInvalidNullOpError` is defined for Delphi compatibility, but is not used in the FPC run time.

## 85.12 EVariantInvalidOpError

### 85.12.1 Description

`EVariantInvalidOpError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_EXCEPTION` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.13 EVariantNotAnArrayError

### 85.13.1 Description

`EVariantNotAnArrayError` is not used in FPC and is defined for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.14 EVariantNotImplError

### 85.14.1 Description

`EVariantNotImplError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_NOTIMPL` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.15 EVariantOutOfMemoryError

### 85.15.1 Description

`EVariantOutOfMemoryError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_OUTOFMEMORY` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#)) It can be raised manually by calling `VarOutOfMemoryError` ([2127](#)).

See also: `VarOutOfMemoryError` ([2127](#)), `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.16 EVariantOverflowError

### 85.16.1 Description

`EVariantOverflowError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_OVERFLOW` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.17 EVariantParamNotFoundError

### 85.17.1 Description

`EVariantParamNotFoundError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2128](#))

## 85.18 EVariantRangeCheckError

### 85.18.1 Description

`EVariantRangeCheckError` is defined for Delphi compatibility, it is not used in FPC.

## 85.19 EVariantTypeCastError

### 85.19.1 Description

`EVariantTypeCastError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_TYPEMISMATCH` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2128)

See also: `VarResultCheck` (2128)

## 85.20 EVariantUnexpectedError

### 85.20.1 Description

`EVariantUnexpectedError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_UNEXPECTED` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2128). It can be raised manually by calling `VarUnexpectedError` (2132).

See also: `VarVarUnexpectedError` (2108), `VarResultCheck` (2128)

## 85.21 IVarInstanceReference

### 85.21.1 Description

`IVarInstanceReference` is used to get the instance of an object from a custom variant. It has only one method, `GetInstance` (2135) which is used to retrieve the instance of a variant that contains an object.

The `TPublishableVariantType` (2144) descendent of `TInvokeableVariantType` (2142) uses this interface to implement reading published properties from the instance.

See also: `IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance` (2135)

### 85.21.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">2135</a> | <code>GetInstance</code> | Return the object instance referenced by the custom variant |

### 85.21.3 IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance

Synopsis: Return the object instance referenced by the custom variant

Declaration: `function GetInstance(const V: tvardata) : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetInstance` must return the object instance referenced by the custom variant `V`.

See also: `TPublishableVariantType` (2144)

## 85.22 IVarInvokeable

### 85.22.1 Description

`IVarInvokeable` must be implemented by the `TCustomVariantType` (2137) descendent if the custom variant needs to implement dynamic properties and methods.

`IVarInvokeable` has four functions that must be implemented. Any of these functions can be called whenever a custom variant's method is invoked or a property of the variant is read or written using `DispInvoke`.

The `TCustomVariantType` descendent `TInvokeableVariantType` (2142) implements the needed `DispInvoke` to call the `IVarInvokeable` interface, so you can descend from that type instead when creating a new custom variant type and override the needed functions.

See also: `TInvokeableVariantType` (2142), `TCustomVariantType` (2137)

### 85.22.2 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">2136</a> | <code>DoFunction</code>  | Called for methods that return a result (functions)         |
| <a href="#">2136</a> | <code>DoProcedure</code> | Called for methods that do not return a result (procedures) |
| <a href="#">2137</a> | <code>GetProperty</code> | Called when a property must be read                         |
| <a href="#">2137</a> | <code>SetProperty</code> | Called when a property must be set                          |

### 85.22.3 IVarInvokeable.DoFunction

Synopsis: Called for methods that return a result (functions)

Declaration: 

```
function DoFunction(var Dest: tvardata; const V: tvardata;
                    const Name: string; const Arguments: TVarDataArray)
                    : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant method that returns a result needs to be invoked. The `Dest` parameter points to the location where the result of the function must be placed; the result must be a variant value.

`V` is the variant on which the method is being executed. The `Name` is the name of the function to execute, and `Arguments` is an array of variant arguments that were passed to the function.

The function must return `True` if the function was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137)

### 85.22.4 IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure

Synopsis: Called for methods that do not return a result (procedures)

Declaration: 

```
function DoProcedure(const V: tvardata; const Name: string;
                    const Arguments: TVarDataArray) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DoProcedure` is called whenever a variant method that does not return a result needs to be invoked. `V` is the variant on which the method is being executed. The `Name` is the name of the method to execute, and `Arguments` is an array of variant arguments that were passed to the method.

The function must return `True` if the procedure was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137)

### 85.22.5 IVarInvokeable.GetProperty

**Synopsis:** Called when a property must be read

**Declaration:** `function GetProperty(var Dest: tvardata; const V: tvardata; const Name: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant property is read. `Dest` must be filled with the value of the property on success. `V` is the variant on which the property is read. The `Name` is the name of the property to read.

The function must return `True` if the property was read correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137)

### 85.22.6 IVarInvokeable.SetProperty

**Synopsis:** Called when a property must be set

**Declaration:** `function SetProperty(var V: tvardata; const Name: string; const Value: tvardata) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant property is written. `Value` is filled with the new value of the property. `V` is the variant on which the property is written. The `Name` is the name of the property to write.

The function must return `True` if the property was written correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137)

## 85.23 TCustomVariantType

### 85.23.1 Description

`TCustomVariantType` is used as a base class to implement custom variants. To define a custom variant type, a descendent of `TCustomVariant` must be made, and the appropriate methods must be overridden and implemented according to the specifications of the new type. Typically this means defining how your new type maps to another variant or a basic type.

Note that the `TCustomVariantType` descendent does not hold the data of the variant: it just describes how a variant record (`TVarRec` (1407)) that contains the new type's data can be examined or manipulated.

See also: `#rtl.system.TVarRec` (1407)

**85.23.2 Interfaces overview**

| Page                 | Interfaces              | Description                                  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">1367</a> | <code>IInterface</code> | Basic interface for all COM based interfaces |

**85.23.3 Method overview**

| Page                 | Method                 | Description  |
|----------------------|------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">2140</a> | <code>BinaryOp</code>  | Perform a binary mathematical operation                      |
| <a href="#">2139</a> | <code>Cast</code>      | Cast a custom variant to another type                        |
| <a href="#">2139</a> | <code>CastTo</code>    | Cast a custom variant to another type                        |
| <a href="#">2139</a> | <code>CastToOle</code> | Cast variant value to OLE value                              |
| <a href="#">2140</a> | <code>Clear</code>     | Clear a value  |
| <a href="#">2141</a> | <code>Compare</code>   | Comparison 2 custom variant values                           |
| <a href="#">2141</a> | <code>CompareOp</code> | Check result of a comparison between 2 custom variant values |
| <a href="#">2140</a> | <code>Copy</code>      | Copy a custom variant value                                  |
| <a href="#">2138</a> | <code>Create</code>    | Instantiate a new custom variant type                        |
| <a href="#">2138</a> | <code>Destroy</code>   | Unregister variant type                                      |
| <a href="#">2139</a> | <code>IsClear</code>   | Is the custom value unassigned ?                             |
| <a href="#">2141</a> | <code>UnaryOp</code>   | Perform a unary mathematical operation                       |

**85.23.4 Property overview**

| Page                 | Properties           | Access         | Description     |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <a href="#">2142</a> | <code>VarType</code> | <code>r</code> | Registered type |

**85.23.5 TCustomVariantType.Create**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new custom variant type

Declaration: `constructor Create; Overload`  
`constructor Create(RequestedVarType: tvartype); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` sets up the necessary reference counting mechanisms to act as an interface, and assigns the new variant type identifier. If specified, the `RequestedVarType` is the variant type that is registered. if it is zero, a new identifier is assigned.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Destroy` ([2138](#))

**85.23.6 TCustomVariantType.Destroy**

Synopsis: Unregister variant type

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` unregisters the custom variant type and removes the instance from memory. After this is called, variants with the (now unregistered) type can no longer be used.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Create` ([2138](#))

### 85.23.7 TCustomVariantType.IsClear

Synopsis: Is the custom value unassigned ?

Declaration: `function IsClear(const V: tvardata) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsClear` must be overridden to decide whether the custom variant `V` is equivalent to `varClear` (unassigned) value. The `VarIsClear` (2124) function calls this method to decide whether a custom variant is unassigned.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `IsClear` always returns `False`.

See also: `VarIsClear` (2124)

### 85.23.8 TCustomVariantType.Cast

Synopsis: Cast a custom variant to another type

Declaration: `procedure Cast(var Dest: tvardata; const Source: tvardata); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Cast` is called when a variant value `Source` is cast to a custom variant `Dest`. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `Cast` calls `CastTo` on the source variant with as destination type the custom variant type.

Errors: If the variant type cannot be cast, an exception is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.CastTo` (2139), `TCustomVariantType.CastToOle` (2139)

### 85.23.9 TCustomVariantType.CastTo

Synopsis: Cast a custom variant to another type

Declaration: `procedure CastTo(var Dest: tvardata; const Source: tvardata;  
const aVarType: tvartype); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CastTo` is called when a custom variant value `Source` is cast to a variant type `aVarType` and stores the result in `Dest`. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Cast` (2139), `TCustomVariantType.CastToOle` (2139)

### 85.23.10 TCustomVariantType.CastToOle

Synopsis: Cast variant value to OLE value

Declaration: `procedure CastToOle(var Dest: tvardata; const Source: tvardata)  
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `CastToOle` is called when a variant must be cast to a value that can be used in OLE variants. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `CastToOle` raises an 'unsupported' exception.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Cast` ([2139](#)), `TCustomVariantType.CastTo` ([2139](#))

### 85.23.11 TCustomVariantType.Clear

**Synopsis:** Clear a value

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear(var V: tvardata); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Clear` is called when a variant value must be cleared, by `VarClear`. This is an abstract method that must be overridden and implemented in descendent classes. When the method returns, the type of the variant record must be `varClear`

If the custom variant value used some heap memory (for instance in an object) then this is the place to release that memory.

**Errors:** If this method is not overridden, an abstract error will be thrown.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.IsClear` ([2139](#)), `TCustomVariantType.Copy` ([2140](#)), `VarClear` ([2121](#))

### 85.23.12 TCustomVariantType.Copy

**Synopsis:** Copy a custom variant value

**Declaration:** `procedure Copy(var Dest: tvardata; const Source: tvardata;  
const Indirect: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Copy` is used when a custom variant value is assigned to another variant. This is an abstract method that must be overridden and implemented in descendent classes. When the method returns, the type of the `Dest` variant record must be equal to the `Source` type (the custom variant type value).

If `Indirect` is `True` source contains a reference to the custom variant. In that case, dest should also contain a reference.

**Errors:** If this method is not overridden, an abstract error will be thrown.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Clear` ([2140](#))

### 85.23.13 TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp

**Synopsis:** Perform a binary mathematical operation

**Declaration:** `procedure BinaryOp(var Left: tvardata; const Right: tvardata;  
const Operation: tvarop); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `BinaryOp` performs `Operation` on `Left` and `Right` and stores the result of the result in `Left`. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an invalid operation error. Descendent classes must override this.

**Errors:** If a descendent does not override this, an invalid operation error is raised.

See also: `=TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` ([2108](#)), `=TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` ([2108](#))

**85.23.14 TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp**

Synopsis: Perform a unary mathematical operation

Declaration: `procedure UnaryOp(var Right: tvardata; const Operation: tvarop); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnaryOp` performs `Operation` on `Right` and stores the result of the result in `Right`. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an invalid operation error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an invalid operation error is raised.

See also: `=TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp` (2108), `=TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` (2108)

**85.23.15 TCustomVariantType.CompareOp**

Synopsis: Check result of a comparison between 2 custom variant values

Declaration: `function CompareOp(const Left: tvardata; const Right: tvardata; const Operation: tvarop) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareOp` performs the comparison specified in `Operation` on `left` and `Right` and returns `True` if the values satisfy the requested operation. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an 'unsupported' error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an 'unsupported' error is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Compare` (2141), `TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` (2141), `TCustomVariantType.binaryOp` (2140)

**85.23.16 TCustomVariantType.Compare**

Synopsis: Comparison 2 custom variant values

Declaration: `procedure Compare(const Left: tvardata; const Right: tvardata; var Relationship: TVarCompareResult); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Compare` performs the comparison specified in `Operation` on `left` and `Right` and returns the result of the comparison. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an 'unsupported' error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an 'unsupported' error is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` (2141), `TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` (2141), `TCustomVariantType.binaryOp` (2140)

### 85.23.17 TCustomVariantType.VarType

Synopsis: Registered type

Declaration: `Property VarType : tvartype`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `VarType` is the custom variant type identifier for the custom variant values. It is assigned by the system in the constructor.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Create` (2138)

## 85.24 TInvokeableVariantType

### 85.24.1 Description

`TInvokeableVariantType` is a `TCustomVariantType` (2137) descendent which implements the `TCustomVariantType.Dispatch` (2137) method. It translates the `Dispatch` method to calls to one or more of the four methods of `IVarInvokeable` (2136): `DoFunction` (2136) or `DoProcedure` (2136) for method calls (`DISPATCH_METHOD`) and `GetProperty` (2137) for property reading (`DISPATCH_PROPERTYGET`) or `SetProperty` (2137) for property writing (`DISPATCH_PROPERTYSET`). Other combinations are possible. It has empty stubs for these methods, which must be implemented in a descendent that is used to describe a custom variant.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137)

### 85.24.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces                  | Description  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| <a href="#">2136</a> | <code>IVarInvokeable</code> | Interface needed for custom variants that need to implement dynamic properties and methods |

### 85.24.3 Method overview

| Page                 | Method                   | Description   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <a href="#">2142</a> | <code>DoFunction</code>  | Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.DoFunction</code> , to be implemented in descendents  |
| <a href="#">2143</a> | <code>DoProcedure</code> | Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure</code> , to be implemented in descendents |
| <a href="#">2143</a> | <code>GetProperty</code> | Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.GetProperty</code> , to be implemented in descendents |
| <a href="#">2143</a> | <code>SetProperty</code> | Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.SetProperty</code> , to be implemented in descendents |

### 85.24.4 TInvokeableVariantType.DoFunction

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: `function DoFunction(var Dest: tvardata; const V: tvardata;  
const Name: string; const Arguments: TVarDataArray)  
: Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoFunction` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual calling of a function.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2136)

### 85.24.5 `TInvokeableVariantType.DoProcedure`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: 

```
function DoProcedure(const V: tvardata; const Name: string;
                    const Arguments: TVarDataArray) : Boolean; Virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `DoProcedure` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual calling of a procedure.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2136)

### 85.24.6 `TInvokeableVariantType.GetProperty`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: 

```
function GetProperty(var Dest: tvardata; const V: tvardata;
                    const Name: string) : Boolean; Virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `GetProperty` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual reading of a property.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2137)

### 85.24.7 `TInvokeableVariantType.SetProperty`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: 

```
function SetProperty(var V: tvardata; const Name: string;
                    const Value: tvardata) : Boolean; Virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `SetProperty` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual writing of a property.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2137)

## 85.25 TPublishableVariantType

### 85.25.1 Description

TPublishableVariantType implements the IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2137) and IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2137) methods by getting or setting the published properties of the class instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference interface it implements.

See also: TInvokeableVariantType (2142), IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2137), IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2137), IVarInstanceReference (2135)

### 85.25.2 Interfaces overview

| Page                 | Interfaces            | Description                                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">2135</a> | IVarInstanceReference | Interface for variants that refer to an object |

### 85.25.3 Method overview

| Page                 | Method      | Description        |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <a href="#">2144</a> | GetProperty | Read the property  |
| <a href="#">2144</a> | SetProperty | Write the property |

### 85.25.4 TPublishableVariantType.GetProperty

Synopsis: Read the property

Declaration: `function GetProperty(var Dest: tvardata; const V: tvardata;  
const Name: string) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetProperty implements reading the property by looking for the property in the published properties of the instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference (2135) interface, and returning the value as a variant.

See also: IVarInstanceReference (2135), IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2137)

### 85.25.5 TPublishableVariantType.SetProperty

Synopsis: Write the property

Declaration: `function SetProperty(var V: tvardata; const Name: string;  
const Value: tvardata) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: SetProperty implements writing the property by looking for the property in the published properties of the instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference (2135) interface, and setting the value as a variant.

See also: IVarInstanceReference (2135), IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2137)

## Chapter 86

# Reference for unit 'video'

### 86.1 Used units

Table 86.1: Used units by unit 'video'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 86.2 Overview

The `Video` unit implements a screen access layer which is system independent. It can be used to write on the screen in a system-independent way, which should be optimal on all platforms for which the unit is implemented.

The working of the `Video` is simple: After calling `InitVideo` ([2162](#)), the array `VideoBuf` contains a representation of the video screen of size `ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight`, going from left to right and top to bottom when walking the array elements: `VideoBuf[0]` contains the character and color code of the top-left character on the screen. `VideoBuf[ScreenWidth]` contains the data for the character in the first column of the second row on the screen, and so on.

To write to the 'screen', the text to be written should be written to the `VideoBuf` array. Calling `UpdateScreen` ([2166](#)) will then copy the text to the screen in the most optimal way. (an example can be found further on).

The color attribute is a combination of the foreground and background color, plus the blink bit. The bits describe the various color combinations:

**bits 0-3** The foreground color. Can be set using all color constants.

**bits 4-6** The background color. Can be set using a subset of the color constants.

**bit 7** The blinking bit. If this bit is set, the character will appear blinking.

Each possible color has a constant associated with it, see the constants section for a list of constants. The foreground and background color can be combined to a color attribute with the following code:

```
Attr:=ForeGroundColor + (BackGroundColor shl 4);
```

The color attribute can be logically or-ed with the blink attribute to produce a blinking character:

```
Attr:=Attr or blink;
```

But not all drivers may support this.

The contents of the `VideoBuf` array may be modified: This is 'writing' to the screen. As soon as everything that needs to be written in the array is in the `VideoBuf` array, calling `UpdateScreen` will copy the contents of the array screen to the screen, in a manner that is as efficient as possible.

The updating of the screen can be prohibited to optimize performance; To this end, the `LockScreenUpdate` (2163) function can be used: This will increment an internal counter. As long as the counter differs from zero, calling `UpdateScreen` (2166) will not do anything. The counter can be lowered with `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2165). When it reaches zero, the next call to `UpdateScreen` (2166) will actually update the screen. This is useful when having nested procedures that do a lot of screen writing.

The video unit also presents an interface for custom screen drivers, thus it is possible to override the default screen driver with a custom screen driver, see the `SetVideoDriver` (2165) call. The current video driver can be retrieved using the `GetVideoDriver` (2160) call.

**Remark** The video unit should *not* be used together with the CRT unit. Doing so will result in very strange behaviour, possibly program crashes.

## 86.3 Examples utility unit

The examples in this section make use of the unit `vidutil`, which contains the `TextOut` function. This function writes a text to the screen at a given location. It looks as follows:

**Listing:** `./videoex/vidutil.pp`

---

```
unit vidutil;

Interface

uses
  video;

Procedure TextOut(X,Y : Word;Const S : String);

Implementation

Procedure TextOut(X,Y : Word;Const S : String);

Var
  W,P,I,M : Word;

begin
  P:=((X-1)+(Y-1)*ScreenWidth);
  M:=Length(S);
  If P+M>ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight then
    M:=ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight-P;
  For I:=1 to M do
    VideoBuf^[P+I-1]:=Ord(S[I])+($07 shl 8);
  end;
end.
```

---

## 86.4 Writing a custom video driver

Writing a custom video driver is not difficult, and generally means implementing a couple of functions, which should be registered with the `SetVideoDriver` (2165) function. The various functions that can be implemented are located in the `TVideoDriver` (2167) record:

```
TVideoDriver = Record
  InitDriver      : Procedure;
  DoneDriver      : Procedure;
  UpdateScreen    : Procedure(Force : Boolean);
  ClearScreen     : Procedure;
  SetVideoMode    : Function (Const Mode : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount : Function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : Function(Index : Word; Var Data : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos    : procedure (NewCursorX, NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorPos    : function : Word;
  SetCursorType   : procedure (NewType: Word);
  GetCursorType   : function : Word;
end;
```

Not all of these functions must be implemented. In fact, the only absolutely necessary function to write a functioning driver is the `UpdateScreen` function. The general calls in the `Video` unit will check which functionality is implemented by the driver.

The functionality of these calls is the same as the functionality of the calls in the `video` unit, so the expected behaviour can be found in the previous section. Some of the calls, however, need some additional remarks.

**InitDriver** Called by `InitVideo`, this function should initialize any data structures needed for the functionality of the driver, maybe do some screen initializations. The function is guaranteed to be called only once; It can only be called again after a call to `DoneVideo`. The variables `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` should be initialized correctly after a call to this function, as the `InitVideo` call will initialize the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays based on their values.

**DoneDriver** This should clean up any structures that have been initialized in the `InitDriver` function. It should possibly also restore the screen as it was before the driver was initialized. The `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays will be disposed of by the general `DoneVideo` call.

**UpdateScreen** This is the only required function of the driver. It should update the screen based on the `VideoBuf` array's contents. It can optimize this process by comparing the values with values in the `OldVideoBuf` array. After updating the screen, the `UpdateScreen` procedure should update the `OldVideoBuf` by itself. If the `Force` parameter is `True`, the whole screen should be updated, not just the changed values.

**ClearScreen** If there is a faster way to clear the screen than to write spaces in all character cells, then it can be implemented here. If the driver does not implement this function, then the general routines will write spaces in all video cells, and will call `UpdateScreen(True)`.

**SetVideoMode** Should set the desired video mode, if available. It should return `True` if the mode was set, `False` if not.

**GetVideoModeCount** Should return the number of supported video modes. If no modes are supported, this function should not be implemented; the general routines will return 1. (for the current mode)

**GetVideoModeData** Should return the data for the `Index`-th mode; `Index` is zero based. The function should return true if the data was returned correctly, false if `Index` contains an invalid index. If this is not implemented, then the general routine will return the current video mode when `Index` equals 0.

**GetCapabilities** If this function is not implemented, zero (i.e. no capabilities) will be returned by the general function.

The following unit shows how to override a video driver, with a driver that writes debug information to a file. The unit can be used in any of the demonstration programs, by simply including it in the `uses` clause. Setting `DetailedVideoLogging` to `True` will create a more detailed log (but will also slow down functioning)

**Listing:** `./videoex/viddbg.pp`

---

```
unit viddbg;
```

```
Interface
```

```
uses video;
```

```
Procedure StartVideoLogging;
```

```
Procedure StopVideoLogging;
```

```
Function IsVideoLogging : Boolean;
```

```
Procedure SetVideoLogFileName(FileName : String);
```

```
Const
```

```
    DetailedVideoLogging : Boolean = False;
```

```
Implementation
```

```
uses sysutils , keyboard;
```

```
var
```

```
    NewVideoDriver ,
    OldVideoDriver : TVideoDriver;
    Active , Logging : Boolean;
    LogFileName : String;
    VideoLog : Text;
```

```
Function TimeStamp : String;
```

```
begin
```

```
    TimeStamp := FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss ' , Time ( ) );
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure StartVideoLogging;
```

```
begin
```

```
    Logging := True;
    WriteLn(VideoLog, 'Start logging video operations at: ', TimeStamp);
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure StopVideoLogging;
```

```
begin
```

```
    WriteLn(VideoLog, 'Stop logging video operations at: ', TimeStamp);
    Logging := False;
```

```

end;

Function IsVideoLogging : Boolean;

begin
  IsVideoLogging:=Logging;
end;

Var
  ColUpd,RowUpd : Array[0..1024] of Integer;

Procedure DumpScreenStatistics(Force : Boolean);

Var
  I,Count : Integer;

begin
  If Force then
    Write(VideoLog,'forced ');
    WriteLn(VideoLog,'video update at ',TimeStamp,' : ');
    FillChar(ColUpd,SizeOf(ColUpd),#0);
    FillChar(RowUpd,SizeOf(RowUpd),#0);
    Count:=0;
    For I:=0 to VideoBufSize div SizeOf(TVideoCell) do
      begin
        If VideoBuf^[I]<>OldVideoBuf^[I] then
          begin
            Inc(Count);
            Inc(ColUpd[I mod ScreenWidth]);
            Inc(RowUpd[I div ScreenHeight]);
          end;
      end;
    Write(VideoLog,Count,' videocells differed divided over ');
    Count:=0;
    For I:=0 to ScreenWidth-1 do
      If ColUpd[I]<>0 then
        Inc(Count);
    Write(VideoLog,Count,' columns and ');
    Count:=0;
    For I:=0 to ScreenHeight-1 do
      If RowUpd[I]<>0 then
        Inc(Count);
    WriteLn(VideoLog,Count,' rows. ');
    If DetailedVideoLogging Then
      begin
        For I:=0 to ScreenWidth-1 do
          If (ColUpd[I]<>0) then
            WriteLn(VideoLog,'Col ',I,' : ',ColUpd[I]:3,' rows changed');
        For I:=0 to ScreenHeight-1 do
          If (RowUpd[I]<>0) then
            WriteLn(VideoLog,'Row ',I,' : ',RowUpd[I]:3,' columns changed');
        end;
      end;
  end;

Procedure LogUpdateScreen(Force : Boolean);

begin
  If Logging then

```

```

        DumpScreenStatistics ( Force );
        OldVideoDriver . UpdateScreen ( Force );
    end;

Procedure LogInitVideo ;

begin
    OldVideoDriver . InitDriver ( );
    Assign ( VideoLog , logFileName );
    Rewrite ( VideoLog );
    Active := True ;
    StartVideoLogging ;
end;

Procedure LogDoneVideo ;

begin
    StopVideoLogging ;
    Close ( VideoLog );
    Active := False ;
    OldVideoDriver . DoneDriver ( );
end;

Procedure SetVideoLogFileName ( FileName : String );

begin
    If Not Active then
        LogFileName := FileName ;
    end;

Initialization
    GetVideoDriver ( OldVideoDriver );
    NewVideoDriver := OldVideoDriver ;
    NewVideoDriver . UpdateScreen := @LogUpdateScreen ;
    NewVideoDriver . InitDriver := @LogInitVideo ;
    NewVideoDriver . DoneDriver := @LogDoneVideo ;
    LogFileName := 'Video . log ' ;
    Logging := False ;
    SetVideoDriver ( NewVideoDriver );
end.

```

---

## 86.5 Constants, types and variables

### 86.5.1 Constants

Black = 0

Black color attribute

Blink = 128

Blink attribute

Blue = 1

**Blue color attribute**

`Brown = 6`

**Brown color attribute**

`cpBlink = $0002`

**Video driver supports blink attribute**

`cpChangeCursor = $0020`

**Video driver supports changing cursor shape.**

`cpChangeFont = $0008`

**Video driver supports changing screen font.**

`cpChangeMode = $0010`

**Video driver supports changing mode**

`cpColor = $0004`

**Video driver supports color**

`cpUnderLine = $0001`

**Video driver supports underline attribute**

`crBlock = 2`

**Block cursor**

`crHalfBlock = 3`

**Half block cursor**

`crHidden = 0`

**Hide cursor**

`crUnderLine = 1`

**Underline cursor**

`Cyan = 3`

**Cyan color attribute**

`DarkGray = 8`

Dark gray color attribute

```
errOk = 0
```

No error

```
ErrorCode : LongInt = ErrOK
```

Error code returned by the last operation.

```
ErrorHandler : TErrorHandler = @ DefaultErrorHandler
```

The `ErrorHandler` variable can be set to a custom-error handling function. It is set by default to the `DefaultErrorHandler` (2157) function.

```
ErrorInfo : Pointer = Nil
```

Pointer to extended error information.

```
errVioBase = 1000
```

Base value for video errors

```
errVioInit = errVioBase + 1
```

Video driver initialization error.

```
errVioNoSuchMode = errVioBase + 3
```

Invalid video mode

```
errVioNotSupported = errVioBase + 2
```

Unsupported video function

```
FVMaxWidth = 240
```

Maximum screen buffer width.

```
Green = 2
```

Green color attribute

```
iso_codepages = [iso01, iso02, iso03, iso04, iso05, iso06, iso07,
  iso08, iso09, iso10, iso13, iso14, iso15]
```

`iso_codepages` is a set containing all code pages that use an ISO encoding.

```
LightBlue = 9
```

Light Blue color attribute

LightCyan = 11

Light cyan color attribute

LightGray = 7

Light gray color attribute

LightGreen = 10

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

LowAscii = True

On some systems, the low 32 values of the DOS code page are necessary for the ASCII control codes and cannot be displayed by programs. If LowAscii is true, you can use the low 32 ASCII values. If it is false, you must avoid using them.

LowAscii can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to LowAscii, or take its address.

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

NoExtendedFrame = False

The VT100 character set only has line drawing characters consisting of a single line. If this value is true, the line drawing characters with two lines will be automatically converted to single lines.

NoExtendedFrame can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to NoExtendedFrame, or take its address.

Red = 4

Red color attribute

ScreenHeight : Word = 0

Current screen height

ScreenWidth : Word = 0

Current screen Width

```
vga_codepages = [cp437, cp850, cp852, cp866]
```

`vga_codepages` is a set containing all code pages that can be considered a normal vga font (as in use on early VGA cards) Note that KOI8-R has line drawing characters in wrong place.

```
vioOK = 0
```

No errors occurred

```
White = 15
```

White color attribute

```
Yellow = 14
```

Yellow color attribute

## 86.5.2 Types

```
PVideoBuf = ^TVideoBuf
```

Pointer type to TVideoBuf ([2155](#))

```
PVideoCell = ^TVideoCell
```

Pointer type to TVideoCell ([2155](#))

```
PVideoMode = ^TVideoMode
```

Pointer to TVideoMode ([2167](#)) record.

```
TErrorHandler = function(Code: LongInt; Info: Pointer)
    : TErrorHandlerReturnValue
```

The `TErrorHandler` function is used to register an own error handling function. It should be used when installing a custom error handling function, and must return one of the above values.

`Code` should contain the error code for the error condition, and the `Info` parameter may contain any data type specific to the error code passed to the function.

```
TErrorHandlerReturnValue = (errRetry, errAbort, errContinue)
```

Table 86.2: Enumeration values for type TErrorHandlerReturnValue

| Value                    | Explanation                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>errAbort</code>    | abort and return error code           |
| <code>errContinue</code> | abort without returning an errorcode. |
| <code>errRetry</code>    | retry the operation                   |

Type used to report and respond to error conditions

```
TVideoBuf = Array[0..32759] of TVideoCell
```

The TVideoBuf type represents the screen.

```
TVideoCell = Word
```

TVideoCell describes one character on the screen. One of the bytes contains the color attribute with which the character is drawn on the screen, and the other byte contains the ASCII code of the character to be drawn. The exact position of the different bytes in the record is operating system specific. On most little-endian systems, the high byte represents the color attribute, while the low-byte represents the ASCII code of the character to be drawn.

```
TVideoModeSelector = function(const VideoMode: TVideoMode;
    Params: LongInt) : Boolean
```

Video mode selection callback prototype.

### 86.5.3 Variables

```
CursorLines : Byte
```

CursorLines is a bitmask which determines which cursor lines are visible and which are not. Each set bit corresponds to a cursorline being shown.

This variable is not supported on all platforms, so it should be used sparingly.

```
CursorX : Word
```

Current horizontal position in the screen where items will be written.

```
CursorY : Word
```

Current vertical position in the screen where items will be written.

```
external_codepage : Tencoding
```

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

```
internal_codepage : Tencoding
```

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

```
OldVideoBuf : PVideoBuf
```

The OldVideoBuf contains the state of the video screen after the last screen update. The Update-Screen (2166) function uses this array to decide which characters on screen should be updated, and which not.

Note that the OldVideoBuf array may be ignored by some drivers, so it should not be used. The Array is in the interface section of the video unit mainly so drivers that need it can make use of it.

```
ScreenColor : Boolean
```

`ScreenColor` indicates whether the current screen supports colors.

`VideoBuf` : `PVideoBuf`

`VideoBuf` forms the heart of the `Video` unit: This variable represents the physical screen. Writing to this array and calling `UpdateScreen` (2166) will write the actual characters to the screen.

`VideoBufSize` : `LongInt`

Current size of the video buffer pointed to by `VideoBuf` (2156)

## 86.6 Procedures and functions

### 86.6.1 ClearScreen

Synopsis: Clear the video screen.

Declaration: `procedure ClearScreen`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ClearScreen` clears the entire screen, and calls `UpdateScreen` (2166) after that. This is done by writing spaces to all character cells of the video buffer in the default color (lightgray on black, color attribute `\$07`).

Errors: None.

See also: `InitVideo` (2162), `UpdateScreen` (2166)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex3.pp`

---

```

program testvideo ;

uses video , keyboard , vidutil ;

Var
  i : longint ;
  k : TKeyEvent ;

begin
  InitVideo ;
  InitKeyboard ;
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    TextOut(i,i, 'Press any key to clear screen');
    UpdateScreen(false);
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    ClearScreen;
    TextOut(1,1, 'Cleared screen. Press any key to end');
    UpdateScreen(true);
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyBoard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 86.6.2 DefaultErrorHandler

Synopsis: Default error handling routine.

Declaration: `function DefaultErrorHandler (AErrorCode: LongInt; AErrorInfo: Pointer)  
: TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultErrorHandler` is the default error handler used by the video driver. It simply sets the error code `AErrorCode` and `AErrorInfo` in the global variables `ErrorCode` and `ErrorInfo` and returns `errContinue`.

Errors: None.

### 86.6.3 DoneVideo

Synopsis: Disable video driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneVideo` disables the Video driver if the video driver is active. If the videodriver was already disabled or not yet initialized, it does nothing. Disabling the driver means it will clean up any allocated resources, possibly restore the screen in the state it was before `InitVideo` was called. Particularly, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays are no longer valid after a call to `DoneVideo`.

The `DoneVideo` should always be called if `InitVideo` was called. Failing to do so may leave the screen in an unusable state after the program exits.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: Normally none. If the driver reports an error, this is done through the `ErrorCode` variable.

See also: `InitVideo` ([2162](#))

### 86.6.4 GetCapabilities

Synopsis: Get current driver capabilities.

Declaration: `function GetCapabilities : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCapabilities` returns the capabilities of the current driver. It is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**cpUnderLine** Video driver supports underline attribute

**cpBlink** Video driver supports blink attribute

**cpColor** Video driver supports color

**cpChangeFont** Video driver supports changing screen font.

**cpChangeMode** Video driver supports changing mode

**cpChangeCursor** Video driver supports changing cursor shape.

Note that the video driver should not yet be initialized to use this function. It is a property of the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetCursorType \(2158\)](#), [GetVideoDriver \(2160\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCapabilities function. }*

**Uses** video;

**Var**

W: Word;

**Procedure** TestCap(Cap: Word; Msg : **String**);

**begin**

**Write**(Msg, ' : ');

**If** (W **and** Cap=Cap) **then**

**WriteLn**( 'Yes')

**else**

**WriteLn**( 'No');

**end**;

**begin**

    W:= GetCapabilities;

**WriteLn**( 'Video driver supports following functionality');

    TestCap(cpUnderLine, 'Underlined characters');

    TestCap(cpBlink, 'Blinking characters');

    TestCap(cpColor, 'Color characters');

    TestCap(cpChangeFont, 'Changing font');

    TestCap(cpChangeMode, 'Changing video mode');

    TestCap(cpChangeCursor, 'Changing cursor shape');

**end**.

---

### 86.6.5 GetCursorType

Synopsis: Get screen cursor type

Declaration: `function GetCursorType : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCursorType` returns the current cursor type. It is one of the following values:

**crHidden**Hide cursor

**crUnderLine**Underline cursor

**crBlock**Block cursor

**crHalfBlock**Half block cursor

Note that not all drivers support all types of cursors.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetCursorType \(2164\)](#), [GetCapabilities \(2157\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex5.pp

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCursorType function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Const**

CursorTypes : **Array**[crHidden..crHalfBlock] **of string** =  
('Hidden', 'UnderLine', 'Block', 'HalfBlock');

**begin**

InitVideo;  
InitKeyboard;  
TextOut(1,1, 'Cursor type: '+CursorTypes[GetCursorType]);  
TextOut(1,2, 'Press any key to exit.');

UpdateScreen(False);  
GetKeyEvent;  
DoneKeyboard;  
DoneVideo;

**end.**

### 86.6.6 GetLockScreenCount

Synopsis: Get the screen lock update count.

Declaration: `function GetLockScreenCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLockScreenCount` returns the current lock level. When the lock level is zero, a call to `UpdateScreen` (2166) will actually update the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `LockScreenUpdate` (2163), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2165), `UpdateScreen` (2166)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex6.pp

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetLockScreenCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

I : Longint;  
S : **String**;

**begin**

InitVideo;  
InitKeyboard;  
TextOut(1,1, 'Press key till new text appears.');

UpdateScreen(False);  
**Randomize**;

**For** I:=0 **to** Random(10)+1 **do**  
  LockScreenUpdate;

---

```

I:=0;
While GetLockScreenCount<>0 do
begin
  Inc(I);
  Str(I,S);
  UnlockScreenUpdate;
  GetKeyEvent;
  TextOut(1,1,'UnLockScreenUpdate had to be called '+S+' times');
  UpdateScreen(False);
end;
TextOut(1,2,'Press any key to end. ');
UpdateScreen(False);
GetKeyEvent;
DoneKeyboard;
DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 86.6.7 GetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Get a copy of the current video driver.

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoDriver(var Driver: TVideoDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoDriver` returns the currently active video driver record in `Driver`. It can be used to clone the current video driver, or to override certain parts of it using the `SetVideoDriver` (2165) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVideoDriver` (2165)

### 86.6.8 GetVideoMode

Synopsis: Return current video mode

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoMode(var Mode: TVideoMode)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoMode` returns the settings of the currently active video mode. The `row`, `col` fields indicate the dimensions of the current video mode, and `Color` is true if the current video supports colors.

See also: `SetVideoMode` (2165), `GetVideoModeData` (2162)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoMode function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

M : TVideoMode;

S : **String**;

---

```

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  GetVideoMode(M);
  if M.Color then
    TextOut(1,1,'Current mode has color')
  else
    TextOut(1,1,'Current mode does not have color');
  Str(M.Row,S);
  TextOut(1,2,'Number of rows    : '+S);
  Str(M.Col,S);
  TextOut(1,3,'Number of columns : '+S);
  Textout(1,4,'Press any key to exit. ');
  UpdateScreen(False);
  GetKeyEvent;
  DoneKeyboard;
  DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 86.6.9 GetVideoModeCount

Synopsis: Get the number of video modes supported by the driver.

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeCount : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeCount` returns the number of video modes that the current driver supports. If the driver does not support switching of modes, then 1 is returned.

This function can be used in conjunction with the `GetVideoModeData` (2162) function to retrieve data for the supported video modes.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetVideoModeData` (2162), `GetVideoMode` (2160)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoModeCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Procedure** DumpMode (M : TVideoMode; Index : Integer);

**Var**

S : String;

**begin**

Str(Index:2,S);

inc(Index);

TextOut(1,Index,'Data for mode '+S+' : ');

if M.Color then

TextOut(19,Index,' color,')

else

---

```

    TextOut(19,Index,'No color,');
    Str(M.Row:3,S);
    TextOut(28,Index,S+' rows');
    Str(M.Col:3,S);
    TextOut(36,index,S+' columns');
end;

Var
    i,Count : Integer;
    m : TVideoMode;

begin
    InitVideo;
    InitKeyboard;
    Count:=GetVideoModeCount;
    For I:=1 to Count do
        begin
            GetVideoModeData(I-1,M);
            DumpMode(M,I-1);
        end;
    TextOut(1,Count+1,'Press any key to exit');
    UpdateScreen(False);
    GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyboard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 86.6.10 GetVideoModeData

Synopsis: Get the specifications for a video mode

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeData(Index: Word; var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeData` returns the characteristics of the `Index`-th video mode in `Data`. `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `GetVideoModeCount-1`. If the current driver does not support setting of modes (`GetVideoModeCount=1`) and `Index` is zero, the current mode is returned.

The function returns `True` if the mode data was retrieved successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `GetVideoModeCount` ([2161](#)).

Errors: In case `Index` has a wrong value, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` ([2161](#)), `SetVideoMode` ([2165](#)), `GetVideoMode` ([2160](#))

### 86.6.11 InitVideo

Synopsis: Initialize video driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitVideo` initializes the video subsystem. If the video system was already initialized, it does nothing. After the driver has been initialized, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` pointers are

initialized, based on the `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` variables. When this is done, the screen is cleared.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: if the driver fails to initialize, the `ErrorCode` variable is set.

See also: `DoneVideo` (2157)

### 86.6.12 LockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Prevent further screen updates.

Declaration: `procedure LockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockScreenUpdate` increments the screen update lock count with one. As long as the screen update lock count is not zero, `UpdateScreen` (2166) will not actually update the screen.

This function can be used to optimize screen updating: If a lot of writing on the screen needs to be done (by possibly unknown functions), calling `LockScreenUpdate` before the drawing, and `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2165) after the drawing, followed by a `UpdateScreen` (2166) call, all writing will be shown on screen at once.

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (2159).

Errors: None.

See also: `UpdateScreen` (2166), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2165), `GetLockScreenCount` (2159)

### 86.6.13 SetCursorPos

Synopsis: Set write cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorPos (NewCursorX: Word; NewCursorY: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorPos` positions the cursor on the given position: Column `NewCursorX` and row `NewCursorY`. The origin of the screen is the upper left corner, and has coordinates `(0, 0)`.

The current position is stored in the `CursorX` and `CursorY` variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorType` (2164)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex2.pp`

---

```

program example2;

uses video , keyboard ;

Var
  P,PP,D : Integer;
  K: TKeyEvent;

  Procedure PutSquare (P : INteger; C : Char);

begin
```

---

```

    VideoBuf^[P]:=Ord(C)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
end;

begin
    InitVideo;
    InitKeyBoard;
    P:=0;
    PP:=-1;
    Repeat
        If PP<>-1 then
            PutSquare(PP, ' ');
        PutSquare(P, '#');
        SetCursorPos(P Mod ScreenWidth,P div ScreenWidth);
        UpdateScreen(False);
        PP:=P;
        Repeat
            D:=0;
            K:=TranslateKeyEvent(GetKeyEvent);
            Case GetKeyEventCode(K) of
                kbdLeft : If (P Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
                    D:=-1;
                kbdUp : If P>=ScreenWidth then
                    D:=-ScreenWidth;
                kbdRight : If ((P+2) Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
                    D:=1;
                kbdDown : if (P<(VideoBufSize div 2)-(ScreenWidth*2)) then
                    D:=ScreenWidth;
            end;
        Until (D<>0) or (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
        P:=P+D;
    until GetKeyEventChar(K)='q';
    DoneKeyBoard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 86.6.14 SetCursorType

Synopsis: Set cursor type

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorType(NewType: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorType` sets the cursor to the type specified in `NewType`.

**crHidden** Hide cursor

**crUnderLine** Underline cursor

**crBlock** Block cursor

**crHalfBlock** Half block cursor

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorPos` ([2163](#))

### 86.6.15 SetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Install a new video driver.

Declaration: `function SetVideoDriver(const Driver: TVideoDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoDriver` sets the videodriver to be used to `Driver`. If the current videodriver is initialized (after a call to `InitVideo`) then it does nothing and returns `False`.

A new driver can only be installed if the previous driver was not yet activated (i.e. before a call to `InitVideo` (2162)) or after it was deactivated (i.e after a call to `DoneVideo`).

For more information about installing a videodriver, see `viddriver` (2147).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom video driver.

Errors: If the current driver is initialized, then `False` is returned.

See also: `viddriver` (2147)

### 86.6.16 SetVideoMode

Synopsis: Set current video mode.

Declaration: `function SetVideoMode(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoMode` sets the video mode to the mode specified in `Mode`:

If the call was successful, then the screen will have `Col` columns and `Row` rows, and will be displaying in color if `Color` is `True`.

The function returns `True` if the mode was set successfully, `False` otherwise.

Note that the video mode may not always be set. E.g. a console on Linux or a telnet session cannot always set the mode. It is important to check the error value returned by this function if it was not successful.

The mode can be set when the video driver has not yet been initialized (i.e. before `InitVideo` (2162) was called) In that case, the video mode will be stored, and after the driver was initialized, an attempt will be made to set the requested mode. Changing the video driver before the call to `InitVideo` will clear the stored video mode.

To know which modes are valid, use the `GetVideoModeCount` (2161) and `GetVideoModeData` (2162) functions. To retrieve the current video mode, use the `GetVideoMode` (2160) procedure.

Errors: If the specified mode cannot be set, then `errVioNoSuchMode` may be set in `ErrorCode`

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` (2161), `GetVideoModeData` (2162), `GetVideoMode` (2160)

### 86.6.17 UnlockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Unlock screen update.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UnlockScreenUpdate` decrements the screen update lock count with one if it is larger than zero. When the lock count reaches zero, the `UpdateScreen` (2166) will actually update the screen. No screen update will be performed as long as the screen update lock count is nonzero. This mechanism can be used to increase screen performance in case a lot of writing is done.

It is important to make sure that each call to `LockScreenUpdate` (2163) is matched by exactly one call to `UnlockScreenUpdate`

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (2159).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `LockScreenUpdate` (2163), `GetLockScreenCount` (2159), `UpdateScreen` (2166)

### 86.6.18 UpdateScreen

**Synopsis:** Update physical screen with internal screen image.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateScreen(Force: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UpdateScreen` synchronizes the actual screen with the contents of the `VideoBuf` internal buffer.

The parameter `Force` specifies whether the whole screen has to be redrawn (`Force=True`) or only parts that have changed since the last update of the screen.

The `Video` unit keeps an internal copy of the screen as it last wrote it to the screen (in the `OldVideoBuf` array). The current contents of `VideoBuf` are examined to see what locations on the screen need to be updated. On slow terminals (e.g. a Linux telnet session) this mechanism can speed up the screen redraw considerably.

On platforms where mouse cursor visibility is not guaranteed to be preserved during screen updates this routine has to restore the mouse cursor after the update (usually by calling `HideMouse` from unit `Mouse` before the real update and `ShowMouse` afterwards).

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ClearScreen` (2156)

## 86.7 TVideoDriver

```
TVideoDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure
;
  UpdateScreen : procedure(Force: Boolean);
  ClearScreen : procedure
;
  SetVideoMode : function(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount
  : function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : function(Index: Word; var
  Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos : procedure(NewCursorX
  : Word; NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorType : function : Word;
```

```
SetCursorType
: procedure (NewType: Word);
GetCapabilities : function : Word;
end
```

`TVideoDriver` record can be used to install a custom video driver, with the `SetVideoDriver` [\(2165\)](#) call.

An explanation of all fields can be found there.

## 86.8 TVideoMode

```
TVideoMode = record
  Col : Word;
  Row : Word;
  Color : Boolean
;
end
```

The `TVideoMode` record describes a videomode. Its fields are self-explaining: `Col`, `Row` describe the number of columns and rows on the screen for this mode. `Color` is `True` if this mode supports colors, or `False` if not.

## Chapter 87

# Reference for unit 'WinCRT'

### 87.1 Used units

Table 87.1: Used units by unit 'WinCRT'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 87.2 Overview

The `wincrt` unit provides some auxiliary routines for use with the `graph` ([839](#)) unit, namely keyboard support. It has no connection with the `crt` ([557](#)) unit, nor with the Turbo-Pascal for Windows `WinCrt` unit. As such, it should not be used by end users. Refer to the `crt` ([557](#)) unit instead.

### 87.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 87.3.1 Variables

`directvideo` : Boolean

On windows, this variable is ignored.

`lastmode` : Word

Is supposed to contain the last used video mode, but is actually unused.

### 87.4 Procedures and functions

#### 87.4.1 `delay`

Synopsis: Pause program execution

Declaration: `procedure delay(ms: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Delay stops program execution for the indicated number ms of milliseconds.

See also: sound (2169), nosound (2169)

### 87.4.2 keypressed

Synopsis: Check if a key was pressed.

Declaration: `function keypressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: KeyPressed returns True if the user pressed a key, or False if not. It does not wait for the user to press a key.

See also: readkey (2169)

### 87.4.3 nosound

Synopsis: Stop the speaker

Declaration: `procedure nosound`

Visibility: default

Description: NoSound does nothing, windows does not support this.

See also: sound (2169)

### 87.4.4 readkey

Synopsis: Read a key from the keyboard

Declaration: `function readkey : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: ReadKey reads a key from the keyboard, and returns the ASCII value of the key, or the scancode of the key in case it is a special key.

The function waits until a key is pressed.

See also: KeyPressed (2169)

### 87.4.5 sound

Synopsis: Sound PC speaker

Declaration: `procedure sound(hz: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sound sounds the PC speaker. It emits a tone with frequency Hz for 500 milliseconds. (the time argument is required by the windows API)

See also: nosound (2169)

### **87.4.6 textmode**

Synopsis: Set indicated text mode

Declaration: `procedure textmode(mode: Integer)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `TextMode` does nothing.

# Chapter 88

## Reference for unit 'WinDirs'

### 88.1 Used units

Table 88.1: Used units by unit 'WinDirs'

| Name   | Page                 |
|--------|----------------------|
| System | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 88.2 Overview

This unit contains only one function: `GetWindowsSpecialDir` ([2185](#)). It is a simple pascal wrapper around the `shfolder.dll` library, and is available under Windows only.

### 88.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 88.3.1 Constants

`CSIDL_ADMINTOOLS` = `$0030`

ID for the personal "Start Menu\Programs\Administrative tools" folder (In the user's personal folder)

`CSIDL_APPDATA` = `$001A`

ID for the roaming "Application Data" folder (in the user's personal folder)

`CSIDL_CDBURN_AREA` = `$003B`

ID for the personal "Local Settings\Application Data\Microsoft\CD Burning" folder (Under "All users" folder)

`CSIDL_COMMON_ADMINTOOLS` = `$002F`

ID for the common "Start Menu\Programs\Administrative tools" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_APPDATA = \$0023

ID for the common "Application Data" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_DESKTOPDIRECTORY = \$0019

ID for the public "Desktop" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_DOCUMENTS = \$002E

ID for the common "Documents" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_FAVORITES = \$001F

ID for the public "Favorites" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_MUSIC = \$0035

ID for the common "Documents\My Music" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_PICTURES = \$0036

ID for the common "Documents\My Pictures" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_PROGRAMS = \$0017

ID for the public "Programs" folder (Under "All users" Start menu folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_STARTMENU = \$0016

ID for the public "Start Menu" folder (Under "All users")

CSIDL\_COMMON\_STARTUP = \$0018

ID for the public "Startup" folder (Under "All users\Start menu\Programs" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_TEMPLATES = \$002D

ID for the common "Templates" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_VIDEO = \$0037

ID for the common "Documents\My Video" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COOKIES = \$0021

ID for the "Cookies" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_DESKTOPDIRECTORY = \$0010

ID for the "Desktop" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_FAVORITES = \$0006

ID for the "Favourites" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_FLAG\_CREATE = \$8000

Flag to specify if the requested folder must be created if it didn't exist yet.

CSIDL\_FONTS = \$0014

CSIDL\_HISTORY = \$0022

ID for the "History" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_INTERNET\_CACHE = \$0020

ID for the "Temporary Internet Files" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_LOCAL\_APPDATA = \$001C

ID for the local "Application Data" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYMUSIC = \$000D

ID for the "My Music" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYPICTURES = \$0027

ID for the "My Pictures" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYVIDEO = \$000E

ID for the "My Videos" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_NETHOOD = \$0013

ID for the "Nethood" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PERSONAL = \$0005

ID for the "My Documents" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PRINTHOOD = \$001B

ID for the "Printhood" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PROFILE = \$0028

ID for the user's personal folder

CSIDL\_PROFILES = \$003E

ID for the parent folder for the user's folders

CSIDL\_PROGRAMS = \$0002

ID for the "Program files" folder

CSIDL\_PROGRAM\_FILES = \$0026

ID for the "Program Files" folder (alias for CSIDL\_PROGRAMS)

CSIDL\_PROGRAM\_FILES\_COMMON = \$002B

ID for the Common folder under the "Program Files" folder.

CSIDL\_RECENT = \$0008

ID for the "Recent" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_SENDTO = \$0009

ID for the "Send to" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_STARTMENU = \$000B

ID for the "Start menu" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_STARTUP = \$0007

ID for the "Startup" menu folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_SYSTEM = \$0025

ID for the Windows System32 dir.

CSIDL\_TEMPLATES = \$0015

ID for the "Templates" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_WINDOWS = \$0024

ID for the Windows installation dir.

FOLDERID\_AccountPictures : TGuid =  
'{008CA0B1-55B4-4C56-B8A8-4DE4B299D3BE}'

FOLDERID\_AddNewPrograms : TGuid =  
'{DE61D971-5EBC-4F02-A3A9-6C82895E5C04}'

```
FOLDERID_AdminTools : TGuid =
    '{724EF170-A42D-4FEF-9F26-B60E846FBA4F}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AllAppMods : TGuid =
    '{7AD67899-66AF-43BA-9156-6AAD42E6C596}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppCaptures : TGuid =
    '{EDC0FE71-98D8-4F4A-B920-C8DC133CB165}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppDataDesktop : TGuid =
    '{B2C5E279-7ADD-439F-B28C-C41FE1BBF672}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppDataDocuments : TGuid =
    '{7BE16610-1F7F-44AC-BFF0-83E15F2FFCA1}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppDataFavorites : TGuid =
    '{7CFBEFBC-DE1F-45AA-B843-A542AC536CC9}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppDataProgramData : TGuid =
    '{559D40A3-A036-40FA-AF61-84CB430A4D34}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ApplicationShortcuts : TGuid =
    '{A3918781-E5F2-4890-B3D9-A7E54332328C}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppsFolder : TGuid =
    '{1E87508D-89C2-42F0-8A7E-645A0F50CA58}'
```

```
FOLDERID_AppUpdates : TGuid =
    '{A305CE99-F527-492B-8B1A-7E76FA98D6E4}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CameraRoll : TGuid =
    '{AB5FB87B-7CE2-4F83-915D-550846C9537B}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CameraRollLibrary : TGuid =
    '{2B20DF75-1EDA-4039-8097-38798227D5B7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CDBurning : TGuid =
    '{9E52AB10-F80D-49DF-ACB8-4330F5687855}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ChangeRemovePrograms : TGuid =
    '{DF7266AC-9274-4867-8D55-3BD661DE872D}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonAdminTools : TGuid =
    '{D0384E7D-BAC3-4797-8F14-CBA229B392B5}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonOEMLinks : TGuid =
    '{C1BAE2D0-10DF-4334-BEDD-7AA20B227A9D}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonPrograms : TGuid =
    '{0139D44E-6AFE-49F2-8690-3DAFCAE6FFB8}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartMenu : TGuid =
    '{A4115719-D62E-491D-AA7C-E74B8BE3B067}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartMenuPlaces : TGuid =
    '{A440879F-87A0-4F7D-B700-0207B966194A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartup : TGuid =
    '{82A5EA35-D9CD-47C5-9629-E15D2F714E6E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonTemplates : TGuid =
    '{B94237E7-57AC-4347-9151-B08C6C32D1F7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ComputerFolder : TGuid =
    '{0AC0837C-BBF8-452A-850D-79D08E667CA7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ConflictFolder : TGuid =
    '{4BFEFB45-347D-4006-A5BE-AC0CB0567192}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ConnectionsFolder : TGuid =
    '{6F0CD92B-2E97-45D1-88FF-B0D186B8DEDD}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Contacts : TGuid =
    '{56784854-C6CB-462B-8169-88E350ACB882}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ControlPanelFolder : TGuid =
    '{82A74AEB-AEB4-465C-A014-D097EE346D63}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Cookies : TGuid =
    '{2B0F765D-C0E9-4171-908E-08A611B84FF6}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CurrentAppMods : TGuid =
    '{3DB40B20-2A30-4DBE-917E-771DD21DD099}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Desktop : TGuid =
    '{B4BFCC3A-DB2C-424C-B029-7FE99A87C641}'

FOLDERID_DevelopmentFiles : TGuid =
    '{DBE8E08E-3053-4BBC-B183-2A7B2B191E59}'

FOLDERID_Device : TGuid =
    '{1C2AC1DC-4358-4B6C-9733-AF21156576F0}'

FOLDERID_DeviceMetadataStore : TGuid =
    '{5CE4A5E9-E4EB-479D-B89F-130C02886155}'

FOLDERID_Documents : TGuid =
    '{FDD39AD0-238F-46AF-ADB4-6C85480369C7}'

FOLDERID_DocumentsLibrary : TGuid =
    '{7B0DB17D-9CD2-4A93-9733-46CC89022E7C}'

FOLDERID_Downloads : TGuid =
    '{374DE290-123F-4565-9164-39C4925E467B}'

FOLDERID_Favorites : TGuid =
    '{1777F761-68AD-4D8A-87BD-30B759FA33DD}'

FOLDERID_Fonts : TGuid = '{FD228CB7-AE11-4AE3-864C-16F3910AB8FE}'

FOLDERID_Games : TGuid = '{CAC52C1A-B53D-4EDC-92D7-6B2E8AC19434}'

FOLDERID_GameTasks : TGuid =
    '{054FAE61-4DD8-4787-80B6-090220C4B700}'

FOLDERID_History : TGuid =
    '{D9DC8A3B-B784-432E-A781-5A1130A75963}'

FOLDERID_HomeGroup : TGuid =
    '{52528A6B-B9E3-4ADD-B60D-588C2DBA842D}'

FOLDERID_HomeGroupCurrentUser : TGuid =
    '{9B74B6A3-0DFD-4F11-9E78-5F7800F2E772}'
```

```

FOLDERID_ImplicitAppShortcuts : TGuid =
    '{BCB5256F-79F6-4CEE-B725-DC34E402FD46}'

FOLDERID_InternetCache : TGuid =
    '{352481E8-33BE-4251-BA85-6007CAEDCF9D}'

FOLDERID_InternetFolder : TGuid =
    '{4D9F7874-4E0C-4904-967B-40B0D20C3E4B}'

FOLDERID_Libraries : TGuid =
    '{1B3EA5DC-B587-4786-B4EF-BD1DC332AEAE}'

FOLDERID_Links : TGuid = '{BFB9D5E0-C6A9-404C-B2B2-AE6DB6AF4968}'

FOLDERID_LocalAppData : TGuid =
    '{F1B32785-6FBA-4FCF-9D55-7B8E7F157091}'

FOLDERID_LocalAppDataLow : TGuid =
    '{A520A1A4-1780-4FF6-BD18-167343C5AF16}'

FOLDERID_LocalDocuments : TGuid =
    '{F42EE2D3-909F-4907-8871-4C22FC0BF756}'

FOLDERID_LocalDownloads : TGuid =
    '{7D83EE9B-2244-4E70-B1F5-5393042AF1E4}'

FOLDERID_LocalizedResourcesDir : TGuid =
    '{2A00375E-224C-49DE-B8D1-440DF7EF3DDC}'

FOLDERID_LocalMusic : TGuid =
    '{A0C69A99-21C8-4671-8703-7934162FCF1D}'

FOLDERID_LocalPictures : TGuid =
    '{0DDD015D-B06C-45D5-8C4C-F59713854639}'

FOLDERID_LocalVideos : TGuid =
    '{35286A68-3C57-41A1-BBB1-0EAE73D76C95}'

FOLDERID_Music : TGuid = '{4BD8D571-6D19-48D3-BE97-422220080E43}'

```

```
FOLDERID_MusicLibrary : TGuid =
    '{2112AB0A-C86A-4FFE-A368-0DE96E47012E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_NetHood : TGuid =
    '{C5ABBF53-E17F-4121-8900-86626FC2C973}'
```

```
FOLDERID_NetworkFolder : TGuid =
    '{D20BEEC4-5CA8-4905-AE3B-BF251EA09B53}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Objects3D : TGuid =
    '{31C0DD25-9439-4F12-BF41-7FF4EDA38722}'
```

```
FOLDERID_OneDrive : TGuid =
    '{A52BBA46-E9E1-435F-B3D9-28DAA648C0F6}'
```

```
FOLDERID_OriginalImages : TGuid =
    '{2C36C0AA-5812-4B87-BFD0-4CD0DFB19B39}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PhotoAlbums : TGuid =
    '{69D2CF90-FC33-4FB7-9A0C-EBB0F0FCB43C}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Pictures : TGuid =
    '{33E28130-4E1E-4676-835A-98395C3BC3BB}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PicturesLibrary : TGuid =
    '{A990AE9F-A03B-4E80-94BC-9912D7504104}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Playlists : TGuid =
    '{DE92C1C7-837F-4F69-A3BB-86E631204A23}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PrintersFolder : TGuid =
    '{76FC4E2D-D6AD-4519-A663-37BD56068185}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PrintHood : TGuid =
    '{9274BD8D-CFD1-41C3-B35E-B13F55A758F4}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Profile : TGuid =
    '{5E6C858F-0E22-4760-9AFE-EA3317B67173}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramData : TGuid =
    '{62AB5D82-FDC1-4DC3-A9DD-070D1D495D97}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFiles : TGuid =
    '{905E63B6-C1BF-494E-B29C-65B732D3D21A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFilesCommon : TGuid =
    '{F7F1ED05-9F6D-47A2-AAAE-29D317C6F066}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFilesCommonX64 : TGuid =
    '{6365D5A7-0F0D-45E5-87F6-0DA56B6A4F7D}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFilesCommonX86 : TGuid =
    '{DE974D24-D9C6-4D3E-BF91-F4455120B917}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFilesX64 : TGuid =
    '{6D809377-6AF0-444B-8957-A3773F02200E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ProgramFilesX86 : TGuid =
    '{7C5A40EF-A0FB-4BFC-874A-C0F2E0B9FA8E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Programs : TGuid =
    '{A77F5D77-2E2B-44C3-A6A2-ABA601054A51}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Public : TGuid =
    '{DFDF76A2-C82A-4D63-906A-5644AC457385}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicDesktop : TGuid =
    '{C4AA340D-F20F-4863-AFEF-F87EF2E6BA25}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicDocuments : TGuid =
    '{ED4824AF-DCE4-45A8-81E2-FC7965083634}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicDownloads : TGuid =
    '{3D644C9B-1FB8-4F30-9B45-F670235F79C0}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicGameTasks : TGuid =
    '{DEBF2536-E1A8-4C59-B6A2-414586476AEA}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicLibraries : TGuid =
    '{48DAF80B-E6CF-4F4E-B800-0E69D84EE384}'
```

```
FOLDERID_PublicMusic : TGuid =
    '{3214FAB5-9757-4298-BB61-92A9DEAA44FF}'
```

FOLDERID\_PublicPictures : TGuid =  
'{B6EBFB86-6907-413C-9AF7-4FC2ABF07CC5}'

FOLDERID\_PublicRingtones : TGuid =  
'{E555AB60-153B-4D17-9F04-A5FE99FC15EC}'

FOLDERID\_PublicUserTiles : TGuid =  
'{0482AF6C-08F1-4C34-8C90-E17EC98B1E17}'

FOLDERID\_PublicVideos : TGuid =  
'{2400183A-6185-49FB-A2D8-4A392A602BA3}'

FOLDERID\_QuickLaunch : TGuid =  
'{52A4F021-7B75-48A9-9F6B-4B87A210BC8F}'

FOLDERID\_Recent : TGuid =  
'{AE50C081-EBD2-438A-8655-8A092E34987A}'

FOLDERID\_RecordedCalls : TGuid =  
'{2F8B40C2-83ED-48EE-B383-A1F157EC6F9A}'

FOLDERID\_RecordedTVLibrary : TGuid =  
'{1A6FDBA2-F42D-4358-A798-B74D745926C5}'

FOLDERID\_RecycleBinFolder : TGuid =  
'{B7534046-3ECB-4C18-BE4E-64CD4CB7D6AC}'

FOLDERID\_ResourceDir : TGuid =  
'{8AD10C31-2ADB-4296-A8F7-E4701232C972}'

FOLDERID\_RetailDemo : TGuid =  
'{12D4C69E-24AD-4923-BE19-31321C43A767}'

FOLDERID\_Ringtones : TGuid =  
'{C870044B-F49E-4126-A9C3-B52A1FF411E8}'

FOLDERID\_RoamedTileImages : TGuid =  
'{AAA8D5A5-F1D6-4259-BAA8-78E7EF60835E}'

FOLDERID\_RoamingAppData : TGuid =  
'{3EB685DB-65F9-4CF6-A03A-E3EF65729F3D}'

```

FOLDERID_RoamingTiles : TGuid =
    '{00BCFC5A-ED94-4E48-96A1-3F6217F21990}'

FOLDERID_SampleMusic : TGuid =
    '{B250C668-F57D-4EE1-A63C-290EE7D1AA1F}'

FOLDERID_SamplePictures : TGuid =
    '{C4900540-2379-4C75-844B-64E6FAF8716B}'

FOLDERID_SamplePlaylists : TGuid =
    '{15CA69B3-30EE-49C1-ACE1-6B5EC372AFB5}'

FOLDERID_SampleVideos : TGuid =
    '{859EAD94-2E85-48AD-A71A-0969CB56A6CD}'

FOLDERID_SavedGames : TGuid =
    '{4C5C32FF-BB9D-43B0-B5B4-2D72E54EAAA4}'

FOLDERID_SavedPictures : TGuid =
    '{3B193882-D3AD-4EAB-965A-69829D1FB59F}'

FOLDERID_SavedPicturesLibrary : TGuid =
    '{E25B5812-BE88-4BD9-94B0-29233477B6C3}'

FOLDERID_SavedSearches : TGuid =
    '{7D1D3A04-DEBB-4115-95CF-2F29DA2920DA}'

FOLDERID_Screenshots : TGuid =
    '{B7BEDE81-DF94-4682-A7D8-57A52620B86F}'

FOLDERID_SearchHistory : TGuid =
    '{0D4C3DB6-03A3-462F-A0E6-08924C41B5D4}'

FOLDERID_SearchHome : TGuid =
    '{190337D1-B8CA-4121-A639-6D472D16972A}'

FOLDERID_SearchTemplates : TGuid =
    '{7E636BFE-DFA9-4D5E-B456-D7B39851D8A9}'

FOLDERID_SEARCH_CSC : TGuid =
    '{EE32E446-31CA-4ABA-814F-A5EBD2FD6D5E}'

```

FOLDERID\_SEARCH\_MAPI : TGuid =  
'{98EC0E18-2098-4D44-8644-66979315A281}'

FOLDERID\_SendTo : TGuid =  
'{8983036C-27C0-404B-8F08-102D10DCFD74}'

FOLDERID\_SidebarDefaultParts : TGuid =  
'{7B396E54-9EC5-4300-BE0A-2482EBAE1A26}'

FOLDERID\_SidebarParts : TGuid =  
'{A75D362E-50FC-4FB7-AC2C-A8BEAA314493}'

FOLDERID\_SkyDrive : TGuid =  
'{A52BBA46-E9E1-435F-B3D9-28DAA648C0F6}'

FOLDERID\_SkyDriveCameraRoll : TGuid =  
'{767E6811-49CB-4273-87C2-20F355E1085B}'

FOLDERID\_SkyDriveDocuments : TGuid =  
'{24D89E24-2F19-4534-9DDE-6A6671FBB8FE}'

FOLDERID\_SkyDriveMusic : TGuid =  
'{C3F2459E-80D6-45DC-BFEF-1F769F2BE730}'

FOLDERID\_SkyDrivePictures : TGuid =  
'{339719B5-8C47-4894-94C2-D8F77ADD44A6}'

FOLDERID\_StartMenu : TGuid =  
'{625B53C3-AB48-4EC1-BA1F-A1EF4146FC19}'

FOLDERID\_StartMenuAllPrograms : TGuid =  
'{F26305EF-6948-40B9-B255-81453D09C785}'

FOLDERID\_Startup : TGuid =  
'{B97D20BB-F46A-4C97-BA10-5E3608430854}'

FOLDERID\_SyncManagerFolder : TGuid =  
'{43668BF8-C14E-49B2-97C9-747784D784B7}'

FOLDERID\_SyncResultsFolder : TGuid =  
'{289A9A43-BE44-4057-A41B-587A76D7E7F9}'

```
FOLDERID_SyncSetupFolder : TGuid =
    '{0F214138-B1D3-4A90-BBA9-27CBC0C5389A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_System : TGuid =
    '{1AC14E77-02E7-4E5D-B744-2EB1AE5198B7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SystemX86 : TGuid =
    '{D65231B0-B2F1-4857-A4CE-A8E7C6EA7D27}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Templates : TGuid =
    '{A63293E8-664E-48DB-A079-DF759E0509F7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UserPinned : TGuid =
    '{9E3995AB-1F9C-4F13-B827-48B24B6C7174}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UserProfiles : TGuid =
    '{0762D272-C50A-4BB0-A382-697DCD729B80}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UserProgramFiles : TGuid =
    '{5CD7AEE2-2219-4A67-B85D-6C9CE15660CB}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UserProgramFilesCommon : TGuid =
    '{BCBD3057-CA5C-4622-B42D-BC56DB0AE516}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UsersFiles : TGuid =
    '{F3CE0F7C-4901-4ACC-8648-D5D44B04EF8F}'
```

```
FOLDERID_UsersLibraries : TGuid =
    '{A302545D-DEFF-464B-ABE8-61C8648D939B}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Videos : TGuid =
    '{18989B1D-99B5-455B-841C-AB7C74E4DDFC}'
```

```
FOLDERID_VideosLibrary : TGuid =
    '{491E922F-5643-4AF4-A7EB-4E7A138D8174}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Windows : TGuid =
    '{F38BF404-1D43-42F2-9305-67DE0B28FC23}'
```

```
KF_FLAG_CREATE = DWORD($8000)
```

```
KF_FLAG_DEFAULT = DWORD(0)
```

## 88.4 Procedures and functions

### 88.4.1 ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID

Declaration: `function ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID(CSIDL: Integer; out FOLDERID: TGuid)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 88.4.2 ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL

Declaration: `function ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL(const FOLDERID: TGuid;  
out CSIDL: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 88.4.3 GetWindowsSpecialDir

Synopsis: Get the location of a special directory.

Declaration: `function GetWindowsSpecialDir(ID: Integer; CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: string  
function GetWindowsSpecialDir(const GUID: TGuid;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetWindowsSpecialDir` can be used to to get the path of special folders on the Windows system. The locations are identified using one of the `CSIDL_*` constants. If the ID of a location is or-ed with the `CSIDL_FLAG_CREATE` constant, then the directory will be created if it didn't exist yet (and the user has sufficient rights to do so).

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

### 88.4.4 GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode

Declaration: `function GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode(ID: Integer;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: UnicodeString  
function GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode(const GUID: TGuid;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 88.4.5 GetWindowsSystemDirectory

Declaration: `function GetWindowsSystemDirectory : string`

Visibility: default

### 88.4.6 GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode

**Declaration:** `function GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode : UnicodeString`

**Visibility:** `default`

# Chapter 89

## Reference for unit 'x86'

### 89.1 Used units

Table 89.1: Used units by unit 'x86'

| Name     | Page                 |
|----------|----------------------|
| BaseUnix | <a href="#">140</a>  |
| System   | <a href="#">1332</a> |

### 89.2 Overview

The x86 unit contains some of the routines that were present in the 1.0.X Linux unit, and which were Intel (PC) architecture specific.

These calls have been preserved for compatibility, but should be considered deprecated: they are not portable and may not even work on future Linux versions.

### 89.3 Procedures and functions

#### 89.3.1 fplOperm

Synopsis: Set permission on IO ports

Declaration: `function fplOperm(From: Cardinal; Num: Cardinal; Value: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FplOperm` sets permissions on `Num` ports starting with port `From` to `Value`. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value otherwise.

Note:

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first `0x03ff` ports can be set.
- When doing a `FpFork` ([189](#)), the permissions are reset. When doing a `FpExecVE` ([186](#)) they are kept.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `FpGetErrno` ([192](#))

### 89.3.2 `fpIoPL`

Synopsis: Set I/O privilege level

Declaration: `function fpIoPL(Level: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpIoPL` sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 89.3.3 `ReadPort`

Synopsis: Read data from a PC port

Declaration: `procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Byte)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadPort` reads one Byte, Word or Longint from port `Port` into `Value`.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` ([2187](#)) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` ([2187](#)), `ReadPortB` ([2188](#)), `ReadPortW` ([2189](#)), `ReadPortL` ([2189](#)), `WritePort` ([2189](#)), `WritePortB` ([2190](#)), `WritePortL` ([2190](#)), `WritePortW` ([2190](#))

### 89.3.4 `ReadPortB`

Synopsis: Read bytes from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortB(Port: LongInt) : Byte`  
`procedure ReadPortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortB` reads `Count` bytes from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` bytes.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 byte from port `B` and returns the byte that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` ([2187](#)) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` ([2187](#)), `ReadPort` ([2188](#)), `ReadPortW` ([2189](#)), `ReadPortL` ([2189](#)), `WritePort` ([2189](#)), `WritePortB` ([2190](#)), `WritePortL` ([2190](#)), `WritePortW` ([2190](#))

### 89.3.5 ReadPortL

Synopsis: Read longints from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortL(Port: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`procedure ReadPortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortL` reads `Count` longints from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` Longints.

The functional form of `ReadPortL` reads 1 longint from port `B` and returns the longint that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2187) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2187), `ReadPort` (2188), `ReadPortW` (2189), `ReadPortB` (2188), `WritePort` (2189), `WritePortB` (2190), `WritePortL` (2190), `WritePortW` (2190)

### 89.3.6 ReadPortW

Synopsis: Read Words from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortW(Port: LongInt) : Word`  
`procedure ReadPortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortW` reads `Count` words from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` words.

The functional form of `ReadPortW` reads 1 word from port `B` and returns the word that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2187) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2187), `ReadPort` (2188), `ReadPortB` (2188), `ReadPortL` (2189), `WritePort` (2189), `WritePortB` (2190), `WritePortL` (2190), `WritePortW` (2190)

### 89.3.7 WritePort

Synopsis: Write data to PC port

Declaration: `procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WritePort` writes `Value` – 1 byte, `Word` or longint – to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (2187) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2187\)](#), [WritePortB \(2190\)](#), [WritePortL \(2190\)](#), [WritePortW \(2190\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2188\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2189\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2189\)](#)

### 89.3.8 WritePortB

**Synopsis:** Write byte to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(2187\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2187\)](#), [WritePort \(2189\)](#), [WritePortL \(2190\)](#), [WritePortW \(2190\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2188\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2189\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2189\)](#)

### 89.3.9 WritePortL

**Synopsis:** Write longint to PC port.

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(2187\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2187\)](#), [WritePort \(2189\)](#), [WritePortB \(2190\)](#), [WritePortW \(2190\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2188\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2189\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2189\)](#)

### 89.3.10 WritePortW

**Synopsis:** Write Word to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`  
`procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (2187) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** `FpIOPerm` (2187), `WritePort` (2189), `WritePortL` (2190), `WritePortB` (2190), `ReadPortB` (2188), `ReadPortL` (2189), `ReadPortW` (2189)